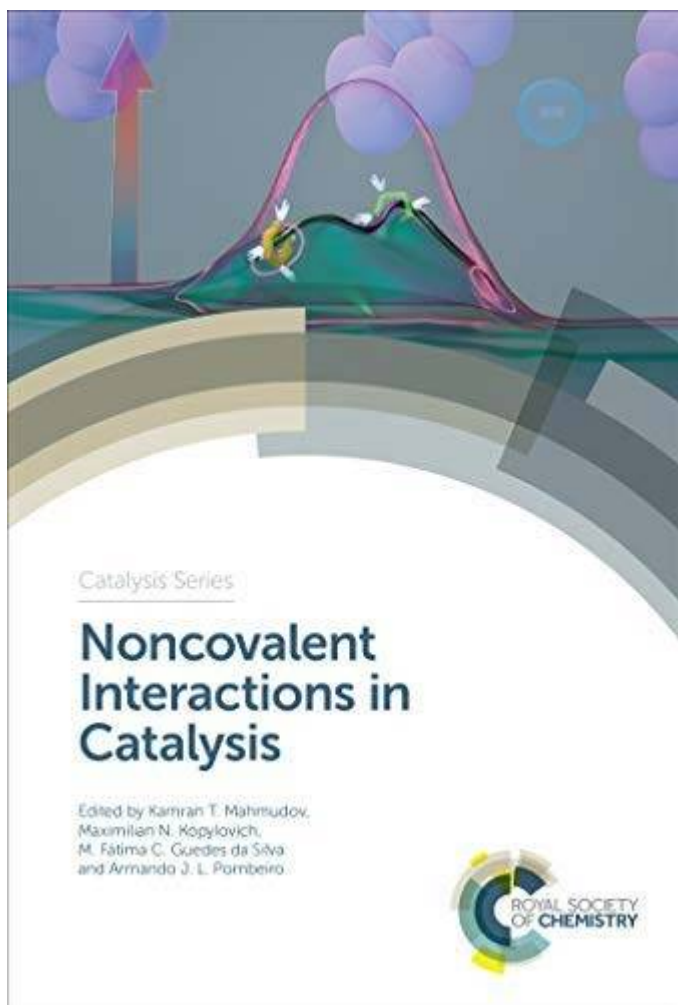


#### 4. Noncovalent Interactions in Catalysis



#### CHAPTER 28

Chapter 28 : Noncovalent Interaction in Biocatalysts – A Theoretical Perspective

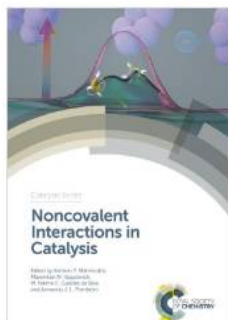
Authors : Gunasekaran Velmurugan, Rajadurai Vijay Solomon, **Dhurairajan Senthilnathan** and Ponnambalam Venuvanalingam

**Pages : 608 - 627**

ISBN : 978-1-78801-468-7

Department : Chemistry Department

YEAR : 2019



CATALYSIS SERIES

### Noncovalent Interactions in Catalysis



**Edited by** Kamran T Mahmudov;  
Maximilian N Kopylovich;  
M Fatima C Guedes da Silva;  
Armando J L Pombeiro

**DOI:** <https://doi.org/10.1039/9781788016490>

**Hardback ISBN:**  
978-1-78801-468-7

**PDF ISBN:** 978-1-78801-649-0

**Epub ISBN:** 978-1-78801-751-0

**Special Collection:** 2019 ebook collection

**Series:** Catalysis Series

**No. of Pages:** 653

**Publication date:** 04 Mar 2019

BOOK CHAPTER

## CHAPTER 28: Noncovalent Interactions in Biocatalysis – A Theoretical Perspective



By Gunasekaran Velmurugan ; Rajadurai Vijay Solomon ; Dhurairajan Senthilnathan ; Ponnambalam Venuvanalingam

**DOI:** <https://doi.org/10.1039/9781788016490-00608>

**Published:** 04 Mar 2019

**Special Collection:** 2019 ebook collection

**Series:** Catalysis Series

Get permissions

Cite

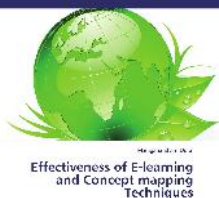
Share

Noncovalent interactions (NCIs) are Nature's choice for maintaining biological structure and carrying out many biological functions. These delicate forces become stronger and more specific when acting together. They were detected very early as short contacts in crystals or in gas-phase complexes but their systematic understanding is recent. Theoretical methods have greatly aided in understanding their nature and variety and this eventually led to their use in developing chemical, material, biological and technological applications. Recent developments in computer hardware and software have enabled scientists to probe the movements at the atomic level in the active site of complex biological systems and understand the biological processes. This chapter is devoted to explaining the role of NCIs in biocatalysis from a computational perspective. It first introduces the popular theoretical methods used to characterize NCIs and then explains the role of the three main NCIs, namely hydrogen bonding, halogen bonding and hydrophobic interactions, in biocatalysis through six case studies from the literature. The chapter ends with a summary and future directions of this topic.

You do not currently have access to this chapter, but see below options to check access via your institution or sign in to purchase.



[Back](#)



LAP LAMBERT

# [Effectiveness of E-learning and Concept mapping Techniques](#)

LAP Lambert Academic Publishing ( 2019-04-04 )

€ 87,90

[Buy at the MoreBooks! Shop](#)

Education is the only mean through which a society adjusts with its needs and therefore a society can never exist without education. Through education the members of a society learn the skills to enrich, transmit and transform cultural heritage as well as to enhance existing social and scientific knowledge for the continuous advancement of the society and posterity. Teaching learning process has been inseparable to human being since ancient times. Teachers can bring enthusiasm and varied teaching and assessment approaches to the classroom, addressing individual students' needs and ensuring sound learning opportunities for every student. Understanding the nature of school climate is a basic element in improving schools.

## **Book Details:**

ISBN-13: 978-613-9-47453-0

ISBN-10: 6139474531

EAN: 9786139474530

Book language: English

By (author) : Muruganantham Durai

Number of pages: 340

Published on: 2019-04-04

# FLORAL HARMONY - THE SCIENCE OF POLLINATION

*Edited by*

**DR.D.R SUDHA**



978-93-6255-440-6

Floral Harmony - The science of Pollination  
Copyright©2019 by Dr.D.R Sudha

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-440-6

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction .....	8
Chapter I : Nature's Matchmakers: Exploring Modes of Pollination .....	20
<b>Tamilcovane seshachalam</b>	
Chapter II Allogamy : The Evolutionary Advantage of outcrossing .....	26
<b>Banumathi Ganesan</b>	
Chapter III : Embracing Independence: Mechanisms of Self-Pollination .....	34
<b>Dr D R Sudha</b>	
Chapter IV : The Puzzle of Compatibility: Understanding Self-Incompatibility .....	46
<b>Dr.Rajaguruvu</b>	
Chapter V Compatibility Systems: Unraveling Nature's Complexities .....	53
<b>Mrs.J.U. Janusia</b>	
Chapter VI Fertility Frontiers: Genetic Male Sterility and Its Classifications .....	64
<b>Dr. V.A.Thirupathi</b>	
Chapter VII The diverse carriers of pollination .....	77
<b>Jasmine Manimaran</b>	
Chapter VIII : From seeds to clones .....	99
<b>Mr.S.Balamurugan</b>	
Chapter Ix Floral hormone; The chemical architect of blooming .....	120

Ms.Anu.P.Mani

Chapter X: **Growth hormone** : Master regulator of plant adaptation and development  
.....132

Prof. T.Lakshminarayanan

REFERENCES..... 150

## **CHAPTER I**

### **NATURE'S MATCHMAKERS: EXPLORING MODES OF POLLINATION**

**TAMILCOVANE SESHACHALAM**

*Assistant professor, School of Agriculture, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology , Tamilnadu, India*

Pollination, a crucial process for plant reproduction, occurs through various modes that ensure the transfer of pollen from male to female floral structures. The primary modes of pollination are biotic and abiotic. Biotic pollination involves living agents such as insects, birds, bats, and other animals that transfer pollen while feeding on nectar or pollen.

This mode is highly effective in plants with vibrant flowers, enticing scents, and nectar rewards, which attract pollinators and increase the likelihood of cross-pollination. Insect pollination, for example, is responsible for the fertilization of many crops and flowering plants, making it essential for both natural ecosystems and agricultural systems.

Abiotic pollination, on the other hand, relies on non-living factors such as wind and water to disperse pollen. Wind pollination is common in grasses and many trees, where lightweight, pollen is carried over long distances by air currents, often in large quantities to increase the chances of reaching a compatible flower.

Water pollination, though less common, occurs in aquatic plants where pollen floats on water to reach other flowers. Each mode of pollination has evolved to suit the reproductive needs and environmental conditions of different plant species, highlighting the intricate relationships between plants and their ecosystems.



## CHAPTER II

### ALLOGAMY : THE EVOLUTIONARY ADVANTAGE OF OUTCROSSING

BANUMATHI GANESAN

*Assistant professor, School of Agriculture, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology , Tamilnadu, India*

Allogamy, or cross-pollination, is a reproductive strategy where pollen from one plant fertilizes the ovules of a different plant of the same species. This mechanism promotes genetic diversity by encouraging the mixing of genetic material from distinct individuals, which can enhance the adaptability and resilience of plant populations. By relying on external agents such as insects, birds, wind, or water to transfer pollen, allogamous plants reduce the likelihood of inbreeding and the associated risks of reduced vigor and increased susceptibility to diseases and pests. This genetic variability is crucial for evolutionary processes and the long-term survival of species in changing environments.

In allogamous plants, several adaptations facilitate cross-pollination. Floral structures often exhibit traits designed to attract and reward pollinators, such as brightly colored petals, enticing fragrances, and nectar. Additionally, many allogamous plants have mechanisms to prevent self-fertilization, such as spatial separation of male and female organs or biochemical barriers that inhibit pollen from the same plant from germinating on its own stigma. These adaptations ensure that pollen is transferred between genetically diverse individuals, maximizing the benefits of cross-pollination.

## **CHAPTER III**

### **EMBRACING INDEPENDENCE: MECHANISMS OF SELF-POLLINATION**

**Dr D R SUDHA**

*Associate professor, School of Agriculture, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Self-pollination is a reproductive mechanism in plants where pollen from the same flower, or from another flower on the same plant, fertilizes its own ovules. This process can occur within a single flower or between flowers of the same plant. One of the primary mechanisms of self-pollination is called "autogamy," where the plant's flowers are structured in such a way that pollen is transferred directly from the anthers to the stigma without external aid. In many cases, the flowers have both male (stamens) and female (pistils) reproductive organs, allowing for self-fertilization to occur with minimal or no external intervention. This strategy is particularly advantageous in environments where pollinators are scarce or unreliable.

Another mechanism of self-pollination is "geitonogamy," where pollen is transferred between different flowers on the same plant. This process still results in self-fertilization but involves the movement of pollen within the plant itself. Geitonogamy ensures that the genetic material remains within the same plant while increasing the chances of successful fertilization compared to relying solely on autogamy. This mechanism is often facilitated by the plant's own structure, such as when flowers are closely positioned or when the plant's design allows for easy transfer of pollen between its flowers.

Self-pollination can be beneficial in stable environments where conditions do not favor or require genetic diversity.

## CHAPTER IV

### THE PUZZLE OF COMPATIBILITY: UNDERSTANDING SELF-INCOMPATIBILITY

DR RAJAGURUVU

*Assistant professor, School of Agriculture, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology , Tamilnadu, India*

Self-incompatibility is a biological mechanism that prevents a plant from fertilizing itself, thereby promoting genetic diversity within a population. This system operates through various genetic and physiological barriers that block pollen from the same plant from successfully fertilizing its ovules. In many self-incompatible species, pollen carrying the same genetic markers as the plant's own pistil is recognized and rejected by the plant's reproductive tissues. This rejection occurs because the plant's immune system identifies the pollen as self, triggering a defense response that prevents fertilization. By ensuring that only genetically distinct pollen can successfully fertilize its ovules, self-incompatibility encourages cross-pollination and increases the genetic variability of offspring.

There are several mechanisms by which self-incompatibility can function. One common type is the "gametophytic self-incompatibility," where the incompatibility is determined by the genotype of the pollen grain. In this system, the pollen's genetic makeup must be different from that of the pistil for successful fertilization to occur. Another mechanism is "sporophytic self-incompatibility," where the incompatibility is determined by the genetic makeup of the plant that produced the pollen. In this case, if the plant's genes match those of the pistil, pollen will be rejected, even if it comes from a different flower. Both mechanisms are designed to reduce the chances of inbreeding and enhance genetic diversity within the plant population.

Self-incompatibility not only has evolutionary significance but also practical implications for agriculture and horticulture. Many crops and ornamental plants have been selectively bred to overcome or utilize self-incompatibility in order to improve yields and enhance genetic traits.

## CHAPTER V

### COMPATIBILITY SYSTEMS: UNRAVELING NATURE'S COMPLEXITIES

MRS.J.U. JANUSIA

*Assistant professor, School of Agriculture, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology , Tamilnadu, India*

sporophytic self-incompatibility where the incompatibility is determined by the genetic makeup of the pollen's parent plant rather than the pollen grain itself. In this mechanism, if the genetic markers of the pollen match those of the pistil, the pollen is rejected, regardless of the pollen's specific genotype. This system relies on the recognition of genetic traits inherited from the parent plant and is often seen in species such as apple trees and many ornamentals. The pistil's ability to identify and reject pollen from the same genetic lineage ensures that cross-pollination occurs, thus enhancing genetic diversity within the population.

Pseudo-self-incompatibility, also known as incomplete self-incompatibility, represents a third type where the plant can partially self-fertilize but generally prefers cross-pollination. In this system, self-pollen can fertilize the ovules but with reduced efficiency compared to cross-pollen. The reduced success rate of self-pollination often encourages cross-pollination, even though some self-fertilization can still occur.

This type of self-incompatibility is observed in various plants, such as some species of the Rosaceae family, where the plants have evolved to balance the benefits of both self-fertilization and cross-pollination. These mechanisms collectively ensure that plants can adapt to different environmental conditions while maximizing reproductive success through genetic diversity.

## **CHAPTER VI**

### **FERTILITY FRONTIERS: GENETIC MALE STERILITY AND ITS CLASSIFICATIONS**

**DR V TIRUPATHI**

*Assistant professor, School of Agriculture, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and  
technology , Tamilnadu, India*

Genetic male sterility is a phenomenon where male reproductive structures, such as pollen-producing organs, are incapable of producing viable pollen due to genetic factors. This condition is a significant concern in plant breeding and agriculture because it directly impacts the plant's ability to reproduce sexually. Genetic male sterility can arise from various mutations or interactions between different genes that interfere with pollen development or function. In plants exhibiting genetic male sterility, the sterility is often heritable, meaning it can be passed on to offspring, which can be useful in controlled breeding programs where cross-pollination is desired. By utilizing male sterile plants, breeders can ensure that only selected, desirable pollen is used for fertilization, leading to more predictable and controlled breeding outcomes.

One of the most well-known applications of genetic male sterility is in hybrid seed production. In crops like maize, rice, and canola, male sterile lines are used to produce hybrids by preventing self-pollination. In these systems, male sterile plants are crossed with normal, fertile plants to produce hybrid seeds with improved traits such as higher yield, disease resistance, or better quality. The use of male sterility systems simplifies the process of hybrid seed production, as it eliminates the need for manual removal of pollen-producing organs or the need for complex mechanical pollination systems. This application demonstrates how genetic male sterility can be harnessed to advance agricultural productivity and efficiency.

## CHAPTER VII

### THE DIVERSE CARRIERS OF POLLINATION

JASMINE MANIMARAN

*Assistant professor, School of Agriculture, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology , Tamilnadu, India*

Pollinating agents play a crucial role in the reproductive processes of many plants by facilitating the transfer of pollen from male to female floral structures. These agents can be broadly categorized into biotic and abiotic types. Biotic pollinators include a diverse array of animals such as insects, birds, bats, and mammals. Insects, particularly bees, butterflies, and beetles, are among the most effective pollinators, drawn to flowers by their color, scent, and nectar. Birds like hummingbirds are attracted to brightly colored, tubular flowers, while bats pollinate night-blooming species.

Abiotic pollinators, on the other hand, rely on non-living factors to facilitate pollen transfer. Wind is a significant abiotic pollinator, especially for many grasses and trees, where pollen is carried over long distances by air currents. Wind-pollinated plants typically produce large quantities of lightweight pollen to increase the chances of successful fertilization. Water can also act as a pollinating agent for certain aquatic plants, where pollen floats on the water surface and reaches other flowers. Though less common than biotic pollination, water pollination plays a vital role in the reproductive cycles of aquatic species.

The effectiveness and efficiency of pollinating agents have profound implications for both natural ecosystems and agriculture. In natural settings, pollinators contribute to plant biodiversity and ecosystem stability by promoting cross-pollination and genetic diversity.



## **CHAPTER VIII**

### **FROM SEEDS TO CLONES**

**MRS BALAMURUGAN**

*Assistant professor, School of Agriculture, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology , Tamilnadu, India*

Plant reproduction modes are diverse and adapted to a range of environmental conditions and evolutionary strategies. The two primary modes are sexual reproduction and asexual reproduction . Sexual reproduction involves the fusion of male and female gametes, leading to genetic recombination and increased genetic diversity. This process typically requires pollination and fertilization, which can be facilitated by various agents such as wind, insects, or animals. Sexual reproduction allows plants to produce seeds that grow into new individuals, ensuring the mixing of genetic material and enhancing the adaptability of the species to changing environments.

In contrast, asexual reproduction allows plants to reproduce without the involvement of gametes or fertilization, producing offspring that are genetically identical to the parent plant. This mode of reproduction can occur through several mechanisms, including vegetative propagation, where new plants grow from vegetative parts such as stems, roots, or leaves. Examples include the growth of runners in strawberries, tubers in potatoes, and bulbs in onions. Asexual reproduction is advantageous in stable environments where the parent plant's traits are well-suited to the conditions, as it allows for rapid and efficient reproduction without the need for pollinators.

Alternative reproductive strategies often combine elements of both sexual and asexual reproduction to maximize reproductive success.

## CHAPTER IX

### FLORAL HORMONE; THE CHEMICAL ARCHITECT OF BLOOMING

MS.ANU.P.MANI

*Assistant professor, School of Agriculture, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology , Tamilnadu, India*

Floral hormones, also known as plant growth regulators, are crucial chemical signals that orchestrate the development and timing of flowering in plants. These hormones, including auxins, gibberellins, cytokinins, and abscisic acid, play essential roles in various aspects of floral development. Auxins, for instance, are involved in the regulation of cell elongation and differentiation, influencing the growth patterns that lead to flower formation. Gibberellins stimulate the transition from vegetative growth to flowering by promoting the elongation of floral stems and the development of flower buds. Cytokinins are essential for cell division and differentiation, which contribute to the proper formation of floral organs.

The regulation of flowering time and floral organ development is a complex process controlled by the interplay of these hormones in response to environmental cues. For example, photoperiod-sensitive plants rely on the interaction between floral hormones and light signals to determine the optimal time for flowering. In such plants, changes in day length trigger hormonal responses that induce or inhibit flower development. Similarly, temperature fluctuations can influence the levels of these hormones, affecting the timing and success of flowering. This sensitivity to environmental factors ensures that flowering occurs under favorable conditions, which is crucial for successful reproduction.

## CHAPTER X

### **GROWTH HORMONE : MASTER REGULATOR OF PLANT ADAPTATION AND DEVELOPMENT**

**PROF. T.LAKSHMINARAYANAN**

*Assistant professor, School of Agriculture, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology , Tamilnadu, India*

Growth hormones, or plant growth regulators, are vital chemicals that regulate various aspects of plant growth and development. Among the primary growth hormones are auxins, gibberellins, cytokinins, and abscisic acid. Auxins are crucial for cell elongation, differentiation, and the regulation of growth direction, particularly in response to gravity and light. Gibberellins influence stem elongation, seed germination, and flowering, while cytokinins promote cell division and shoot development. Abscisic acid primarily regulates stress responses and inhibits growth under unfavorable conditions, ensuring that plants can adapt to environmental challenges.

The interaction between these growth hormones dictates the plant's developmental processes, including root and shoot development, flowering, and fruit ripening. For instance, the balance between auxins and cytokinins is critical for root and shoot differentiation, with auxins typically promoting root formation and cytokinins supporting shoot growth. Gibberellins and abscisic acid often work in opposition, with gibberellins encouraging growth and abscisic acid signaling the plant to conserve resources and halt growth during periods of stress or dormancy. This delicate balance ensures that plants grow optimally and respond appropriately to environmental cues.

Understanding and manipulating growth hormones has significant applications in agriculture and horticulture. By adjusting the levels of these hormones, growers can influence plant growth patterns to improve crop yields, manage flowering times, and enhance fruit quality.



# FUNDAMENTALS OF HORTICULTURE: BASICS

Edited By

**DR. P. SELVARAJ**



978-93-6255-137-5

**Microbial Mastery: FUNDAMENTALS OF HORTICULTURE: BASICS**

Copyright © 2019 by Dr. P. Selvaraj

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-137-5

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENT

Introduction.....	5
Chapter I: Handbook for Glossary of Horticulture.....	16
MS. JASMINE MANIMARAN	
Chapter II Asexual propagation methods of Horticultural crops .....	36
MR. N. ILANCHEZHIAN	
Chapter III: Training and Pruning methods of Horticultural crops .....	55
DR. P. SELVARAJ	
Chapter IV: Pollinators: An Eminent friend of Horticulture Crops .....	73
DR. B. CHANDRASEKARAN	
Chapter V: Weed management in Horticulture .....	97
MR. T. LAKSHMINARAYANAN	
Chapter VI: Irrigation systems in horticultural crops.....	113
DR.S.R.RAJAM	
Chapter VII: Special horticulture Techniques.....	140
MRS.G.BANUMATHI	
Chapter VIII: Horticultural tools and equipment .....	160
DR. K. KUMARAKURU	
Chapter IX: Sustainable practices in horticulture.....	180
MS.K.SHALINI	
Chapter X: Water management .....	210
Dr.V.SHANTHI	

## REFERENCE:



## CHAPTER I

### HANDBOOK FOR GLOSSARY OF HORTICULTURE

**Ms. Jasmine Manimaran**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Horticulture, as a field, involves a myriad of techniques, practices, and scientific principles. Clear and precise communication is essential for effective education, research, and application in this diverse discipline. Terminology in horticulture not only facilitates understanding but also ensures consistency and accuracy in conveying complex ideas. This glossary aims to bridge gaps in knowledge by providing definitions and explanations of key terms that are frequently used in horticultural contexts. Scope of the Glossary: The glossary included in this handbook covers a broad spectrum of terms relevant to horticulture. It includes Botanical Terms: Definitions related to plant anatomy, physiology, and taxonomy. Cultivation Practices: Terms associated with planting, growing, and maintaining various types of plants, including both ornamental and edible species. Soil Science. Vocabulary related to soil composition, fertility, and management techniques. Pest and Disease Management: Terms that describe common pests, diseases, and integrated management strategies. Environmental Factors: Definitions concerning climate, weather, and other environmental factors influencing plant growth. Horticultural Technology: Terms related to the tools, machinery, and technological advancements used in horticulture.

This handbook is designed to be a practical reference tool for horticulturists, educators, students, and anyone with an interest in plants and gardening. Terms are listed alphabetically for ease of use, and each entry is defined in a clear and concise manner. Where applicable, additional context or examples are provided to enhance understanding. Cross-references are included to guide readers to related terms and concepts, offering a more comprehensive grasp of the subject matter. The field of horticulture is dynamic, with ongoing research and technological advancements continually shaping its language. This glossary reflects the most current terminology as of its publication, but users are encouraged to stay abreast of new developments and emerging terms in the field. The evolution of terminology often mirrors advancements in horticultural practices and scientific understanding, highlighting the need for continual learning and adaptation.

## **Chapter II**

### **Asexual propagation methods of Horticultural crops**

**MR. N. ILANCHEZHIAN**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Asexual propagation is a crucial technique in horticulture that enables the production of new plants without the involvement of seeds. This method involves creating genetically identical copies of a parent plant, which ensures consistency in traits and characteristics desirable for both commercial and personal horticultural purposes. Unlike sexual reproduction, which combines genetic material from two parent plants, asexual propagation yields offspring that are clones of the original plant, preserving specific qualities such as fruit flavor, flower color, and growth habit. The primary benefit of asexual propagation lies in its ability to replicate plants with desirable traits reliably. This is particularly valuable in horticulture where uniformity in plant quality and characteristics is essential for both aesthetic appeal and crop productivity. For instance, commercial nurseries and growers often use asexual methods to propagate high-yielding fruit trees or ornamental plants, ensuring that each plant meets the same standards of performance and appearance. Several methods of asexual propagation are commonly used, each suited to different types of plants and cultivation needs. These methods include Cuttings This method involves taking a portion of the plant, such as a stem or leaf, and encouraging it to grow roots and develop into a new plant. Cuttings are particularly popular for propagating herbaceous plants and some woody species. The success of this method depends on factors like the type of cutting, rooting hormone application, and environmental conditions. Layering involves inducing roots on a stem while it is still attached to the parent plant. This can be achieved by burying a part of the stem in soil or using techniques such as air layering. Layering is effective for many shrubs and vines, allowing new plants to form while still benefiting from the parent plant's support. Grafting and Budding: These techniques involve joining a piece of one plant (the scion) with another plant (the rootstock) to create a new plant. Grafting is commonly used in fruit tree cultivation, where the scion provides the fruiting characteristics and the rootstock contributes to growth vigor and disease resistance. Budding is a similar process but involves inserting a single bud into the rootstock.

## **CHAPTER III**

### **Training and Pruning methods of Horticultural crops**

**Dr. P. Selvaraj**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Horticultural crops form a cornerstone of global agriculture, providing essential food, ornamentals, and medicinal plants. The cultivation and management of these crops involve intricate practices designed to enhance productivity, improve quality, and ensure sustainability. Among the myriad techniques employed in horticulture, training and pruning stand out as critical interventions that shape plant growth, optimize fruiting, and manage plant health. Training and pruning are both art and science, embodying the practical application of botanical principles to achieve desired outcomes. Training refers to the systematic manipulation of plant structures to guide growth in a desired direction, support plant architecture, and maximize exposure to light. It includes methods such as staking, trellising, and espaliering, each tailored to specific crop types and growth habits. Pruning, on the other hand, involves the selective removal of plant parts—branches, buds, or roots—to regulate growth, enhance air circulation, and stimulate fruitful development. The effectiveness of these practices is deeply rooted in understanding the physiological responses of plants. Training and pruning can influence various growth parameters, including plant shape, fruiting cycles, and overall health. For instance, proper training techniques can increase light penetration and air circulation, reducing the incidence of diseases and promoting uniform fruit ripening. Similarly, strategic pruning can control plant size, remove diseased or dead wood, and encourage new growth, leading to better yields and improved quality. As horticultural practices continue to evolve with advancements in research and technology, the principles of training and pruning remain fundamental. Innovations in these methods are continually emerging, offering new insights into optimizing plant performance and sustainability. This chapter delves into the core techniques of training and pruning, examining their application across different horticultural crops, from fruit trees to ornamental plants. By exploring both traditional practices and modern advancements, we aim to provide a comprehensive understanding of how these methods contribute to successful horticultural management and the future of crop cultivation.

## CHAPTER IV

### **Pollinators: An Eminent friend of Horticulture Crops**

**Dr.B Chandrasekaran**

*Associate Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

In the vibrant world of horticulture, where every blossom and fruit plays a role in the tapestry of agriculture, pollinators emerge as unsung heroes. These industrious creatures, ranging from the charismatic honeybee to the elusive moth, are pivotal to the success and productivity of horticultural crops. Their role transcends mere visitation; they are the architects of biodiversity and the facilitators of food production, weaving an intricate dance that ensures the flourishing of both wild and cultivated plant species. Pollinators operate at the intersection of ecology and agriculture, providing essential services that underpin the health of ecosystems and the productivity of crops. By transferring pollen from the male structures of flowers to the female structures, they enable fertilization, leading to the production of seeds and fruits. This process not only supports the reproduction of plants but also enhances the genetic diversity of crops, a key factor in their resilience and adaptability. As a result, horticulturists and farmers rely heavily on these natural allies to maximize yields and sustain the quality of their produce. The significance of pollinators extends beyond agricultural benefits; their activities are deeply intertwined with environmental stewardship and sustainability. By promoting the growth of flowering plants, pollinators help maintain habitats for other wildlife, support soil health, and contribute to the overall balance of ecosystems. In essence, they act as custodians of biodiversity, ensuring that natural and cultivated landscapes alike remain vibrant and productive. However, the relationship between pollinators and horticultural crops is not without challenges. The increasing pressures of habitat loss, climate change, and pesticide use have led to declines in many pollinator populations, threatening not only the plants they service but also the broader ecological networks dependent on them. Addressing these challenges requires a nuanced understanding of pollinator behaviour, ecology, and conservation strategies. This chapter will delve into the vital role of pollinators in horticulture, exploring their mechanisms of action, the benefits they confer to crops, and the emerging threats they face.

## **Chapter V**

### **Weed management in Horticulture crops**

**Prof. T. Lakshminarayanan**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Weed management in horticultural crops is a crucial aspect of crop production that influences both yield and quality. Weeds compete with crops for essential resources—light, water, and nutrients—resulting in reduced crop productivity and increased production costs. Effective weed management is therefore vital to achieving high-quality horticultural yields and maintaining the health of agricultural ecosystems. Integrated Weed Management (IWM) is a holistic approach combining multiple strategies to control weed populations. The core principle of IWM is to reduce weed pressure using a combination of cultural, mechanical, biological, and chemical methods. This diversified approach helps minimize the reliance on any single weed control method, thereby reducing the risk of weed resistance development. Cultural practices are proactive measures that involve modifying the crop environment to suppress weed growth. These include Crop Rotation: Alternating crops with different growth habits and planting times can disrupt weed life cycles and reduce the establishment of weed populations. Cover Crops: Planting cover crops such as clover or rye can suppress weed growth through competition and shading. Cover crops also improve soil health and structure. Planting Density and Arrangement: Adjusting planting density and row spacing can create a competitive environment for weeds, making it harder for them to establish and thrive. Mechanical control methods involve physically removing or damaging weeds. These methods are especially useful in the early stages of weed growth. Tillage: Implementing shallow tillage can disrupt weed seedlings and reduce their establishment. However, excessive tillage can lead to soil erosion and should be used judiciously. Hand Weeding: For small-scale operations or high-value crops, hand weeding remains an effective, though labor-intensive, method to control weeds. Biological control involves using natural enemies or competitive plants to manage weed populations. This method is particularly useful for persistent or problematic weed species. Weed-Specific Herbivores: Introducing insects or animals that feed specifically on target weed species can help reduce weed populations. Allelopathic Plants.

## **Chapter VI**

### **Irrigation systems in Horticulture Crops**

**DR.S.R.RAJAM**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Irrigation systems are pivotal in the successful cultivation of horticulture crops, ensuring optimal growth and productivity. Given the diversity of horticultural plants and their varying water needs, selecting the right irrigation system is crucial for maximizing yield while conserving water resources. Importance of Irrigation in Horticulture-Horticultural crops, including fruits, vegetables, and ornamental plants, often have specific water requirements that can be influenced by soil type, climate, and growth stage. Proper irrigation management not only supports plant health but also enhances fruit quality, increases resistance to pests and diseases, and improves crop consistency and yield. In regions with irregular rainfall, irrigation becomes essential for mitigating water stress, especially during critical growth phases.

**Types of Irrigation Systems**

Several irrigation systems are commonly used in horticulture, each with its own advantages and limitations.

**Drip Irrigation:** This system delivers water directly to the plant roots through a network of tubes and emitters. It is highly efficient, reducing water wastage and minimizing weed growth. Drip irrigation is particularly beneficial for crops with high water requirements and in areas with limited water supply. It allows precise control over water delivery and can be easily automated, making it ideal for high-value crops like tomatoes and cucumbers.

**Sprinkler Irrigation:** Sprinkler systems simulate rainfall by distributing water over the plant canopy through a network of pipes and spray heads. This method is suitable for a wide range of horticultural crops and is effective for larger fields. However, it can lead to water evaporation and drift, especially in windy conditions. Modern sprinkler systems can be adjusted for different crop types and field shapes, optimizing water use and reducing wastage.

**Surface Irrigation:** This traditional method involves applying water directly to the soil surface, allowing it to flow over the field by gravity. Techniques such as furrow, basin, and flood irrigation fall under this category. Surface irrigation is simple and inexpensive but can be less efficient due to evaporation and runoff losses. It is commonly used for crops with low water demands and in regions with abundant water resources.

**Subsurface Irrigation.**



## **Chapter VII**

### **Special Horticulture Techniques**

**MRS.G.BANUMATHI**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Horticulture, the art and science of growing fruits, vegetables, nuts, seeds, herbs, sprouts, mushrooms, algae, and non-food crops such as grass and ornamental trees and plants, has evolved significantly over the years. Special horticulture techniques play a crucial role in maximizing yield, improving plant health, and ensuring sustainability. These techniques encompass a variety of methods tailored to enhance growth, conserve resources, and adapt to different environments. One of the most influential special techniques in horticulture is hydroponics. This soil-less growing method involves cultivating plants in a nutrient-rich water solution. Hydroponics offers several advantages over traditional soil-based growing, including increased growth rates, higher yields, and reduced water usage. By controlling the nutrients and environmental conditions precisely, growers can optimize plant health and productivity. Additionally, hydroponics can be practiced in urban settings and areas with poor soil quality, making it a versatile solution for modern horticulture. Another innovative technique is aeroponics, which is closely related to hydroponics but differs in its approach. In aeroponics, plant roots are suspended in the air and periodically misted with a nutrient solution. This technique enhances oxygen absorption, which can lead to even faster growth and more robust plants. Aeroponics systems are highly efficient and can be implemented in compact spaces, making them suitable for both commercial and home growers. Vertical farming is a method designed to address space limitations and resource constraints. By growing plants in stacked layers or vertical columns, vertical farming optimizes space usage and increases productivity per square foot. This technique often integrates hydroponics or aeroponics systems, creating a highly controlled environment that can lead to significant resource savings and reduced environmental impact. Vertical farms can be set up in urban areas, reducing the need for transportation and ensuring fresher produce for local communities. Companion planting is another special technique that involves strategically planting different species together to benefit each other. Certain plant combinations can enhance growth, repel pests, and improve soil health. For example, planting marigolds alongside tomatoes can deter nematodes, while the nitrogen-fixing capabilities of legumes can enrich the soil for neighboring plants.

## CHAPTER VIII

**Dr.K.Kumarakuru**

### **Horticultural tools and equipment**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

#### **The Role of Tools in Horticulture**

Horticultural tools are designed to simplify and optimize various gardening tasks. From soil preparation and planting to pruning and harvesting, each tool serves a specific purpose, enabling gardeners to perform their duties with greater efficiency and precision. The use of appropriate tools not only improves the quality of work but also minimizes physical strain and increases productivity. **Categories of Horticultural**

**Tools:** Horticultural tools can be broadly categorized into several types based on their functions: **Hand Tools:** These include trowels, spades, pruners, and weeders. Hand tools are essential for tasks such as digging, planting, weeding, and pruning. Their design and functionality vary based on the specific needs of the task and the user's comfort. **Cutting Tools:** Secateurs, shears, and loppers fall into this category. Cutting tools are crucial for trimming plants, shaping bushes, and harvesting fruits. They come in various sizes and styles to handle different types of plant material and cutting requirements. **Digging Tools:** Shovels, spades, and forks are used for soil preparation and planting. These tools are designed to break up soil, create planting holes, and turn compost. Their design affects their effectiveness in different soil types and conditions. **Watering Equipment:** This category includes hoses, watering cans, and irrigation systems. Effective watering tools ensure that plants receive the right amount of moisture, which is vital for their growth and health. **Specialized Equipment:** Larger equipment such as tillers, lawn mowers, and leaf removal, with efficiency and ease.

#### **Maintaining and Caring for Tools**

Proper maintenance of horticultural tools is crucial for their longevity and performance. Regular cleaning, sharpening, and oiling of tools prevent rust and wear, ensuring that they remain functional and safe to use. Additionally, understanding how to store tools correctly and inspecting them before use can prevent accidents and enhance their effectiveness.

## **Chapter IX**

### **Sustainable practices in horticulture**

**MS.K.SHALINI**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

As the global population continues to expand and environmental concerns become increasingly urgent, the need for sustainable practices in horticulture has never been more critical. Horticulture, the science and art of growing fruits, vegetables, nuts, seeds, herbs, sprouts, mushrooms, algae, and non-food crops such as flowers, seaweeds, and non-food fibers, plays a pivotal role in our food systems and ecosystems. However, traditional horticultural practices often pose significant environmental challenges, including soil degradation, water overuse, and pesticide pollution. This chapter explores how adopting sustainable practices in horticulture can address these issues, ensuring that this vital sector contributes positively to environmental health and resilience. Sustainability in horticulture encompasses a range of practices aimed at minimizing environmental impact while optimizing resource use and maintaining productivity. Central to sustainable horticulture is the concept of ecological balance, which involves harmonizing human activities with the natural environment to support the long-term health of both. This includes implementing strategies such as integrated pest management (IPM), organic farming, and water conservation techniques. IPM, for instance, uses a combination of biological, cultural, mechanical, and chemical methods to manage pests in an environmentally and economically sustainable manner. Organic farming, on the other hand, avoids synthetic chemicals and focuses on enhancing soil health and biodiversity through natural processes. Water management is another critical area where sustainable practices can make a significant difference. Techniques such as drip irrigation, rainwater harvesting, and soil moisture sensors help in efficiently using water resources, reducing waste and ensuring that plants receive the right amount of moisture without depleting local water supplies. Similarly, soil conservation practices, such as cover cropping, reduced tillage, and organic amendments, help maintain soil structure and fertility, reduce erosion, and sequester carbon, thus contributing to climate change mitigation.

Moreover, sustainable horticulture encourages the use of native plant species and biodiversity, which can enhance ecosystem resilience and support local wildlife

## **Chapter X**

### **Water management**

**Dr.V.Shanthi**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Water is a fundamental resource for horticultural crop production, impacting every facet of growth, yield, and quality. In horticulture, the precise management of water is essential not only for optimizing plant health but also for sustaining environmental and economic viability. This chapter provides an overview of the critical role that water management plays in horticultural practices, underscoring its significance in modern agriculture. Horticultural crops, which include fruits, vegetables, nuts, seeds, herbs, sprouts, mushrooms, algae, and non-food crops such as flowers and ornamentals, exhibit a diverse range of water requirements. Unlike staple crops, which are often grown in large-scale monocultures, horticultural crops are typically cultivated in smaller, more intensive systems. This intensification heightens the need for tailored water management strategies to meet the specific needs of each crop type. Effective water management in horticulture involves understanding and applying principles from hydrology, agronomy, and plant physiology. The main objectives are to ensure adequate water supply for optimal plant growth, minimize water waste, and protect water resources. Techniques such as irrigation scheduling, soil moisture monitoring, and the use of advanced irrigation technologies (e.g., drip, sprinkler, and micro-irrigation systems) are crucial. Each method has its advantages and limitations, making it essential for growers to select the most suitable system based on crop type, soil conditions, and local climate. Furthermore, water management in horticulture extends beyond irrigation practices to encompass water conservation strategies. These include rainwater harvesting, greywater reuse, and soil water conservation practices like mulching and cover cropping. By integrating these strategies, horticulturists can enhance water use efficiency, reduce dependency on external water sources, and contribute to environmental sustainability. Climate change and its associated impacts on water availability present additional challenges. Shifting weather patterns, increased frequency of extreme weather events, and altered precipitation regimes can disrupt traditional water management practices. As such, adaptive strategies and innovative solutions are necessary to mitigate these challenges and ensure resilient horticultural production systems.

# **BASICS OF INSECT'S NATURE**

**EDITED BY  
DR. D. R. SUDHA**



**978-93-6255-582-3**

**Basics of insect's nature**

Copyright © 2019 by Dr.D.R.Sudha

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-582-3

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENT

Introduction.....	4
Chapter I: Introduction and history of entomology.....	11
Mr.S. BALAMURUGAN	
Chapter II: Insect dominance .....	35
Mr.S.TAMIL COVANE	
Chapter III: Insect communication .....	53
Dr.D.R.SUDHA	
Chapter IV: Offence and defence mechanisms of insects .....	78
MS.M.JASMINE	
Chapter V: Insect's habits and habitats .....	109
Ms.K.SHALINI	
Chapter VI: Behaviour of insects.....	125
Ms.C.K.AKSHAYA	
Chapter VII: Insect flight and locomotion.....	142
Dr.K.KUMARAKURU	
Chapter VIII: Insect reproduction and development.....	163
Mrs.G.BANUMATHI	
Chapter IX: Insects and Their Role in Ecosystems.....	180
Mr.K.Shiva	
Chapter X: Insects and Human Interaction: Agriculture, Medicine, and Culture.....	198
Dr.A.Sathyavelu	
REFERENCE:.....	

**CHAPTER I**  
**INTRODUCTION AND HISTORY OF ENTOMOLOGY**

**Mr.S. Balamurugan**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Entomology, the scientific study of insects, is a branch of zoology that has fascinated humans for centuries. With over a million described species, insects represent the most diverse group of organisms on Earth, accounting for more than half of all known living organisms. They play critical roles in ecosystems, serving as pollinators, decomposers, and a food source for many other species. The field of entomology encompasses a wide range of scientific disciplines, including taxonomy, physiology, ecology, and behavior, making it integral to the study of biology and environmental science.

The history of entomology dates back to ancient civilizations, where insects were both revered and reviled. The ancient Egyptians, for example, depicted scarab beetles in their art and mythology, associating them with the sun god Ra and the cycle of life and death. In contrast, the Greeks and Romans often considered insects as pests, with writers like Aristotle documenting their habits and life cycles. However, it was not until the Renaissance that entomology began to emerge as a formal scientific discipline. During this period, naturalists such as Ulisse Aldrovandi and Jan Swammerdam conducted systematic studies of insects, laying the groundwork for modern taxonomy and anatomy.

The 18th and 19th centuries marked a significant expansion in the field of entomology, driven by the work of pioneering scientists like Carl Linnaeus, who developed the system of binomial nomenclature still used today. Linnaeus's classification of insects provided a foundation for further research, enabling scientists to organize and study the vast diversity of insect species more effectively. This period also saw the publication of numerous influential works, including Thomas Malthus's essays on population dynamics, which were inspired, in part, by observations of insect populations.

In the 19th century, entomology became increasingly specialized, with the establishment of entomological societies and journals dedicated to the study of insects. Charles Darwin's theory of evolution by natural selection, published in 1859, had a profound impact on entomology, providing a framework for understanding the adaptation and



## **CHAPTER II**

### **INSECT DOMINANCE**

**Mr.S. Tamil covane**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Insects are the undisputed rulers of the animal kingdom when it comes to diversity, adaptability, and sheer numbers. Comprising over a million described species and an estimated ten million or more yet to be discovered, insects represent the most diverse group of organisms on Earth. Their dominance is not just a matter of numbers; insects have colonized nearly every habitat on the planet, from the deepest caves to the highest mountains, from arid deserts to the lushest rainforests, and even the harsh environments of the Arctic and Antarctic regions. This incredible adaptability has allowed insects to thrive in environments where few other animals can survive, making them a cornerstone of nearly every ecosystem.

The success of insects can be attributed to several key factors, including their small size, rapid reproduction, and the versatility of their exoskeletons. Their small size allows insects to exploit a wide variety of ecological niches, from the forest canopy to the soil beneath our feet. Rapid reproduction enables them to quickly adapt to changing environmental conditions and recover from population declines. The exoskeleton, made of a tough, flexible material called chitin, provides physical protection while allowing for mobility and the development of specialized structures such as wings, antennae, and various mouthparts adapted for different feeding strategies.

Insects also exhibit remarkable behavioral and physiological adaptations that contribute to their dominance. Many insect species have evolved complex social structures, as seen in bees, ants, and termites, where individuals work together to support the colony. These social insects are among the most successful on the planet, with some colonies housing millions of individuals. Additionally, insects have developed a wide range of defensive strategies, from camouflage and mimicry to the production of toxins, which help them evade predators and increase their chances of survival.

Another crucial aspect of insect dominance is their role in pollination. Approximately 75% of flowering plants rely on insects for pollination, making insects essential to the reproduction of countless plant species, including many that are vital for human agriculture.

**CHAPTER III**  
**INSECT COMMUNICATION**

**Dr.D.R.Sudha**

*Associate Professor, School of Agriculture,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Insect communication is a fascinating and diverse field of study, revealing the complex and often highly specialized ways in which these tiny creatures interact with one another and their environment. Insects, despite their small size and relatively simple nervous systems, have evolved an impressive array of communication methods to convey information essential for survival and reproduction. From the intricate dances of honeybees to the synchronized flashes of fireflies, the communication strategies employed by insects are as varied as the species themselves.

One of the most well-known forms of insect communication is chemical signaling, or the use of pheromones. Pheromones are chemical substances secreted by insects that trigger a social response in members of the same species. These chemicals can convey a range of messages, including the presence of food, the readiness to mate, or a warning of danger. For example, ants rely heavily on pheromone trails to lead their nestmates to food sources, while female moths emit sex pheromones to attract potential mates from considerable distances. The ability to produce and detect these chemical signals is finely tuned in many insect species, enabling precise and efficient communication in often complex and crowded environments.

Visual signals are another crucial component of insect communication, particularly among species active during the day. Coloration, body patterns, and light production are used in various ways to communicate with others. The bright, distinctive patterns of butterflies and moths can serve as warnings to predators of their toxicity or mimicry of other harmful species. Fireflies, on the other hand, use bioluminescence to attract mates in a stunning display of light. Each species of firefly has its own unique pattern of light flashes, ensuring that males and females of the same species can find each other even in the dark. These visual signals are not only vital for mating but also for deterring predators and asserting dominance in territorial disputes.

**CHAPTER IV**  
**OFFENCE AND DEFENCE MECHANISMS OF INSECTS**

**Ms.M.Jasmine**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Insects, with their vast diversity and widespread presence across nearly every ecosystem on Earth, have evolved an impressive array of offense and defense mechanisms that ensure their survival in a world filled with predators, competitors, and environmental challenges. These strategies range from the highly specialized and complex to the straightforward and universal, reflecting the adaptability and evolutionary ingenuity of these small but formidable creatures. The interplay between offensive and defensive tactics not only underscores the evolutionary arms race in nature but also highlights the intricate ecological roles that insects play.

In terms of offense, many insects are equipped with features that allow them to efficiently hunt, capture, and subdue prey. Predatory insects, such as praying mantises and dragonflies, possess powerful mandibles or raptorial forelegs designed for grasping and consuming other insects. The speed and precision of a dragonfly's flight, combined with its acute vision, make it one of the most effective aerial hunters in the insect world. Similarly, assassin bugs use their sharp, needle-like mouthparts to inject enzymes into their prey, liquefying the internal tissues for easier consumption. Parasitic wasps employ another form of offensive strategy by laying their eggs inside or on a host organism, with the hatching larvae consuming the host from within—a method both gruesome and efficient in ensuring the survival of the next generation.

On the defensive side, insects have developed an extraordinary range of mechanisms to avoid becoming prey themselves. Camouflage and mimicry are among the most common and effective strategies. Many insects, such as stick insects and leaf insects, have bodies that closely resemble their surroundings, allowing them to blend in with leaves, twigs, or bark, effectively hiding from predators. Others, like the viceroy butterfly, mimic the appearance of more toxic species (such as the monarch butterfly) to deter would-be predators through deception. This type of mimicry, known as Batesian mimicry, allows harmless species to avoid predation by imitating the warning signals of harmful ones.

Chemical defenses are another crucial line of protection for many insects. Species like bombardier beetles can eject a boiling, noxious chemical spray from their abdomens when

**CHAPTER V**  
**INSECT'S HABITS AND HABITATS**

**Ms.K.Shalini**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Insects, the most diverse group of organisms on Earth, have adapted to virtually every conceivable environment, from the scorching sands of deserts to the frozen expanses of polar regions. Their remarkable success can be attributed to their ability to exploit a vast range of habitats and develop an equally diverse array of habits that allow them to survive, thrive, and reproduce in environments that would be inhospitable to most other forms of life. The study of insect habits and habitats provides insight into the adaptability and resilience of these creatures, as well as their critical roles in maintaining ecological balance.

Insects occupy a variety of habitats, each presenting unique challenges and opportunities. Terrestrial habitats, including forests, grasslands, and deserts, are home to a multitude of insect species. Forests, for instance, are teeming with insects that live in the canopy, on the forest floor, and even within the bark and wood of trees. These insects play essential roles in pollination, decomposition, and as a food source for other animals. In contrast, desert insects have evolved to cope with extreme temperatures and scarcity of water. Some, like the Namib Desert beetle, have developed the ability to collect moisture from fog, while others, like certain ants and locusts, are adapted to withstand prolonged periods of drought.

Aquatic habitats are also rich in insect life. Freshwater environments, such as rivers, lakes, and ponds, host a diverse array of insects, including dragonflies, water striders, and caddisflies. These insects have evolved various adaptations to live in or on water. For example, the larvae of dragonflies and damselflies are aquatic predators with gills for underwater breathing, while water striders have specialized legs that allow them to walk on the surface of the water. Insects in these habitats often play crucial roles in the food chain, serving as both predators and prey, and contributing to the health of aquatic ecosystems through their feeding and reproductive activities.

The habits of insects are as varied as their habitats, shaped by the need to find food, reproduce, avoid predators, and cope with environmental conditions. Many insects are

**CHAPTER VI**  
**BEHAVIOUR OF INSECTS**

**Ms.C.K.Akshaya**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Insects, despite their small size and relatively simple nervous systems, exhibit an astonishing range of behaviors that rival those of much larger and more complex animals. These behaviors, which are finely tuned to their environments and life cycles, enable insects to find food, reproduce, avoid predators, and interact with one another in ways that ensure their survival. The study of insect behavior, known as ethology, provides valuable insights into the evolutionary adaptations that have allowed these creatures to become the most diverse group of organisms on Earth. Understanding insect behavior not only deepens our appreciation of these small but significant creatures but also sheds light on broader biological principles.

One of the most fascinating aspects of insect behavior is their ability to communicate and coordinate activities within their species. Social insects like ants, bees, and termites are particularly notable for their complex social structures and cooperative behaviors. In a honeybee hive, for example, worker bees perform a variety of tasks, including foraging, nursing the young, and defending the hive. They communicate with each other through a combination of chemical signals (pheromones) and the famous "waggle dance," which conveys information about the location of food sources. This level of cooperation and division of labor is critical to the success of the colony, illustrating how intricate and organized insect societies can be.

In addition to social behaviors, many insects display sophisticated survival strategies that involve learning and adaptation. Some insects, such as fruit flies, demonstrate the ability to learn from their environment and modify their behavior based on experience. This type of learning, known as associative learning, allows insects to respond to changes in their environment, such as locating new food sources or avoiding dangers. For instance, an insect might learn to associate a specific color or odor with the presence of food, thereby increasing its foraging efficiency. While the cognitive abilities of insects are limited compared to vertebrates, these behaviors show that even simple organisms are capable of remarkable feats of learning and memory.

## CHAPTER VII INSECT FLIGHT AND LOCOMOTION

**Dr.K.Kumarakuru**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Insects are among the most versatile and successful movers in the animal kingdom, and their ability to navigate through various environments is a key factor in their evolutionary success. The remarkable diversity of insect locomotion, from the rapid beating of wings that enables flight to the coordinated movement of legs that allows crawling, climbing, and jumping, reflects the complex adaptations these creatures have developed to survive and thrive in virtually every habitat on Earth. The study of insect flight and locomotion not only provides insight into the mechanics and evolution of movement in small organisms but also has inspired technological advancements in areas such as robotics and aerodynamics.

Insect flight is perhaps the most striking and studied aspect of insect locomotion. The evolution of flight in insects, which occurred more than 300 million years ago, revolutionized their ability to explore new habitats, escape predators, and find food and mates over vast distances. Insect wings, which are unique in the animal kingdom, are thin, membranous structures supported by veins that provide strength and flexibility. The mechanics of insect flight are powered by highly specialized muscles attached to the thorax, which can contract at incredibly high frequencies, allowing some insects to beat their wings up to a thousand times per second. This rapid wing movement generates lift and thrust, enabling insects like bees, flies, and dragonflies to hover, dart, and maneuver with extraordinary precision and speed.

The diversity of wing structures and flight styles among insects is remarkable. Butterflies and moths, for instance, have large, broad wings that allow for slow, graceful flight, often over long distances. In contrast, beetles have modified forewings, called elytra, that serve as protective covers for their hind wings, which are used for short bursts of flight. Dragonflies, which are among the most agile fliers in the insect world, have two pairs of independently moving wings that allow them to perform complex aerial maneuvers, such as rapid changes in direction and hovering in place. These adaptations illustrate the wide range of ecological roles that flight enables, from long-distance migration to precise predation.

## CHAPTER VIII INSECT REPRODUCTION AND DEVELOPMENT

**Mrs.G.Banumathi**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

### **Insect Reproduction and Development**

Insect reproduction and development are highly diverse processes that play a crucial role in the survival and adaptation of insects to various environments. Understanding the reproductive strategies and life cycles of insects is essential for both managing beneficial insects and controlling pest populations.

#### **1. Reproductive Strategies**

Insects exhibit a wide range of reproductive strategies, which can be broadly classified into two categories: sexual and asexual reproduction. Most insects reproduce sexually, where males and females contribute genetic material to the offspring, resulting in genetic diversity. However, some species can also reproduce asexually through parthenogenesis, where females produce offspring without mating. This allows rapid population growth under favorable conditions.

- **Sexual Reproduction:** In most species, sexual reproduction involves the mating of males and females. Males often produce sperm, which is transferred to the female during copulation. Females store the sperm in a specialized organ called the spermatheca and can fertilize their eggs as needed. Courtship behaviors, pheromones, and visual signals often play important roles in mating.
- **Asexual Reproduction (Parthenogenesis):** In some species, like aphids, females can reproduce without mating, producing genetically identical offspring. This method is particularly advantageous in stable environments where rapid reproduction can increase survival rates.

#### **2. Egg-Laying and Oviposition**

After mating, most female insects lay eggs in a specific location that provides the right conditions for the development of the larvae. Oviposition is highly adapted to the needs

**CHAPTER X**  
**INSECTS AND HUMAN INTERACTION: AGRICULTURE, MEDICINE, AND**  
**CULTURE**

**Dr.A.SATHYAVELU**

*Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

**Insects and Human Interaction: Agriculture, Medicine, and Culture**

Insects have played a significant role in human history, influencing agriculture, medicine, and culture in various ways. Their interaction with humans is complex, with some insects benefiting humanity through pollination and the production of valuable materials, while others pose challenges as pests or disease vectors. Understanding the multifaceted relationships between insects and humans highlights their importance in both practical and symbolic contexts.

**1. Insects in Agriculture**

Insects have a profound impact on agriculture, both as beneficial species and as pests. On the positive side, pollinators like bees, butterflies, and certain beetles are essential for the production of many crops. About one-third of global food production depends on insect pollination, making insects vital for agricultural sustainability. Without pollinators, crops such as fruits, vegetables, and nuts would experience reduced yields, threatening food security worldwide.

However, insects can also be harmful to agriculture. Pests such as aphids, locusts, and caterpillars damage crops by feeding on leaves, stems, and roots, leading to reduced productivity. Farmers often rely on integrated pest management (IPM) strategies, which include biological control agents like predatory insects to mitigate the damage caused by pest populations. The balance between beneficial insects and pests in agriculture underscores the complex role insects play in food production.

**2. Insects in Medicine**

Insects have contributed to medicine in both ancient and modern times. One of the most well-known medical applications of insects is the use of maggots for wound healing.



# CHAPTER IX

## INSECTS AND THEIR ROLE IN ECOSYSTEMS

**Mr.K.Shiva**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

### **Insects and Their Role in Ecosystems**

Insects play a fundamental role in ecosystems, contributing to various ecological processes that sustain life on Earth. Despite their small size, insects are incredibly diverse and perform essential functions that affect other species, including plants, animals, and even humans. From pollination to decomposition, insects are key players in maintaining ecosystem health and balance.

#### **1. Pollination**

One of the most vital roles insects play in ecosystems is pollination. Many flowering plants rely on insects such as bees, butterflies, and beetles to transfer pollen from one flower to another, enabling fertilization and the production of seeds and fruits. Insects pollinate about 75% of flowering plants globally, making them crucial to the reproduction of many food crops and wild plants. Without pollinators, ecosystems would lose biodiversity, and human agriculture would face severe challenges in producing enough food.

#### **2. Decomposition and Nutrient Recycling**

Insects such as flies, beetles, and ants are instrumental in breaking down organic matter, including dead plants and animals. Decomposers recycle nutrients back into the soil, enriching it and promoting plant growth. Insects also help break down animal waste, which is another important process for nutrient cycling. The recycling of nutrients ensures that ecosystems remain fertile and that energy flows efficiently through the food chain.

#### **3. Soil Formation and Aeration**

Soil-dwelling insects, such as ants, termites, and various beetle species, contribute to soil formation and aeration. These insects tunnel through the soil, breaking up compacted layers and allowing air, water, and nutrients to penetrate deeper into the ground. This

# HANDBOOK OF AGRONOMY

---

Edited by

**B.CHANDRASEKARAN**



978-93-6255-849-7

**Handbook of Agronomy**

Copyright © 2019 by Dr. B.Chandrasekaran

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN:978 -93-6255-849-7

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENT

Introduction.....	5
Chapter I: Introduction of agriculture and agronomy, concepts of tillage .....	18
DR. B. CHANDRASEKARAN	
Chapter II Seeds and sowing .....	43
DR. A. SATHYAVELU	
Chapter III: Manures and fertilizers .....	63
DR. D.R. SUDHA	
Chapter IV: Weed management .....	81
MS. C.K. AKSHAYA	
Chapter V: Irrigation Management.....	98
DR. K. ASHOKKUMAR	
Chapter VI: Harvest and processing .....	112
MS. A. SOWBIKA	
Chapter VII: Post Harvest Technology.....	129
MS.K. SHALINI	
Chapter VIII: Emerging Trends and Innovations.....	136
MS. M. JASMINE	
Chapter IX: Precision Agriculture.....	148
MRS. G. BANUMATHI	
Chapter X: Climate Smart Agriculture.....	156
MR. S. R. RAAJMOHAN	

REFERENCE:

## CHAPTER I

### Introduction of agriculture and agronomy, concepts of tillage

**DR. B. CHANDRASEKARAN**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

### **Introduction to Agriculture and Agronomy**

**Agriculture** is the practice of cultivating soil, growing crops, and raising animals for food, fiber, and other products used to sustain and enhance human life. It's a broad field that encompasses everything from farming and animal husbandry to forestry and horticulture.

**Agronomy** is a branch of agricultural science that focuses on the study and application of plant and soil sciences to crop production and soil management. Agronomists work on improving crop yields, soil health, and sustainable farming practices. **Tillage** refers to the preparation of soil for growing crops. It involves mechanical processes such as plowing, harrowing, and cultivating to break up the soil, remove weeds, and create a favorable environment for planting. There are several types of tillage systems, each with its benefits and drawbacks. Ploughing: Involves turning over the soil to bury residues and prepare a seedbed. Discing: Breaks up clods and incorporates residues. Harrowing: Levels the soil surface and removes weeds.

No-Till: Involves planting crops without disturbing the soil, which helps to maintain soil structure, reduce erosion, and improve water retention. Reduced Tillage: Minimizes the amount of soil disturbance compared to conventional tillage, which helps preserve soil organic matter and structure. A form of conservation tillage where the soil is left undisturbed except for where the seed is planted. This method helps in reducing soil erosion, preserving moisture, and maintaining soil structure. It often involves using specialized equipment to plant seeds directly into the undisturbed soil.

## CHAPTER II

### SEEDS AND SOWING

**DR. A. SATHYAVELU**

*Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Seeds are the cornerstone of agriculture, representing both the start and the potential of every crop. Understanding seeds and the process of sowing is crucial for successful farming and gardening. This chapter explores the vital role seeds play and the essential practices for sowing them effectively.

Seeds are essentially plant embryos encased in a protective shell. They contain all the necessary nutrients to kickstart the growth process once they encounter favorable conditions. Each seed is a complex package, with a seed coat, an embryo, and endosperm or cotyledons that provide energy. The genetic blueprint within the seed determines the characteristics of the future plant, including its size, shape, and resistance to diseases.

Sowing is the process of planting seeds in soil or another growth medium to ensure they grow into healthy plants. Several key factors influence the success of sowing: The timing of sowing is crucial and varies based on the type of plant and local climate. Cool-season crops like lettuce and peas are typically sown early in the spring or late in the summer, while warm-season crops like tomatoes and peppers are sown after the last frost.

Some seeds may need special treatment before sowing. For instance, certain hard seeds might need scarification (scratching or nicking the seed coat) to facilitate water absorption. Stratification (cold treatment) might be required for seeds that need a period of cold to break dormancy. Keeping the area free of weeds ensures that young seedlings have the resources they need to thrive.

Effective seed selection and proper sowing techniques are crucial for successful crop production and gardening. Each plant species has specific requirements, so understanding these needs helps in achieving better yields and healthier plants.

## **CHAPTER III**

### **MANURES AND FERTILIZERS**

**DR. D.R. SUDHA**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

In the real of agriculture, manures and fertilizers are essential for enhancing soil fertility and ensuring healthy plant growth. Both play crucial roles in providing nutrients to plants, but they differ in their composition, application methods, and benefits. Understanding how to effectively use these soil amendments is key to optimizing crop yields and maintaining soil health.

Manure is an organic material derived from animal waste, including dung, urine, and bedding materials. It has been used for centuries to enrich soil and improve its structure. Manures can come from various sources, including: Farmyard Manure (FYM): Composed of a mix of animal feces, urine, straw, and other bedding materials. It is well-balanced in nutrients and improves soil structure and organic matter content. Poultry Manure: Typically richer in nutrients compared to farmyard manure, especially nitrogen. It should be composted before application to avoid burning plants. Tillage: Ploughing or disking can bury weed seeds and disrupt their growth. However, excessive tillage can also bring weed seeds to the surface. Chemical control involves using herbicides to manage weed populations.

Fertilizers are substances added to the soil to supply essential nutrients for plant growth. They can be classified into two main types: Chemical (Inorganic) Fertilizers: Manufactured through industrial processes, they contain concentrated nutrients in specific ratios. Common examples include: Nitrogenous Fertilizers: Provide nitrogen, essential for leaf and stem growth (e.g., urea, ammonium nitrate). Phosphatic Fertilizers: Supply phosphorus, crucial for root development and energy transfer (e.g., superphosphate). Potassic Fertilizers: Offer potassium, which helps in water regulation and disease resistance (e.g., potassium chloride).

## CHAPTER IV

### WEED MANAGEMENT

MS. C.K. AKSHAYA

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Weed management is a crucial aspect of agriculture and gardening, focusing on controlling unwanted plants that compete with crops for resources. Effective weed management ensures that crops have optimal access to light, water, and nutrients, ultimately enhancing yield and quality. This chapter explores the principles, methods, and best practices for managing weeds.

**Weed Management Strategies.** Cultural control involves modifying farming practices to make the environment less favorable for weed growth. Key practices include: **Crop Rotation:** Alternating different crops in a field can disrupt weed life cycles and reduce weed populations. Mechanical control methods involve physical actions to remove or kill weeds. Common techniques include:

**Tillage:** Ploughing or disking can bury weed seeds and disrupt their growth. However, excessive tillage can also bring weed seeds to the surface. Chemical control involves using herbicides to manage weed populations. Herbicides can be classified into several types:

**Pre-emergent Herbicides:** Applied before weeds or crops emerge, these herbicides prevent seed germination and early growth. **Post-emergent Herbicides:** Applied after weeds have emerged, these herbicides target actively growing weeds.

Effective weed management requires a comprehensive approach that combines knowledge of weed biology with practical control methods. By employing a variety of strategies and adjusting them based on specific conditions and weed pressures, you can achieve better control and reduce the negative impact of weeds on crops.



## CHAPTER V

### IRRIGATION MANAGEMENT

**DR. K. ASHOKKUMAR**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Irrigation management is a vital practice in agriculture and horticulture, ensuring that crops receive adequate water to thrive. Effective irrigation management maximizes water use efficiency, promotes healthy plant growth, and enhances crop yields while conserving water resources. This chapter delves into the principles, techniques, and best practices for managing irrigation systems.

Water is a critical resource for plant growth, affecting almost every aspect of agricultural productivity. Proper irrigation helps to:

- Ensure Adequate Water Supply:** Provides a consistent and reliable water source, especially in areas with irregular rainfall.
- Optimize Crop Growth:** Supports plant development, nutrient uptake, and yield.
- Manage Soil Moisture:** Prevents both waterlogging and drought stress, maintaining soil health.
- Improve Quality:** Enhances the quality of crops by ensuring they receive the right amount of water at the right time.

Conserving water is essential for sustainable irrigation management. Practices include:

- Efficient System Design:** Choose irrigation systems that match crop requirements and minimize water loss.
- Maintenance:** Regularly check and repair irrigation equipment to prevent leaks and inefficiencies.
- Water Harvesting:** Collect and store rainwater for use during dry periods.
- Village Water Tanks:** Community-managed water tanks that collect and store rainwater for shared use in rural areas.

Water harvesting is a versatile and sustainable approach to managing water resources, helping to address water scarcity and improve resilience to climate variability. By implementing effective water harvesting techniques, communities and individuals can enhance their water security and support agricultural and environmental sustainability.

## CHAPTER VI

### HARVEST AND PROCESSING

MS. A. SOWBIKA

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

The phases of harvest and processing are critical in agriculture, marking the transition from crop growth to consumption or market distribution. These stages influence the quality, shelf life, and value of the final product. This chapter explores the essential aspects of harvest and processing, highlighting practices and considerations to optimize outcomes.

Harvesting is the process of gathering mature crops from the field. The timing and method of harvest are crucial for ensuring the best quality and yield. Factors influencing the harvest include: **Timing:** The optimal harvest time varies by crop and is determined by Maturity Indicators: For example, fruit crops are harvested when they reach full color and firmness, while grains are harvested when they achieve a specific moisture level. **Weather Conditions:** Dry weather is preferred for harvesting most crops to prevent spoilage and reduce moisture content.

Processing involves transforming raw harvested crops into a final product suitable for consumption, sale, or further use. This stage can include a range of activities, depending on the crop and end product. Key aspects of processing include: **Cleaning:** Removing dirt, debris, and foreign materials from the harvested crops. Cleaning methods vary based on the crop type and may include washing, brushing, or air blowing. **Sorting and Grading:** Categorizing crops based on size, quality, and ripeness. Sorting ensures uniformity in the final product, while grading helps in pricing and market positioning. **Innovation:** Developing new food products or variations to meet changing consumer preferences or market demands.

Developing branding strategies and marketing campaigns to promote processed products and differentiate them in the market. Implementing practices to minimize waste, use by-products effectively, and reduce environmental impact throughout the processing cycle.

## CHAPTER VII

### POST HARVEST TECHNOLOGY

MS.K. SHALINI

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

**Post-harvest technology** encompasses the methods and processes applied to crops after harvesting to preserve their quality, extend shelf life, and enhance their value. This field is essential for minimizing losses, ensuring food safety, and improving the efficiency of the agricultural supply chain. This chapter explores the key aspects of post-harvest technology, including handling, storage, processing, and innovation. Processing transforms raw agricultural products into food and other consumable goods, adding value and extending shelf life. Effective processing practices ensure the safety, quality, and nutritional value of products while meeting consumer demands and regulatory standards.

Effective post-harvest technology is crucial for:

- Reducing Losses:** Minimizing the quantity of crops lost due to spoilage, damage, or inefficiencies during handling and storage.
- Maintaining Quality:** Preserving the taste, texture, nutritional value, and appearance of crops.
- Ensuring Safety:** Preventing contamination and ensuring compliance with food safety regulations.
- Enhancing Market Value:** Improving the quality and presentation of products to meet consumer expectations and achieve better market prices.

Proper handling of crops from the field to the processing facility is critical to prevent damage and maintain quality. Key practices include:

- Careful Harvesting:** Using appropriate tools and techniques to minimize physical damage. For example, cutting rather than pulling to avoid bruising fruits.
- Reducing energy consumption, minimizing waste, and using eco-friendly materials.**

Post-harvest technology plays a crucial role in the agricultural supply chain by ensuring that crops and products are efficiently processed, preserved, and delivered to consumers in optimal condition. Implementing effective post-harvest practices helps reduce losses, maintain quality, and contribute to food security and sustainability.

**CHAPTER VIII**  
**EMERGING TRENDS AND INNOVATIONS**

**MS. M. JASMINE**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Emerging trends and innovations in agronomy and agriculture are reshaping the field by enhancing productivity, sustainability, and efficiency. These advancements leverage technology, data, and new practices to address the challenges faced by modern agriculture. Here are some key emerging trends and innovations:

Precision Agriculture- GPS and Remote Sensing:

Technology: Utilizes Global Positioning System (GPS) and remote sensing data (satellites, drones) to monitor and manage crops with high precision. Applications: Mapping fields, monitoring crop health, and optimizing inputs (water, fertilizers, pesticides).

Variable Rate Technology (VRT): Technology: Implements precise application of inputs based on field variability. Benefits: Reduces waste, increases efficiency, and enhances crop yields by applying resources where they are needed most. Smart Farming and Automation Technology: Use of robots and automated machinery for tasks such as planting, harvesting, and weeding. Examples: Autonomous tractors, drones for planting and crop monitoring. Internet of Things (IoT): Technology: Network of interconnected devices that collect and exchange data. Applications: Real-time monitoring of soil conditions, climate, and crop health through sensors and smart devices.

Conservation Agriculture: Techniques: Practices such as minimal tillage, crop rotation, and cover cropping to maintain soil health and reduce erosion. Benefits: Improves soil structure, enhances water retention, and supports biodiversity. Agroecology: Principles: Integrates ecological principles into agricultural practices to promote sustainability. Practices: Use of organic inputs, biodiversity conservation, and ecosystem services management.

## CHAPTER IX

### PRECISION AGRICULTURE

**MRS. G. BANUMATHI**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Precision Agriculture is an advanced farming approach that uses technology to observe, measure, and respond to variability in crop and soil conditions with high precision. It aims to optimize field-level management regarding crop farming. The goal is to improve crop yields, reduce input costs, and minimize environmental impact by making farming practices more efficient and tailored to specific needs. Here's a comprehensive look at precision agriculture:

**Core Concepts of Precision Agriculture.** **Site-Specific Management:** Adjusting farming practices based on the specific needs of different areas within a field. **Objective:** Tailor inputs like fertilizers, water, and pesticides to varying conditions within a field to maximize efficiency and minimize waste. **Data Collection and Analysis:** **Data Sources:** Includes soil sensors, satellite imagery, drones, and weather stations. **Objective:** Gather detailed data on soil properties, crop health, and environmental conditions to inform decision-making.

**Technologies in Precision Agriculture.** **Global Positioning System (GPS):** **Function:** Provides accurate location data to guide machinery and manage field operations. **Applications:** Guidance systems for tractors, auto-steering, and mapping field variability. **Geographic Information Systems (GIS):** **Function:** Manages and analyzes spatial data to create detailed maps of fields. **Applications:** Soil type mapping, yield mapping, and variable rate application. **Remote Sensing:** **Function:** Uses satellites or aerial drones to collect data on crop health and field conditions. **Applications:** Monitoring crop growth, detecting pest infestations, and assessing soil moisture. **Variable Rate Technology (VRT):** **Function:** Adjusts the rate of inputs (fertilizers, pesticides, water) based on real-time data. **Applications:** Precision application of nutrients and chemicals to areas with specific needs

## **CHAPTER X**

### **CLIMATE SMART AGRICULTURE**

**MR. S. R. RAAJMOHAN**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Agriculture is at the heart of human sustenance and economic development, yet it is profoundly impacted by the shifting dynamics of climate change. Climate Smart Agriculture (CSA) emerges as a pivotal approach designed to address the growing challenges faced by the agricultural sector due to changing climatic conditions. This introduction provides an overview of CSA, its significance, and its core objectives, setting the stage for a deeper exploration of its principles and practices.

Climate Smart Agriculture is a holistic approach to agricultural development that integrates strategies to improve productivity, enhance resilience to climate change, and reduce greenhouse gas emissions. CSA encompasses a range of practices, technologies, and policies aimed at creating sustainable agricultural systems that can adapt to and mitigate the effects of climate change while ensuring food security. The Imperative of CSA, The agricultural sector is increasingly vulnerable to the impacts of climate change, including more frequent and severe droughts, floods, and temperature extremes. These changes pose risks to crop yields, livestock health, and overall food security. At the same time, agriculture is a significant source of greenhouse gases, contributing to climate change. CSA offers a way to address these dual challenges by:

**Enhancing Resilience:** Developing and implementing practices that enable agricultural systems to better withstand and recover from climate-related shocks and stresses. **Reducing Emissions:** Adopting technologies and methods that lower greenhouse gas emissions from agricultural activities. **Increasing Productivity:** Improving the efficiency of agricultural production to meet growing food demands while minimizing environmental impacts. **Enhancing Resilience:** CSA aims to increase the adaptability of farming systems to changing climatic conditions. This involves adopting practices that improve soil health, conserve water, and protect crops and livestock from extreme weather events.



# **MICROBIAL MARVELS: EXPLORING THE SECRETS OF AGRICULTURAL MICROBIOTA**

Edited by

**DR. P. SELVARAJ**



978-93-6255-388-1

**MicrobialMarvels: ExploringtheSecretsofAgriculturalMicrobiota**

Copyright© 2019 by Dr.P. Selvaraj

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN:978-93-6255-388-1

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology(PRIST)



## TABLE OF CONTENT

Introduction.....	6
Chapter I : The Tiny Guardians: Exploring Agricultural Micro biota.....	20
Mr. S. Tamilcovane	
Chapter II : From Soil Symphony to Plant Powerhouse : Unveiling Microbial Dynamic ....	44
Dr.D.R. Sudha	
Chapter III : Microbial Maestros : Conductors of Crop Health and Yield .....	65
Ms.M. Jasmine	
Chapter IV :Beneath the Surface : Unearthing the Secrets of Soil Microbes .....	87
Dr.P. Selvaraj	
Chapter V : Nature's Green Chemists : Microbial Innovations in Agriculture.....	115
Dr.B. Chandrasekaran	
Chapter VI : Soils Symphony : The hidden world of microbial life beneath our feet. ....	125
MS.K. Shalini	
Chapter VII : Beneficial Bacteria : Unlocking the potential of microbiota for sustainable farming ..	135
Mrs.G. Banumathi	
Chapter VIII : Soil Microbiota and Plant Health .....	145
Prof. T. Lakshminarayanan	
Chapter IX : Microbial Communities in Agricultural Waste Management.....	160
Dr. K. C. Sivabalan	
Chapter X : Robial Interactions with Crop Roots: Enhancing Growth and Resilience .....	175
Ms. S. R. Rajam	

## CHAPTER I

### THE TINY GUARDIANS: EXPLORING AGRICULTURAL MICROBIOTA

**Mr.S.Tamilcovane**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, TamilNadu,India.*

In the world of agriculture, where vast fields of crops and sprawling orchards dominate the landscape, there exists a hidden universe teeming with life — one that remains largely invisible yet profoundly influential. This hidden realm is the soil microbiota, a complex and dynamic community of microorganisms that plays a critical role in the health and productivity of agricultural systems. Often overlooked, these microscopic entities are the unsung heroes of modern farming, working tirelessly beneath the surface to sustain and enrich our global food supply.

Agricultural microbiota encompasses a diverse array of bacteria, fungi, archaea, viruses, and protozoa. Each group contributes uniquely to the intricate web of soil health, influencing everything from nutrient cycling and soil structure to disease suppression and plant growth. The symbiotic relationships between these microorganisms and plant roots are crucial; they enhance nutrient availability, fortify plant defenses, and even improve resistance to environmental stresses. Understanding this microbial ecosystem is not just a matter of scientific curiosity but a practical necessity for sustainable agriculture.

The study of agricultural microbiota has evolved significantly in recent years, driven by advances in molecular biology and genomics. Techniques such as high-throughput sequencing have unveiled the astonishing complexity and diversity of microbial communities, revealing how subtle shifts in their composition can impact agricultural outcomes. This burgeoning field of research offers promising insights into how we can harness these microorganisms to improve soil health, increase crop yields, and reduce our reliance on chemical fertilizers and pesticides.

## CHAPTER II

### SOIL SYMPHONY TO PLANT POWERHOUSE: UNVEILING MICROBIAL DYNAMICS

**Dr.D.R.Sudha**

*Associate Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, TamilNadu,India.*

Beneath the surface of our seemingly mundane agricultural fields lies a vibrant, dynamic ecosystem that operates with astonishing precision and complexity. This hidden world is the soil microbiome—a bustling community of microorganisms that orchestrates an intricate symphony of biological interactions, fundamentally shaping the health and productivity of our crops. Understanding this microbial orchestra, and the roles each player performs, is essential for unlocking the full potential of modern agriculture.

Soil is often perceived as a passive medium for plant growth, but it is, in reality, a living matrix where microbes execute a multitude of functions that are crucial for plant vitality. The microscopic entities — bacteria, fungi, archaea, and viruses—engage in a constant, invisible dance, mediating nutrient cycles, enhancing soil structure, and even modulating plant immune responses. Their actions create a supportive environment that enables plants to thrive, adapt, and resist various stresses.

The microbial dynamics within the soil are far from random. They are orchestrated by a complex interplay of environmental factors, biological processes, and evolutionary pressures. As plants grow and develop, they release exudates into the soil, which serve as nutrients for soil microorganisms. In turn, these microbes break down organic matter, fix nitrogen, and produce compounds that plants can readily absorb. This reciprocal relationship is a testament to the sophisticated communication and mutualism that define the soil ecosystem.

Recent advancements in soil microbiome research have illuminated the profound impact the microscopic organisms have on agricultural productivity. High-throughput sequencing technologies and other molecular tools have revealed the astonishing diversity of microbial communities and their functional potentials. This new understanding provides actionable insights into how we can manage soil health more effectively, using microbial dynamics to our advantage. For instance, by inoculating soils with beneficial microbes or by employing

## CHAPTER III

### MICROBIAL MAESTROS: CONDUCTORS OF CROP HEALTH AND YIELD

**Ms.M.Jasmine**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, TamilNadu,India.*

In the grand orchestra of agriculture, where plants stand as the prominent soloists and soil acts as the stage, a crucial but often unnoticed group of performers takes center stage—the microorganisms that govern soil health and crop productivity. These microbial maestros, though invisible to the naked eye, wield profound influence over every aspect of agricultural success. Their roles extend beyond mere support; they are the conductors of an intricate symphony that drives crop health and yield.

Soil, with its complex web of organic matter, is a bustling abode for a vast array of microorganisms including bacteria, fungi, protozoa, and archaea. Each of these microbes plays a specialized role in maintaining and enhancing soil fertility. For instance, certain bacteria are adept at fixing atmospheric nitrogen into forms that plants can utilize, while mycorrhizal fungi form symbiotic relationships with plant roots, extending their reach into the soil and improving nutrient uptake. These microorganisms not only facilitate essential processes such as nutrient cycling and organic matter decomposition but also enhance plant resilience against diseases and environmental stresses.

The interaction between soil microbes and plants is a dynamic, reciprocal relationship. Plants release a variety of organic compounds into the soil through their roots, known as root exudates, which serve as nourishment for microorganisms. In return, microbes process these compounds and contribute to the soil's nutrient pool, making essential elements like phosphorus and nitrogen more accessible to plants. This symbiotic exchange forms the foundation of a thriving soil ecosystem and is fundamental to sustainable agricultural practices.

Recent advances in microbial ecology have revolutionized our understanding of these microbial maestros. Technologies such as metagenomics and high-throughput sequencing have allowed scientists to unravel the complex community structures within the soil and to

## CHAPTER IV

### BENEATH THE SURFACE: UNEARTHING THE SECRETS OF SOIL MICROBES

**Dr. P.Selvaraj**

*Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, TamilNadu, India*

Beneath the seemingly unremarkable surface of agricultural soils lies a hidden world brimming with complexity and vitality. This subterranean realm, where soil microbes reign supreme, is crucial to the health and productivity of our crops. Although these microorganisms are microscopic, their impact on agriculture is both profound and far-reaching. To truly understand and harness the potential of soil for sustainable farming, we must delve into the mysteries of this hidden ecosystem and uncover the pivotal roles these microbes play.

Soil is often perceived as a passive medium, but in reality, it is a dynamic and living environment. It teems with a diverse array of microorganisms, including bacteria, fungi, protozoa, and viruses. These soil microbes are integral to a host of essential processes. They decompose organic matter, recycling nutrients and enriching the soil; they form symbiotic relationships with plant roots, enhancing nutrient uptake; and they contribute to soil structure, which impacts water infiltration and erosion control. The interplay of these microorganisms underpins the very foundation of soil fertility and plant health.

The complexity of soil microbial communities is staggering. Recent advances in molecular biology and genomics have revealed the astonishing diversity and functionality of these microorganisms. Techniques such as metagenomics sequencing have provided insights into the vast array of microbial species present in the soil and their specific roles. These findings have illuminated how subtle shifts in microbial populations can influence soil health and agricultural outcomes, highlighting the delicate balance required to maintain a thriving soil ecosystem.

Understanding the secrets of soil microbes is not merely an academic pursuit; it has practical implications for agriculture.

## CHAPTER V

### NATURE'S GREEN CHEMISTS: MICROBIAL INNOVATIONS IN AGRICULTURE

**Dr.B.Chandrasekaran**

*Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, TamilNadu,India*

In the realm of agriculture, where the quest for sustainability and efficiency is ever-pressing, nature has bestowed upon us a remarkable, yet often under appreciated, group of innovators: soil microbes. These microscopic entities, often referred to as "nature's green chemists," possess an extraordinary ability to catalyze biochemical processes and create compounds that are vital for crop health and productivity. Their innovative prowess in the soil environment is transforming the way we approach agricultural challenges, heralding a new era of eco-friendly farming.

Microbes in the soil are engaged in a continuous process of chemical transformations. They are responsible for synthesizing a plethora of compounds that influence soil fertility, plant growth, and disease resistance. From nitrogen-fixing bacteria that convert atmospheric nitrogen into a form usable by plants, to mycorrhizal fungi that enhance phosphorus uptake, soils. Their ability to produce natural antibiotics, growth regulators, and bio-stimulants further underscores their role as green chemists, offering sustainable alternatives to synthetic chemicals.

Recent advances in microbial genomics and biotechnology have shed light on the remarkable capabilities of these soil microbes. Scientists have sequenced the genomes of numerous microorganisms, revealing the intricate metabolic pathways and the biosynthesis of valuable compounds. This genomic insight has paved the way for harnessing microbial innovations in practical applications. For instance, bio fertilizers and bio pesticides, derived from microbial metabolites, are increasingly being used to replace chemical fertilizers and pesticides, reducing environmental impact and promoting soil health.

The innovative potential of soil microbes extends to the development of novel agricultural practices. By applying concepts from microbial ecology and synthetic biology, researchers are engineering microbes to enhance their beneficial traits, such as improved nutrient

**CHAPTER VI**  
**SOILS SYMPONY : THE HIDDEN WORLD OF MICROBIAL LIFE**  
**BENEATHOURFEET**

**MS.K.Shalini**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, TamilNadu,India*

Beneath the surface of every field and garden lies a captivating, yet largely invisible, world where life teems with activity and complexity. This hidden realm, where microorganisms orchestrate an intricate and harmonious symphony, is essential to the health and productivity of our agricultural landscapes. Often overlooked, the microbial life beneath our feet plays a pivotal role in sustaining soil fertility, supporting plant growth, and driving ecological balance.

Soil is far more than a mere substrate for plant roots; it is a dynamic, living environment teeming with microorganisms such as bacteria, fungi, protozoa, and archaea. These microbes form an elaborate network, engaging in a symphony of biological processes that underpin soil health. They are responsible for nutrient cycling, breaking down organic matter, and forming crucial symbiotic relationships with plant roots. The interactions between these microorganisms and plants are not just beneficial but essential, creating a vibrant ecosystem that fosters growth and resilience.

The symbiotic relationships within this microbial orchestra are intricate and multi-faceted. Mycorrhizal fungi, for example, extend their hyphae into the soil, increasing the surface area for nutrient absorption and facilitating the uptake of phosphorus and other essential minerals. Meanwhile, nitrogen-fixing bacteria convert atmospheric nitrogen into a form that plants can use, effectively enriching the soil. These interactions are not isolated; they form a complex, interdependent system where each microorganism plays a role in maintaining balance and promoting fertility.

Recent advances in scientific research have unveiled the profound complexity of this microbial symphony. High-resolution imaging and genomic technologies have allowed scientists to explore the diversity of soil microorganisms and their functions with unprecedented detail.

**CHAPTER VII**  
**BENEFICIAL BACTERIA: UNLOCKING THE POTENTIAL OF MICROBIOTA FOR SUSTAINABLE FARMING**

**Mrs.G.Banumathi**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, TamilNadu,India*

In the quest for sustainable agriculture, the spotlight increasingly falls on often-underestimatedly: beneficial bacteria. The semi-cosmic champions of the soil are emerging as pivotal players in advancing farming practices that are both environmentally friendly and highly productive. By harnessing the potential of these beneficial microorganisms, farmers can unlock new pathways to enhance soil health, boost crop yields, and promote sustainability in agricultural systems.

Beneficial bacteria are a diverse group of microorganisms that interact positively with plants and soil environments. They perform a range of crucial functions that contribute to soil fertility and plant growth. For instance, certain bacteria are renowned for their role in nitrogen fixation—converting atmospheric nitrogen into a form that plants can readily absorb. This natural process reduces the need for synthetic nitrogen fertilizers, minimizing environmental impacts and supporting healthy soil ecosystems. Additionally, other beneficial bacteria can enhance plant growth by producing growth-promoting substances or by outcompeting harmful pathogens in the soil.

The potential of these beneficial bacteria extends beyond nutrient cycling. They play a vital role in organic matter decomposition, which enriches the soil with essential nutrients and improves its structure. Some bacteria form symbiotic relationships with plant roots, enhancing water and nutrient uptake while also bolstering plant resistance to diseases and environmental stresses. This symbiotic interaction can lead to more resilient crops that are better equipped to withstand the challenges of a changing climate.



## CHAPTER VIII

### SOIL MICROBIOTA AND PLANT HEALTH

**Prof.T.Lakshminarayanan**

*Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, TamilNadu,India*

Not merely a passive medium but a dynamic ecosystem teeming with life. Within this vibrant environment, soil microbiota—encompassing bacteria, fungi, archaea, and other microorganisms—play a crucial role in maintaining plant health and fostering agricultural productivity. These microscopic communities, while often invisible to the naked eye, exert profound effects on plant growth, resilience, and overall ecosystem stability.

#### **The Role of Soil Microbiota in Nutrient Availability**

One of the most significant contributions of soil microbiota is their role in nutrient cycling. Plants rely on a range of essential nutrients, including nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium, for growth and development. However, many of these nutrients are not readily available in their natural forms. Soil microbes are pivotal in converting organic matter and inorganic compounds into forms that plants can readily absorb. For example, nitrogen-fixing bacteria, such as those in the genus *Rhizobium*, form symbiotic relationships with leguminous plants to convert atmospheric nitrogen into a usable form. Similarly, mycorrhizal fungi extend the root system of plants, facilitating the uptake of phosphorus and other critical nutrients from the soil.

#### **Enhancing Plant Growth and Stress Tolerance**

Soil microbiota also influence plant growth through the production of growth-promoting substances. Certain bacteria and fungi produce plant hormones such as auxins, cytokinins, and gibberellins, which can enhance root development and overall plant vigor. Additionally, these microorganisms can help plants withstand abiotic stresses, such as drought and salinity. For instance, some soil microbes produce protectants and growth regulators that improve plant resilience under adverse conditions, thereby contributing to higher crop yields and more stable agricultural systems.

## **CHAPTER IX**

### **MICROBIAL COMMUNITIES IN AGRICULTURAL WASTE MANAGEMENT**

**Dr.K.C.Sivabalan**

*Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, TamilNadu,India*

Agricultural waste, encompassing crop residues, animal manure, and other organic by-products, represents both a challenge and an opportunity in modern farming. As agriculture evolves to meet the demand of a growing global population, effective waste management has become crucial for environmental sustainability, economic efficiency, and resource conservation. Central to this challenge are microbial communities, which play an indispensable role in the decomposition and recycling of agricultural waste.

Microbes—bacteria, fungi, actinomycetes, and other microorganisms—are the primary drivers of organic matter decomposition. In the soil and composting environments, these organisms work tirelessly to break down complex organic materials into simpler compounds. This process not only mitigates the environmental impact of waste but also recycles valuable nutrients back into the ecosystem, enhancing soil fertility and promoting sustainable agricultural practices.

#### **Decomposition and Nutrient Cycling**

At the heart of agricultural waste management is the microbial process of decomposition. Microbes decompose organic matter, such as crop residues and manure, transforming it into humus—stable organic matter that improves soil structure and fertility. This microbial activity releases essential nutrients, including nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium, which are critical for plant growth. By converting waste into nutrient-rich compost or biochar, microbes help close the nutrient loop, reducing the reliance on synthetic fertilizers and minimizing nutrient runoff into waterways.

## CHAPTER X

### ROBIAL INTERACTIONS WITH CROP ROOTS: ENHANCING GROWTH AND RESILIENCE

Mrs .S. R Rajam

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, TamilNadu,India*

This subtopic focuses on the intricate relationships between soil microbes and plant roots. These interactions are crucial for plant health, growth, and resilience to environmental stresses.

#### **Key Points:**

**Root Microbiome:** The root-associated microbiome includes bacteria, fungi, and archaea that influence plant growth and health. This community can vary depending on soil type, plant species, and environmental conditions.

**Symbiotic Relationships:** Many microbes form mutualistic relationships with plant roots. For example, mycorrhizal fungi extend the root system, improving nutrient and water uptake, while rhizobium bacteria fix nitrogen in legumes.

**Stress Tolerance:** Certain microbes can enhance plant resilience to abiotic stresses such as drought or salinity by producing growth-promoting compounds so enhancing nutrient availability.

**Disease Suppression:** Beneficial microbes can outcompete or inhibit soil-borne pathogens, reducing the risk of root diseases.

#### **Applications:**

**Microbial Inoculants:** Developing and applying microbial products that can be added to soil or seeds to improve plant growth and stress resistance.

**Biocontrol Agents:** Using beneficial microbes to control plant diseases and reduce the need for chemical pesticides.

# FUNDAMENTALS OF AGRICULTURAL EXTENSION

EDITED BY

DR. B. CHANDRASEKARAN



978-93-6255-146-7

## **Fundamentals of Agricultural Extension**

Copyright © 2019 by Dr. B. Chandrasekaran

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-146-7

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology(PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENT

Introduction.....	8
Chapter I: Fundamentals of Agricultural Extension .....	16
DR. B. CHANDRASEKARAN	
Chapter II: Extension Programme planning .....	37
DR. B. GUNA	
Chapter III: Extension development programmes launched by ICAR/ Govt. of India.....	58
MR. N. ILANCHEZHIAN	
Chapter IV: New trends in agricultural extension.....	80
DR. A. SATHYAVELU	
Chapter V: Extension administration and teaching methods .....	105
MS. C.K. AKSHAYA	
Chapter VI: - Rural Sociology.....	122
DR.K.KUMARAKURU	
Chapter VII: Information Technology.....	137
MR.K.SHIVA	
Chapter VIII: Agricultural extension and technology transfer.....	159
DR.K.C.SIVABALAN	
Chapter IX: Participatory Rural Appraisal (PRA).....	180
MRS.J.U.JANUSIA	
Chapter X: Challenges in agricultural extension services.....	205
MR.A.MATHESH	
REFERENCE:	

## **Chapter I**

### **Fundamentals of Agricultural Extension**

**DR. B. CHANDRASEKARAN**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Agricultural extension plays a pivotal role in modern agriculture, bridging the gap between research and practical farming. As an essential component of agricultural development, it encompasses the dissemination of knowledge, technologies, and innovations to farmers, aiming to enhance productivity, sustainability, and rural livelihoods. This chapter introduces the fundamentals of agricultural extension, exploring its historical evolution, core principles, and contemporary practices.

Historically, agricultural extension emerged as a systematic effort to transfer scientific advancements from research institutions to the farming community. Rooted in early 20th-century initiatives, such as the Smith-Lever Act in the United States, agricultural extension has evolved through various models and approaches, adapting to the changing needs of farmers and agricultural systems. The primary objective has always been to support farmers in improving their practices and overcoming challenges through access to new knowledge and technologies.

At its core, agricultural extension is characterized by a participatory approach, where farmers are not mere recipients of information but active participants in the learning process. This involves tailored advice, interactive communication, and practical demonstrations that address specific local conditions and needs. The extension process emphasizes the importance of local context, farmer engagement, and feedback, ensuring that interventions are relevant and effective.

In contemporary settings, agricultural extension has diversified beyond traditional methods, integrating new technologies and approaches. The rise of digital platforms, mobile applications, and social media has transformed how extension services are delivered, making information more accessible and interactive. Additionally, modern extension programs often address broader issues such as climate change, sustainable practices, and market access, reflecting the complex and dynamic nature of today's agricultural challenges.

## **Chapter II**

### **Extension Programme planning**

**DR. B. GUNA**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Effective extension programme planning is a cornerstone of successful agricultural extension services, guiding the strategic implementation of educational interventions to meet the needs of farmers and rural communities. This process involves systematic design and organization of extension activities to ensure that they are relevant, impactful, and sustainable. As agricultural landscapes and rural contexts evolve, robust planning becomes essential to address emerging challenges and leverage new opportunities.

Extension programme planning begins with a thorough needs assessment, which identifies the specific requirements and constraints faced by target audiences. This step is crucial for aligning extension activities with the actual conditions and priorities of farmers. Through surveys, interviews, and participatory methods, planners gather insights into agricultural practices, resource availability, and socio-economic factors that influence farm operations.

Once the needs are understood, the planning process involves setting clear, measurable objectives that address identified issues. These objectives should be specific, achievable, and aligned with broader agricultural development goals. Effective planning also requires designing a logical framework that outlines the strategies and methods to be employed. This includes selecting appropriate educational tools, such as workshops, demonstrations, and field visits, and determining the best channels for communication, whether through traditional methods or modern digital platforms.

Implementation is a critical phase where planned activities are executed according to the established framework. Successful execution depends on coordinating resources, engaging stakeholders, and ensuring that extension agents are well-prepared to deliver the planned interventions. Monitoring and evaluation are integral to this phase, providing feedback on the effectiveness of the programme and highlighting areas for improvement. Continuous assessment helps in adjusting strategies and refining approaches to better meet the needs of the target audience.



## **Chapter III**

### **Extension development programmes launched by ICAR/ Govt. of India**

**MR. N. ILANCHEZHIAN**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Extension development programmes initiated by the Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR) and the Government of India are pivotal in advancing agricultural productivity and rural development across the country. These programmes are designed to bridge the gap between research and practical farming, ensuring that scientific advancements and innovative practices reach the farming community effectively. Given India's diverse agricultural landscape and the complex needs of its rural populations, these initiatives play a critical role in shaping the future of Indian agriculture.

ICAR, as the premier institution for agricultural research and education in India, spearheads several extension development programmes aimed at enhancing farm productivity, promoting sustainable practices, and improving rural livelihoods. These programmes often involve collaboration with state agricultural universities, research institutes, and other stakeholders to deliver research-based knowledge and technologies to farmers.

One of the notable initiatives is the Krishi Vigyan Kendra (KVK) programme, which serves as a cornerstone of agricultural extension in India. Established under ICAR's auspices, KVKs function as hubs for practical training and demonstrations. They provide farmers with hands-on experience in modern agricultural techniques, crop management, and resource conservation. The KVKs are instrumental in disseminating new technologies and best practices tailored to local conditions.

The National Mission for Sustainable Agriculture (NMSA) is another significant programme launched by the Government of India. This mission aims to promote sustainable agricultural practices, enhance soil health, and improve water use efficiency. Through a combination of policy support, financial incentives, and capacity-building activities, NMSA strives to ensure that farmers adopt practices that lead to long-term environmental and economic benefits.

Additionally, the Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchai Yojana (PMKSY) focuses on improving irrigation infrastructure and water management.

## **Chapter IV**

### **New trends in agricultural extension**

**DR. A. SATHYAVELU**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Agricultural extension, a field traditionally centered on the transfer of knowledge and practices from researchers to farmers, is undergoing a significant transformation. The emergence of new trends reflects the evolving dynamics of agriculture, driven by technological advancements, changing socio-economic contexts, and the urgent need for sustainability. Understanding these trends is crucial for adapting extension strategies to meet contemporary challenges and capitalize on emerging opportunities.

One of the most prominent trends is the integration of digital technologies into agricultural extension services. The rise of mobile apps, online platforms, and digital communication tools has revolutionized how information is disseminated and accessed. These technologies facilitate real-time interactions between extension agents and farmers, allowing for the rapid dissemination of weather forecasts, pest alerts, market prices, and best practice recommendations. Digital platforms also enable virtual training sessions and webinars, expanding the reach of extension services beyond traditional geographic boundaries.

Another significant trend is the emphasis on data-driven decision-making. Advances in data collection and analysis, including the use of geographic information systems (GIS) and remote sensing technologies, provide valuable insights into crop performance, soil health, and environmental conditions. Extension services are increasingly leveraging big data and analytics to offer tailored recommendations and optimize agricultural practices. This data-driven approach helps farmers make informed decisions, improving productivity and resource management.

The concept of farmer-led innovation is also gaining traction. This trend shifts the focus from top-down knowledge transfer to a more participatory model where farmers actively engage in the research and development process. By involving farmers in identifying problems, testing solutions, and sharing experiences, extension services can better address local needs and foster innovation that is grounded in practical experience.

## **Chapter V**

### **Extension administration and teaching methods**

**MS. C.K. AKSHAYA**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Extension administration and teaching methods are foundational elements in the effectiveness of agricultural extension programs. As the primary conduit for translating research into practice, extension services rely on robust administrative structures and innovative teaching methodologies to deliver impactful educational interventions to farmers and rural communities. Understanding these components is crucial for optimizing extension efforts and achieving desired outcomes in agricultural development.

Extension administration encompasses the organizational and managerial processes required to plan, implement, and evaluate extension programs. Effective administration ensures that extension activities are well-coordinated, resources are efficiently utilized, and objectives are met. This involves strategic planning, resource allocation, and the establishment of clear roles and responsibilities within extension organizations. Additionally, extension administration includes monitoring and evaluating programs to assess their impact and make necessary adjustments. A well-structured administrative framework supports the development of responsive and adaptive extension services, which are essential in addressing the dynamic needs of farmers.

Teaching methods in agricultural extension are designed to facilitate the transfer of knowledge and skills to farmers in a practical and engaging manner. Traditional methods, such as field demonstrations, workshops, and one-on-one consultations, remain integral to extension education. These approaches provide hands-on experience and personalized guidance, allowing farmers to directly apply new practices in their own contexts. However, the evolution of extension services has introduced a range of innovative teaching methods that leverage technology and interactive techniques.

Participatory methods are increasingly prominent, emphasizing the active involvement of farmers in the learning process.

## **Chapter VI**

### **Rural Sociology**

**DR.K.KUMARAKURU**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Rural sociology is a critical field of study that focuses on the social dynamics, structures, and processes within rural communities. As a branch of sociology, it examines the interplay between social, economic, and cultural factors in rural settings, providing insights into the lives of people in these areas and the challenges they face. Understanding rural sociology is essential for developing effective policies, programs, and interventions that support rural development and improve the quality of life in these communities.

Historically, rural sociology emerged as a distinct discipline in response to the rapid social changes brought about by industrialization and urbanization. Researchers sought to understand how these transformations impacted rural areas, which were often overlooked in broader sociological studies. The field encompasses a wide range of topics, including rural livelihoods, community organization, social change, and the impact of external forces such as globalization and technological advancement.

Central to rural sociology is the study of social structures and institutions in rural areas. This includes examining family dynamics, social networks, and community organizations that play a crucial role in shaping rural life. Rural sociologists investigate how these structures influence aspects such as agricultural practices, local governance, and economic activities. By understanding these social frameworks, researchers can better appreciate the resilience and adaptability of rural communities.

Rural livelihoods and economic activities are another key focus of rural sociology. The field explores how people in rural areas earn their living, manage resources, and respond to economic opportunities and constraints. This includes studying traditional agricultural practices, the impact of technological innovations, and the role of non-farm activities in diversifying rural economies. Understanding these economic dimensions is vital for developing strategies that promote sustainable rural development and enhance economic resilience.

## **Chapter VII**

### **Information Technology**

**MR.K.SHIVA**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Information Technology (IT) is a cornerstone of modern society, revolutionizing how we communicate, work, and interact with the world. As a broad and rapidly evolving field, IT encompasses the use of computer systems, software applications, networks, and data management tools to process, store, and disseminate information. Its impact is profound, influencing nearly every aspect of our daily lives and driving innovation across various sectors, including business, education, healthcare, and beyond.

The roots of IT can be traced back to the development of early computing devices and systems, which laid the groundwork for the digital age. Over the decades, IT has evolved from simple mechanical calculators to sophisticated systems capable of handling vast amounts of data and performing complex operations. This evolution has been driven by advances in hardware technology, software engineering, and telecommunications, leading to the creation of interconnected global networks and the widespread availability of digital tools.

At the heart of IT is data management and processing, which involves the collection, storage, and analysis of data to generate valuable insights and support decision-making. Databases, data warehouses, and cloud computing solutions enable organizations to manage and utilize data efficiently, facilitating everything from business operations to scientific research. The ability to process large datasets and extract meaningful information has transformed industries and created new opportunities for innovation.

Networking and communication technologies are another critical component of IT. The development of the internet and related technologies has connected people and organizations worldwide, enabling seamless communication and collaboration across geographical boundaries. Networking infrastructure, such as local area networks (LANs), wide area networks (WANs), and wireless networks, supports the exchange of information and the integration of various IT systems.

## **Chapter VIII**

### **Agricultural extension and technology transfer**

**DR.K.C.SIVABALAN**

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Agricultural extension and technology transfer are critical components in enhancing agricultural productivity and sustainability. Agricultural extension refers to the provision of educational services and resources to farmers to improve their farming practices, while technology transfer involves the process of disseminating new technologies or practices from research institutions to the farming community.

Effective agricultural extension services are pivotal in bridging the gap between research and practice. They help translate scientific advancements into practical solutions that can be readily adopted by farmers. For instance, the introduction of precision farming technologies, such as GPS-guided tractors and soil sensors, requires extension services to educate farmers on how to integrate these tools into their existing practices effectively.

Technology transfer, on the other hand, encompasses the methods and strategies used to facilitate the adoption of innovations. This process includes demonstrations, field trials, and training sessions that help farmers understand the benefits and applications of new technologies. Successful technology transfer not only requires the introduction of new tools but also involves building the capacity of farmers to utilize these innovations effectively. For example, when introducing drought-resistant seed varieties, extension services might conduct field demonstrations to show how these seeds perform under local conditions, thus encouraging adoption.

The synergy between agricultural extension and technology transfer is crucial for promoting sustainable agricultural practices and improving food security. By providing farmers with the knowledge and tools needed to adopt new technologies, extension services help to enhance productivity, reduce environmental impact, and increase resilience to climate change. Agricultural extension and technology transfer are essential for modernizing agriculture and fostering sustainable development. They play a vital role in bridging the gap between

## Chapter IX

### Participatory Rural Appraisal (PRA)

MRS.J.U.JANUSIA

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Participatory Rural Appraisal (PRA) is a methodology used in agricultural extension to engage rural communities in the assessment and planning of their development needs. PRA is designed to incorporate the knowledge, opinions, and experiences of local people, ensuring that development projects are more relevant, effective, and sustainable.

PRA involves a range of participatory techniques that facilitate community involvement. These techniques include **mapping, ranking, diagramming,** and **seasonal calendars**, which help communities visualize and analyze their resources, challenges, and opportunities. For example, community mapping might be used to identify and assess local resources such as water sources, land use patterns, and infrastructure, allowing farmers to better understand their environment and plan accordingly.

The essence of PRA is to empower communities by valuing their knowledge and perspectives. This approach contrasts with traditional top-down methods, where external experts dictate solutions without fully understanding local contexts. By involving community members in the appraisal process, PRA fosters a sense of ownership and commitment to the development initiatives, which enhances the likelihood of successful implementation and sustainability.

For instance, in an agricultural extension program aimed at improving crop yields, PRA can help identify local farming practices, soil conditions, and pest management strategies that are effective in the community's specific context. This information can then be used to tailor extension services and technology transfer efforts to better meet the needs of the farmers.

Participatory Rural Appraisal is a valuable approach in agricultural extension, promoting community involvement and ensuring that development interventions are grounded in local realities. By harnessing the knowledge and participation of rural communities, PRA helps to

## Chapter X

### Challenges in agricultural extension services

MR.A.MATHESH

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Agricultural extension services are crucial for promoting agricultural development and improving farm productivity. However, they face several challenges that can hinder their effectiveness and impact. Addressing these challenges is essential for enhancing the delivery of extension services and achieving desired outcomes in agricultural development.

One major challenge is the **limited resources** available for extension services. Many extension programs struggle with inadequate funding, which affects their ability to reach a broad audience, provide necessary training, and maintain up-to-date facilities and materials. For example, limited budgets might constrain the ability to conduct field demonstrations, organize workshops, or offer one-on-one consultations with farmers.

Another significant challenge is **low farmer engagement**. Farmers may be skeptical of new technologies or practices, especially if they have not seen tangible benefits from previous interventions. Building trust and demonstrating the value of new approaches are crucial for overcoming this barrier. Additionally, extension services must be designed to address the specific needs and preferences of different farmer groups, which requires understanding their diverse backgrounds and circumstances.

**Communication barriers** also pose a challenge in agricultural extension. In many regions, there may be a lack of effective communication channels between extension agents and farmers. This issue can be exacerbated by language differences, geographic isolation, or inadequate infrastructure. Improving communication strategies and utilizing modern technologies, such as mobile apps and social media, can help bridge these gaps.

Furthermore, **policy and institutional constraints** can impact the effectiveness of extension services. In some cases, extension programs may be hindered by bureaucratic inefficiencies, lack of coordination among stakeholders, or outdated policies. Advocacy for policy reforms



# SHAKESPEARE STUDIES

Edited by

**DR. N. MEENURAJATHI**

---



978-93-6255-073-6

**Shakespeare Studies**

**Copyright © 2019 by Dr.N.Meenurajathi**

**All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.**

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-073-6**

**Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)**

<b>CONTENT</b>	<b>PAGE</b>
<b>CHAPTER –3.1</b>	<b>1 -4</b>
<b>Othello tragic flaw: An exploration of jealousy</b> <b>Dr.K.Shibila</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.2</b>	<b>5-9</b>
<b>Gender Roles And Cross- Dressing And GenderPerformance In <i>Twelfth Night</i></b> <b>DR.R.A.RAJASEKARAN</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.3</b>	<b>10-13</b>
<b>Familal Ties In Much Ado About Nothing.</b> <b>DR.D.RAVIKUMAR</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.4</b>	<b>14-18</b>
<b>The exploration of love in A Midsummer Night’s Dream</b> <b>DR.PREMA</b>	
<b>CHAPTER - 3.5</b>	<b>19 -23</b>
<b>The dynamics of disguise in as you like it by “William Shakespeare”</b> <b>DR.E.GEETHA</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.6</b>	<b>24 -29</b>
<b>SHAKESPEARE IN RENAISSANCE THEATRE</b> <b>R.VISHALAKSHI</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.7</b>	<b>30 -33</b>
<b>Women Characters In William Shakespeare’s Work</b> <b>K.JAYAPRIYA</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.8</b>	<b>34 -37</b>
<b>William Shakespeare is A Textual Companion</b> <b>M.AMALRAJ</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.9</b>	<b>38 -42</b>
<b>Shakespeare On Film</b> <b>S.RASAKUMAR</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.10</b>	<b>43 -46</b>
<b>Macbeth And The Corrupting Power Of Unchecked Ambition</b> <b>DR. N. MEENURAJATHI</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.11</b>	<b>47 -51</b>
<b>A Complete And Systematic Concordance Works Of Shakespeare.</b> <b>S.PUNNIYAMOORTHY</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.12</b>	<b>52 -55</b>
<b>The Reader Encyclopedia Of Shakespeare.</b> <b>T.THIRUPPATHI</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.13</b>	<b>56 -60</b>
<b>MADNESS IN HAMLET : GENUINE OR FEIGNED</b> <b>MR.P.KINGSLY PREM</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.14</b>	<b>61 -65</b>
<b>Supernatural Element In Macbeth</b> <b>M.TAMILMANI</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.15</b>	<b>66- 69</b>
<b>Theme of Betrayal in Julius Caesar.</b> <b>M VARADHARAJAN</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.16</b>	<b>70 - 75</b>
<b>Dualties in Antony and Cleopatra:Love vs .politics</b> <b>DR.R.INIYAVAN</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.17</b>	<b>76 -79</b>
<b>The role of fate in Romeo and Juliot</b> <b>DR.G.KARTHIGA</b>	
<b>CHAPTER –3.18</b>	<b>80-83</b>
<b>Portrayal of Women in <i>king Lear</i></b> <b>DR.V.DEEPA</b>	

## CHAPTER -3.1

# Othello tragic flaw: An exploration of jealousy

**Dr.K.Shibila**

Professor, Department Of English, Prist Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur.

### ABSTRACT

This article reads Othello through the fatal flaw of othello, the dominant discourse and worldview and shifting sympathy. The gaze of Othello signifies how psychologically the white society looked at him and how the white society considered him. Othello is Moorish and hence an Arab in Europe, manifestly calling to mind all the multifaceted confrontations and conflicts of Self/Other in a framework of power struggle. He is a non-western protagonist whose wife, a European equals Othello's tribe. Othello is an odd-one-out protagonist whose wife, Desdemona, is referred to as a pearl. This pearl calls for the fact that Othello be black in order to be inferior to her. The white Desdemona is an angel while the black Othello is a monster creating a binary opposition of angel and evil. The play depicts Othello as a loser and Desdemona as a winner making the audience identify with the winner.. Desdemona also becomes a type, the type of people who are self, angelic and master. Practically Shakespeare lets Othello confess to his irrationality and inferiority.

**Keywords:** gaze, Othello, discourse, master, other

### Introduction:

Othello's fatal flaw is his susceptibility to jealousy, which leads him to kill his wife Desdemona after he hears a lie that she's been cheating on him. When he finds out the lie was false, he kills himself. Iago's jealousy: Iago's jealousy of Cassio drives Othello to kill for jealousy. The handkerchief: The handkerchief symbolizes a love betrayed and fuels Othello's jealousy. The play explores how patriarchal structures influenced Othello's jealousy. Female infidelity was especially condemned because women were expected to be passive housewives. Montano's commitment to order: Montano's commitment to order symbolizes the corrosive effects of jealousy and deceit.

## CHAPTER -3.2

### Gender Roles And Cross- Dressing And Gender Performance In *Twelfth Night*

**DR.R.A.RAJASEKARAN**

Professor, Department Of English, Prist Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur.

#### **Abstract:**

Shakespeare presents a fascinating exploration of the manipulation and construction of gender and identity in *Twelfth Night*. Through a common theatrical practice of disguise in drama, the bard explores the significance of gender and identity in relation to performance, bringing in the performative aspect of gender and identity. Throughout the play text, Viola-Cesario's identity, especially her / his gender, remains elusive. She / he sexually appeals to both man and woman: Olivia is attracted by him," and so is Orsino. In disguising as a man, Viola constructs a male semblance through an imitation of the image of her supposedly dead brother Sebastian, a gesture hinting at the cultural construction of one's gender identity, a construction that culminates here in the sumptuary codes and gender performance.

Keywords: Gender discrimination, inequality.

#### INTRODUCTION

Shakespeare presents a fascinating exploration of the manipulation and construction of gender and identity in *Twelfth Night*. Through a seemingly common theatrical practice of disguise in drama, the bard, however, explores. The implication of gender and identity in relation to performance, thereby illustrating the performative aspect of gender and identity. Like *Comedy of Errors*, *Twelfth Night* develops its exploration of identity with twins. But the issues of identity are much more complex in the latter because of the twins' gender difference. With its heroine's cross-dressing, the play complicates its development with the theatrical disguise and brings forward the comic plots of an entanglement involving Orsino, Olivia, Viola, and Sebastian.

## CHAPTER -3.3

### Familal Ties In Much Ado About Nothing.

**DR.D.RAVIKUMAR**

Professor, Department Of English, Prist Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur.

#### ABSTRACT

In the play Much ado about nothing we see the display of romantic, friendship, and family love but certain love is similar and different depending on the people and the situation. True love is broken down into three parts and that is trust, sacrifice, and vulnerability. As people if we already trust someone love comes naturally and that is why love is built on trust. Every type of relationship requires trust because with it the freedom of sharing your heart and soul will be valued and treasured by your loved ones forever.

Key words: romanticism, friendship,

#### INTRODUCTION

Most people will fall in love within their lifetime. Whether it is with their Brother, their Mother, their Father, their Girlfriend or their Boyfriend most people will fall in love with someone, it is human nature. In the play, Much Ado About Nothing, by William Shakespeare, many different types of love are displayed. The way that the different characters behave when in love can affect how the reader views the characters and how they feel about them and what the character is like. In ‘Much Ado About Nothing’ different types of love are used to help give the reader a deeper. One type of love that is displayed in ‘Much Ado About Nothing’ is family love. For example the love between Leonato and Hero and between Hero and Beatrice. Leonato’s love for Hero is out rightly spoken .

Throughout the play Beatrice and Benadick are constantly insulting each other. However, they eventually both confess their love for each other. Beatrice says “I love you with so much of my heart that none is left to protest” (4.1.279-280). The fact that they took s long to confess their love shows us that their love is more genuine. It also shows that they are slightly scared of love especially since earlier in the play Benadick talked about how he never wanted to marry

## CHAPTER -3.4

# The exploration of love in A Midsummer Night's Dream

**DR. N.PREMA**

*Associate Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur.*

### **Abstract**

Love in its many forms is the most important theme in *A Midsummer Night's Dream*. The romantic encounters and subsequent confusions are the greatest cause of conflict in the play. The play gives us Exploration of love in – idyllic young love in the case of Hermia and Lysander; passionate and possessive love between Titania and Oberon; love lost and found again as with Helena and Demetrius; love as conquest as in the case of Theseus and Hippolyta. Shakespeare makes a point of infusing *A Midsummer Night's Dream* with more than just a two-dimensional notion of romantic love – he shows us the darker side where we see love's inconstancy, its violence, its possessiveness, and its illusory nature.

Keywords: Exploration, love.

### INTRODUCTION

Love in its many forms is the most important theme in *A Midsummer Night's Dream*. The romantic encounters and subsequent confusions are the greatest cause of conflict in the play. The play gives us variations on the theme of love – idyllic young love in the case of Hermia and Lysander; passionate and possessive love between Titania and Oberon; love lost and found again as with Helena and Demetrius; love as conquest as in the case of Theseus and Hippolyta. Shakespeare makes a point of infusing *A Midsummer Night's Dream* with more than just a two-dimensional notion of romantic love – he shows us the darker side where we see love's inconstancy, its violence, its possessiveness, and its illusory nature.

*“Love looks not with the eyes, but with the mind; And therefore is wing'd Cupid painted blind. Nor hath love's mind of any judgment taste; Wings and no eyes*

## **CHAPTER -3.5**

# **The dynamics of disguise in as you like it by “William Shakespeare”**

**DR.E.GEETHA**

Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur

### **ABSTRACT**

As You Like It is indeed one of Shakespeare’s finest and most entertaining comedies. The small stories connected with the main story of Rosalind and Orlando are very interesting, the portrayal of characters is vivid and convincing, the dialogue is brilliant and full of wit and humor. Most of all, Rosalind is one of the wittiest and the most beautiful heroines of Shakespeare’s plays. As You Like It has at its centre the main plot of Rosalind and Orlando love-affair. We have some other sub-plots like the dispute between Duke Senior and Duke Frederick which leads to the banishment of Duke Senior and usurpation of the Kingdom by Duke Frederick unlawfully; a dispute between two other brothers Oliver and Orlando, due to which Orlando has to leave the city and take shelter in the forest of Arden where Rosalind has also arrived with her cousin Celia; the Celia-Oliver love affair; the Silvias-Phoebe-Ganymede complication; and the Touchstone-Audrey love-affair. All these love affairs find fulfillment in the last scene and are closely related to the main plot.

Key words: comedy, revenge, love.

### **INTRODUCTION**

William Shakespeare was born on April 23, 1564 in the village of Stratford-on-Avon in the country of Warwickshire. His father John Shakespeare was a trader in agricultural products like corn, wheat etc. Not much is known about Shakespeare’s education and it is widely believed that after attending the grammar school at Stratford in the initial few years, his formal education had to be discontinued and then his real teachers were the men and women and the natural influences which surrounded him. At the age of fourteen his father lost the little property he had and fell into debt. The boy probably started working to support his family. In 1582, Shakespeare



## CHAPTER -3.6

### SHAKESPEARE IN RENAISSANCE THEATRE

R.VISALAKSHI

Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur

#### ABSTRACT

Elizabethan drama had its roots in the drama of the Middle ages and the Renaissance brought in its wake the revival of learning along with the percolation of the European influences of Seneca and Plautus in tragedy and comedy respectively. However, the main characteristics of the drama of the Elizabethan age were of native origin, and reflected the spirit and the interests of contemporary English society. Throughout the Middle Ages the English drama, like that of other European countries, was mainly religious and didactic, its chief forms being the Miracle Plays, which presented in crude dialogue stories from the Bible and the lives of the saints, and the Moralities, which taught lessons for the guidance of life through the means of allegorical action and the personification of abstract qualities. Both forms were severely limited in their opportunities for portraying the depth and variety of human nature. Elizabethan drama drew upon these existing forms but reached a level of excellence and maturity hitherto unmatched in English Drama in terms of language and the in-depth exploration of the range of human emotions.

Key words: religions, language.

#### INTRODUCTION

In spite of its popularity, the Elizabethan theatre attracted criticism, censorship, and scorn from some sectors of English society. The plays were often coarse and boisterous, and playwrights and actors belonged to a bohemian class. Puritan leaders and officers of the Church of England considered actors to be of questionable character, and they criticized playwrights for using the stage to disseminate their irreverent opinions. They also feared the overcrowded theater spaces might lead to the spread of disease. At times throughout the sixteenth century, Parliament censored plays for profanity, heresy, or politics. But Queen Elizabeth and later King James 3 offered protections that ultimately allowed the theatre to survive.

## CHAPTER -3.7

# Women Characters In William Shakespeare's Work

**K.JAYAPRIYA**

Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur

### ABSTRACT

In Shakespeare's women, there is no conflict of impulses, no mixture of motives, which lead to complexity of character and therefore they are mostly either good or bad. In King Lear, the characters of Goneril and Regan are very simple. They are wicked to the core from the beginning. With all their evil designs, they are out-spirited by their own jealousy, malice and hypocrisy. Cordelia is also equally simple, but she is a little foolish, highly innocent and loving. Women, by nature are instinctive and Shakespeare has created them as such. Women's instinct relieves them from any conflict. Even Cleopatra, Lady Macbeth, Portia and others are not very much under the domination of their will. Their courage also fails, their heart breaks, but they remain confident maintaining tranquility, calmness that is never disturbed by the storms of the mind even in the most traumatic moments. One can never compare Ophelia, Desdemona or Cordelia with Hamlet, Jacques or any other great male character.

Keywords: Greedy, selfish, pride, foolishness.

### INTRODUCTION

John Ruskin has appropriately stated that Shakespeare has no heroes, he has only heroines. Shakespeare's women are more remarkable than his men. Shakespeare discovered the real mystery of woman's nature, caught her in very flesh and blood, and viewed her total personality in the light of earthly perfection and worldly limitation. Every woman in Shakespeare is so natural that she forms a single character, a distinct individual, unique by herself who has got her own heart and her own tongue.

The behaviour of Shakespeare's women is nothing but an impulsive response to the need of the moment. It could be particularly noticed in the character of Lady Macbeth, who acts only

## CHAPTER -3.8

### William Shakespeare is A Textual Companion

**M.AMALRAJ**

Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur

#### ABSTRACT

There is no Shakespeare without text. Yet readers often do not realize that the words in the book they hold, like the dialogue they hear from the stage, has been revised, augmented and emended since Shakespeare's lifetime. An essential resource for the history of Shakespeare on the page, *Shakespeare and Textual Theory* traces the explanatory underpinnings of these changes through the centuries. After providing an introduction to early modern printing practices, Suzanne Gossett describes the original quartos and folios as well as the first collected editions. Subsequent sections summarize the work of the 'New Bibliographers' and the radical challenge to their technical analysis posed by poststructuralist theory, which undermined the presumed stability of author and text.

Key words: theories,biographies

#### INTRODUCTION

*Shakespeare and Textual Theory* presents a balanced view of the current theoretical debates, which include the nature of the surviving texts we call Shakespeare's; the relationship of the author 'Shakespeare' and of authorial intentions to any of these texts; the extent and nature of Shakespeare's collaboration with others; and the best or most desirable way to present the texts - in editions or performances. The book is illustrated throughout with examples showing how theoretical decisions affect the text of Shakespeare's plays, and case studies of *Hamlet* and *Pericles* demonstrate how different theories complicate both text and meaning, whether a play survives in one version or several. The conclusion summarizes the many ways in which beliefs about Shakespeare's texts have changed over the centuries.

*Arden Shakespeare and Theory* provides a comprehensive analysis of the theoretical developments that have dominated Shakespeare studies in recent years, as well as those that are

## CHAPTER -3.9

# Shakespeare On Film

S.RASAKUMAR

Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur

### ABSTRACT

Shakespeare on film process of changing to suit a new situation . In the context of the film, a adaptation means to shift or borrow completely or to pick up a part of a story, idea, theme, and any other feature of an existing work of art into a film. As it is defined as a process considers the conversion of a piece of literature into a film. Since 1938, Shakespearean drama adaptation is a common element in Indian film Industry. Vishal Bhardwaj He garnered critical acclaim and several accolades for writing and directing the Indian adaptations of three tragedies by William Shakespeare: Maqbool (2003) from Macbeth, Omkara (2006) from Othello, and Haider (2014) from Hamlet. As far as literature and film are concerned, both mediums of art has its distinct characteristics and limitations. While adapting a source to the targeted medium according to the limitations and characteristics of the targeted medium a lot of things have to be lost, a lot has to be added and a lot of experimentation has to be done.

Keywords: stories,idea,action.

### INTRODUCTION

Cinema became the dominant mass entertainment medium of 20th century India within a decade of the pioneering moving picture displays in 1913 by Dadasaheb Phalke. Amid the topical and anecdotal subject of early programs, adaptations of literary, and especially stage works soon appeared. Humans have a long history of adapting “texts” into different forms. Historical events and spoken legends were the inspiration for paintings and sculptures, plays, written tales, stained glass windows, and later, stories in the form of the novel. Cinematic adaptations of literary and theatrical texts are as old as the medium of cinema itself, and as long as screen adaptations have existed, so has the tension between literature and film.

Leo Tolstoy considered film “a direct attack on the methods of literary art”, while Virginia Woolf felt that cinema and literary adaptations in particular, were responsible for the

## **CHAPTER -3.10**

### **Macbeth And The Corrupting Power Of Unchecked Ambition**

**DR.N.MEENURAJATHI**

Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur

#### **ABSTRACT**

This paper portrayed the Lady Macbeth, she seems a very forceful and dominant personality, and we can assume that she is the villain, or antagonist, of the play. Unlike Macbeth, who deliberates over whether or not to kill Duncan and who wrestles with loyalty to his king, Lady Macbeth is single-minded in her lust for power. She has no loyalty to any cause beyond her own ambition, and is willing to manipulate her husband to achieve what she wants. Her desire for Macbeth to be king doesn't stem from a belief he'd be a good ruler; she wants him to be king because she wants to be queen. As a woman, queen is the most powerful role she can hope for in the court. Unlike Macbeth, who hopes there's a way he can become king without taking action himself, Lady Macbeth immediately accepts that murder is necessary to achieve her goals, and prays for the resolve necessary to commit the act: "Come, you spirits that tend on mortal thoughts, unsex me here/ and fill me from the crown to the toe top-full/of direst cruelty."

Keywords: cruel, greedy, arrogant

#### **INTRODUCTION**

Macbeth is a play about subterfuge and trickery. Macbeth, his wife, and the three Weird Sisters are linked in their mutual refusal to come right out and say things directly. Instead, they rely on implications, riddles, and ambiguity to evade the truth. Macbeth's ability to manipulate his language and his public image in order to hide his foul crimes makes him a very modern-seeming politician. However, his inability to see past the witches' equivocations—even as he utilizes the practice himself—ultimately leads to his downfall.

Sometimes, equivocations in Macbeth are meant kindly, as when Ross tries to spare Macduff's feelings by telling him that his wife and son are "well." Macduff initially takes this to mean that his family is alive and healthy, but Ross means that they are dead and in heaven. More

## **CHAPTER -3.11**

### **A Complete And Systematic Concordance Works Of Shakespeare.**

**S.PUNNIYAMOORTHY**

Assistant Professor, Department Of English, Prist Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur.

#### **ABSTRACT**

The aim of my work is to give a comprehensive picture of the development of Shakespeare lexicography during the past three centuries. More than 100 reference books compiled in different lexicographic forms (concordance, index, glossary and lexicon) have been analyzed beginning from reference books with a limited prescriptive corpus of mainly "significant", "hard" or "remarkable" words up to a universal and complete Shakespeare dictionary which combines the best features of all existing lexicographic forms. The analysis gives exhaustive material for a typology of Shakespeare dictionaries. I.e. a Shakespeare

Keywords: completeness, lexicon, syntax

#### **INTRODUCTION**

Shakespearean Criticism, a subset of Literature Criticism Online, provides immediate access to lengthy critical essays by major critics. Arranged alphabetically, the entries provide in-depth critical essays on an author's work, along with biographical facts, a list of major works, and related sources. Usually, the essays give an overview of a writer's work or themes. The entries are substantial. You can search by Named Work (Hamlet), or Keyword (e.g. Antonio in The Merchant of Venice, themes like ambition or pride, and critics like T.S. Eliot) Not only does this site provide you with links to several full-text online versions of Shakespeare's works, but Mr.

William Shakespeare and the Internet contains links to many full-text articles, both critical (by such critics as Frank Kermode and William Hazlitt) and descriptive. Besides containing the full text of the Oxford Shakespeare online—both plays and poems—this

## CHAPTER -3.12

### The Reader Encyclopedia Of Shakespeare.

**T.THIRUPPATHI**

Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur

#### ABSTRACT

William Shakespeare has generated more research and criticism than any other literary figure in history. Volumes scrutinizing his life, his works, and his times could easily fill several libraries; but many of these books are highly specialized, covering a single aspect or focusing on a specific work (or even a character within it). Designed for scholars, students, and avid readers, this definitive reference places all this information and more between the covers of a single volume. From synopses of plays to discussions about the authorship controversy, from facts about Elizabethan theater to data on the world of publishing, from sources and stage histories and to character studies and biographical profiles, this guidebook synthesizes the scholarship of dozens of acknowledged experts, presenting information in a clear, readable style. Includes a chronology of events, transcripts of documents, and a 30-page selected bibliography, as well as dozens of black-and-white photos and illustrations

Keyword: Encyclopedia,biographies.

#### INTRODUCTION

This encyclopedia is an indispensable resource for students and scholars of 'Global Shakespeare', an area of study which explores the global afterlife of Shakespearean drama, poetry and motifs in their literary, per formative and digital forms of expression in the twentieth and twenty-first centuries Most scholars and studies on late medieval and early modern writing from India have focused on *Bhakti*, the devotional movement that spread across the Indian subcontinent from medieval to early modern times. This entry focuses on different compositions by women of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, including oral compositions from the everyday lives of women and songs composed and performed by women who were part of what is now known as the *Bhakti* movement, during the early modern period. If these two genres illustrate the secular and devotional contributions of women, writing by women of the nobility who were formally trained in reading and writing gives us insight into the lives of people in and around the monarchical courts.

## CHAPTER -3.13

### MADNESS IN HAMLET : GENUINE OR FEIGNED

**MR.KINSLY PREM**

Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur

#### **ABSTRACT:**

This paper attempts to study the famous play of William Shakespeare. Hamlet is one the most famous Tragedy. It deals with the madness. The use of supernatural and madness create an interest and mystery. Williams Shakespeare is known for his power of creation and imagination. Really, he has keen knowledge of human relationships and their needs and desires. He is well known for the use of psychological study with the depiction of madness. His art work generally depicts the keen understanding of human nature. He has the deep knowledge of human psyche, their characters and behavior. The present study will throw light on his deep dramatic knowledge with the study of madness as an issue in the play. This study will help us to understand the keen knowledge of William Shakespeare in depiction madness as problem with interest and mystery. Key words: William Shakespeare, Hamlet, the Prince, madness psychological analysis, human behavior, human relations, love, hate, emotion and problems.

Keywords: human relationship, dramatic knowledge.

#### **INTRODUCTION**

The Shakespearean Imagination, Norman Holland opens his chapter on Hamlet as follows: "There are four subjects on whom more books are written than anything else in the world or so have I heard, and do in part believe it. The first three are: Christ, Napoleon, and Shakespeare; the fourth is Hamlet. Indeed, no other play seems to have been as fully discussed or frequently acted. Hamlet is the story of a prince of Denmark who comes back to his land after his father's death and finds the throne already occupied by his uncle, who has married the widow queen. Hamlet mourns his dead father and is shocked at the idea that his mother has been able to forget her late husband so quickly.

*"Will all great Neptune's ocean wash this blood  
Clean from my hand? No, this my hand will rather*



## CHAPTER -3.14

### Supernatural Element In Macbeth.

**M.THAMIZHMANI**

Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur

#### **Abstract**

The supernatural according to The Oxford Dictionary “includes all those phenomena, which cannot be explained by the accepted laws of natural science or by physical laws.” A belief in the existence of the supernatural: ghosts, fairies, witches etc., has been universal in all ages and times. Therefore, it was also in the age of Shakespeare in which there was almost a universal belief in the presence and power of the unseen. All classes of people, including the king, shared this belief because it was an age literally which struck. Not only the common person, but also the learned and the cultured one believed in the supernatural. The popularity of Reginald Scott’s, *Discovery of Witchcraft*, King James’ *Demonology*, Middleton’s *The Witch* and the frequent burning of women suspected to be witches are so many strong witnesses to the supernatural terrors of the Elizabethans who believed in the power of demons, ghosts, witches, wizards etc. As a popular dramatist, Shakespeare had to furnish the public taste even if he may or may not have believed in the world of spirit. He uses all kinds of supernatural categories: the powers of the unseen, ghosts, fairies and witches to appear and reappear in one play after another. However, his use of supernaturalism has added a deep moral and psychological significance. It is brought into closest harmony with the character of the protagonists of his dramas.

Keywords: illusion, supernatural elements

#### INTRODUCTION

The importance of the supernatural in Shakespeare's *Macbeth* is best viewed in terms of Shakespeare's intended audience. In Elizabethan and Jacobean England, there was widespread belief in black magic and the supernatural. Many people in Shakespeare's audience believed that supernatural beings like the Witches actually existed, and that they interacted with humans, caused disease, and spread chaos throughout the country.

Perhaps the most important person in Shakespeare's audience was James I, King of England, for whom scholars believe Shakespeare, wrote *Macbeth*. James I considered himself an

## CHAPTER -3.15

# Theme of Betrayal in Julius Caesar.

**M.VARADHARAJAN**

*Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur*

### Abstract:

Betrayal is a theme of modern life. It has been around since the beginning of time. It is also a common theme in the works of William Shakespeare. William Shakespeare is viewed as the greatest writer in the English language. He has lots of works that contain many different themes. Betrayal, an occurring theme in 3 of his works, common during Shakespeare's days. It has been a very popular theme throughout literature. Betrayal is viewed as lies, deceit and even duplicity. Shakespeare's writings give us a view of the real world and real feelings. In "Julius Caesar" by Shakespeare, the theme is a betrayal tragedy. The play begins as a pair of tribunes see commoners celebrating Caesar's victory over Pompey. The tribunes try to break up the festivities but fail. At the feast of Lupercal, Caesar leads a parade but is warned by a soothsayer to "beware the Ides of March." Caesar ignores the prophecy and continues with the celebration. At the same time, Cassius tries to bring Brutus to his side and move against Caesar, but Brutus is a loyal friend of Caesar's. However, he does agree that Caesar may bring harm to Rome by abusing his power. The two then learn that Mark Antony has already offered Caesar the crown, but Caesar has refused three times.

Keywords: Friendship, betrayal, assassination, fate, community, intimacy, trust

### Introduction

Literature is, undoubtedly, the study of human passions, emotions and relationships. Among all human passions and relationships, a relationship which has attracted the attention of almost all the writers is the relationship of friendship which is the very basis of human existence. It is vital to all relationships. "Close and meaningful relationships may even be necessary in order to achieve the experience of high well-being" (Diener & Seligman, 2002: 81-84). In ancient times, it was considered a special relationship, but now friendship makes premises of all human relationships. With the advancement of human civilizations, it has almost been accepted that all human relationships must have an element of friendship so that they may last for a long

## CHAPTER -3.16

# Dualities in Antony and Cleopatra: Love vs .politics

**R.INIYAVAN**

*Associate Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur*

### Abstract:

'Antony and Cleopatra', Shakespeare portrays the connection between love and politics as dangerous, particularly through the character of Mark Antony. It is obvious from the beginning of the play that Mark Antony is a revered war hero, but his bold statement 'let Rome in Tiber melt' suggests that he has abandoned his previous military image in the pursuit of love instead. The imagery of an entire city melting into its own river is not only reflective of the explosive nature of Roman politics, but also suggests that Shakespeare considers love to be the downfall of politics, as Mark Antony says this as an expression of his love for Cleopatra. Here, Shakespeare suggests that love and politics cannot co-exist peacefully - instead, one must always be the downfall of the other. Some may argue that Shakespeare is not only pointing out the threat that love poses to political power, but also the fact that strong women themselves were viewed as threats to men in arranging political alliances during the Roman era. Although Shakespeare portrays Cleopatra as a woman who is determined to maintain a healthy relationship between love and politics, his original prophecy of love and politics being the downfall of one another is realized in the eventual demise of Antony and Cleopatra at the end of the play.

Keywords: politics, explosive nature.

### Introduction:

'Antony and Cleopatra' by William Shakespeare is a tragic play which centres around the renowned love affair of the eponymous characters and its political and personal repercussions. In Act One, Shakespeare uses both the distinction of time and place to portray the duality of Antony. The conflict within the protagonist is that between love and duty, fuelled by two separate internal forces: reason and emotion. It is this clash of Roman virtue and Egyptian vice

## CHAPTER –3.17

### The role of fate in Romeo and Juliet

Dr.G.KARTHIGA

*Associate Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur.*

#### Abstract:

The Role of Fate in Romeo and Juliet Throughout the play of the Tragedy of Romeo and Juliet, the relationship between Romeo and Juliet has been thwarted by something that could be described as an “outside force.” The idea of fate is strong in the play due Capulets’ and Montagues’ ancient grudge against each other. Throughout the entire play, fate plays a powerful role against Romeo and Juliet’s relationship as their undying love is set to end in death and sorrow with the two “star-crossed lovers” having no control of what happened. In a religious aspect, fate is something that is uncontrollable and predetermines the courses of events that will take place. Both Romeo and Juliet are strongly religious and trust that fate is most definitely real.

Key words: Fate, separation, miscommunication.

#### INTRODUCTION:

*Romeo and Juliet* is driven by the choices its main characters make and the actions they take, there is a dark undercurrent running throughout the play: the suggestion that fate, not free will, is behind the entirety of the human experience. Repeated references to fate and fortune throughout the play underscore Shakespeare’s suggestion that humans are merely pawns in a larger cosmic scheme—invisible but inescapable fates, Shakespeare argues throughout the play, steer the course of human lives, and any and all actions that attempt to subvert those fates are futile and doomed to fail.

*Romeo and Juliet*, fate and predetermined destinies are an accepted part of life and society. From the chorus that introduces the first two acts of the play, commenting upon the events that are about to take place, to the characters’ own preoccupation with the unseen forces that control them, Shakespeare imbues the world of the play with the heavy atmosphere of a “black fate” sitting like a storm cloud just above the entirety of the action. Throughout the play,

## CHAPTER -3.18

### Portrayal of Women in *king Lear*

**Dr.V.DEEPA**

*Associate Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed To Be University, Thanjavur*

**Abstract:**

William Shakespeare found the inspiration for the tragedy King Lear in several works. The primary source of the tragedy remains the *Historia Regum Britanie* written in the twelfth century. In this particular adaptation of King Lear's story, the English writer Geoffrey of Monmouth brings on the stage the role of Cordelia as the English Queen. But Cordelia's name is probably derived from the Spencer's *The Faerie Queene*. Shakespeare was not the first writer who dramatized the subject. The author of a play called *The True Chronicle History of King Lear and his three daughters* which was performed in public for the first time around the year 1594, eleven years before Shakespeare's adaptation.

Key words: feminism, Arrogant, pride.

**Introduction:**

William Shakespeare represents a quite controversial figure of the Renaissance period. A number of different contradictory and conflicting views about him are shared among people and critics. Even Shakespeare himself who is shrouded in the cloak of vagueness and uncertainty is surrounded by a great amount of unanswered questions, prompts to his analysis. Therefore, it is not surprising that countless multitudes of people try to penetrate deeper into his works carrying the seal of Shakespearean ambiguity and answer to some emerging questions. The attitudes towards Shakespeare's personality but also towards the interpretation of his works diverge and proceed in diverse directions.

In general, the author presents two portraits of women. The contrast between them is provided by King Lear's daughters: the character of Cordelia on the one side and Goneril and Regan on the other. As for Goneril and Regan, they are impossible to be characterized as individuals because of so much monotony concerning their nature and comportment. Without

# NEW LEARNING TRENDS IN ELT

EDITED BY



**DR. M.SUBRAMANIAN**



978-93-6255-854-1

**NEW LEARNING TRENTS**

**Copyright © 2019 by Dr.M.SUBRAMANIAN**

**All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.**

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-854-1**

**DATE:12-02-2019**

**Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)**

<b>CONTENT</b>	<b>PAGE NO</b>
<b>CHAPTER –2.1</b>	<b>1 -4</b>
Individual identity in language learning: Dr.N.MEENURAJATHI	
<b>CHAPTER-2.2</b>	<b>5 -7</b>
Flourishing in online english language education: exploring innovative strategies in the virtual classrooms S.PUNNIYAMOORTHY	
<b>CHAPTER –2.3</b>	<b>8-14</b>
The Use Of Ai (Artificial Intelligence) In English Learning Language M.VARADHARAJAN	
<b>CHAPTER –2.4</b>	<b>15-20</b>
The Role of Regional Language in English Language Teaching. Dr.R.INIYAVAN	
<b>CHAPTER – 2.5</b>	<b>21-26</b>
The English Language :Foundation of Communication. V.INDHUMATHI	
<b>CHAPTER-2.6</b>	<b>27-29</b>
Investigating The Effectiveness Of Peer – Assisted Learning In English Language Classroom. Dr.V.DEEPA	
<b>CHAPTER –2.7</b>	<b>30-37</b>
Exploring the Challenges and Strategies In Teaching English as a Second Language to Young Learners G.SHANMUGAPRIYA	
<b>CHAPTER-2.8</b>	<b>38-44</b>
Impact of culture in English language learning. Dr.M.SUBRAMANIAN	
<b>CHAPTER-2.9</b>	<b>45-48</b>
The use of Romanticism in <i>The Raven</i> , a poem by Edgar Allan Poe BANULAKSHMI PALADUGU	
<b>CHAPTER-2.10</b>	<b>49-54</b>
Teaching of the poem “where the mind is without fear” in a digital class room. M.UDHAYACHANDRAN	
<b>CHAPTER –2.11</b>	<b>55-61</b>
<b>The problem of oral expression in English language.</b> S.SANTHIYA	
<b>CHAPTER- 2.12</b>	<b>62-68</b>
Applications in the process of learning English as a second language R.VISALAKSHI	
<b>CHAPTER-2.13</b>	<b>69-76</b>
Investigating the impact of task based language teaching on student’s language proficiency. K.JAYAPRIYA	
<b>CHAPTER-2.14</b>	<b>77-79</b>
Explore the authentic materials in English language teaching. M.AMALRAJ	



## **CHAPTER -2.1**

### **Individual identity in language learning:**

**Dr.N.MEENURAJATHI**

**Professor, Department Of English, Prist Deemed to be University, Thanjavur.**

#### **Abstract**

The notions of self and identity have generated a considerable amount of literature, their relationship. The language also being the subject of numerous Conceptual and research papers. Few studies, However, have investigated the relationship between Identity perceptions and achievement, especially in Different academic subjects. Our project addressed This need, comparing the learning and teaching of English as a foreign language and the learning and Teaching of mathematics in Bulgaria, Germany, the Netherlands and Spain. Our participants were Students who completed an online questionnaire About their identity perceptions in learning English and, one week later, a second questionnaire about Learning mathematics, as well as teachers of English and teachers of mathematics. This chapter presents some of our key findings, providing Evidence for the relationship between identity Perceptions, declared learner achievement and Teacher perceptions. We discuss the importance of providing a personally relevant learning and Teaching environment and provide several practical Suggestions of how this can be achieved.

Key Word: Identity Perception, Teacher Perception, Learner Achievement.

#### **Introduction**

Educators interested in identity, language learning, and critical pedagogies are interested in language as a social practice. In other words, they are interested in the way language constructs and is constructed by a wide variety of social relationships. These relationships might be as varied as those between writer and reader; teacher and student; test maker and test taker; school and state. What makes the educators “critical” is the shared assumption that social relationships are seldom constituted on equal terms, but may reflect and constitute inequitable relations of power in the wider society, on terms that may be defined, among others, by gender, race, class, ethnicity, and sexual orientation.

## **CHAPTER-2.2**

### **Flourishing in online english language education: exploring innovative strategies in the virtual classrooms**

**S.PUNNIYAMOORTHY**

**Assistant Professor, Department Of English, Prist Deemed to be University, Thanjavur.**

#### **Abstract**

This article is a case study of a courseware experience with the creation of a live-online virtual classrooms using Zoom. Live-online virtual classrooms with two-way audio and HD video were created for seven different courses at the higher education level. This innovative technology allows all participants to see and hear every classmate using any device, including iPhones, tablets and computers. We describe how to set up the Zoom account and how to set up the live-online virtual classroom, including the parameters we use. We document how to set up a home or office studio and how to broadcast the classes. We explain our virtual classroom class experiences and how we evaluated students live-online. We also provide several best practices for hosting and studying in a live-online virtual classroom.

Key words: social medias, Technology

#### **Introduction**

A virtual classroom is an online teaching and learning environment where teachers and students can present course materials, engage and interact with other members of the virtual class, and work in groups together. The key distinction of a virtual classroom is that it takes place in a live, synchronous setting. Online coursework can involve the viewing of pre-recorded, asynchronous material, but virtual classroom settings involve live interaction between instructors and participants. So what does a virtual classroom look like? Virtual classrooms can vary in appearance depending on the software or platform being used, but they generally share some common features. Here are a few typical features of virtual.

Online education and e-classes have appeared as distinctly popular methods for college students to develop their education. Teaching an online direction requires special techniques, which differ from the face-to-face classroom hence the instructors must undertake or increase

## CHAPTER -2.3

### THE USE OF AI (ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE) IN ENGLISH LEARNING LANGUAGE

M.VARADHARAJAN

Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur.

#### Abstract

This chapter aim is to analyze an artificial intelligence platform that can be used in imparting education as well as evaluating student performance. This research was conducted with a qualitative method by conducting in-depth interviews and a literature study. The findings of this study shows that Artificial Intelligence technology can be used as a means of developing English learning for students. There have been several studies that support research results, that AI can be used to improve students' English skills through applications, websites, Virtual Reality technology, and other AI-based learning and teaching systems. The limitation of this research is that it does not examine how far the role of AI in students' English learning is. For further research, it is expected to test how far the role of AI is to improve students' English skills..

**Keywords:** Artificial intelligence, English language, English skills, higher education, online learning.

#### Introduction

Artificial intelligence was dedicated to supplying the power to make computers become learning media. This can the primary computer expert goal like Alan Mathieson Turing, John von Neumann, and Norbert Wiener, with the principle of modeling the human brain, mimicking human learning, and simulating biological evolution. In addition, info exchange uses the most recent information and communication technology (ICT), knowledge networks, actuators, sensors, and automatic identification and material pursuit technology referred to as machine learning (ML) are established. ML is an AI application that enables you to mechanically learn and improve from experience, notwithstanding the system isn't expressly programmed. Machine learning focuses on developing pc programs that will access and learn knowledge independently. Machines play a very important role in assembling library resources and user services. Robotics,

## **CHAPTER -2.4**

### **The Role of Regional Language in English Language Teaching.**

**Dr.R.INIYAVAN**

**Associate Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur.**

#### **Abstract**

Languages are important in the life of any nation. There are several language families in India including Indo-European and the Dravidian languages. There is no National language in India. However, the official language is Hindi. The language is always believed to play a central role in learning. National Education System of India is very effective and found better than many developed countries. Learning different or another language also provides many other benefits including greater academic achievement, greater cognitive development, and more positive attitudes towards other languages and cultures. As India has several mother tongues and classrooms might have children with more than one spoken language, it might not be possible for all languages to become the medium of instruction. Still the efforts to preserve and promote all Indian languages including classical, tribal and endangered languages will be taken on with new vigor.

**Key Word:** Learning another language and culture

#### **Introduction**

Language allows us to connect with the rest of the world, identify our identity, express our history and culture, study, defend our human rights, and participate in all parts of society. Languages are important in the life of any nation. The members of a social group need language to communicate with each other, for all social purposes, for public administration, for commerce and industry, for education and so on. The role of languages including rural or tribal languages have a important role mentioned in NEP-2020. Languages in India There are several language families in India. The Indo-European languages spoken by 78.05% of Indians and the Dravidian languages spoken by 19.64% of Indians. Languages spoken by the remaining 2.31% of the population belong to the Austroasiatic, Sino–Tibetan, Tai–Kadai and a few other minor language families. India has the world's fourth highest number of languages.

## **CHAPTER – 2.5**

### **The English Language :Foundation of Communication.**

**V.INDHUMATHI**

**Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur.**

#### **Abstract**

Language is a communication tool used by everyone in their daily life as a means to convey information and arguments to others. In this case, the language cannot be separated from culture because language represent its nation and has close relation to the attitude or behavior of groups of speakers of the languages. The role of language as a tool to express culture reality can be seen from: 1) Language is part of culture, 2) Even the language and the culture is in different, but have a very close relationship, 3) Language is strongly influenced by culture, and 4) Language significantly influence culture and way of thinking of people living within. In the communication, language used by people is influence their culture or vice versa. If used parables, the culture and language like Siamese twins, the two things that cannot be separated. Or as a coin; side one is the language and the other is culture.

Keywords: Language, Communication, Cultural reality

#### **Introduction**

Language indicates each of its nation, a parable. If its meaning pondered deeper, may make us wiser in understanding and addressing all cases that linked between language and attitude or behavior of groups of speakers of the languages. Wisdom is likely to strengthen believe about the role of language in the development of the culture. There are several theories on the relationship of language and culture. Some say that even language is part of culture but they are different, but in terms of relation they are very close each other, so it cannot be separated. Some say that the language is strongly influenced by culture, so that all things in the culture will be reflected in the language. Conversely, there is also a saying that language influence culture, and the human or their speaker way of thinking. This paper intended to discuss the nature of language, the nature of culture and how language can express the cultural reality of

## **CHAPTER-2.6**

### **INVESTIGATING THE EFFECTIVENESS OF PEER – ASSISTED LEARNING IN ENGLISH LANGUAGE CLASSROOM.**

**Dr.V.DEEPA**

**Associate Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur.**

#### **Abstract**

Peer-assisted learning (PAL) involves a student peer providing some form of support to a student mentee, usually participating at an earlier point in the same programme of study. PAL has been shown to have benefits for on-campus students. Thus, providing PAL through an online environment may be one way to reduce these concerns. A systematic review of the published literature was performed to identify evidence of the potential benefits of formalized peer-assisted learning for students enrolled on a fully online, distance learning programme in higher education. A recognized methodology was used to search for relevant literature, and to synthesize results. The results of the four studies were inconclusive; differences between, the design of the peer-support and the way in which they had been examined and reported were found. As a result, there was little more than a suggestion that in higher education, formal online peer-support might benefit fully online distance learners in some way.

Keywords: isolation, environment

#### **Introduction**

The continued development of digital technology, notably the introduction of Web 2.0, has created opportunities for transformational change across the higher education sector. Students can participate in a vast range of higher education via online providers around the world without having to leave their physical location. Reports by Allen & Seaman highlight how learning outcomes for online distance learners (ODL) are at least comparable to those for students attending more traditional face-to-face, on-campus education. Yet the impact of physical isolation from other learners and academics, as experienced by ODL, continues to be a cause for concern, especially as it can reduce students' learning experience as a whole. Physical presence provides many opportunities for student to student, and student to tutor interaction – what Garrison and Cleveland-Innes describe as the essential requirement of higher education. The

## **CHAPTER -2.7**

### **Exploring the Challenges and Strategies In Teaching English as a Second Language to Young Learners**

**G.SHANMUGAPRIYA**

**Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur.**

#### **Abstract**

Teaching English as a second language (ESL) to young learners can present challenges, such as limited opportunities to practice outside the classroom. Teachers can use strategies to create an engaging learning environment and help learners develop their language skills. Navigating the complexities of grammar and syntax can be a formidable obstacle, particularly when these elements significantly differ from one's native language. Second, mastering pronunciation and acquiring a native-like accent can be daunting, as it involves adapting to unfamiliar speech patterns and sounds.

**Key Words:** Encouraging interaction, incorporating visual aids, Scaffolding learning, using authentic materials

#### **Introduction**

This research explores the challenges and strategies associated with teaching English speaking skills to young learners in Indonesia, focusing on students learning English as a second or foreign language. The study aims to understand the specific obstacles faced by teachers in this context and to identify effective methods for overcoming these challenges. Employing a qualitative case study approach, the research involved five elementary English teachers selected through purposive sampling. Data collection was conducted through interviews and observations, followed by thematic analysis to interpret the findings. The study also emphasized ensuring data quality through the establishment of trustworthiness.

The findings revealed five key issues impacting the teaching of English-speaking skills to young learners in Indonesia. Challenges stemming from the students included inhibition,

## **CHAPTER-2.8**

### **Impact of culture in English language learning.**

**Dr.M.SUBRAMANIAN**

**Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur.**

#### **Abstract**

English language learning has become a global phenomenon, with millions of learners around the world seeking to acquire proficiency in this lingua franca. One of the key factors influencing English language learning is culture. This paper critically examines the role of culture in English language learning and identifies the challenges and opportunities that language educators face in incorporating culture into their teaching methodologies. The review draws on a comprehensive analysis of existing literature and research, highlighting the significance of culture in language learning and providing practical recommendations for language educators to create culturally inclusive and effective language learning environments.

#### **Keywords**

Challenges, Culture, English language learning, Inclusive learning environments, Language educators, Opportunities.

#### **Introduction**

Language learning in today's globalized world is profoundly influenced by diverse cultural, linguistic, and technological factors (Byram, Gribkova, & Starkey, 2002; Kramsch, 2014). This interconnectedness of cultures and the widespread use of technology have transformed language education, offering both challenges and opportunities to educators. While navigating through this ever-changing terrain, educators should not just recognize the impact of these elements but also use them to improve the language learning journey. Cultural diversity is a defining characteristic of language classrooms, with learners representing a broad spectrum of linguistic and cultural backgrounds (Seidlhofer, 2011). Embracing this diversity is crucial for fostering inclusive and effective language learning environments (Gay, 2010). This involves not only recognizing the variety of languages spoken but also appreciating the richness that diverse



**CHAPTER-2.9****The use of Romanticism in *The Raven*, a poem by Edgar Allan Poe****BANULAKSHMI PALADUGU****Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur.****Abstract**

"The Raven" by Edgar Allan Poe exemplifies Romanticism through its emphasis on emotion, the supernatural, and the exploration of the human psyche. Themes include intense feelings of grief and loss, as well as the haunting presence of the raven, which symbolizes the narrator's descent into madness. The poem's dark, melancholic atmosphere and focus on inner turmoil are hallmark characteristics of Romantic literature.

Key Words: Romanticism,, longing ,separation.

**Introduction**

"The Raven" by Edgar Allan Poe exemplifies Romanticism through its emphasis on emotion, the supernatural, and the exploration of the human psyche. Themes include intense feelings of grief and loss, as well as the haunting presence of the raven, which symbolizes the narrator's descent into madness. According to Catherine Belsey, love is 'a condition of happiness that cannot be bought, the one remaining object of a desire that cannot be sure of purchasing fulfilment.' Her criticism implies that love is an indirect experience, something that occurs when one is happy but not something that is intended. Belsey describes craving as 'what is not said, what cannot be said' suggesting that desire stems from a need to verbally express.

Gothic literature depicts love as unattainable despite the strong desire within its characters. Edgar Allan Poe's *The Raven* depicts a speaker who describes feeling 'weak and weary,' an alliterative statement which depicts tiredness and a lack in strength, after 'many a quaint and curious volume of forgotten lore,' implying he has been reading heavily in an attempt to distract himself from his 'lost Lenore,' the apparent love of his life.

**CHAPTER-2.10**

**Teaching of the poem “where the mind is without fear” in a digital class room.**

**M.UDHAYACHANDRAN**

**Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur.**

**Abstract**

Literature and language teaching are popularly mistaken as two distinct domains of language. In reality they are two intertwined aspects of a language. It is pertinent to channelize literature, an output of the masters of a language as an input to the learners of that language. Literature as a tool for teaching has gained acclaim though not widely practiced in non-native English classrooms. Literature is studied for aesthetic appeal and for the content and not utilized as a tool for teaching language skills. The paper attempts to exploit 'Where the Mind is Without Fear', a verse in Gitanjali, and a masterpiece by Rabindranath Tagore.

Key words: cohesion, impact, stylistic devices

**Introduction**

English has assigned significance for learning it. Mastery in English leads to widening of knowledge, rendering an opening to a career and aiding in development. These implications of English learning have led to setting of varied objectives for English teaching, opportunities for innovative teaching practices, the challenges faced and the researches on providing solutions for it. English teaching practices have started inclining towards the use of digital tools, however utilizing literature as a tool for enhancing language skills has got its own precedence over other tools.

The moral of the poem "where the mind is without fear" by Rabindranath Tagore so envisioning of The India and where the people are free from restrictions and feel to think in a progressive, broad-minded way. The poet asks God to provide his country with the freedom of thought and expression that leads to perfection, free from the shackles of superstitions and the bonds of societal ills. The central idea of the poem "Where the Mind is Without Fear" by Rabindranath Tagore is a prayer to God for a free and progressive India, where people can think and behave rationally and without fear. The poet desires a society where knowledge is free, and people are not bound by superstitions or societal ills.

Where the Mind is Without Fear" by Rabindranath Tagore in a digital classroom:

## **CHAPTER –2.11**

### **The problem of oral expression in English language.**

**S.SANTHIYA**

**Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur.**

#### **Abstract**

The study targets the problem of oral expression among students in some selected junior secondary school in Oredo Local Government Area of Edo State. some researcher questions were formulated to guide the direction of the study. A review of related literature was carried out to find out the views of other writers on the topic studied. Both teachers and students in the selected schools were involved in the study with data for the study collected through the administration of questionnaire to both teachers and students. Their responses were tabulated and placed side by side related research questions for analysis and interpretation for a desired result. Lastly, Summary, findings and conclusion with recommendation were made.

Key Words: self expression

#### **Introduction**

Nigeria adopts English Language as its official language due to many reasons. Of course the principal reason cannot be divorced from ethnic linguistic diversities and the major ethnic languages are Hausa/Fulani in the North, Ibo in the East and Yoruba in the West. English is the language of government, institutions and businesses transaction in the country. It then stands to reason, therefore, that one must have a thorough grasp of the language in both its spoken and written forms. Nigeria therefore remains blessed with a language that is meeting her national aspirations, one that is well advanced and embraced universally, English language that is on this premise is hinged, the various governments, local, state and federal attachment of great importance to the teaching and learning of English language in the educational institutions of learning.

English language is one of the most powerful literary tools developed to a tremendous level, vivid and accurate records of our heroes both living and dead, (Late Chief ObafemiAwolowo, Dr.NnamdiAzikiweetc) may not have been possible without the use of

**CHAPTER- 2.12****Applications in the process of learning English as a second language****R.VISALAKSHI****Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur.****Abstract**

The purpose of this article is to discuss the existing educational mobile applications, which could be also exploited in learning English by elderly since these applications can bring them several benefits, such as the opportunity to connect with their loved ones or make an appointment with a doctor, and thus enable them to stay independent and socially inclusive. In addition, especially the educational mobile applications (apps) may help older people to fight against cognitive decline at a later age. The findings show that there is no mobile app for in learning English by seniors on the Czech market. However, there are four apps, which are used for learning English as a second language. These include: Duolingo, EWA: English, Mondly: Learn 33 languages, and LinGo: Play. The results indicate that the most relevant for learning English by seniors appears to be Duolingo because it has a very pleasant processing, all the content is reachable and orientation in the application is very easy. In addition, based on the findings, a possible application for learning English as a second language by older people should certainly meet the following aspects: have a minimalist design, avoid redundant and irrelevant content, have clear instructions on how to use the application, have simple and easy navigation in the application, and avoid complex controls.

Key Word: Application knowledge

**Introduction**

At present, technologies are an indispensable part of people's life, including everyday life of older people. According to the Senior Citizen Mobile and Internet Usage Statistics survey [1], 70% of individuals at the age of 65+ years spend some time online every day. In addition, according to the survey performed in 2018 by The Elderly and the World Wide Web [2], the findings indicate that the older generation spends 27 hours a week online on average. Martech Zone [1] even states that up to 82% of seniors use search engines to find information on topics that interest them. As far as the use of mobile phones is concerned, a survey by Martech Zone [1]

## **CHAPTER-2.13**

### **Investigating the impact of task based language teaching on student's language proficiency.**

**K.JAYAPRIYA**

**Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur.**

#### **Abstract**

This study examines the impact of task-based English language teaching on Saudi students' competencies, such as reading comprehension and writing proficiency. The mixed-methods approach, involving an experimental component and a qualitative component based on interviews with the participants, is applied in this study. The procedure for the experimental component was developed with attention to the design, implementation, and assessment of task-based English language instruction activities. A growing body of literature suggests that task-based English teaching has gained significance in recent decades because of its perceived relevance in augmenting linguistic and non-linguistic competencies of learners. The study results indicate that the use of tasks in language learning classrooms promotes students' learning, the development of skills in reading and writing, social interaction, and the motivation to use English in real-life situations. These findings can be used to promote language learning in students studying English as a foreign language.

Keywords: EFL learner competencies, oral communication, reading comprehension, task-based language teaching (TBLT), writing.

#### **Introduction**

English is commonly accepted as a universal language and is evolving into an official or second language in many nations given the speed at which globalization is taking place. As a result, the primary requirement for the majority of people nowadays is the capacity to comprehend the language and interact with others in English. Reading is undoubtedly the most important core skill for pupils learning a second language (Pallathadka et al., 2022). According to Okcü (2015), reading enables teachers to employ various activities and aid students in both the long- and short-term development of their language abilities.

**CHAPTER-2.14****Explore the authentic materials in English language teaching.****M.AMALRAJ****Assistant Professor, Department Of English, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur.****Abstract**

Authentic material is any material written in English that was not created for intentional use in the English classroom. Using this content for teaching English can make the teaching experience even more engaging, imaginative and motivating for students. It can also be useful to elicit genuine responses from English language learners. The great thing about using authentic material is that it is everywhere, which makes it easy to find, and simple for learners to practice English in their own time. Remember that it isn't limited to articles from newspapers and magazines. Songs, TV programs and films, radio and podcasts, leaflets, menus – anything written in English constitutes authentic material.

Key words: English classroom, teaching experience, radio and podcasts,

**Introduction**

There are lots of resources available to English teachers today: from textbooks to online teaching tools, they can all aid and enrich English lessons. Many ESL teachers also introduce authentic English material into their lessons to expose learners to the language as it is spoken in the real world. Authentic material is any material written in English that was not created for intentional use in the English classroom. Using this content for teaching English can make the teaching experience even more engaging, imaginative and motivating for students. It can also be useful to elicit genuine responses from English language learners.

The great thing about using authentic material is that it is everywhere, which makes it easy to find, and simple for learners to practice English in their own time. Remember that it isn't limited to articles from newspapers and magazines. Songs, TV programs and films, radio and podcasts, leaflets, menus – anything written in English constitutes authentic material. The best content to select depends on the learners, their level of English and the course content the English teacher wishes to focus on. It's also a good idea to find out the learners' interests – after



# **KURINJI**

EDITED BY

**DR M..MALARKODI**



978-93-6255-261-7

நூல் : குறிஞ்சி

பதிப்பாசிரியர் : முனைவர்.மு.மலர்க்கொடி

மொழி : தமிழ்

பதிப்பு : அக்டோபர், 2019

பதிப்பகம் : தமிழாய்வுத்துறை

பொன்னையா இராம ஜெயம் நிகர்நிலைப்

பல்கலைக்கழகம் .வல்லம், தஞ்சாவூர்-613 403



பொருளடக்கம்

- |    |  |      |      |
|----|--|------|------|
| 1  | இலக்கியங்களில் மருத்துவம்<br>முனைவர் .க.அறிவுக்கனி             | —    | 4    |
| 2  | சங்க கால உணவு முறைகள்<br>முனைவர் சு.சதீஸ்வரன்                  | -    | 10   |
| 3  | சங்க இலக்கியத்தில் வாழ்க்கை முறை<br>திருமதி க.வீணை முத்து      | -14  |      |
| 4  | சங்க இலக்கியத்தில் பழந்தமிழர் பண்பாடு<br>முனைவர் . க.காளீஸ்வரி | -18  |      |
| 5  | திணை கோட்பாடுகள்.<br>முனைவர் . சு.அழகிரிசாமி                   | -    | - 35 |
| 6  | தமிழர் ஈகைக் கோட்பாடு<br>முனைவர் பி.செல்வி                     | -48  |      |
| 7. | தமிழ் இலக்கியங்களில் நிலையாமை<br>முனைவர் சே.சுகந்தி,           | - 53 |      |

## இலக்கியங்களில் மருத்துவம்

முனைவர். க .அறிவுக்கனி

தமிழ்த்துறை, உதவிப்பேராசிரியர்

பொன்னையா இராம ஜெயம் நிகர்நிலைப்

பல்கலைக்கழகம், வல்லம், தஞ்சாவூர்.613403

### முன்னுரை

தமிழக நிலப்பரப்பும் பண்பாடும் மிகப்பழமையானது. தமிழர்க்கு இயல், இசை, நாடகம் என்ற முத்தமிழையும் தந்ததோடல்லாமல் எப்படி வாழ வேண்டும் என்பதையும் கற்றுத் தந்தவர்கள். கட்டிடக்கலை, சிற்பக்கலை, ஆடற்கலை என்று பல கலைகளையும் உலகிற்கு சொல்லிச் சென்றுள்ளனர் நம் முன்னோர். அவற்றில் ஒன்றுதான் மருத்துவக்கலை.இயற்கையோடு இணைந்து வாழ்ந்தால் தாவரங்களின மருத்துவ குணங்களை நன்கு தெரிந்து வைத்திருந்தனர். சங்க இலக்கியங்களில் பாடல்கள் பாடிய புலவர்கள் பலர் மருத்துவத்துறையில் கைதேர்ந்தவர்களாக இருந்திருக்கின்றனர். புலவருடைய பெயர்கள் அவர்கள் மருத்துவர்களாக இருந்திருக்கலாம் என்பதனை அடையாளப்படுத்தும் விதமாக உள்ளது. சான்றாக கடுகு பெருந்தேவனார், காபட்டனார், வெள்ளெருக்கிலையார், காரியாசன், முக்கல் ஆசான், மதுரைக் காளாசான் ,, மருத்துவர் நல்லச்சுதனார் ஆகிய புலவர்களின் பெயர்களில் இருந்து அவர்கள் மருத்துவர்கள் என்று அரிய முடிகிறது. நம் இலக்கியங்கள் காலத்திற்கு ஏற்ற உணவும் உடையும் மேற்கொள்ள வழிகாட்டின.

### உணவே மருந்து

உயிர் நிலைபெற்று வாழ்வதற்கு உணவு அவசியமாகிறது.மனித வாழ்விற்குத் தேவையான உணவு,உடை,இருப்பிடம் என்பனவற்றுள் உணவே முதலிடம் பெறுகிறது. இன்று மாறிவரும் உணவுப்பழக்கமும் கால நேரம் இல்லாமல் உணவு உண்பதும் நம் ஆரோக்கியத்தைக் கெடுத்து ஆயுளைக் குறைக்கின்றது.

“மாறுபா டில்லாத உண்டி மறுத்துண்ணின்

ஊறுபா டில்லை உயிர்க்கு” குறள்.945

என்பது வள்ளுவரின் வாக்கு. பகவத்கீதை 'ஒரு யாமம் கழிந்த உணவை உண்ணாதே' என்கிறது. அதாவது அவ்வப்பொழுது சமைக்கும் உணவை மட்டுமே உண்ண வேண்டும். நாம் எந்த வகையான உணவை உண்கின்றோமோ அதற்கேற்றவாறு நமது மனநிலை மாறுகின்றது என்று கீதை கூறுகிறது. உணவும் ஒரு மனிதனுடைய செயல்பாடும் சரியாக இருந்தால் நோய் ஏற்படாது என்று எண்ணினர். நன்கு பசிக்க வேண்டும், பசித்த பின்பு பசிக்க வேண்டும், உண்ட உணவு நன்கு செரிக்க வேண்டும், அப்படி இருந்தால் உடலுக்கு மருந்தே தேவையில்லை. உணவு உண்ணும் முறைகளிலும் ஒரு வகைப்பாடு உள்ளது.

## சங்க கால உணவு முறைகள்

முனைவர் ச.சதீஸ்வரன்

தமிழ்த்துறை, உதவிப்பேராசிரியர்

பொன்னையா இராம ஜெயம் நிகர்நிலைப்

பல்கலைக்கழகம், வல்லம், தஞ்சாவூர்.613403

உயிர்வாழ உணவு மிக முக்கியமான ஒன்று. ஆரோக்கிய உணவு என்றாலே நாம் அனைவரின் நினைவுக்கு வருவது. வீட்டில் அம்மா சமைத்துக் கொடுக்கும் உணவுகள் தான் நமக்கு தேவையான சத்துக்களைத் தரக்கூடிய உணவுகளை போதுமான அளவிற்கு உண்பது தான் ஆரோக்கிய உணவு என்பதாகும். அப்படிப்பட்ட உணவு வகைகளை நமது சங்க கால மக்கள் சமைத்து உண்டு மகிழ்ந்தனர் என்பதைத்தான் இக்கட்டுரையில் காண போகிறோம்.

### உணவு

உயிர்வாழ உணவு மிக முக்கியமான ஒன்று. ஆரோக்கிய உணவு என்றாலே நாம் அனைவரின் நினைவுக்கு வருவது. வீட்டில் அம்மா சமைத்துக் கொடுக்கும் உணவுகள் தான் நமக்கு தேவையான சத்துக்களைத் தரக்கூடிய உணவுகளை போதுமான அளவிற்கு உண்பது தான் ஆரோக்கிய உணவு என்பதாகும். அப்படிப்பட்ட உணவு வகைகளை நமது சங்க கால மக்கள் சமைத்து உண்டு மகிழ்ந்தனர் என்பதைத்தான் இக்கட்டுரையில் காண போகிறோம்.

### வீட்டுக் கருவிகள்

சங்க காலத் தமிழர்கள், வீட்டு வேலைகளைச் செய்வதற்கு இன்று நாம் பயன்படுத்துவதற்கு இணையான கருவிகளைப் பயன்படுத்தினார்கள்.

### வெட்டுக்கருவிகள்

- 1) அடிமனை
- 2) கணிச்சி
- 3) நீர் முகக்கும் கருவி
- 4) மத்து
- 5) உரல்
- 6) உலக்கை
- 7) மட்பாண்டங்கள்

### நற்றிணையில் சமையல் முறை:

சங்க கால மக்களின் உணவுமுறை மற்றும் சமையல் முறைகள் நற்றிணையில் உள்ளன. அவை அவர்களின் உணவு வகை மக்களின் பருவச் சூழ்நிலை, வாழும் நிலத்தின் தன்மை. விளையுள் பொருள்கள், பொருளாதார நிலை ஆகியவற்றைப் பொறுத்தே அமைகிறது.

சங்க கால மக்களின் உணவு வகைகள் உடல் நலத்திற்கு ஏற்றவையாக இருந்தன. மேலும் உணவைச் சுவையுறச் சமைப்பதிலும், உண்பதிலும் அம்மக்கள் சிறந்து விளங்கினர். பெரும்பாலும் அக்காலத்தில் உணவினை நீரிட்டு, அவித்தல், வறுத்தல், சுடுதல் வற்றலாக்குதல், எண்ணெயிலிட்டுப் பொரித்தல், ஊறவைத்தல் போன்ற முறைகளைப் பின்பற்றினர். நற்றிணைப் பாடல் ஒன்றில் தலைவி இரவில் வந்த விருந்தினருக்கு நெய் விட்டுக் கொழுப்பு உடைய ஊனைச் சமைக்கின்றாள் என்று குறிப்பு உள்ளது.

## சங்க இலக்கியத்தில் வாழ்க்கை முறை

திருமதி க.வீணை முத்து

தமிழ்த்துறை, உதவிப்பேராசிரியர்

பொன்னையா இராம ஜெயம் நிகர்நிலைப்

பல்கலைக்கழகம், வல்லம், தஞ்சாவூர்.613403

முன்னுரை:

சங்ககாலத் தமிழகத்தின் சமூகவரலாற்றை அறிவதற்குச் சங்க இலக்கியம் தலைமை ஆதாரமாக அமைகிறது. குடும்ப சமூகஉறவுநிலைகளைப் புறப்பாடல்களும் அகப்பாடல்களும் சித்தரிக்கின்றன. விரயுகம் ஆகிய சங்ககாலத்தின் இவ்வறவு நிலைகளைத் தெளிவாகப் புரிந்து கொள்ள வேறு காலகட்டத்தைச் சேர்ந்த இலக்கியங்களைத் துணை கொள்ள வழியில்லை.

சமூகநலன் கருதிய செயல்பாடு:

பரதவர் சமூகத்தில் பொதுநலன் கருதி கலங்கரை விளக்கு ஏற்றினர். இரவில் கடலில் வரும் நாவாய்களுக்கும் படகுகளுக்கும் கரை இருக்கும் திசையைத் தெரிவிக்க இது ஏதுவாயிற்று. (நற்.-பா-219) தாயங் கண்ணனார் அவ்விளக்கு இளஞாயிறு போல் ஒளிவீசியது என்கிறார்.

பெற்றோர் மக்கள் உறவு:

தாயும் தந்தையும் ஒருசேரத் தம் மக்களைப் பாசத்துடன் வளர்த்தனர். குழந்தைக்கு உணவூட்டும் தாய் பற்றிய சித்தரிப்பு நற்றிணையில் உள்ளது. (பா- 110) தன் குழந்தை பாலுண்ண மறுக்குங்கால் சிறு கோலால் ஓச்சும் பாசமிகு தந்தையின் செயலைப் பொன்முடியார் வருணிக்கிறார். (புறம்.- பா- 310)

மணமுடிக்குமுன் செல்லமகள் தந்தையிடம் நகை கேட்டுக் கொஞ்சுவது உண்டு. மகள் விருப்பப்படி தந்தை நகை செய்து போட்டு மகிழ்வது உண்டு. திருமணத்திற்குப் பின்னர் தந்தை தன் செல்லமகள் குடும்பவாழ்வின் வறுமை நீக்க முற்படுவதும் உண்டு. ஆனால் மகள் அதை ஏற்றுக்கொள்ள மறுப்பதே செம்மாந்த பண்பு என்ற கொள்கை இருந்தது. (நற்.- பா- 110)

மகளின் வாழ்விற்கும் பாதுகாப்பிற்கும் தந்தை பொறுப்பெடுத்தான். அவளது இல்லற அமைதிக்கு ஊறு நேரின் அதைத் தந்தை தட்டிக் கேட்பான் என்ற கருத்தும் காணக் கிடக்கிறது. சங்கு வளையல் கேட்டு அழுத மகளுக்குத் தந்தை பொற்றொடி செய்து போட்டதாகவும்; அது தலைவி தன் தலைவனைப் பிரிந்து இருந்தக்கால் புறத்தார் இவளது தோள்மெலிவை உணரா வகையில் உதவியது என்றும் (நற்.- 136) நற்றங்கொற்றனாரின் பாடல் சித்தரிக்கிறது.

'தலைவியின் தந்தையும் தமையன்மாரும் மிகுந்த நெஞ்சுரமும் வலிமையும் வலியையும் கொண்டவர். தம் குடும்பத்தைச் சேர்ந்த பெண்ணை ஒருவன் ஏமாற்றி விட்டால்; அவர்கள் கொள்ளும் சினத்தையும் அதன் விளைவாகச் செய்யும் செயலையும் யாராலும் தடுத்து நிறுத்த இயலாது. அந்தச் சூழலைப் புரிந்து கொண்டே களவுக்குப் பின் தலைவன் திருமணம் செய்து கொண்டான். இப்போது திருமணத்திற்குப் பின்னர் அவன் புறத்தொழுக்கம் கொண்டதால் தலைவி துன்புறுகிறாள். இச்செய்தி அவள் தந்தைக்குத் தெரிந்தால் என்ன ஆகும்?' என்று தோழி பேசுவதாகச் சீத்தலைச்சாத்தனார் (நற்.- பா- 127) பாடுகிறார்.

அண்ணன் தம்பி உறவு:

முந்தைய நாள் போரில் அண்ணனை ஒருவன் கொல்ல மறுநாள் போரில் தன் அண்ணனுக்காகப் பழிவாங்கத் துடிக்கும் தம்பி பற்றி அரிசில்கிழார் (புறம்.- பா- 300) சுட்டிக் காட்டுகிறார்.

விருந்தயரப் பொருள் இன்றேல் அவ்வாழ்க்கை திருந்தா வாழ்க்கை; அது நன்மையற்றது என்று பெருங்குன்றூர் கிழார் (புறம்.- பா- 266) பாடுகிறார்.

சமூகத்தின் மிகச்சிறிய அங்கம் குடும்பம். குடும்ப உறுப்பினர்களுக்கு ஒரு சமுதாயத்தைக் கட்டிக் காக்கும் கடமை இருந்தது. குடும்பத்தில் ஒருவனும் ஒருத்தியும் சேர்ந்து நடத்தும் இல்லறத்தின் நோக்கமாவது; பங்காளிகளின் துன்பம் நீக்கி, நட்பினரின் இன்னல் களைந்து, நொதுமலாளரையும் பேணுவதாம். (அகநானூறு - பா- 95) கணக்காயனார் மகனார் நக்கீரனார் இதன் காரணமாகவே இல்லறத்தில் பொருள் முக்கியத்துவம் பெறுவதாக விதந்தோதுகிறார்.

குடும்ப உறுப்பினர்களுக்கும், சமூக உறுப்பினர்களுக்கும் உரிய கடமையே அவர்களிடையே உறவை ஏற்படுத்தியது. 'ஈன்று புறந்தருவது தாயின் கடமை; சான்றோனாக்குதல் தந்தையின் கடமை; வேல் வடித்துக் கொடுத்தல் கொல்லன் கடமை; வாகனமும் போர்வாய்ப்பும் நல்குதல் வேந்தனின் கடமை; போரில் வீரத்தைக் காட்டித் திரும்புதல் ஒரு குடிமகனின் கடமை என்று பொன்முடியார் வரிசைப்படுத்தி உள்ளார். (புறம்.- பா- 312).

தனிமனிதன் சமூகத்தோடு கொள்ளும் உறவு:

தனிமனிதன் ஊரோடு ஒட்டி வாழும் போது அந்த உறவுநிலை அவனது உயிரை விலையாகப் பெறுவதும் உண்டு. ஊர் நன்மைக்காக ஒருவன் தான் பொறுப்பேற்கும் தியாகநிலையைத் தனிமகனார் எடுத்துக் காட்டியுள்ளார். (நற்.- பா- 153) பகைவர் போர் மேற்கொண்டு அலைத்து வரும் போது ஊர்மக்கள் கலங்கிப் பாதுகாப்பிற்காக ஊரைக் காலி செய்து விட்டுச் செல்ல ஒருவன் தனித்திருந்து அந்தப் பாழூரைக் காவல் காத்து நிற்கிறான். அவன் உயிர் பிழைத்தல் அரிது எனினும்; தன் ஊர்மக்களுக்காக இப்பொறுப்பை ஏற்கிறான்.

தன் ஊரின் கால்நடையை எதிரிகள் கவர்ந்து செல்லும் போது அவற்றை மீட்பதற்காக ஒருவன் உயிரை விடும் சூழலும் ஏற்படலாம் என்பது வடமோதங் கிழார் பாடலில் (புறம். -பா-260) தெற்றெனப் புலனாகிறது.

ஆண்கள் மட்டுமின்றிப் பெண்களும் சமூகத்திற்குத் தாம் கடம்பட்டு இருப்பதை உணர்ந்திருந்தனர். முதல்நாள் போரில் தந்தை வீரமரணம் அடைய; இரண்டாம் நாள் போரில் கணவன் கால்நடைகளை மீட்பதற்கு உயிரை விட; மூன்றாம் நாளும் தன் மகனைப் போருக்கு அனுப்பும் தாய் தான் வாழும் சமூகத்திற்குத் தான் பட்ட கடமையை முற்றும் உணர்ந்தவள் ஆவாள். (புறம்.- பா- 279) ஒக்கூர் மாசாத்தியார்,

"செருப்பறை கேட்டு விருப்புற்று மயங்கி

வேல்கைக் கொடுத்து வெளிது விரித்து உடஇ

ஒருமகன் அல்லது இல்லோள்

செருமுகம் நோக்கிச் செல்கென விடு"த்த

தாயைத் தன் பாடல்நாயகி ஆக்கியுள்ளார்.

விழாக்களும் மக்கள் சமூகமாகக் கூடி வாழும் உறவுநிலையை வலுப்படுத்தின. முதுவாய்க் குயவன் சாறு என அறிவித்ததுடன் விழா தொடங்கியது.(நற்.- பா- 200) விழா தொடங்கியவுடன் அந்தக் குடியிருப்பைச் சேர்ந்தோர்க்கு அச்சமூக நிகழ்வில் பங்கேற்க வேண்டிய கட்டாயம் இருந்தது. சாத்தந்தையார் வருணிக்கும் கட்டில் முடைவோன்; மனைவி மகப்பேறு உற்ற நிலையில்; பொருளின் தேவை முதற்குறி என்பதால்; ஞாயிறு மறையும் மழைக்கால மாலையில்; ஊர்த் திருவிழாவில் பங்கேற்க விரைந்து செயல் ஆற்றுவது அவனது சமூகக் கடப்பாட்டை எடுத்துக் காட்டுகின்றது.

திருமணம் என்ற நிறுவனத்தைச் சங்ககாலச் சமூகம் போற்றியது. திருமணத்திற்கு முன்னர் ஒருவனும் ஒருத்தியும் இரவிலோ பகலிலோ களவு மேற்கொள்வதை சமூகம் விரும்பவில்லை. அதனாலேயே களவுக்கால வாழ்க்கை அலர் தூற்றுவதற்கும், அம்பலாக விரிவதற்கும் வாய்ப்பளித்தது. அந்த அலரையும், அம்பலையும்

## சங்க இலக்கியத்தில் பழந்தமிழர் பண்பாடு

முனைவர் . க.காளீஸ்வரி  
 தமிழ்த்துறை, உதவிப்பேராசிரியர்  
 பொன்னையா இராம ஜெயம் நிகர்நிலைப்  
 பல்கலைக்கழகம், வல்லம், தஞ்சாவூர்.613403

பழந்தமிழர் வாழ்வு நிலம் சார்ந்து அமைந்தது. ஐந்நில வாழ்வே  
 ஐந்திணைகளாக மலர்ந்து மணம் பரப்பியது. இத்தகைய திணை சார்ந்த  
 வாழ்வியலைத் தான் சங்க இலக்கியம் கட்டமைத்துள்ளது. மனிதன்  
 வாழ்ந்த, வாழும் வாழ்வியலைப் பதிவு செய்யும் மூலங்களுள் இலக்கியம்  
 குறிப்பிடத்தக்க ஒன்று. இலக்கியம் மக்கள் வாழ்வியலைப் பிரதிபலிக்கும்  
 கண்ணாடி என்பார் சான்றோர். இலக்கியம் வாழ்வியலை மட்டுமன்று  
 காலத்தையும் பிரதிபலிக்கும், பதிவு செய்யும் சிறந்த ஆவணமாக  
 விளங்குவதற்குச் சிறந்த சான்று சங்க இலக்கியங்களே. மனிதன் தான்  
 வாழும் புவியியற் சூழலுக்கு ஏற்ப வாழ்க்கை முறைகளை வகுத்துக்  
 கொள்கின்றான். “வாழும் நிலத்தின் இயல்புக்கு ஏற்றவாறு மக்களின்  
 வாழ்க்கை முறையும் பண்பாடும் அமையும் என்பது வரலாற்று  
 ஆய்வாளர்களின் முடிபாகும்”.<sup>1</sup> சங்கத் தமிழரின் வாழ்வியலை அறிந்து  
 கொள்ள நமக்குக் கிடைக்கும் ஒரே ஆதாரமாகச் சங்க இலக்கியங்கள்  
 விளங்குகின்றன. எனவே தான் “பண்டைக் காலத்துத் தமிழ் மக்களுடைய  
 தினசரி வாழ்க்கை நெறியை அவர்கள் இயற்றியுள்ள பாடல்களிலிருந்து  
 ஊகிப்பதே தக்கதாகும் என்று வையாபுரிப்பிள்ளையும் பண்டைத் தமிழரின்  
 வாழ்க்கையைப் பற்றி அறிந்து கொள்வதற்கான ஆதாரங்களாகச் சங்க  
 இலக்கியங்களையே குறிப்பிடுகிறார்”<sup>2</sup>. மக்கள் வாழ்வியலின்  
 இன்றியமையா கூறுகளான உறைவிடம், உணவு, உடை, தொழில்,  
 தெய்வம், மொழி, அரசியலமைப்பு, விருந்தோம்பல், ஒற்றுமை உணர்வு

திணை கோட்பாடுகள்.

முனைவர் . சு.அழகிரிசாமி

தமிழ்த்துறை, உதவிப்பேராசிரியர்

பொன்னையா இராம ஜெயம் நிகர்நிலைப்

பல்கலைக்கழகம், வல்லம், தஞ்சாவூர்.613403

திணைக் கோட்பாடும் அகமும்

மனிதன் உள்ளிட்ட எந்தவகை உயிரினத்திற்கும் உள்ள உயிர்க்கடமை இனப்பெருக்கமே. உயிரினங்கள் உண்பதும் உயிர் வாழ்வதும் இதன் பொருட்டே. பாலின ஈர்ப்பும் இன்ப நாட்டமும் எல்லா உயிர்களுக்கும் இயல்பான உயிர் இயக்கம்.

எல்லா உயிர்க்கும் இன்பம் என்பது

தான் அமர்ந்து வருடம் மேவற்று ஆகும் (தொல். பொருள். பொரு. 27.)

இன்பநாட்டம் எல்லா உயிரினங்களுக்கும் இயல்புக்கமாய் அமைவது என்று இலக்கணம் வகுக்கிறார் தொல்காப்பியர். இன்ப நாட்டத்திற்கான ஒருவகை உளவியல் வெளிப்பாடே அகம். ஆணும் பெண்ணும் கூடிக்கலக்கும் பாலியல் தேவைக்கான அழகியல் வெளிப்பாட்டு வடிவமே அகப்பாடல்கள். இத்தகு அகப்பாடல்கள் இலக்கிய ஆக்கம்பெற வடிவமைத்துக் கொள்ளப் பெற்றயே அகப்பொருள் மரபுகள்.

நாடக வழக்கினும் உலகியல் வழக்கினும்

பாடல் சான்ற புலனெறி வழக்கம் (தொல். பொருள். அகத். 56.)

என்ற நூற்பாவில் புலனெறி வழக்கம் என்று இத்தகு மரபுகளைக் குறிப்பிடுவார் தொல்காப்பியர். புலனெறி வழக்கின் அகக் கட்டமைப்புகளே தொல்காப்பியர் குறிப்பிடும் திணைமரபு, கைகோள் மரபு, கூற்று மரபு ஆகிய மூன்றுவகை மரபுகளும். இவற்றுள் திணைமரபு சிறப்பாகக் குறிப்பிடத்தக்கது. தமிழின் திணைமரபு இரண்டு அடுக்குகளைக் கொண்டது. முதல் அடுக்கு நிலம் சார்ந்த தமிழர் வாழ்வியலின் பதிவுகளைக் கொண்டது. இரண்டாவது அடுக்கு புனைவியல் சார்ந்த இலக்கியக் கோட்பாடு.

அகத்திணை மரபுகள்:

தமிழ் இலக்கியத்தில் நீண்ட நெடிய அகப்பாடல் மரபுத்தொடர்ச்சி உண்டு. அவற்றுள் அகப்பாடல் மரபுகளைக் கட்டமைப்பதில் சங்க அகப்பாடல்களும் தொல்காப்பியமும் சிறப்பான பங்களிப்பினை வழங்கியுள்ளன. ஆயினும் தொல்காப்பியம் வரையறுக்கும் சிலமரபுகள் சங்க இலக்கியங்களில் பொருந்தி வரவில்லை. சங்க இலக்கியங்கள் முழுமைக்குமான பொதுவான அகத்திணை மரபுகள் என்று திட்டவாட்டமாக எதனையும்

## தமிழர் ஈகைக் கோட்பாடு

முனைவர் பி.செல்வி

தமிழ்த்துறை, உதவிப்பேராசிரியர்

பொன்னையா இராம ஜெயம் நிகர்நிலைப்

பல்கலைக்கழகம், வல்லம், தஞ்சாவூர்.613403

தமிழர் ஈகைக் கோட்பாடு (சங்க இலக்கியம்)

பசியும் பாலுணர்வும் உயிரினங்களுக்கு இயற்கை அளித்த கொடை. உயிரினங்களின் சந்ததிச் சங்கிலி அறுபடாமல் தொடர, தமது இனத்தைத் தொடர்ந்து பெருக்கிக்கொண்டே செல்ல, இனப்பெருக்கத்திற்கான இயல்புக்கமாக பாலுணர்வு அமைந்தது. உயிரினங்கள் வாழ்தலும் வாழ்தல் நிமித்தமும் இதன்பொருட்டே. வாழ்தலுக்கு உணவு தேவை. உணவுண்ணத் தேவைப்படுவது பசி என்னும் இயல்புக்கம். பசி இயற்கையானது. பசியாறத் தேவைப்படும் உணவு இயல்பாய்த் தேவைப்படும் போதெல்லாம் கிடைத்துக் கொண்டிருக்கும்வரை உயிரினங்களுக்குப் போராட்டம் இல்லை. மனித சமூகத்திற்கும் இதே விதிதான்.

மனிதனின் போராட்ட வாழ்க்கை பசியில் தொடங்கிப் பசியில் தொடர்கின்றது. மனிதன் கூட்டமாக வேட்டையாடி, கிடைத்த உணவைத் தங்களுக்குள் பகிர்ந்து உண்டதெல்லாம் பழையகதை. தன் பசி தெரிந்த மனிதன் சக மனிதனின் பசியையும் உணர்ந்து கிடைத்ததைக் கொடுத்து உண்டது இனக்குழுச் சமூகத்தில். உடைமைச் சமூகத்தில்தான் தன் பசியும் சக மனிதர்களின் பசியும் பிரச்சனைக்குள்ளாயின.

இனக்குழுச் சமூகத்தில் உணவு வயிற்றுத் தேவைக்காகச் சேகரிக்கப்பட்டது. பசிக்கு உணவு என்பது அந்தச் சமூகத்து நிலை. உடைமைச் சமூகத்தில் உணவு உபரியாகச் சேகரிக்கப்பட்டு அல்லது படைக்கப்பட்டு ஒரு பிரிவினரின் உடைமையாக, செல்வமாக ஆக்கப்பட்டது. இவ்வகைச் சமூகத்தில் உபரியான உணவு அதை வைத்திருந்தவனுக்கு ஒரு தகுதியை, பெருமையைக் கூட்டியது. திருக்குறள் அரசனுக்குரிய ஆறு அங்கங்களில் ஒன்றாகக் கூழ் (உணவு) என்பதனைக் கூட்டிச் சொன்னது இதன்பொருட்டே.

உணவு உள்ளவன் உணவு இல்லாதவனுக்குப் பகிர்ந்தளித்த வேட்டைச் சமூகப் பழங்குடி வழக்கம் சங்க காலத்து குறுநிலத் தலைவர்கள் : மன்னர்கள் என்று வருணிக்கப்பட்ட வள்ளல்களிடம் இயல்பாக இருந்தது. இந்தவகை உணவுப் பங்கீட்டில் கொடுப்பவன், பெறுபவன் என்ற ஏற்றத்தாழ்வு இருப்பதில்லை. இந்நிலை காலப்போக்கில் மாற்றமடைந்து உடைமைச் சமூகத்தில், உணவு உள்ளவன் உணவு இல்லாதவனுக்கு இரக்கத்தோடு உணவளித்தல், வழங்குதல், ஈதல் என்ற அறமாக மாற்றம் பெற்றது. இங்கே உணவைக் கொடுப்பவன், பெறுபவன் இடையே ஏற்றத்தாழ்வு கற்பிக்கப்பட்டது. கொடுத்தல் ஈகை, பெறுதல் இரத்தல் என்றும் கொடுப்பவன் உயர்ந்தவன், பெறுபவன் தாழ்ந்தவன் என்றும் சமூக மதிப்பீடுகள் மாற்றம் பெற்றன. சக மனிதனுக்கு உணவு வழங்குவது ஈகை என்றானதும் இந்த ஈகை அறம் என்றானதும் இந்த உடைமைச் சமூகத்தில்தான்.

சங்க இலக்கியங்களில் ஈகை அறம்:

சங்ககாலச் சமூகம் இனக்குழுச் சமுதாய அமைப்பிலிருந்து உடைமைச் சமூகமாக மாறிக்கொண்டிருந்த ஒரு காலகட்டமாகும். சங்க இலக்கியங்களில் வேட்டையோடு தொடர்புடைய குறுநிலத் தலைவர்கள் தம்மை நாடிவந்த பாணர் மரபைச் சேர்ந்த பாணர், பொருநர், விறவியர், கூத்தர் முதலான கலைஞர் குழுக்களுக்கு



## தமிழ்இலக்கியங்களில்நிலையாமை

(முனைவர் சே.சுகந்தி,  
உதவிப்பேராசிரியர், தமிழ்த்துறை,  
பொன்னையா இராமஜெயம் அறிவியல் மற்றும் தொழில் நுட்பக்கல்லூரி,  
வல்லம்-தஞ்சாவூர் - 613 403.

முன்னுரை:

தமிழ் இலக்கியங்களில் நிலையாமை பற்றிய செய்திகள் பரவலாகக் காணமுடிகிறது. உலகில் நிலையாமை ஒன்று மட்டுமே நிலையானது என்னும் செய்தி இலக்கியங்களின் பாடுபொருள்களுள் குறிப்பிடத்தக்கது. எனவே நிலையாமையை பற்றி எடுத்துரைப்பதே இக்கட்டுரையின் நோக்கமாகும்.

நிலையாமை விளக்கம்:

“நிலையாமை” என்பது உலகியல் வாழ்க்கை நிலையில்லாதது என்பதை குறிக்கும் ஒரு சொல் ஆகும்.

“ஆடி அடங்கும் வாழ்க்கையடா

ஆறடி நிலமே சொந்தமடா” என்று

“நீர்க்குமிழி” திரைப்படப்பாடலில் கவியரசு கண்ணதாசன் உணர்த்தியுள்ளார். பாமர மக்களும் நிலையாமைத் தன்மையை புரிந்துக் கொள்ளும் வகையில்,

“போனால் போகட்டும் போடா

இந்த பூமியில் நிலையாய்

வாழ்ந்தவர் யாரடா”

என்ற பாடல் வரிகள் “பாலும் பழமும்” திரைப்படத்தின் மூலம் எடுத்துரைக்கின்றன.

“பாங்கருஞ் சிறப்பிற் பல்லாற்றானும்

நில்லா உலகம் புல்லிய நெறித்தே”

(தொல்.புறத்.நூ.76)

என்பது தொல்காப்பியர் விதியாகும்.



# MULLAI

*Edited by*

**DR.S.AALAGIRISAMY**



978-93-6255-419-2

நூல் : முல்லை

பதிப்பாசிரியர் : முனைவர் சு.அழகிரிசாமி

மொழி : தமிழ்

பதிப்பு : 2019

வெளியீடு : மார்ச் 2019

பதிப்பகம் : தமிழாய்வுத்துறை

பொன்னையா இராம ஜெயம் நிகர்நிலைப்

பல்கலைக்கழகம் .வல்லம், தஞ்சாவூர்-613 403

## பொருளடக்கம்

1.ஐந்திணைகளும் உரிப்பொருளும்	3
முனைவர் . க.காளீஸ்வரி	
2.முதுமொழிக்காஞ்சி.	6
முனைவர் சு.சதீஸ்வரன்	
3. புறநானூற்றுப் பாடல்களில் மனிதநேயம்	15
முனைவர் .க.அறிவுக்கனி	
4. சங்க இலக்கியத்தில் விலங்குகள்	22
திருமதி க.வீணை முத்து	
5, கலித்தொகை	31
முனைவர் . சு.அழகிரிசாமி	
6.முல்லைப்பாட்டு	38
முனைவர் சே.சுகந்தி	
7.முல்லையின் சிறப்புகள்	52
முனைவர் பி.செல்வி	

## ஐந்திணைகளும் உரிப்பொருளும்

முனைவர் . க.காளீஸ்வரி ,  
உதவிப்பேராசிரியர் , தமிழ்த் துறை ,  
பொன்னையா ராமஜெயம் நிகர் நிலை  
பல்கலைக்கழகம், வல்லம், தஞ்சாவூர் .

ஐந்திணைகளும் உரிப்பொருளும் (Five landscapes and love themes) என்பது தொல்காப்பியம் முதலில் வரையறுத்த வாழிட மக்கள் சார்ந்த அகத்திணை இலக்கிய மரபு வகையினமாகும். இந்நூல் தமிழக வாழிடத்தைப் புவியியலாக ஐந்து வாழிடங்களாகப் பிரித்து அம்மக்களின் வாழ்முறைமைகளுக்கு இலக்கணம் இலக்கணம் வகுத்தது.<sup>[1][2]</sup>

### திணை

'திணை என்பது திட் அல்லது திண் என்னும் அடியாகப் பிறந்தது, நிலப்பரப்பு என்பது இதன் பொருள்' என்று திணை என்னும் சொல்லுக்கு விளக்கம் தருகிறார் ந.சி.கந்தையா பிள்ளை.<sup>[3]</sup>

திணை என்ற சொல் சங்கப் பாடல்களில் குடி, குடியிருப்பு, கணம் ஆகிய பொருள்களில் கையாளப்பட்டுள்ளது. இப்பொழுது 'ஒழுக்கம்' என்ற பொருளில் வழங்கப்பட்டு வருகிறது.

'ஒழுக்கத்திணைத் திணை என்பாரும், நிலத்திணை திணை என்பாரும் இருபகுதியர் ஆசிரியர்; அது பொருந்தாது. ஒழுக்கமே திணை எனப்படும்' என்பதனால் திணை ஒழுக்கமே என்பது உறுதியாகிறது.

## முதுமொழிக்காஞ்சி..

முனைவர் சு.சதீஸ்வரன்

உதவிப்பேராசிரியர் , தமிழ்த் துறை ,  
பொன்னையா ராமஜெயம் நிகர் நிலை  
பல்கலைக்கழகம், வல்லம், தஞ்சாவூர் .

### முன்னுரை:

உலகின் மூத்தமொழி; உயர்தனிச் செம்மொழி; மூவேந்தர் மடியில் தவழ்ந்தமொழி; முச்சங்கம் வைத்து வளர்த்த மொழி. அச்சங்க இலக்கியங்களுள் பாட்டும் தொகையும் என்னும் எட்டுத்தொகை, பத்துப்பாட்டு நூல்களை மேற்கணக்கென்றும், சங்கம் மருவிய காலத்தில் இயற்றப்பட்ட பதினெட்டு நூல்களைப் பதினெண் கீழ்க்கணக்கு நூல்கள் என்றும் வழங்குவர்.அவை

நாலடி நான்மணி நானாற்பது ஐந்திணைமுப்

பால்கடுகங் கோவை பழமொழி மாமூலம்

இந்நிலைய காஞ்சியோ டேலாதி என்பவே

கைந்நிலைய வாம்கீழ்க் கணக்கு என்னும் இப்பழம்பாடலில் கண்ட நூல்கள்.

கீழ்க்கணக்குத் தொகையால் ஒன்று வகையால் பதினெட்டு. பாடியோர் பதின்மூவர்.

அவர்கள் காலத்தால்,இடத்தால்,குலத்தால்,சமயத்தால் மாறுபட்டவர்கள்.

. இந்நூல்கள் அறம், அகம், புறம் என மூன்றாகப் பகுக்கப்பட்டுள்ளன. இவற்றில்

அறநூல் பதினொன்று, அக நூல் ஆறு, புறநூல் ஒன்று என்ற வகையில்

அமைந்துள்ளன. அறநூல் பதினொன்றில் ஒன்று முதுமொழிக்காஞ்சி..

இந்நீதி நூல் ஒற்றை அடியால் உலக நீதிகளை எடுத்துரைக்கின்றது, இதன் யாப்பினைக் குறள் வெண்செந்துறை என்பர். ஆயிரத்து எண்ணூறு ஆண்டுகளுக்கு முற்பட்டது. சிலர் இந்நூல் இயற்றப்பட்ட காலம் சங்கம்

## புறநானூற்றுப் பாடல்களில் மனிதநேயம்

முனைவர் .க.அறிவுக்கனி

உதவிப்பேராசிரியர் , தமிழ்த் துறை ,

பொன்னையா ராமஜெயம் நிகர் நிலை

பல்கலைக்கழகம், வல்லம், தஞ்சாவூர்

### முன்னுரை

சங்க இலக்கியங்களில் காதல், போர், வீரம், கொடையை மட்டுமின்றி மனிதநேயத்தையும் சிறப்பித்துக் கூறுகின்றன. சங்ககாலப் புலவர்கள் நுண்ணறிவும், ஆழ்ந்த சிந்தனையும், மனித நேயம் கொண்டவர்களாகத் திகழ்ந்திருந்தனர். மனிதன் மற்ற உயிர்களிடத்தில் காட்டும் அன்பு மனிதநேயம். மனிதன் என்ற சொல்லானது மனம் என்ற வேர்ச்சொல்லிலிருந்து தோன்றியதாகும். இத்தகைய மனதை உடையவன் தான் மனிதனாகிறான். மனதில் பலவகை எண்ணங்கள் தோன்றினாலும் நல்ல எண்ணங்கள் ஒருவனை மனிதனாக்குகின்றன. இத்தகைய சிறப்புப் பெற்ற மனிதனின் பண்புகளை வெளிப்படுத்துவது மனிதநேயம். சங்க இலக்கியம் முதல் இக்கால இலக்கியங்கள் வரை மனிதநேயத்தைப் பற்றிக் குறிப்பிடுகின்றன. இவ்வுலகத்தில் மனிதநேயம் பற்றிய எண்ணங்களும், மனிதநேயம் மிக்கவர்களாக வாழ வழிகாட்டும் சங்க இலக்கியத்தில் புறநானூற்றுப் பாடல்களில் இடம்பெற்றுள்ள மனித நேயம் பற்றிய செய்திகளை ஆராய்வதே இக்கட்டுரையின் நோக்கமாகும்.

### மனித நேயம்

மனிதனை மனிதன் மதிக்க வேண்டுமானால் மற்றவர்களிடம் அன்பு செலுத்த வேண்டும். அன்புதான் இன்பத்தின் ஊற்றுக்கண். அவ்விற்ப ஊற்று மனித இனத்தில் படிந்துள்ள குற்றங்களைப் போக்கி மனிதனது பெருமையையும் உரிமையையும்

## சங்க இலக்கியத்தில் விலங்குகள்

திருமதி க.வீணை முத்து

உதவிப்பேராசிரியர் , தமிழ்த் துறை ,

பொன்னையா ராமஜெயம் நிகர் நிலை

பல்கலைக்கழகம், வல்லம், தஞ்சாவூர் .

தொல் பழங்காலந் தொடங்கி உலக நாடுகளில் விலங்கினங்கள் குறித்த அறிவு நிலவி வந்துள்ளது என்பதற்குப் பல வரலாற்றுச் சான்றுகள் உள்ளன. குரங்கிலிருந்து மனிதன்பிறந்தான் என்பதற்குப் பல அறிவியல் உண்மைகள் நிறுவப்பட்டுள்ளன. ‘ஸுவாலஜி’ எனும் கிரேக்கச் சொல் ஐரோப்பிய நாடுகள் அனைத்திலும் விலங்கியலைக் குறிக்கும் பொதுச்சொல்லாய் நிலைபேறாக்கம் பெற்றுள்ளது. சிந்து சமவெளி கண்டுபிடிப்புகளில் விலங்கு வடிவங்களும் முத்திரைகளும் காணப்படுகின்றன. பழந்தமிழர்களிடையே விலங்குகள் குறித்த அறிவு மிகத் தெளிவாக இருந்துள்ளது என்பதற்குத் தொல்காப்பிய மரபியல் சான்று பகர்கின்றது. பதினைந்து வகைப்பட்ட ஆண்பாற் விலங்குகள் பற்றியும், பதின்மூன்று வகைப்பட்ட பெண்பாற் விலங்குகள் பற்றியும், அவ்வவற்றின் இளமைப்பெயர்கள் பற்றியும் தொல்காப்பிய மரபியல் நூற்பாக்கள் (நூற்பா. 2 முதல் 26) உணர்த்துகின்றன. ஓரறிவு உயிர் முதல் ஐயறிவு உயிர் வரையிலான பாகுபாடுகளையும் அவற்றிற்கான உணர்வுகளையும் தெளிவான அறிவியல் அடிப்படையில்,

“ஒன்றறி வதுவே உற்றறி வதுவே

இரண்டறி வதுவே அதனொடு நாவே

மூன்றறி வதுவே அவற்றொடு மூக்கே

நான்கறி வதுவே அவற்றொடு கண்ணே

ஐந்தறி வதுவே அவற்றொடு செவியே

ஆறறி வதுவே அவற்றொடு மனனே

நேரிதின் உணர்ந்தோர் நெறிப்படுத்த தினரே” (தொல்.மரபு.27)



## கலித்தொகை

முனைவர் . ச.அழகிரிசாமி

பேராசிரியர் , தமிழ்த் துறை ,

பொன்னையா ராமஜெயம் நிகர் நிலை

பல்கலைக்கழகம், வல்லம், தஞ்சாவூர் .

**கலித்தொகை** ([ஆங்கிலம்](#): *Kalittokai*) சங்க காலத் தமிழிலக்கியத்

தொகுதியான எட்டுத்தொகை நூல்களுள் ஆறாவது நூலாகும். பல புலவர்களின் பாடல்கள் அடங்கிய தொகுப்பு நூலான கலித்தொகையில் ஓசை இனிமையும், [தரவு](#), [தாழிசை](#), [தனிச்சொல்](#), [சுரிதகம்](#) என்னும் சிறப்பான அமைப்புகளால் அமைந்த கலிப்பாவினால் சிவனைப் பற்றிய கடவுள் வாழ்த்துப் பாடல் ஒன்று உட்பட பாடப்பட்ட 150 பாடல்கள் உள்ளன. அப்பாடல்களை அடி எல்லை நோக்கில் ஆராயும் போது குறைந்த அடி எல்லையாக 11 அடிகள் கொண்ட பாடல்களும் உயர்ந்த அடி எல்லையாக 80 அடிகள் கொண்ட பாடல்களும் காணப்படுகின்றன.

அகப்பொருள் துறை பாட ஏற்ற யாப்பு வடிவங்களாக கலிப்பாவையும் பரிபாடலையும் தொல்காப்பியர் கூறுகிறார். துள்ளலோசையால் பாடப்பட்டு பாவகையால் பெயர்பெற்ற நூல் கலித்தொகை ஆகும். பிற அகத்திணை நூல்கள் எடுத்துரைக்காத கைக்கிளை, பெருந்திணை, மடலேறுதல் ஆகியவை கலித்தொகையில் மட்டுமே இடம்பெறுகின்றன. கலித்தொகை காதலர்தம் அகத்தொகை எனவும் கூறலாம். இப்பாடல்களின் மூலம் பண்டைக் கால ஒழுக்க வழக்கங்கள், நிகழ்ச்சிகள், மரபுகள், காலத்தின் தன்மை, நல்லவர், தீயவர் பண்புகள், விலங்குகள், பறவைகள், மரங்கள், செடி கொடிகளின் இயல்புகள் ஆகியனவற்றை அறிந்து கொள்ளலாம்.



## முல்லையின் சிறப்புகள்

முனைவர் பி.செல்வி

உதவிப்பேராசிரியர் , தமிழ்த் துறை ,  
பொன்னையா ராமஜெயம் நிகர் நிலை  
பல்கலைக்கழகம், வல்லம், தஞ்சாவூர் .

முல்லை நில மக்களின் வாழ்க்கை முறைகள், பண்புகள் ஆகிய சிறப்புகளில் சிலவற்றை இப்பகுதியில் அறியலாம்.

### ஏறு தழுவல்

ஆயர்கள் புலி முதலிய கொடிய விலங்குகளிடமிருந்து தம் பசு முதலிய இனங்களைக் காக்க வேண்டிய நிலையில் இருந்தனர். மேலும் நாட்டின் எல்லைப் பகுதி காடு. பகைவரின் தாக்குதலுக்கு முதலில் உட்படுவதும் அப்பகுதியே, ஆதலால் அவர்கள் வீரம் உடையவராக விளங்கவேண்டியிருந்தது. எனவே ஆயர், தம் மகளை மணக்க வரும் ஆடவர் வீரம் மிக்கவராய் விளங்க வேண்டும் என எண்ணினர். அதன் காரணமாக ஏறு தழுவும் நிகழ்ச்சியை ஏற்படுத்தினர். ஏறு தழுவதல் என்பது சீறிப் பாயும் காளைகளைத் தழுவி அடக்குதல் ஆகும். ஆயர் ஏறுகளின் கொம்பைக் கூர்மையாகச் சீவிப் பரந்த வெளியான ஏறு தழுவும் இடத்தில் விடுவர். இளைஞர் போட்டி போட்டு ஏறு தழுவ முயல்வர். ஏறு தழுவிய ஆயனுக்குத் தம் பெண்ணை மணம் முடித்துத் தருவர் ஆயர். ஏறு தழுவல் காட்சிகளை நல்லுருத்திரன் பாடிய முல்லைக் கலிப் பாடல்களில் விரிவாகக் காணலாம்.

ஓஓ! இவள், பொருபுகல் நல்ஏறு கொள்பவர் அல்லால்  
திருமாமெய் தீண்டலர்  
(கலித்தொகை-102 : 9-10)



# ESSENTIAL OF PHARMACEUTICAL BIOCHEMISTRY

EDITED BY

**DR.K.SURIYA**



978-93-6255-992-0

Essential of Pharmaceutical Biochemistry

Copyright © 2019 by Dr. K. Suriya

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-992-0**



Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
Technology (PRIST)

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

<b>Chapter 1</b> Chemistry of acids and bases	<b>Dr. A. BAKRUDEEN ALI AHMED</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Chapter 2</b> Partition coefficient and biopharmacy	<b>Dr. P. MANONMANI</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>Chapter 3</b> Physicochemical properties of drugs	<b>Dr. C. ANUSHIA</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>Chapter 4</b> Stereochemistry	<b>Dr. ARJUNPANDIAN</b>	<b>48</b>
<b>Chapter 5</b> Drug metabolism	<b>Dr. G. SRITHAR</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>Chapter 6</b> Volumetric analysis of drugs	<b>Dr. T. GUNASEELAN</b>	<b>92</b>
<b>Chapter 7</b> Analytical spectroscopy	<b>Dr. A. SHAJAHAN</b>	<b>135</b>

=====

# 1

## Chemistry of acids and bases

Chemistry is the defining science of pharmacy. To understand *anything* about a drug – the synthesis, the determination of its purity, the formulation into a medicine, the dose given, the absorption and distribution around the body, the molecular interaction of drug with its receptor, the metabolism of the drug and, finally, the elimination of drug from the body – requires a thorough and comprehensive understanding of the chemical structure of the drug and how this chemical structure influences the properties and behaviour of the drug in the body. For these reasons, chemistry is the most important of all the scientific disciplines contributing to the understanding of drugs and their actions in the body. A good understanding of the chemistry of drugs will allow the study of advanced topics such as drug design and medicinal chemistry, molecular pharmacology and novel drug delivery systems that are usually encountered in the later stages of a pharmacy or pharmaceutical science degree.

As stated in the preface, most drugs are small organic molecules that behave in solution as either weak acids or weak bases. In order to understand and appreciate these compounds a study must be made of simple acid–base theory.

In 1887, the Swedish chemist Svante August Arrhenius suggested that solutions that conduct electricity (so-called electrolytes) do so because they dissociate into charged species called ions. Positively charged ions (or *cations*) migrate towards the negative terminal, or cathode, while negatively charged ions (or *anions*) migrate towards the positive terminal, or anode. It is this movement of ions that allows the passage of electric current through the solution.

Compounds of this type may be classified as strong electrolytes, which dissociate almost completely into ions in solution, or as weak electrolytes, which only dissociate to a small extent in solution. Since strong electrolytes are almost completely dissociated in solution, measurement of the equilibrium constant for their dissociation is very difficult. For weak electrolytes, however, the dissociation can be expressed by the law of mass action in terms of the equilibrium constant.

# 2

## Partition coefficient and biopharmacy

When a substance (or *solute*) is added to a pair of immiscible solvents, it distributes itself between the two solvents according to its affinity for each phase. A polar compound (e.g. a sugar, amino acid or ionised drug) will tend to favour the aqueous or polar phase, whereas a non-polar compound (e.g. an unionised drug) will favour the non-aqueous or organic phase. The added substance distributes itself between the two immiscible solvents according to the partition law, which states that ‘a given substance, at a given temperature, will partition itself between two immiscible solvents in a constant ratio of concentrations’. This constant ratio is called the *partition coefficient* of the substance, and may be expressed mathematically as

$$P = \frac{[\text{organic}]}{[\text{aqueous}]} \quad (2.1)$$

where  $P$  is the partition coefficient of the substance; [organic] is the concentration of substance in the organic, or oil phase; and [aqueous] is the concentration of substance in the water phase.

As an example, consider the distribution of 100 mg of a drug between 50 mL of an organic solvent (e.g. ether, chloroform or octanol) and 50 mL of water. The drug is added to the two immiscible solvents in a separating funnel and allowed to equilibrate. When the organic layer is analysed, it is found to contain 66.7 mg of compound. From these data the partition coefficient and the percentage of the drug extracted into the organic layer can be calculated (see Figure 2.1).

The mass of drug in the water phase =  $100 - 66.7 \text{ mg} = 33.3 \text{ mg}$ ; the concentration of drug in the organic phase =  $66.7/50 = 1.33 \text{ mg mL}^{-1}$ , and the concentration of drug in the water phase =  $33.3/50 = 0.67 \text{ mg mL}^{-1}$ . Therefore, the partition coefficient is given by

$$\frac{[\text{organic}]}{[\text{aqueous}]} = \frac{1.33 \text{ mg mL}^{-1}}{0.67 \text{ mg mL}^{-1}} = 2$$

The partition coefficient is a ratio of concentrations, so the units cancel and  $P$  has no units.



# 3

## Physicochemical properties of drugs

As has been stated before, most of the drugs used in medicine behave in solution as weak acids, weak bases, or sometimes as both weak acids and weak bases. In this chapter we will explore the reasons why drugs behave as acids or bases and what effects ionisation has on the properties of the drug, and develop strategies to separate mixtures of drugs on the basis of changes in their solubility in various solvents.

The most important thing to realise about acidic and basic drugs is that values of  $pK_a$  and  $pK_b$  quoted in the literature tell you *absolutely nothing* about whether the drug in question is an acid or a base. The  $pK_a$  and  $pK_b$  values give information about the strength of acids and bases; they tell you the pH at which 50% of the drug is ionised, but they do not tell you whether a drug behaves as an acid or a base in solution. Amines, for example are basic and have  $pK_a$  values of approximately 9, while phenols are acidic and typically have  $pK_a$  values of around 10. *The only sure way to know whether a drug is acidic or basic is to learn the functional groups that confer acidity and basicity on a molecule.* This should be done even if it means learning the names of the functional groups the way you learned multiplication tables at primary school. There are only a few to learn and the important examples are listed below along with some common drugs.

### Carboxylic acids

According to the Brønsted–Lowry definition, an acid is a substance that ionises to donate protons to its surroundings. In aqueous solution this is represented as



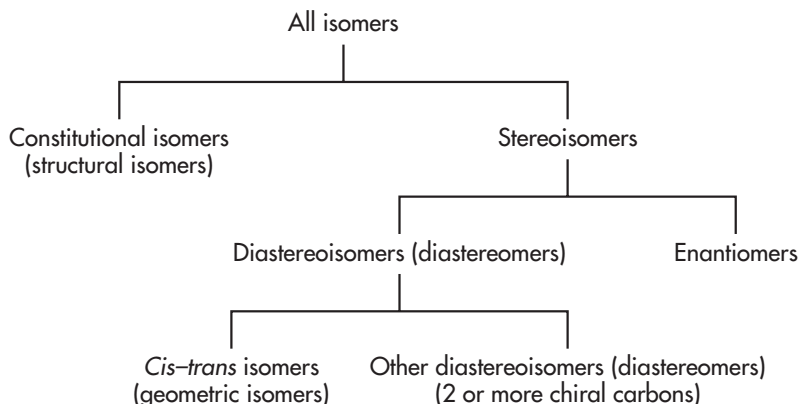
where HA is the acid, water accepts the proton and acts as a base,  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$  is a solvated proton, sometimes called the conjugate acid of the base, and  $\text{A}^-$  is the anion of the acid. The equilibrium constant for this reaction is the acidity constant,  $K_a$  and is expressed mathematically as

# 4

## Stereochemistry

In Chapter 3 the reasons why drugs behave as weak acids or weak bases were discussed and strategies were developed to exploit differences in physicochemical properties to separate components of a mixture. In this chapter, the three-dimensional shapes of molecules will be introduced and, in particular, the unusual geometry that arises around a carbon atom with four different substituents attached to it – an *asymmetric carbon atom*. The study of the three-dimensional shape of molecules is absolutely fundamental to a student's understanding of complex topics such as biochemistry, medicinal chemistry and drug design.

Chemical compounds that have the same molecular formula but different structural formulas are said to be *isomers* of each other. These constitutional isomers (or structural isomers) differ in their bonding sequence, i.e. their atoms are connected to each other in different ways. Stereoisomers have the same bonding sequence, but they differ in the orientation of their atoms in space. Stereoisomerism can be further divided into optical isomerism (*enantiomerism*) and *geometrical isomerism* (*cis-trans* isomerism). The relationships between the different types of isomerism are shown in Figure 4.1.



**Figure 4.1** Different types of isomerism.

# 5

## Drug metabolism

When drugs and medicines are administered to a patient, it is rare for the drug molecule to emerge from the patient unchanged. Most of the foreign compounds (or *xenobiotics*) taken into the body undergo a variety of chemical changes brought about by enzymes in the liver, intestine, kidney, lung and other tissues. These transformations (usually, but not exclusively, oxidation reactions) may give rise to compounds (or *metabolites*) that are toxic. These metabolites are capable of reacting with important macromolecules within the body (such as DNA and proteins) to cause toxicity. An insight into the mechanisms that give rise to the formation of drug metabolites is therefore important from a drug safety point of view.

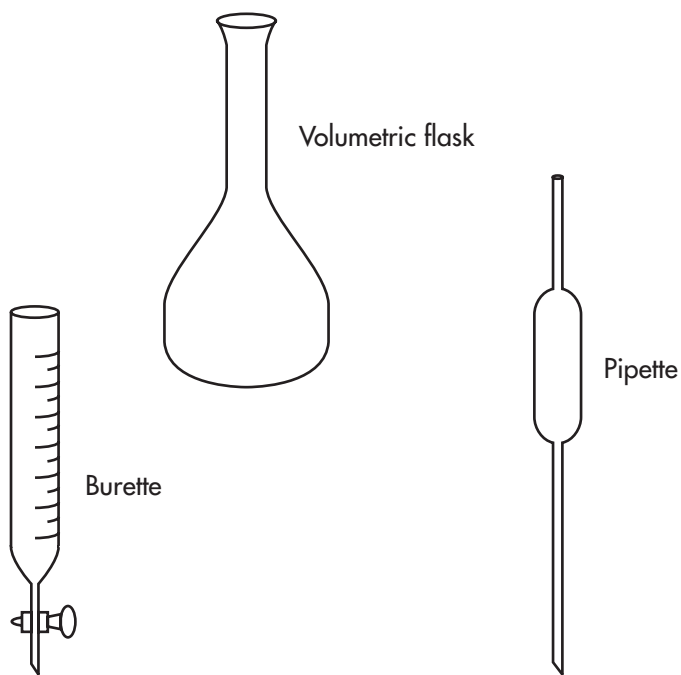
The body's main strategy for dealing with these xenobiotics is to convert the molecule into a more hydrophilic or water-soluble derivative, which can then be excreted via the kidneys in the urine. Reactions of this type are known collectively as *drug metabolism*, although the body systems that carry out these biotransformations arose through evolution long before drugs were taken therapeutically. Our ancestors were exposed throughout their lives to environmental poisons and foreign chemicals in their diet and mechanisms evolved to detoxify these agents and protect the body.

Today, the situation is, if anything, even more complex. Consumption of 'recreational' drugs such as tobacco and alcohol expose the body to thousands of foreign compounds, many of them potentially toxic. Environmental poisons such as pesticide residues in food and carcinogens (cancer-causing agents) produced by high-temperature cooking of fats and proteins in meat add to the cocktail of non-essential exogenous compounds absorbed by modern humans that may be harmful to their health. The consumption of drugs and medicines for therapeutic purposes must be viewed against this backdrop and a student must become familiar with the reactions involved in drug metabolism and the effects these biotransformations have on pharmacological activity, duration of action and toxicity of drugs.

# 6

## Volumetric analysis of drugs

This chapter will deal with *volumetric analysis*, that is analysis carried out by the accurate measurement of volumes. To measure volumes accurately, use must be made of volumetric glassware. There are three pieces of volumetric glassware that are fundamental to successful volumetric analysis. These are the *volumetric flask*, the *pipette* and the *burette*, and each will be described below (see Figure 6.1). It should be stated, however, that no amount of reading about these pieces of apparatus (no matter how eloquently written!) is sufficient to educate a student. Analytical pharmaceutical chemistry is first and foremost a practical subject, and the laboratory is the best place to get to grips with the techniques required for consistent, reproducible analysis.



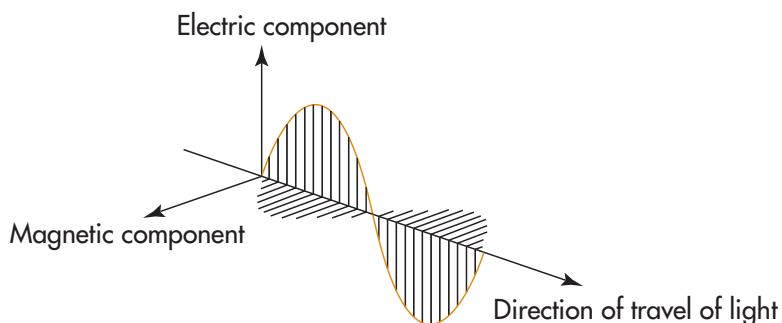
**Figure 6.1** A volumetric flask, a pipette and a burette.

# 7

## Analytical spectroscopy

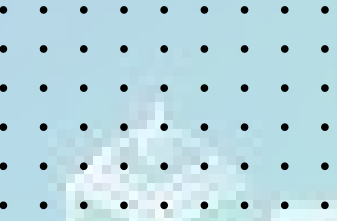
Analytical spectroscopy is the science of determining how much of a substance is present in a sample by accurately measuring how much light is absorbed or emitted by atoms or molecules within it. Different types of spectroscopy are available, depending on the type or wavelength of electromagnetic radiation absorbed or emitted by the atom or molecule. A detailed review of all types of modern instrumental analysis is beyond the scope of this book, but the use of spectroscopy in the analysis of drugs and medicines is very important and will be considered.

Light is a form of electromagnetic radiation, so called because it consists of an electric component and a magnetic component, which oscillate in mutually perpendicular directions and perpendicular to the direction of travel of the radiation through space (see Figure 7.1).



**Figure 7.1** A diagrammatic representation of electromagnetic radiation.

The complete spectrum of electromagnetic radiation is shown in Figure 7.2 and ranges from low-energy radio and television waves through to very high-energy gamma rays. The tiny part of the electromagnetic spectrum that human eyes can detect (approximately 400–700 nm) is called the visible spectrum, and spectroscopy carried out at these wavelengths is termed visible spectroscopy or ‘colorimetry’.



# BIOINFORMATICS



Edited by  
**DR.M.VIJAY**



978-93-6255-244-0

Bioinformatics

Copyright © 2019 by Dr. M. Vijay

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-244-0**



Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

---

<b>Chapter 1</b> Introduction	<b>Dr. A. SHAJAHAN</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Chapter 2</b> Introduction to Biological Databases	<b>Dr. S. AMBIGA</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>Chapter 3</b> Pairwise Sequence Alignment	<b>Dr. ARJUNPANDIAN</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>Chapter 4</b> Database Similarity Searching	<b>Dr. C. ANUSHIA</b>	<b>48</b>
<b>Chapter 5</b> Multiple Sequence Alignment	<b>Dr. T. GUNASEELAN</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>Chapter 6</b> Profiles and Hidden Markov Models	<b>Dr. G. SRITHAR</b>	<b>92</b>
<b>Chapter 7</b> Protein Motifs and Domain Prediction	<b>Dr. A. BAKRUDEEN ALI AHMED</b>	<b>135</b>

=====



## CHAPTER ONE

# Introduction

Quantitation and quantitative tools are indispensable in modern biology. Most biological research involves application of some type of mathematical, statistical, or computational tools to help synthesize recorded data and integrate various types of information in the process of answering a particular biological question. For example, enumeration and statistics are required for assessing everyday laboratory experiments, such as making serial dilutions of a solution or counting bacterial colonies, phage plaques, or trees and animals in the natural environment. A classic example in the history of genetics is by Gregor Mendel and Thomas Morgan, who, by simply counting genetic variations of plants and fruit flies, were able to discover the principles of genetic inheritance. More dedicated use of quantitative tools may involve using calculus to predict the growth rate of a human population or to establish a kinetic model for enzyme catalysis. For very sophisticated uses of quantitative tools, one may find application of the “game theory” to model animal behavior and evolution, or the use of millions of nonlinear partial differential equations to model cardiac blood flow. Whether the application is simple or complex, subtle or explicit, it is clear that mathematical and computational tools have become an integral part of modern-day biological research. However, none of these examples of quantitative tool use in biology could be considered to be part of bioinformatics, which is also quantitative in nature. To help the reader understand the difference between bioinformatics and other elements of quantitative biology, we provide a detailed explanation of what is bioinformatics in the following sections.

*Bioinformatics*, which will be more clearly defined below, is the discipline of quantitative analysis of information relating to biological macromolecules with the aid of computers. The development of bioinformatics as a field is the result of advances in both molecular biology and computer science over the past 30–40 years. Although these developments are not described in detail here, understanding the history of this discipline is helpful in obtaining a broader insight into current bioinformatics research. A succinct chronological summary of the landmark events that have had major impacts on the development of bioinformatics is presented here to provide context.

The earliest bioinformatics efforts can be traced back to the 1960s, although the word *bioinformatics* did not exist then. Probably, the first major bioinformatics project was undertaken by Margaret Dayhoff in 1965, who developed a first protein sequence database called *Atlas of Protein Sequence and Structure*. Subsequently, in the early 1970s, the Brookhaven National Laboratory established the Protein Data Bank for archiving three-dimensional protein structures. At its onset, the database stored less

## CHAPTER TWO

# Introduction to Biological Databases

One of the hallmarks of modern genomic research is the generation of enormous amounts of raw sequence data. As the volume of genomic data grows, sophisticated computational methodologies are required to manage the data deluge. Thus, the very first challenge in the genomics era is to store and handle the staggering volume of information through the establishment and use of computer databases. The development of databases to handle the vast amount of molecular biological data is thus a fundamental task of bioinformatics. This chapter introduces some basic concepts related to databases, in particular, the types, designs, and architectures of biological databases. Emphasis is on retrieving data from the main biological databases such as GenBank.

---

### WHAT IS A DATABASE?

---

A *database* is a computerized archive used to store and organize data in such a way that information can be retrieved easily via a variety of search criteria. Databases are composed of computer hardware and software for data management. The chief objective of the development of a database is to organize data in a set of structured records to enable easy retrieval of information. Each record, also called an *entry*, should contain a number of fields that hold the actual data items, for example, fields for names, phone numbers, addresses, dates. To retrieve a particular record from the database, a user can specify a particular piece of information, called *value*, to be found in a particular field and expect the computer to retrieve the whole data record. This process is called *making a query*.

Although data retrieval is the main purpose of all databases, biological databases often have a higher level of requirement, known as *knowledge discovery*, which refers to the identification of connections between pieces of information that were not known when the information was first entered. For example, databases containing raw sequence information can perform extra computational tasks to identify sequence homology or conserved motifs. These features facilitate the discovery of new biological insights from raw data.

---

### TYPES OF DATABASES

---

Originally, databases all used a flat file format, which is a long text file that contains many entries separated by a *delimiter*, a special character such as a vertical bar (|). Within each entry are a number of fields separated by tabs or commas. Except for the

## CHAPTER THREE

# Pairwise Sequence Alignment

Sequence comparison lies at the heart of bioinformatics analysis. It is an important first step toward structural and functional analysis of newly determined sequences. As new biological sequences are being generated at exponential rates, sequence comparison is becoming increasingly important to draw functional and evolutionary inference of a new protein with proteins already existing in the database. The most fundamental process in this type of comparison is sequence alignment. This is the process by which sequences are compared by searching for common character patterns and establishing residue–residue correspondence among related sequences. Pairwise sequence alignment is the process of aligning two sequences and is the basis of database similarity searching (see Chapter 4) and multiple sequence alignment (see Chapter 5). This chapter introduces the basics of pairwise alignment.

---

### EVOLUTIONARY BASIS

---

DNA and proteins are products of evolution. The building blocks of these biological macromolecules, nucleotide bases, and amino acids form linear sequences that determine the primary structure of the molecules. These molecules can be considered molecular fossils that encode the history of millions of years of evolution. During this time period, the molecular sequences undergo random changes, some of which are selected during the process of evolution. As the selected sequences gradually accumulate mutations and diverge over time, traces of evolution may still remain in certain portions of the sequences to allow identification of the common ancestry. The presence of evolutionary traces is because some of the residues that perform key functional and structural roles tend to be preserved by natural selection; other residues that may be less crucial for structure and function tend to mutate more frequently. For example, active site residues of an enzyme family tend to be conserved because they are responsible for catalytic functions. Therefore, by comparing sequences through alignment, patterns of conservation and variation can be identified. The degree of sequence conservation in the alignment reveals evolutionary relatedness of different sequences, whereas the variation between sequences reflects the changes that have occurred during evolution in the form of substitutions, insertions, and deletions.

Identifying the evolutionary relationships between sequences helps to characterize the function of unknown sequences. When a sequence alignment reveals *significant*

# Database Similarity Searching

A main application of pairwise alignment is retrieving biological sequences in databases based on similarity. This process involves submission of a query sequence and performing a pairwise comparison of the query sequence with all individual sequences in a database. Thus, database similarity searching is pairwise alignment on a large scale. This type of searching is one of the most effective ways to assign putative functions to newly determined sequences. However, the dynamic programming method described in Chapter 3 is slow and impractical to use in most cases. Special search methods are needed to speed up the computational process of sequence comparison. The theory and applications of the database searching methods are discussed in this chapter.

---

### UNIQUE REQUIREMENTS OF DATABASE SEARCHING

---

There are unique requirements for implementing algorithms for sequence database searching. The first criterion is *sensitivity*, which refers to the ability to find as many correct hits as possible. It is measured by the extent of inclusion of correctly identified sequence members of the same family. These correct hits are considered “true positives” in the database searching exercise. The second criterion is *selectivity*, also called *specificity*, which refers to the ability to exclude incorrect hits. These incorrect hits are unrelated sequences mistakenly identified in database searching and are considered “false positives.” The third criterion is *speed*, which is the time it takes to get results from database searches. Depending on the size of the database, speed sometimes can be a primary concern.

Ideally, one wants to have the greatest sensitivity, selectivity, and speed in database searches. However, satisfying all three requirements is difficult in reality. What generally happens is that an increase in sensitivity is associated with decrease in selectivity. A very inclusive search tends to include many false positives. Similarly, an improvement in speed often comes at the cost of lowered sensitivity and selectivity. A compromise between the three criteria often has to be made.

In database searching, as well as in many other areas in bioinformatics, are two fundamental types of algorithms. One is the *exhaustive type*, which uses a rigorous algorithm to find the best or exact solution for a particular problem by examining all mathematical combinations. Dynamic programming is an example of the exhaustive method and is computationally very intensive. Another is the *heuristic type*, which is a computational strategy to find an empirical or near optimal solution by using rules of

## Multiple Sequence Alignment

A natural extension of pairwise alignment is multiple sequence alignment, which is to align multiple related sequences to achieve optimal matching of the sequences. Related sequences are identified through the database similarity searching described in Chapter 4. As the process generates multiple matching sequence pairs, it is often necessary to convert the numerous pairwise alignments into a single alignment, which arranges sequences in such a way that evolutionarily equivalent positions across all sequences are matched.

There is a unique advantage of multiple sequence alignment because it reveals more biological information than many pairwise alignments can. For example, it allows the identification of conserved sequence patterns and motifs in the whole sequence family, which are not obvious to detect by comparing only two sequences. Many conserved and functionally critical amino acid residues can be identified in a protein multiple alignment. Multiple sequence alignment is also an essential prerequisite to carrying out phylogenetic analysis of sequence families and prediction of protein secondary and tertiary structures. Multiple sequence alignment also has applications in designing degenerate polymerase chain reaction (PCR) primers based on multiple related sequences.

It is theoretically possible to use dynamic programming to align any number of sequences as for pairwise alignment. However, the amount of computing time and memory it requires increases exponentially as the number of sequences increases. As a consequence, full dynamic programming cannot be applied for datasets of more than ten sequences. In practice, heuristic approaches are most often used. In this chapter, methodologies and applications of multiple sequence alignment are discussed.

---

### SCORING FUNCTION

---

Multiple sequence alignment is to arrange sequences in such a way that a maximum number of residues from each sequence are matched up according to a particular scoring function. The scoring function for multiple sequence alignment is based on the concept of sum of pairs (SP). As the name suggests, it is the sum of the scores of all possible pairs of sequences in a multiple alignment based on a particular scoring matrix. In calculating the SP scores, each column is scored by summing the scores for all possible pairwise matches, mismatches and gap costs. The score of the entire

## Profiles and Hidden Markov Models

One of the applications of multiple sequence alignments in identifying related sequences in databases is by construction of position-specific scoring matrices (PSSMs), profiles, and hidden Markov models (HMMs). These are statistical models that reflect the frequency information of amino acid or nucleotide residues in a multiple alignment. Thus, they can be treated as consensus for a given sequence family. However, the “consensus” is not exactly a single sequence, but rather a model that captures not only the observed frequencies but also predicted frequencies of unobserved characters. The purpose of establishing the mathematical models is to allow partial matches with a query sequence so they can be used to detect more distant members of the same sequence family, resulting in an increased sensitivity of database searches. This chapter covers the basics of these statistical models followed by discussion of their applications.

---

### POSITION-SPECIFIC SCORING MATRICES

---

A PSSM is defined as a table that contains probability information of amino acids or nucleotides at each position of an ungapped multiple sequence alignment. The matrix resembles the substitution matrices discussed in Chapter 3, but is more complex in that it contains positional information of the alignment. In such a table, the rows represent residue positions of a particular multiple alignment and the columns represent the names of residues or vice versa (Fig. 6.1). The values in the table represent log odds scores of the residues calculated from the multiple alignment.

To construct a matrix, raw frequencies of each residue at each column position from a multiple alignment are first counted. The frequencies are normalized by dividing positional frequencies of each residue by overall frequencies so that the scores are length and composition independent. The values are converted to the probability values by taking to the logarithm (normally to the base of 2). In this way, the matrix values become log odds scores of residues occurring at each alignment position. In this matrix, a positive score represents identical residue or similar residue match; a negative score represents a nonconserved sequence match.

This constructed matrix can be considered a distilled representation for the entire group of related sequences, providing a quantitative description of the degree of sequence conservation at each position of a multiple alignment. The probabilistic model can then be used like a single sequence for database searching and alignment

# Protein Motif and Domain Prediction


An important aspect of biological sequence characterization is identification of motifs and domains. It is an important way to characterize unknown protein functions because a newly obtained protein sequence often lacks significant similarity with database sequences of known functions over their entire length, which makes functional assignment difficult. In this case, biologists can gain insight of the protein function based on identification of short consensus sequences related to known functions. These consensus sequence patterns are termed *motifs* and *domains*.

A *motif* is a short conserved sequence pattern associated with distinct functions of a protein or DNA. It is often associated with a distinct structural site performing a particular function. A typical motif, such as a Zn-finger motif, is ten to twenty amino acids long. A *domain* is also a conserved sequence pattern, defined as an independent functional and structural unit. Domains are normally longer than motifs. A domain consists of more than 40 residues and up to 700 residues, with an average length of 100 residues. A domain may or may not include motifs within its boundaries. Examples of domains include transmembrane domains and ligand-binding domains.

Motifs and domains are evolutionarily more conserved than other regions of a protein and tend to evolve as units, which are gained, lost, or shuffled as one module. The identification of motifs and domains in proteins is an important aspect of the classification of protein sequences and functional annotation. Because of evolutionary divergence, functional relationships between proteins often cannot be distinguished through simple BLAST or FASTA database searches. In addition, proteins or enzymes often perform multiple functions that cannot be fully described using a single annotation through sequence database searching. To resolve these issues, identification of the motifs and domains becomes very useful.

Identification of motifs and domains heavily relies on multiple sequence alignment as well as profile and hidden Markov model (HMM) construction (see Chapters 5 and 6). This chapter focuses on some fundamental issues relating to protein motif and domain databases as well as classification of protein sequences using full length sequences. In addition, computational tools for discovering subtle motifs from divergent sequences are also introduced.





# **METABOLIC ASPECTS OF CLINICAL BIOCHEMISTRY**



EDITED BY

**R.VISWALINGAM**



978-93-6255-564-9



Metabolic aspects of Clinical Biochemistry

Copyright © 2019 by Mr. R. Viswalingam

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-564-9**



Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

<b>Chapter 1</b> Requesting laboratory tests and interpreting the results	<b>Dr. A. SOHNA CHANDRA PACKIAVATHI</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Chapter 2</b> Water and sodium	<b>Dr. A. BAKRUDEEN ALI AHMED</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>Chapter 3</b> The kidneys	<b>Dr. S. AMBIGA</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>Chapter 4</b> Acid–base disturbances	<b>Dr. M. VIJAY</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Chapter 5</b> Potassium	<b>Dr. BINUGEOGE</b>	<b>44</b>
<b>Chapter 6</b> Calcium, phosphate and magnesium	<b>Dr. S. SATHISHKUMAR</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>Chapter 7</b> The hypothalamus and pituitary gland	<b>Dr. A. SUNDARESAN</b>	<b>76</b>

=====

# 1 Requesting laboratory tests and interpreting the results

Requesting laboratory tests	1	Interpreting results	2
How often should I investigate the patient?	1	Is the abnormality of diagnostic value?	3
When is a laboratory investigation 'urgent'?	1	Diagnostic performance	4

## REQUESTING LABORATORY TESTS

There are many laboratory tests available to the clinician. Correctly used, these may provide useful information, but, if used inappropriately, they are at best useless and at worst misleading and dangerous.

In general, laboratory investigations are used:

- to help diagnosis or, when indicated, to screen for metabolic disease,
- to monitor treatment or detect complications,
- occasionally for medicolegal reasons or, with due permission from the patient, for research.

Overinvestigation of the patient may be harmful, causing unnecessary discomfort or inconvenience, delaying treatment or using resources that might be more usefully spent on other aspects of patient care. Before requesting an investigation, clinicians should consider whether its result would influence their clinical management of the patient.

Close liaison with laboratory staff is essential; they may be able to help determine the best and quickest procedure for investigation, interpret results and discover reasons for anomalous findings.

## HOW OFTEN SHOULD I INVESTIGATE THE PATIENT?

This depends on the following:

- How quickly numerically significant changes are likely to occur: for example, concentrations of the main plasma protein fractions are unlikely to change significantly in less than a week (see Chapter 19), similarly for plasma thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH; see Chapter 11). See also Chapter 3.
- Whether a change, even if numerically significant, will alter treatment: for example, plasma transaminase activities may alter within 24 h in the course of acute hepatitis, but, once the diagnosis has been made, this is unlikely to affect treatment (see Chapter 17). By contrast, plasma potassium concentrations may alter

rapidly in patients given large doses of diuretics and these alterations *may* indicate the need to instigate or change treatment (see Chapter 5).

Laboratory investigations are very rarely needed more than once daily, except in some patients receiving intensive therapy. If they are, only those that are essential should be repeated.

## WHEN IS A LABORATORY INVESTIGATION 'URGENT'?

The main reason for asking for an investigation to be performed 'urgently' is that an early answer will alter the patient's clinical management. This is rarely the case and laboratory staff should be consulted and the sample 'flagged' as clearly urgent if the test is required immediately. Laboratories often use large analysers capable of assaying hundreds of samples per day (Fig. 1.1). Point-of-care testing can shorten result turnaround time and is discussed in Chapter 30.



**Figure 1.1** A laboratory analyser used to assay hundreds of blood samples in a day. Reproduced with kind permission of Radiometer Limited.

# 2 Water and sodium

Total sodium and water balance	6	Urinary sodium estimation	13
Control of water and sodium balance	7	Disturbances of water and sodium metabolism	15
Distribution of water and sodium in the body	9		

It is essential to understand the linked homeostatic mechanisms controlling water and sodium balance when interpreting the plasma sodium concentration and managing the clinically common disturbances of water and sodium balance. This is of major importance in deciding on the composition and amount, if any, of intravenous fluid to give. It must also be remembered that plasma results may be affected by such intravenous therapy, and can be dangerously misunderstood.

Water is an essential body constituent, and homeostatic processes are important to ensure that the total water balance is maintained within narrow limits, and the distribution of water among the vascular, interstitial and intracellular compartments is maintained. This depends on hydrostatic and osmotic forces acting across cell membranes.

Sodium is the most abundant extracellular cation and, with its associated anions, accounts for most of the osmotic activity of the extracellular fluid (ECF); it is important in determining water distribution across cell membranes.

Osmotic activity depends on concentration, and therefore on the relative amounts of sodium and water in the ECF compartment, rather than on the absolute quantity of either constituent. An imbalance may cause hyponatraemia (low plasma sodium concentration) or hypernatraemia (high plasma sodium concentration), and therefore changes in osmolality. If water and sodium are lost or gained in equivalent amounts, the plasma sodium, and therefore the osmolal concentration, is unchanged; symptoms are then due to extracellular volume depletion or overloading (Table 2.1). As the metabolism of sodium is so inextricably related to that of water, the two are discussed together in this chapter.

## TOTAL SODIUM AND WATER BALANCE

In a 70-kg man, the total body water (TBW) is about 42 L and contributes about 60 per cent of the total body weight; there are approximately 3000 mmol of sodium,

mainly in the ECF (Table 2.2). Water and electrolyte intake usually balance output in urine, faeces, sweat and expired air.

## Water and sodium intake

The daily water and sodium intakes are variable, but in an adult amount to about 1.5–2 L and 60–150 mmol, respectively.

## Water and sodium output

### Kidneys and gastrointestinal tract

The kidneys and intestine deal with water and electrolytes in a similar way. Net loss through both organs depends on the balance between the volume filtered proximally

**Table 2.1** Approximate contributions of solutes to plasma osmolality

	Osmolality (mmol/kg)	Total (%)
Sodium and its anions	270	92
Potassium and its anions	7	} 8
Calcium (ionized) and its anions	3	
Magnesium and its anions	1	
Urea	5	
Glucose	5	
Protein	1 (approx.)	
Total	292 (approx.)	

**Table 2.2** The approximate volumes in different body compartments through which water is distributed in a 70-kg adult

	Volume (L)
Intracellular fluid compartment	24
Extracellular fluid compartment	18
Interstitial	(13)
Intravascular (blood volume)	(5)
Total body water	42

# 3 The kidneys

Renal glomerular function	37	Nephritic syndrome	49
Renal tubular function	37	Diagnosis of renal dysfunction	49
Water reabsorption: urinary concentration and dilution	38	Urinary sodium and osmolality	52
Biochemistry of renal disorders	42	Biochemical principles of the treatment of renal dysfunction	53
Syndromes reflecting predominant tubular damage – renal tubular acidosis	49	Renal calculi	54
Nephrotic syndrome	49		

In this chapter kidney function and how it can be altered in disease states is discussed. It is best read in conjunction with Chapters 2, 4 and 5. Interpretation of renal function tests is also discussed.

The kidneys excrete metabolic waste products, and have an essential homeostatic function in that they control the body solute and water status and the acid–base balance. There are about one million nephrons per kidney, each of which is made up of five main functional segments (Fig. 3.1).

The *glomeruli*, in the cortex of the kidney, are invaginated and surround a capillary network of blood vessels derived from the afferent, and draining into the efferent, arterioles. Small molecules and water are passively filtered during the passage of blood through these capillaries, the ultrafiltrate passing through the vessel walls and the glomerular

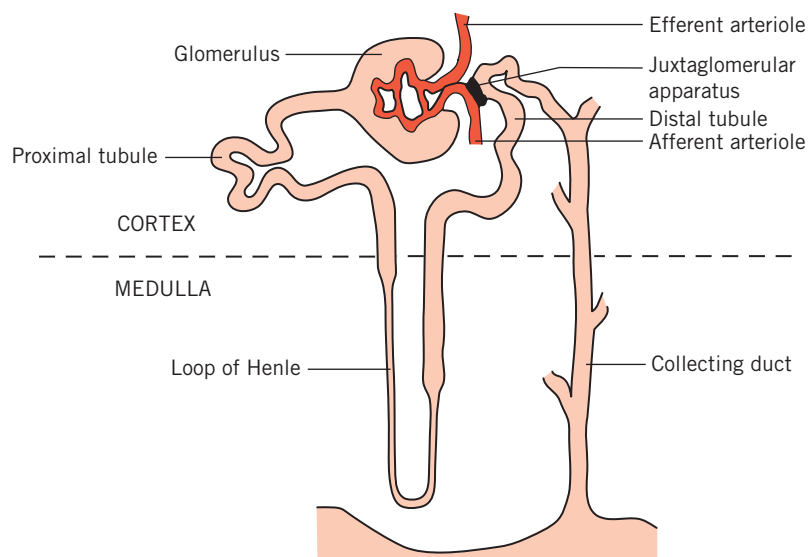
membranes into the glomerular spaces (Bowman’s capsules).

The *proximal convoluted tubules*, also in the cortex, receive filtrate from the glomerular spaces. Convolution increases the tubular length and therefore contact between the luminal fluid and the proximal tubular cells.

The *loops of Henle* extend down into the renal medulla and ascend again after forming the loop.

The *distal convoluted tubules*, situated in the cortex, are important for fine adjustment of luminal fluid. They lie near the afferent arterioles, with the juxtaglomerular apparatus between them. The enzyme renin is produced by the latter and its release is controlled by local blood flow.

The *collecting ducts* start as the distal tubules lead down into the medulla and end by opening into the



**Figure 3.1** The anatomical relation between the nephron and the juxtaglomerular apparatus.

# 4

## Acid–base disturbances

Definitions	59	Blood gases	77
Acid–base control systems	60	Investigation of hydrogen ion disturbances	80
Acid–base disorders	65		

The importance of acid–base homeostasis cannot be overstated because of its importance in keeping hydrogen ion ( $H^+$ ) balance under control. Acid–base abnormalities are relatively common medically, and it is therefore essential for clinicians to be fully conversant with their interpretation.

Our cells release between 50 and 100 mmol of  $H^+$  into the extracellular fluid (ECF) daily. Despite this, the extracellular  $H^+$  concentration ( $[H^+]$ ) is maintained at about 40 nmol/L (pH 7.4).

The predominant sources of  $H^+$  are:

- Anaerobic carbohydrate metabolism produces lactate, and anaerobic metabolism of fatty acids by  $\beta$ -hydroxylation and of ketogenic amino acids produces acetoacetate, which releases equimolar amounts of  $H^+$ . Lactic acidosis or ketoacidosis can occur if the release of  $H^+$  by these reactions exceeds the compensatory capacity.
- Release of  $H^+$  can occur during conversion of amino nitrogen to urea in the liver, or of the sulphhydryl groups of some amino acids to sulphate.

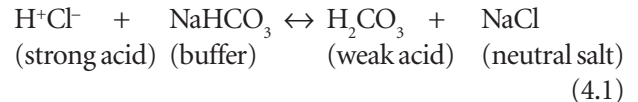
Hydrogen ion balance is largely dependent upon the secretion of  $H^+$  from the body into the urine due to renal tubular action. Aerobic metabolism of the carbon skeletons of organic compounds converts carbon, hydrogen and oxygen into carbon dioxide and water. Carbon dioxide is an essential component of the extracellular buffering system. Thus the body is dependent upon healthy function of the kidneys and the lungs for normal acid–base homeostasis.

### DEFINITIONS

Acids can dissociate to produce  $H^+$  (protons), which can be accepted by a base. An alkali dissociates to produce hydroxyl ions ( $OH^-$ ). Acidosis is commoner than alkalosis because metabolism tends to produce  $H^+$  rather than  $OH^-$ .

A strong acid is almost completely dissociated in aqueous solution, and so produces many  $H^+$ . For example, hydrochloric acid is a strong acid and is almost entirely dissociated in water to form  $H^+$  and chloride ( $Cl^-$ ). Weak acids dissociate less, although very small changes in  $[H^+]$  may have important consequences.

Buffering is a process by which a strong acid (or base) is replaced by a weaker one, with a consequent reduction in the number of free  $H^+$ , and therefore the change in pH, after addition of acid, is less than it would be in the absence of the buffer. For example:



The pH is a measure of  $H^+$  activity. It is log 10 of the reciprocal of  $[H^+]$  in mol/L. The log 10 of a number is the power to which 10 must be raised to produce that number:

$$\log 100 = \log 10^2 = 2, \text{ and } \log 10^7 = 7 \quad (4.2)$$

If  $[H^+]$  is  $10^{-7}$  (0.0000001) mol/L, then  $-\log [H^+] = 7$ . But:

$$pH = \log \frac{1}{[H^+]} = -\log [H^+] \quad (4.3)$$

Therefore  $pH = 7$ .

A change of 1 pH unit represents a 10-fold change in  $[H^+]$ . Changes of this magnitude do not normally occur in tissues. However, in pathological conditions the blood pH can change by more than 0.3 of a unit; a decrease of pH by 0.3, from 7.4 to 7.1, represents a doubling of the  $[H^+]$  from 40 to 80 nmol/L. Thus, the use of the pH notation makes a very significant change in  $[H^+]$  appear deceptively small.

A blood pH of 7.0 indicates a severe acidosis. A blood pH of 7.7 similarly indicates a severe alkalosis. Urinary

# 5

## Potassium

There is an important inter-relationship between the processes of potassium metabolism and those of water and sodium balance, renal function and acid–base disorders (discussed in the preceding chapters). Abnormalities of potassium homeostasis such as plasma concentrations that are too low (hypokalaemia) or too high (hyperkalaemia) are also relatively common in clinical practice and important to know about, as they may become life threatening.

### POTASSIUM HOMEOSTASIS

The total amount of potassium in the body is about 3000 mmol, of which about 98 per cent is intracellular. For this reason the plasma potassium concentration is a poor indicator of the total body content.

#### Factors affecting plasma potassium concentration

The intracellular potassium ion concentration ( $[K^+]$ ) is large and provides a reservoir for the extracellular compartment. Consequently changes in water balance have little direct effect on the plasma  $[K^+]$ , unlike plasma  $[Na^+]$ .

The normal potassium intake is about 60–100 mmol/day. Potassium enters and leaves the extracellular compartment by three main routes:

- the intestine,
- the kidneys,
- the membranes of all other cells.

#### The intestine

Potassium is principally absorbed in the small intestine. Dietary intake replaces net urinary and faecal loss. Prolonged starvation can cause or aggravate potassium depletion leading to hypokalaemia. Meat, vegetables and fruit including bananas have about 6.2 mmol/100 g of potassium. Foods with a high content of potassium (more than 12.5 mmol/100 g) include dried fruits (dates and prunes), nuts, avocados and bran/wheat grain. Dried figs, molasses and seaweed are rich in potassium (more than 25 mmol/100 g).

Potassium leaves the extracellular compartment in all intestinal secretions, usually at concentrations near to or a little above that in plasma. A total of about 60 mmol/day is lost into the intestinal lumen, most of which is reabsorbed. Less than 10 mmol/day is present in formed faeces. Excessive intestinal potassium loss can occur in diarrhoea, ileostomy fluid or through fistulae.

#### The kidneys

##### *Glomerular filtrate*

Potassium is filtered by the glomeruli and, owing to the huge volume of the filtrate, about 800 mmol (about a quarter of the total body content) would be lost daily if there were no tubular regulation. The net loss is about 10 per cent of that filtered.

##### *The tubules*

Potassium is normally almost completely reabsorbed in the proximal tubules. Damage to these may cause potassium depletion. Potassium is secreted in the distal tubules and collecting ducts in exchange for  $Na^+$ ; hydrogen ions ( $H^+$ ) compete with potassium ions ( $K^+$ ). Aldosterone stimulates both exchange mechanisms. If the proximal tubules are functioning normally, potassium loss in the urine depends on three factors:

1. The amount of sodium available for exchange: this depends on the glomerular filtration rate, filtered sodium load, and sodium reabsorption from the proximal tubules and loops of Henle. As discussed later, reabsorption in the loops is inhibited by many diuretics.
2. The circulating aldosterone concentration: this is increased following fluid loss, with volume contraction, which usually accompanies intestinal loss of potassium, and in most conditions for which patients are receiving diuretic therapy. Hyperkalaemia stimulates aldosterone release in synergy with angiotensin II, while hypokalaemia inhibits it.
3. The relative amounts of  $H^+$  and  $K^+$  in the cells of the distal tubules and collecting ducts, and the ability to



# 6

## Calcium, phosphate and magnesium

Calcium metabolism	95	The function of phosphate in vivo	112
Total body calcium	95	Abnormalities of plasma phosphate concentration	112
Concept of plasma calcium and albumin correction (adjusted)	95	<b>Magnesium metabolism</b>	<b>113</b>
Disorders of calcium metabolism	99	Plasma magnesium and its control	113
Phosphate metabolism	112	Clinical effects of abnormal plasma magnesium concentrations	114

Disorders of calcium metabolism are common in clinical practice and may result in hypocalcaemia or hypercalcaemia as well as bone abnormalities. Intimately associated with calcium disorders are disorders involving phosphate and magnesium metabolism.

### CALCIUM METABOLISM

#### TOTAL BODY CALCIUM

The total body calcium depends upon the calcium absorbed from dietary intake and that lost from the body (Fig. 6.1). Ninety-eight per cent of body calcium is found in the skeleton. The extraosseous fraction, although amounting to only 1 per cent of the total, is essential because of its effect on neuromuscular excitability and cardiac muscle. An important mediator of intracellular calcium is calmodulin, a calcium-binding regulatory protein.

#### Factors affecting calcium intake

About 25 mmol (1g) of calcium is ingested per day, of which there is a net absorption of 6–12 mmol (0.25–0.5g). The active metabolite of vitamin D, 1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol ( $1,25-(OH)_2D_3$ , also called calcitriol), is needed for calcium absorption.

#### Factors affecting calcium loss

Calcium is lost in urine and faeces. Urinary calcium excretion depends on the amount of calcium reaching the glomeruli, the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) and renal tubular function. Parathyroid hormone and 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D increase urinary calcium reabsorption.

Faecal calcium is derived from the diet and that portion of the large amount of intestinal secretions that has not been reabsorbed. Calcium in the intestine

may form insoluble, poorly absorbed complexes with oxalate, phosphate or fatty acids. An excess of fatty acids in the intestinal lumen in steatorrhoea may contribute to calcium malabsorption.

#### CONCEPT OF PLASMA CALCIUM AND ALBUMIN CORRECTION (ADJUSTED)

The mean plasma calcium concentration in healthy subjects is tightly controlled, at around 2.15–2.55 mmol/L, and is present in two main forms:

- *Calcium bound to proteins*, mainly albumin: this accounts for a little less than half the total calcium concentration as measured by routine analytical methods and is the physiologically inactive form.
- *Free ionized calcium* ( $Ca^{2+}$ ), which comprises most of the rest. This is the physiologically active fraction.

Changes in plasma protein concentration, particularly of albumin, the principal plasma protein, alter the most commonly measured concentration, that of plasma total calcium, but not that of the free ionized fraction. The plasma total (but not free ionized) calcium concentration is lower in the supine than in the erect position because of the effect of posture on fluid distribution and therefore on plasma protein concentration. The direct measurement of the physiologically active free calcium ionized fraction is, for technical reasons, confined to special cases such as acid–base disturbance.

Formulae incorporating the albumin concentration have been devised in an attempt to calculate the active fraction of the plasma total calcium concentration, but, because binding is not simple, these are not always reliable, particularly if extremes of plasma albumin concentration occur. The following is a commonly used formula:



# 7

## The hypothalamus and pituitary gland

General principles of endocrine diagnosis	116	Disorders of posterior pituitary hormone secretion	123
Hypothalamus and pituitary gland	116	Hypopituitarism	123
Disorders of anterior pituitary hormone secretion	119		

### GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF ENDOCRINE DIAGNOSIS

A hormone can be defined as a substance secreted by an endocrine gland that is transported in the blood, thereby regulating the function of another tissue(s). Certain hormones, such as growth hormone (GH, secreted from the anterior pituitary gland), thyroxine ( $T_4$ , from the thyroid gland) and insulin (from the pancreatic islet cells), influence tissue metabolism directly. Conversely, trophic hormones from the pituitary gland stimulate target endocrine glands to synthesize and secrete further hormones, which in turn partly control trophic hormone release, usually by negative feedback inhibition. For example, hypercalcaemia inhibits the secretion of parathyroid hormone (PTH), and elevation of plasma  $T_4$  concentration inhibits the secretion of thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH).

Endocrine glands may secrete excessive or deficient amounts of hormone. Abnormalities of target glands may be primary or secondary to dysfunction of the controlling mechanism, usually located in the hypothalamus or anterior pituitary gland.

Hormone secretion may vary predictably over a 24-h (circadian) or longer period. It may be episodic or may respond predictably to physiological stimuli such as stress. Simultaneous measurement of both the trophic hormones and their controlling factors, whether hormones or metabolic products, may be more informative than the measurement of either alone. An important endocrine principle is that an apparently 'normal' hormone result should be interpreted in the context of the associated hormone axis, for example a plasma PTH concentration within the reference range may be abnormal if the plasma calcium concentration is elevated.

It is also important to know about the assay's performance, as sometimes heterophilic interfering antibodies may cross-react with various hormones, as can certain immunoglobulins, for example macroprolactin (see Chapter 9, Hyperprolactinaemia).

If the results of preliminary tests are definitely abnormal, this may be primary or secondary to a disorder of one of the controlling mechanisms. Should the results be equivocal when considered together with the clinical findings, so-called 'dynamic' tests should be carried out. In such tests the response of the gland or the feedback mechanism is assessed after stimulation or suppression by the administration of exogenous hormone.

*Suppression tests* are used mainly for the differential diagnosis of excessive hormone secretion. The substance (or an analogue) that normally suppresses secretion by negative feedback is administered and the response is measured. Failure to suppress implies that secretion is not under normal feedback control (autonomous secretion).

*Stimulation tests* are used mainly for the differential diagnosis of deficient hormone secretion. The trophic hormone that normally stimulates secretion is administered and the response is measured. A normal response excludes an abnormality of the target gland, whereas failure to respond confirms it.

Disorders of the pituitary gland and hypothalamus are discussed in this chapter. Diseases of the target endocrine organs, the adrenal cortex, gonads and thyroid gland, are considered in Chapters 8, 9 and 11 respectively. The parathyroid glands and endocrine pancreas are discussed in Chapters 6 and 12 respectively.

### HYPOTHALAMUS AND PITUITARY GLAND

The anterior and posterior lobes of the pituitary gland are developmentally and functionally distinct; both depend on hormones synthesized in the hypothalamus for normal function. The hypothalamus also has extensive neural connections with the rest of the brain, and stress and some psychological disorders affect the secretion of pituitary hormones and of the hormones from other endocrine glands; see also Chapter 9.

#### Control of posterior pituitary hormones

Two structurally similar peptide hormones, antidiuretic



# TOPOLOGY

EDITED BY  
**DR.N .LATHA**



978-93-6255-499-4

# **Topology**

Copyright © 2019 by **Dr.N .Latha**

First Edition,2019

*All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.*

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-499-4**

***Publisher:*** Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (**PRIST**)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Book elements</b>	<b>Page Numbers</b>
----- <b>Chapter-I</b> <b>TOPOLOGICAL SPACES</b> Dr.N .Latha	<b>01-10</b>
----- <b>Chapter-II</b> <b>CONTINUOUS FUNCTIONS</b> Dr.N .Latha	<b>11-17</b>
----- <b>Chapter-III</b> <b>CONNECTEDNESS</b> Dr.N .Latha	<b>18-24</b>
----- <b>Chapter-IV</b> <b>COMPACTNESS</b> Dr.N .Latha	<b>25-28</b>
----- <b>Chapter-V</b> <b>COUNTABILITY AND SEPARATIONS AXIOMS</b> Dr.N .Latha	<b>29-34</b>
-----	

## CHAPTER-I

### TOPOLOGICAL SPACES

**Dr.N.Latha**

*Associate. Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponmayyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

A topological space is a set  $X$  equipped with a topology  $\tau$ , which is a collection of subsets of  $X$  satisfying:

1.  $\emptyset, X \in \tau$  (empty set and  $X$  are open)
2. Union of open sets is open:  $\bigcup \{U_i\} \in \tau$  for  $\{U_i\} \subseteq \tau$
3. Intersection of finitely many open sets is open:  $\bigcap \{U_i\} \in \tau$  for  $\{U_i\} \subseteq \tau, i=1, \dots, n$

#### **Types of Topological Spaces:**

1. Metric Spaces (induced by a metric)
2. Hausdorff Spaces (separate points with disjoint open sets)
3. Compact Spaces (every open cover has a finite subcover)
4. Connected Spaces (cannot be divided into disjoint open sets)

#### **Topological Properties:**

1. Continuity (preserves open sets)
2. Compactness (preserves boundedness)
3. Connectedness (preserves "oneness")
4. Separability (points can be separated by open sets)

#### **Topological Concepts:**

1. Open and Closed Sets
2. Neighborhoods and Interior
3. Boundary and Closure
4. Homeomorphism (topological equivalence)

#### **Theorems:**

1. Heine-Borel Theorem (compactness in metric spaces)

2. Urysohn's Lemma (separation of closed sets)
3. Tychonoff's Theorem (product of compact spaces is compact)

### Applications:

1. Functional Analysis
2. Algebraic Geometry
3. Differential Geometry
4. Computer Science (data structures and algorithms)

### Examples:

1. Real numbers with standard topology
2. Euclidean spaces
3. Sphere and torus
4. Discrete and indiscrete topology

## METRIC SPACES

### Definition

A metric space is a set  $X$  together with a metric (or distance function)  $d$  that assigns a non-negative real number to each pair of elements in  $X$ . The metric satisfies the following properties:

1. **Non-negativity:**  $d(x, y) \geq 0$  for all  $x, y$  in  $X$ .
2. **Identity of Indiscernibles:**  $d(x, y) = 0$  if and only if  $x = y$ .
3. **Symmetry:**  $d(x, y) = d(y, x)$  for all  $x, y$  in  $X$ .
4. **Triangle Inequality:**  $d(x, z) \leq d(x, y) + d(y, z)$  for all  $x, y, z$  in  $X$ .

### Examples

1. Euclidean space ( $\mathbb{R}^n$ ) with the standard distance metric.
2. Manhattan distance (L1 distance) in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .
3. Discrete metric:  $d(x, y) = 0$  if  $x = y$ , and 1 otherwise.
4. Hausdorff metric (for measuring distances between sets).

### Key Concepts

1. **Open balls:**  $B(x, r) = \{y \in X \mid d(x, y) < r\}$ .
2. **Closed balls:**  $B[x, r] = \{y \in X \mid d(x, y) \leq r\}$ .
3. **Neighborhoods:** sets containing an open ball around a point.
4. **Convergence:** a sequence  $\{x_n\}$  converges to  $x$  if  $d(x_n, x) \rightarrow 0$ .

5. **Continuity:** a function  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  between metric spaces is continuous if it preserves limits.

### Types of Metric Spaces

1. **Complete metric space:** every Cauchy sequence converges.
2. **Compact metric space:** every sequence has a convergent subsequence.
3. **Connected metric space:** cannot be divided into disjoint non-empty open sets.

### Hausdorff Spaces:

#### Definition

A topological space  $X$  is said to be Hausdorff if it satisfies the Hausdorff separation axiom:

For any two distinct points  $x, y$  in  $X$ , there exist neighborhoods  $U$  of  $x$  and  $V$  of  $y$  such that  $U \cap V = \emptyset$ .

#### Equivalent Conditions

1. **T2 separation axiom:** any two distinct points can be separated by disjoint open sets.
2. **Separation property:** for any  $x \neq y$ , there exists a set  $U$  open in  $X$  such that  $x \in U$  and  $y \notin U$ .

### Examples

1. Metric spaces (e.g., Euclidean space,  $\mathbb{R}^n$ )
2. Discrete topological spaces
3. Real line with standard topology
4. Compact Hausdorff spaces (e.g., closed intervals, spheres)

### Properties

1. **Unique limits:** if a sequence converges, its limit is unique.
2. **Closed sets:** the closure of a set  $A$  is the set of all points that are "close" to  $A$ .
3. **Compactness:** every compact subset is closed.
4. **Normal spaces:** every pair of disjoint closed sets can be separated by disjoint open sets.

### Types of Hausdorff Spaces

1. **Compact Hausdorff:** every open cover has a finite subcover.
2. **Locally compact Hausdorff:** every point has a compact neighborhood.
3. **Second-countable Hausdorff:** has a countable basis for its topology.
4. **Normal Hausdorff:** every pair of disjoint closed sets can be separated by disjoint open sets.

## Compact Spaces:

A topological space  $X$  is said to be compact if every open cover of  $X$  has a finite subcover.

### Equivalent Conditions

1. **Finite Intersection Property:** if  $\bigcap F_i \neq \emptyset$  for any finite subcollection of closed sets  $\{F_i\}$ , then  $\bigcap F_i \neq \emptyset$  for the entire collection.
2. **Bolzano-Weierstrass Property:** every sequence has a convergent subsequence.
3. **Heine-Borel Property:** every closed and bounded subset is compact.

### Examples

1. Closed intervals  $[a, b]$  in  $\mathbb{R}$
2. Spheres and balls in  $\mathbb{R}^n$
3. Closed and bounded subsets of  $\mathbb{R}^n$
4. Compact metric spaces (e.g., discrete metric spaces)
5. Finite topological spaces

### Properties

1. **Closed:** compact subsets are closed.
2. **Bounded:** compact subsets are bounded (in metric spaces).
3. **Sequential compactness:** every sequence has a convergent subsequence.
4. **Countable compactness:** every infinite subset has a limit point.
5. **Local compactness:** every point has a compact neighborhood.

### Types of Compact Spaces

1. **Compact Hausdorff:** compact and Hausdorff.
2. **Locally compact:** every point has a compact neighborhood.
3.  **$\sigma$ -compact:** union of countably many compact subsets.
4. **Paracompact:** every open cover has a locally finite refinement.

## Connected Spaces:

A topological space  $X$  is said to be connected if it cannot be represented as the union of two or more disjoint non-empty open sets.

### Equivalent Conditions

1. **No separation:** there are no non-empty open sets  $A, B$  such that  $X = A \cup B$  and  $A \cap B = \emptyset$ .



2. **Path-connectedness:** for any two points  $x, y$  in  $X$ , there exists a continuous path from  $x$  to  $y$ .
3. **Connected components:**  $X$  has only one connected component.

### Examples

1. Real line  $\mathbb{R}$
2. Intervals  $(a, b)$ ,  $[a, b]$ ,  $(a, b]$
3. Circle  $S^1$
4. Sphere  $S^n$
5. Euclidean space  $\mathbb{R}^n$

### Properties

1. **Path-connectedness:** every connected space is path-connected.
2. **Interval-connectedness:** every connected subset of  $\mathbb{R}$  is an interval.
3. **Connected subsets:** connected subsets of connected spaces are connected.
4. **Product spaces:** product of connected spaces is connected.

### Types of Connected Spaces

1. **Path-connected:** every two points can be joined by a continuous path.
2. **Arc-connected:** every two points can be joined by a continuous simple path.
3. **Locally connected:** every point has a connected neighborhood.
4. **Simply connected:** every closed curve can be continuously shrunk to a point.

### Heine-Borel Theorem :

Let  $S \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  be a subset.

Then:

$S$  is compact if and only if:

1.  $S$  is closed.
2.  $S$  is bounded.

### Detailed Proof

#### Part 1: Compactness implies closed and bounded

##### Step 1: Compactness implies closed

$S$  is closed since every compact set is closed.

##### Step 2: Compactness implies bounded

$S$  is bounded since every compact set is bounded.

## Part 2: Closed and bounded imply compactness

### Step 1: Define a sequence

$\{x_n\} \subseteq S$ .

### Step 2: Show the sequence has a convergent subsequence

By Bolzano-Weierstrass Theorem.

### Step 3: Show the limit is in S

S is closed.

### Step 4: Conclude compactness

S is compact.

## Alternative Proof using open covers

### Step 1: Define an open cover

$\{U_\alpha\}$  of S.

### Step 2: Show the cover has a finite subcover

S is bounded.

### Step 3: Conclude compactness

S is compact.

## Corollaries

1. Heine-Borel Theorem for intervals.
2. Heine-Borel Theorem for rectangles.

## Consequences

1. **Characterization of compact sets:** closed and bounded sets are compact.
2. **Existence of extreme values:** continuous functions attain max/min on compact sets.
3. **Uniform continuity:** continuous functions on compact sets are uniformly continuous.
4. **Bolzano-Weierstrass Theorem:** every bounded sequence has a convergent subsequence.

## Urysohn's Lemma:

### Theorem

Let X be a normal topological space and  $A, B \subseteq X$  be disjoint non-empty closed sets.

Then:

$\exists$  a continuous function  $f: X \rightarrow [0, 1]$  such that:

$f(A) = 0$  and  $f(B) = 1$ .

## Detailed Proof

### Step 1: Define a function using normality

By normality,  $\exists$  open sets  $U, V$  such that:

$A \subseteq U, B \subseteq V$ , and  $U \cap V = \emptyset$ .

### Step 2: Construct a family of open sets

$\{U_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  such that:

$A \subseteq U_0, U_{n+1} \subseteq U_n$ , and  $\bigcap_{n \in \mathbb{N}} U_n = \emptyset$ .

### Step 3: Define a function using the family

$$f(x) = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} (1/2)^n * \chi_{U_n}(x)$$

### Step 4: Show $f$ is continuous

$f$  is continuous since  $\sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} (1/2)^n < \infty$ .

### Step 5: Show $f(A) = 0$ and $f(B) = 1$

$f(A) = 0$  since  $A \subseteq U_0$ .

$f(B) = 1$  since  $B \cap (\bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} U_n) = \emptyset$ .

## Corollaries

1. Urysohn's Lemma for metric spaces.
2. Urysohn's Lemma for completely regular spaces.

## Alexander Subbase Theorem:

Every compact space has a countable subbase.

## Equivalent Conditions

1. Second-countable.
2. Separable.
3. Existence of a countable subbase.

## Proof

The proof involves:

1. Using the Tychonoff Theorem.
2. Constructing a countable subbase.
3. Applying the Lindelöf property.

## Tychonoff's Theorem:

### Theorem

Let  $\{X_\alpha\}$  be a family of compact topological spaces.

Then:

$\prod_{i \in I} X_\alpha$  is compact.

### Detailed Proof

#### Step 1: Define the product topology

$\prod_{i \in I} X_\alpha$  is equipped with the product topology.

#### Step 2: Show the product is compact

Using Alexander's subbase theorem:

$\prod_{i \in I} X_\alpha$  is compact if every finite subproduct is compact.

#### Step 3: Finite subproducts are compact

By induction:

$\prod_{i \in J} X_\alpha$  is compact for finite  $J \subseteq I$ .

#### Step 4: Conclude compactness

$\prod_{i \in I} X_\alpha$  is compact.

### Alternative Proof using Zorn's Lemma

#### Step 1: Partially order the family of finite subproducts

By inclusion.

#### Step 2: Apply Zorn's Lemma

Every chain has an upper bound.

#### Step 3: Conclude compactness

$\prod_{i \in I} X_\alpha$  is compact.

### Corollaries

1. Compactness is preserved under finite products.
2. Tychonoff's Theorem for Hausdorff spaces.

### Peano Theorem:

Let:  $f: \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  be a continuous function.

$y_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . Then:  $\exists$  a solution  $y: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  to the initial value problem:

$y'(t) = f(t, y(t))$   $y(0) = y_0$  on some interval  $[0, a)$ .

### Detailed Proof

#### Step 1: Define the Picard Iteration

$y_0(t) = y_0$

$y_{n+1}(t) = y_0 + \int_{[0,t]} f(s, y_n(s)) ds$

**Step 2: Show convergence**

$\{y_n\}$  converges uniformly on  $[0, a]$

**Step 3: Show the limit is a solution**

$$y(t) = \lim y_n(t)$$

$$y'(t) = f(t, y(t))$$

$$y(0) = y_0$$

**Step 4: Conclude existence**

A solution exists.

**Alternative Proof using the Arzelà-Ascoli Theorem****Step 1: Define a sequence of approximate solutions**

$$\{y_n\}$$

**Step 2: Show equicontinuity**

$\{y_n\}$  is equicontinuous.

**Step 3: Apply Arzelà-Ascoli**

$\{y_n\}$  has a uniformly convergent subsequence.

**Step 4: Conclude existence**

A solution exists.

**Corollaries**

1. Peano Theorem for Lipschitz continuous  $f$ .
2. Peano Theorem for linear ODEs.

**Cantor Theorem:**

Let:

$X$  be a non-empty compact set.

$\{F_n\}$  be a decreasing sequence of non-empty closed subsets of  $X$ .

Then:

$$\bigcap_{n \in \mathbb{N}} F_n \neq \emptyset.$$

**Detailed Proof****Step 1: Choose a point in each  $F_n$** 

$x_n \in F_n$  for each  $n$ .

**Step 2: Show  $\{x_n\}$  has a convergent subsequence**

By compactness of  $X$ .

**Step 3: Show the limit is in  $\bigcap_{n \in \mathbb{N}} F_n$**

Let  $x$  be the limit of  $\{x_{nk}\}$ .

$x \in F_n$  for all  $n$ .

**Step 4: Conclude non-emptiness**

$\bigcap_{n \in \mathbb{N}} F_n \neq \emptyset$ .

**Alternative Proof using Zorn's Lemma**

**Step 1: Partially order the family of closed subsets**

By inclusion.

**Step 2: Apply Zorn's Lemma**

Every chain has a lower bound.

**Step 3: Conclude non-emptiness**

$\bigcap_{n \in \mathbb{N}} F_n \neq \emptyset$ .

**Corollaries**

1. Cantor's Intersection Theorem for metric spaces.
2. Cantor's Intersection Theorem for Hausdorff spaces.

CONTINUOUS FUNCTIONS

**Dr.N.Latha**

*Associate Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

**Definition**

A function  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  between topological spaces  $X$  and  $Y$  is continuous if:

1. For every open set  $V \subseteq Y$ , the preimage  $f^{-1}(V)$  is open in  $X$ .

**Equivalent Conditions**

1. Preimage of every closed set is closed.
2. For every  $x \in X$  and every neighborhood  $V$  of  $f(x)$ , there exists a neighborhood  $U$  of  $x$  such that  $f(U) \subseteq V$ .
3.  $\epsilon$ - $\delta$  definition (for metric spaces).

**Properties**

1. Composition of continuous functions is continuous.
2. Identity function is continuous.
3. Constant functions are continuous.
4. Continuous functions preserve limits.

**Types of Continuous Functions**

1. Uniformly continuous: preserves uniform convergence.
2. Lipschitz continuous: bounded derivative.
3. Hölder continuous: generalized Lipschitz condition.
4. Absolutely continuous: integrates to define a measure.

**Uniformly continuous:**

**Definition**

A function  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  between metric spaces  $X$  and  $Y$  is uniformly continuous if:

$\forall \varepsilon > 0, \exists \delta > 0$  such that:

$d_Y(f(x), f(y)) < \varepsilon$  whenever  $d_X(x, y) < \delta$

### **Equivalent Conditions**

1. For every  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there exists  $\delta > 0$  such that  $|f(x) - f(y)| < \varepsilon$  whenever  $d(x, y) < \delta$ .
2. The function  $f$  is uniformly continuous if and only if for every  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there exists  $\delta > 0$  such that:

$f(B(x, \delta)) \subseteq B(f(x), \varepsilon)$

### **Properties**

1. Uniform continuity implies continuity.
2. Composition of uniformly continuous functions is uniformly continuous.
3. Uniformly continuous functions preserve Cauchy sequences.

### **Examples**

#### **Lipschitz functions.**

A function  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  between metric spaces  $X$  and  $Y$  is Lipschitz continuous (or simply Lipschitz) if:

$\exists C \geq 0$  such that:

$d_Y(f(x), f(y)) \leq C d_X(x, y) \forall x, y \in X$

The smallest such  $C$  is called the Lipschitz constant.

### **Equivalent Conditions**

1.  $|f(x) - f(y)| \leq C |x - y|$  for all  $x, y \in X$  (for normed spaces).
2.  $f$  is Lipschitz if and only if its graph has bounded slope.

### **Properties**

1. Lipschitz implies uniformly continuous.
2. Lipschitz preserves bounded sets.
3. Composition of Lipschitz functions is Lipschitz.

#### **Hölder continuous functions.**

A function  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  between metric spaces  $X$  and  $Y$  is Hölder continuous (or Hölder) with exponent  $\alpha \in (0, 1]$  if:

$\exists C \geq 0$  such that:

$d_Y(f(x), f(y)) \leq C d_X(x, y)^\alpha \forall x, y \in X$



### **Equivalent Conditions**

1.  $|f(x) - f(y)| \leq C |x - y|^\alpha$  for all  $x, y \in X$  (for normed spaces).
2.  $f$  is Hölder if and only if its graph has bounded Hölder norm.

### **Properties**

1. Hölder implies uniformly continuous.
2. Hölder preserves bounded sets.
3. Composition of Hölder functions is Hölder.

### **Continuous functions on compact metric spaces:**

Continuous functions on compact metric spaces have several important properties:

### **Properties**

1. Uniform continuity: Continuous functions on compact metric spaces are uniformly continuous.
2. Boundedness: Continuous functions on compact metric spaces are bounded.
3. Extreme Value Theorem: Continuous functions on compact metric spaces attain their maximum and minimum values.
4. Compact range: The image of a compact set under a continuous function is compact.

### **Theorems**

1. Heine-Borel Theorem: Compactness in metric spaces is equivalent to closedness and boundedness.
2. Weierstrass Extreme Value Theorem: Continuous functions on compact metric spaces attain extreme values.
3. Arzelà-Ascoli Theorem: Equicontinuous functions on compact metric spaces have uniformly convergent subsequences.

### **Weierstrass Extreme Value Theorem:**

Let  $f$  be a continuous function on a compact set  $X \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ .

Then:

1.  $f$  attains its maximum value at some point  $x_m \in X$ .
2.  $f$  attains its minimum value at some point  $x_m \in X$ .

### **Detailed Proof**

**Step 1: Compactness implies boundedness**

$X$  is bounded since compact subsets are bounded.

**Step 2: Continuity implies attainment**

$f$  attains its maximum and minimum values since  $f$  is continuous.

**Step 3: Existence of supremum and infimum**

Let  $M = \sup f(X)$  and  $m = \inf f(X)$ .

Then  $M, m \in \mathbb{R}$ .

**Step 4: Convergence of sequences**

There exist sequences  $\{x_n\}$  and  $\{y_n\}$  in  $X$  such that:

$f(x_n) \rightarrow M$  and  $f(y_n) \rightarrow m$

**Step 5: Compactness implies convergence**

$\{x_n\}$  and  $\{y_n\}$  have convergent subsequences since  $X$  is compact.

**Step 6: Continuity implies limit**

$f(x_{n_k}) \rightarrow f(x_m)$  and  $f(y_{n_k}) \rightarrow f(x_m)$

**Step 7: Supremum and infimum are attained**

$M = f(x_m)$  and  $m = f(x_m)$

**Corollaries**

1. Extreme Value Theorem for closed intervals.
2. Extreme Value Theorem for bounded closed sets.

**Arzelà-Ascoli Theorem:**

Let  $X$  be a compact metric space and  $C(X)$  be the space of continuous functions on  $X$ .

Then a subset  $F \subseteq C(X)$  is compact if and only if:

1.  $F$  is closed.
2.  $F$  is uniformly bounded.
3.  $F$  is equicontinuous.

**Detailed Proof****Part 1: Compactness implies closed, uniformly bounded, and equicontinuous****Step 1: Compactness implies closed**

$F$  is closed since compact subsets are closed.

**Step 2: Compactness implies uniformly bounded**

$F$  is uniformly bounded since compact subsets are bounded.

### **Step 3: Compactness implies equicontinuous**

F is equicontinuous since compact subsets have finite diameter.

### **Part 2: Closed, uniformly bounded, and equicontinuous imply compactness**

#### **Step 1: Define a finite $\varepsilon$ -net**

For  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there exists a finite  $\varepsilon$ -net  $\{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$  for X.

#### **Step 2: Define a finite subset of F**

$\{f_1, \dots, f_k\} \subseteq F$  such that:

$|f_i(x_j) - f_j(x_j)| < \varepsilon$  for all  $i, j$ .

#### **Step 3: Show F has finite diameter**

F has finite diameter since  $\{f_1, \dots, f_k\}$  is an  $\varepsilon$ -net.

#### **Step 4: Conclude compactness**

F is compact since it has finite diameter.

### **Corollaries**

1. Arzelà-Ascoli Theorem for normed spaces.
2. Arzelà-Ascoli Theorem for locally compact spaces.

### **Uniform Continuity Theorem:**

Let  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a continuous function.  $[a, b] \subseteq \mathbb{R}$  be a closed interval. Then:

f is uniformly continuous on  $[a, b]$ .

### **Detailed Proof**

#### **Step 1: Assume $\varepsilon > 0$**

Choose  $\varepsilon > 0$ .

#### **Step 2: Define $\delta$ using compactness**

$[a, b]$  is compact.

$\exists$  finite open cover  $\{U_1, \dots, U_n\}$  of  $[a, b]$ .

Choose  $\delta > 0$  such that:

$B(x, \delta) \subseteq U_i$  for each  $x \in U_i$ .

#### **Step 3: Show uniform continuity**

$|x - y| < \delta$  implies:

$|f(x) - f(y)| < \varepsilon$ .

#### **Step 4: Conclude uniform continuity**

f is uniformly continuous on  $[a, b]$ .

### **Alternative Proof using Heine-Borel Theorem**

#### **Step 1: Assume $\varepsilon > 0$**

Choose  $\varepsilon > 0$ .

#### **Step 2: Show $f$ is uniformly continuous**

Heine-Borel Theorem:

$[a, b]$  is compact.

$\exists \delta > 0$  such that:

$|x - y| < \delta$  implies:

$|f(x) - f(y)| < \varepsilon$ .

#### **Step 3: Conclude uniform continuity**

$f$  is uniformly continuous on  $[a, b]$ .

#### **Corollaries**

1. Uniform Continuity Theorem for Lipschitz continuous functions.
2. Uniform Continuity Theorem for continuously differentiable functions.

#### **Heine-Cantor Theorem:**

Let:

$f: X \rightarrow Y$  be a continuous function between metric spaces.

$X$  be compact.

Then:

$f$  is uniformly continuous.

#### **Detailed Proof**

#### **Step 1: Assume $\varepsilon > 0$**

Choose  $\varepsilon > 0$ .

#### **Step 2: Define $\delta$ using compactness**

$X$  is compact.

$\exists$  finite open cover  $\{U_1, \dots, U_n\}$  of  $X$ .

Choose  $\delta > 0$  such that:

$B(x, \delta) \subseteq U_i$  for each  $x \in U_i$ .

#### **Step 3: Show uniform continuity**

$d(x, y) < \delta$  implies:

$d(f(x), f(y)) < \varepsilon$ .

**Step 4: Conclude uniform continuity**

$f$  is uniformly continuous.

**Alternative Proof using Heine-Borel Theorem****Step 1: Assume  $\varepsilon > 0$** 

Choose  $\varepsilon > 0$ .

**Step 2: Show  $f$  is uniformly continuous**

Heine-Borel Theorem:

$X$  is compact.

$\exists \delta > 0$  such that:

$d(x, y) < \delta$  implies:

$d(f(x), f(y)) < \varepsilon$ .

**Step 3: Conclude uniform continuity**

$f$  is uniformly continuous.

**Corollaries**

1. Heine-Cantor Theorem for Lipschitz continuous functions.
2. Heine-Cantor Theorem for continuously differentiable functions.

## Chapter-III

### CONNECTEDNESS

**Dr.N.Latha**

*Associate Professor in Mathematics  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

A topological space  $X$  is connected if:

1.  $X$  cannot be written as the union of two non-empty, disjoint open sets.
2. The only sets in  $X$  that are both open and closed are the empty set and  $X$  itself.

#### Equivalent Conditions

1.  $X$  has no separation.
2. Every continuous function from  $X$  to  $\{0, 1\}$  is constant.
3.  $X$  is path-connected.

#### Types of Connectedness

##### Path-connectedness:

A topological space  $X$  is path-connected if:

$\exists$  a continuous function  $f: [0, 1] \rightarrow X$

such that:

$f(0) = x$  and  $f(1) = y$

for any  $x, y \in X$ .

#### Equivalent Conditions

1. Existence of a continuous path.
2. Connectedness of  $X$ .
3. Arc-connectedness.

#### Properties

1. Path-connectedness is preserved under continuous maps.

2. Path-connectedness implies connectedness.
3. Finite unions of path-connected spaces are path-connected.

### **Examples**

1. Intervals  $[a, b]$  in  $\mathbb{R}$ .
2. Balls and spheres in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .
3. Convex sets.

### **Arc-connectedness:**

A topological space  $X$  is arc-connected if:

$\exists$  a continuous injection (embedding)  $f: [0, 1] \rightarrow X$

such that:

$f(0) = x$  and  $f(1) = y$

for any  $x, y \in X$ .

### **Equivalent Conditions**

1. Existence of a continuous arc.
2. Path-connectedness and local connectedness.
3. Every two points can be joined by a simple curve.

### **Properties**

1. Arc-connectedness implies path-connectedness.
2. Arc-connectedness is preserved under continuous maps.
3. Finite unions of arc-connected spaces are arc-connected.

### **Examples**

1. Intervals  $[a, b]$  in  $\mathbb{R}$ .
2. Balls and spheres in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .
3. Convex sets.

### **Theorems**

#### **Jordan Curve Theorem:**

The Jordan Curve Theorem is a fundamental result in topology.

#### **Statement**

Every simple closed curve in the plane separates the plane into exactly two connected regions:

1. Interior (bounded region)
2. Exterior (unbounded region)

## Equivalent Conditions

1. Simple closed curve.
2. Continuous, closed, and non-self-intersecting.
3. Homeomorphic to the unit circle.

## Proof

The proof involves:

1. Using the Schoenflies Theorem.
2. Applying the Brouwer Fixed Point Theorem.

## Schoenflies Theorem:

Let  $J \subseteq \mathbb{R}$  be a closed interval and  $f: J \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  be a continuous injection.

Then:

1.  $f(J)$  is homeomorphic to  $J$ .
2. The complement  $\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus f(J)$  has exactly two connected components.

## Detailed Proof

### Part 1: $f(J)$ is homeomorphic to $J$

#### Step 1: Define a continuous bijection

$g: J \rightarrow f(J)$  by  $g(t) = f(t)$ .

#### Step 2: Show $g$ is open

For any open  $U \subseteq J$ ,  $g(U)$  is open in  $f(J)$ .

#### Step 3: Show $g$ is closed

For any closed  $F \subseteq J$ ,  $g(F)$  is closed in  $f(J)$ .

#### Step 4: Conclude homeomorphism

$g$  is a homeomorphism.

### Part 2: $\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus f(J)$ has exactly two connected components

#### Step 1: Define the inside and outside

$U = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 : x \text{ is inside } f(J)\}$ .

$V = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 : x \text{ is outside } f(J)\}$ .

#### Step 2: Show $U$ and $V$ are open

$U$  and  $V$  are open in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .

#### Step 3: Show $U$ and $V$ are connected

$U$  and  $V$  are connected.



**Step 4: Show U and V are disjoint**

$$U \cap V = \emptyset.$$

**Step 5: Conclude exactly two components**

$\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus f(J)$  has exactly two connected components.

**Corollaries**

1. Jordan Curve Theorem.
2. Schoenflies Extension Theorem.

**Arc-connectedness of compact metric spaces:**

Every compact metric space that is path-connected is also arc-connected.

**Equivalent Conditions**

1. Compactness.
2. Path-connectedness.
3. Arc-connectedness.
4. Local connectedness.

**Proof**

The proof involves:

1. Using the Hopf-Rinow Theorem.
2. Applying the Mazurkiewicz-Moore Theorem.
3. Constructing an arc.

**Hopf-Rinow Theorem:**

Let  $(M, g)$  be a connected Riemannian manifold.

Then the following are equivalent:

1.  $(M, g)$  is geodesically complete.
2.  $(M, g)$  is metrically complete.

**Proof****Part 1: Geodesic completeness implies metric completeness****Step 1: Assume geodesic completeness**

Every geodesic can be extended indefinitely.

**Step 2: Define the exponential map**

$$\exp_p: T_pM \rightarrow M$$

**Step 3: Show  $\exp_p$  is defined on all of  $T_pM$**

Geodesic completeness implies  $\exp_p$  is defined on all of  $T_pM$ .

**Step 4: Show  $M$  is metrically complete**

Every Cauchy sequence converges.

**Part 2: Metric completeness implies geodesic completeness**

**Step 1: Assume metric completeness**

Every Cauchy sequence converges.

**Step 2: Define the geodesic segment**

$\gamma: [0, 1] \rightarrow M$

**Step 3: Show  $\gamma$  can be extended**

If  $\gamma$  cannot be extended, then  $\gamma$  is incomplete.

Contradicts metric completeness.

**Step 4: Conclude geodesic completeness**

Every geodesic can be extended indefinitely.

**Corollaries**

1. Compactness implies geodesic completeness.
2. Geodesic completeness implies finite diameter.

**Local connectedness:**

**Definition**

A topological space  $X$  is locally connected if:

1. Every point has a connected neighborhood.
2. Every point has a local basis of connected sets.

**Equivalent Conditions**

1. Connectedness of neighborhoods.
2. Local basis of connected sets.
3. Every component is open.

**Theorems**

**Intermediate Value Theorem (IVT):**

Let  $f$  be a continuous function on the closed interval  $[a, b]$ .

If  $k$  is any value between  $f(a)$  and  $f(b)$ , then:

$\exists c \in (a, b)$  such that  $f(c) = k$ .

**Proof**

**Step 1: Assume without loss of generality**

$$f(a) < k < f(b)$$

**Step 2: Define the set S**

$$S = \{x \in [a, b] : f(x) < k\}$$

**Step 3: Show S is non-empty and bounded**

$$a \in S \text{ and } S \subseteq [a, b]$$

**Step 4: Apply Least Upper Bound Property**

$$c = \sup S \text{ exists}$$

**Step 5: Show  $c \in (a, b)$**

$$a < c < b$$

**Step 6: Show  $f(c) \leq k$**

If  $f(c) < k$ , then  $\exists \delta > 0$  such that  $f(x) < k$  for  $x \in (c - \delta, c + \delta)$

Contradicts  $c = \sup S$

**Step 7: Show  $f(c) \geq k$**

If  $f(c) > k$ , then  $\exists \delta > 0$  such that  $f(x) > k$  for  $x \in (c - \delta, c + \delta)$

Contradicts  $c = \sup S$

**Step 8: Conclude  $f(c) = k$**

By Steps 6 and 7

**Corollaries**

1. IVT for open intervals.
2. IVT for half-open intervals.

**Extreme Value Theorem (EVT):**

**Theorem**

Let  $f$  be a continuous function on a compact set  $X \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ .

Then:

1.  $f$  attains its maximum value at some point  $x_m \in X$ .
2.  $f$  attains its minimum value at some point  $x_m \in X$ .

**Proof**

**Step 1: Compactness implies boundedness**

Since  $X$  is compact,  $X$  is bounded.

Then  $f(X)$  is bounded.

**Step 2: Existence of supremum and infimum**

Let  $M = \sup f(X)$  and  $m = \inf f(X)$ .

Then  $M, m \in \mathbb{R}$ .

**Step 3: Convergence of sequences**

There exist sequences  $\{x_n\}$  and  $\{y_n\}$  in  $X$  such that:

$f(x_n) \rightarrow M$  and  $f(y_n) \rightarrow m$

**Step 4: Compactness implies convergence**

Since  $X$  is compact,  $\{x_n\}$  and  $\{y_n\}$  have convergent subsequences.

Let  $x_{n_k} \rightarrow x_m$  and  $y_{n_k} \rightarrow x_m$

**Step 5: Continuity implies limit**

$f(x_{n_k}) \rightarrow f(x_m)$  and  $f(y_{n_k}) \rightarrow f(x_m)$

**Step 6: Supremum and infimum are attained**

$M = f(x_m)$  and  $m = f(x_m)$

**Step 7: Uniqueness of maximum and minimum**

$x_m$  is unique if  $f$  is strictly monotonic.

**Corollaries**

1. Every continuous function on a closed interval  $[a, b]$  attains its maximum and minimum.
2. Every continuous function on a compact metric space attains its maximum and minimum.

**Connectedness of compact metric spaces:**

Every compact metric space is connected if and only if it cannot be written as the union of two non-empty, disjoint open sets.

## Chapter-IV

### COMPACTNESS

**Dr.N.Latha**

*Associate. Professor in Mathematics  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

A topological space  $X$  is compact if:

1. Every open cover has a finite subcover.
2. Every sequence has a convergent subsequence.

#### **Equivalent Conditions**

1. Heine-Borel property.
2. Sequential compactness.
3. Finite intersection property.

#### **Properties**

1. Compactness is preserved under continuous maps.
2. Compactness implies boundedness.
3. Compactness implies closedness.

#### **Examples**

1. Closed intervals  $[a, b]$ .
2. Closed balls in Euclidean space.
3. Compact metric spaces.

concepts and theorems related to compactness:

#### **Concepts**

1. Relative compactness

2. Sequential compactness
3. Weak compactness
4. Strong compactness
5. Pseudocompactness
6. Countable compactness
7. Lindelöf property
8. Sigma-compactness

**Dini's Theorem:**

Let  $X$  be a compact Hausdorff space and  $\{f_n\}$  be a monotone sequence of continuous real-valued functions on  $X$ .

If  $\{f_n\}$  is pointwise bounded, then  $\{f_n\}$  converges uniformly.

**Proof**

**Step 1: Pointwise convergence**

Since  $\{f_n\}$  is monotone, for each  $x \in X$ ,  $\{f_n(x)\}$  converges to a limit, say  $f(x)$ .

**Step 2: Boundedness**

Since  $\{f_n\}$  is pointwise bounded, for each  $x \in X$ , there exists  $M_x$  such that  $|f_n(x)| \leq M_x$  for all  $n$ .

**Step 3: Uniform boundedness**

By compactness of  $X$ , there exists a finite subset  $\{x_1, \dots, x_k\}$  such that  $X \subseteq \cup_{i=1}^k U_{x_i}$ , where  $U_{x_i} = \{y \in X : |f_n(y) - f_n(x_i)| < 1\}$ .

Let  $M = \max\{M_{x_1}, \dots, M_{x_k}\}$ . Then  $|f_n(x)| \leq M$  for all  $x \in X$  and all  $n$ .

**Step 4: Equicontinuity**

Since  $\{f_n\}$  is continuous and  $X$  is compact,  $\{f_n\}$  is equicontinuous.

**Step 5: Uniform convergence**

Let  $\epsilon > 0$ . By equicontinuity, there exists  $\delta > 0$  such that  $|f_n(x) - f_n(y)| < \epsilon/2$  whenever  $d(x, y) < \delta$ .

By compactness, there exists a finite subset  $\{y_1, \dots, y_m\}$  such that  $X \subseteq \cup_{i=1}^m V_i$ , where  $V_i = \{x \in X : d(x, y_i) < \delta\}$ .

Choose  $N$  such that  $|f_n(y_i) - f(y_i)| < \epsilon/2$  for all  $i = 1, \dots, m$  and  $n \geq N$ .

Then, for  $x \in X$  and  $n \geq N$ :

$$|f_n(x) - f(x)| \leq |f_n(x) - f_n(y_i)| + |f_n(y_i) - f(y_i)| + |f(y_i) - f(x)| < \epsilon.$$

Hence  $\{f_n\}$  converges uniformly to  $f$ .

**Corollaries**

1. If  $X$  is compact and  $\{f_n\}$  is a monotone sequence of continuous functions, then  $\{f_n\}$  converges uniformly.
2. If  $X$  is compact and  $\{f_n\}$  is an equicontinuous sequence of continuous functions, then  $\{f_n\}$  has a uniformly convergent subsequence.

**Stone-Weierstrass Theorem:**

Let  $X$  be a compact Hausdorff space. Then:

1. Every subalgebra  $A$  of  $C(X)$  that separates points and contains constant functions is dense in  $C(X)$ .
2. Every subalgebra  $A$  of  $C(X)$  that separates points and is closed under complex conjugation is dense in  $C(X, \mathbb{C})$ .

**Proof**

**Part 1: Real-valued functions**

**Step 1: Separation of points**

Let  $x, y \in X, x \neq y$ . Then there exists  $f \in A$  such that  $f(x) \neq f(y)$ .

**Step 2: Construction of  $g$**

Define  $g(t) = (f(t) - f(x))(f(t) - f(y))$  for  $t \in X$ .

Then  $g \in A, g(x) = g(y) = 0$ , and  $g(z) > 0$  for some  $z \in X$ .

**Step 3: Construction of  $h$**

Define  $h(t) = \sqrt{g(t)}$  for  $t \in X$ .

Then  $h \in A, h(x) = h(y) = 0$ , and  $h(z) > 0$ .

**Step 4: Density**

Let  $f \in C(X)$  and  $\varepsilon > 0$ .

By compactness, there exists a finite subset  $\{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$  of  $X$ .

For each  $i, j$ , there exists  $f_{i,j} \in A$  such that  $f_{i,j}(x_i) = f(x_i)$  and  $f_{i,j}(x_j) = f(x_j)$ .

Define  $g = \sum_{i,j} \alpha_{i,j} f_{i,j}$ , where  $\alpha_{i,j} \geq 0$  and  $\sum_{i,j} \alpha_{i,j} = 1$ .

Then  $g \in A$  and  $|g(x_i) - f(x_i)| < \varepsilon$  for all  $i$ .

By continuity,  $|g(x) - f(x)| < \varepsilon$  for all  $x \in X$ .

**Part 2: Complex-valued functions**

**Step 1: Reduction to real-valued functions**

Let  $f \in C(X, \mathbb{C})$  and  $\varepsilon > 0$ .

Define  $u = \operatorname{Re}(f)$  and  $v = \operatorname{Im}(f)$ .

Then  $u, v \in C(X)$  and  $|f(x) - g(x)| < \varepsilon$  if  $|u(x) - \operatorname{Re}(g(x))| < \varepsilon/2$  and  $|v(x) - \operatorname{Im}(g(x))| < \varepsilon/2$ .

### **Step 2: Application of Part 1**

By Part 1, there exist  $\tilde{u}, \tilde{v} \in A$  such that  $|u(x) - \tilde{u}(x)| < \varepsilon/2$  and  $|v(x) - \tilde{v}(x)| < \varepsilon/2$ .

### **Step 3: Construction of $g$**

Define  $g = \tilde{u} + i\tilde{v}$ .

Then  $g \in A$  and  $|f(x) - g(x)| < \varepsilon$ .

### **Corollaries**

1. Every compact Hausdorff space has a dense subalgebra of continuous functions.
2. Every separable Banach space has a countable dense subset.

### **Generalizations**

1. Stone-Weierstrass Theorem for locally compact spaces.
2. Stone-Weierstrass Theorem for vector-valued functions.



## CHAPTER -V

### COUNTABILITY AND SEPARATIONS AXIOMS

**Dr.N.Latha**

*Associate. Professor in Mathematics  
Ponnamiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

#### Countability Axioms

##### First Countability:

A topological space  $X$  is said to be first-countable if every point  $x \in X$  has a countable local basis.

##### Countable Local Basis

A countable local basis at  $x$  is a countable collection  $B_x$  of open neighborhoods of  $x$  such that: for every open set  $U$  containing  $x$ ,  $\exists B \in B_x$  with  $B \subseteq U$ .

##### Detailed Proof

##### Theorem

A space  $X$  is first-countable if and only if:

every point  $x \in X$  has a countable sequence  $\{B_n\}$  of open neighborhoods such that:

for every open set  $U$  containing  $x$ ,  $\exists n$  with  $B_n \subseteq U$ .

##### Proof

##### $\Rightarrow$ (Forward Direction)

Assume  $X$  is first-countable.

Let  $x \in X$ .

Choose a countable local basis  $B_x$  at  $x$ .

Define  $B_n = \{B \in B_x \mid B \subseteq \cup \{B' \in B_x \mid B' \subseteq B\}\}$ .

$\{B_n\}$  is a countable sequence of open neighborhoods of  $x$ .

For every open set  $U$  containing  $x$ ,  $\exists n$  with  $B_n \subseteq U$ .

**⇐ (Backward Direction)**

Assume every point  $x \in X$  has a countable sequence  $\{B_n\}$  of open neighborhoods.

Define  $B_x = \{B_n \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$ .

$B_x$  is a countable local basis at  $x$ .

For every open set  $U$  containing  $x$ ,  $\exists n$  with  $B_n \subseteq U$ .

**Corollary**

Every metric space is first-countable.

**Proof**

Let  $(X, d)$  be a metric space.

For  $x \in X$ , define  $B_n = B(x, 1/n)$ .

$\{B_n\}$  is a countable sequence of open neighborhoods of  $x$ .

For every open set  $U$  containing  $x$ ,  $\exists n$  with  $B_n \subseteq U$ .

**Second Countability:**

A topological space  $X$  is said to be second-countable if it has a countable basis.

**Countable Basis**

A countable basis for  $X$  is a countable collection  $B$  of open sets such that:

every open set in  $X$  is a union of sets in  $B$ .

**Detailed Proof**

**Theorem**

A space  $X$  is second-countable if and only if:

there exists a countable collection  $B$  of open sets such that:

every open set in  $X$  is a union of sets in  $B$ .

**Proof**

**⇒ (Forward Direction)**

Assume  $X$  is second-countable.

Let  $B$  be a countable basis for  $X$ .

Every open set in  $X$  is a union of sets in  $B$ .

**⇐ (Backward Direction)**

Assume  $\exists$  a countable collection  $B$  of open sets such that:

every open set in  $X$  is a union of sets in  $B$ .

$B$  is a countable basis for  $X$ .

$X$  is second-countable.

### Equivalent Conditions

1.  $X$  has a countable basis.
2.  $X$  has a countable  $\pi$ -base (pseudo-base).
3. Every open cover has a countable subcover.

### Corollary

Every second-countable space is first-countable.

### Proof

Let  $X$  be second-countable.

Let  $B$  be a countable basis for  $X$ .

For  $x \in X$ , define  $B_x = \{B \in B \mid x \in B\}$ .

$B_x$  is a countable local basis at  $x$ .

$X$  is first-countable.

### Separation Axioms

1.  $T_0$  (Kolmogorov): For any two distinct points, there's an open set containing one but not the other.
2.  $T_1$  (Fréchet): For any two distinct points, each has an open neighborhood not containing the other.
3.  $T_2$  (Hausdorff): Any two distinct points have disjoint open neighborhoods.
4.  $T_3$  (Regular): A point and a closed set can be separated by disjoint open sets.
5.  $T_4$  (Normal): Two disjoint closed sets can be separated by disjoint open sets.

### $T_0$ (Kolmogorov)

#### Theorem

A space  $X$  is  $T_0$  if and only if: for any  $x, y \in X$  with  $x \neq y$ ,  $\exists$  an open set  $U$  such that:  
 $x \in U$  and  $y \notin U$  or  $y \in U$  and  $x \notin U$ .

#### Proof

$\Rightarrow$  (Forward Direction)

Assume  $X$  is  $T_0$ .

Let  $x, y \in X$  with  $x \neq y$ .

$\exists$  an open set  $U$  such that:

$x \in U$  and  $y \notin U$  or  $y \in U$  and  $x \notin U$ .

$\Leftarrow$  (Backward Direction)

Assume the condition holds.

Let  $x, y \in X$  with  $x \neq y$ .

$\exists$  an open set  $U$  such that:

$x \in U$  and  $y \notin U$  or  $y \in U$  and  $x \notin U$ .

$X$  is  $T_0$ .

### **$T_1$ (Fréchet)**

#### **Theorem**

A space  $X$  is  $T_1$  if and only if: for any  $x, y \in X$  with  $x \neq y$ ,  $\exists$  open sets  $U$  and  $V$  such that:

$x \in U$ ,  $y \notin U$ , and  $y \in V$ ,  $x \notin V$ .

#### **Proof**

$\Rightarrow$  (Forward Direction)

Assume  $X$  is  $T_1$ .

Let  $x, y \in X$  with  $x \neq y$ .

$\exists$  open sets  $U$  and  $V$  such that:

$x \in U$ ,  $y \notin U$ , and  $y \in V$ ,  $x \notin V$ .

$\Leftarrow$  (Backward Direction)

Assume the condition holds.

Let  $x, y \in X$  with  $x \neq y$ .

$\exists$  open sets  $U$  and  $V$  such that:

$x \in U$ ,  $y \notin U$ , and  $y \in V$ ,  $x \notin V$ .

$X$  is  $T_1$ .

### **$T_2$ (Hausdorff)**

#### **Theorem**

A space  $X$  is  $T_2$  if and only if: for any  $x, y \in X$  with  $x \neq y$ ,  $\exists$  disjoint open sets  $U$  and  $V$  such that:  $x \in U$  and  $y \in V$ .

#### **Proof**

$\Rightarrow$  (Forward Direction)

Assume  $X$  is  $T_2$ .

Let  $x, y \in X$  with  $x \neq y$ .

$\exists$  disjoint open sets  $U$  and  $V$  such that:

$x \in U$  and  $y \in V$ .

$\Leftarrow$  (Backward Direction)

Assume the condition holds.

Let  $x, y \in X$  with  $x \neq y$ .

$\exists$  disjoint open sets  $U$  and  $V$  such that:

$x \in U$  and  $y \in V$ .

$X$  is  $T_2$ .

### **$T_3$ (Regular)**

#### **Theorem**

A space  $X$  is  $T_3$  if and only if: for any point  $x$  and closed set  $F$  with  $x \notin F$ ,  $\exists$  disjoint open sets  $U$  and  $V$  such that:  $x \in U$  and  $F \subseteq V$ .

#### **Proof**

$\Rightarrow$  (Forward Direction)

Assume  $X$  is  $T_3$ .

Let  $x \in X$  and  $F$  be a closed set with  $x \notin F$ .

$\exists$  disjoint open sets  $U$  and  $V$  such that:

$x \in U$  and  $F \subseteq V$ .

$\Leftarrow$  (Backward Direction)

Assume the condition holds.

Let  $x \in X$  and  $F$  be a closed set with  $x \notin F$ .

$\exists$  disjoint open sets  $U$  and  $V$  such that:

$x \in U$  and  $F \subseteq V$ .

$X$  is  $T_3$ .

### **$T_4$ (Normal)**

#### **Theorem**

A space  $X$  is  $T_4$  if and only if: for any disjoint closed sets  $F$  and  $G$ ,  $\exists$  disjoint open sets  $U$  and  $V$  such that:  $F \subseteq U$  and  $G \subseteq V$ .

#### **Proof**

$\Rightarrow$  (Forward Direction)

Assume  $X$  is  $T_4$ .

Let  $F$  and  $G$  be disjoint closed sets.

$\exists$  disjoint open sets  $U$  and  $V$  such that:

$F \subseteq U$  and  $G \subseteq V$ .

$\Leftarrow$  (Backward Direction)

Assume the condition holds.

Let  $F$  and  $G$  be disjoint closed sets.

$\exists$  disjoint open sets  $U$  and  $V$  such that:

$F \subseteq U$  and  $G \subseteq V$ .

$X$  is  $T_4$ .

### Relationships

1.  $T_0 \rightarrow T_1 \rightarrow T_2 \rightarrow T_3 \rightarrow T_4$
2. Second Countability  $\rightarrow$  First Countability

### Examples

1.  $\mathbb{R}$  with standard topology is  $T_4$ .
2. Discrete topology is  $T_4$ .
3. Indiscrete topology is  $T_0$ .

### Importance

1. Countability axioms ensure "local" properties.
2. Separation axioms ensure "global" properties.

# MATHEMATICAL METHODS

Edited by

**R.VASANTHI**



978-93-6255-685-1

## **Mathematical methods**

Copyright © 2019 by R.Vasanthi

First Edition, 2019

*All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.*

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-685-1**

***Publisher:*** Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (**PRIST**)



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Book elements</b>	<b>Page Numbers</b>
-----	
<b>Chapter-I</b> <b>CALCULUS OF VARIATIONS</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>01-06</b>
-----	
<b>Chapter-II</b> <b>THE BRACHISTOCHRONE</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>07-14</b>
-----	
<b>Chapter-III</b> <b>FOURIER TRANSFORM</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>15-21</b>
-----	
<b>Chapter-IV</b> <b>DIGITAL FOURIER TRANSFORM</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>22-28</b>
-----	
<b>Chapter-V</b> <b>HENKEL TRANSFORM</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>29-35</b>
-----	
<b>Chapter-VI</b> <b>DISCRETE HENKEL TRANSFORM</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>36-43</b>
-----	
<b>Chapter-VII</b> <b>LINEAR INTEGRAL EQUATIONS</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>44-49</b>
-----	
<b>Chapter-VIII</b> <b>APPLICATIONS OF LINEAR INTEGRAL EQUATIONS</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>50-57</b>
-----	
<b>Chapter-IX</b> <b>SUCCESSIVE APPROXIMATION</b>	<b>58-63</b>

Dr.S.Subramanian

---

**Chapter-X**

**TECHNIQUES IN SUCCESSIVE APPROXIMATION**

**64-77**

Dr.S.Subramanian

## CALCULUS OF VARIATIONS

**Dr.S.Subramanian***Professor in Mathematics**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)**Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India***Calculus of Variations**

Many problems involve finding a function that maximizes or minimizes an integral expression.

One example is finding the curve giving the shortest distance between two points — a straight line, of course, in Cartesian geometry (but can you prove it?) but less obvious if the two points lie on a curved surface (the problem of finding *geodesics*.)

The mathematical techniques developed to solve this type of problem are collectively known as the *calculus of variations*.

**1 Functionals and Extrema**

**Typical Problem:** Consider a definite integral that depends on an unknown function  $y(x)$ , as well as its derivative  $y'(x)=d y/d x$ ,

$$I(y) = \int_a^b F(x,y,y') dx.$$

A typical problem in the calculus of variations involve finding a particular function  $y(x)$  to maximize or minimize the integral  $I(y)$  subject to boundary conditions  $y(a)=A$  and  $y(b)=B$ .

**Definition 1** *The integral  $I(y)$  is an example of a functional, which (more generally) is a mapping from a set of allowable functions to the reals.*

We say that  $I(y)$  has an **extremum** when  $I(y)$  takes its maximum or minimum value.

**2 The Statement of an Example Problem**

Consider the problem of finding the curve  $y(x)$  of shortest length that connects the two points  $(0,0)$  and  $(1,1)$  in the plane. Letting  $ds$  be an element of arc length, the arc length of a curve  $y(x)$  from  $x=0$  to  $x=1$  is  $\int_0^1 ds$ . We can use Pythagoras' theorem to relate  $ds$  to  $dx$  and  $dy$ : drawing a triangle with sides of length  $dx$  and  $dy$  at right angles to one another, the hypotenuse is  $\approx ds$  and

so  $ds^2 = dx^2 + dy^2$  and  $s = \int \sqrt{dx^2 + dy^2} = \int \sqrt{1 + (dy/dx)^2} dx$ . This means the arc length equals  $\int_0^1 \sqrt{1+y'^2} dx$ .

The curve  $y(x)$  we are looking for minimizes the functional

$$I(y) = \int_0^1 ds = \int_0^1 (1+(y')^2)^{1/2} dx \quad \text{subject to boundary conditions } y(0)=0, y(1)=1$$

which means that  $I(y)$  has an extremum at  $y(x)$ . It seems obvious that the solution is  $y(x)=x$ , the straight line joining  $(0,0)$  and  $(1,1)$ , but how do we prove this?

### 3 The Euler-Lagrange Equation, or Euler's Equation

**Definition 2** Let  $C^k[a,b]$  denote the set of continuous functions defined on the interval  $a \leq x \leq b$  which have their first  $k$ -derivatives also continuous on  $a \leq x \leq b$ .

The proof to follow requires the integrand  $F(x,y,y')$  to be twice differentiable with respect to each argument. What's more, the methods that we use in this module to solve problems in the calculus of variations will only find those solutions which are in  $C^2[a,b]$ . More advanced techniques (i.e. beyond MATH0043) are designed to overcome this last restriction. This isn't just a technicality: discontinuous extremal functions are very important in optimal control problems, which arise in engineering applications.

**Definition 3** Equation (1) is the Euler-Lagrange equation, or sometimes just Euler's equation.

**Warning 1** You might be wondering what  $\partial F/\partial y'$  is suppose to mean: how can we differentiate with respect to a derivative? Think of it like this:  $F$  is given to you as a function of three variables, say  $F(u,v,w)$ , and when we evaluate the functional  $I$  we plug in  $x, y(x), y'(x)$  for  $u,v,w$  and then integrate. The derivative  $\partial F/\partial y'$  is just the partial derivative of  $F$  with respect to its second variable  $v$ . In other words, to find  $\partial F/\partial y'$ , just pretend  $y'$  is a variable.

Equally, there's an important difference between  $dF/dx$  and  $\partial F/\partial x$ . The former is the derivative of  $F$  with respect to  $x$ , taking into account the fact that  $y=y(x)$  and  $y'=y'(x)$  are functions of  $x$  too. The latter is the partial derivative of  $F$  with respect to its first variable, so it's found by differentiating  $F$  with respect to  $x$  and pretending that  $y$  and  $y'$  are just variables and do not depend on  $x$ . Hopefully the next example makes this clear:

and the Euler-Lagrange equation is

$$y+xy'+2y'' = xy'+1$$

**Warning 2**  $Y$  satisfying the Euler–Lagrange equation is a necessary, but not sufficient, condition for  $I(Y)$  to be an extremum. In other words, a function  $Y(x)$  may satisfy the Euler–Lagrange equation even when  $I(Y)$  is not an extremum.

**Proof.** Consider functions  $Y_\epsilon(x)$  of the form

$$Y_\epsilon(x) = Y(x) + \epsilon \eta(x)$$

where  $\eta(x) \in C^2[a,b]$  satisfies  $\eta(a)=\eta(b)=0$ , so that  $Y_\epsilon(a)=A$  and  $Y_\epsilon(b)=B$ , i.e.  $Y_\epsilon$  still satisfies the boundary conditions. Informally,  $Y_\epsilon$  is a function which satisfies our boundary conditions and which is ‘near to’  $Y$  when  $\epsilon$  is small.<sup>1</sup>  $I(Y_\epsilon)$  depends on the value of  $\epsilon$ , and we write  $I[\epsilon]$  for the value of  $I(Y_\epsilon)$ :

$$I[\epsilon] = \int_a^b F(x, Y_\epsilon, Y_\epsilon') dx.$$

When  $\epsilon = 0$ , the function  $I[\epsilon]$  has an extremum and so

$$\frac{dI}{d\epsilon} = 0 \quad \text{when} \quad \epsilon=0.$$

We can compute the derivative  $dI/d\epsilon$  by differentiating under the integral sign:

$$\frac{dI}{d\epsilon} = \frac{d}{d\epsilon} \int_a^b F(x, Y_\epsilon, Y_\epsilon') dx = \int_a^b \frac{dF}{d\epsilon}(x, Y_\epsilon, Y_\epsilon') dx$$

We now use the multivariable chain rule to differentiate  $F$  with respect to  $\epsilon$ . For a general three-variable function  $F(u(\epsilon), v(\epsilon), w(\epsilon))$  whose three arguments depend on  $\epsilon$ , the chain rule tells us that

$$\frac{dF}{d\epsilon} = \frac{\partial F}{\partial u} \frac{du}{d\epsilon} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial v} \frac{dv}{d\epsilon} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial w} \frac{dw}{d\epsilon}.$$

In our case, the first argument  $x$  is independent of  $\epsilon$ , so  $d x/d \epsilon = 0$ , and since  $Y_\epsilon = Y + \epsilon \eta$  we have  $d Y_\epsilon/d \epsilon = \eta$  and  $d Y'_\epsilon/d \epsilon = \eta'$ . Therefore

$$\frac{d F}{d \epsilon}(x, Y_\epsilon, Y'_\epsilon) = \frac{\partial F}{\partial y} \eta(x) + \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} \eta'(x).$$

Recall that  $d I/d \epsilon = 0$  when  $\epsilon = 0$ . Since  $Y_0 = Y$  and  $Y'_0 = Y'$ ,

$$0 = \int_a^b \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial y} \eta(x) + \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} \eta'(x) \right) dx. \quad (2)$$

Integrating the second term in (2) by parts

$$\int_a^b \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} \eta'(x) dx = \left[ \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} \eta(x) \right]_a^b - \int_a^b \frac{d}{dx} \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} \right) \eta(x) dx.$$

The first term on the right hand side vanishes because  $\eta(a) = \eta(b) = 0$ . Substituting the second term into (2),

$$\int_a^b \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial y} - \frac{d}{dx} \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} \right) \eta(x) dx = 0.$$

The equation above holds for any  $\eta(x) \in C^2[a, b]$  satisfying  $\eta(a) = \eta(b) = 0$ , so the *fundamental lemma of calculus of variations* (explained on the next page) tells us that  $Y(x)$  satisfies

$$\frac{d}{dx} \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} \right) - \frac{\partial F}{\partial y} = 0.$$

**Definition 4** A solution of the Euler-Lagrange equation is called an extremal of the functional.<sup>2</sup>

**Exercise 1** Find an extremal  $y(x)$  of the functional

$$I(y) = \int_0^1 (y'-y)^2 dx, \quad y(0)=0, y(1)=2, \quad \left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{Answer: } y(x)=2 \\ \frac{\sinh x}{\sinh 1} \end{array} \right].$$

**Exercise 2** By considering  $y+g$ , where  $y$  is the solution from exercise 1 and  $g(x)$  is a variation in  $y(x)$  satisfying  $g(0)=g(1)=0$ , and then considering  $I(y+g)$ , show explicitly that  $y(x)$  minimizes  $I(y)$  in Exercise 1 above. (Hint: use integration by parts, and the Euler-Lagrange equation satisfied by  $y(x)$  to simplify the expression for  $I(y+g)$ ).

**Exercise 3** Prove that the straight line  $y=x$  is the curve giving the shortest distance between the points  $(0,0)$  and  $(1,1)$ .

**Exercise 4** Find an extremal function of

$$I[y] = \int_1^2 x^2(y')^2 + y dx, \quad y(1)=1, y(2)=1, \quad \left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{Answer: } y(x) = \frac{1}{2} \ln x + \frac{\ln 2}{x} + 1 - \ln 2 \end{array} \right].$$

### MATH0043 Handout: Fundamental lemma of the calculus of variations

In the proof of the Euler-Lagrange equation, the final step invokes a lemma known as the fundamental lemma of the calculus of variations (FLCV).

**Lemma 1** (FLCV). Let  $y(x)$  be continuous on  $[a,b]$ , and suppose that for all  $\eta(x) \in C^2[a,b]$  such that  $\eta(a)=\eta(b)=0$  we have

$$\int_a^b y(x)\eta(x) dx = 0.$$

Then  $y(x)=0$  for all  $a \leq x \leq b$ .

Here is a sketch of the proof. Suppose, for a contradiction, that for some  $a < \alpha < b$  we have  $y(\alpha) > 0$  (the case when  $\alpha=a$  or  $\alpha=b$  can be done similarly, but let's keep it simple). Because  $y$  is continuous,  $y(x) > 0$  for all  $x$  in some interval  $(\alpha_0, \alpha_1)$  containing  $\alpha$ .

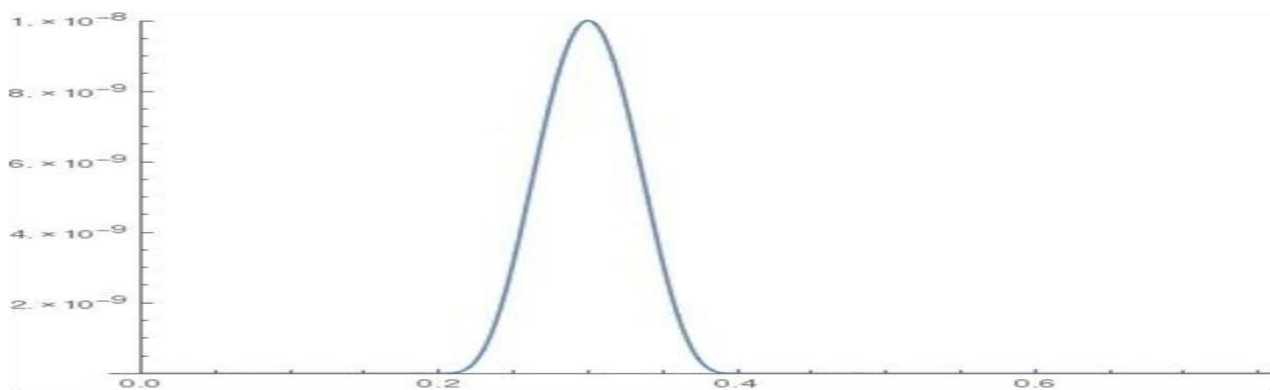
Consider the function  $\eta : [a,b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by

$$\eta(x) = \begin{cases} (x-\alpha_0)^4 (x-\alpha_1)^4 & \alpha_0 < x < \alpha_1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

$\eta$  is in  $C^2[a,b]$  — it's difficult to give a formal proof without using a formal definition of continuity and differentiability, but hopefully the following plot shows what is going on:

---

Figure 1: The function  $\eta$  defined above, if  $a=0$ ,  $b=1$ ,  $\alpha_0=0.2$ ,  $\alpha_1 = 0.4$ .



By hypothesis,  $\int_0^1 y(x)\eta(x) dx = 0$ . But  $y(x)\eta(x)$  is continuous, zero outside  $(\alpha_0, \alpha_1)$ , and strictly positive for all  $x \in (\alpha_0, \alpha_1)$ . A strictly positive continuous function on an interval like this has a strictly positive integral, so this is a contradiction. Similarly we can show  $y(x)$  never takes values  $<0$ , so it is zero everywhere on  $[a,b]$ .



## Chapter II

### THE BRACHISTOCHRONE

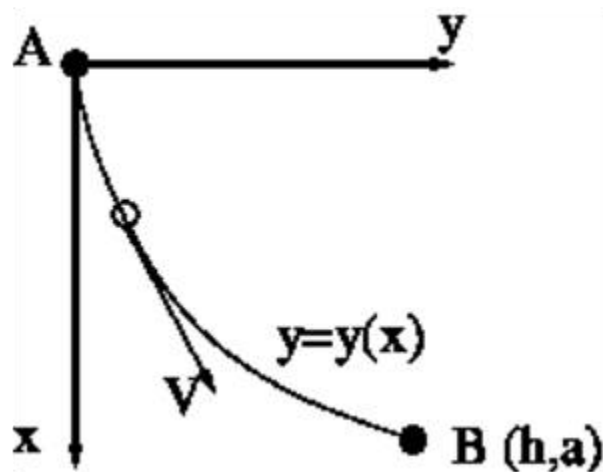
**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

A classic example of the calculus of variations is to find the *brachistochrone*, defined as that smooth curve joining two points A and B (not underneath one another) along which a particle will slide from A to B under gravity in the fastest possible time.



Using the coordinate system illustrated, we can use conservation of energy to obtain the velocity  $v$  of the particle as it makes its descent

$$(1/2) m v^2 = mgx$$

So that

$$v = \sqrt{2gx} .$$

Noting also that distance  $s$  along the curve  $s$  satisfies  $ds^2=dx^2+dy^2$ , we can express the time  $T(y)$  taken for the particle to descend along the curve  $y=y(x)$  as a functional:

$$T(y) = \int_A^B dt = \int_A^B \frac{ds}{v} = \int_0^h \frac{\sqrt{1+(y')^2}}{\sqrt{2gx}} dx, \text{ subject to } y(0)=0, y(h)=a.$$

$$A \quad A \quad ds/dt \quad A \quad v \quad 0 \quad \sqrt{2gx}$$

The brachistochrone is an extremal of this functional, and so it satisfies the Euler-Lagrange equation

$$\frac{d}{dx} \left( \begin{array}{c} y' \\ \sqrt{2gx(1+(y')^2)} \end{array} \right) = 0, \quad y(0)=0, y(h)=a.$$

Integrating this, we get

$$\frac{y'}{\sqrt{2gx(1+(y')^2)}} = c$$

where  $c$  is a constant, and rearranging

$$y' = \frac{\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{\alpha-x}}, \quad \text{with } \alpha = \frac{1}{2gc^2}.$$

We can integrate this equation using the substitution  $x = \alpha \sin^2 \theta$  to obtain

$$y = \int \frac{\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{\alpha-x}} dx = \int \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta} 2 \alpha \sin \theta \cos \theta d\theta = \int \alpha (1 - \cos 2\theta) d\theta = \frac{\alpha}{2} (2\theta - \sin 2\theta) + k.$$

Substituting back for  $x$ , and using  $y(0)=0$  to set  $k=0$ , we obtain

$$y(x) = \alpha \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{\alpha} \right) - \sqrt{x} \sqrt{\alpha - x} .$$

**Definition 5** This curve is called a cycloid.

The constant  $\alpha$  is determined implicitly by the remaining boundary condition  $y(h)=a$ . The equation of the cycloid is often given in the following *parametric form* (which can be obtained from the substitution in the integral)

$$x(\theta) = \frac{\alpha}{2} (1 - \cos 2\theta)$$

$$y(\theta) = \frac{\alpha}{2} (2\theta - \sin 2\theta)$$

and can be constructed by following the locus of the initial point of contact when a circle of radius  $\alpha/2$  is rolled (an angle  $2\theta$ ) along a straight line.

## 5 Functionals leading to special cases

When the integrand  $F$  of the functional in our typical calculus of variations problem does not depend explicitly on  $x$ , for example if

$$I(y) = \int_0^1 (y' - y)^2 dx,$$

extremals satisfy an equation called the Beltrami identity which can be easier to solve than the Euler–Lagrange equation.

**Theorem 2** If  $I(Y)$  is an extremum of the functional

$$I = \int_a^b F(y, y') dx$$

defined on all functions  $y \in C^2[a, b]$  such that  $y(a)=A, y(b)=B$  then  $Y(x)$  satisfies

$$F - y' \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} = C \quad (3)$$

for some constant  $C$ .

**Definition 6** (3) is called the **Beltrami identity** or **Beltrami equation**.

**Proof.** Consider

$$\frac{d}{dx} \begin{pmatrix} F - y' \\ \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{dF}{dx} - y'' \\ -y'' \\ \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} - y' \end{pmatrix} = \frac{d}{dx} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial F}{\partial y} \\ \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (4)$$

Using the chain rule to find the  $x$ -derivative of  $F(y(x), y'(x))$  gives

$$\frac{dF}{dx} = y' \frac{\partial F}{\partial y} + y'' \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'}$$

so that (4) is equal to

$$y' \frac{\partial F}{\partial y} + y'' \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} - y'' \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} - y' \frac{\partial F}{\partial y} = y' \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial y} - \frac{d}{dx} \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} \right)$$

Since  $Y$  is an extremal, it is a solution of the Euler–Lagrange equation and so this is zero for  $y=Y$ . If something has zero derivative it is a constant, so  $Y$  is a solution of

$$F - y' \frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} = C$$

$$\partial y'$$

for some constant  $C$ .

**Exercise 5** (*Exercise 1 revisited*): Use the Beltrami identity to find an extremal of

$$I(y) = \int_0^1 (y' - y)^2 dx, \quad y(0) = 0, y(1) = 2,$$

*Answer:*

$$y = f(x) = 2 \frac{\sinh x}{\sinh 1}$$

(again).

## 6 Isoperimetric Problems

So far we have dealt with boundary conditions of the form  $y(a) = A, y(b) = B$  or  $y(a) = A, y'(b) = B$ . For some problems the natural boundary conditions are expressed using an integral. The standard example is [Dido's problem](#)<sup>3</sup>: if you have a piece of rope with a fixed length, what shape should you make with it in order to enclose the largest possible area? Here we are trying to choose a function  $y$  to maximise an integral  $I(y)$  giving the area enclosed by  $y$ , but the fixed length constraint is also expressed in terms of an integral involving  $y$ . This kind of problem, where we seek an extremal of some function subject to 'ordinary' boundary conditions and also an integral constraint, is called an **isoperimetric problem**.

A typical isoperimetric problem is to find an extremum of

$$I(y) = \int_a^b F(x, y, y') dx, \quad \text{subject to } y(a) = A, y(b) = B, J(y) = \int_a^b G(x, y, y') dx = L.$$

The condition  $J(y) = L$  is called the integral constraint.

**Theorem 3** *In the notation above, if  $I(Y)$  is an extremum of  $I$  subject to  $J(y) = L$ , then  $Y$  is an extremal of*

$$K(y) = \int_a^b F(x, y, y') + \lambda G(x, y, y') dx$$

for some constant  $\lambda$ .

You will need to know about [Lagrange multipliers](#) to understand this proof: see the handout on moodle (the constant  $\lambda$  will turn out to be a Lagrange multiplier).

**Proof.** Suppose  $I(Y)$  is a maximum or minimum subject to  $J(y)=L$ , and consider the two-parameter family of functions given by

$$Y(x) + \epsilon \eta(x) + \delta \zeta(x)$$

where  $\epsilon$  and  $\delta$  are constants and  $\eta(x)$  and  $\zeta(x)$  are twice differentiable functions such that  $\eta(a)=\zeta(a)=\eta(b)=\zeta(b)=0$ , with  $\zeta$  chosen so that  $Y+\epsilon \eta + \delta \zeta$  obeys the integral constraint.

Consider the functions of two variables

$$I[\epsilon, \delta] = \int_a^b F(x, Y+\epsilon \eta + \delta \zeta, Y'+\epsilon \eta' + \delta \zeta') dx, \quad J[\epsilon, \delta] = \int_a^b G(x, Y+\epsilon \eta + \delta \zeta, Y'+\epsilon \eta' + \delta \zeta') dx.$$

Because  $I$  has a maximum or minimum at  $Y(x)$  subject to  $J=L$ , at the point  $(\epsilon, \delta)=(0,0)$  our function  $I[\epsilon, \delta]$  takes an extreme value subject to  $J[\epsilon, \delta]=L$ .

It follows from the theory of Lagrange multipliers that a necessary condition for a function  $I[\epsilon, \delta]$  of two variables subject to a constraint  $J[\epsilon, \delta]=L$  to take an extreme value at  $(0,0)$  is that there is a constant  $\lambda$  (called the Lagrange multiplier) such that

$$\frac{\partial I}{\partial \epsilon} + \lambda \frac{\partial J}{\partial \epsilon} = 0$$

$$\frac{\partial I}{\partial \delta} + \lambda \frac{\partial J}{\partial \delta} = 0$$

at the point  $\epsilon = \delta = 0$ . Calculating the  $\epsilon$  derivative,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial \epsilon} \left[ \frac{\partial J}{\partial \epsilon} \right] &= \int_a^b \frac{\partial}{\partial \epsilon} \left( F(x, Y + \epsilon \eta + \delta \zeta, Y' + \epsilon \eta' + \delta \zeta') + \lambda G(x, Y + \epsilon \eta + \delta \zeta, Y' + \epsilon \eta' + \delta \zeta') \right) dx \\
&= \int_a^b \eta \frac{\partial}{\partial y} (F + \lambda G) + \eta' \frac{\partial}{\partial y'} (F + \lambda G) dx \quad (\text{chain rule}) \\
&= \int_a^b \left( \eta \frac{\partial}{\partial y} (F + \lambda G) - \frac{d}{dx} \left( \eta \frac{\partial}{\partial y'} (F + \lambda G) \right) \right) dx \quad (\text{integration by parts})
\end{aligned}$$

= 0 when  $\epsilon = \delta = 0$ , no matter what  $\eta$  is.

Since this holds for any  $\eta$ , by the FLCV (Lemma 1) we get

$$(F_y + \lambda G_y)(x, Y, Y') + \frac{d}{dx} (F_{y'} + \lambda G_{y'})(x, Y, Y') = 0$$

which says that  $Y$  is a solution of the Euler–Lagrange equation for  $K$ , as required.

Note that to complete the solution of the problem, the initially unknown multiplier  $\lambda$  must be determined at the end using the constraint  $J(y) = L$ .

**Exercise 6** Find an extremal of the functional

$$I(y) = \int_0^1 1 - (y')^2 dx, \quad y(0) = y(1) = 1,$$

0

subject to the constraint that

$$J(y) = \int_0^1 y \, dx = 2. \quad \text{Answer: } y=f(x) = -6 \left( x - \frac{1}{2} \right)^2 + \frac{5}{2}.$$

**Exercise 7** (*Sheep pen design problem*): A fence of length  $l$  must be attached to a straight wall at points  $A$  and  $B$  (a distance  $a$  apart, where  $a < l$ ) to form an enclosure. Show that the shape of the fence that maximizes the area enclosed is the arc of a circle, and write down (but do not try to solve) the equations that determine the circle's radius and the location of its centre in terms of  $a$  and  $l$ .

### Suggested reading

There are many introductory textbooks on the calculus of variations, but most of them go into far more mathematical detail than is required for MATH0043. If you'd like to know more of the theory, Gelfand and Fomin's *Calculus of Variations* is available in the library. A less technical source is chapter 9 of Boas *Mathematical Methods in the Physical Sciences*. There are many short introductions to calculus of variations on the web, e.g.

- [https://courses.maths.ox.ac.uk/node/view\\_material/37762](https://courses.maths.ox.ac.uk/node/view_material/37762)
- [http://www-users.math.umn.edu/olver/ln\\_cv.pdf](http://www-users.math.umn.edu/olver/ln_cv.pdf)
- <https://personalpages.manchester.ac.uk/staff/david.harris/MT30021/30021CalcVarLec.pdf>

although all go into far more detail than we need in MATH0043. Lastly, as well as the moodle handout you may find



### FOURIER TRANSFORM

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

**Fourier Transform** is a mathematical model which helps to transform the signals between two different domains, such as transforming signal from frequency domain to time domain or vice versa. Fourier transform has many applications in Engineering and Physics, such as signal processing, RADAR, and so on. In this article, we are going to discuss the formula of Fourier transform, properties, tables, Fourier cosine transform, Fourier sine transform with complete explanations.

#### Fourier Transform

The generalisation of the complex [Fourier series](#) is known as the Fourier transform. The term “Fourier transform” can be used in the mathematical function, and it is also used in the representation of the frequency domain. The Fourier transform helps to extend the Fourier series to the non-periodic functions, which helps us to view any functions in terms of the sum of simple sinusoids.

#### Fourier Transform Formula

As discussed above, the Fourier transform is considered to be a generalisation of the complex Fourier series in the limit  $L \rightarrow \infty$ . Also, convert discrete  $A_n$  to the continuous  $F(k)dk$  and let  $n/L \rightarrow k$ . Finally, convert the sum to an integral.

Thus, the Fourier transform of a function  $f(x)$  is given by:

#### Forward and Inverse Fourier Transform

From the Fourier transform formula, we can derive the forward and inverse Fourier transform.

1)  $F[f(x)] = F(s) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{isx} dx$  is known as the forward Fourier transform or simply Fourier transform.

2)  $f(x) = F^{-1}(s) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{-isx} dx$  is known as the inverse Fourier transform.

## Fourier Transform Properties

The following are the important properties of Fourier transform:

- **Duality** – If  $h(t)$  has a Fourier transform  $H(f)$ , then the Fourier transform of  $H(t)$  is  $H(-f)$ .
- **Linear transform** – Fourier transform is a linear transform. Let  $h(t)$  and  $g(t)$  be two Fourier transforms, which are denoted by  $H(f)$  and  $G(f)$ , respectively. In this case, we can easily calculate the Fourier transform of the linear combination of  $g$  and  $h$ .
- **Modulation property** – According to the modulation property, a function is modulated by the other function, if it is multiplied in time.

## Fourier Transform in Two Dimensions

Fourier transform in two-dimensions is given as follows:

### Fourier Transform Table

The following table presents the Fourier transform for different functions:

**Function**                       **$f(\mathbf{x})$   $F(\mathbf{k}) = F_x [f(\mathbf{x})]$**

Fourier Transform: 1 1

Fourier Transform: Sine Function

Fourier Transform: Cosine Function

Fourier Transform: Inverse Function

Fourier Transform: Exponential Function

Fourier Transform: Gaussian Function

## Applications of Fourier Transform

Fourier transform is used in a wide range of applications, such as:

- Image Compression
- Image Analysis
- Image Filtering
- Image Reconstruction

## Explore More Articles:

- [Inverse Function](#)
- [Exponential Function](#)
- [Laplace Transform](#)
- [Inverse Laplace Transforms](#)

## Fourier Sine Transform

The Fourier sine transform is defined as the imaginary part of full complex Fourier transform, and it is given by:

## Fourier Cosine Transform

The Fourier transform for cosines of a [real function](#) is defined as the real part of a full complex Fourier transform.

## Frequently Asked Questions on Fourier Transform

Q1

**Is Fourier transform a generalised form of the Fourier series?**

Yes, Fourier transform is the generalised form of a complex Fourier series.

Q2

**Why do we use Fourier transform?**

Fourier transform is one of the important concepts used in image processing, which helps to decompose the image into the sine and cosine components.

Q3

**Give one comparison between the Laplace transform and the Fourier transform.**

The Laplace transform is used to analyse the unstable system, and has a convergence factor. Whereas, the Fourier transform cannot be used to analyse the unstable systems, and it does not have any convergence factor.

Q4

**What are the properties of Fourier transform?**

The properties of Fourier transform are:  
 Linearity property  
 Frequency shifting property  
 Time reversal property  
 Time-shifting property, and so on.

Q5

**Is the Fourier transform linear?**

Yes, the Fourier transform is linear.

Q6

**What is the use of Fourier transform?**

The Fourier transform is used in the transition of signal from the time spectrum to the frequency spectrum.

## The Fourier Transform

### 1.0 Basic Ideas

- Any general periodic signal has the automatic property  $f(t) = f\left(\frac{2\pi t}{T}\right)$  where T is the period of the signal. The  $2\pi$  is “snuck” in because we know that trigonometric functions are good examples of repetition. The complexity of  $f(t)$  is irrelevant as long as it repeats itself faithfully. Please keep in mind that ‘t’ for radioastronomy is usually time, but in fact it is an arbitrary variable and so what follows below is applicable provided the variable has functional repetition in some way with a repeat T. Thus spatial repetition is another important variable to which we may apply the theory.
- Fourier discovered that such a complex signal could be decomposed into an infinite series made up of cosine and sine terms and a whole bunch of coefficients which can (surprisingly) be readily determined.

$$f(t) = \frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos\left(\frac{2\pi nt}{T}\right) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin\left(\frac{2\pi nt}{T}\right)$$

- If you like, we have decomposed the original function  $f(t)$  into a series of basis states. For those of you who like to be creative this immediately begs the question of: is this the only decomposition possible? The answer is no.
- The coefficients are “readily” determined by integration.

$$a_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} f(t) \cos\left(\frac{2\pi nt}{T}\right) dt$$

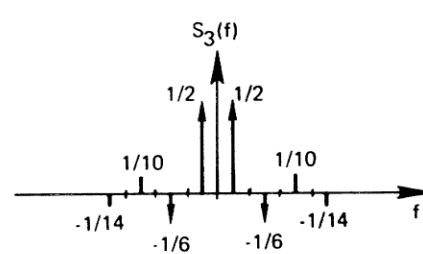
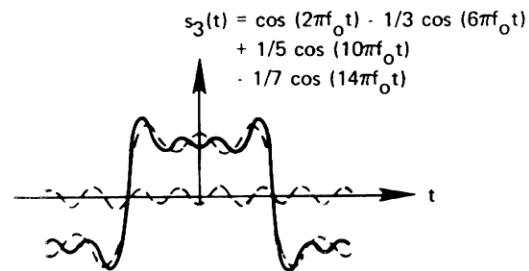
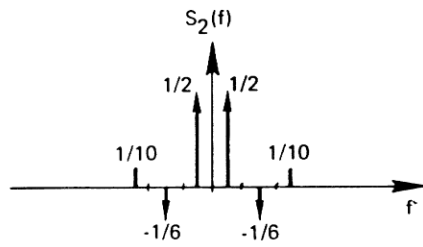
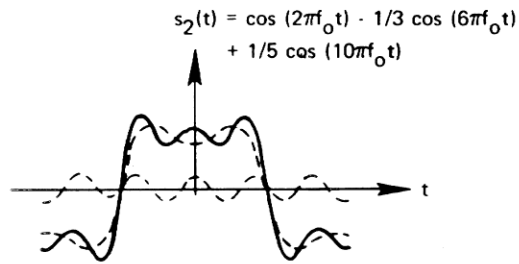
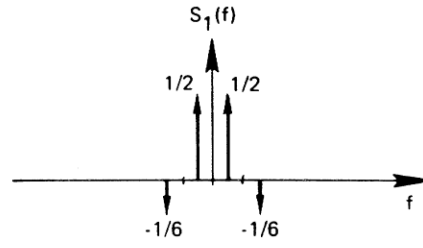
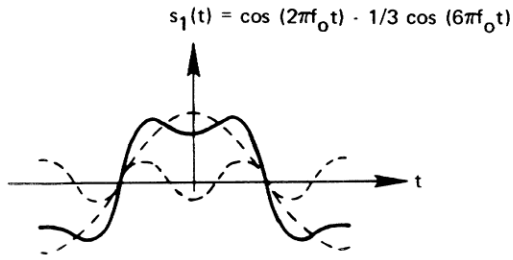
$$b_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} f(t) \sin\left(\frac{2\pi nt}{T}\right) dt$$

- Introducing complex notation we can simplify all of the above to what you often see in textbooks.

$$f(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} c_n \exp\left(-i \frac{2\pi nt}{T}\right)$$

$$c_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} f(t) \exp\left(i \frac{2\pi nt}{T}\right) dt$$

- Here  $c_0 = \frac{1}{2} a_0$ ,  $c_n = \frac{1}{2} (a_n + ib_n)$ , and  $c_{-n} = \frac{1}{2} (a_n - ib_n)$ .
- The graphical example below indicates how addition of cosine time function terms are Fourier transformed into coefficients. In this case only  $c_n = a_n/2$ . Take care the centre line with the big arrow is to mark the axis only – it is **not** part of the coefficient display. Notice also that **two** coefficient lines appear for every frequency. The latter is related to the Nyquist sampling theorem (see below) and is also why the coefficient magnitudes are halved. Notice also the **spacing** of the coefficients to be an integral multiple of  $f_0 = 1/T$  with the sign consistent with the input waveform.



(b)

(after 'The Fast Fourier Transform', E.O. Brigham, Prentice Hall, 1974)

- It is important to stress that it is an ***intrinsic*** property that the  $c_n$  are discrete. This is sometimes very confusing in text books because they draw them as continuous functions. It ***is*** possible to make them a continuous function by doing a simple trick and imagining that T is enormously large, or better still it tends to infinity. Thus the repeat period is infinite.
- Thus with a little pure mathematics and the substitutions,  $s = \frac{2\pi n}{T}$ , leading smoothly to  $ds = \frac{2\pi}{T} dn$  as  $T \rightarrow \infty$ , and also introducing the continuous function  $F(s)$  to replace the discrete  $c_n$ , we get a lovely functional symmetry:

$$f(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} F(s) \exp(-ist) ds$$

$$F(s) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(t) \exp(ist) dt$$

(Reminder: t and s are arbitrary variables!)

- For a number of functions of time  $f(t)$  the corresponding continuous transform shapes  $F(s)$  are given in the accompanying diagrams below. It is immediately obvious that ‘s’ has units of frequency and so we talk of transforming the repetitive time function into the frequency domain. We have analysed time behaviour into its corresponding frequency components.

### DIGITAL FOURIER TRANSFORM

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

In the real world of experimental physics we do not have the luxury of infinite time nor can we necessarily describe analytically our function  $f(t)$ . It is normally derived from the experimental equipment attached to something (eg., receiver voltage from an antenna). Thus we need something practical to do an FT.

The above has three simple consequences:

- 1) We need to choose a total sample time  $T$  recognising  $1/T$  will then be the frequency spacing or resolution we can get out of the transform. Thus if  $T=1.5s$  we obtain our frequency coefficients at a spacing of 0.67 Hz.
- 2) During  $T$ , we need to sample our waveform  $N$  times to produce a sampling vector representing our continuous time domain. Thus

$$f(t) \leftrightarrow \{x_n\} \text{ with } 0 < n < N-1$$



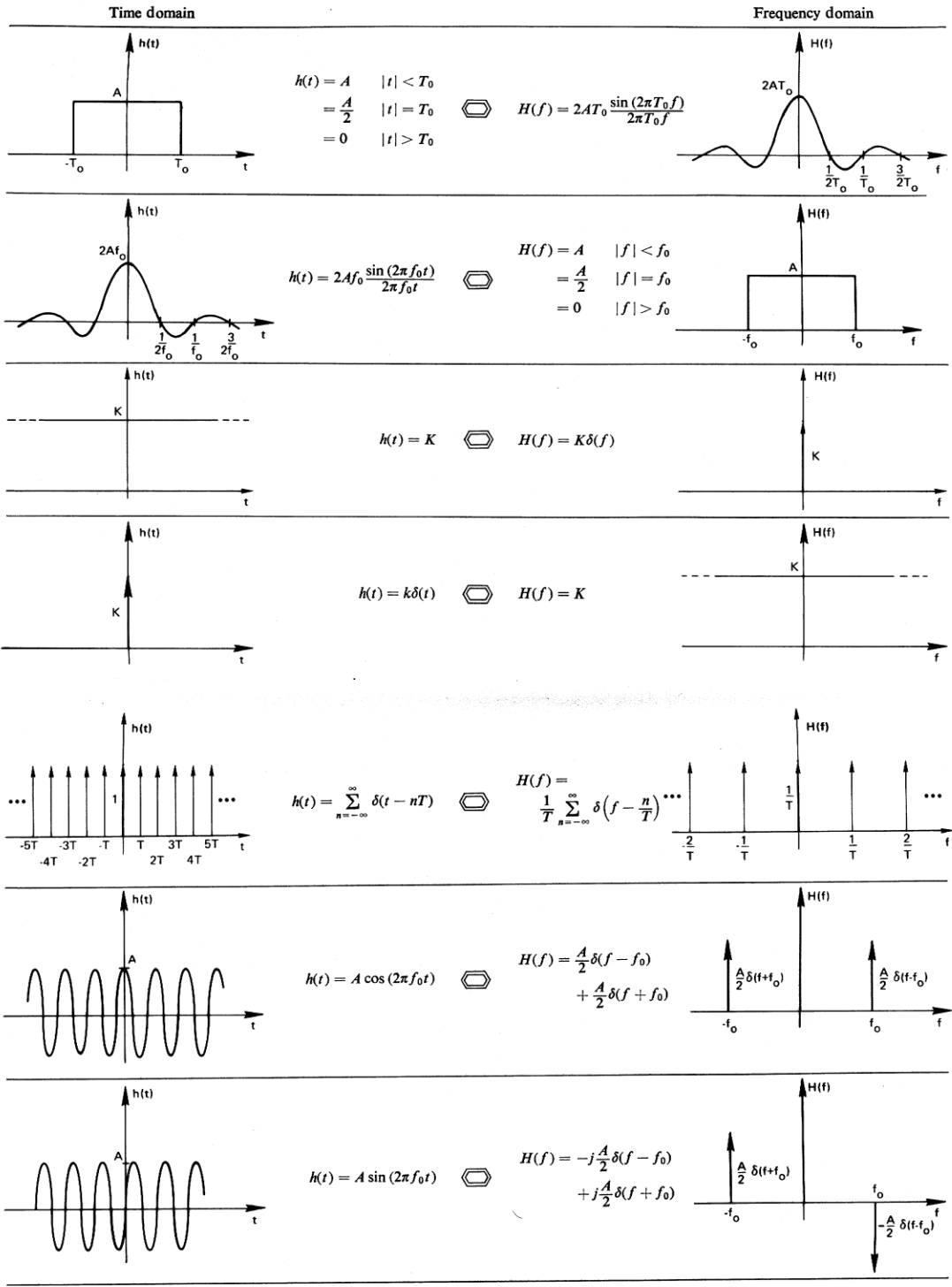


Figure 2-11. Fourier transform pairs.

(after 'The Fast Fourier Transform', E.O. Brigham, Prentice Hall, 1974)

- 3) We need to modify our Fourier transform to cope with a discrete input vector. Following our previous work we intuitively make integrals go to sums, T go to N,  $f(t)$  go to  $x_n$ , and  $c_n$  go to  $X_n$  (though this is just a notation change since  $c_n$  are already a discrete set!). We are left with the practical Digital Fourier Transform. or DFT pair.

$$X_n = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x_k \exp(i \frac{2\pi nk}{N})$$

$$x_k = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} X_n \exp(-i \frac{2\pi nk}{N})$$

Notes:

- 1)  $i = \sqrt{-1}$  and is easily confused with the integer counters n and k.
  - 2) The placement of 1/N factor is somewhat arbitrary, but convention places it as shown. It is important for normalisation – don't lose it!
- The above is readily programmed and the N input samples in time are converted to N frequency samples spaced at 1/T. Essentially the transform is a coefficient matrix multiplication from which you can see the output frequency vector is a weighted sum of input time samples.

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_0 \\ \dots \\ X_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} W_{00} & \dots & W_{0n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots \\ W_{n0} & \dots & W_{nn} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_0 \\ \dots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} \text{ with } W_{nk} = \exp\left(i \frac{2\pi nk}{N}\right)$$

From this it can be seen, for instance, that  $X_0$  is the DC average of  $x_n$  since  $W_{0n} = 1$ .

- Practically for large N the above straight forward calculation becomes a massive computational burden of order  $N^2$ . Happily, a number of people have discovered patterns in

$W_{nk}$  which can be exploited. The best has a computational burden of  $N \log N$  and is called a Fast Fourier Transform or FFT. Please explore “Numerical Recipes in C “, 2<sup>nd</sup> Ed, Cambridge, 1992) . It is important to note the FFT is only a computational device and nothing more!

### 3.0 Power Spectra

- The complex representation is compact, but needs to be converted to something useful otherwise you end up with two axes of coefficients. Practically we form the power coefficient spectrum as a function of frequency as follows

$$P_n = X_n \times X_n^*$$

It is this which is displayed on spectrum analysers and how most spectra are drawn.

- Fourier transforms have a conservation law which is ultimately related, physically, to the conservation of energy. Thus:

$$\sum_N x_k x_k^* = \frac{1}{N} \sum_N X_n X_n^* = \sum_N P_n$$

Effectively, we are redistributing the input vector into a new basis system but retaining coefficient conservation which is always nice in physics. It is also called Parseval’s theorem.

#### 4.0 Imperfections, Limitations and Trade-Offs

- Consider the frequency coefficient  $X_{N-r}$ .

$$X_{N-r} = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x_k \exp(i \frac{2\pi(N-r)k}{N}) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x_k \exp(i2\pi k) \exp(-i \frac{2\pi r k}{N}) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x_k \exp(-i \frac{2\pi r k}{N})$$

If the input vector  $x_k$  is real (and it usually is since it is a time varying voltage) then  $X_{N-r} = X_r^*$  from which it follows that  $P_r = P_{N-r}$ .

- This means that in any Fourier derived power spectrum there is a *duplication* of frequency coefficients. Thus only N/2 points are unique and so by reverse implication if you have your heart set on a particular BW analysed with a resolution of M points you will require 2M samples of the time spectra. This is called the Nyquist sampling theorem.
- The finite sampling time T creates an artificial effect in which the value of the frequency coefficients “leaks” into adjacent coefficient positions. This means you get a reduced value of the wanted coefficient and an adulteration of adjacent coefficients. It is customary therefore to pre-multiply your input time coefficients  $x_k$  with a windowing or weighting function over all the time points to reduce this coefficient leakage in  $X_n$ . An old friend is the Hanning window which applies a weighting  $w_k$  to each  $x_k$  given by,

$$w_k = \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \cos \left( \frac{2\pi k}{N} \right) \right)$$

The above is sometimes also called Hanning smoothing. There are other functions. See “Numerical Recipes in C” referred to above for these.

- The maths for the above revolve around convolution and the Fourier transform of convolution. Here is the sketch.

1. Remember the convolution product, which is a function of time, is defined as  $f * g = \int_{-\infty}^t f(\tau)g(t-\tau)d\tau$ . Good physical examples of this process are “flywheel” action seen in analogue filters, the flywheels in cars and door dampeners. The past affects the present!
  2. The Fourier transform of this is  $R(s) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \left( \int_{-\infty}^t f(\tau)g(t-\tau)d\tau \right) \exp(ist)dt$ , which on making the simple substitution  $u = t - \tau$ , leads after a small fiddle, to  $R(s) = F(s)G(s)$ . This is an important result which states that convolution in time space is multiplication in frequency space and *vice versa*.
  3. The window problem occurs because you are multiplying the input time samples with a square sampling window. This leads to the convolution of these two in frequency space and thus to practical problems. Provided you pick it well, pre-smoothing with a suitable function minimises this convolution effect.
- Finally, the you must pick a sample time which ensures that all the frequencies in your time signal are resolved in the resulting bandwidth of the frequency coefficients. How do you do this since you don't know what is there beforehand? In practical systems you **filter** out frequencies you are not interested in **before** the FFT process. Failure to do this leads to signal aliasing or the unwanted higher frequencies folding back into your spectrum in unwanted places.

#### 4.0 Thinking in terms of the Fourier Transform

- Digital filtering on a static input time sample can be done taking a FFT of the vector and then applying the desired filter shape to the resultant coefficients. Now apply an inverse FFT and the result is a filtered time set. Clean up your old records this way by converting the sound to digital sample files and process them on a PC.
- Continuous digital filtering on a continuous time sample can be thought of as deliberately convolving the incoming signal with a function which is the inverse FT of the filter shape. This is how many digital filters called FIR filters work. They do the job on the fly.

There are a number of techniques to do FFT's quickly and so get power spectra. Correlators use the following simple idea:

1. The autocorrelation of a signal  $f(t)$  with a time shifted version of itself  $f(t + \tau)$  is given by 
$$A(\tau) = \int f(t)f(t + \tau)dt .$$
2. If we take the FT of this in  $\tau$  space we get, after a fiddle with variable substitution, 
$$\int A(\tau)\exp(i2\pi s\tau)d\tau = F(s)F^*(s) ,$$
 provided we assume  $f(t)$  is a real function (which of course it will be in our case). But this is exactly the desired power spectrum since  $P(s) = F(s)F^*(s) .$
3. Producing a fast autocorrelator using a shift register and a bit of electronics allows  $A(\tau)$  to be produced efficiently by continually multiplying a sampled signal with previous samples of itself. The final vector can then be converted into a power spectrum with a single FFT.

## HENKEL TRANSFORM

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

The Fourier-Bessel transform! That's a fascinating topic in mathematics, particularly in the realm of integral transforms.

### Definition:

The Fourier-Bessel transform is an integral transform that combines the Fourier transform and Bessel functions. It is defined as:

$$F_v\{f(x)\} = \int_0^\infty x f(x) J_v(kx) dx$$

where:

- $f(x)$  is the input function
- $v$  is the order of the Bessel function
- $J_v(kx)$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $v$
- $k$  is the transform variable

### Inverse Transform:

The inverse Fourier-Bessel transform is given by:

$$f(x) = \int_0^\infty k F_v\{f(x)\} J_v(kx) dk$$

### Properties:

1. **Orthogonality:** The Fourier-Bessel transform satisfies the orthogonality property, which makes it useful for solving boundary value problems.
2. **Parseval's Identity:** The transform preserves the energy of the input function.
3. **Shift Invariance:** The transform is invariant under translations.

### Applications:

1. **Solving Partial Differential Equations (PDEs):** The Fourier-Bessel transform is useful for solving PDEs involving cylindrical or spherical symmetry.
2. **Electromagnetic Theory:** It is used to analyze electromagnetic waves in cylindrical or spherical coordinates.
3. **Quantum Mechanics:** The transform appears in the solution of the Schrödinger equation for central potentials.
4. **Signal Processing:** It has applications in signal processing, particularly in image and audio processing.

### Types of Fourier-Bessel Transforms:

1. **Finite Fourier-Bessel Transform:** Used for functions defined on a finite interval.
2. **Modified Fourier-Bessel Transform:** Used for functions with a singularity at the origin.

### **Numerical Computation:**

The Fourier-Bessel transform can be computed numerically using various methods, including:

1. **Gaussian Quadrature**
2. **Clenshaw-Curtis Quadrature**
3. **Fast Fourier Transform (FFT)** algorithms adapted for Bessel functions.

Do you have a specific question or application in mind regarding the Fourier-Bessel transform?

Application in mind regarding the Fourier-Bessel transform?

I'm glad you're interested in exploring applications of the Fourier-Bessel transform. Here are some specific areas and problems where the Fourier-Bessel transform plays a crucial role:

### **Physics and Engineering:**

1. **Electromagnetic Scattering:** Analyzing scattering of electromagnetic waves by cylindrical or spherical objects.
2. **Wave Propagation:** Studying wave propagation in optical fibers, waveguides, or during seismic exploration.
3. **Quantum Mechanics:** Solving the Schrödinger equation for central potentials, such as the hydrogen atom.
4. **Heat Conduction:** Solving heat conduction problems in cylindrical or spherical coordinates.

### **Signal Processing:**

1. **Image Analysis:** Analyzing images with circular or spherical symmetry.
2. **Audio Processing:** Processing audio signals with cylindrical or spherical microphone arrays.
3. **Medical Imaging:** Reconstruction of medical images from projection data (e.g., MRI, CT scans).

### **Mathematics:**

1. **Differential Equations:** Solving boundary value problems involving cylindrical or spherical coordinates.
2. **Special Functions:** Studying properties of Bessel functions and other special functions.

### **Geophysics:**

1. **Seismic Exploration:** Analyzing seismic data to understand subsurface structures.
2. **Gravity Anomalies:** Studying gravity anomalies in cylindrical or spherical coordinates.

Some specific problems that can be solved using the Fourier-Bessel transform include:



1. **Cylindrical Waveguide Problem:** Find the electromagnetic field inside a cylindrical waveguide.
2. **Spherical Harmonics:** Expand a function defined on a sphere in terms of spherical harmonics.
3. **Heat Conduction in a Cylinder:** Solve the heat equation in cylindrical coordinates.

Would you like me to elaborate on any of these applications or provide more information on a specific problem?

Or perhaps you have a specific problem in mind where you think the Fourier-Bessel transform might be applicable?

### HENKEL TRANSFORM

The Hankel transform! Another powerful tool in the realm of integral transforms.

#### Definition:

The Hankel transform of order  $\nu$  is defined as:

$$H_{\nu}\{f(x)\} = \int_0^{\infty} x f(x) J_{\nu}(kx) dx$$

where:

- $f(x)$  is the input function
- $\nu$  is the order of the transform
- $J_{\nu}(kx)$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $\nu$
- $k$  is the transform variable

#### Inverse Transform:

The inverse Hankel transform is given by:

$$f(x) = \int_0^{\infty} k H_{\nu}\{f(x)\} J_{\nu}(kx) dk$$

#### Properties:

1. **Orthogonality:** Hankel transforms satisfy orthogonality relations.
2. **Parseval's Identity:** The transform preserves the energy of the input function.
3. **Shift Invariance:** The transform is invariant under translations.

#### Relationship to Fourier-Bessel Transform:

The Hankel transform is closely related to the Fourier-Bessel transform. In fact, the Hankel transform is a special case of the Fourier-Bessel transform, where the order  $\nu$  is fixed.

#### Applications:

1. **Optics:** Hankel transforms are used in optical diffraction theory.
2. **Electromagnetics:** Analyzing electromagnetic waves in cylindrical or spherical coordinates.
3. **Seismology:** Studying seismic wave propagation.
4. **Medical Imaging:** Reconstruction of medical images from projection data.
5. **Signal Processing:** Image and audio processing, especially for circularly symmetric signals.

#### Types of Hankel Transforms:

1. **Finite Hankel Transform:** Used for functions defined on a finite interval.
2. **Modified Hankel Transform:** Used for functions with a singularity at the origin.

**Numerical Computation:**

Hankel transforms can be computed numerically using:

1. **Gaussian Quadrature**
2. **Clenshaw-Curtis Quadrature**
3. **Fast Hankel Transform (FHT)** algorithms

Some specific problems that can be solved using the Hankel transform include:

1. **Cylindrical Diffraction:** Analyzing diffraction patterns in cylindrical coordinates.
2. **Spherical Wave Propagation:** Studying spherical wave propagation in various media.
3. **Image Reconstruction:** Reconstructing images from projection data.

Would you like me to elaborate on any of these applications or provide more information on a specific problem?

Or perhaps you have a specific problem in mind where you think the Hankel transform might be applicable?

**HANKEL TRANSFORM BESSEL SERIES**

The Hankel transform and Bessel series are closely related.

**Bessel Series:**

A Bessel series is a series expansion of a function using Bessel functions:

$$f(x) = \sum [a_n J_n(x)] \text{ from } n=0 \text{ to } \infty$$

where:

- $f(x)$  is the input function
- $a_n$  are the coefficients
- $J_n(x)$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $n$

**Hankel Transform and Bessel Series:**

The Hankel transform can be used to obtain a Bessel series expansion of a function.

**Theorem:**

If  $f(x)$  has a Hankel transform of order  $\nu$ , then:

$$f(x) = \sum [a_n J_n(kx)] \text{ from } n=0 \text{ to } \infty$$

where:

- $a_n = k^{2\nu} \int_0^\infty x^{\nu} f(x) J_n(kx) dx$
- $k$  is the transform variable

**Connection between Hankel Transform and Bessel Series:**

1. **Coefficients:** The coefficients  $a_n$  in the Bessel series can be obtained using the Hankel transform.
2. **Convergence:** The Hankel transform ensures convergence of the Bessel series.

3. **Orthogonality:** The Bessel functions are orthogonal with respect to the weight function  $x$ .

### Applications of Bessel Series:

1. **Solving Differential Equations:** Bessel series are used to solve boundary value problems.
2. **Signal Processing:** Bessel series are used in signal processing, especially for circularly symmetric signals.
3. **Image Analysis:** Bessel series are used in image analysis, particularly for circular features.

### Types of Bessel Series:

1. **Fourier-Bessel Series:** Used for functions defined on a finite interval.
2. **Neumann Series:** Used for functions with a singularity at the origin.

### Numerical Computation:

Bessel series can be computed numerically using:

1. **Gaussian Quadrature**
2. **Clenshaw-Curtis Quadrature**
3. **Fast Bessel Transform (FBT)** algorithms

Some specific problems that can be solved using Bessel series include:

1. **Cylindrical Waveguide Problem:** Find the electromagnetic field inside a cylindrical waveguide.
2. **Spherical Harmonics:** Expand a function defined on a sphere in terms of spherical harmonics.
3. **Heat Conduction in a Cylinder:** Solve the heat equation in cylindrical coordinates.

Would you like me to elaborate on any of these applications or provide more information on a specific problem?

Or perhaps you have a specific problem in mind where you think Bessel series might be applicable?

### TRANSFORM RULES

Here are some essential transform rules for the Hankel transform:

#### Linearity

$$1. \mathcal{H}\{af(x)+bg(x)\}=a\mathcal{H}\{f(x)\}+b\mathcal{H}\{g(x)\}$$

#### Scaling

$$2. \mathcal{H}\{f(ax)\}=a^{-1}\mathcal{H}\{f(x)\}$$

### Translation

$$3. \mathcal{H}_\nu\{f(x-a)\} = \mathcal{H}_\nu\{f(x)\} J_\nu(ak)$$

### Derivative

$$4. \mathcal{H}_\nu\{f'(x)\} = -k \mathcal{H}_{\nu-1}\{f(x)\}$$

$$5. \mathcal{H}_\nu\{f''(x)\} = k^2 \mathcal{H}_\nu\{f(x)\} - x \mathcal{H}_\nu\{f'(x)\}$$

### Integral

$$6. \mathcal{H}_\nu\{\int_0^x f(t) dt\} = k^{-1} \mathcal{H}_{\nu+1}\{f(x)\}$$

### Convolution

$$7. \mathcal{H}_\nu\{f(x) * g(x)\} = \mathcal{H}_\nu\{f(x)\} \mathcal{H}_\nu\{g(x)\}$$

### Parseval's Identity

$$8. \int_0^\infty x f(x) g(x) dx = \int_0^\infty k \mathcal{H}_\nu\{f(x)\} \mathcal{H}_\nu\{g(x)\} dk$$

These rules help simplify Hankel transform calculations and are useful in various applications.

#### Proving Transform Rules:

To prove these rules, use the definition of the Hankel transform and properties of Bessel functions.

Would you like me to:

1. Elaborate on any of these rules?
2. Provide examples or applications?
3. Help with a specific problem involving Hankel transforms?
4. Discuss advanced topics or specialized transforms?

### FOURIER BESSEL SERIES

The Fourier-Bessel series! A powerful tool for expanding functions in terms of Bessel functions.

#### Definition:

The Fourier-Bessel series of a function  $f(x)$  is:

$$f(x) = \sum [a_n J_n(k_n x)] \text{ from } n=1 \text{ to } \infty$$

where:

- $a_n$  are the coefficients
- $J_n(k_n x)$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $n$
- $k_n$  are the positive roots of  $J_n(k_n a) = 0$  ( $a$  is the boundary value)

#### Coefficients:

The coefficients  $a_n$  are given by:

$$a_n = (2 / [a^2 J_{n+1}(k_n a)^2]) \int_0^a [x f(x) J_n(k_n x)] dx$$

### Convergence:

The Fourier-Bessel series converges uniformly to  $f(x)$  if:

1.  $f(x)$  is piecewise continuous on  $[0, a]$
2.  $f(x)$  satisfies the boundary condition  $f(a) = 0$

### Properties:

1. **Orthogonality:** Bessel functions are orthogonal with respect to the weight function  $x$ .
2. **Completeness:** The Fourier-Bessel series is complete, meaning any function can be expanded.
3. **Parseval's Identity:** The series preserves the energy of the input function.

### Applications:

1. **Solving Differential Equations:** Fourier-Bessel series solve boundary value problems.
2. **Electromagnetics:** Analyzing electromagnetic waves in cylindrical coordinates.
3. **Quantum Mechanics:** Solving the Schrödinger equation for central potentials.
4. **Signal Processing:** Image and audio processing, especially for circularly symmetric signals.

### Types of Fourier-Bessel Series:

1. **Finite Fourier-Bessel Series:** Used for functions defined on a finite interval.
2. **Infinite Fourier-Bessel Series:** Used for functions defined on  $[0, \infty)$ .

### Numerical Computation:

Fourier-Bessel series can be computed numerically using:

1. **Gaussian Quadrature**
2. **Clenshaw-Curtis Quadrature**
3. **Fast Fourier-Bessel Transform (FFBT)** algorithms

Some specific problems that can be solved using Fourier-Bessel series include:

1. **Cylindrical Waveguide Problem:** Find the electromagnetic field inside a cylindrical waveguide.
2. **Spherical Harmonics:** Expand a function defined on a sphere in terms of spherical harmonics.
3. **Heat Conduction in a Cylinder:** Solve the heat equation in cylindrical coordinates.

Would you like me to:

1. Elaborate on any of these topics?
2. Provide examples or applications?

### DISCRETE HENKEL TRANSFORM

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

#### DISCRETE HENKEL TRANSFORM

The Discrete Hankel Transform (DHT)! A powerful tool for analyzing circularly symmetric signals.

#### Definition:

The Discrete Hankel Transform (DHT) of order  $\nu$  of a sequence  $f(n)$  is:

$$F(k) = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} f(n) J_{\nu}(2\pi kn/N) \quad (k = 0, 1, \dots, N-1)$$

where:

- $f(n)$  is the input sequence
- $J_{\nu}(x)$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $\nu$
- $N$  is the transform length
- $k$  is the transform index

#### Inverse Transform:

The inverse DHT is:

$$f(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} F(k) J_{\nu}(2\pi kn/N) \quad (n = 0, 1, \dots, N-1)$$

#### Properties:

1. **Orthogonality:** DHT satisfies orthogonality relations.
2. **Parseval's Identity:** DHT preserves the energy of the input sequence.
3. **Shift Invariance:** DHT is invariant under circular shifts.

#### Applications:

1. **Image Processing:** DHT is used in image analysis, especially for circular features.
2. **Optics:** DHT is used in optical diffraction theory.
3. **Seismology:** DHT is used in seismic data analysis.
4. **Signal Processing:** DHT is used in signal processing, especially for circularly symmetric signals.

#### Types of Discrete Hankel Transforms:

1. **Fast Discrete Hankel Transform (FDHT):** Efficient algorithm for computing DHT.
2. **Discrete Hankel Transform of Type 1:** Used for real-valued input sequences.
3. **Discrete Hankel Transform of Type 2:** Used for complex-valued input sequences.

### Numerical Computation:

DHT can be computed numerically using:

1. **Fast Fourier Transform (FFT)** algorithms
2. **Gaussian Quadrature**
3. **Clenshaw-Curtis Quadrature**

Some specific problems that can be solved using DHT include:

1. **Cylindrical Diffraction:** Analyzing diffraction patterns in cylindrical coordinates.
2. **Spherical Wave Propagation:** Studying spherical wave propagation in various media.
3. **Image Reconstruction:** Reconstructing images from projection data.

Would you like me to:

1. Elaborate on any of these topics?
2. Provide examples or applications?
3. Help with a specific problem involving DHT?
4. Discuss advanced topics or specialized transforms?

References:

1. "Discrete Hankel Transform" by R. N. Bracewell
2. "The Discrete Hankel Transform" by A. K. Jain
3. "Fast Algorithms for the Discrete Hankel Transform" by H. O. Bartelt and A. W. Lohmann

## INVERSE HENKEL TRANSFORM

The Inverse Hankel Transform! A crucial tool for synthesizing functions from their Hankel transform.

### Definition:

The Inverse Hankel Transform (IHT) of order  $\nu$  of a function  $F(k)$  is:

$$f(x) = \int_0^{\infty} k F(k) J_{\nu}(kx) dk$$

where:

- $F(k)$  is the Hankel transform of  $f(x)$
- $J_{\nu}(kx)$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $\nu$
- $x$  is the spatial variable
- $k$  is the transform variable

### Properties:

1. **Linearity:** IHT is linear.
2. **Translation Invariance:** IHT is invariant under translations.
3. **Derivative Property:** IHT of derivatives.

### Types of Inverse Hankel Transforms:

1. **Finite Inverse Hankel Transform:** Used for functions defined on a finite interval.
2. **Semi-Infinite Inverse Hankel Transform:** Used for functions defined on  $[0, \infty)$ .
3. **Inverse Hankel Transform of Type 1:** Used for real-valued input functions.
4. **Inverse Hankel Transform of Type 2:** Used for complex-valued input functions.

### Numerical Computation:

IHT can be computed numerically using:

1. **Gaussian Quadrature**
2. **Clenshaw-Curtis Quadrature**
3. **Fast Hankel Transform (FHT)** algorithms
4. **Inverse Fast Hankel Transform (IFHT)** algorithms

### Applications:

1. **Image Reconstruction:** Reconstructing images from projection data.
2. **Optics:** Analyzing optical diffraction patterns.
3. **Seismology:** Analyzing seismic data.
4. **Signal Processing:** Synthesizing signals from their Hankel transform.

### Relationships with Other Transforms:

1. **Fourier Transform:** IHT is related to the Fourier transform.
2. **Laplace Transform:** IHT is related to the Laplace transform.
3. **Mellin Transform:** IHT is related to the Mellin transform.

Some specific problems that can be solved using IHT include:

1. **Cylindrical Waveguide Problem:** Finding the electromagnetic field inside a cylindrical waveguide.
2. **Spherical Wave Propagation:** Studying spherical wave propagation in various media.
3. **Heat Conduction in a Cylinder:** Solving the heat equation in cylindrical coordinates.

## SAMPLING THEOREM FOR A SPACE LIMITED FUNCTION



## The Sampling Theorem for Space-Limited Functions!

### Statement:

If  $f(x)$  is a space-limited function, band-limited to  $\Omega$ , and  $x_n$  are sampling points, then:

$$f(x) = \sum [f(x_n) \text{sinc}(\Omega(x-x_n))] \quad (\forall x \in \mathbb{R})$$

where:

- $f(x)$  is the original function
- $x_n$  are sampling points ( $x_n = n\pi/\Omega$ )
- $\text{sinc}(x) = \sin(\pi x)/(\pi x)$
- $\Omega$  is the bandwidth ( $\Omega = 2\pi/T$ ,  $T$  is the period)

### Conditions:

1. **Space-Limited:**  $f(x) = 0$  for  $|x| > L$
2. **Band-Limited:**  $F(\omega) = 0$  for  $|\omega| > \Omega$
3. **Sampling Rate:**  $x_n = n\pi/\Omega$  (Nyquist rate)

### Consequences:

1. **Perfect Reconstruction:**  $f(x)$  can be perfectly reconstructed from samples.
2. **No Aliasing:** No distortion due to sampling.
3. **Information Preservation:** All information in  $f(x)$  is preserved.

### Proof:

Using Fourier analysis and the Poisson summation formula:

$$f(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega) e^{i\omega x} d\omega$$
$$= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} f(x_n) \text{sinc}(\Omega(x-x_n))$$

### Examples:

1. **Audio Signals:** Sampling audio signals for digital processing.
2. **Image Processing:** Sampling images for digital processing.
3. **Seismic Data:** Sampling seismic data for analysis.

### Extensions:

1. **Non-Uniform Sampling:** Sampling at non-uniform intervals.
2. **Multi-Dimensional Sampling:** Sampling in multiple dimensions.
3. **Sampling of Non-Band-Limited Functions:** Sampling functions with finite energy.

### Related Theorems:

1. **Nyquist-Shannon Sampling Theorem:** Sampling continuous-time signals.
2. **Kotelnikov Sampling Theorem:** Sampling band-limited signals.
3. **Papoulis Sampling Theorem:** Sampling space-limited signals.

## INTERPOLATION THEOREM FOR A SPACE LIMITED FUNCTION

## The Interpolation Theorem for Space-Limited Functions!

### Statement:

If  $f(x)$  is a space-limited function, band-limited to  $\Omega$ , and  $x_n$  are interpolation points, then:

$$f(x) = \sum [f(x_n) \text{sinc}(\Omega(x-x_n))] \quad (\forall x \in \mathbb{R})$$

where:

- $f(x)$  is the original function
- $x_n$  are interpolation points ( $x_n = n\pi/\Omega$ )
- $\text{sinc}(x) = \sin(\pi x)/(\pi x)$
- $\Omega$  is the bandwidth ( $\Omega = 2\pi/T$ ,  $T$  is the period)

### Conditions:

1. **Space-Limited:**  $f(x) = 0$  for  $|x| > L$
2. **Band-Limited:**  $F(\omega) = 0$  for  $|\omega| > \Omega$
3. **Interpolation Points:**  $x_n = n\pi/\Omega$  (Nyquist rate)

### Consequences:

1. **Perfect Interpolation:**  $f(x)$  can be perfectly interpolated from samples.
2. **No Distortion:** No distortion due to interpolation.
3. **Information Preservation:** All information in  $f(x)$  is preserved.

### Proof:

Using Fourier analysis and the Poisson summation formula:

$$f(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega) e^{i\omega x} d\omega$$
$$= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} [f(x_n) \text{sinc}(\Omega(x-x_n))]$$

### Types of Interpolation:

1. **Sinc Interpolation:** Using sinc functions for interpolation.
2. **Linear Interpolation:** Using linear functions for interpolation.
3. **Cubic Interpolation:** Using cubic functions for interpolation.

### Applications:

1. **Image Processing:** Interpolating images for resizing or rotation.
2. **Audio Processing:** Interpolating audio signals for pitch shifting.
3. **Seismic Data:** Interpolating seismic data for imaging.

### Related Theorems:

1. **Sampling Theorem:** Sampling continuous-time signals.
2. **Nyquist-Shannon Interpolation Theorem:** Interpolating band-limited signals.
3. **Papoulis Interpolation Theorem:** Interpolating space-limited signals.

### Numerical Implementation:

1. **Fast Fourier Transform (FFT):** Efficiently computing Fourier transforms.
2. **Inverse Fast Fourier Transform (IFFT):** Efficiently computing inverse Fourier transforms.
3. **Sinc Interpolation Algorithms:** Efficiently computing sinc interpolation.

The Hankel transform! That's a fascinating topic.

The Hankel transform is an integral transform that is widely used in many fields, including optics, electromagnetics, and signal processing. It's similar to the Fourier transform, but it's specifically designed for functions with circular or radial symmetry.

### Discrete Forward Hankel Transform (DFHT)

The Discrete Forward Hankel Transform (DFHT) is defined as:

$$F(m) = \sum [f(n) * J_m(2\pi nr) * \Delta r] \text{ from } n=0 \text{ to } N-1$$

where:

- $F(m)$  is the transformed function
- $f(n)$  is the input function
- $J_m$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $m$
- $\Delta r$  is the radial sampling interval
- $N$  is the number of samples
- $n$  and  $m$  are integers

### Discrete Inverse Hankel Transform (DIHT)

The Discrete Inverse Hankel Transform (DIHT) is defined as:

$$f(n) = (2/\pi) * \sum [F(m) * J_m(2\pi nr) * \Delta r] \text{ from } m=0 \text{ to } M-1$$

where:

- $f(n)$  is the original function
- $F(m)$  is the transformed function
- $J_m$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $m$
- $\Delta r$  is the radial sampling interval
- $M$  is the number of samples
- $n$  and  $m$  are integers

### Properties and Applications

Some important properties of the Hankel transform include:

1. **Symmetry:** The Hankel transform is symmetric, meaning that the forward and inverse transforms are similar.

2. **Orthogonality:** The Hankel transform is orthogonal, making it useful for signal decomposition and reconstruction.
3. **Shift-invariance:** The Hankel transform is shift-invariant, which is useful in image processing.

Applications of the Hankel transform include:

1. **Optics:** Beam propagation, optical fiber analysis
2. **Electromagnetics:** Antenna analysis, scattering problems
3. **Signal Processing:** Image filtering, feature extraction
4. **Geophysics:** Seismic data processing

### Numerical Implementation

To implement the DFHT and DIHT numerically, you can use various algorithms, such as:

1. **Direct summation:** Compute the summation directly using the definition.
2. **Fast Hankel Transform (FHT):** An efficient algorithm using the convolution property.
3. **FFT-based methods:** Utilize the Fast Fourier Transform (FFT) to accelerate computations.

Some popular libraries and tools for implementing the Hankel transform include:

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in functions `hankel` and `ihankel`
2. **Python:** Libraries like `scipy`, `numpy`, and `pyhankel`
3. **Mathematica:** Built-in function `HankelTransform`

### LINEAR INTEGRAL EQUATION

Linear integral equations! A fundamental concept in mathematics and a powerful tool for solving various problems in physics, engineering, and other fields.

#### Definition

A linear integral equation is an equation involving an unknown function,  $\varphi(x)$ , and an integral operator that transforms  $\varphi(x)$  into another function. The general form is:

$$a(x)\varphi(x) + \int [K(x,t)\varphi(t)dt] = f(x)$$

where:

- $\varphi(x)$  is the unknown function
- $a(x)$  is a coefficient function
- $K(x,t)$  is the kernel (or integral operator)
- $f(x)$  is the forcing function
- $x$  and  $t$  are variables in the domain of the functions

### Types of Linear Integral Equations

There are two main types:

1. **Fredholm Integral Equation:**

$a(x)\varphi(x) + \int [K(x,t)\varphi(t)dt] = f(x)$   
The limits of integration are fixed.

## 2. Volterra Integral Equation:

$a(x)\varphi(x) + \int [K(x,t)\varphi(t)dt] = f(x)$   
The upper limit of integration is variable.

### Methods for Solving Linear Integral Equations

1. **Separation of Variables:** If the kernel is separable, i.e.,  $K(x,t) = X(x)T(t)$ .
2. **Laplace Transform:** Useful for solving Volterra equations.
3. **Fourier Transform:** Useful for solving Fredholm equations with convolution-type kernels.
4. **Iteration Methods:** Start with an initial guess and iteratively improve the solution.
5. **Variational Methods:** Use variational principles to minimize a functional.
6. **Numerical Methods:** Discretize the equation and solve using numerical linear algebra techniques.

### Applications

Linear integral equations appear in various areas, including:

1. **Physics:** Quantum mechanics, electromagnetism, and scattering theory.
2. **Engineering:** Signal processing, control theory, and heat transfer.
3. **Biology:** Population dynamics, epidemiology, and chemical kinetics.
4. **Economics:** Optimal control, game theory, and financial modeling.

### Examples

1. **Radiative Transfer Equation:** Describes the propagation of light through a medium.
2. **Schrodinger Equation:** Describes the time-evolution of quantum systems.
3. **Heat Equation:** Describes the diffusion of heat in materials.

### Software Tools

For solving linear integral equations numerically, you can use:

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in functions like `integral` and `solve`
2. **Python:** Libraries like `scipy`, `numpy`, and `sympy`
3. **Mathematica:** Built-in functions like `Integrate` and `Solve`
4. **Gaussian Quadrature:** Numerical integration methods for approximating integrals.

## Chapter VII

### LINEAR INTEGRAL EQUATIONS

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

Do you have a specific linear integral equation you'd like help solving or would you like more information on a particular method or application?

more information on a particular method or application?

Let's dive deeper into some specific methods and applications of linear integral equations.

#### **Methods:**

1. **Laplace Transform Method:** Useful for solving Volterra equations. Transforms the integral equation into an algebraic equation, which can be solved analytically.
2. **Variational Method:** Involves minimizing a functional to find the solution. This method is useful for solving Fredholm equations.
3. **Degenerate Kernel Method:** Assumes the kernel can be written as a finite sum of separable functions. This method simplifies the solution process.
4. **Numerical Methods:** Discretize the integral equation using techniques like Gaussian quadrature, collocation, or Galerkin methods.

#### **Applications:**

1. **Quantum Mechanics:** Schrödinger equation, scattering theory, and bound state problems.
2. **Signal Processing:** Filter design, image restoration, and inverse problems.
3. **Heat Transfer:** Transient heat conduction, radiation heat transfer, and inverse heat conduction problems.
4. **Control Theory:** Optimal control, feedback control, and stability analysis.

#### **Real-World Examples:**

1. **Medical Imaging:** Reconstruction of images from medical imaging data (e.g., MRI, CT scans).
2. **Financial Modeling:** Pricing options, risk analysis, and portfolio optimization.
3. **Climate Modeling:** Simulation of ocean-atmosphere interactions, ice sheet dynamics.
4. **Materials Science:** Modeling of composite materials, fracture mechanics.

#### **Software Implementation:**

1. **MATLAB:** laplace function for Laplace transform, solve function for numerical solution.
2. **Python:** scipy.integrate for numerical integration, sympy for symbolic solution.
3. **Mathematica:** LaplaceTransform function, NDSolve function for numerical solution.

Would you like more information on:

1. A specific method (e.g., Laplace transform, variational method)?
2. An application (e.g., quantum mechanics, signal processing)?
3. A real-world example (e.g., medical imaging, financial modeling)?
4. Software implementation (e.g., MATLAB, Python)?

A specific method (e.g., Laplace transform, variational method)

Let's dive deeper into the Laplace Transform method for solving linear integral equations.

### Laplace Transform Method

The Laplace Transform is a powerful tool for solving Volterra integral equations of the form:

$$\varphi(x) + \int [K(x-t)\varphi(t)dt] = f(x)$$

#### How it works:

1. Apply the Laplace Transform to both sides of the equation.
2. Use the convolution theorem to simplify the integral.
3. Solve the resulting algebraic equation for the transformed function.
4. Invert the Laplace Transform to obtain the solution  $\varphi(x)$ .

#### Steps:

1. **Laplace Transform:**  $\Phi(s) = \int [\varphi(x)e^{-sx}dx]$
2. **Convolution Theorem:**  $\int [K(x-t)\varphi(t)dt] = K(s)\Phi(s)$
3. **Algebraic Equation:**  $\Phi(s) + K(s)\Phi(s) = F(s)$
4. **Solution:**  $\Phi(s) = F(s) / (1 + K(s))$
5. **Inverse Laplace Transform:**  $\varphi(x) = \int [\Phi(s)e^{sx}ds]$

#### Advantages:

1. Simplifies the integral equation into an algebraic equation.
2. Easy to implement for Volterra equations.
3. Provides an analytical solution.

#### Disadvantages:

1. Limited to Volterra equations.
2. Requires finding the inverse Laplace Transform.

#### Examples:

1. **Renewal Equation:**  $\varphi(x) + \int [K(x-t)\varphi(t)dt] = 1$
2. **Heat Equation:**  $\varphi(x) + \int [K(x-t)\varphi(t)dt] = e^{-x}$

## Software Implementation:

1. **MATLAB:** laplace function for Laplace transform, ilaplace function for inverse Laplace transform.
2. **Python:** scipy.linalg for Laplace transform, sympy for symbolic inverse Laplace transform.
3. **Mathematica:** LaplaceTransform function, InverseLaplaceTransform function.

## Variational Method

Would you like to explore the Variational Method next?

Or would you like more information on:

1. Other methods (e.g., degenerate kernel, numerical methods)?
2. Applications (e.g., quantum mechanics, signal processing)?
3. Real-world examples (e.g., medical imaging, financial modeling)?

An application (e.g., quantum mechanics, signal processing)?

Let's explore an application of linear integral equations in **Quantum Mechanics**.

## Quantum Mechanics Application

Linear integral equations play a crucial role in quantum mechanics, particularly in:

1. **Scattering Theory:** Describes the interaction between particles and potential fields.
2. **Bound State Problems:** Determines the energy levels and wave functions of particles in potential wells.

## Lippmann-Schwinger Equation

A fundamental integral equation in quantum mechanics is the Lippmann-Schwinger equation:

$$\psi(x) = \phi(x) + \int [G(x-x')V(x')\psi(x')dx']$$

where:

- $\psi(x)$  is the wave function
- $\phi(x)$  is the incident wave
- $G(x-x')$  is the Green's function
- $V(x')$  is the potential

## Types of Potentials

1. **Local Potentials:**  $V(x') = V(x-x')$
2. **Non-Local Potentials:**  $V(x') = \int [V(x-x',x'-x'')\psi(x'')dx'']$

## Solution Methods

1. **Born Approximation:** Assumes the potential is weak.
2. **Distorted Wave Born Approximation:** Accounts for multiple scattering.
3. **Variational Methods:** Uses trial wave functions.



## Software Implementation

1. **MATLAB:** solve function for numerical solution, symbolic toolbox for analytical solution.
2. **Python:** scipy.integrate for numerical integration, sympy for symbolic solution.
3. **Mathematica:** NDSolve function for numerical solution, Solve function for analytical solution.

## Other Applications in Quantum Mechanics

1. **Schrodinger Equation:** Time-dependent and time-independent solutions.
2. **Dirac Equation:** Relativistic wave equation.
3. **Many-Body Problems:** Hartree-Fock method.

## Signal Processing Application

Would you like to explore an application of linear integral equations in **Signal Processing**?  
Or would you like more information on:

1. Other applications (e.g., heat transfer, financial modeling)?
2. Methods (e.g., Laplace transform, variational method)?
3. Real-world examples (e.g., medical imaging, materials science)?

A real-world example (e.g., medical imaging, financial modeling)?

Let's explore a real-world example of linear integral equations in **Medical Imaging**.

### Medical Imaging: Positron Emission Tomography (PET)

PET scans visualize metabolic processes in the body by detecting radiation emitted by radioactive tracers.

#### Problem Formulation

Reconstruct the tracer distribution  $f(x,y,z)$  from measured PET data  $g(x,y,z)$ :

$$g(x,y,z) = \int [f(x',y',z')K(x-x',y-y',z-z')]dx'dy'dz'$$

where:

- $g(x,y,z)$  is the measured PET data
- $f(x',y',z')$  is the tracer distribution
- $K(x-x',y-y',z-z')$  is the point spread function (PSF)

## Linear Integral Equation

This is a Fredholm integral equation of the first kind, where:

- The kernel  $K(x-x',y-y',z-z')$  represents the PSF
- The solution  $f(x',y',z')$  represents the tracer distribution

## Solution Methods

1. **Filtered Backprojection:** Analytical solution using Fourier transforms.
2. **Iterative Reconstruction:** Numerical solution using optimization algorithms.

## Software Implementation

1. **MATLAB:** iradon function for filtered backprojection, optim toolbox for iterative reconstruction.
2. **Python:** scipy.ndimage for filtered backprojection, scikit-image for iterative reconstruction.
3. **Mathematica:** Image function for image processing, NMinimize function for iterative reconstruction.

## Real-World Impact

Accurate reconstruction of tracer distributions enables:

1. **Cancer Diagnosis:** Early detection and monitoring.
2. **Neuroimaging:** Study of brain function and disorders.

## Other Medical Imaging Applications

1. **Computed Tomography (CT):** X-ray imaging.
2. **Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI):** Hydrogen nucleus imaging.

## Financial Modeling Application

Would you like to explore an application of linear integral equations in **Financial Modeling**, such as:

1. Option pricing?
2. Risk analysis?
3. Portfolio optimization?

Or would you like more information on:

1. Other applications (e.g., heat transfer, materials science)?
2. Methods (e.g., Laplace transform, variational method)?
3. Real-world examples (e.g., climate modeling, signal processing)?

Gaussian Quadrature: Numerical integration methods for approximating integrals.

Gaussian Quadrature is a powerful numerical integration method for approximating integrals.

### What is Gaussian Quadrature?

Gaussian Quadrature is a method for approximating definite integrals of the form:

$\int_a^b f(x)w(x)dx$  from a to b

where:

- $f(x)$  is the function to be integrated
- $w(x)$  is the weight function
- $[a,b]$  is the interval of integration

## Key Features:

1. **High accuracy:** Gaussian Quadrature can achieve high accuracy with relatively few function evaluations.
2. **Efficient:** Requires fewer function evaluations compared to other numerical integration methods.

**Types of Gaussian Quadrature:**

1. **Gaussian-Legendre Quadrature:**  $w(x) = 1$ , used for integrals over finite intervals.
2. **Gaussian-Hermite Quadrature:**  $w(x) = e^{-x^2}$ , used for integrals over infinite intervals.
3. **Gaussian-Laguerre Quadrature:**  $w(x) = e^{-x}$ , used for integrals over semi-infinite intervals.

### APPLICATIONS OF LINEAR INTEGRAL EQUATIONS

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

#### **Gaussian Quadrature Formula:**

$$\int [f(x)w(x)dx] \approx \sum [w_i f(x_i)]$$

where:

- $x_i$  are the nodes (or points) of integration
- $w_i$  are the weights associated with each node

#### **Choosing Nodes and Weights:**

Nodes and weights are chosen to achieve optimal accuracy.

#### **Node Selection Methods:**

1. **Gaussian points:** Derived from orthogonal polynomials.
2. **Chebyshev points:** Derived from Chebyshev polynomials.

#### **Weight Calculation Methods:**

1. **Gaussian weights:** Derived from orthogonal polynomials.
2. **Newton-Cotes weights:** Derived from interpolating polynomials.

#### **Software Implementation:**

1. **MATLAB:** quad function for Gaussian-Legendre Quadrature.
2. **Python:** scipy.integrate module for Gaussian-Legendre, Gaussian-Hermite, and Gaussian-Laguerre Quadrature.
3. **Mathematica:** NIntegrate function for Gaussian-Legendre Quadrature.

#### **Applications:**

1. **Physics:** Numerical solution of Schrödinger equation.
2. **Engineering:** Stress analysis, heat transfer.
3. **Finance:** Option pricing, risk analysis.

#### **Comparison with Other Methods:**

1. **Simpson's Rule:** Less accurate, but simpler to implement.
2. **Monte Carlo Integration:** More flexible, but less efficient.

Would you like to explore:

1. Other numerical integration methods (e.g., Romberg's method, adaptive quadrature)?
2. Applications of Gaussian Quadrature (e.g., quantum mechanics, signal processing)?
3. Implementation details (e.g., node selection, weight calculation)?

Gaussian-Legendre Quadrature:  $w(x) = 1$ , used for integrals over finite intervals.

Gaussian-Legendre Quadrature is a popular method for approximating definite integrals over finite intervals.

**Gaussian-Legendre Quadrature Formula:**

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx \sum w_i f(x_i)$$

where:

- $x_i$  are the nodes (or points) of integration
- $w_i$  are the weights associated with each node
- $[a,b]$  is the finite interval of integration

**Key Features:**

1. **High accuracy:** Gaussian-Legendre Quadrature can achieve high accuracy with relatively few function evaluations.
2. **Efficient:** Requires fewer function evaluations compared to other numerical integration methods.

**Nodes and Weights:**

Nodes ( $x_i$ ) and weights ( $w_i$ ) are chosen to achieve optimal accuracy.

**Node Selection Methods:**

1. **Legendre polynomials:** Nodes are chosen as the roots of Legendre polynomials.
2. **Gauss-Legendre nodes:** Nodes are chosen to minimize the error.

**Weight Calculation Methods:**

1. **Gauss-Legendre weights:** Weights are calculated using Legendre polynomials.

**Gaussian-Legendre Quadrature Rules:**

1. **Gauss-Legendre 2-point rule:** Approximates  $\int_a^b f(x) dx$  using 2 nodes.
2. **Gauss-Legendre 3-point rule:** Approximates  $\int_a^b f(x) dx$  using 3 nodes.

**Higher-Order Rules:**

Gauss-Legendre quadrature rules can be extended to higher orders (e.g., 4-point, 5-point) for increased accuracy.

**Software Implementation:**

1. **MATLAB:** quad function implements Gauss-Legendre Quadrature.

2. **Python:** `scipy.integrate` module implements Gauss-Legendre Quadrature.
3. **Mathematica:** `NIntegrate` function implements Gauss-Legendre Quadrature.

**Example:**

Approximate  $\int [x^2 dx]$  from 0 to 1 using Gauss-Legendre 2-point rule:

$$x_i = [0.211324, 0.788676]$$

$$w_i = [0.5, 0.5]$$

$$\int [x^2 dx] \approx w_1 f(x_1) + w_2 f(x_2) = 0.333333$$

**Comparison with Other Methods:**

1. **Simpson's Rule:** Less accurate, but simpler to implement.
2. **Monte Carlo Integration:** More flexible, but less efficient.

Would you like to explore:

1. Other Gaussian Quadrature methods (e.g., Gauss-Hermite, Gauss-Laguerre)?
2. Applications of Gaussian-Legendre Quadrature (e.g., physics, engineering)?
3. Implementation details (e.g., node selection, weight calculation)?

Gaussian-Hermite Quadrature:  $w(x) = e^{-x^2}$ , used for integrals over infinite intervals.

Gaussian-Laguerre Quadrature:  $w(x) = e^{-x}$ , used for integrals over semi-infinite intervals.

Excellent topics!

**Gaussian-Hermite Quadrature (GHQ)**

**Weight Function:**  $w(x) = e^{-x^2}$

**Interval:**  $(-\infty, \infty)$

**Nodes:**  $x_i$  are the roots of Hermite polynomials  $H_n(x)$

**Weights:**  $w_i = (2^n * n!) / (\sqrt{\pi} * [H'_n(x_i)]^2)$

**Gaussian-Hermite Quadrature Formula:**

$$\int [f(x)e^{-x^2}dx] \text{ from } -\infty \text{ to } \infty \approx \sum [w_i f(x_i)]$$

**Applications:**

1. **Probability theory:** Computing probabilities and expectations.
2. **Statistics:** Estimating parameters and modeling distributions.
3. **Physics:** Quantum mechanics, particle physics.

**Gaussian-Laguerre Quadrature (GLQ)**

**Weight Function:**  $w(x) = e^{-x}$

**Interval:**  $[0, \infty)$

**Nodes:**  $x_i$  are the roots of Laguerre polynomials  $L_n(x)$

**Weights:**  $w_i = (n! / [x_i * L'_n(x_i)]^2)$

**Gaussian-Laguerre Quadrature Formula:**

$$\int [f(x)e^{-x}dx] \text{ from } 0 \text{ to } \infty \approx \sum [w_i f(x_i)]$$

**Applications:**

1. **Heat transfer:** Solving heat equations.
2. **Radiative transfer:** Modeling radiation transport.

3. **Quantum mechanics:** Solving Schrödinger equations.

### Comparison with Other Methods:

1. **Gaussian-Legendre Quadrature:** More accurate for finite intervals.
2. **Monte Carlo Integration:** More flexible, but less efficient.

### Software Implementation:

1. **MATLAB:** quad function implements GHQ and GLQ.
2. **Python:** scipy.integrate module implements GHQ and GLQ.
3. **Mathematica:** NIntegrate function implements GHQ and GLQ.

### Example:

Approximate  $\int [x^2 e^{-x^2} dx]$  from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$  using GHQ with 3 nodes:

$$x_i = [-1.2247, 0, 1.2247]$$

$$w_i = [0.2954, 0.8862, 0.2954]$$

$$\int [x^2 e^{-x^2} dx] \approx w_1 f(x_1) + w_2 f(x_2) + w_3 f(x_3) = 0.443113$$

Would you like to explore:

1. Other Gaussian Quadrature methods (e.g., Gauss-Kronrod, Gauss-Radau)?
2. Applications of GHQ and GLQ (e.g., signal processing, financial modeling)?
3. Implementation details (e.g., node selection, weight calculation)

### Gaussian-Hermite Quadrature (GHQ)

**Weight Function:**  $w(x) = e^{-x^2}$

**Interval:**  $(-\infty, \infty)$

**Nodes:**  $x_i$  are the roots of Hermite polynomials  $H_n(x)$

**Weights:**  $w_i = (2^n * n!) / (\sqrt{\pi} * [H_n'(x_i)]^2)$

**Gaussian-Hermite Quadrature Formula:**

$$\int [f(x)e^{-x^2} dx] \text{ from } -\infty \text{ to } \infty \approx \sum [w_i f(x_i)]$$

**Applications:**

1. **Probability theory:** Computing probabilities and expectations.
2. **Statistics:** Estimating parameters and modeling distributions.
3. **Physics:** Quantum mechanics, particle physics.

### Gaussian-Laguerre Quadrature (GLQ)

**Weight Function:**  $w(x) = e^{-x}$

**Interval:**  $[0, \infty)$

**Nodes:**  $x_i$  are the roots of Laguerre polynomials  $L_n(x)$

**Weights:**  $w_i = (n! / [x_i * L_n'(x_i)]^2)$

**Gaussian-Laguerre Quadrature Formula:**

$$\int [f(x)e^{-x} dx] \text{ from } 0 \text{ to } \infty \approx \sum [w_i f(x_i)]$$

**Applications:**

1. **Heat transfer:** Solving heat equations.
2. **Radiative transfer:** Modeling radiation transport.
3. **Quantum mechanics:** Solving Schrödinger equations.

### Comparison with Other Methods:

1. **Gaussian-Legendre Quadrature:** More accurate for finite intervals.
2. **Monte Carlo Integration:** More flexible, but less efficient.

### Software Implementation:

1. **MATLAB:** quad function implements GHQ and GLQ.
2. **Python:** scipy.integrate module implements GHQ and GLQ.
3. **Mathematica:** NIntegrate function implements GHQ and GLQ.

### Example:

Approximate  $\int [x^2 e^{-x^2}] dx$  from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$  using GHQ with 3 nodes:

$$x_i = [-1.2247, 0, 1.2247]$$

$$w_i = [0.2954, 0.8862, 0.2954]$$

$$\int [x^2 e^{-x^2}] dx \approx w_1 f(x_1) + w_2 f(x_2) + w_3 f(x_3) = 0.443113$$

Would you like to explore:

1. Other Gaussian Quadrature methods (e.g., Gauss-Kronrod, Gauss-Radau)?
2. Applications of GHQ and GLQ (e.g., signal processing, financial modeling)?
3. Implementation details (e.g., node selection, weight calculation)?

Gaussian Quadrature methods (e.g., Gauss-Kronrod, Gauss-Radau)?

Let's dive into other Gaussian Quadrature methods:

### Gauss-Kronrod Quadrature (GKK)

**Weight Function:**  $w(x) = 1$

**Interval:**  $[a, b]$

**Nodes:**  $x_i$  are the roots of Kronrod polynomials  $K_n(x)$

**Weights:**  $w_i$  are computed using Gauss-Kronrod algorithm

**GKK Formula:**

$$\int [f(x) dx] \text{ from } a \text{ to } b \approx \sum [w_i f(x_i)]$$

**Features:**

1. **High accuracy:** GKK achieves higher accuracy than Gaussian-Legendre.
2. **Adaptive:** GKK adapts to the function's behavior.

### Applications:

1. **Numerical analysis:** Solving integral equations.
2. **Engineering:** Stress analysis, heat transfer.

### Gauss-Radau Quadrature (GRQ)



**Weight Function:**  $w(x) = 1$

**Interval:**  $[a, b]$

**Nodes:**  $x_i$  are the roots of Radau polynomials  $R_n(x)$

**Weights:**  $w_i$  are computed using Gauss-Radau algorithm

**GRQ Formula:**

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx \sum [w_i f(x_i)]$$

**Features:**

1. **High accuracy:** GRQ achieves higher accuracy than Gaussian-Legendre.
2. **Boundary points:** GRQ includes boundary points.

**Applications:**

1. **Physics:** Quantum mechanics, particle physics.
2. **Engineering:** Heat transfer, fluid dynamics.

**Other Gaussian Quadrature Methods:**

1. **Gauss-Lobatto Quadrature:** Includes boundary points.
2. **Gauss-Chebyshev Quadrature:** Uses Chebyshev polynomials.

**Comparison with Other Methods:**

1. **Gaussian-Legendre Quadrature:** Less accurate, but simpler.
2. **Monte Carlo Integration:** More flexible, but less efficient.

**Software Implementation:**

1. **MATLAB:** quad function implements GKK and GRQ.
2. **Python:** scipy.integrate module implements GKK and GRQ.
3. **Mathematica:** NIntegrate function implements GKK and GRQ.

**Example:**

Approximate  $\int_0^1 x^2 dx$  from 0 to 1 using GKK with 3 nodes:

$$x_i = [0.1082, 0.5, 0.8918]$$

$$w_i = [0.2778, 0.4444, 0.2778]$$

$$\int_0^1 x^2 dx \approx w_1 f(x_1) + w_2 f(x_2) + w_3 f(x_3) = 0.3333$$

Would you like to explore:

1. Applications of GKK and GRQ (e.g., signal processing, financial modeling)?
2. Implementation details (e.g., node selection, weight calculation)?
3. Comparison with other numerical integration methods?

Applications of GHQ and GLQ (e.g., signal processing, financial modeling)?

Let's explore applications of Gaussian-Hermite Quadrature (GHQ) and Gaussian-Laguerre Quadrature (GLQ) in various fields:

### Signal Processing:

1. **Filter design:** GHQ for designing filters with optimal frequency response.
2. **Signal estimation:** GLQ for estimating signals in noise.
3. **Image processing:** GHQ for image denoising and deblurring.

### Financial Modeling:

1. **Option pricing:** GHQ for pricing options with stochastic volatility.
2. **Risk analysis:** GLQ for calculating Value-at-Risk (VaR).
3. **Portfolio optimization:** GHQ for optimizing portfolio returns.

### Physics and Engineering:

1. **Quantum mechanics:** GHQ for solving Schrödinger equations.
2. **Heat transfer:** GLQ for solving heat equations.
3. **Fluid dynamics:** GHQ for simulating fluid flow.

### Statistics and Machine Learning:

1. **Bayesian inference:** GHQ for approximating posterior distributions.
2. **Gaussian processes:** GLQ for modeling stochastic processes.
3. **Kernel methods:** GHQ for computing kernel matrices.

### Other Applications:

1. **Computational biology:** GHQ for modeling biological systems.
2. **Economics:** GLQ for modeling economic systems.
3. **Geophysics:** GHQ for modeling seismic data.

### Software Implementation:

1. **MATLAB:** quad function implements GHQ and GLQ.
2. **Python:** scipy.integrate module implements GHQ and GLQ.
3. **Mathematica:** NIntegrate function implements GHQ and GLQ.

### Example:

Approximate the expected value of a stochastic process using GHQ:

$$E[X] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x * f(x) e^{-(x^2)} dx$$

where  $f(x)$  is the probability density function.

Using GHQ with 3 nodes:

$$x_i = [-1.2247, 0, 1.2247]$$

$$w_i = [0.2954, 0.8862, 0.2954]$$

$$E[X] \approx w_1 x_1 f(x_1) + w_2 x_2 f(x_2) + w_3 x_3 f(x_3)$$

Would you like to explore:

1. More applications of GHQ and GLQ?
2. Implementation details (e.g., node selection, weight calculation)?
3. Comparison with other numerical integration methods?

Comparison with other numerical integration methods?

Here's a comparison of Gaussian-Hermite Quadrature (GHQ) and Gaussian-Laguerre Quadrature (GLQ) with other numerical integration methods:

**Methods:**

1. **Trapezoidal Rule:** Simple, but less accurate.
2. **Simpson's Rule:** More accurate, but requires more function evaluations.
3. **Romberg's Method:** Adaptive, but computationally expensive.
4. **Monte Carlo Integration:** Flexible, but less efficient.
5. **Quasi-Monte Carlo Methods:** Deterministic, but less accurate.

**Comparison Criteria:**

1. **Accuracy:** GHQ and GLQ are highly accurate.
2. **Efficiency:** GHQ and GLQ require fewer function evaluations.
3. **Adaptability:** GHQ and GLQ adapt to function behavior.
4. **Complexity:** GHQ and GLQ require more complex node selection.

**Comparison Table:**

Method	Accuracy	Efficiency	Adaptability	Complexity
GHQ	High	High	Adaptive	Medium
GLQ	High	High	Adaptive	Medium
Trapezoidal Rule	Low	Low	Non-adaptive	Low
Simpson's Rule	Medium	Medium	Non-adaptive	Medium
Romberg's Method	High	Low	Adaptive	High
Monte Carlo	Low	Low	Non-adaptive	Low
Quasi-Monte Carlo	Medium	Medium	Non-adaptive	Medium

**When to Use:**

1. **GHQ:** Infinite intervals, high accuracy, adaptive.
2. **GLQ:** Semi-infinite intervals, high accuracy, adaptive.
3. **Trapezoidal Rule:** Simple, low-accuracy applications.
4. **Simpson's Rule:** Medium-accuracy applications.
5. **Romberg's Method:** Adaptive, high-accuracy applications.

**Software Implementation:**

1. **MATLAB:** quad function implements GHQ, GLQ, and other methods.
2. **Python:** scipy.integrate module implements GHQ, GLQ, and other methods.
3. **Mathematica:** NIntegrate function implements GHQ, GLQ, and other methods.

## SUCCESSIVE APPROXIMATION

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

Successive Approximation (SA) is a popular analog-to-digital conversion (ADC) technique used to convert an analog signal into a digital signal. It's widely employed in various applications, including audio, image, and sensor signal processing.

### How Successive Approximation Works:

The SA algorithm iteratively refines the digital representation of the analog input signal by comparing it to a reference voltage. Here's a simplified step-by-step explanation:

1. **Initialization:** The converter sets the most significant bit (MSB) of the digital output to 1.
2. **Comparison:** The analog input voltage is compared to a reference voltage, which is typically half the maximum voltage range.
3. **Bit decision:** If the input voltage is greater than the reference voltage, the current bit is set to 1; otherwise, it's set to 0.
4. **Next bit:** The converter moves to the next significant bit (LSB) and repeats steps 2-3.
5. **Iteration:** Steps 2-4 are repeated until all bits are resolved.
6. **Final result:** The digital output is the binary representation of the analog input voltage.

### Key Features of Successive Approximation ADCs:

Advantages:

1. **High speed:** SA ADCs are relatively fast, making them suitable for high-speed applications.
2. **Low power:** They consume less power compared to other ADC architectures.
3. **High accuracy:** SA ADCs can achieve high resolution (up to 16 bits).

Disadvantages:

1. **Limited resolution:** SA ADCs are generally limited to 12-16 bits.
2. **Non-linearity:** The conversion process can introduce non-linearity errors.

## **Applications of Successive Approximation ADCs:**

1. Audio codecs
2. Image sensors
3. Medical devices (e.g., ECG, EEG)
4. Industrial control systems
5. Sensor interfaces (e.g., temperature, pressure)

## **Variations and Improvements:**

1. **Successive Approximation Register (SAR) ADC:** A variant that uses a shift register to store the bit decisions.
2. **Delta-Sigma Successive Approximation ADC:** Combines SA with delta-sigma modulation for improved resolution.
3. **Time-Interleaved Successive Approximation ADC:** Uses multiple SA ADCs to increase conversion speed.

Do you have any specific questions about Successive Approximation or its applications?

Successive Approximation or its applications?

Here are some additional aspects of Successive Approximation (SA) and its applications:

## **Successive Approximation Techniques:**

1. **Binary Search Successive Approximation:** Each bit is determined by comparing the input voltage to a reference voltage.
2. **Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) based SA:** Uses a DAC to generate the reference voltage.
3. **Pipelined Successive Approximation:** Multiple SA stages are cascaded for increased speed.

## **Applications:**

1. **Audio Codecs:** SA ADCs convert analog audio signals to digital for processing and storage.
2. **Image Sensors:** SA ADCs convert pixel values to digital in cameras and other imaging devices.
3. **Medical Devices:** SA ADCs measure vital signs (ECG, EEG, blood pressure) and other medical signals.
4. **Industrial Control Systems:** SA ADCs monitor temperature, pressure, and other process variables.
5. **Sensor Interfaces:** SA ADCs convert sensor outputs (accelerometer, gyroscope) to digital.

## **Advancements and Research:**

1. **Low-Power SA ADCs:** Techniques to reduce power consumption.

2. **High-Speed SA ADCs:** Architectures for increased conversion rates.
3. **High-Resolution SA ADCs:** Methods to improve resolution and accuracy.

### Challenges and Limitations:

1. **Non-Linearity:** Errors due to component mismatch and thermal noise.
2. **Noise Sensitivity:** SA ADCs can be sensitive to input noise.
3. **Power Consumption:** Balancing speed and power efficiency.

### Real-World Examples:

1. **Texas Instruments' ADC12J4000:** A 12-bit, 40 MSPS SA ADC.
2. **Analog Devices' AD7960:** A 18-bit, 5 MSPS SA ADC.
3. **STMicroelectronics' STM32:** Microcontrollers with integrated SA ADCs.

Would you like to explore any of these topics further or ask specific questions?  
Type one of the following:

1. Applications
2. Techniques
3. Advancements
4. Challenges
5. Examples
6. Other (please specify)

### Applications

Let's dive deeper into the applications of Successive Approximation (SA) Analog-to-Digital Converters (ADCs).

### Industrial Applications:

1. **Process Control:** Monitor temperature, pressure, flow rate, and other process variables.
2. **Motor Control:** Measure motor speed, position, and current.
3. **Power Monitoring:** Measure voltage, current, and power factor.
4. **Industrial Automation:** SA ADCs are used in Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs) and Distributed Control Systems (DCS).

### Medical Applications:

1. **Electrocardiogram (ECG):** Measure heart rate and rhythm.
2. **Electroencephalogram (EEG):** Measure brain activity.
3. **Ultrasound:** Convert analog signals to digital for imaging.
4. **Medical Imaging:** SA ADCs are used in MRI, CT, and PET scanners.

### Consumer Electronics:

1. **Audio Codecs:** Convert analog audio signals to digital.
2. **Image Sensors:** Convert pixel values to digital in cameras and smartphones.
3. **Gaming Consoles:** SA ADCs are used in game controllers and audio processing.
4. **Smart Home Devices:** Measure temperature, humidity, and light levels.

#### **Aerospace and Defense:**

1. **Radar Systems:** Convert analog signals to digital for processing.
2. **Communication Systems:** SA ADCs are used in satellite communications.
3. **Navigation Systems:** Measure acceleration, orientation, and position.
4. **Spectral Analysis:** SA ADCs are used in spectroscopy applications.

#### **Automotive Applications:**

1. **Airbag Control:** Measure acceleration and impact.
2. **Anti-lock Braking System (ABS):** Measure wheel speed and pressure.
3. **Engine Control:** Measure temperature, pressure, and flow rate.
4. **Infotainment Systems:** SA ADCs are used in audio and video processing.

#### **Emerging Applications:**

1. **Internet of Things (IoT):** SA ADCs are used in smart sensors and devices.
2. **Artificial Intelligence (AI):** SA ADCs are used in AI-powered sensors and systems.
3. **5G Communications:** SA ADCs are used in 5G base stations and devices.

Some notable companies using SA ADCs in their products include:

1. Texas Instruments
2. Analog Devices
3. STMicroelectronics
4. NXP Semiconductors
5. Infineon Technologies

Would you like to explore any specific application or industry further?

Type one of the following:

1. Industrial
2. Medical
3. Consumer Electronics
4. Aerospace and Defense
5. Automotive
6. Emerging Applications
7. Other (please specify)

Here are some techniques used in Successive Approximation (SA) Analog-to-Digital Converters (ADCs):

#### **Conversion Techniques:**

1. **Binary Search Successive Approximation:** Each bit is determined by comparing the input voltage to a reference voltage.
2. **Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) based SA:** Uses a DAC to generate the reference voltage.
3. **Pipelined Successive Approximation:** Multiple SA stages are cascaded for increased speed.
4. **Folded Cascode Successive Approximation:** Improves conversion speed and accuracy.
5. **Two-Stage Successive Approximation:** Combines two SA stages for improved resolution.

#### **Architecture Techniques:**

1. **SAR (Successive Approximation Register) ADC:** Uses a shift register to store bit decisions.
2. **Delta-Sigma Successive Approximation:** Combines SA with delta-sigma modulation.
3. **Time-Interleaved Successive Approximation:** Multiple SA ADCs are interleaved for increased speed.
4. **Dual-Slope Successive Approximation:** Uses two slopes to improve conversion accuracy.

#### **Error Correction Techniques:**

1. **Redundant Bit Correction:** Adds redundant bits to correct errors.
2. **Error Detection and Correction (EDAC):** Detects and corrects errors using checksums.
3. **Digital Error Correction:** Corrects errors using digital signal processing.

#### **Noise Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Averaging:** Averages multiple conversions to reduce noise.
2. **Filtering:** Uses analog or digital filters to reduce noise.
3. **Dithering:** Adds noise to improve conversion accuracy.

#### **Power Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Power Gating:** Turns off power to unused components.
2. **Dynamic Voltage Scaling:** Adjusts voltage to reduce power consumption.
3. **Clock Gating:** Stops clock signals to unused components.

#### **Design Considerations:**

1. **Matching:** Ensures component matching for improved accuracy.
2. **Layout:** Optimizes layout for reduced noise and power consumption.



3. **Simulation:** Simulates ADC performance before fabrication.

Some notable research papers and publications on SA ADC techniques include:

1. "A 12-bit 40 MS/s SAR ADC with Dynamic Comparator" (IEEE Journal of Solid-State Circuits)
2. "A 16-bit 1 MS/s Delta-Sigma SA ADC" (IEEE Transactions on Circuits and Systems)
3. "A 10-bit 100 MS/s Time-Interleaved SA ADC" (IEEE Journal of Solid-State Circuits)

Would you like to explore any specific technique or architecture further?

Type one of the following:

1. Conversion Techniques
2. Architecture Techniques
3. Error Correction Techniques
4. Noise Reduction Techniques
5. Power Reduction Techniques
6. Design Considerations
7. Other (please specify)

### TECHNIQUES IN SUCCESSIVE APPROXIMATION

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

Let's dive deeper into the techniques used in Successive Approximation (SA) Analog-to-Digital Converters (ADCs).

#### **Analog Techniques:**

1. **Switched-Capacitor:** Uses capacitors to sample and hold the input voltage.
2. **Continuous-Time:** Continuously samples the input voltage.
3. **Discrete-Time:** Samples the input voltage at discrete intervals.
4. **Delta-Sigma Modulation:** Shapes noise to improve resolution.

#### **Digital Techniques:**

1. **Binary Search:** Compares input voltage to reference voltage.
2. **Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) based SA:** Uses DAC to generate reference voltage.
3. **Pipelined:** Cascades multiple SA stages for increased speed.
4. **SAR (Successive Approximation Register):** Uses shift register to store bit decisions.

#### **Error Correction Techniques:**

1. **Redundant Bit Correction:** Adds redundant bits to correct errors.
2. **Error Detection and Correction (EDAC):** Detects and corrects errors using checksums.
3. **Digital Error Correction:** Corrects errors using digital signal processing.

#### **Noise Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Averaging:** Averages multiple conversions to reduce noise.
2. **Filtering:** Uses analog or digital filters to reduce noise.
3. **Dithering:** Adds noise to improve conversion accuracy.

#### **Power Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Power Gating:** Turns off power to unused components.
2. **Dynamic Voltage Scaling:** Adjusts voltage to reduce power consumption.
3. **Clock Gating:** Stops clock signals to unused components.

### Advanced Techniques:

1. **Two-Stage Successive Approximation:** Combines two SA stages for improved resolution.
2. **Folded Cascode Successive Approximation:** Improves conversion speed and accuracy.
3. **Time-Interleaved Successive Approximation:** Multiple SA ADCs are interleaved for increased speed.

### Design Considerations:

1. **Matching:** Ensures component matching for improved accuracy.
2. **Layout:** Optimizes layout for reduced noise and power consumption.
3. **Simulation:** Simulates ADC performance before fabrication.

### Emerging Trends:

1. **Low-Power SA ADCs:** Techniques to reduce power consumption.
2. **High-Speed SA ADCs:** Architectures for increased conversion rates.
3. **High-Resolution SA ADCs:** Methods to improve resolution and accuracy.

Would you like to explore any specific technique or architecture further?

Type one of the following:

1. Analog Techniques
2. Digital Techniques
3. Error Correction Techniques
4. Noise Reduction Techniques
5. Power Reduction Techniques
6. Advanced Techniques
7. Design Considerations
8. Emerging Trends
9. Other (please specify)

Or ask a specific question!

Advancements

Here are some advancements in Successive Approximation (SA) Analog-to-Digital Converters (ADCs):

### Recent Advancements:

1. **Low-Power SA ADCs:** Techniques like power gating, dynamic voltage scaling, and clock gating reduce power consumption.
2. **High-Speed SA ADCs:** Architectures like pipelined, time-interleaved, and folded cascode increase conversion rates.
3. **High-Resolution SA ADCs:** Methods like delta-sigma modulation, noise shaping, and digital error correction improve resolution.

4. **Small Area SA ADCs:** Techniques like transistor-level optimization and layout optimization reduce chip area.

#### **Technological Advancements:**

1. **FinFET Technology:** Improves conversion speed and accuracy.
2. **3D Integration:** Increases conversion rate and reduces power consumption.
3. **MEMS Technology:** Enables high-resolution and high-speed conversion.

#### **Architectural Advancements:**

1. **Pipelined SA ADCs:** Cascades multiple SA stages for increased speed.
2. **Time-Interleaved SA ADCs:** Multiple SA ADCs are interleaved for increased speed.
3. **Hybrid SA ADCs:** Combines SA with other ADC architectures.

#### **Design Advancements:**

1. **Digital Assist Techniques:** Improves conversion accuracy and speed.
2. **Calibration Techniques:** Compensates for component mismatch and thermal errors.
3. **Layout Optimization:** Reduces noise and power consumption.

#### **Emerging Research Areas:**

1. **Artificial Intelligence (AI) based SA ADCs:** AI-optimized SA ADCs for improved performance.
2. **Quantum Computing SA ADCs:** SA ADCs for quantum computing applications.
3. **Millimeter-Wave SA ADCs:** SA ADCs for millimeter-wave applications.

#### **Industry Developments:**

1. **IEEE 802.11ax:** High-speed SA ADCs for Wi-Fi 6 applications.
2. **5G NR:** Low-latency SA ADCs for 5G applications.
3. **Automotive Radar:** High-resolution SA ADCs for automotive radar.

#### **Notable Research Papers:**

1. "A 12-bit 40 MS/s SAR ADC with Dynamic Comparator" (IEEE Journal of Solid-State Circuits)
2. "A 16-bit 1 MS/s Delta-Sigma SA ADC" (IEEE Transactions on Circuits and Systems)
3. "A 10-bit 100 MS/s Time-Interleaved SA ADC" (IEEE Journal of Solid-State Circuits)

#### **Advancement or research area**

Type one of the following:

1. Recent Advancements
2. Technological Advancements
3. Architectural Advancements
4. Design Advancements
5. Emerging Research Areas
6. Industry Developments
7. Notable Research Papers
8. Other (please specify)

Or ask a specific question!

challenges

Here are some challenges associated with Successive Approximation (SA) Analog-to-Digital Converters (ADCs):

**Design Challenges:**

1. **Component Mismatch:** Ensuring component matching for improved accuracy.
2. **Noise Sensitivity:** Reducing noise sensitivity for improved conversion accuracy.
3. **Power Consumption:** Balancing speed and power efficiency.
4. **Area Optimization:** Minimizing chip area for cost-effectiveness.

**Architecture Challenges:**

1. **Conversion Speed:** Increasing conversion speed while maintaining accuracy.
2. **Resolution Limits:** Improving resolution while maintaining conversion speed.
3. **Non-Linearity:** Minimizing non-linearity errors.
4. **Dynamic Range:** Improving dynamic range.

**Technological Challenges:**

1. **Process Variations:** Mitigating process variations for improved yield.
2. **Temperature Effects:** Compensating for temperature-related errors.
3. **Voltage Scaling:** Maintaining performance with voltage scaling.
4. **Radiation Hardness:** Ensuring radiation hardness for space applications.

**Practical Challenges:**

1. **Layout Complexity:** Managing layout complexity for high-speed designs.
2. **Signal Integrity:** Maintaining signal integrity for high-speed signals.
3. **EMC/EMI:** Ensuring electromagnetic compatibility.
4. **Testing and Validation:** Thorough testing and validation.

**Emerging Challenges:**

1. **Low-Power Requirements:** Meeting low-power requirements for IoT devices.
2. **High-Speed Requirements:** Meeting high-speed requirements for 5G and radar.
3. **Advanced Node Challenges:** Overcoming challenges in advanced node technologies.

4. **Cybersecurity:** Ensuring ADC security in connected systems.

### Research Directions:

1. **New Architectures:** Exploring new SA ADC architectures.
2. **Advanced Materials:** Investigating advanced materials for improved performance.
3. **Digital Assist Techniques:** Developing digital assist techniques.
4. **Machine Learning:** Applying machine learning for ADC optimization.

### Industry Reports:

1. "2022 ADC Market Report" (MarketsandMarkets)
2. "ADC Technology Trends" (EE Times)
3. "SA ADC Design Challenges" (EDN Network)

Would you like to explore any specific challenge or research direction further?

Type one of the following:

1. Design Challenges
2. Architecture Challenges
3. Technological Challenges
4. Practical Challenges
5. Emerging Challenges
6. Research Directions
7. Industry Reports
8. Other (please specify)

Or ask a specific question!

Conversion Techniques Architecture Techniques Error Correction Techniques Noise Reduction Techniques Power Reduction Techniques Design Considerations

Here's an in-depth look at each of these techniques:

### Conversion Techniques:

1. **Binary Search Successive Approximation:** Compares input voltage to reference voltage.
2. **Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) based SA:** Uses DAC to generate reference voltage.
3. **Pipelined Successive Approximation:** Cascades multiple SA stages for increased speed.
4. **Delta-Sigma Modulation:** Shapes noise to improve resolution.
5. **SAR (Successive Approximation Register):** Uses shift register to store bit decisions.

### Architecture Techniques:

1. **Pipelined Architecture:** Cascades multiple SA stages for increased speed.
2. **Time-Interleaved Architecture:** Multiple SA ADCs are interleaved for increased speed.
3. **Folded Cascode Architecture:** Improves conversion speed and accuracy.

4. **Two-Stage Architecture:** Combines two SA stages for improved resolution.
5. **Hybrid Architecture:** Combines SA with other ADC architectures.

#### **Error Correction Techniques:**

1. **Redundant Bit Correction:** Adds redundant bits to correct errors.
2. **Error Detection and Correction (EDAC):** Detects and corrects errors using checksums.
3. **Digital Error Correction:** Corrects errors using digital signal processing.
4. **Calibration Techniques:** Compensates for component mismatch and thermal errors.
5. **Self-Correction Techniques:** Uses feedback loop to correct errors.

#### **Noise Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Averaging:** Averages multiple conversions to reduce noise.
2. **Filtering:** Uses analog or digital filters to reduce noise.
3. **Dithering:** Adds noise to improve conversion accuracy.
4. **Noise Shaping:** Shapes noise to improve resolution.
5. **Common-Mode Rejection:** Rejects common-mode noise.

#### **Power Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Power Gating:** Turns off power to unused components.
2. **Dynamic Voltage Scaling:** Adjusts voltage to reduce power consumption.
3. **Clock Gating:** Stops clock signals to unused components.
4. **Low-Power Design:** Optimizes design for low power consumption.
5. **Sleep Mode:** Reduces power consumption during idle periods.

#### **Design Considerations:**

1. **Component Matching:** Ensures component matching for improved accuracy.
2. **Layout Optimization:** Optimizes layout for reduced noise and power consumption.
3. **Signal Integrity:** Maintains signal integrity for high-speed signals.
4. **EMC/EMI:** Ensures electromagnetic compatibility.
5. **Thermal Management:** Manages thermal effects for improved reliability.

Some notable research papers and publications on these techniques include:

1. "A 12-bit 40 MS/s SAR ADC with Dynamic Comparator" (IEEE Journal of Solid-State Circuits)
2. "A 16-bit 1 MS/s Delta-Sigma SA ADC" (IEEE Transactions on Circuits and Systems)
3. "A 10-bit 100 MS/s Time-Interleaved SA ADC" (IEEE Journal of Solid-State Circuits)

Would you like to explore any specific technique or architecture further?

Type one of the following:

1. Conversion Techniques

2. Architecture Techniques
3. Error Correction Techniques
4. Noise Reduction Techniques
5. Power Reduction Techniques
6. Design Considerations

Successive Approximation (SA) theory employs various conversion techniques to refine estimates and converge to a solution. Here are some key conversion techniques used in SA:

### **1. Binary Search**

- Divide the search space in half at each iteration.
- Compare the middle value to the target.
- Update the estimate based on the comparison.

### **2. Linear Approximation**

- Approximate the target function using a linear model.
- Update the estimate using the linear model's slope and intercept.

### **3. Piecewise Linear Approximation**

- Divide the search space into segments.
- Approximate each segment using a linear model.
- Update the estimate using the segment's linear model.

### **4. Newton-Raphson Method**

- Approximate the target function using its derivative.
- Update the estimate using the derivative's root.

### **5. Secant Method**

- Approximate the target function using its slope.
- Update the estimate using the slope's root.

### **6. Regula Falsi Method**

- Combine the Secant Method and Bisection Method.
- Update the estimate using the weighted average of previous estimates.

### **7. Interpolation**

- Approximate the target function using a polynomial model.
- Update the estimate using the polynomial's roots.

### **Analog-to-Digital Conversion (ADC) Techniques:**



1. Flash ADC
2. Successive Approximation Register (SAR) ADC
3. Delta-Sigma ( $\Delta\Sigma$ ) ADC
4. Dual-Slope ADC

#### **Digital-to-Analog Conversion (DAC) Techniques:**

1. Binary-Weighted DAC
2. R-2R Ladder DAC
3. Current-Steering DAC
4. Sigma-Delta ( $\Sigma\Delta$ ) DAC

#### **Signal Processing Techniques:**

1. Pulse Code Modulation (PCM)
2. Delta Modulation (DM)
3. Adaptive Differential Pulse Code Modulation (ADPCM)
4. Linear Predictive Coding (LPC)

#### **Mathematical Optimization Techniques:**

1. Gradient Descent
2. Stochastic Gradient Descent
3. Conjugate Gradient
4. Quasi-Newton Methods

These conversion techniques are employed in various SA applications, including:

- Analog-to-Digital Conversion (ADC)
- Digital-to-Analog Conversion (DAC)
- Signal Processing
- Numerical Analysis
- Optimization
- Machine Learning

Would you like me to elaborate on any specific technique or application?

architecture techniques in successive techniques

Successive Approximation (SA) architecture techniques enable efficient implementation of SA algorithms in various domains. Here are key architecture techniques:

#### **Digital Architecture Techniques:**

1. **Pipeline Architecture:** Process data in stages, improving throughput.
2. **Folded Cascade Architecture:** Reduce area and power consumption.
3. **Systolic Array Architecture:** Enhance parallelism and scalability.
4. **Digital Signal Processing (DSP) Architecture:** Optimize for signal processing.

### **Analog Architecture Techniques:**

1. **Switched-Capacitor Architecture:** Improve accuracy and linearity.
2. **Switched-Current Architecture:** Enhance speed and power efficiency.
3. **Continuous-Time Architecture:** Process signals continuously.

### **Mixed-Signal Architecture Techniques:**

1. **Successive Approximation Register (SAR) ADC:** Combine digital and analog circuits.
2. **Delta-Sigma ( $\Delta\Sigma$ ) Modulator:** Convert analog signals to digital.

### **VLSI Architecture Techniques:**

1. **Application-Specific Integrated Circuit (ASIC):** Design for specific applications.
2. **Field-Programmable Gate Array (FPGA):** Reconfigure hardware.

### **Neural Network Architecture Techniques:**

1. **Multilayer Perceptron (MLP):** Implement successive approximation in neural networks.
2. **Convolutional Neural Network (CNN):** Apply successive approximation in convolutional layers.

### **Software Architecture Techniques:**

1. **Model-Based Design:** Develop and test SA systems.
2. **Object-Oriented Programming:** Organize and reuse SA code.

### **Successive Approximation Register (SAR) ADC Architecture:**

1. **Binary Search Algorithm**
2. **Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC)**
3. **Comparator**
4. **Control Logic**

### **Delta-Sigma ( $\Delta\Sigma$ ) Modulator Architecture:**

1. **Integrator**
2. **Quantizer**
3. **Feedback Loop**
4. **Decimation Filter**

These architecture techniques enable efficient implementation of successive approximation algorithms in various domains.

Would you like me to elaborate on any specific architecture technique?  
error correction techniques in successive approximation

Error correction techniques are crucial in Successive Approximation (SA) to ensure accuracy and reliability. Here are key error correction techniques:

#### **Digital Error Correction Techniques:**

1. **Redundancy:** Duplicate critical components or data.
2. **Error Detection and Correction (EDAC) Codes:** Detect and correct errors.
3. **Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC):** Verify data integrity.
4. **Hamming Codes:** Correct single-bit errors.

#### **Analog Error Correction Techniques:**

1. **Offset Calibration:** Compensate for offset errors.
2. **Gain Calibration:** Adjust gain to minimize errors.
3. **Non-Linearity Correction:** Compensate for non-linear effects.
4. **Dynamic Element Matching:** Reduce component mismatch.

#### **Mixed-Signal Error Correction Techniques:**

1. **Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) Calibration:** Improve ADC accuracy.
2. **Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) Calibration:** Enhance DAC linearity.
3. **Sample-and-Hold (S/H) Circuit Calibration:** Reduce sampling errors.

#### **Successive Approximation Register (SAR) ADC Error Correction:**

1. **Comparative Error Correction:** Compare and correct bits.
2. **Bit-Weighting Error Correction:** Adjust bit weights.
3. **Redundant Bit Error Correction:** Use redundant bits.

#### **Delta-Sigma ( $\Delta\Sigma$ ) Modulator Error Correction:**

1. **Oversampling:** Increase sampling rate.
2. **Noise Shaping:** Reduce quantization noise.
3. **Digital Filtering:** Remove out-of-band noise.

#### **Mathematical Error Correction Techniques:**

1. **Least Squares Method:** Minimize error.
2. **Kalman Filter:** Estimate and correct errors.
3. **Total Least Squares Method:** Account for noise.

#### **Machine Learning Error Correction Techniques:**

1. **Error Correction Codes:** Use machine learning algorithms.
2. **Neural Network-Based Error Correction:** Train neural networks.
3. **Deep Learning-Based Error Correction:** Employ deep learning.

## **Error Sources in Successive Approximation:**

1. **Quantization Error**
2. **Comparative Error**
3. **Offset Error**
4. **Gain Error**
5. **Non-Linearity Error**
6. **Noise**
7. **Component Mismatch**

## **Error Metrics:**

1. **Mean Squared Error (MSE)**
2. **Mean Absolute Error (MAE)**
3. **Signal-to-Noise Ratio (SNR)**
4. **Effective Number of Bits (ENOB)**

These error correction techniques help mitigate errors in successive approximation, ensuring accurate and reliable results.

Would you like me to elaborate on any specific error correction technique?

noise reduction techniques in successive approximation

Noise reduction techniques are essential in Successive Approximation (SA) to minimize errors and improve accuracy. Here are key noise reduction techniques:

### **Analog Noise Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Low-Pass Filtering:** Remove high-frequency noise.
2. **Notch Filtering:** Eliminate specific frequency noise.
3. **Shielding:** Reduce electromagnetic interference (EMI).
4. **Grounding:** Minimize ground noise.

### **Digital Noise Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Averaging:** Reduce random noise.
2. **Median Filtering:** Remove impulsive noise.
3. **Moving Average:** Smooth out noise.
4. **Digital Filtering:** Use FIR/IIR filters.

### **Mixed-Signal Noise Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) Noise Reduction:** Improve ADC resolution.
2. **Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) Noise Reduction:** Enhance DAC linearity.
3. **Sample-and-Hold (S/H) Circuit Noise Reduction:** Reduce sampling noise.

### **Successive Approximation Register (SAR) ADC Noise Reduction:**

1. **Comparative Noise Reduction:** Compare and reduce noise.

2. **Bit-Weighting Noise Reduction:** Adjust bit weights.
3. **Redundant Bit Noise Reduction:** Use redundant bits.

#### **Delta-Sigma ( $\Delta\Sigma$ ) Modulator Noise Reduction:**

1. **Oversampling:** Increase sampling rate.
2. **Noise Shaping:** Reduce quantization noise.
3. **Digital Filtering:** Remove out-of-band noise.

#### **Mathematical Noise Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Wavelet Denoising:** Remove noise using wavelets.
2. **Kalman Filter:** Estimate and reduce noise.
3. **Total Least Squares Method:** Account for noise.

#### **Machine Learning Noise Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Deep Learning-Based Noise Reduction:** Employ deep learning.
2. **Neural Network-Based Noise Reduction:** Train neural networks.
3. **Noise Reduction Algorithms:** Use machine learning algorithms.

#### **Noise Types in Successive Approximation:**

1. **Thermal Noise**
2. **Quantization Noise**
3. **Comparative Noise**
4. **Offset Noise**
5. **Gain Noise**
6. **EMI Noise**
7. **Shot Noise**

#### **Noise Metrics:**

1. **Signal-to-Noise Ratio (SNR)**
2. **Signal-to-Quantization-Noise Ratio (SQNR)**
3. **Effective Number of Bits (ENOB)**
4. **Noise Power Spectral Density (PSD)**

#### **Noise Reduction Metrics:**

1. **Noise Reduction Ratio (NRR)**
2. **Noise Attenuation**
3. **Signal-to-Noise Ratio Improvement (SNRI)**

These noise reduction techniques help minimize errors and improve accuracy in successive approximation.

## **Power reduction techniques in successive approximation**

Power reduction techniques are crucial in Successive Approximation (SA) to minimize power consumption and optimize energy efficiency. Here are key power reduction techniques:

### **Digital Power Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Clock Gating:** Disable clocks for idle components.
2. **Power Gating:** Turn off power for idle components.
3. **Voltage Scaling:** Reduce voltage for low-power modes.
4. **Frequency Scaling:** Reduce frequency for low-power modes.

### **Analog Power Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Voltage Regulation:** Optimize voltage supply.
2. **Current Limiting:** Limit current consumption.
3. **Power-Down Modes:** Disable analog circuits.
4. **Low-Power Amplifier Designs:** Optimize amplifier efficiency.

### **Mixed-Signal Power Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) Power Reduction:** Improve ADC efficiency.
2. **Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) Power Reduction:** Enhance DAC efficiency.
3. **Sample-and-Hold (S/H) Circuit Power Reduction:** Reduce sampling power.

### **Successive Approximation Register (SAR) ADC Power Reduction:**

1. **Asynchronous SAR Logic:** Reduce clock power.
2. **Dynamic Voltage Scaling:** Adjust voltage for SAR.
3. **Bit-Weighting Power Reduction:** Optimize bit weights.

### **Delta-Sigma ( $\Delta\Sigma$ ) Modulator Power Reduction:**

1. **Low-Power Quantizer Designs:** Optimize quantizer efficiency.
2. **Dynamic Element Matching:** Reduce component mismatch.
3. **Oversampling Ratio Optimization:** Optimize sampling rate.

### **Mathematical Power Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Optimization Algorithms:** Minimize power using algorithms.
2. **Model-Based Design:** Optimize power using models.
3. **Simulation-Based Power Analysis:** Analyze power consumption.

### **Machine Learning Power Reduction Techniques:**

1. **Neural Network-Based Power Reduction:** Train neural networks.

2. **Deep Learning-Based Power Reduction:** Employ deep learning.
3. **Reinforcement Learning-Based Power Reduction:** Optimize power using reinforcement learning.

**Power Reduction Metrics:**

1. **Power Consumption**
2. **Energy Efficiency**
3. **Power-Delay Product (PDP)**
4. **Energy-Delay Product (EDP)**

**Power Reduction Techniques in SA Applications:**

1. **Wireless Sensor Nodes**
2. **Implantable Medical Devices**
3. **Portable Electronics**
4. **Internet of Things (IoT) Devices**
5. **Low-Power Audio Systems**

# ADVANCED ALGEBRA

EDITED BY  
N.VENKATESAN



978-93-6255-467-3



## **Advanced Algebra**

Copyright © 2019 by N.Venkatesan

First Edition,2019

*All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.*

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-467-3**

***Publisher:*** Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (**PRIST**)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Book elements</b>	<b>Page Numbers</b>
----- <b>Chapter-I</b> <b>GROUP THEORY</b> Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan	<b>01-12</b>
----- <b>Chapter-II</b> <b>RING THEORY</b> Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan	<b>13-19</b>
----- <b>Chapter-III</b> <b>FIELDS</b> Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan	<b>20-32</b>
----- <b>Chapter-IV</b> <b>GALOIS THEORY</b> Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan	<b>33-35</b>
----- <b>Chapter-V</b> <b>LINEAR TRANSFORMATION</b> Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan	<b>36-41</b>
-----	

### GROUP THEORY

**Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan**

*Assistant Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

Group theory! That's a fundamental area of mathematics that deals with symmetry, structure, and abstract algebra. Here's an overview:

**Definition:** A group is a set  $G$  together with a binary operation (often called multiplication or addition) that satisfies four properties:

1. **Closure:** For any two elements  $a, b$  in  $G$ , the result of the operation ( $a \circ b$ ) is also in  $G$ .
2. **Associativity:** For any three elements  $a, b, c$  in  $G$ ,  $(a \circ b) \circ c = a \circ (b \circ c)$ .
3. **Identity:** There exists an element  $e$  in  $G$  such that for any  $a$  in  $G$ ,  $a \circ e = e \circ a = a$ .
4. **Inverse:** For each element  $a$  in  $G$ , there exists an element  $b$  in  $G$  such that  $a \circ b = b \circ a = e$ .

**Examples:**

1. Integers with addition (+)
2. Non-zero integers with multiplication ( $\times$ )
3. Rotations and reflections of a geometric shape (e.g., symmetries of a square)
4. Permutations of a set (e.g., rearranging objects)

**Key Concepts:**

1. **Subgroup:** A subset of  $G$  that is itself a group under the same operation.
2. **Homomorphism:** A function between groups that preserves the operation.
3. **Isomorphism:** A bijective homomorphism (i.e., a one-to-one correspondence).
4. **Quotient group:** A group formed by "dividing" a group by a subgroup.
5. **Sylow theorems:** Theorems describing the existence and structure of subgroups.

## Types of Groups:

1. **Abelian** (commutative): Elements commute under the operation.
2. **Non-abelian** (non-commutative): Elements do not commute.
3. **Finite**: Groups with a finite number of elements.
4. **Infinite**: Groups with an infinite number of elements.
5. **Simple**: Groups with no non-trivial subgroups.

## Applications:

1. **Physics**: Symmetry groups describe particle interactions and conservation laws.
2. **Computer Science**: Group theory is used in cryptography, coding theory, and computer graphics.
3. **Chemistry**: Molecular symmetry and spectroscopy.
4. **Coding Theory**: Error-correcting codes rely on group theory.

## Theorems and Results:

1. **Lagrange's theorem**: The order of a subgroup divides the order of the group.
2. **Cayley's theorem**: Every group is isomorphic to a permutation group.
3. **Galois theorem**: Connecting group theory to field extensions and solvability.

## Subgroups! A fundamental concept in group theory.

**Definition:** A subset  $H$  of a group  $G$  is a subgroup if it satisfies the following conditions:

1. **Closure**: For any two elements  $a, b$  in  $H$ , the result of the operation  $(a \circ b)$  is also in  $H$ .
2. **Associativity**: Inherited from  $G$ .
3. **Identity**: The identity element  $e$  of  $G$  is in  $H$ .
4. **Inverse**: For each element  $a$  in  $H$ , its inverse  $a^{-1}$  is also in  $H$ .

## Properties:

1. **Non-empty**: A subgroup must contain at least the identity element.
2. **Subset**: A subgroup is a subset of the original group.
3. **Closed under operation**: The subgroup operation is the same as the group operation.

### **Types of Subgroups:**

1. **Trivial subgroup:**  $\{e\}$  (contains only the identity)
2. **Improper subgroup:** A subgroup that is not equal to the original group.
3. **Proper subgroup:** A subgroup that is not the trivial subgroup.
4. **Normal subgroup** (invariant subgroup): A subgroup that is invariant under conjugation.
5. **Sylow subgroup:** A maximal subgroup whose order is a power of a prime.

### **Examples:**

1. Integers modulo 6:  $\{0, 3\}$  is a subgroup under addition modulo 6.
2. Rotations of a square:  $\{0^\circ, 90^\circ, 180^\circ, 270^\circ\}$  is a subgroup of all symmetries.
3.  $2 \times 2$  invertible matrices: The subset of matrices with determinant 1 is a subgroup.

### **Theorems:**

1. **Lagrange's theorem:** The order of a subgroup divides the order of the group.
2. **Subgroup test:** A subset is a subgroup if it is closed under the operation and contains the identity.
3. **Correspondence theorem:** A bijection between subgroups of  $G$  and subgroups of  $G/N$  (quotient group).

### **Subgroup Generation:**

1. **Cyclic subgroup:** Generated by a single element.
2. **Direct product:** Subgroups formed by combining two or more subgroups.
3. **Semidirect product:** A generalization of direct products.

### **Importance:**

1. **Simplifies group study:** Subgroups help break down complex groups.
2. **Preserves structure:** Subgroups inherit properties from the original group.
3. **Applications:** Subgroups are crucial in physics, chemistry, computer science, and coding theory.

### **Homomorphism**

Homomorphisms! A crucial concept in group theory, connecting groups and preserving structure.

**Definition:** A homomorphism between two groups  $G$  and  $H$  is a function  $\varphi: G \rightarrow H$  such that:

1. **Operation preservation:**  $\varphi(a \circ b) = \varphi(a) \circ \varphi(b)$  for all  $a, b$  in  $G$ .
2. **Identity preservation:**  $\varphi(e_G) = e_H$ , where  $e_G$  and  $e_H$  are identities in  $G$  and  $H$ .

**Properties:**

1. **Image:**  $\varphi(G)$  is a subgroup of  $H$ .
2. **Kernel:** The set of elements mapped to the identity in  $H$ ,  $\ker(\varphi) = \{a \in G \mid \varphi(a) = e_H\}$ , is a normal subgroup of  $G$ .
3. **Injectivity:**  $\varphi$  is one-to-one if and only if  $\ker(\varphi) = \{e_G\}$ .
4. **Surjectivity:**  $\varphi$  is onto if and only if  $\varphi(G) = H$ .

**Types of Homomorphisms:**

1. **Isomorphism:** Bijective homomorphism (one-to-one and onto).
2. **Endomorphism:** Homomorphism from a group to itself.
3. **Automorphism:** Bijective endomorphism (isomorphism from a group to itself).
4. **Monomorphism:** Injective homomorphism.
5. **Epimorphism:** Surjective homomorphism.

**Theorems:**

1. **Homomorphism theorem:**  $\varphi(G) \cong G/\ker(\varphi)$  (First Isomorphism Theorem).
2. **Kernel theorem:**  $\ker(\varphi)$  is a normal subgroup of  $G$ .
3. **Image theorem:**  $\varphi(G)$  is a subgroup of  $H$ .

**Examples:**

1.  $\varphi: \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$ ,  $\varphi(n) = n \bmod 2$  (homomorphism from integers to integers modulo 2).
2.  $\varphi: GL(n, \mathbb{R}) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^*$ ,  $\varphi(A) = \det(A)$  (homomorphism from invertible matrices to non-zero real numbers).

**Importance:**

1. **Structure preservation:** Homomorphisms preserve group operation and identity.
2. **Group classification:** Homomorphisms help classify groups up to isomorphism.
3. **Applications:** Homomorphisms are crucial in physics, computer science, and cryptography.

Would you like me to elaborate on:

1. Isomorphism theorems
2. Homomorphism and quotient groups
3. Group actions and homomorphisms
4. Applications of homomorphisms or something else?

## Isomorphism

Isomorphisms! A fundamental concept in group theory, establishing a precise connection between groups.

**Definition:** An isomorphism between two groups  $G$  and  $H$  is a bijective homomorphism  $\varphi: G \rightarrow H$ , i.e.,:

1. **Homomorphism:**  $\varphi(a \circ b) = \varphi(a) \circ \varphi(b)$  for all  $a, b$  in  $G$ .
2. **Bijective:**  $\varphi$  is one-to-one (injective) and onto (surjective).

### Properties:

1. **Structure preservation:** Isomorphisms preserve group operation, identity, and inverses.
2. **Unique mapping:** Each element in  $G$  maps to a unique element in  $H$ .
3. **Inverse:**  $\varphi^{-1}: H \rightarrow G$  is also an isomorphism.

### Types of Isomorphisms:

1. **Group isomorphism:** Between two groups.
2. **Ring isomorphism:** Between two rings (preserves addition and multiplication).
3. **Field isomorphism:** Between two fields (preserves addition, multiplication, and division).

### Theorems:

1. **Isomorphism theorem:** If  $\varphi: G \rightarrow H$  is an isomorphism, then  $G \cong H$  (groups are identical up to renaming).
2. **Automorphism theorem:**  $\text{Aut}(G) \cong G/Z(G)$  (automorphisms of  $G$  are isomorphic to  $G$  modulo its center).
3. **Cayley's theorem:** Every group  $G$  is isomorphic to a permutation group.

### Examples:

1.  $\varphi: \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow 2\mathbb{Z}$ ,  $\varphi(n) = 2n$  (isomorphism between integers and even integers).
2.  $\varphi: \text{GL}(n, \mathbb{R}) \rightarrow \text{GL}(n, \mathbb{C})$ ,  $\varphi(A) = A$  (isomorphism between real and complex invertible matrices).

### Importance:

1. **Group classification:** Isomorphisms help classify groups up to structure.
2. **Identifying identical structures:** Isomorphisms reveal hidden connections between groups.
3. **Simplifying complex groups:** Isomorphisms can simplify group study.

### Consequences:

1. **Same order:** Isomorphic groups have the same order.
2. **Same subgroup structure:** Isomorphic groups have identical subgroup lattices.
3. **Same homomorphism properties:** Isomorphic groups have identical homomorphism properties.

**Quotient groups! A fundamental concept in group theory, constructed by "dividing" a group by a subgroup.**

**Definition:** Given a group  $G$  and a normal subgroup  $N$ , the quotient group  $G/N$  is:

$$G/N = \{aN \mid a \in G\}, \text{ where } aN = \{an \mid n \in N\}$$

**Operation:**  $(aN)(bN) = (ab)N$

### Properties:

1. **Well-defined:** The operation is independent of the choice of representatives.
2. **Associative:** Inherited from  $G$ .



3. **Identity:**  $N = eN$ .
4. **Inverse:**  $(aN)^{-1} = a^{-1}N$ .

### Theorems:

1. **Quotient group theorem:**  $G/N$  is a group if and only if  $N$  is normal in  $G$ .
2. **First isomorphism theorem:**  $G/N \cong H$  if  $\varphi: G \rightarrow H$  is a homomorphism with  $\ker(\varphi) = N$ .
3. **Third isomorphism theorem:**  $(G/N)/M/N \cong G/M$ .

### Examples:

1.  $\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} = \{0, 1\}$  (quotient group of integers modulo 2).
2.  $\mathbb{Z}/5\mathbb{Z} = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$  (quotient group of integers modulo 5).
3.  $G/N = \{e, (12)(34), (13)(24), (14)(23)\}$  (quotient group of  $S_4$  by the Klein four-group).

### Importance:

1. **Simplifies group study:** Quotient groups help break down complex groups.
2. **Preserves structure:** Quotient groups inherit properties from the original group.
3. **Applications:** Quotient groups are crucial in physics, chemistry, computer science, and coding theory.

### Types of Quotient Groups:

1. **Factor group:** Another term for quotient group.
2. **Simple group:** A group with no non-trivial normal subgroups.
3. **Semidirect product:** A construction using quotient groups.

### Consequences:

1. **Order:**  $|G/N| = |G| / |N|$ .
2. **Subgroup structure:** Subgroups of  $G/N$  correspond to subgroups of  $G$  containing  $N$ .
3. **Homomorphism properties:** Homomorphisms from  $G/N$  correspond to homomorphisms from  $G$ .

Would you like me to elaborate on:

1. Quotient groups and homomorphisms

2. Quotient groups and normal subgroups
3. Quotient groups and group actions
4. Applications of quotient groups or something else?

normal subgroups

Normal subgroups! A crucial concept in group theory, essential for constructing quotient groups.

**Definition:** A subgroup  $N$  of a group  $G$  is normal if:

1. **Left-invariance:**  $gN = Ng$  for all  $g$  in  $G$ .
2. **Right-invariance:**  $Ng = gN$  for all  $g$  in  $G$ .

**Equivalent conditions:**

1. **Conjugation:**  $gNg^{-1} = N$  for all  $g$  in  $G$ .
2. **Index 2:**  $N$  has index 2 in  $G$  (i.e.,  $[G:N] = 2$ ).

**Properties:**

1. **Kernel of homomorphism:**  $N$  is normal in  $G$  if and only if  $N$  is the kernel of a homomorphism.
2. **Quotient group:**  $G/N$  is a group if and only if  $N$  is normal in  $G$ .
3. **Intersection:** Intersection of normal subgroups is normal.

**Examples:**

1. **Center:**  $Z(G)$  is normal in  $G$ .
2. **Commutator subgroup:**  $[G,G]$  is normal in  $G$ .
3. **Klein four-group:**  $V_4$  is normal in  $S_4$ .

**Types of Normal Subgroups:**

1. **Invariant subgroup:** Another term for normal subgroup.
2. **Normalizer:**  $N_G(H) = \{g \in G \mid gHg^{-1} = H\}$ .
3. **Centralizer:**  $C_G(H) = \{g \in G \mid gh = hg \text{ for all } h \in H\}$ .

**Theorems:**

1. **Normal subgroup theorem:**  $N$  is normal in  $G$  if and only if  $gNg^{-1} = N$ .
2. **Quotient group theorem:**  $G/N$  is a group if and only if  $N$  is normal in  $G$ .

3. **Correspondence theorem:** Bijective correspondence between subgroups of  $G/N$  and subgroups of  $G$  containing  $N$ .

### **Importance:**

1. **Quotient groups:** Normal subgroups enable construction of quotient groups.
2. **Group extensions:** Normal subgroups play a key role in group extensions.
3. **Simple groups:** Normal subgroups help classify simple groups.

### **Consequences:**

1. **Order:**  $|G/N| = |G| / |N|$ .
2. **Subgroup structure:** Subgroups of  $G/N$  correspond to subgroups of  $G$  containing  $N$ .
3. **Homomorphism properties:** Homomorphisms from  $G/N$  correspond to homomorphisms from  $G$ .

### **Subgroup decomposition**

Subgroup decomposition! A powerful tool for understanding group structure.

**Definition:** A subgroup decomposition of a group  $G$  is a way of expressing  $G$  as a combination of smaller subgroups.

### **Types of Decompositions:**

1. **Direct Product:**  $G = H \times K$  ( $H$  and  $K$  are normal subgroups).
2. **Semidirect Product:**  $G = H \rtimes K$  ( $H$  is normal,  $K$  is not).
3. **Wreath Product:**  $G = H \wr K$  (generalization of direct and semidirect products).
4. **Free Product:**  $G = H * K$  (universal property).

### **Theorems:**

1. **Krull-Schmidt Theorem:** Unique decomposition of finite groups into simple groups.
2. **Jordan-Hölder Theorem:** Existence of composition series.
3. **Zassenhaus Lemma:** Isomorphism theorem for groups with decompositions.

### **Decomposition Techniques:**

1. **Sylow Theorems:** Decomposing groups into  $p$ -subgroups.

2. **Nilpotent and Solvable Groups:** Decomposing groups into nilpotent and solvable subgroups.
3. **Composition Series:** Decomposing groups into simple subgroups.

### Examples:

1. **Dihedral Group:**  $D_4 = \mathbb{Z}_2 \times \mathbb{Z}_2 \rtimes \mathbb{Z}_2$ .
2. **Symmetric Group:**  $S_4 = \mathbb{Z}_2 \times \mathbb{Z}_2 \rtimes S_3$ .
3. **Alternating Group:**  $A_5 = \mathbb{Z}_2 \times \mathbb{Z}_2 \rtimes A_4$ .

### Importance:

1. **Group Classification:** Decompositions help classify groups up to isomorphism.
2. **Group Structure:** Decompositions reveal internal structure of groups.
3. **Applications:** Decompositions are crucial in physics, chemistry, and computer science.

### Consequences:

1. **Order:** Decompositions relate group order to subgroup orders.
2. **Subgroup Structure:** Decompositions reveal subgroup lattice structure.
3. **Homomorphism Properties:** Decompositions influence homomorphism properties.

Applications of Subgroups! Subgroups play a crucial role in various areas of mathematics and science.

### Mathematical Applications:

1. **Group Theory:** Subgroups help classify groups, study group structure, and construct new groups.
2. **Ring Theory:** Subgroups of the multiplicative group of a ring aid in studying ring structure.
3. **Number Theory:** Subgroups of  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$  help solve Diophantine equations and study primality.
4. **Topology:** Subgroups of the fundamental group aid in studying topological spaces.

### **Physical Applications:**

1. **Particle Physics:** Subgroups of  $SU(3) \times SU(2) \times U(1)$  describe particle interactions.
2. **Crystallography:** Subgroups of space groups classify crystal symmetries.
3. **Quantum Mechanics:** Subgroups of unitary groups describe quantum symmetries.

### **Computational Applications:**

1. **Cryptography:** Subgroups of finite fields and elliptic curves ensure secure data transmission.
2. **Coding Theory:** Subgroups of finite fields construct error-correcting codes.
3. **Computer Graphics:** Subgroups of transformation groups aid in 3D modeling.

### **Chemical Applications:**

1. **Molecular Symmetry:** Subgroups of point groups classify molecular symmetries.
2. **Chemical Reactions:** Subgroups of permutation groups aid in studying reaction mechanisms.

### **Other Applications:**

1. **Coding Theory:** Subgroups of finite fields construct error-correcting codes.
2. **Combinatorics:** Subgroups of permutation groups aid in counting and arranging objects.
3. **Network Analysis:** Subgroups of graph automorphism groups study network symmetries.

### **Real-World Examples:**

1. **GPS Navigation:** Subgroups of  $SO(3)$  aid in 3D orientation and positioning.
2. **Medical Imaging:** Subgroups of  $SE(3)$  aid in image registration and reconstruction.
3. **Computer Vision:** Subgroups of projective transformations aid in image processing.

Would you like me to elaborate on:

1. Subgroups in particle physics
2. Subgroups in cryptography
3. Subgroups in computer graphics
4. Subgroups in molecular symmetry  
or something else?

## Chapter-II

### RING THEORY

**Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

Ring Theory! Algebraic structures with two binary operations.

#### Ring Theory Fundamentals:

1. **Definition:** A ring is a set  $R$  with two binary operations  $(+, \times)$  satisfying:
  - Associativity
  - Distributivity
  - Additive identity ( $0$ )
  - Additive inverse ( $-a$ )
2. **Types of Rings:**
  - Commutative rings
  - Non-commutative rings
  - Associative rings
  - Non-associative rings

#### Key Concepts:

1. **Ideals:** Subsets of  $R$  satisfying:
  - Additive closure
  - Multiplicative absorption
2. **Quotient Rings:** Constructed from ideals
3. **Homomorphisms:** Ring-preserving maps
4. **Isomorphisms:** Bijective homomorphisms

#### Important Results:

1. **Fundamental Theorem of Ring Homomorphisms**
2. **Chinese Remainder Theorem**

3. **Wedderburn-Artin Theorem**
4. **Nakayama's Lemma**

#### **Theorems and Conjectures:**

1. **Fermat's Last Theorem** (proven by Andrew Wiles)
2. **Riemann Hypothesis** (unsolved)
3. **Birch and Swinnerton-Dyer Conjecture** (unsolved)

#### **Researchers and Textbooks:**

1. **Emmy Noether**: Developed modern algebra, including ring theory
2. **Michael Atiyah**: Contributed to algebraic geometry and ring theory
3. **"Abstract Algebra" by David Dummit and Richard Foote**
4. **"Algebra" by Michael Artin**

#### **Ideals and Quotient Rings! Key concepts in ring theory.**

##### **Ideals:**

1. **Definition:** A subset  $I$  of a ring  $R$  is an ideal if:
  - $I$  is additively closed ( $a, b \in I \Rightarrow a + b \in I$ )
  - $I$  absorbs multiplication by  $R$  ( $a \in I, r \in R \Rightarrow ar, ra \in I$ )
2. **Types of Ideals:**
  - Left ideal
  - Right ideal
  - Two-sided ideal
  - Principal ideal (generated by one element)
  - Prime ideal
  - Maximal ideal

##### **Quotient Rings:**

1. **Definition:** Given a ring  $R$  and an ideal  $I$ , the quotient ring  $R/I$  is:
  - The set of cosets  $a + I$  ( $a \in R$ )
  - With operations  $(a + I) + (b + I) = (a + b) + I$
  - $(a + I)(b + I) = ab + I$



## 2. Properties:

- Well-defined operations
- Ring structure
- Homomorphic image of R

## Relationships:

1. **Ideal-Quotient Ring Correspondence:** 1-to-1 correspondence between:
  - Ideals of R
  - Quotient rings of R
2. **Kernel-Image Correspondence:** For a ring homomorphism  $f: R \rightarrow S$ :
  - $\text{Ker}(f)$  is an ideal of R
  - $\text{Im}(f)$  is isomorphic to  $R/\text{Ker}(f)$

## Examples:

1. **Integers modulo n:**  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z} = \mathbb{Z}/I$  ( $I = n\mathbb{Z}$ )
2. **Polynomial rings:**  $F[x]/(x^2 + 1) = F[i]$  (field extension)
3. **Matrix rings:**  $M_2(\mathbb{Z})/I = M_2(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z})$  (quotient ring of 2x2 matrices)

## Applications:

1. **Cryptography:** RSA, ECC, cryptographic hash functions
2. **Algebraic Geometry:** Coordinate rings, polynomial rings
3. **Number Theory:** Modular arithmetic, finite fields

## Theorems:

1. **Fundamental Theorem of Ring Homomorphisms**
2. **First Isomorphism Theorem**
3. **Chinese Remainder Theorem**

Would you like me to elaborate on:

1. Types of ideals
2. Quotient ring constructions
3. Ideal-quotient ring correspondence
4. Cryptographic

or something else?

applications

Ring homomorphisms and isomorphisms

Ring Homomorphisms and Isomorphisms! Preserving ring structure.

### Ring Homomorphisms:

1. **Definition:** A function  $f: R \rightarrow S$  between rings is a homomorphism if:
  - $f(a + b) = f(a) + f(b)$
  - $f(ab) = f(a)f(b)$
  - $f(1) = 1$  (if  $R, S$  have unity)
2. **Properties:**
  - Preserves additive and multiplicative structure
  - Maps ideals to ideals
  - Maps units to units

### Ring Isomorphisms:

1. **Definition:** A bijective homomorphism  $f: R \rightarrow S$  is an isomorphism.
2. **Properties:**
  - Establishes ring structure equivalence
  - Preserves all algebraic properties

### Types of Homomorphisms:

1. **Injective Homomorphism:** One-to-one homomorphism.
2. **Surjective Homomorphism:** Onto homomorphism.
3. **Endomorphism:** Homomorphism from  $R$  to itself.

### Examples:

1. **Integer multiplication by  $n$ :**  $\mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$  ( $f(x) = nx$ )
2. **Complex conjugation:**  $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  ( $f(a + bi) = a - bi$ )
3. **Polynomial ring homomorphism:**  $F[x] \rightarrow F[y]$  ( $f(x) = y$ )

### Theorems:

1. **Fundamental Theorem of Ring Homomorphisms**
2. **First Isomorphism Theorem**
3. **Second Isomorphism Theorem**
4. **Third Isomorphism Theorem**

### **Applications:**

1. **Cryptography:** RSA, ECC, cryptographic hash functions
2. **Algebraic Geometry:** Coordinate rings, polynomial rings
3. **Number Theory:** Modular arithmetic, finite fields

### **Research Directions:**

1. **Homomorphism theory:** Studying properties and behavior
2. **Isomorphism classification:** Classifying rings up to isomorphism
3. **Ring decomposition:** Decomposing rings into simpler components

Applications in Cryptography! Secure data transmission.

### **Cryptography Fundamentals:**

1. **Confidentiality:** Protecting data secrecy
2. **Integrity:** Ensuring data authenticity
3. **Authentication:** Verifying identity

### **Cryptographic Techniques:**

1. **Symmetric-Key Cryptography:** Shared secret key (AES, DES)
2. **Asymmetric-Key Cryptography:** Public-private key pair (RSA, ECC)
3. **Hash Functions:** One-way data compression (SHA, MD5)

### **Ring Theory in Cryptography:**

1. **Modular Arithmetic:** Rings  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ ,  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$
2. **Polynomial Rings:**  $F[x]$ ,  $F[x]/(x^2 + 1)$
3. **Finite Fields:**  $F_p$ ,  $F_{2^m}$

### **Cryptographic Protocols:**

1. **RSA Encryption:** Secure data transmission
2. **Elliptic Curve Cryptography (ECC):** Key exchange, digital signatures
3. **Digital Signatures:** ECDSA, RSA signatures
4. **Secure Sockets Layer/Transport Layer Security (SSL/TLS):** Web encryption

### **Applications:**

1. **Secure Communication:** Online banking, email

2. **Data Protection:** Encryption, access control
3. **Digital Rights Management:** Content protection
4. **Blockchain:** Cryptographic ledger technology

#### **Attacks and Countermeasures:**

1. **Brute-Force Attacks:** Exhaustive search
2. **Side-Channel Attacks:** Exploiting implementation weaknesses
3. **Quantum Computer Attacks:** Post-quantum cryptography

#### **Research Directions:**

1. **Post-Quantum Cryptography:** Quantum-resistant algorithms
2. **Homomorphic Encryption:** Computing on encrypted data
3. **Zero-Knowledge Proofs:** Verifying without revealing

#### **Key Papers and Researchers:**

1. **Diffie-Hellman Key Exchange:** 1976 paper
2. **Ron Rivest:** RSA encryption, digital signatures
3. **Adi Shamir:** Cryptographic protocols, including RSA

Would you like me to elaborate on:

1. RSA encryption
2. ECC key exchange
3. Digital signatures
4. Post-quantum  
or something else?

cryptography

Fermat's Last Theorem

Fermat's Last Theorem! Famous problem in number theory.

#### **Statement:**

No integers a, b, and c satisfy:

$$a^n + b^n = c^n$$

for  $n > 2$ .

#### **History:**

1. **Pierre de Fermat** (1637): Claimed proof, but no record.

2. **Leonhard Euler** (1753): Proved for  $n = 3$ .
3. **Sophie Germain** (1823): Proved for odd primes  $p \leq 100$ .
4. **Andrew Wiles** (1994): Proved for all  $n$ .

### **Proof:**

Wiles's proof uses:

1. **Modular Forms:** Functions on complex plane.
2. **Elliptic Curves:** Geometric objects.
3. **Galois Representations:** Linear transformations.

### **Key Ideas:**

1. **Taniyama-Shimura Conjecture:** Connecting elliptic curves and modular forms.
2. **Ribet's Theorem:** Linking Fermat's Last Theorem to Taniyama-Shimura.

### **Impact:**

1. **Number Theory:** Advanced understanding of prime numbers.
2. **Algebraic Geometry:** Developed new tools.
3. **Cryptography:** Inspired cryptographic protocols.

### **Awards and Recognition:**

1. **Fields Medal** (1998): Andrew Wiles.
2. **Wolf Prize** (1995): Andrew Wiles.
3. **National Medal of Science** (1999): Andrew Wiles.

### **Popularizations:**

1. **"Fermat's Last Theorem" by Simon Singh** (book)
2. **"The Proof" by Catherine Goldberg** (documentary)
3. **"Fermat's Last Theorem" by NOVA** (TV episode)

Would you like me to elaborate on:

1. Wiles's proof
2. Taniyama-Shimura Conjecture
3. Cryptographic applications

## Chapter-III

### FIELDS

**Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

In algebra, a field is a fundamental concept that plays a crucial role in various mathematical structures. Here's a brief overview:

#### **Definition:**

A field is a set  $F$  together with two binary operations, addition (+) and multiplication ( $\times$ ), that satisfy certain properties. The elements of  $F$  are called numbers.

#### **Properties of a Field:**

For all elements  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  in  $F$ , the following properties hold:

#### **Addition:**

1. Closure:  $a + b \in F$
2. Associativity:  $(a + b) + c = a + (b + c)$
3. Commutativity:  $a + b = b + a$
4. Existence of additive identity (0):  $a + 0 = a$
5. Existence of additive inverse (-a):  $a + (-a) = 0$

#### **Multiplication:**

1. Closure:  $a \times b \in F$
2. Associativity:  $(a \times b) \times c = a \times (b \times c)$
3. Commutativity:  $a \times b = b \times a$
4. Existence of multiplicative identity (1):  $a \times 1 = a$
5. Existence of multiplicative inverse ( $a^{-1}$ ):  $a \times a^{-1} = 1$  (for non-zero  $a$ )

#### **Distributivity:**

1.  $a \times (b + c) = a \times b + a \times c$

**Examples of Fields:**

1. Rational numbers ( $\mathbb{Q}$ )
2. Real numbers ( $\mathbb{R}$ )
3. Complex numbers ( $\mathbb{C}$ )
4. Finite fields (e.g.,  $\mathbb{Z}_p$ , where  $p$  is a prime number)

**Importance of Fields:**

Fields provide a foundation for various algebraic structures, such as:

1. Vector spaces
2. Groups
3. Rings
4. Polynomial rings
5. Galois theory

Fields also have numerous applications in:

1. Number theory
2. Algebraic geometry
3. Coding theory
4. Cryptography

**Key Concepts Related to Fields:**

1. Subfield: A subset of a field that is itself a field.
2. Field extension: A larger field containing a given field.
3. Field automorphism: A bijective homomorphism from a field to itself.

Do you have specific questions about fields or would you like me to elaborate on any of these concepts?

**Subfield**

Subfields are an essential concept in abstract algebra, and they play a crucial role in understanding the structure of fields.

**Definition:**

Given a field  $F$ , a subfield  $E$  of  $F$  is a subset of  $F$  that is itself a field under the same operations of addition and multiplication as  $F$ .

### Properties of a Subfield:

For  $E$  to be a subfield of  $F$ , it must satisfy:

1.  $E \subseteq F$  ( $E$  is a subset of  $F$ )
2.  $E$  is closed under addition and multiplication (i.e., for all  $a, b \in E$ ,  $a + b \in E$  and  $a \times b \in E$ )
3. The additive and multiplicative identities ( $0$  and  $1$ ) of  $F$  are in  $E$
4. The additive and multiplicative inverses of elements in  $E$  are in  $E$
5. The operations of addition and multiplication on  $E$  are the same as those on  $F$

### Examples of Subfields:

1.  $\mathbb{Q}$  (rational numbers) is a subfield of  $\mathbb{R}$  (real numbers)
2.  $\mathbb{R}$  is a subfield of  $\mathbb{C}$  (complex numbers)
3.  $\mathbb{Z}_p$  (integers modulo  $p$ ) is a subfield of  $\mathbb{Z}_q$  (integers modulo  $q$ ), where  $p$  divides  $q$
4. The set  $\{0, 1\}$  is a subfield of  $\mathbb{Z}_2$  (integers modulo 2)

### Key Concepts Related to Subfields:

1. **Subfield test:** A subset  $E$  of  $F$  is a subfield if and only if:
  - $E$  is nonempty
  - $E$  is closed under addition and multiplication
  - The additive and multiplicative identities are in  $E$
  - The additive and multiplicative inverses are in  $E$
2. **Subfield generated by a set:** The smallest subfield containing a given subset  $S$  of  $F$ .
3. **Field extension:** A field  $E$  is an extension of  $F$  if  $F$  is a subfield of  $E$ .
4. **Degree of a field extension:** The dimension of  $E$  as a vector space over  $F$ .

### Theorems and Results:

1. **Subfield theorem:** If  $E$  is a subfield of  $F$  and  $a \in E$ , then the additive and multiplicative inverses of  $a$  are in  $E$ .



2. **Field extension theorem:** If  $E$  is an extension of  $F$ , then  $E$  is a vector space over  $F$ .

**Applications:**

1. **Galois theory:** Subfields play a crucial role in studying symmetries of field extensions.
2. **Algebraic geometry:** Subfields help in understanding the geometry of algebraic varieties.
3. **Number theory:** Subfields are used in studying properties of numbers, such as primality and divisibility.

Would you like me to elaborate on any of these concepts or provide examples and exercises?

Field extension:

Field extensions are a fundamental concept in abstract algebra, and they play a crucial role in various areas of mathematics.

**Definition:**

Given two fields  $E$  and  $F$ ,  $E$  is a field extension of  $F$  (denoted as  $E/F$ ) if:

1.  $F \subseteq E$  ( $F$  is a subfield of  $E$ )
2. The operations of addition and multiplication on  $F$  are the same as those on  $E$

**Types of Field Extensions:**

1. **Finite extension:**  $E/F$  is finite if  $E$  is a finite-dimensional vector space over  $F$ .
2. **Infinite extension:**  $E/F$  is infinite if  $E$  is an infinite-dimensional vector space over  $F$ .
3. **Simple extension:**  $E/F$  is simple if  $E = F(a)$  for some  $a \in E$  (i.e.,  $E$  is generated by a single element).
4. **Normal extension:**  $E/F$  is normal if every irreducible polynomial in  $F[x]$  that has a root in  $E$  splits completely in  $E$ .
5. **Separable extension:**  $E/F$  is separable if every element of  $E$  is separable over  $F$  (i.e., has distinct roots).

**Key Concepts:**

1. **Degree of extension** ( $\deg(E/F)$ ): The dimension of  $E$  as a vector space over  $F$ .
2. **Minimal polynomial**: The monic polynomial of smallest degree in  $F[x]$  that has a given element of  $E$  as a root.
3. **Conjugate**: Two elements  $a, b \in E$  are conjugate over  $F$  if they have the same minimal polynomial.
4. **Field generated by a set**: The smallest field containing a given subset  $S$  of  $E$ .

### Theorems and Results:

1. **Tower Law**: If  $E/F$  and  $F/K$  are field extensions, then  $\deg(E/K) = \deg(E/F) * \deg(F/K)$ .
2. **Primitive Element Theorem**: Every finite separable extension  $E/F$  has a primitive element (i.e.,  $E = F(a)$  for some  $a \in E$ ).
3. **Normal Closure Theorem**: Every finite extension  $E/F$  has a normal closure (i.e., a normal extension containing  $E$ ).

### Applications:

1. **Galois theory**: Field extensions help study symmetries of equations.
2. **Algebraic geometry**: Field extensions are used to study geometric properties of algebraic varieties.
3. **Number theory**: Field extensions are applied to study properties of numbers, such as primality and divisibility.
4. **Cryptography**: Field extensions are used in cryptographic protocols, such as elliptic curve cryptography.

### Examples:

1.  $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2})/\mathbb{Q}$  (finite, simple, separable)
2.  $\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Q}$  (infinite, not simple)
3.  $\mathbb{C}/\mathbb{R}$  (finite, normal, separable)
4.  $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt[3]{2})/\mathbb{Q}$  (finite, not normal)

Field automorphisms are bijective homomorphisms from a field to itself, preserving its algebraic structure.

### Definition:

Let  $F$  be a field. A field automorphism of  $F$  is a bijective map  $\sigma: F \rightarrow F$  such that:

1.  $\sigma(a + b) = \sigma(a) + \sigma(b)$  for all  $a, b \in F$  (additive homomorphism)
2.  $\sigma(ab) = \sigma(a)\sigma(b)$  for all  $a, b \in F$  (multiplicative homomorphism)
3.  $\sigma(0) = 0$  and  $\sigma(1) = 1$  (preserves identities)

### Properties:

1. Bijective:  $\sigma$  is both injective and surjective.
2. Homomorphism:  $\sigma$  preserves operations.
3. Identity:  $\sigma(0) = 0$  and  $\sigma(1) = 1$ .

### Types of Field Automorphisms:

1. **Inner automorphism:**  $\sigma(a) = bab^{-1}$  for some  $b \in F$ .
2. **Outer automorphism:** Not an inner automorphism.
3. **Frobenius automorphism:**  $\sigma(a) = a^p$  for a prime  $p$  (in finite fields).

### Key Concepts:

1. **Automorphism group:** The set of all field automorphisms of  $F$ , denoted  $\text{Aut}(F)$ .
2. **Fixed field:** The set of elements fixed by  $\sigma$ ,  $\{a \in F \mid \sigma(a) = a\}$ .
3. **Galois group:**  $\text{Aut}(F)$  when  $F$  is a finite extension of a subfield.

### Theorems and Results:

1. **Automorphism theorem:** Every automorphism of  $F$  is determined by its action on a generating set.
2. **Galois' theorem:**  $|\text{Aut}(F)| = \text{deg}(F/K)$  for finite extensions  $F/K$ .
3. **Fundamental theorem of Galois theory:** Establishes a correspondence between subfields and subgroups of  $\text{Aut}(F)$ .

### Applications:

1. **Galois theory:** Studies symmetries of equations.
2. **Algebraic geometry:** Investigates geometric properties of algebraic varieties.
3. **Number theory:** Examines properties of numbers, such as primality and divisibility.
4. **Cryptography:** Employs field automorphisms in cryptographic protocols.

### Examples:

1. Complex conjugation:  $\sigma(a + bi) = a - bi$  ( $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ )
2. Frobenius automorphism:  $\sigma(a) = a^2$  ( $\mathbb{Z}_3 \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_3$ )
3. Inner automorphism:  $\sigma(a) = bab^{-1}$  ( $F \rightarrow F, b \in F$ )

### Field Concepts in Galois Theory:

1. **Field Extensions:** Study of fields containing roots of polynomials.
2. **Splitting Fields:** Fields containing all roots of a polynomial.
3. **Algebraic Closures:** Fields containing all algebraic elements.
4. **Finite Fields:** Fields with finite number of elements.
5. **Local Fields:** Fields with valuation or absolute value.

### Galois Theory Theorems Using Fields:

1. **Fundamental Theorem of Galois Theory:** Relates field extensions to Galois groups.
2. **Galois' Theorem:** Establishes solvability of polynomial equations using field extensions.
3. **Hilbert's Irreducibility Theorem:** Ensures irreducibility of polynomials over fields.
4. **Krull's Theorem:** Describes structure of algebraic extensions of fields.
5. **Artin's Lemma:** Facilitates computation of Galois groups using field extensions.

### Applications of Fields in Galois Theory:

1. **Solution of Polynomial Equations:** Fields facilitate solution of polynomial equations.
2. **Construction of Galois Groups:** Fields enable construction of Galois groups.
3. **Study of Field Extensions:** Fields examine properties of field extensions.
4. **Investigation of Solvability:** Fields investigate solvability of polynomial equations.
5. **Description of Algebraic Cycles:** Fields describe algebraic cycles.

### **Important Fields in Galois Theory:**

1. **Rational Numbers:**  $\mathbb{Q}$
2. **Complex Numbers:**  $\mathbb{C}$
3. **Finite Fields:**  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  ( $p$  is prime)
4. **Local Fields:**  $\mathbb{Q}_p$  ( $p$  is prime)
5. **Cyclotomic Fields:**  $\mathbb{Q}(\zeta_n)$  ( $\zeta_n$  is primitive  $n$ -th root of unity)

### **Key Researchers:**

1. **Évariste Galois:** Founded Galois theory.
2. **David Hilbert:** Contributed to irreducibility theorem.
3. **Emmy Noether:** Developed abstract algebra.
4. **Richard Dedekind:** Introduced Dedekind domains.
5. **John Artin:** Proved Artin's lemma.

### **Real-World Implications:**

1. **Cryptography:** Galois theory secures cryptographic protocols.
2. **Coding Theory:** Galois theory constructs error-correcting codes.
3. **Computer Networks:** Galois theory optimizes network communication.
4. **Number Theory:** Galois theory investigates properties of numbers.
5. **Algebraic Geometry:** Galois theory studies geometric properties.

## **FIELD APPLICATIONS IN ALGEBRAIC GEOMETRY**

Algebraic geometry is a fascinating field that heavily relies on fields and their properties.

Here are some significant applications of fields in algebraic geometry:

### **Field Concepts in Algebraic Geometry:**

1. **Function Fields:** Study of fields of rational functions on varieties.
2. **Algebraic Closures:** Fields containing all algebraic elements.
3. **Finite Fields:** Fields with finite number of elements.
4. **Local Fields:** Fields with valuation or absolute value.
5. **Global Fields:** Fields of algebraic functions on curves.

### **Algebraic Geometry Theorems Using Fields:**

1. **Riemann-Roch Theorem:** Relates dimensions of linear systems on curves.
2. **Hilbert's Nullstellensatz:** Establishes correspondence between ideals and algebraic sets.
3. **Zariski's Main Theorem:** Describes structure of algebraic varieties.
4. **Weil's Conjectures:** Relate algebraic cycles to etale cohomology.
5. **Grothendieck's Cohomology Theorem:** Establishes relationship between cohomology groups.

### **Applications of Fields in Algebraic Geometry:**

1. **Variety Classification:** Fields facilitate classification of algebraic varieties.
2. **Curve Theory:** Fields study properties of algebraic curves.
3. **Surface Theory:** Fields investigate properties of algebraic surfaces.
4. **Moduli Spaces:** Fields parameterize families of algebraic varieties.
5. **Arithmetic Geometry:** Fields study arithmetic properties of algebraic varieties.

### **Important Fields in Algebraic Geometry:**

1. **Rational Function Field:**  $k(x)$
2. **Algebraic Function Field:**  $k(x,y,\dots)$
3. **Finite Field:**  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  ( $p$  is prime)
4. **Local Field:**  $\mathbb{Q}_p$  ( $p$  is prime)
5. **Global Field:**  $k(C)$  ( $C$  is a curve)

### **Key Researchers:**

1. **David Hilbert:** Contributed to Hilbert's Nullstellensatz.
2. **Oscar Zariski:** Developed algebraic geometry.
3. **André Weil:** Founded arithmetic geometry.
4. **Alexander Grothendieck:** Revolutionized algebraic geometry.
5. **Mumford:** Contributed to geometric invariant theory.

### **Real-World Implications:**

1. **Computer Vision:** Algebraic geometry aids in image processing.
2. **Cryptography:** Algebraic geometry secures cryptographic protocols.
3. **Coding Theory:** Algebraic geometry constructs error-correcting codes.

4. **Robotics:** Algebraic geometry facilitates motion planning.
5. **Physics:** Algebraic geometry appears in string theory and quantum field theory.

## FIELD APPLICATIONS IN NUMBER THEORY

Number theory is a fascinating field that heavily relies on fields and their properties. Here are some significant applications of fields in number theory:

### Field Concepts in Number Theory:

1. **Finite Fields:** Fields with finite number of elements.
2. **Local Fields:** Fields with valuation or absolute value.
3. **Global Fields:** Fields of algebraic functions on curves.
4. **p-adic Fields:** Fields of p-adic numbers.
5. **Cyclotomic Fields:** Fields containing roots of unity.

### Number Theory Theorems Using Fields:

1. **Fermat's Little Theorem:** Uses finite fields to study primality.
2. **Quadratic Reciprocity:** Relates Legendre symbols using local fields.
3. **Dirichlet's Unit Theorem:** Describes units in number fields.
4. **Minkowski's Bound:** Estimates class numbers using geometry of numbers.
5. **Wiles' Proof of Fermat's Last Theorem:** Employs modular forms and elliptic curves.

### Applications of Fields in Number Theory:

1. **Primality Testing:** Finite fields facilitate primality testing.
2. **Cryptography:** Number theory and fields secure online transactions.
3. **Coding Theory:** Finite fields construct error-correcting codes.
4. **Diophantine Equations:** Fields study solutions of polynomial equations.
5. **Algebraic Number Theory:** Fields investigate properties of algebraic numbers.

### Important Fields in Number Theory:

1. **Rational Numbers:**  $\mathbb{Q}$
2. **Finite Field:**  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  (p is prime)

3. **Local Field:**  $\mathbb{Q}_p$  ( $p$  is prime)
4. **Cyclotomic Field:**  $\mathbb{Q}(\zeta_n)$  ( $\zeta_n$  is primitive  $n$ -th root of unity)
5.  **$p$ -adic Field:**  $\mathbb{Q}_p$

#### **Key Researchers:**

1. **Pierre de Fermat:** Contributed to number theory.
2. **Carl Friedrich Gauss:** Developed modular arithmetic.
3. **David Hilbert:** Contributed to number theory.
4. **Andrew Wiles:** Proved Fermat's Last Theorem.
5. **Richard Taylor:** Contributed to proof of Fermat's Last Theorem.

#### **Real-World Implications:**

1. **Secure Online Transactions:** Number theory and fields secure online transactions.
2. **Cryptography:** Number theory and fields secure data transmission.
3. **Error-Correcting Codes:** Finite fields construct error-correcting codes.
4. **Computer Networks:** Number theory optimizes network communication.
5. **Random Number Generation:** Number theory ensures secure random numbers.

#### **FIELD APPLICATIONS IN CRYPTOGRAPHY**

Cryptography relies heavily on fields and their properties to ensure secure data transmission. Here are some significant applications of fields in cryptography:

#### **Field Concepts in Cryptography:**

1. **Finite Fields:** Used in block ciphers, stream ciphers, and hash functions.
2. **Local Fields:** Employed in public-key cryptography.
3. **Global Fields:** Used in cryptographic protocols.
4.  **$p$ -adic Fields:** Applied in cryptographic algorithms.
5. **Cyclotomic Fields:** Used in cryptographic protocols.

#### **Cryptographic Algorithms Using Fields:**

1. **AES:** Uses finite fields for encryption.



2. **RSA**: Employs local fields for public-key cryptography.
3. **Elliptic Curve Cryptography (ECC)**: Uses global fields.
4. **Diffie-Hellman Key Exchange**: Uses finite fields.
5. **Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)/Transport Layer Security (TLS)**: Employs public-key cryptography.

### **Applications of Fields in Cryptography:**

1. **Secure Data Transmission**: Fields ensure secure data transmission.
2. **Digital Signatures**: Fields authenticate digital messages.
3. **Key Exchange**: Fields facilitate secure key exchange.
4. **Hash Functions**: Fields construct secure hash functions.
5. **Cryptographic Protocols**: Fields enable secure cryptographic protocols.

### **Important Fields in Cryptography:**

1.  **$GF(2^8)$** : Used in AES.
2.  **$GF(p)$** : Used in RSA ( $p$  is prime).
3.  **$GF(2^{255})$** : Used in ECC.
4.  **$\mathbb{Q}_p$** : Used in cryptographic protocols ( $p$  is prime).
5. **Cyclotomic Field**: Used in cryptographic protocols.

### **Key Researchers:**

1. **Claude Shannon**: Founded modern cryptography.
2. **Ron Rivest**: Developed RSA algorithm.
3. **Adi Shamir**: Contributed to RSA and cryptographic protocols.
4. **Neal Koblitz**: Introduced elliptic curve cryptography.
5. **Bruce Schneier**: Renowned cryptography expert.

### **Real-World Implications:**

1. **Secure Online Transactions**: Cryptography ensures secure online transactions.
2. **Secure Communication**: Cryptography protects sensitive information.
3. **Data Protection**: Cryptography safeguards sensitive data.
4. **Digital Rights Management**: Cryptography protects intellectual property.
5. **National Security**: Cryptography secures classified information.

## Chapter-IV

### GALOIS THEORY

**Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

Branch of abstract algebra studying symmetries of algebraic equations.

#### Key Concepts:

1. **Groups:** Set with binary operation satisfying closure, associativity, identity, and inverse.
2. **Fields:** Set with addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division satisfying certain properties.
3. **Field extensions:** Larger field containing smaller field.
4. **Automorphisms:** Bijective homomorphisms from field to itself.

#### Galois Correspondence:

1. **Galois group:** Group of automorphisms of field extension.
2. **Fixed field:** Subfield fixed by Galois group.
3. **Normal subgroup:** Subgroup invariant under conjugation.

#### Fundamental Theorem:

1. **One-to-one correspondence:** Between subfields and subgroups.
2. **Field extension is normal:** If and only if Galois group is normal subgroup.

#### Applications:

1. **Solving polynomial equations:** Using symmetry to determine solvability.
2. **Cryptography:** Secure data transmission using finite fields.
3. **Computer science:** Error-correcting codes, algorithms.

### Important Theorems:

1. **Galois' Theorem:** Field extension is solvable if and only if Galois group is solvable.
2. **Fundamental Theorem of Galois Theory:** Establishes one-to-one correspondence.

### Key Figures:

1. **Évariste Galois:** Developed theory.
2. **Joseph Liouville:** Popularized Galois' work.
3. **Richard Dedekind:** Contributed to field theory.

### Solved Problems:

#### Problem 1

Find Galois group of quadratic equation  $x^2 + 1 = 0$ .

#### Solution

- Galois group is cyclic group of order 2.

#### Problem 2

Determine solvability of cubic equation  $x^3 - 2 = 0$ .

#### Solution

- Galois group is symmetric group  $S_3$ , not solvable.

Galois Theorem

#### Statement:

A polynomial equation  $f(x) = 0$  is solvable by radicals if and only if its Galois group  $G$  is solvable.

#### Definition:

1. **Solvable by radicals:** Solution can be expressed using roots, +, -,  $\times$ , /.
2. **Galois group  $G$ :** Group of automorphisms of field extension.

#### Equivalence Conditions:

1.  **$G$  is solvable:**  $G$  has a subnormal series with abelian factors.
2. **Field extension is normal:** Field extension is Galois extension.

#### Implications:

1. **Solvability:** Polynomial equations of degree  $\leq 4$  are solvable.
2. **Insolvability:** General polynomial equations of degree  $\geq 5$  are not solvable.

\*\*Proof:)

1. **Necessity:** Solvable  $\Rightarrow$  G solvable.
2. **Sufficiency:** G solvable  $\Rightarrow$  Solvable.

**Consequences:**

1. **Abel-Ruffini Theorem:** General polynomial equations of degree  $\geq 5$  are not solvable.
2. **Galois' Criterion:** Polynomial equation is solvable if and only if its Galois group is solvable.

**Examples:**

1. **Quadratic equation:**  $x^2 + 1 = 0$  (solvable).
2. **Cubic equation:**  $x^3 - 2 = 0$  (solvable).
3. **Quintic equation:**  $x^5 - x + 1 = 0$  (not solvable).

## Chapter-V

### LINEAR TRANSFORMATION

**Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

**Definition:** A function  $T: V \rightarrow W$  between vector spaces  $V$  and  $W$ , preserving vector operations.

#### Properties:

1. **Linearity:**  $T(av + bw) = aT(v) + bT(w)$
2. **Additivity:**  $T(v + w) = T(v) + T(w)$
3. **Homogeneity:**  $T(cv) = cT(v)$

#### Types:

1. **Isomorphism:** Bijective linear transformation.
2. **Endomorphism:** Linear transformation from  $V$  to itself.
3. **Automorphism:** Bijective endomorphism.

#### Matrix Representation:

1. **Transformation matrix:**  $A = [T(\mathbf{e}_1), \dots, T(\mathbf{e}_n)]$
2. **Standard matrix:**  $A = [\mathbf{a}_1, \dots, \mathbf{a}_n]$

#### Operations:

1. **Composition:**  $(T \circ S)(v) = T(S(v))$
2. **Inverse:**  $T^{-1} \circ T = I$

#### Theorems:

1. **Dimension theorem:**  $\dim(V) = \dim(\ker(T)) + \dim(\text{im}(T))$
2. **Rank-nullity theorem:**  $\text{rank}(T) + \text{nullity}(T) = \dim(V)$

### Applications:

1. **Linear algebra:** Solving systems of equations.
2. **Calculus:** Finding derivatives.
3. **Computer graphics:** Transforming objects.

### Examples:

1. **Projection:**  $T(\mathbf{v}) = (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u})\mathbf{u}$
2. **Rotation:**  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{v} \cos(\theta) + (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u}) \sin(\theta)$
3. **Scaling:**  $T(\mathbf{v}) = c\mathbf{v}$

### Solved Problems:

#### Problem 1

Find the transformation matrix of  $T(\mathbf{v}) = 2\mathbf{v}$ .

#### Solution

- $A = [2 \ 0; 0 \ 2]$

#### Problem 2

Prove  $T(\mathbf{v}) = (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u})\mathbf{u}$  is a linear transformation.

#### Solution

- $T(a\mathbf{v} + b\mathbf{w}) = aT(\mathbf{v}) + bT(\mathbf{w})$

### Isomorphism:

**Definition:** A bijective linear transformation between vector spaces.

#### Properties:

1. **One-to-one:**  $T(\mathbf{v}) = T(\mathbf{w}) \Rightarrow \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{w}$
2. **Onto:** For every  $\mathbf{w}$  in  $W$ , there exists  $\mathbf{v}$  in  $V$  such that  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{w}$
3. **Linear:**  $T(a\mathbf{v} + b\mathbf{w}) = aT(\mathbf{v}) + bT(\mathbf{w})$

#### Types:

1. **Vector space isomorphism:** Preserves vector space operations.
2. **Algebraic isomorphism:** Preserves algebraic structures.

#### Characteristics:

1. **Dimension preservation:**  $\dim(V) = \dim(W)$

2. **Basis preservation:**  $T$  maps basis of  $V$  to basis of  $W$

### Theorems:

1. **Isomorphism theorem:**  $V \cong W$  if and only if  $\dim(V) = \dim(W)$
2. **Rank-nullity theorem:**  $\text{rank}(T) + \text{nullity}(T) = \dim(V)$

### Examples:

1. **Identity transformation:**  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{v}$
2. **Coordinate transformation:**  $T(\mathbf{v}) = (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{e}_n)$

### Applications:

1. **Linear algebra:** Solving systems of equations.
2. **Calculus:** Finding derivatives.
3. **Computer graphics:** Transforming objects.

### Solved Problems:

#### Problem 1

Prove  $T(\mathbf{v}) = 2\mathbf{v}$  is an isomorphism.

#### Solution

- $T$  is one-to-one and onto.
- $T$  preserves dimension.

#### Problem 2

Find an isomorphism between  $\mathbb{R}^2$  and  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .

#### Solution

- $T(\mathbf{v}) = (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{e}_2)$

### Endomorphism:

**Definition:** A linear transformation from a vector space to itself.

### Properties:

1. **Linearity:**  $T(a\mathbf{v} + b\mathbf{w}) = aT(\mathbf{v}) + bT(\mathbf{w})$
2. **Self-transformation:**  $T: V \rightarrow V$

### Types:

1. **Automorphism:** Bijective endomorphism.
2. **Nilpotent endomorphism:**  $T^n = 0$  for some  $n$ .

3. **Idempotent endomorphism:**  $T^2 = T$ .

### Characteristics:

1. **Invariant subspace:** Subspace preserved under  $T$ .
2. **Eigenvalues:** Scalars  $\lambda$  such that  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \lambda\mathbf{v}$ .
3. **Eigenvectors:** Non-zero vectors  $\mathbf{v}$  satisfying  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \lambda\mathbf{v}$ .

### Theorems:

1. **Cayley-Hamilton theorem:**  $T$  satisfies its own characteristic polynomial.
2. **Spectral theorem:** Diagonalizable endomorphisms have orthogonal eigenvectors.

### Examples:

1. **Identity transformation:**  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{v}$ .
2. **Projection:**  $T(\mathbf{v}) = (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u})\mathbf{u}$ .
3. **Rotation:**  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{v} \cos(\theta) + (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u}) \sin(\theta)$ .

### Applications:

1. **Linear algebra:** Solving systems of equations.
2. **Calculus:** Finding derivatives.
3. **Computer graphics:** Transforming objects.

### Solved Problems:

#### Problem 1

Prove  $T(\mathbf{v}) = 2\mathbf{v}$  is an endomorphism.

#### Solution

- $T$  is linear.
- $T$  maps  $V$  to itself.

#### Problem 2

Find eigenvalues of  $T(\mathbf{v}) = (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{e}_1)\mathbf{e}_1$ .

#### Solution

- $\lambda = 1$  (eigenvector  $\mathbf{e}_1$ ).
- $\lambda = 0$  (eigenvectors orthogonal to  $\mathbf{e}_1$ ).

### Automorphism:



## Automorphism

**Definition:** A bijective endomorphism, i.e., a linear transformation from a vector space to itself that is both injective and surjective.

### Properties:

1. **Bijectivity:** One-to-one and onto.
2. **Linearity:**  $T(av + bw) = aT(v) + bT(w)$
3. **Self-transformation:**  $T: V \rightarrow V$

### Types:

1. **Inner automorphism:**  $T(v) = v$  for some  $v$ .
2. **Outer automorphism:** Not inner.

### Characteristics:

1. **Inverse:**  $T^{-1}$  exists.
2. **Determinant:**  $\det(T) \neq 0$ .
3. **Eigenvalues:** Non-zero scalars  $\lambda$ .

### Theorems:

1. **Automorphism theorem:**  $T$  is automorphism if and only if  $\det(T) \neq 0$ .
2. **Cayley-Hamilton theorem:**  $T$  satisfies its own characteristic polynomial.

### Examples:

1. **Identity transformation:**  $T(v) = v$ .
2. **Rotation:**  $T(v) = v \cos(\theta) + (v \times u) \sin(\theta)$ .
3. **Scaling:**  $T(v) = cv$ .

### Applications:

1. **Linear algebra:** Solving systems of equations.
2. **Calculus:** Finding derivatives.
3. **Computer graphics:** Transforming objects.

### Solved Problems:

#### Problem 1

Prove  $T(v) = 2v$  is an automorphism.

#### Solution

- T is bijective.
- T is linear.

**Problem 2**

Find inverse of  $T(\mathbf{v}) = (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{e}_1)\mathbf{e}_1 + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{e}_2)\mathbf{e}_2$ .

**Solution**

- $T^{-1}(\mathbf{v}) = (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{e}_1)\mathbf{e}_1/2 + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{e}_2)\mathbf{e}_2/2$



# **ANALYSIS OF MATHEMATICAL MODELLING**

Edited by

**DR.D.R.KIRUBAHARAN**



978-93-6255-376-8

# **Analysis of Mathematical Modelling**

Copyright © 2019 by **Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan**

First Edition,2019

*All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.*

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-376-8**

***Publisher:*** Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (**PRIST**)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Book elements</b>	<b>Page Numbers</b>
-----	
<b>Chapter-I</b> <i>Mathematical modelling through ODE of first order</i> Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan	<b>01-19</b>
-----	
<b>Chapter-II</b> <i>Mathematical modelling through systems of ordinary differential equations of the first order</i> Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan	<b>20-37</b>
-----	
<b>Chapter-III</b> <i>Mathematical modelling through ordinary differential equations of second order</i> Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan	<b>38-51</b>
-----	
<b>Chapter-IV</b> <i>Miscellaneous mathematical models through ode of the second order</i> Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan	<b>51-76</b>
-----	
<b>Chapter-V</b> <i>Simple situation requiring mathematical modeling</i> Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan	<b>77-80</b>
-----	

## Chapter-I

### MATHEMATICAL MODELLING THROUGH ODE OF FIRST ORDER

**Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

Mathematical Modelling in terms of differential equations arises when the situation modelled involves some continuous variable(s) varying with respect to some other continuous variable(s) and have some reasonable hypotheses about the rates of change of dependent variables with respect to independent variable(s). When the situation occurs in the form of one dependent variable  $x$  (say population size) depending on one independent variable (say time  $t$ ) it gives mathematical model in terms of an ordinary differential equation of the first order, if the hypothesis involves the rate of change of  $\frac{dx}{dt}$ .

### POPULATION GROWTH MODELS

Let  $x(t)$  be the population size at time  $t$  and let  $\mathbf{b}$  and  $\mathbf{d}$  be the birth and death rates, i.e. the number of individuals born or dying per individual per unit time then in time interval  $(t, t+\Delta t)$ , the number of births and deaths would be  $\mathbf{b}x \Delta t + \mathbf{0}(\Delta t)$  and  $\mathbf{d}x\Delta t + \mathbf{0}(\Delta t)$  where  $\mathbf{0}(\Delta t)$  is an infinitesimal which approaches zero as  $\Delta t$  approaches zero so that,

$$x(t+\Delta t) - x(t) = ( \mathbf{b} x(t) - \mathbf{d} x(t) )\Delta t + \mathbf{0}(\Delta t)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= (b - d) x(t) \Delta t + o(\Delta t) \\
&= ax(t) \Delta t + o(\Delta t)
\end{aligned}
\tag{1.1.1}$$

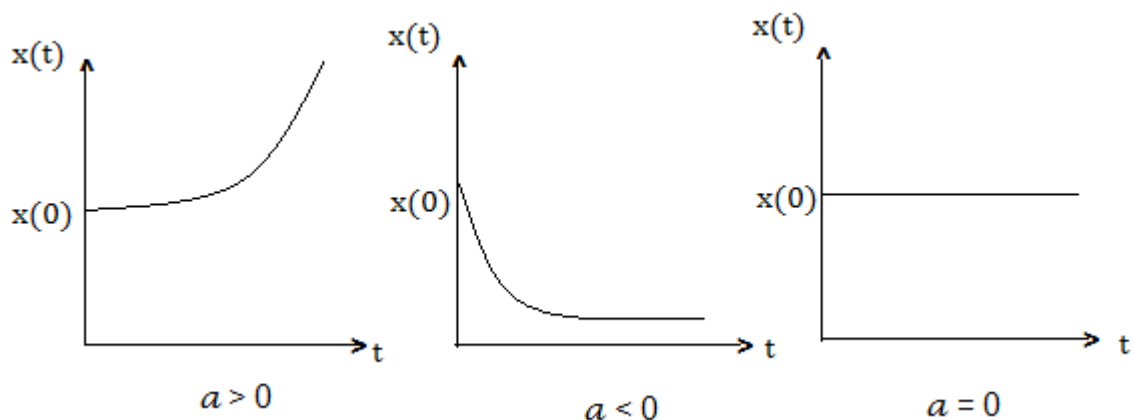
So that dividing by  $\Delta t$  and proceeding to the limit as  $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{x(t+\Delta t) - x(t)}{\Delta t} &= \frac{ax(t) \Delta t}{\Delta t} + \frac{o(\Delta t)}{\Delta t} \\
\frac{dx}{dt} &= ax \\
\frac{dx}{x} &= a dt
\end{aligned}
\tag{1.1.2}$$

Integrating (1.1.2),

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^t \frac{dx}{x} &= \int_0^t a dt \\
\log x(t) - \log x(0) &= at \\
\log \frac{x(t)}{x(0)} &= at \\
\frac{x(t)}{x(0)} &= e^{at} \\
x(t) &= x(0) e^{at}
\end{aligned}
\tag{1.1.3}$$

So that the population grows exponentially if  $a > 0$ , decays exponentially if  $a < 0$  and remains constant if  $a = 0$



**Figure 1.1**

- (i) If  $a > 0$  the population will become double its present size at time **T**, where

$$\begin{aligned}2 x(0) &= x(0) e^{aT} \\e^{aT} &= 2 \\aT &= \ln 2 \\T &= \frac{1}{a} \ln 2 \\T &= \frac{1}{a} (0.69314112) \\T &= (0.69314112) a^{-1}\end{aligned}$$

**T** is called the **doubling period** of the population and this doubling period is independent of  $x(0)$ . It depends only on  $a$  and is such that greater the value of  $a$  (i.e. greater the difference between birth and death rates), the smaller is the doubling period.

- (ii) If  $a < 0$  the population will become half its present size at time **T'** when,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{2} x(0) &= x(0) e^{aT'} \\e^{aT'} &= \frac{1}{2} \\aT' &= \ln \frac{1}{2} \\T' &= \frac{1}{a} \ln \frac{1}{2} \\T' &= - (0.69314112) a^{-1}\end{aligned}$$

**T'** is called the **half-life period** of the population and this half-life period is independent of  $x(0)$  it decreases as the excess of death rate over birth rate increases.

### **Example**



The population of a community is known to increase at a rate proportional to the number of people present at a time  $t$ . If the population has doubled in 6 years how long it will take to triple?

**Solution:**

Let  $x(t)$  denote the population at time  $t$ . Let  $x(0)$  denote the initial population ( $t=0$ )

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = k x(t)$$

$$\frac{dx}{x} = k dt$$

Integrating ,

$$\int_0^t \frac{dx}{x} = \int_0^t k dt$$

$$\log x(t) - \log x(0) = kt$$

$$\log \frac{x(t)}{x(0)} = kt$$

$$\frac{x(t)}{x(0)} = e^{kt}$$

$$x(t) = x(0) e^{kt}$$

$$x(t) = A e^{kt} \quad \text{where } A = x(0)$$

Put for  $t=6$   $= A e^{6k} = 2 x(0) = 2 A$

$$e^{6k} = 2$$

$$k = \frac{1}{6} \ln 2$$

Now to find  $t$  when  $x(t) = 3 A = 3 x(0)$

$$3x(0) = x(0) e^{kt}$$

$$3 = e^{kt}$$

$$3 = e^{\left(\frac{1}{6}\ln 2\right)t}$$

$$\ln 3 = \left(\frac{\ln 2}{6}\right) t$$

$$t = \frac{6 \ln 3}{\ln 2}$$

$$t \approx 9.6 \text{ years (approximately 9 years 6 months)}$$

## 1.2 RADIO – ACTIVE DECAY

Many substances undergo radio – active decay at a rate proportional to the amount of the radioactive substances present at any time and each of them has a half-life period. For **uranium 238** it is 4.55 billion years. For **potassium** it is 1.3 billion years. For **thorium** it is 13.9 billion years. For **rubidium** it is 50 billion years while for **carbon 14** it is only 5568 years and for **white lead** it is only 22 years.

In radiogeology, these results are used for radioactive dating. Thus the ratio of radio-carbon to ordinary carbon(carbon 12) in dead plants and animals enables us to estimate their time of death. Radioactive dating has also been used to estimate the age of the solar system and of earth as 45 billion years.

### Example

A radioactive isotope has an initial mass 200mg, which two years later is 50mg. Find the expression for the amount of the isotope remaining at any time. What is its half life period?

### Solution:

Let  $m$  be the mass of the isotope remaining after  $x$  years, and let  $-k$  be the constant of proportionality. Then the rate of decomposition is modelled by

$$\frac{dm}{dt} = -km$$

Where minus sign indicates that the mass is decreasing. It is a separable equation. Separating the variables, integrating, and adding a constant in the form  $\ln c$ ,

$$\ln m + \ln c = -kt$$

Simplifying,  $\ln mc = -kt$

$$mc = e^{-kt}$$

$$m = c_1 e^{-kt} \quad \text{where} \quad c_1 = \frac{1}{c} \quad (1.2.1)$$

now to find  $c_1$  using  $m = 200$  when  $t = 0$  putting the values of  $m$  and  $t$  in (1.2.1)

$$200 = c_1 e^{-k0}$$

$$200 = c_1 \cdot 1$$

$$c_1 = 200$$

and  $m = 200 e^{-kt}$  (1.2.2)

The value of  $k$  is determined from (1.2.2) by substituting  $t = 2$ ,  $m = 150$

$$150 = 200 e^{-2k}$$

$$e^{-2k} = \frac{3}{4}$$

$$-2k = \ln \frac{3}{4}$$

This gives

$$k = \frac{1}{2} \ln \frac{4}{3}$$

$$k = \frac{1}{2} (0.2877)$$

$$= 0.1438$$

$$\approx 0.14$$

The mass of the isotope remaining after  $t$  years is

$$m(x) = 200 e^{-0.1438t}$$

the half-life  $t_n$  is the time corresponding to  $m = 100$  mg thus

$$100 = 200 e^{-0.14t_n}$$

$$\frac{1}{2} = e^{-0.14t_n}$$

$$t_n = -\frac{1}{0.14} \ln 0.5$$

$$t_n = -\frac{-0.693}{-0.14}$$

$$t_n = 4.95 \text{ years}$$

$\therefore$  The half-life period of radioactive isotope is 4.95 years.

### 1.3 DECREASE OF TEMPERATURE

According to Newton's law of cooling, the rate of change of temperature of a body is proportional to the difference between the temperature  $T$  of the body and temperature  $T_m$  of the surrounding medium, so that

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = \alpha (T - T_m), \quad \alpha < 0$$

$$\frac{dT}{T - T_m} = \alpha dt$$

Integrating  $\ln (T - T_m) = \alpha t + c_1$

$$T - T_m = e^{\alpha t} c_2$$

$$T = T_m + c_2 e^{\alpha t} \quad (1.3.1)$$

And the excess of the temperature of the body over that of the surrounding medium decays exponentially.

### Example

When a chicken is removed from an oven, its temperature is measured at 300°F. Three minutes later its temperature is 200°F. How long will it take for the chicken to cool off to a room temperature of 70°F.

### Solution:

$T_m = 70$  and  $T = 300$  at for  $t = 0$  substitute this values in (1.3.1)

$$T(0) = 300 = 70 + c_2 e^{\alpha 0}$$

this gives  $c_2 = 230$

for  $t = 3$ ,  $T(3) = 200$  now to put  $t = 3$ ,  $T(3) = 200$  and  $c_2 = 230$  in (1.3.1) then

$$200 = 70 + 230e^{\alpha \cdot 3}$$

$$e^{3\alpha} = \frac{130}{230}$$

$$3\alpha = \ln \frac{13}{23}$$

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{3} \ln \frac{13}{23}$$

$$\alpha = -0.19018$$

Thus  $T(t) = 70 + 230e^{-0.19018t}$  (1.3.2)

So that from equation (1.3.2) it furnishes no finite solution to  $T(t) = 70$  since  $\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} T(t) = 70$ . The limiting temperature is **70°F**.

## 1.4 A SIMPLE COMPARTMENT MODE

Let a vessel contain a volume  $V$  of a solution with concentration  $c(t)$  of a substance at time  $t$ .

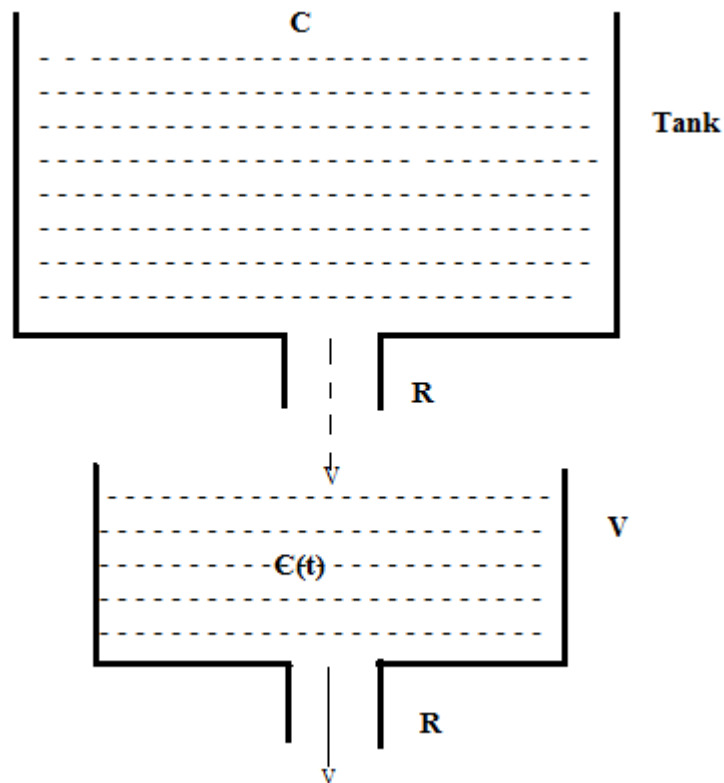


Figure 1.2

Let a solution with constant concentration  $C$  in an overhead tank enter the vessel at a constant rate  $R$  and after mixing thoroughly with the solution in the vessel, let the mixture with concentration  $c(t)$  leave the vessel at the same rate  $R$  so that the volume of the solution in the vessel remains  $V$ . Using the principle of continuity i.e. the gain in amount of a substance in a medium in any time is equal to the excess of the amount that has entered the medium in the time over the amount that has left the medium in this time.

So that

$$V(c(t + \Delta t) - c(t)) = RC \Delta t - Rc(t) \Delta t + 0(\Delta t) \quad (1.4.1)$$

Giving 
$$\lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{V(c(t + \Delta t) - c(t))}{\Delta t} = \frac{RC \Delta t - Rc(t) \Delta t}{\Delta t}$$

$$V \frac{dc}{dt} = RC - Rc(t)$$

$$V \frac{dc}{dt} + Rc = RC \quad (1.4.2)$$

Integrating, the auxiliary equation is of the form

$$mV + R = 0$$

$$mV = -R$$

$$m = \frac{-R}{V}$$

$$\therefore c(t) = A e^{\frac{-Rt}{V}} \quad (1.4.3)$$

The particular integral is  $= \frac{RC}{DV+R} e^{0.t}$

$$\text{Particular integral} = \frac{RC}{R}$$

$$= C$$

$$\therefore c(t) = A e^{\frac{-Rt}{V}} + C$$

$$c(t) - C = A e^{\frac{-Rt}{V}} \quad (1.4.4)$$

$$t = 0, \quad c(0) - C = A$$

$$c(t) = (c(0) - C) e^{\frac{-Rt}{V}} + C$$

$$c(t) = c(0) e^{\frac{-Rt}{V}} + C (1 - e^{\frac{-Rt}{V}}) \quad (1.4.5)$$

let  $c(0) = c_0$

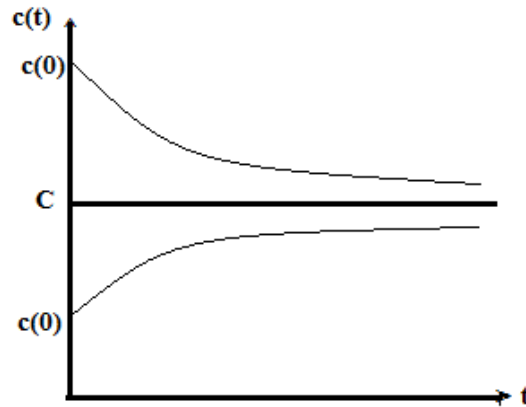
$$\therefore A = c_0 - C$$

As  $t \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $c(t) \rightarrow C$ , so that ultimately the vessel has the same concentration as the overhead tank. Since

$$c(t) = (c_0 - C) e^{-\frac{Rt}{V}} + C$$

$$c(t) = C - (C - c_0) e^{-\frac{Rt}{V}} \quad (1.4.6)$$

if  $C > c_0$ , the concentration in the vessel increases to  $C$ ; on the other hand if  $C < c_0$ , the concentration in the vessel decreases to  $C$ .



**Figure 1.3**

If the rate  $R'$  at which the solution leaves the vessel is less than  $R$ , the equations of continuity gives

$$\frac{d}{dt} [(V_0 + (R - R')t) c(t)] = RC - R'(ct) \quad (1.4.7)$$

Where  $V_0$  is the initial volume of the solution in the vessel. This is also a linear differential equation of the first order.

### **Example**

A tank contains 300 liters of fluid in which 20grams of salt is dissolved. Brine containing 1gram of salt per liter is then pumped into



the tank at a rate of 4L/ min; the well-mixed solution is pumped out at the same rate. Find the number  $N(t)$  of grams of salt in the tank at time  $t$ .

**Solution:**

By the data given  $p(t) = N(t)$

$$n = 4, p = 1, m = 300$$

In this model

$$\frac{dP(t)}{dt} = 4 - \frac{P}{300} \cdot 4$$

$$\frac{dP(t)}{dt} = 4 - \frac{P}{75}$$

$$\frac{dP(t)}{dt} + \frac{P}{75} = 4$$

This is a linear differential equation of first order in  $P$  whose integrating this

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = \frac{300 - P}{75}$$

$$\frac{dP}{300 - P} = \frac{dt}{75}$$

$$-\ln(300 - P) = \frac{t}{75} + c_1$$

$$\ln(300 - P) = -\left(\frac{t}{75} + c_1\right)$$

$$300 - P = -C e^{\frac{-t}{75}}$$

$$P(t) = 300 + C e^{\frac{-t}{75}}$$

Since  $P(0) = 20$  is given then,

$$20 = P(0) = 300 + C e^0 \text{ that is } C = -280$$

$P(t) = 300 - 280e^{\frac{-t}{75}}$  is the number of grams of salt in the tank

at time  $t$ .

### 1.5 MOTION OF A ROCKET

As a first idealization, neglect both gravity and air resistance. A rocket moves forward because of the large supersonic velocity with which gases produced by the burning of the fuel inside the rocket come out of the converging – diverging nozzle of the rocket.

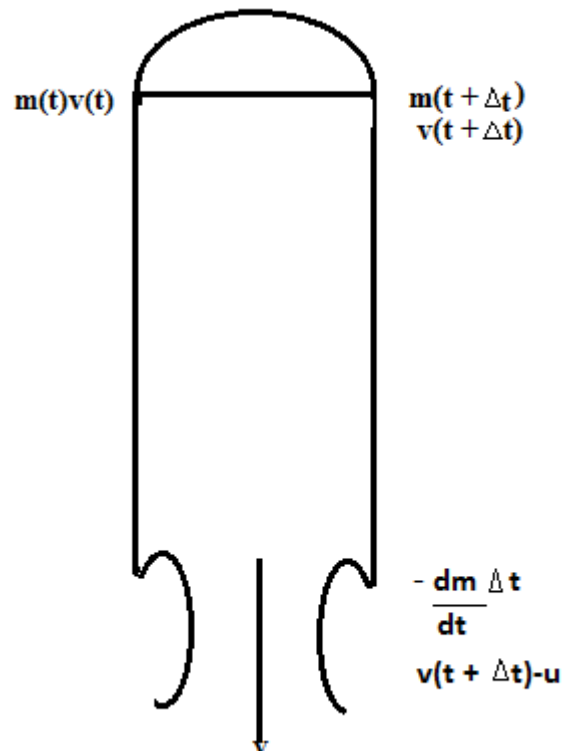


Figure 1.4

Let  $m(t)$  be the mass of the rocket at time  $t$  and let it move forward with velocity  $v(t)$  so that the **momentum** at time  $t$  is  $m(t)v(t)$ .

In the **interval** of time  $(t, t+\Delta t)$ , the **mass** of the rocket becomes

$$m(t+\Delta t) = m(t) + \frac{dm}{dt} \Delta t + o(\Delta t) \quad (1.5.1)$$

Since the rocket is losing mass,  $\frac{dm}{dt}$  is negative and the mass of gases  $-\frac{dm}{dt} \Delta t$  moves with velocity  $u$  relative to the rocket, i.e. with a velocity

$v(t+\Delta t) - u$  relative to the earth so that the **total momentum** of the rocket and the gases at time  $t+\Delta t$  is

$$m(t+\Delta t) v(t+\Delta t) - \frac{dm}{dt} \Delta t (v(t+\Delta t) - u) \quad (1.5.2)$$

Since the air resistance and gravity are neglected, there is no external force on the rocket and as such the momentum is conserved, giving the equation

$$m(t)v(t) = \left(m(t) + \frac{dm}{dt} \Delta t\right) \left(v(t) + \frac{dv}{dt} \Delta t\right) - \frac{dm}{dt} \Delta t (v - u) + o(\Delta t)^2 \quad (1.5.3)$$

$$\begin{aligned} m(t)v(t) &= m(t)v(t) + m(t) \frac{dv}{dt} \Delta t + v(t) \frac{dm}{dt} \Delta t + 0 - v(t) \frac{dm}{dt} \Delta t + u \frac{dm}{dt} \Delta t \\ m(t) \frac{dv}{dt} \Delta t &= -u \frac{dm}{dt} \Delta t \end{aligned} \quad (1.5.4)$$

Integrating,

$$\begin{aligned} -\int_0^t \frac{dv}{u} &= \int_0^t \frac{dm}{m} \\ \ln \frac{m(t)}{m(0)} &= -\frac{1}{u} v(t) \\ v(t) &= u \ln \frac{m(0)}{m(t)} \end{aligned} \quad (1.5.5)$$

assuming that the rocket starts with zero velocity.

As the fuel burns the mass of the rocket decreases. Initially the mass of the rocket =  $m_P + m_F + m_S$  when

$m_P$  is the mass of the pay – load,  $m_F$  is the mass of the fuel and  $m_S$  is the mass of the structure

When the fuel is completely burnt out,  $m_F$  becomes zero and  $v_B$  is the velocity of the rocket at this stage, when the fuel is all burnt, then

$$\begin{aligned} v_B &= u \ln \frac{m_P + m_F + m_S}{m_P + m_S} \\ &= u \ln \left( 1 + \frac{m_F}{m_P + m_S} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (1.5.6)$$

This is the **maximum velocity** that the rocket can attain and it depends on the velocity  $u$  of efflux of gases and the ratio  $\frac{m_F}{m_P + m_S}$ . The larger the values of  $u$  and  $\frac{m_F}{m_P + m_S}$ , the larger will be the maximum velocity attained.

For the best modern fuels and structural materials, the maximum velocity this gives is about 7 km/s. In practice it would be much less since the air resistance and gravity are neglected, both of which tend to reduce the velocity. However if a rocket is to place a satellite in orbit, there must be a velocity of more than 7 km/s.

The problem can be overcome by using the concept of multi-stage rockets. The fuel may be carried in a number of containers and when the fuel of a container is burnt up, the container is thrown away, so that the rocket has not to carry any dead weight.

Thus in a three-stage rocket, let  $m_{F_1}$ ,  $m_{F_2}$ ,  $m_{F_3}$  be the masses of the fuels and  $m_{S_1}$ ,  $m_{S_2}$ ,  $m_{S_3}$  be the corresponding masses of the containers, then

**Velocity at the end of the first stage is:**

$$v_1 = u \ln \frac{m_P + m_{F_1} + m_{S_1} + m_{F_2} + m_{S_2} + m_{F_3} + m_{S_3}}{m_P + m_{F_2} + m_{S_2} + m_{F_3} + m_{S_3}} \quad (1.5.7)$$

**Velocity at the end of the second stage is:**

$$v_2 = v_1 + u \ln \frac{m_P + m_{F_2} + m_{S_2} + m_{F_3} + m_{S_3}}{m_P + m_{F_3} + m_{S_3}} \quad (1.5.8)$$

**Velocity at the end of the third stage is:**

$$v_3 = v_2 + u \ln \frac{m_P + m_{F_3} + m_{S_3}}{m_P} \quad (1.5.9)$$

In this way, a much larger velocity is obtained than can be obtained by a single-stage rocket.

## 1.6 Mathematical modelling through difference equations in Genetics

### Hardy – Weinberg Law

Every characteristic of an individual, like height or colour of the hair, is determined by a pair of genes, one obtained from the father and the other obtained from the mother. Every gene occurs in two forms, a dominant (denoted by a capital letter say G) and a recessive (denoted by the corresponding small letter say g). Thus with respect to a characteristic, an individual may be a dominant (GG), a hybrid (Gg or gG) or a recessive (gg).

In the  $n^{th}$  generation, let the proportions of dominants, hybrids and recessives be  $p_n$ ,  $q_n$ ,  $r_n$  so that

$$p_n + q_n + r_n = 1, \quad p_n \geq 0, \quad q_n \geq 0, \quad r_n \geq 0 \quad (1.6.1)$$

Assume that individuals, in this generation mate at random. Now

$p_{n+1}$  = the probability that an individual in the  $(n + 1)$ th generation is a dominant ( GG ) = ( Probability that this individual gets a G from the father )  $\times$  ( Probability that the individual gets a G from the mother )

GG =

$$p_{n+1} = \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)$$

$$p_{n+1} = \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2 \quad (1.6.2)$$

Gg =

$$q_{n+1} = \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) + \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)$$

$$q_{n+1} = 2 \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \quad (1.6.3)$$

gg =

$$r_{n+1} = \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)$$

$$r_{n+1} = \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2 \quad (1.6.4)$$

So that,

$$p_{n+1} + q_{n+1} + r_{n+1} = \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2 + 2 \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) + \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n + r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2 \\
&= (p_n + q_n + r_n)^2 \\
&= (1)^2
\end{aligned}$$

$$p_{n+1} + q_{n+1} + r_{n+1} = 1 \quad (1.6.5)$$

Similarly

$$\begin{aligned}
p_{n+2} &= \left( p_{n+1} + \frac{1}{2} q_{n+1} \right)^2 \\
&= \left\{ \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2 + \frac{1}{2} \left( 2 \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \right) \right\}^2 \\
&= \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2 \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n + r_n \right)^2 \\
&= \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2 (1)^2 \\
p_{n+2} &= \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2 = p_{n+1} \quad (1.6.6)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
q_{n+2} &= 2 \left( p_{n+1} + \frac{1}{2} q_{n+1} \right) \left( r_{n+1} + \frac{1}{2} q_{n+1} \right) \\
&= 2 \left\{ \left[ \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2 + \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \right] \left[ \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2 + \right. \right. \\
&\quad \left. \left. \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \right] \right\} \\
&= 2 \left\{ \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \left[ \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) + \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \right] \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \left[ \left( r_n + \right. \right. \right. \\
&\quad \left. \left. \left. \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) + \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \right] \right\} \\
&= 2 \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) [p_n + q_n + r_n][p_n + q_n + r_n]
\end{aligned}$$

$$q_{n+2} = 2 \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) = q_{n+1} \quad (1.6.7)$$

$$\begin{aligned} r_{n+2} &= \left( r_{n+1} + \frac{1}{2} q_{n+1} \right)^2 \\ &= \left\{ \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2 + \frac{1}{2} \left( 2 \left( p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right) \right) \right\}^2 \\ &= \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2 \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n + p_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2 \\ &= \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2 (1)^2 \\ r_{n+2} &= \left( r_n + \frac{1}{2} q_n \right)^2 = r_{n+1} \end{aligned} \quad (1.6.8)$$

$$\therefore p_{n+2} = p_{n+1}, \quad q_{n+2} = q_{n+1}, \quad r_{n+2} = r_{n+1} \quad (1.6.9)$$

So that the proportions of dominants, hybrids and recessives in the (n+2)th generation are same as in the (n+1)th generation. Thus in any population in which random mating takes place with respect to a characteristic, the proportions of dominant, hybrids and recessive do not change after the first generation. Equations (1.6.2) to (1.6.5) is a set of differential equations of the first order.



## Chapter -II

### MATHEMATICAL MODELLING THROUGH SYSTEMS OF ORDINARY DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS OF THE FIRST ORDER

**Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

Mathematical Modelling in terms of differential equations arises when the situation modelled involves some continuous variable(s) varying with respect to some other continuous variable(s) and have some reasonable hypotheses about the rates of change of dependent variables with respect to independent variable(s). If there are a number of dependent continuous variables and only one independent variable, the hypothesis may give a mathematical model in terms of a system of first order ordinary differential equations.

#### 2.1 MATHEMATICAL MODELLING OF EPIDEMICS THROUGH SYSTEMS OF ORDINARY DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS OF FIRST ORDER

##### (i) A SIMPLE EPIDEMIC MODEL

Let  $S(t)$  and  $I(t)$  be the number of susceptible (i.e. those who can get a disease) and infected persons (i.e. those who have already got the disease). Initially let there be  $n$  susceptible and one infected person in the system so that

$$S(t) + I(t) = n + 1, S(0) = n, I(0) = 1 \quad (2.1.1)$$

The number of infected person grows at a rate proportional to the product of susceptible and infected person and the number of susceptible persons decreases at the same rate so that it gives the system of differential equations

$$\frac{dS}{dt} = -\beta SI \quad (2.1.2)$$

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = \beta SI \quad (2.1.3)$$

So that  $\frac{dS}{dt} + \frac{dI}{dt} = 0,$  (2.1.4)

$$S(t) + I(t) = \text{constant} = n + 1$$

From (2.1.2)  $\frac{dS}{dt} = -\beta SI$

$$\frac{dS}{dt} = -\beta S(n+1-S)$$

Integrating  $\int \frac{dS}{S(n+1-S)} = -\int \beta dt$

$$\frac{1}{S(n+1-S)} = \frac{A}{S} + \frac{B}{(n+1-S)}$$

$$1 = A(n+1-S) + B S$$

$S=0,$   $1 = A(n+1)$

$$A = \frac{1}{n+1}$$

$S = n+1,$   $1 = B(n+1)$

$$B = \frac{1}{n+1}$$

$$\int \frac{1}{(n+1)S} dS + \int \frac{1}{(n+1)(n+1-S)} dS = -\int \beta dt$$

$$\int \frac{dS}{S} + \int \frac{dS}{n+1-S} = -\int \beta (n+1) dt$$

$$\log S - \log(n+1-S) = -\beta (n+1)t + c$$

put  $t = 0, S(0) = n, I(0) = 1$

$$\therefore \log n - \log 1 = c$$

$$\therefore \log n = c$$

$$\log S - \log(n + 1 - S) = -\beta (n + 1)t + \log n$$

$$\log S - \log n(n + 1 - S) = -\beta (n + 1)t$$

$$\log n(n + 1 - S) - \log S = \beta (n + 1)t$$

$$\log \left( \frac{n(n+1-S)}{S} \right) = \beta (n + 1)t$$

$$\frac{n(n+1-S)}{S} = e^{\beta(n+1)t}$$

$$\frac{n(n+1)}{S} - \frac{nS}{S} = e^{\beta(n+1)t}$$

$$\frac{n(n+1)}{S} = n + e^{\beta(n+1)t}$$

$$\therefore S(t) = \frac{n(n+1)}{n + e^{\beta(n+1)t}}$$

From (2.1.3)  $\frac{dI}{dt} = \beta SI$

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = \beta I(n+1-I)$$

Integrating  $\int \frac{dI}{I(n+1-I)} = \int \beta dt$

$$\frac{1}{I(n+1-I)} = \frac{A}{I} + \frac{B}{(n+1-I)}$$

$$1 = A(n + 1 - I) + B I$$

$I = 0, \quad 1 = A(n+1)$

$$A = \frac{1}{n+1}$$

$I = n+1, \quad 1 = B(n+1)$

$$B = \frac{1}{n+1}$$

$$\int \frac{1}{(n+1)I} dI + \int \frac{1}{(n+1)(n+1-I)} dI = \int \beta dt$$

$$\int \frac{dI}{I} + \int \frac{dI}{n+1-I} = \int \beta (n+1) dt$$

$$\log I - \log(n+1-I) = \beta (n+1)t + c$$

put  $t = 0, S(0) = n, I(0) = 1$

$$\therefore 0 - \log n = c$$

$$\therefore -\log n = c$$

$$\log I - \log(n+1-I) = \beta (n+1)t - \log n$$

$$\log I + \log n - \log(n+1-I) = \beta (n+1)t$$

$$\log nI - \log(n+1-I) = \beta (n+1)t$$

$$-\log nI + \log(n+1-I) = -\beta (n+1)t$$

$$\log \left( \frac{n+1-I}{nI} \right) = -\beta (n+1)t$$

$$\frac{n+1-I}{nI} = e^{-\beta(n+1)t}$$

$$\frac{n+1}{nI} - \frac{I}{nI} = e^{-\beta(n+1)t}$$

$$\frac{n+1}{nI} + \frac{1}{n} = e^{-\beta(n+1)t}$$

$$n+1 = I + nI (e^{-\beta(n+1)t})$$

$$n+1 = I(1 + n e^{-\beta(n+1)t})$$

$$I = \frac{n+1}{1 + n e^{-\beta(n+1)t}}$$

$$\therefore I(t) = \frac{(n+1)e^{\beta(n+1)t}}{n+e^{\beta(n+1)t}}$$

So that  $\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} S(t) = 0$   $\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} I(t) = n + 1$

### (ii) A Susceptible – Infected – Susceptible (SIS) Model

Here, a susceptible person can become infected at a rate proportional to  $SI$  and an infected person can recover and become susceptible again at a rate  $\gamma I$ , so that

$$\frac{dS}{dt} = -\beta SI + \gamma I$$

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = \beta SI - \gamma I$$

Which gives,

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = \beta SI - \gamma I + \beta I^2 - \beta I^2$$

$$= \beta I (S + I) - \gamma I - \beta I^2$$

$$= \beta I (n + 1) - \gamma I - \beta I^2 \quad (\text{since } S(0) = n, I(0) = 1)$$

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = (\beta(n + 1) - \gamma)I - \beta I^2$$

### (iii) Simple Epidemic Model with carriers

In this model, only carriers spread the disease and their number decreases exponentially with time as these are identified and eliminated, so that

$$\frac{dS}{dt} = -\beta S(t)C(t) + \gamma I(t)$$

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = \beta C(t)S(t) - \gamma I(t)$$

$$\frac{dC}{dt} = -\alpha C$$

Integrating  $\int \frac{dC}{C} = -\int \alpha dt$

$$\int \frac{dC}{C} = -\int \alpha dt$$

$$\log\left(\frac{C(t)}{C(0)}\right) = -\alpha t$$

$$C(t) = C(0) e^{-\alpha t}$$

$$C(t) = C_0 e^{-\alpha t} \quad (\text{let } C(0) = C_0)$$

So that  $S(t) + I(t) = S_0 + I_0 = N(\text{say}), C(t) = C_0 e^{-\alpha t}$

and  $\frac{dI}{dt} = \beta C(t)S(t) - \gamma I(t)$

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = \beta(C_0 e^{-\alpha t} (N - I(t))) - \gamma I(t)$$

$$= \beta N C_0 e^{-\alpha t} - \beta C_0 e^{-\alpha t} I(t) - \gamma I(t)$$

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = \beta N C_0 e^{-\alpha t} - [\beta C_0 e^{-\alpha t} - \gamma] I$$

#### (iv) Model with Removal

Here infected persons are removed by death or hospitalization at a rate proportional to the number of infectives, so that the model is

$$\frac{dS}{dt} = -\beta SI$$

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = \beta SI - \gamma I$$

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = \beta I \left( S - \frac{\gamma}{\beta} \right)$$

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = \beta I (S - \rho); \quad \rho = \frac{\gamma}{\beta}$$

With initial conditions,

$$S(0) = S_0 > 0, I(0) = I_0 > 0, R(0) = R_0 = 0, S_0 + I_0 = N$$

## 2.2 MATHEMATICAL MODELLING IN ECONOMICS BASED ON SYSTEMS OF ORDINARY DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS OF FIRST ORDER

### (i) Macro Model

Let  $S(t)$ ,  $I(t)$ ,  $Y(t)$  be the Savings, Investment, National Income at time  $t$ , then it is assumed that

(i) Savings are proportional to national income, so that

$$S(t) = \alpha Y(t), \alpha > 0 \quad (2.2.1)$$

(ii) Investment is proportional to the rate of increase of national income so that

$$I(t) = \beta Y'(t), \beta > 0 \quad (2.2.2)$$

(iii) All Savings are invested, so that

$$S(t) = I(t) \quad (2.2.3)$$

It gives a system of three ordinary differential equations of the first order for determining  $S(t)$ ,  $Y(t)$ ,  $I(t)$ . To solve these equations by Substitute the values of  $S(t)$  and  $I(t)$  in the equation

$$S(t) = I(t)$$

$$\alpha Y(t) = \beta Y'(t)$$

$$\alpha Y(t) = \beta \frac{dY}{dt}$$

Separating the variable and then integrating,

$$\int \frac{dY}{Y} = \int \frac{\alpha}{\beta} dt$$

$$\log \frac{Y(t)}{Y(0)} = \frac{\alpha}{\beta} t$$

$$\frac{Y(t)}{Y(0)} = e^{\frac{\alpha t}{\beta}}$$

$$Y(t) = Y(0) e^{\frac{\alpha t}{\beta}},$$

$$\therefore I(t) = \alpha Y(0) e^{\frac{\alpha t}{\beta}} = S(t)$$

So that the national income, investment and savings all increase exponentially.

## (ii) Open and Closed Dynamical Systems for Inter-industry

### Relations

First of all consider  $n$  industries. Let

$x_{rs}$  = Contribution from the  $r^{th}$  industry to the  $s^{th}$  industry per unit time

$x_r$  = Contribution from the  $r^{th}$  industry to consumers per unit time

$X_r$  = total output of the  $r^{th}$  industry per unit time

$\epsilon_r$  = input of labour in the  $r^{th}$  industry

$P_r$  = price per unit of the product of the  $r^{th}$  industry

$W$  = wage per unit of labour per unit time

$Y$  = total labour input into the system

$S_{rs}$  = stock of the product of the  $r^{th}$  industry held by the  $s^{th}$  industry



$S_r$  = stock of the  $r^{th}$  industry.

This gives the following equations:

- (i) From the principle of continuity, the rate of change of stock of the  $r^{th}$  industry = excess of the total output of the  $r^{th}$  industry per unit time Over the contribution of the  $r^{th}$  industry to consumers and other industries per unit time, so that

$$\frac{d}{dt} S_r = X_r - x_r - \sum_{s=1}^n x_{rs} \quad (2.2.4)$$

and since  $S_r = \sum_{s=1}^n S_{rs}$  (2.2.5)

$$\frac{d}{dt} \sum_{s=1}^n S_{rs} = X_r - x_r - \sum_{s=1}^n x_{rs} \quad (r = 1, 2, \dots, n) \quad (2.2.6)$$

- (ii) Since the total labour input into the system = Sum of labour inputs into all industries, so that

$$Y = \sum_{r=1}^n \varepsilon_r \quad (2.2.7)$$

- (iii) Assuming the condition of perfect competition and no profit in each industry, we should have for each industry the value of input equal to the value of output so that

$$P_r X_r = \sum_{s=1}^n P_s x_{rs} + w \varepsilon_r \quad (r = 1, 2, \dots, n) \quad (2.2.8)$$

- (iv) Further assume that the input coefficients

$$a_{rs} = \frac{x_{rs}}{X_s}, \quad b_{rs} = \frac{S_{rs}}{X_s}, \quad b_r = \frac{\varepsilon_r}{X_r} \quad (r, s = 1, 2, \dots, n) \quad (2.2.9)$$

$\therefore a_{rs} X_s = x_{rs}, \quad b_{rs} X_s = S_{rs}, \quad b_r X_r = \varepsilon_r$  are constants.

And then get the equations from

$$\frac{d}{dt} \sum_{s=1}^n S_{rs} = X_r - x_r - \sum_{s=1}^n x_{rs} \quad (r = 1, 2, \dots, n)$$

$$\frac{d}{dt} \sum_{s=1}^n b_{rs} X_s = X_r - x_r - \sum_{s=1}^n a_{rs} X_s \quad (2.2.10)$$

$$Y = \sum_{s=1}^n b_s X_s \quad (2.2.11)$$

$$P_r X_r = \sum_{s=1}^n P_s x_{rs} + w \varepsilon_r \quad (r = 1, 2, \dots, n)$$

$$= \sum_{s=1}^n P_s (a_{rs} X_r) + w b_r X_r \quad (r = 1, 2, \dots, n)$$

$$\div X_r, \quad P_r = \sum_{s=1}^n P_s a_{rs} + w b_r, \quad (r = 1, 2, \dots, n) \quad (2.2.12)$$

Let assume that the constants  $a_{rs}$ ,  $b_{rs}$ ,  $b_r$  are known. And also assume that  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  and  $w$  are given to us function of time, then equations (2.2.10) determine  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ . And then (2.2.11) determines  $Y$  and finally (3.2.12) determine  $P_1, P_2, \dots, P_n$ .

Thus if the final consumer's demand from all industries are known as functions of time, and then find the output, which each industry must give and the total labour force required at any time. knowing the wage rate at any time, this gives the prices of products of different industries.

### (iii) Speculative Model

Let  $d(t)$ ,  $s(t)$ ,  $p(t)$  denotes the demand, supply and price of a commodity, then this model is given by

$$d(t) = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 p(t) + \alpha_2 p'(t), \quad \alpha_0 > 0, \alpha_1 < 0, \alpha_2 > 0 \quad (2.2.13)$$

$$s(t) = \beta_0 + \beta_1 p(t) + \beta_2 p'(t), \quad \beta_0 > 0, \beta_1 < 0, \beta_2 < 0 \quad (2.2.14)$$

In this model coefficients  $\alpha_2, \beta_2$  account for the effect of speculation. If the price is increasing, demand increases in the expectation of the further increase in prices and supply decreases for the same reason.

For dynamic equilibrium

$$d(t) = s(t) \tag{2.2.15}$$

so that (3.2.13), (3.2.14) and (3.2.15) give

$$\alpha_0 + \alpha_1 p(t) + \alpha_2 \frac{dp}{dt} = \beta_0 + \beta_1 p(t) + \beta_2 \frac{dp}{dt}$$

$$\frac{dp}{dt}(\beta_2 - \alpha_2) + (\beta_1 - \alpha_1) p(t) = \alpha_0 - \beta_0$$

Divided by  $\beta_2 - \alpha_2$  on both sides,

$$\left(\frac{\beta_2 - \alpha_2}{\beta_2 - \alpha_2}\right) \frac{dp}{dt} + \left(\frac{\beta_1 - \alpha_1}{\beta_2 - \alpha_2}\right) p(t) = \frac{\alpha_0 - \beta_0}{\beta_2 - \alpha_2}$$

$$\frac{dp}{dt} + \left(\frac{\beta_1 - \alpha_1}{\beta_2 - \alpha_2}\right) p(t) = \frac{\alpha_0 - \beta_0}{\beta_2 - \alpha_2} \times \frac{\beta_1 - \alpha_1}{\beta_1 - \alpha_1}$$

$$\frac{dp}{dt} + \left(\frac{\beta_1 - \alpha_1}{\beta_2 - \alpha_2}\right) p(t) = \frac{\alpha_0 - \beta_0}{\beta_1 - \alpha_1} \cdot \frac{\beta_1 - \alpha_1}{\beta_2 - \alpha_2}$$

$$\frac{dp}{dt} - \lambda p(t) = -p_e \lambda$$

Where  $p_e = \frac{\alpha_0 - \beta_0}{\beta_1 - \alpha_1}$ ,  $\lambda = \frac{\alpha_1 - \beta_1}{\beta_2 - \alpha_2}$

The auxiliary equation is

$$(D - \lambda) p(t) = 0$$

$$m - \lambda = 0$$

$$m = \lambda$$

$$\therefore p(t) = A e^{\lambda t}$$

$$t=0, \quad p(0) = A$$

$$\therefore p(t) = p(0) e^{\lambda t}$$

$$\text{Particular integral} = \frac{-p_e \lambda}{D - \lambda} e^{0t}$$

$$= p_e$$

$\therefore$  The general solution is

$$P(t) = A e^{\lambda t} + p_e$$

$$t=0, \quad p(0) = A + p_e$$

$$A = p(0) - p_e$$

$$P(t) = (p(0) - p_e) e^{\lambda t} + p_e$$

$$P(t) - p_e = (p(0) - p_e) e^{\lambda t}$$

The behavior of  $p(t)$  depends on whether  $p(\infty)$  or  $p_e$  is large and whether  $\lambda < 0$  or  $\lambda > 0$ . The speculative model is highly unstable.

#### (iv) Investment Model

Let  $K(t)$  represent the capital and  $I(t)$  the investment at time  $t$ , then assume that

(i) The investment gives the rate of increase of capital so that

$$\frac{dK}{dt} = I(t)$$

- (ii) The deficiency of capital below a certain equilibrium level leads to an acceleration of the rate of investment proportional to this deficiency and a surplus of capital above this equilibrium level leads to a deceleration of the rate of investment, again proportional to the surplus, so that

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = -m(K(t) - K_e) \quad (2.2.16)$$

Where  $K_e$  is the capital equilibrium level.

If  $k(t) = K(t) - K_e$ , so that

$$\frac{dk}{dt} = \frac{dK}{dt} - 0$$

$$\frac{dk}{dt} = \frac{dK}{dt}$$

$$\therefore \frac{dk}{dt} = I(t)$$

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = -m(k(t)) \quad [\text{since } k(t) = K(t) - K_e] \quad (2.2.17)$$

So that  $-m(k(t)) = \frac{dI}{dt} = \frac{dI}{dk} \frac{dk}{dt}$

$$-m(k(t)) = I(t) \frac{dI}{dk} \quad (2.2.18)$$

$$- \int m(k(t)) dk = \int I dI$$

$$-m \frac{k^2}{2} + c = \frac{I^2}{2}$$

$$\frac{I^2(t)}{2} = -m \frac{k^2(t)}{2} + c$$

$$t=0, \quad I(0) = 0, \quad k(0) = k_0$$

$$0 = -m \frac{k_0^2}{2} + c$$

$$c = m \frac{k_0^2}{2}$$

$$\frac{I^2(t)}{2} = m \frac{k_0^2}{2} - m \frac{k^2(t)}{2}$$

$$I^2 = m (k_0^2 - k^2) \tag{2.2.19}$$

So that  $\frac{dk}{dt} = \sqrt{m} \sqrt{k_0^2 - k^2}$

From the equation (2.2.17)

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = -m (k(t))$$

$$\frac{d^2K}{dt^2} = -m (k(t)) \quad \left[ \text{since } I = \frac{dK}{dt} \right]$$

$$\frac{d^2K}{dt^2} + m (k(t)) = 0$$

$$(D^2 + m) K(t) = 0$$

$$(D^2 + m) = 0$$

$$D^2 = -m$$

$$D = \pm i \sqrt{m}$$

$$\therefore K(t) = A \cos \sqrt{m} t + B \sin \sqrt{m} t$$

$$t=0, \quad K(0) = A$$

$$\therefore K(t) = K(0) \cos \sqrt{m} t$$

$$K(t) = A \cos\sqrt{m} t + B \sin\sqrt{m} t$$

$$K'(t) = -A \sin\sqrt{m} t \cdot \sqrt{m} + B \cos\sqrt{m} t \cdot \sqrt{m}$$

$$I(t) = -\sqrt{m} A \sin\sqrt{m} t + \sqrt{m} B \cos\sqrt{m} t \quad \left[ \text{since } I = \frac{dK}{dt} \right]$$

$$t = 0, \quad I(0) = B \sqrt{m} \quad (I(0) = 0)$$

$$B = 0$$

$$I(t) = -K(0)\sqrt{m} \sin\sqrt{m} t \quad (\text{since } A = K(0))$$

$$\therefore K(t) = K(0) \cos\sqrt{m} t \quad (2.2.20)$$

$$I(t) = -K(0)\sqrt{m} \sin\sqrt{m} t \quad (2.2.21)$$

So that both  $K(t)$  and  $I(t)$  oscillate with a time period  $\frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{m}}$ .

### 2.3 MATHEMATICAL MODELLING IN DYNAMICS THROUGH SYSTEMS OF ORDINARY DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS OF FIRST ORDER

#### (i) Motion of a projectile

A particle of mass  $m$  is projected from the origin in vacuum with velocity  $V$  inclined at an angle  $\alpha$  to the horizontal. Suppose at time  $t$ , it is at position  $x(t)$ ,  $y(t)$  and its horizontal and vertical velocity components are  $u(t)$ ,  $v(t)$  respectively, then the equations of motion are:

$$m \frac{du}{dt} = 0 \quad m \frac{dv}{dt} = -mg \quad (2.2.22)$$

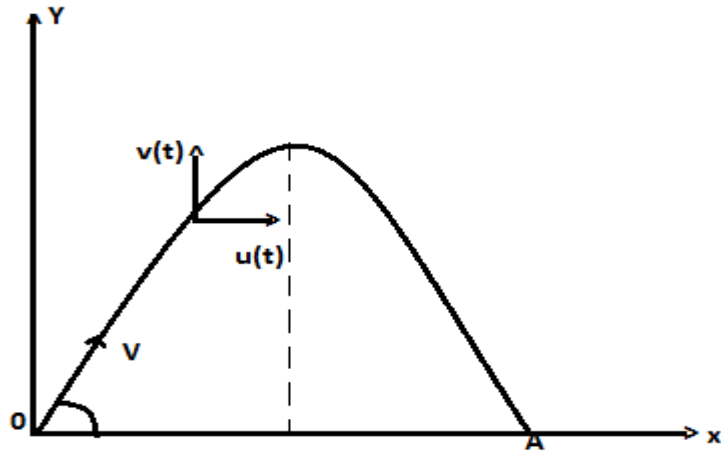


Figure 2.1

Integrating,  $\int m \frac{du}{dt} = 0$

$$\int \frac{du}{dt} = 0$$

$$u = c \quad \text{let } c = V \cos \alpha$$

$$u = V \cos \alpha$$

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = V \cos \alpha \quad (2.2.23)$$

Next  $\int m \frac{dv}{dt} = - \int mg$

$$\int \frac{dv}{dt} = - \int g$$

$$\int dv = - \int g dt$$

$$v = -gt + c$$

$$v = v \sin \alpha - gt \quad (\text{let } c = v \sin \alpha)$$

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = v \sin \alpha - gt \quad (2.2.24)$$



Integrating (2.2.23),

$$x = v \cos \alpha t$$

$$t = \frac{x}{v \cos \alpha}$$

Integrating (2.2.24)

$$y = v \sin \alpha t - \frac{1}{2} g t^2 \quad (2.2.25)$$

Eliminating t between the two equations x and y

$$y = v \sin \alpha \left( \frac{x}{v \cos \alpha} \right) - \frac{1}{2} g \left( \frac{x^2}{v^2 \cos^2 \alpha} \right)$$
$$y = x \tan \alpha - \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{g x^2}{v^2 \cos^2 \alpha} \right) \quad (2.2.26)$$

Which is a parabola. Since the term of the second degree form a perfect square. The parabola cuts  $y = 0$ .

Put  $y = 0$  in (2.2.26)

$$x \tan \alpha - \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{g x^2}{v^2 \cos^2 \alpha} \right) = 0$$

$$x \left( \tan \alpha - \frac{g x}{2 v^2 \cos^2 \alpha} \right) = 0$$

$$x = 0 \text{ (or) } \tan \alpha - \frac{g x}{2 v^2 \cos^2 \alpha} = 0$$

$$\tan \alpha = \frac{g x}{2 v^2 \cos^2 \alpha}$$

$$x = \frac{2 v^2 \tan \alpha \cos^2 \alpha}{g}$$

$$x = \frac{2 v^2 \sin \alpha \cos \alpha}{g}$$

$$x = \frac{v^2 \sin 2 \alpha}{g}$$

Corresponding to position 0 and A so that the range of the particle is given by

$$R = \frac{v^2 \sin 2 \alpha}{g}$$

Putting  $y = 0$  in (3.2.25)

$$0 = v \sin \alpha t - \frac{1}{2} g t^2$$

$$t( v \sin \alpha - \frac{1}{2} g t ) = 0$$

$$t = 0 \quad (\text{or}) \quad t = \frac{2v \sin \alpha}{g}$$

This gives the time  $T$  of flight. Since the horizontal velocity is constant and equal to  $v \cos \alpha$ , the total horizontal distance travelled is

$$v \cos \alpha \left( \frac{2v \sin \alpha}{g} \right) = \frac{v^2 \sin 2 \alpha}{g} \quad [X = VT]$$

Which gives us the same range.

**MATHEMATICAL MODELLING THROUGH ORDINARY DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS OF SECOND ORDER**

**Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

Mathematical Modelling in terms of differential equations arises when the situation modelled involves some continuous variable(s) varying with respect to some other continuous variable(s) and have some reasonable hypotheses about the rates of change of dependent variables with respect to independent variable(s). When the situation occurs in the form of one dependent variable  $x$  (say population size) depending on one independent variable (say time  $t$ ) it gives mathematical model in terms of an ordinary differential equation of the second order, if the hypothesis involves the rate of change of  $\frac{dx}{dt}$ .

**3.1 Components of Velocity and Acceleration Vectors along Radial and Transverse Directions**

As the particle moves from P to Q, the displacement along the radius vector

$$PN = ON - OP = (r + \Delta r) \cos \Delta\theta - r \quad (3.1.1)$$

and the radial component  $u$  of velocity is

$$u = \lim_{\Delta\theta \rightarrow 0} \frac{(r + \Delta r) \cos \Delta\theta - r}{\Delta t}$$

$\Delta\theta$  is small  $\cos \Delta\theta = 1$ ,  $\sin \Delta\theta = \Delta\theta$

$$\therefore u = \lim_{\Delta\theta \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta r}{\Delta t}$$

$$u = \frac{dr}{dt} \quad (3.1.2)$$

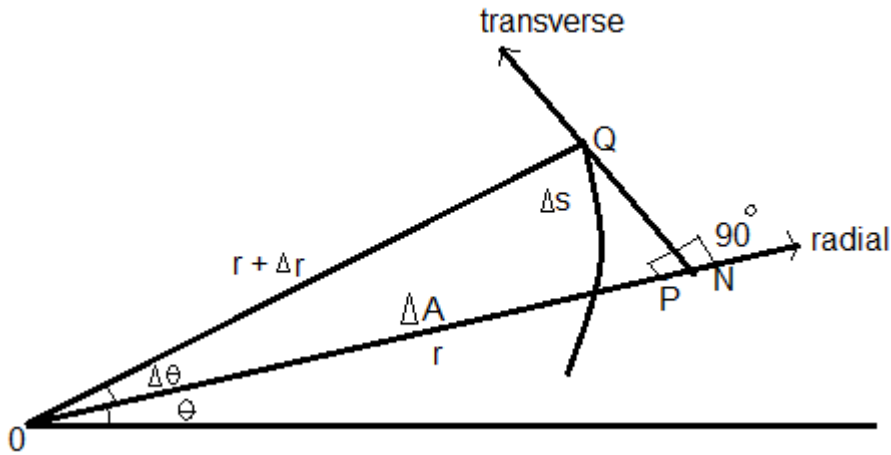


Figure 3.1

Similarly the displacement perpendicular to the radius vector

$$QN = (r + \Delta r) \sin \Delta \theta \quad (3.1.3)$$

and the transverse component  $v$  of the velocity is

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \lim_{\Delta \theta \rightarrow 0} \frac{(r + \Delta r) \sin \Delta \theta}{\Delta t} \\ v &= \lim_{\Delta \theta \rightarrow 0} \frac{(r + \Delta r) \Delta \theta}{\Delta t} \quad (\text{since } \sin \Delta \theta = \Delta \theta) \\ v &= \lim_{\Delta \theta \rightarrow 0} \frac{r \Delta \theta}{\Delta t} + 0 \quad (\text{neglecting higher order terms}) \\ v &= \frac{r d\theta}{dt} \end{aligned} \quad (3.1.4)$$

As such the velocity components in polar co-ordinates are

$$u = \frac{dr}{dt} = r' \quad \text{and} \quad v = \frac{r d\theta}{dt} = r \theta' \quad (3.1.5)$$

Now the change in the velocity along the radius vector

$$= (u + \Delta u) \cos \Delta\theta - (v + \Delta v) \sin \Delta\theta - u \quad (3.1.6)$$

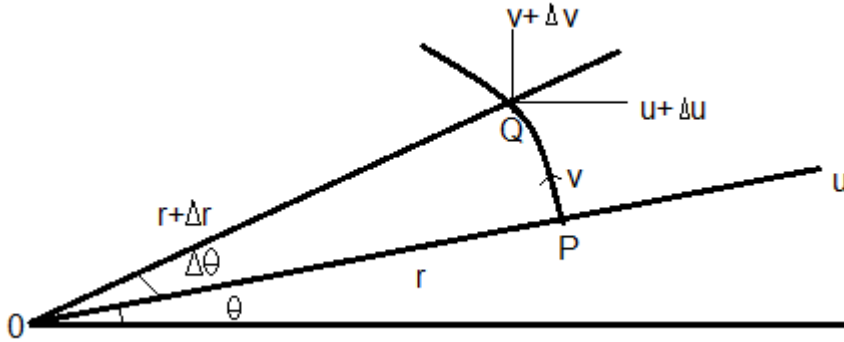


Figure 3.2

and the radial component of acceleration

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \lim_{\Delta\theta \rightarrow 0} \frac{(u + \Delta u) \cos \Delta\theta - (v + \Delta v) \sin \Delta\theta - u}{\Delta t} \\
 &= \lim_{\Delta\theta \rightarrow 0} \frac{u + \Delta u - v \Delta\theta - u}{\Delta t} \\
 &= \lim_{\Delta\theta \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta u - v \Delta\theta}{\Delta t} \\
 &= \frac{du}{dt} - v \frac{d\theta}{dt} \\
 &= \frac{d}{dt} (r') - r \theta' \theta' \\
 &= r'' - r \theta'^2 \quad (3.1.7)
 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly the transverse component of acceleration is

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \lim_{\Delta\theta \rightarrow 0} \frac{(u + \Delta u) \sin \Delta\theta + (v + \Delta v) \cos \Delta\theta - v}{\Delta t} \\
 &= \lim_{\Delta\theta \rightarrow 0} \frac{u \Delta\theta + v - v + \Delta v}{\Delta t} \\
 &= \lim_{\Delta\theta \rightarrow 0} \frac{u \Delta\theta + \Delta v}{\Delta t} \\
 &= u \frac{d\theta}{dt} + \frac{dv}{dt} \\
 &= r' \theta' + \frac{d}{dt} (r \theta') \\
 &= r' \theta' + r' \theta' + r \theta''
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= 2 r' \theta' + r \frac{d\theta'}{dt} \\
&= \frac{1}{r} \left[ 2 r r' \theta' + r^2 \frac{d\theta'}{dt} \right] \\
&= \frac{1}{r} \frac{d}{dt} (r^2 \theta') \tag{3.1.8}
\end{aligned}$$

Thus the radial and transverse components of acceleration are

$$r'' - r \theta'^2 \text{ and } \frac{1}{r} \frac{d}{dt} (r^2 \theta') \tag{3.1.9}$$

### 3.2 Motion under a central force

Let the force acting on a particle of mass  $m$  be  $mF(r)$  and let it be directed towards the origin, then the equations of motion are

$$m(r'' - r \theta'^2) = -mF(r) \quad (\text{along radial direction}) \tag{3.2.1}$$

$$\frac{m}{r} \frac{d}{dt} (r^2 \theta') = 0 \quad (\text{along transverse direction}) \tag{3.2.2}$$

From (3.2.2)

$$r^2 \theta' = \text{constant} = h \text{ (say)} \tag{3.2.3}$$

then (3.2.1) gives

$$r'' - r \theta'^2 = -F(r) \tag{3.2.4}$$

To eliminate  $t$  between (3.2.3) and (3.2.4) to get a differential equation between  $r$  and  $\theta$ . For our convenient to use  $u = \frac{1}{r}$  instead of  $r$ , so that making use of (3.2.3),

$$\begin{aligned}
r' &= \frac{dr}{dt} = \frac{dr}{du} \frac{du}{d\theta} \frac{d\theta}{dt} \\
&= - \frac{1}{u^2} \frac{du}{d\theta} \frac{h}{r^2} \\
r' &= - h \frac{du}{d\theta} \tag{3.2.5}
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
r'' &= \frac{d}{dt} \left( - h \frac{du}{d\theta} \right) \\
&= \frac{d}{d\theta} \left( - h \frac{du}{d\theta} \right) \frac{d\theta}{dt} \\
&= - h \frac{d^2 u}{d\theta^2} \cdot h u^2 \quad \left( \text{since } \frac{d\theta}{dt} = \frac{h}{r^2} \right)
\end{aligned}$$

$$r'' = -h^2 u^2 \frac{d^2 u}{d\theta^2} \quad (3.2.6)$$

From (3.2.3), (3.2.4) and (3.2.6)

$$-F(r) = r'' - r \theta'^2$$

$$-F(r) = -h^2 u^2 \frac{d^2 u}{d\theta^2} - \frac{1}{u} h^2 u^4 \quad (\text{since } r = \frac{1}{u}, \theta' = hu^2)$$

$$-F(r) = -h^2 u^2 \left( \frac{d^2 u}{d\theta^2} + u \right)$$

$$\frac{d^2 u}{d\theta^2} + u = \frac{F}{h^2 u^2} \quad (3.2.7)$$

Where  $F$  can be easily expressed as a function of  $u$ . This is the differential equation of the second order whose integration will give the relation between  $u$  and  $\theta$  i.e. the equation of the path described by a particle moving under a central force  $F$  per unit mass.

### 3.3 Motion Under the Inverse Square Law

If the central force per unit mass is  $\mu/r^2$  or  $\mu u^2$ , Equation (3.2.7)

gives

$$\frac{d^2 u}{d\theta^2} + u = \frac{\mu}{h^2} \quad (3.3.1)$$

Integrating this linear equation with constant coefficients,

$$\int \frac{d^2 u}{d\theta^2} + u = \int \frac{\mu}{h^2}$$

The auxiliary equation is

$$(m^2 + 1) u = 0$$

$$m = \pm i \quad \alpha = 0, \beta = 1$$

$$\therefore u = A \cos \theta + B \sin \theta$$

let  $A = A \cos \alpha$ ,  $B = A \sin \alpha$

$$u = A \cos \alpha \cos \theta + A \sin \alpha \sin \theta$$

$$u = A \cos(\theta - \alpha)$$

Particular integral =  $\frac{\mu}{h^2} \frac{1}{D^2+1} e^{0.x}$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{\mu}{h^2} \\
\therefore u &= A \cos(\theta - \alpha) + \frac{\mu}{h^2} \\
\frac{1}{r} &= A \cos(\theta - \alpha) + \frac{\mu}{h^2} \\
\text{multiply by } \frac{h^2}{\mu}, \quad \frac{\frac{h^2}{\mu}}{r} &= \frac{h^2 A}{\mu} \cos(\theta - \alpha) + 1 \\
\frac{L}{r} &= e \cos(\theta - \alpha) + 1 \quad \left[ h^2 = \mu L, e = \frac{h^2 A}{\mu} \right] \quad (3.3.2)
\end{aligned}$$

Which represents a conic with a focus at the centre of force. Thus if a particle moves under a central force  $\mu/r^2$  per unit mass, the path is a conic section with a focus at the centre. The conic can be ellipse, parabola or hyperbola according as  $e \leq$  or  $\geq 1$ .

Now the velocity  $V$  of the particle is

$$\begin{aligned}
V^2 &= r'^2 + r^2 \theta'^2 = \left( \frac{dr}{du} \frac{du}{d\theta} \frac{d\theta}{dt} \right)^2 + \frac{1}{u^2} (h u^2)^2 \\
&= h^2 \left( \frac{du}{d\theta} \right)^2 + \frac{1}{u^2} h^2 u^4 \quad \left[ \text{since } \theta' = h u^2, r^2 = 1/u^2 \right] \\
&= h^2 \left( \frac{du}{d\theta} \right)^2 + h^2 u^2 \quad (3.3.3)
\end{aligned}$$

Using (3.3.2)

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{L}{r} &= e \cos(\theta - \alpha) + 1 \\
L u &= e \cos(\theta - \alpha) + 1 \\
L \frac{du}{d\theta} &= -e \sin(\theta - \alpha) \quad (3.3.4)
\end{aligned}$$

From (3.3.3) and (3.3.4)

$$\begin{aligned}
V^2 &= \mu L \left[ \frac{e^2 \sin^2(\theta - \alpha)}{L^2} + u^2 \right] \\
&= \mu L \left[ \frac{e^2 \sin^2(\theta - \alpha)}{L^2} + \frac{(1 + e \cos(\theta - \alpha))^2}{L^2} \right] \\
&= \frac{\mu}{L} [e^2 \sin^2(\theta - \alpha) + 1 + e^2 \cos^2(\theta - \alpha) + 2e \cos(\theta - \alpha)]
\end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{\mu}{L} [1 + e^2 + 2e \cos(\theta - \alpha)] \\
&= \frac{\mu}{L} [(e^2 - 1) + 2(1 + e \cos(\theta - \alpha))] \\
&= \frac{\mu}{L} (e^2 - 1) + \frac{2\mu}{L} \cdot \frac{L}{r} \\
V^2 &= \frac{\mu}{L} (e^2 - 1) + \frac{2\mu}{r} \tag{3.3.5}
\end{aligned}$$

If the path is an **ellipse**  $L = a(1 - e^2)$

If the path is a **parabola**  $e = 1$  (3.3.6)

If the path is a **hyperbola**  $L = a(e^2 - 1)$

So that

$$\begin{aligned}
V^2 &= \mu \left( \frac{2}{r} + \frac{1}{a} \right) \text{ in the case of a hyperbola} \\
&= \mu \left( \frac{2}{r} \right) \text{ in the case of a parabola} \\
&= \mu \left( \frac{2}{r} - \frac{1}{a} \right) \text{ in the case of an ellipse.}
\end{aligned} \tag{3.3.7}$$

Thus if the particle is projected with velocity  $V$  from a point at a distance  $r$  from the centre of force, the path will be hyperbola, parabola or ellipse according as

$$V^2 - \frac{2\mu}{r} \geq \text{or} \leq 0 \tag{3.3.8}$$

If the central force is  $\mu/r^2$  per unit mass, the path is a conic section with the centre of forces at one focus. Conversely if the path is a conic section

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{L}{r} &= Lu = e \cos(\theta - \alpha) + 1 \\
u &= \frac{e \cos(\theta - \alpha) + 1}{L}
\end{aligned}$$

With a focus at the centre of force, then the force per unit mass is

$$\begin{aligned}
F &= h^2 u^2 \left( \frac{d^2 u}{d\theta^2} + u \right) \\
&= h^2 u^2 \left[ \frac{-e \cos(\theta - \alpha)}{L} + \frac{e \cos(\theta - \alpha) + 1}{L} \right]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{h^2}{L} u^2 \\
&= \mu / r^2
\end{aligned}
\tag{3.3.9}$$

So that the central force follows the inverse square law.

Since all planets are observed to move in elliptic orbits with the Sun at one focus, it follows that the law of attraction between different planets and Sun must be the inverse square law.

### 3.4 Circular Motion of Satellites

Just as planets move in elliptic orbits with the Sun in one focus, the man-made artificial satellites move in elliptic (or circular) orbits with the Earth (or rather its centre) at one focus.

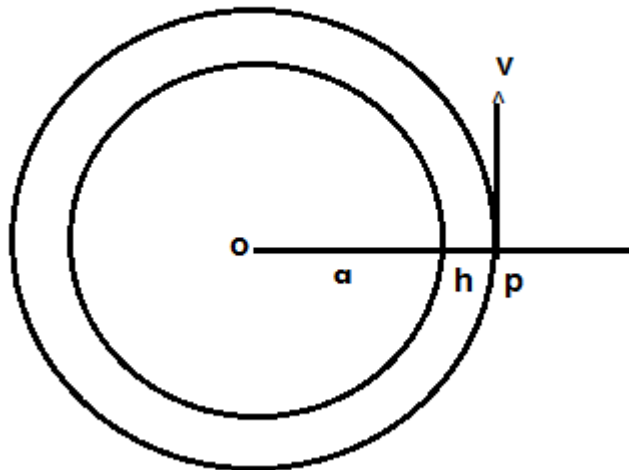


Figure 3.3

If the Earth is of mass  $M$  and radius  $a$  and a satellite of mass  $m$  ( $\ll M$ ) is projected from a point  $P$  at a height  $h$  above the Earth with velocity  $V$  at right angles to  $OP$  it will move under a central force  $GmM/r^2$ . Since the central force of a circular orbits is  $mV^2/r$ , so that, if the path is to be circular,

$$\frac{mV^2}{a+h} = \frac{GmM}{(a+h)^2} \quad \text{or} \quad V^2 = \frac{GM}{a+h}
\tag{3.4.1}$$

If  $g$  is the acceleration due to gravity, then the gravitational force on a particle of mass  $m$  on the surface to the Earth is  $mg$ . Alternatively from Newton's inverse square law, it is  $GMm/a^2$  so that

$$\frac{GMm}{a^2} = mg \text{ or } GM = ga^2 \quad (3.4.2)$$

From (3.4.1) and (3.4.2)

$$V^2 = \frac{ga^2}{a+h}$$

$$V = \frac{\sqrt{ga}}{(a+h)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \quad (3.4.3)$$

This gives the velocity of a satellite describing a circular orbit at a height  $h$  above the surface of the Earth. Its time period is

$$T = \frac{2\pi(a+h)}{v} \quad [x = vt \Rightarrow t = x/v]$$

$$= \frac{2\pi(a+h)(a+h)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\sqrt{ga}}$$

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{ga}} (a+h)^{\frac{3}{2}} \quad (3.4.4)$$

The Earth completes one revolution about its axis in twenty-four hours. As such if  $T$  is 24 hours, the satellite would have the same period as the Earth and would appear stationary, to an observer on the Earth.

### 3.5 Elliptic Motion of Satellites

If a satellite is projected at a height  $a+h$  above the centre of the Earth with a velocity different from  $\sqrt{ga} / \sqrt{a+h}$  or if it is not projected at right angles to the radius vector, the orbit will not be circular, but can be elliptic, parabolic or hyperbolic depending on  $V$  and the angle of projection.

If the angle of projection is  $90^\circ$  and the orbit is an elliptic with semi major axis  $a'$  and eccentricity  $e$ , then there are two possibilities depending on whether the point of projection is the apogee or the perigee.

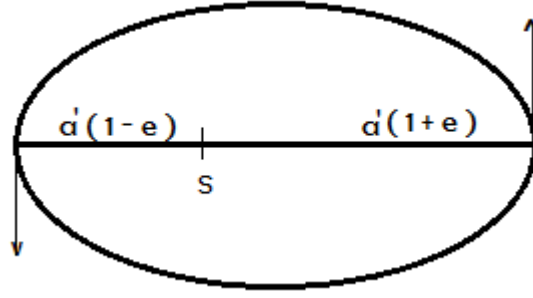


Figure 3.4

Using equation (3.3.7)

$$V^2 = \mu \left( \frac{2}{r} - \frac{1}{a} \right) \text{ in the case of an ellipse}$$

$$V^2 = \mu \left( \frac{2}{a'(1+e)} - \frac{1}{a'} \right), \quad a'(1+e) = a + h \quad (3.5.1)$$

$$\text{or } V^2 = \left( \frac{2}{a'(1-e)} - \frac{1}{a'} \right), \quad a'(1-e) = a + h \quad (3.5.2)$$

$$\text{i.e. } V^2 = \frac{ga^2}{a+h} (1-e) \quad \text{or} \quad V^2 = \frac{ga^2}{a+h} (1+e)$$

$$\text{i.e. } V^2 = V_0^2 (1-e) \quad \text{or} \quad V^2 = V_0^2 (1+e) \quad (3.5.3)$$

where  $V_0$  is the velocity required for a circular orbit for which  $e = 0$ .

Thus if  $V > V_0$ , the point of projection is nearest point of the orbit to the centre of the Earth and if  $V < V_0$ , this point is the furthest point.

For the elliptic orbit, the time period is

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{ga}} a'^{3/2} \quad (3.5.4)$$

$$\text{Where if } V < V_0, \quad e = \sqrt{1 - \frac{V^2}{V_0^2}}, \quad a' = \frac{a+h}{1 + \sqrt{1 - \frac{V^2}{V_0^2}}} \quad (3.5.5)$$

$$\text{and if } V > V_0, \quad e = \sqrt{\frac{V^2}{V_0^2} - 1}, \quad a' = \frac{a+h}{1 - \sqrt{\frac{V^2}{V_0^2} - 1}} \quad (3.5.6)$$

If  $h_{max}$  and  $h_{min}$  are the maximum and minimum heights of a satellite above the Earth's surface and  $a$  is the radius of the Earth,

$$\frac{a'(1+e)}{a'(1-e)} = \frac{a+h_{max}}{a+h_{min}}$$

$$\frac{(1+e)}{a+h_{max}} = \frac{(1-e)}{a+h_{min}}$$

$$= \frac{2}{2a+h_{max}+h_{min}}$$

Or

$$\frac{(1+e)}{a+h_{max}} = \frac{1}{a+\frac{h_{max}+h_{min}}{2}} = \frac{e}{\frac{h_{max}-h_{min}}{2}}$$

$$e = \frac{h_{max}-h_{min}}{2a+h_{max}+h_{min}} \quad (3.5.7)$$

### 3.6 Miscellaneous Mathematical Models through Ordinary Differential Equations of the Second Order

#### (i) The Catenary

A perfectly inflexible string is suspended under gravity from two fixed points  $A$  and  $B$

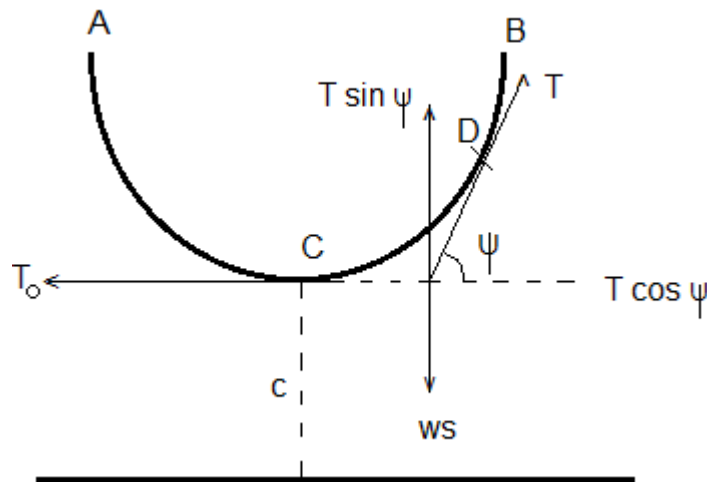


Figure 3.5

Consider the equilibrium of the part  $CD$  of the string of length  $s$  where  $C$  is the lowest point of the string at which the tangent is horizontal. The forces acting on this part of the string are (i) tension  $T_0$  at  $C$  (ii) tension  $T$  at point  $D$  along tangent at  $D$  (iii) weight  $ws$  of the string.

Equating the horizontal and vertical components of forces, then

$$T \cos \Psi = T_0, \quad T \sin \Psi = ws \quad (3.6.1)$$

Let  $T_0$  be equal to weight of length  $c$  of the string, then (3.6.1) gives

$$\frac{T \sin \Psi}{T \cos \Psi} = \frac{ws}{T_0}$$

$$\tan \Psi = \frac{ws}{wc} = \frac{s}{c} \quad (3.6.2)$$

$$s = c \tan \Psi$$

$$\frac{ds}{d\Psi} = c \sec^2 \Psi = \rho \quad (3.6.3)$$

Where  $\rho$  is radius of curvature of the string at  $D$  so that

$$\frac{\left(1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2\right)^{3/2}}{\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}} = c \left(1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2\right)$$

$$c \left(\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right) = \frac{\left(1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2\right)^{3/2}}{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} \quad (3.6.4)$$

Which is a non-linear differential equation of second order .

If  $\frac{dy}{dx} = P$ , then (3.6.4) gives

$$\left(1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2\right)^{1/2} = c \left(\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right)$$

$$(1 + P^2)^{1/2} = c \frac{dP}{dx}$$

$$\frac{dP}{(1+P^2)^{1/2}} = \frac{dx}{c} \quad (3.6.5)$$

Integrating  $\sinh^{-1}P = \frac{x}{c} + A \quad (3.6.6)$

when  $x = 0$ ,  $P = 0$ , so that  $A = 0$  and

$$\sinh^{-1}P = \frac{x}{c}$$

$$P = \sinh \frac{x}{c}$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \sinh \frac{x}{c} \quad (3.6.7)$$

$$dy = \sinh \frac{x}{c} dx$$

Integrating  $y = \frac{\cosh \frac{x}{c}}{\frac{1}{c}}$

$$y = c \cosh \frac{x}{c} \quad (3.6.8)$$

This is the equation of the common catenary.

**(ii) A Curve of Pursuit**

A ship at the point  $(a,0)$  sights a ship at  $(0,0)$  moving along  $y$ -axis with a uniform velocity  $ku$  ( $0 < k < 1$ ). It begins to pursue ship  $B$  with a velocity  $u$  always moving in the direction of the ship  $B$  so that at any time  $AB$  is along the tangent to the path of  $A$ .

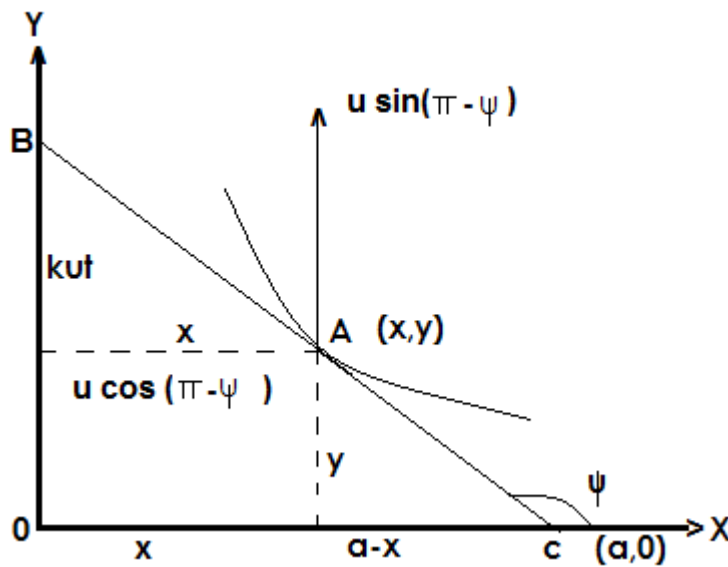


Figure 3.6

From the figure 3.6

$$\begin{aligned} \tan(\pi - \Psi) &= \frac{kut - y}{x} \\ -\tan \Psi &= \frac{kut - y}{x} \\ -\frac{dy}{dx} &= -\frac{y}{x} + \frac{kut}{x} \\ x \frac{dy}{dx} - y &= -kut \end{aligned} \quad (3.6.9)$$

Differentiating with respect to  $x$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} x \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \frac{dy}{dx} (1) - \frac{dy}{dx} &= -ku \frac{dt}{dx} \\ x \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} &= -ku \frac{dt}{dx} \end{aligned} \quad (3.6.10)$$

Now  $\frac{dx}{dt}$  = horizontal component of velocity of

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = - u \cos \Psi$$

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = - \frac{u}{\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}}$$

$$\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} = - u \frac{dt}{dx}$$

So that from (3.6.9) and (3.6.10)

$$x \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = k \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} \quad (3.6.11)$$

Putting  $\frac{dy}{dx} = P$ , it gives

$$x \frac{dP}{dx} = k \sqrt{1 + P^2}$$

$$\frac{dP}{\sqrt{1 + P^2}} = k \frac{dx}{x} \quad (3.6.12)$$

Integrating,

$$\sinh P = k \log \left(\frac{x}{a}\right)$$

$$P = \sinh^{-1} k \log \left(\frac{x}{a}\right)$$

$$P = k \sinh^{-1} \log \left(\frac{x}{a}\right)$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = k \left( \sinh^{-1} \log \left(\frac{x}{a}\right) \right) \quad (3.6.13)$$



## MISCELLANEOUS MATHEMATICAL MODELS THROUGH ODE OF THE SECOND ORDER

**Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

Second-order ordinary differential equations (ODEs) are powerful tools for modeling various phenomena in mathematics, physics, engineering, and beyond. Here are some miscellaneous mathematical models represented by second-order ODEs, along with brief descriptions of each:

### 1. Simple Harmonic Motion

Simple Harmonic Motion (SHM) is a fundamental concept in physics that describes oscillatory motion. Here's a detailed look at SHM, including its mathematical representation, characteristics, and applications.

#### Definition

SHM is the motion of an object that oscillates back and forth around an equilibrium position, where the restoring force is directly proportional to the displacement from that position and acts in the opposite direction.

#### Mathematical Representation

1. **Differential Equation:** The motion can be described by the second-order ordinary differential equation:

$$d^2x/dt^2 + \omega^2 x = 0$$

where:

- $x(t)$  is the displacement from the equilibrium position,
- $\omega$  is the angular frequency, defined as  $\omega = 2\pi f$ , where  $f$  is the frequency of oscillation.

2. **General Solution:** The general solution to this equation is:

$$x(t) = A \cos(\omega t + \phi) \quad x(t) = A \cos(\omega t + \phi)$$

or equivalently:

$$x(t) = A \sin(\omega t + \phi) \quad x(t) = A \sin(\omega t + \phi)$$

where:

- $A$  is the amplitude (maximum displacement),
- $\phi$  is the phase constant (determined by initial conditions).

### Key Characteristics

- **Amplitude  $A$ :** The maximum displacement from the equilibrium position.
- **Period  $T$ :** The time taken for one complete cycle of motion, given by:  

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} \quad T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega}$$
- **Frequency  $f$ :** The number of cycles per unit time, related to the period by:  $f = \frac{1}{T}$
- **Angular Frequency  $\omega$ :** Indicates how quickly the motion oscillates, related to frequency:  $\omega = 2\pi f$

### Energy in SHM

- **Potential Energy (PE):**

$$PE = \frac{1}{2} k x^2$$

- **Kinetic Energy (KE):**

$$KE = \frac{1}{2} m v^2$$

where  $v = \frac{dx}{dt} = -A\omega \sin(\omega t + \phi)$

- **Total Mechanical Energy (E):**

$$E = KE + PE = \frac{1}{2} k A^2$$

This total energy remains constant in ideal conditions without damping.

### Examples of Simple Harmonic Motion

1. **Mass-Spring System:** A mass attached to a spring that is stretched or compressed and then released.

2. **Pendulum (for small angles):** A simple pendulum swinging back and forth, approximated as SHM when the angle is small.
3. **Vibrating Tuning Fork:** The prongs of a tuning fork move back and forth in SHM when struck.

### Applications

- **Engineering:** SHM principles are used in designing structures to withstand oscillatory forces (like earthquakes).
- **Music:** Instruments utilize SHM for sound production.
- **Physics:** Understanding wave motion and resonance phenomena

**Equation:**  $\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} + \omega^2 y = 0$

**Model:** This models the motion of a mass on a spring (Hooke's Law) or a pendulum for small angles, where  $y$  is the displacement and  $\omega$  is the angular frequency.

### 2. Damped Harmonic Motion

Damped Harmonic Motion is a variation of simple harmonic motion (SHM) where the oscillations decrease over time due to the presence of a damping force. This damping force is often caused by friction or resistance, leading to a gradual loss of energy in the system.

#### Mathematical Representation

1. **Differential Equation:** The motion can be described by the second-order ordinary differential equation:

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + 2\zeta\omega_0\frac{dx}{dt} + \omega_0^2 x = 0$$

where:

- $x(t)$  is the displacement from the equilibrium position,
- $\omega_0$  is the natural angular frequency of the system (without damping),

- $\zeta$  is the damping ratio, which characterizes the amount of damping.

## 2. Types of Damping:

- **Underdamped** ( $\zeta < 1$ ): Oscillations occur with gradually decreasing amplitude.
- **Critically damped** ( $\zeta = 1$ ): The system returns to equilibrium as quickly as possible without oscillating.
- **Overdamped** ( $\zeta > 1$ ): The system returns to equilibrium slowly without oscillating.

### General Solution for Underdamped Motion

For an underdamped system ( $\zeta < 1$ ), the solution can be expressed as:

$$x(t) = A e^{-\zeta \omega_0 t} \cos(\omega_d t + \phi)$$

where:

- $A$  is the initial amplitude,
- $\phi$  is the phase constant,
- $\omega_d = \omega_0 \sqrt{1 - \zeta^2}$  is the damped angular frequency.

### Key Characteristics

1. **Amplitude Decay:** The amplitude of oscillations decreases exponentially over time due to the damping factor  $e^{-\zeta \omega_0 t}$ .
2. **Damped Frequency:** The frequency of oscillation in a damped system is lower than the natural frequency due to the damping effect, represented by  $\omega_d$ .
3. **Energy Loss:** As the system oscillates, mechanical energy is converted into other forms (like thermal energy), leading to a continuous decrease in total mechanical energy.

### Example: Damped Mass-Spring System

Consider a mass  $m$  attached to a spring with a damping force proportional to the velocity (like friction):

1. **Damping Force:** The damping force can be expressed as  $F_d = -b \frac{dx}{dt}$ , where  $b$  is the damping coefficient.
2. **Equation of Motion:** Applying Newton's second law:
 
$$m \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + b \frac{dx}{dt} + kx = 0$$
3. **Natural Frequency and Damping Ratio:** From the definitions:
 
$$\omega_0 = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}, \quad \zeta = \frac{b}{2\sqrt{mk}}$$

### Applications

- **Mechanical Systems:** Damped oscillators are common in engineering, where energy dissipation is essential (e.g., car suspensions).
- **Seismology:** Understanding building responses to earthquakes involves damped harmonic motion.
- **Electronics:** RLC circuits exhibit damped oscillations when disturbed.

**Equation:**  $\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} + 2\zeta\omega_0 \frac{dy}{dt} + \omega_0^2 y = 0$

**Model:** This represents a mass-spring system with damping (e.g., friction). The parameter  $\zeta$  is the damping ratio.

### 3. Forced Oscillation

Forced oscillation refers to the situation in which a system is subjected to an external periodic force, causing it to oscillate. Unlike simple harmonic motion, which occurs naturally when a system is displaced from equilibrium, forced oscillation occurs when a driving force continuously acts on the system.

### Mathematical Representation

1. **Differential Equation:** The motion of a forced oscillator can be described by the following second-order ordinary differential equation:

$$m \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + b \frac{dx}{dt} + kx = F_0 \cos(\omega t)$$

where:

- $m$  is the mass,
- $b$  is the damping coefficient,
- $k$  is the spring constant,
- $F_0$  is the amplitude of the external driving force,
- $\omega$  is the angular frequency of the driving force,
- $x(t)$  is the displacement from equilibrium.

2. **Homogeneous and Particular Solutions:** The general solution consists of two parts:

- **Homogeneous solution** ( $x_h(t)$ ): This is the solution to the associated homogeneous equation (without the driving force).
- **Particular solution** ( $x_p(t)$ ): This is the solution that satisfies the entire equation.

### General Solution

For the forced oscillator, the general solution can be expressed as:

$$x(t) = x_h(t) + x_p(t)$$

1. **Homogeneous Solution:** For the homogeneous part, the solution is:

$$x_h(t) = A e^{-\frac{b}{2m}t} \cos(\omega_0 t + \phi)$$

where  $\omega_0 = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$  is the natural frequency of the system.

2. **Particular Solution:** The particular solution for a forced oscillator in steady state (assuming  $b$  is small) is:

$$x_p(t) = B \cos(\omega t - \delta)$$

where:

- $B$  is the amplitude of the steady-state oscillation,
- $\delta$  is the phase difference between the driving force and the displacement.

3. **Amplitude of the Steady-State Solution:** The amplitude  $B$  can be found using:

$$B = \frac{F_0/m}{\sqrt{(\omega_0^2 - \omega^2)^2 + (b\omega/m)^2}}$$

### Resonance

One of the critical phenomena in forced oscillations is **resonance**. This occurs when the frequency of the external force  $\omega$  approaches the natural frequency  $\omega_0$  of the system. As  $\omega$  approaches  $\omega_0$ , the amplitude  $B$  can become very large, leading to significant oscillations.

### Applications

1. **Mechanical Systems:** Forced oscillation principles are seen in vehicle suspensions, where shocks and bumps lead to forced oscillations.
2. **Musical Instruments:** Instruments like violins or guitars are forced to oscillate by the strings being plucked or bowed.
3. **Electrical Circuits:** RLC circuits can exhibit forced oscillations when subjected to an alternating current (AC) voltage source.
4. **Seismology:** Structures are designed to withstand forced oscillations caused by earthquakes.

**Equation:**  $m \frac{d^2y}{dt^2} + b \frac{dy}{dt} + \omega_0^2 y = F_0 \cos(\omega t)$   
**Model:** This models a driven harmonic oscillator, where an external periodic force  $F_0 \cos(\omega t)$  is applied to the system.

## 4. Beam Deflection

Beam deflection is an important topic in structural engineering and mechanics that describes how a beam bends under applied loads. Understanding beam deflection is crucial for ensuring that structures can withstand various forces without failing. Here's a comprehensive overview of beam deflection, including the governing equations, types of beams, and methods of analysis.

### Basics of Beam Deflection

1. **Definition:** Beam deflection refers to the displacement of a beam from its original (unloaded) position when subjected to external loads.
2. **Types of Beams:**
  - **Simply Supported Beam:** Supported at both ends but free to rotate.
  - **Cantilever Beam:** Fixed at one end and free at the other.
  - **Fixed Beam:** Fixed at both ends.

### Governing Equation

The deflection  $y(x)$  of a beam can be described by the following fourth-order differential equation derived from the Euler-Bernoulli beam theory:

$$EI \frac{d^4 y}{dx^4} = w(x)$$

where:

- $E$  is the modulus of elasticity,
- $I$  is the moment of inertia of the beam's cross-section,
- $w(x)$  is the distributed load per unit length acting on the beam.

### Boundary Conditions

The solution to the deflection equation depends on the boundary conditions, which vary for different types of beams. Common boundary conditions include:

- **Simply Supported Beam:**  $y(0) = 0$ ,  $y(L) = 0$  (where  $L$  is the length of the beam).
- **Cantilever Beam:**  $y(0) = 0$ ,  $\frac{dy}{dx}(0) = 0$ .



- Fixed Beam:  $y(0)=0, y'(0)=0, y(L)=0, y'(L)=0$  at one end, and similar conditions at the other end.

**Example: Simply Supported Beam with Uniform Load**

Consider a simply supported beam of length  $L$  subjected to a uniform distributed load  $w$  (force per unit length).

1. **Governing Equation:** The equation becomes:

$$EI \frac{d^4y}{dx^4} = -w$$

2. **Integrating:** Integrate the equation four times to obtain the deflection equation:

$$y(x) = \frac{w}{24EI} x^4 - \frac{wL}{12EI} x^3 + C_1 x^2 + C_2 x + C_3$$

3. **Applying Boundary Conditions:** Use the boundary conditions to solve for the constants  $C_1, C_2, C_3$ .

4. **Deflection Formula:** The maximum deflection  $y_{max}$  for a simply supported beam under uniform load is given by:

$$y_{max} = \frac{5wL^4}{384EI}$$

**Applications of Beam Deflection**

- **Structural Design:** Ensuring beams do not deflect excessively under load is crucial for structural integrity.
- **Mechanical Engineering:** In machine design, beam deflection affects performance and durability.
- **Civil Engineering:** Bridge and building designs must account for beam deflections to prevent structural failure.

**Equation:**  $EI \frac{d^4y}{dx^4} = q(x)$

**Model:** In structural engineering, this equation describes the deflection  $y$  of a

beam under a distributed load  $q(x)q(x)q(x)$ , where  $E$  is the modulus of elasticity and  $I$  is the moment of inertia.

## 5. Electrical Circuits

Electrical circuits are fundamental components of electrical engineering and physics, involving the movement of electric charge through conductive pathways. Here's an overview of key concepts, components, and types of electrical circuits.

### Basic Concepts

#### 1. Circuit Elements:

- **Resistor (R):** Opposes the flow of current, causing a voltage drop.
- **Capacitor (C):** Stores electrical energy in an electric field, releasing it when needed.
- **Inductor (L):** Stores energy in a magnetic field when current flows through it.
- **Voltage Source (V):** Provides electrical energy, such as batteries or power supplies.
- **Current Source:** Delivers a constant current regardless of the voltage across it.

#### 2. Ohm's Law:

$$V=IR$$

where  $V$  is the voltage,  $I$  is the current, and  $R$  is the resistance.

This fundamental law relates voltage, current, and resistance.

### Types of Circuits

#### 1. Series Circuits:

- Components are connected end-to-end, so the same current flows through each component.

- Total resistance  $R_t$  is the sum of individual resistances:  
 $R_t = R_1 + R_2 + R_3 + \dots$
- Total voltage  $V_t$  is the sum of voltages across each component:  
 $V_t = V_1 + V_2 + V_3 + \dots$

## 2. Parallel Circuits:

- Components are connected across the same voltage source, sharing the same voltage.
- Total resistance  $R_t$  can be found using:  
 $\frac{1}{R_t} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} + \dots$
- Total current  $I_t$  is the sum of the currents through each branch:  
 $I_t = I_1 + I_2 + I_3 + \dots$

## Analysis of RLC Circuits

RLC circuits contain resistors, capacitors, and inductors. They can be analyzed in both time and frequency domains.

1. **Series RLC Circuit:** The governing differential equation for a series RLC circuit is:

$$L \frac{d^2i}{dt^2} + R \frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C} i = V(t)$$

where  $i$  is the current through the circuit.

2. **Parallel RLC Circuit:** The governing equation can be expressed similarly, but with different arrangements of elements.

## Damped and Forced Oscillations

In RLC circuits, oscillatory behavior can occur due to the interaction of inductors and capacitors:

1. **Damped Oscillations:**

- Occur when resistance is present, leading to energy loss.

- The circuit response can be analyzed using second-order differential equations similar to those used in mechanical systems.

## 2. Forced Oscillations:

- When an external voltage source provides a periodic input, the circuit can resonate at its natural frequency.
- The amplitude of oscillation depends on the frequency of the applied voltage and can lead to resonance phenomena.

## Applications

- **Power Distribution:** Electrical circuits are the basis of electrical power systems, enabling energy distribution.
- **Signal Processing:** RLC circuits are used in filters, oscillators, and amplifiers.
- **Electronics:** All electronic devices, from smartphones to computers, rely on complex electrical circuits for functionality.

**Equation:**  $L \frac{d^2i}{dt^2} + R \frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C} i = V(t)$  **Model:** This is the second-order differential equation for an RLC circuit, where  $i$  is the current,  $R$  is resistance,  $L$  is inductance,  $C$  is capacitance, and  $V(t)$  is the voltage source.

## 6. Population Dynamics

Population dynamics is the study of how populations change over time and the factors that influence these changes. It encompasses concepts from biology, ecology, and applied mathematics to understand population growth, decline, and interactions with the environment.

### Key Concepts in Population Dynamics

1. **Population Size:** The number of individuals in a population at a given time.

2. **Population Density:** The number of individuals per unit area or volume.
3. **Carrying Capacity (K):** The maximum population size that an environment can sustain indefinitely without degrading the habitat.
4. **Growth Rate:** The rate at which a population increases or decreases, often expressed as a percentage of the population size.

## Mathematical Models

Several mathematical models describe population dynamics, ranging from simple to complex. Here are some key models:

### 1. Exponential Growth Model

This model describes unchecked population growth:

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = rN$$

where:

- $N$  is the population size,
- $r$  is the intrinsic growth rate,
- $t$  is time.

**Solution:** The solution to this differential equation is:

$$N(t) = N_0 e^{rt}$$

where  $N_0$  is the initial population size.

### Characteristics:

- J-shaped curve.
- Occurs in ideal conditions with abundant resources.

### 2. Logistic Growth Model

This model accounts for environmental limits:

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = rN \left(1 - \frac{N}{K}\right)$$

where  $K$  is the carrying capacity.

**Solution:** The solution can be expressed as:

$$N(t) = \frac{K}{1 + \left(\frac{K - N_0}{N_0}\right)e^{-rt}}$$

## Characteristics:

- S-shaped (sigmoidal) curve.
- Initial exponential growth followed by slowing growth as the population approaches carrying capacity.

### 3. Lotka-Volterra Equations

These equations model predator-prey dynamics:

1. **Prey Growth:**  $\frac{dx}{dt} = \alpha x - \beta xy$   
 $= \alpha x - \beta xy$
2. **Predator Growth:**  $\frac{dy}{dt} = \delta xy - \gamma y$   
 $= \delta xy - \gamma y$

where:

- $x$  is the prey population,
- $y$  is the predator population,
- $\alpha$  is the growth rate of prey,
- $\beta$  is the rate of predation,
- $\delta$  is the growth rate of predators per prey eaten,
- $\gamma$  is the predator mortality rate.

### Applications of Population Dynamics

1. **Conservation Biology:** Understanding population dynamics is crucial for conserving endangered species and managing ecosystems.
2. **Agriculture:** Models help in predicting crop yields and managing pest populations.
3. **Epidemiology:** Population dynamics models are used to understand the spread of diseases.
4. **Wildlife Management:** Managing animal populations in natural reserves requires knowledge of growth rates and carrying capacities.

**Equation:**  $\frac{d^2P}{dt^2} + a\frac{dP}{dt} + bP = 0$   
**Model:** In biology, this could model the dynamics of

populations where PPP is the population size, influenced by growth and decay factors.

## 7. Vibrating String

The vibrating string is a classic problem in physics and engineering, illustrating wave motion, resonance, and the principles of harmonic oscillation. Here's an overview of how vibrating strings work, including the mathematical modeling and key concepts involved.

### Basic Concepts

1. **Wave Motion:** When a string is plucked or struck, it vibrates and produces waves that travel along its length. These vibrations can be modeled as standing waves.
2. **Boundary Conditions:** The ends of the string are typically fixed (e.g., at a guitar bridge), leading to specific boundary conditions that affect the wave patterns.
3. **Fundamental Frequency:** The lowest frequency at which a string vibrates is known as the fundamental frequency or first harmonic.

### Mathematical Modeling

1. **Wave Equation:** The behavior of a vibrating string can be described by the one-dimensional wave equation:

$$\frac{\partial^2 y(x,t)}{\partial t^2} = v^2 \frac{\partial^2 y(x,t)}{\partial x^2}$$

where:

- $y(x,t)$  is the displacement of the string at position  $x$  and time  $t$ ,
- $v$  is the wave speed on the string, given by:

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}}$$

where  $T$  is the tension in the string and  $\mu$  is the linear mass density (mass per unit length).

2. **General Solution:** The general solution to the wave equation can be expressed as:

$$y(x,t) = f(x-vt) + g(x+vt)$$

where  $f$  and  $g$  are arbitrary functions representing waves traveling in opposite directions.

3. **Standing Waves:** When two waves traveling in opposite directions interfere, standing waves are formed. The displacement can be expressed as:

$$y(x,t) = A \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \cos(\omega t)$$

where:

- $A$  is the amplitude,
- $n$  is the harmonic number (1, 2, 3,...),
- $L$  is the length of the string,
- $\omega$  is the angular frequency, given by:

$$\omega = n\pi v / L$$

### Frequencies of Vibration

The frequencies at which a string vibrates depend on its physical properties and can be calculated as:

$$f_n = \frac{n}{2L} \sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}}$$

where:

- $f_n$  is the frequency of the  $n$ -th harmonic.

### Example: Guitar String

For a guitar string:

- The tension  $T$  can be adjusted by tuning pegs.
- The length  $L$  can be varied by pressing the string against the fretboard.
- The mass per unit length  $\mu$  depends on the string's material and diameter.

### Applications



1. **Musical Instruments:** The principles of vibrating strings are fundamental to stringed instruments like guitars, violins, and pianos.
2. **Acoustics:** Understanding string vibrations helps in designing instruments for desired sound qualities.
3. **Engineering:** Vibration analysis is crucial in mechanical and civil engineering to ensure structural integrity.

**Equation:**  $\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2}$  **Model:** This wave equation describes the motion of a vibrating string, where  $y(x,t)$  is the displacement, and  $c$  is the wave speed.

## 8. Thermal Conduction

**Thermal conduction** is the process by which heat energy is transferred through a material without the bulk movement of the material itself. It occurs due to the microscopic collisions of particles and the transfer of kinetic energy from hotter regions (where particles move faster) to cooler regions (where particles move more slowly).

### Key Concepts of Thermal Conduction:

#### 1. Mechanism:

- In solids, especially metals, conduction happens primarily through the transfer of energy by free electrons and vibrations of atoms (phonons).
- In non-metals and insulators, conduction occurs mainly through vibrations in the lattice structure (phonons), as they have fewer free electrons.

#### 2. Fourier's Law:

$$q = -k \cdot A \cdot \frac{dT}{dx}$$

Where:

- $q$  is the rate of heat transfer (W),
- $k$  is the thermal conductivity of the material (W/m·K),
- $A$  is the cross-sectional area (m<sup>2</sup>),
- $\frac{dT}{dx}$  is the temperature gradient (K/m).

This law states that the heat flow rate is proportional to the temperature gradient and the material's thermal conductivity.

### 3. Thermal Conductivity ( $k$ ):

- This property measures a material's ability to conduct heat.
- Materials like metals (e.g., copper, aluminum) have high thermal conductivity, while insulators like wood, rubber, and air have low thermal conductivity.

### 4. Factors Affecting Thermal Conduction:

- **Material properties:** Conductors vs. insulators.
- **Temperature difference:** Larger temperature gradients result in faster heat transfer.
- **Cross-sectional area:** Larger areas allow more heat to pass through.
- **Length/Thickness:** The greater the distance heat must travel, the slower the conduction.

### Examples:

- A metal spoon becoming hot when left in a pot of boiling water.
- Heat traveling through a wall from a heated room to a cold exterior.

**Equation:**  $\frac{d^2T}{dx^2} = -\frac{q}{k}$

**Model:** In heat transfer, this equation can model the temperature distribution  $T(x)$  along a rod, where  $q$  is the heat generation rate and  $k$  is the thermal conductivity.

## 9. Spring-Mass-Damper System

A **spring-mass-damper system** is a classical mechanical model used to study and analyze oscillatory motion, commonly found in engineering, physics, and control theory. It consists of three fundamental elements:

1. **Mass (m)**: Represents an object with mass that can move or oscillate.
2. **Spring (k)**: Provides a restoring force proportional to the displacement of the mass from its equilibrium position (Hooke's law).
3. **Damper (c)**: Represents a damping element that resists the motion and provides a force proportional to the velocity of the mass (dissipates energy).

### Key Dynamics

#### *Equation of Motion:*

The motion of the system can be described by a second-order differential equation derived from Newton's Second Law:

$$m\ddot{x}(t) + c\dot{x}(t) + kx(t) = F(t)$$

Where:

- $m$  is the mass,
- $c$  is the damping coefficient,
- $k$  is the spring constant,
- $x(t)$  is the displacement as a function of time,
- $\dot{x}(t)$  is the velocity (first derivative of displacement),
- $\ddot{x}(t)$  is the acceleration (second derivative of displacement),
- $F(t)$  is the external force applied to the system.

### Types of Systems

The behavior of the spring-mass-damper system depends on the damping, which can be classified into three main types:

1. **Underdamped System** ( $c^2 < 4mk$ ):
  - The system oscillates with gradually decreasing amplitude.

- The damping is not strong enough to stop the oscillations quickly, leading to oscillatory behavior.
- The response has a characteristic angular frequency:  $\omega_d = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m} - \left(\frac{c}{2m}\right)^2}$

**2. Critically Damped System ( $c^2 = 4mk$ ):**

- The system returns to equilibrium as quickly as possible without oscillating.
- This represents the threshold between oscillatory and non-oscillatory behavior.
- The system exhibits the fastest return to equilibrium without overshooting.

**3. Overdamped System ( $c^2 > 4mk$ ):**

- The system returns to equilibrium without oscillating, but more slowly than in the critically damped case.
- The motion is sluggish because of excessive damping.

**Natural Frequency and Damping Ratio**

• **Natural Frequency ( $\omega_n$ ):**

$$\omega_n = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$$

This is the frequency of oscillation in the absence of damping and external forces.

• **Damping Ratio ( $\zeta$ ):**

$$\zeta = \frac{c}{2\sqrt{mk}}$$

This dimensionless quantity determines the type of damping:

- $\zeta < 1$ : Underdamped (oscillations).
- $\zeta = 1$ : Critically damped.
- $\zeta > 1$ : Overdamped (no oscillations).

**Free vs. Forced Vibration**

1. **Free Vibration:** No external force is applied ( $F(t)=0$ ), and the system moves solely due to the initial conditions (displacement and velocity).
2. **Forced Vibration:** An external periodic force  $F(t)$  is applied, which may lead to resonance if the force's frequency matches the system's natural frequency.

## Applications

The spring-mass-damper model is used in various fields, including:

- **Automotive suspension systems** (shock absorbers and springs).
- **Seismic analysis** of buildings.
- **Vibration isolation** systems in machinery.
- **Control theory** for designing systems with desired dynamic responses.

**Equation:**  $m\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + b\frac{dx}{dt} + kx = F(t)$   
**Model:** This system represents the dynamics of a mass attached to a spring and a damper, with  $F(t)$  as an external force.

## 10. Nonlinear Oscillators

**Nonlinear oscillators** are systems in which the restoring force or the damping force is not directly proportional to displacement or velocity, leading to complex, often unpredictable dynamics. Unlike linear oscillators (where the system's response is proportional to the inputs and the solutions are typically simple sine waves), nonlinear oscillators can exhibit a wide range of behaviors, including periodic, quasi-periodic, and chaotic motion.

### Key Features of Nonlinear Oscillators:

#### 1. Nonlinearity in Restoring Force:

- In a linear system, the restoring force  $F$  follows Hooke's law:  $F = -kx$ , where  $k$  is a constant and  $x$  is the displacement.

- In nonlinear systems, this relationship can be more complex, e.g.,  $F = -kx - bx^3$ , where higher-order terms (such as cubic or quadratic) are introduced, changing the system's behavior.

## 2. Nonlinear Damping:

- In linear systems, damping is often proportional to velocity ( $F_d = -cv$ ).
- In nonlinear systems, damping might depend on other powers of velocity or displacement, e.g.,  $F_d = -cv - dv^2$ , adding to the system's complexity.

3. **Mathematical Description:** The general form of a second-order nonlinear differential equation for a nonlinear oscillator is:

$$m\ddot{x}(t) + f(x, \dot{x}) = F_{\text{ext}}(t)$$

Where:

- $m$  is the mass,
- $f(x, \dot{x})$  represents the nonlinear restoring and damping forces, and
- $F_{\text{ext}}(t)$  is an external force, if any.

## Types of Nonlinear Oscillators:

### 1. Duffing Oscillator:

- A well-known example of a nonlinear oscillator that has a cubic nonlinearity in the restoring force.
- The equation is:  $m\ddot{x}(t) + cx'(t) + kx + \beta x^3 = F_{\text{ext}}(t)$
- Depending on the values of  $\beta$  (the coefficient of the nonlinear term), the system can exhibit a wide range of behaviors, from simple periodic motion to chaotic behavior.

## 2. Van der Pol Oscillator:

- A nonlinear oscillator with damping that depends on both displacement and velocity, often used to model biological systems, electrical circuits, or heartbeats.
- Its equation is:  $x''(t) - \mu(1-x^2)x'(t) + x = 0$
- For small values of  $\mu$ , the system behaves like a harmonic oscillator. As  $\mu$  increases, the system shows self-sustained oscillations, leading to limit cycles.

## 3. Pendulum with Large Amplitude:

- The motion of a simple pendulum becomes nonlinear when the angle of displacement  $\theta$  is large.
- The exact equation for a simple pendulum is:  $\theta''(t) + \frac{g}{L} \sin \theta = 0$
- For small angles,  $\sin \theta \approx \theta$ , leading to simple harmonic motion. For larger angles, the nonlinearity in  $\sin \theta$  leads to more complex motion.

## Behavior of Nonlinear Oscillators:

### 1. Limit Cycles:

- Nonlinear oscillators can exhibit stable periodic solutions known as **limit cycles**. Unlike linear systems, where oscillations die out or grow indefinitely without external driving, nonlinear systems can reach a stable oscillation.

### 2. Bifurcations:

- As system parameters are varied, nonlinear oscillators may undergo **bifurcations**, where the system transitions from one type of behavior to another (e.g., from periodic to chaotic motion).

### 3. Chaos:

- Some nonlinear systems exhibit **chaotic behavior**, where small changes in initial conditions lead to vastly different outcomes. This is characterized by sensitivity to initial conditions, a hallmark of chaotic dynamics.

#### 4. **Frequency Response:**

- In linear oscillators, the frequency response is predictable and depends on the system's natural frequency. Nonlinear oscillators, however, can display **frequency shifting**, **jump phenomena**, and **subharmonic resonance**, where the response frequency differs from the driving frequency.

#### 5. **Multiple Solutions:**

- Nonlinear systems can have multiple stable solutions for the same set of parameters. The system can jump between these solutions based on initial conditions or external perturbations.

### **Applications of Nonlinear Oscillators:**

- **Mechanical Systems:** Systems with large displacements, flexible beams, or large deformations often behave nonlinearly.
- **Electrical Circuits:** Certain circuits, such as those involving diodes or transistors, show nonlinear oscillatory behavior.
- **Biological Systems:** Nonlinear oscillators model heartbeats, neural activity, and other biological rhythms.
- **Climate and Fluid Dynamics:** Nonlinear oscillations can occur in weather patterns, ocean currents, and turbulence.

### **Example: Duffing Oscillator Chaotic Behavior**

For certain parameter values in the Duffing oscillator, the system transitions into chaos, where the motion becomes aperiodic and sensitive to initial conditions. This has important implications in fields like vibration analysis and mechanical system design, where chaos needs to be controlled or avoided



**Equation:**  $\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} + \omega^2 y + \alpha y^3 = 0$   
**Model:** This is a simple model for nonlinear oscillations where the restoring force is not linear, often used to study phenomena like anharmonic oscillators.

### Conclusion

Each of these models highlights the versatility of second-order ODEs in describing various physical systems. The choice of equation often depends on the specific nature of the system being modeled, including forces, damping, and external influences. Would you like to explore any of these models in more detail?

### SIMPLE SITUATION REQUIRING MATHEMATICAL MODELING

**Dr.D.R.Kirubaharan**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

Let's consider a simple situation involving a **spring-mass system**. This is a classic example that illustrates the principles of mathematical modeling using a second-order ordinary differential equation (ODE).

#### **Scenario: Spring-Mass System**

**Description:** Imagine a mass  $m$  attached to a spring with spring constant  $k$ . The system is placed on a frictionless surface. When the mass is pulled and released, it will oscillate back and forth due to the restoring force of the spring.

#### **Mathematical Model**

##### **1. Forces Involved:**

- The restoring force  $F$  exerted by the spring follows Hooke's

$$\text{Law: } F = -kx$$

where  $x$  is the displacement from the equilibrium position.

- ##### **2. Newton's Second Law:** According to Newton's second law, the sum of forces equals mass times acceleration:

$$m \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -kx$$

- ##### **3. Forming the ODE:** Rearranging gives us the second-order ODE:

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + \frac{k}{m}x = 0$$

- ##### **4. Parameter Definitions:**

- Let  $\omega^2 = \frac{k}{m}$ , where  $\omega$  is the natural frequency of the system.

### Solving the ODE

The general solution to this ODE is:

$$x(t) = A \cos(\omega t + \phi)$$

where:

- $A$  is the amplitude (maximum displacement),
- $\phi$  is the phase constant (determined by initial conditions).

### Initial Conditions

Suppose at  $t=0$ :

- The mass is pulled 5 cm to the right ( $x(0) = 0.05$  m),
- The mass is released from rest ( $\frac{dx}{dt}(0) = 0$  m/s).

Using these initial conditions, we can find  $A$  and  $\phi$ :

- From  $x(0) = 0.05$ :  $0.05 = A \cos(\phi)$
- From  $\frac{dx}{dt}(0) = 0$ :  $0 = -A \omega \sin(\phi) \Rightarrow \sin(\phi) = 0 \Rightarrow \phi = 0$  (since it must start from the max position)

### Final Equation

With  $\phi = 0$ , the equation simplifies to:

$$x(t) = 0.05 \cos(\omega t)$$

### Conclusion

This simple spring-mass system illustrates how a physical scenario can be translated into a mathematical model using a second-order ODE. You can

analyze the system's behavior, such as determining its period  $T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega}$ , frequency, and maximum speed.

## REFERENCE

- [1] Andrews. J.G and Mclone .R.R (1976) “ Mathematical Modelling ”, Butterworths, London.
- [2] Avula. X. J. R and Roden. E. Y (1980) “ Mathematical Modelling : An Introduction Journal ”, Pergamon Press, New York.
- [3] Berry.J. S, Burghes. D. N, Huntley. I. D, James. D. J. G and Moscardini. A. O “ Mathematical Modelling : Methodology, Models and Micros ”, Ellis Harwood and john wiley.
- [4] Brauer. F and Nohal. J. A “ Ordinary Differential Equations ”, Bejamins. N. A, New York.
- [5] Budnick. F. S “ Applied Mathematics for Business, Economics and Social Sciences ”, McGraw Hill, New York.
- [6] Burghes. D. N “ Modelling with Differential Equations ”, Ellis Horwood and John Wiley.
- [7] Coddington. R. A and Levinson. N “ Theory of Ordinary Differential Equations ”, Tata McGraw-Hill, New Delhi.
- [8] Dyson. C, Ivery. E “ Principle of Mathematical Modelling ”, Academic press, New York.

- [9] Elsgotts. L “ Differential Equations and Calculus of Variations ”, Mir Publishers, Mascow.
- [10] Kapur. J. N (1976) “ Some Modern Applications of Mathematics ”, Bull. Math. Ass. Ind. 8, 16-19.
- [11] Kapur. J. N “ Mathematical Modelling, a New Identity for Applied Mathematics”, Bull. Math. Ass. Ind.11 (3,4) 62-112.
- [12] Olinik. R (1978) “ An Introduction to Mathematical Models in Social and Life Sciences”, Addison Wesley, New York.
- [13] Spanner. J (1980) “ Thoughts about the Essential of Mathematical Modelling ”, Math. Mod.1, 93-108.
- [14] Tenenbanum. M and Pollard. H “ Ordinary Differential Equations ”, Harper and Row, New York.
- [15] Waylend. H “ Differential Equations in Science and Engineering”, Von Nostrand, New York and East West Press, New Delhi.





# DYNAMICS



Edited by  
**DR.K.SELVARAJ**



978-93-6255-914-2

# **Dynamics**

Copyright © 2019 by **Dr. K.Selvaraj**

First Edition,2019

*All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.*

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-914-2**

***Publisher:*** Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (**PRIST**)



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Book elements</b>	<b>Page Numbers</b>
----- <b>Chapter-I</b> <b>KINEMATIC VELOCITY</b> Dr. K.Selvaraj	<b>01-05</b>
----- <b>Chapter-II</b> <b>SIMPLE HARMONIC MOTION</b> Dr. K.Selvaraj	<b>06-10</b>
----- <b>Chapter-III</b> <b>IMPULSIVE FORCE</b> Dr. K.Selvaraj	<b>11-15</b>
----- <b>Chapter-IV</b> <b>CENTRAL ORBIT</b> Dr. K.Selvaraj	<b>16-24</b>
----- <b>Chapter-V</b> <b>MOTION OF RIGID BODY</b> Dr. K.Selvaraj	<b>25-29</b>
-----	

### KINEMATIC VELOCITY

**Dr. K.Selvaraj**

*Assistant Professor in Mathematics  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

Kinematic velocity, also known as linear velocity, is the rate of change of an object's position with respect to time. It's a fundamental concept in physics, particularly in kinematics, which is the study of motion.

#### **Mathematical Definition:**

Kinematic velocity ( $v$ ) is defined as:

$$v = \Delta x / \Delta t$$

where:

- $v$  = kinematic velocity (m/s)
- $\Delta x$  = displacement (m)
- $\Delta t$  = time interval (s)

#### **Types of Kinematic Velocity:**

1. **Uniform velocity:** When an object moves with constant velocity.
2. **Non-uniform velocity:** When an object's velocity changes over time.

#### **Uniform velocity:**

Uniform velocity, also known as constant velocity, occurs when an object moves in a straight line at a constant speed. This means that the object covers equal distances in equal time intervals.

#### **Key Characteristics:**

1. **Constant speed:** The object's speed remains the same.
2. **Straight-line motion:** The object moves in a straight line.
3. **No acceleration:** The object's velocity does not change.

#### **Mathematical Representation:**

1. **Velocity:**  $v = \Delta x / \Delta t = \text{constant}$
2. **Acceleration:**  $a = \Delta v / \Delta t = 0$
3. **Displacement:**  $x(t) = x_0 + vt$  (where  $x_0$  is initial position)

### **Graphical Representation:**

A graph of uniform velocity would show:

1. **Constant slope:** A straight line with a constant slope represents uniform velocity.
2. **No curvature:** The graph has no curvature, indicating no acceleration.

### **Non-uniform velocity:**

Non-uniform velocity, also known as variable velocity, occurs when an object's speed or direction changes over time. This is the most common type of motion in real-world scenarios.

### **Key Characteristics:**

1. **Changing speed:** The object's speed increases or decreases.
2. **Changing direction:** The object's direction of motion changes.
3. **Acceleration:** The object's velocity changes over time.

### **Types of Non-Uniform Velocity:**

1. **Uniformly accelerated motion:** Acceleration remains constant (e.g., free fall).
2. **Non-uniformly accelerated motion:** Acceleration changes over time (e.g., car accelerating on a curved track).

### **Mathematical Representation:**

1. **Velocity:**  $v = \Delta x / \Delta t$  (changes over time)
2. **Acceleration:**  $a = \Delta v / \Delta t$  (may be constant or variable)
3. **Displacement:**  $x(t) = x_0 + \int v(t) dt$  (where  $x_0$  is initial position)

### **Graphical Representation:**

A graph of non-uniform velocity may show:

1. **Curvature:** The graph has curvature, indicating changing velocity.
2. **Changing slope:** The slope of the graph changes, representing acceleration.

### **Relationship with Other Kinematic Quantities:**

1. **Acceleration:** The rate of change of velocity.
2. **Displacement:** The change in position.
3. **Time:** The duration of motion.

### **Problem Types:**

1. **Distance-Time Problems**
2. **Velocity-Time Problems**
3. **Acceleration-Time Problems**

#### 4. Projectile Motion Problems

#### 5. Relative Motion Problems

### Example Problems:

#### Distance-Time Problems

1. A car travels 250 km in 5 hours. What is its average velocity?

Solution:  $v = \Delta x / \Delta t = 250 \text{ km} / 5 \text{ h} = 50 \text{ km/h}$

1. An athlete runs 100 m in 10 s. What is their average velocity?

Solution:  $v = \Delta x / \Delta t = 100 \text{ m} / 10 \text{ s} = 10 \text{ m/s}$

#### Velocity-Time Problems

1. An object moves with a velocity of 20 m/s for 10 s. What distance does it cover?

Solution:  $x = v \times t = 20 \text{ m/s} \times 10 \text{ s} = 200 \text{ m}$

1. A car accelerates from 0 to 60 km/h in 10 s. What is its acceleration?

Solution:  $a = \Delta v / \Delta t = (60 \text{ km/h} - 0 \text{ km/h}) / 10 \text{ s} \approx 1.67 \text{ m/s}^2$

#### Acceleration-Time Problems

1. An object moves with an acceleration of 2 m/s<sup>2</sup> for 5 s. What is its final velocity?

Solution:  $v = u + at = 0 + 2 \text{ m/s}^2 \times 5 \text{ s} = 10 \text{ m/s}$

1. A car decelerates from 80 km/h to 40 km/h in 5 s. What is its acceleration?

Solution:  $a = \Delta v / \Delta t = (40 \text{ km/h} - 80 \text{ km/h}) / 5 \text{ s} \approx -2.22 \text{ m/s}^2$

#### Projectile Motion Problems

1. A ball is thrown upward with a velocity of 20 m/s. What is its maximum height?

Solution:  $v^2 = u^2 + 2as$ ;  $0 = 20^2 - 2 \times 9.8 \times h$ ;  $h \approx 20.4 \text{ m}$

1. A particle is projected with a velocity of 50 m/s at an angle of 60°. What is its range?

Solution:  $R = (u^2 \times \sin 2\theta) / g = (50^2 \times \sin 2(60^\circ)) / 9.8 \approx 127.2 \text{ m}$

#### Relative Motion Problems

1. Two cars travel towards each other at 60 km/h and 80 km/h. What is their relative velocity?

Solution:  $v_{\text{rel}} = v_1 + v_2 = 60 \text{ km/h} + 80 \text{ km/h} = 140 \text{ km/h}$

1. A boat travels upstream at 10 km/h. If the water current is 5 km/h, what is its velocity relative to the shore?

Solution:  $v_{\text{rel}} = v_{\text{boat}} - v_{\text{current}} = 10 \text{ km/h} - 5 \text{ km/h} = 5 \text{ km/h}$

### 1. Galilean Transformation Theorem

States that velocity is relative and depends on the observer's frame of reference.

**Statement:**

The Galilean Transformation Theorem states that the laws of motion are invariant under a Galilean transformation, which involves:

1. Translating the origin ( $x \rightarrow x'$ )
2. Changing the velocity reference frame ( $v \rightarrow v'$ )

**Mathematical Formulation:**

Let's consider two inertial frames, S and S', moving relative to each other with velocity v.

$$x' = x - vt$$

$$y' = y$$

$$z' = z$$

$$t' = t$$

$$v' = v - v \text{ (relative velocity)}$$

**2. Velocity Addition Theorem**

$$v = v_1 + v_2 \text{ (for velocities in the same direction)}$$

$$v = \sqrt{(v_1^2 + v_2^2)} \text{ (for velocities at an angle)}$$

**Statement:**

The Velocity Addition Theorem states that the resultant velocity of an object is the vector sum of its velocities relative to different reference frames.

**Mathematical Formulation:**

**Parallel Velocities:**

$$v = v_1 + v_2$$

**Perpendicular Velocities:**

$$v = \sqrt{(v_1^2 + v_2^2)}$$

**General Case (Any Angle):**

$$v = \sqrt{(v_1^2 + v_2^2 + 2v_1v_2\cos\theta)}$$

where:

$v$  = resultant velocity  
 $v_1, v_2$  = velocities in different reference frames  
 $\theta$  = angle between  $v_1$  and  $v_2$

### 3. Kinematic Equation Theorem

Equations of motion under constant acceleration:

1.  $v = u + at$
2.  $s = ut + (1/2)at^2$
3.  $v^2 = u^2 + 2as$

### 5. Velocity-Acceleration Theorem

$a = dv/dt = d^2s/dt^2$  (relates acceleration to velocity and displacement)

#### Theorems:

1. Projectile Motion Theorem: Range =  $(u^2 \times \sin 2\theta) / g$
2. Circular Motion Theorem:  $v = 2\pi r / T$
3. Rotational Motion Theorem:  $\omega = 2\pi / T$

## Chapter-II

# SIMPLE HARMONIC MOTION

**Dr. K.Selvaraj**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

Simple Harmonic Motion is a type of periodic motion where an object oscillates about a fixed equilibrium point, with a restoring force proportional to the displacement.

### Key Characteristics:

1. **Periodic Motion:** SHM repeats itself after a fixed time interval (period).
2. **Equilibrium Point:** The object oscillates around a fixed point.
3. **Restoring Force:** Force opposes displacement, proportional to displacement.
4. **Constant Amplitude:** Maximum displacement remains constant.

### PERIODIC MOTION:

#### Definition:

Periodic motion is a type of motion that repeats itself after a fixed time interval, called the period.

#### Period (T):

$$T = 1/f \text{ (frequency)}$$

#### Frequency (f):

$$f = 1/T$$

#### Angular Frequency ( $\omega$ ):

$$\omega = 2\pi/T = 2\pi f$$

#### Equation of Motion:

$$x(t) = A\cos(\omega t + \phi) \text{ (SHM example)}$$

#### Parameters:

1. **A:** Amplitude
2.  **$\omega$ :** Angular frequency
3.  **$\phi$ :** Phase angle

4. **T**: Period

### **Mathematical Representation:**

#### **Equation of Motion:**

$$x(t) = A\cos(\omega t + \phi)$$

#### **Parameters:**

1. **A**: Amplitude (maximum displacement)
2.  **$\omega$** : Angular frequency (related to period, T)
3.  **$\phi$** : Phase angle (initial displacement)
4. **T**: Period (time for one oscillation)

### **SHM Equations:**

1. **Displacement**:  $x(t) = A\cos(\omega t + \phi)$
2. **Velocity**:  $v(t) = -A\omega\sin(\omega t + \phi)$
3. **Acceleration**:  $a(t) = -A\omega^2\cos(\omega t + \phi)$
4. **Force**:  $F(t) = -kx(t)$  (restoring force)

### **Types of SHM:**

1. **Spring-Mass System**: Mass attached to a spring.
2. **Pendulum**: Weight suspended from a pivot.
3. **LC Circuit**: Inductor-capacitor circuit.

### **EQUILIBRIUM POINT:**

#### **Definition:**

An equilibrium point is a point in a system where the net force acting on an object is zero, resulting in no acceleration.

#### **Types of Equilibrium:**

1. **Stable Equilibrium**: Object returns to equilibrium after disturbance.
2. **Unstable Equilibrium**: Object moves away from equilibrium after disturbance.
3. **Neutral Equilibrium**: Object remains at rest or moves with constant velocity.

#### **Characteristics of Equilibrium Point:**

1. **Zero Net Force**: Forces acting on object balance each other.
2. **No Acceleration**: Object at rest or moving with constant velocity.
3. **Minimum Potential Energy**: System's potential energy is minimized.



**Examples:**

1. **Mass on a Spring:** Equilibrium point at spring's unstretched length.
2. **Pendulum:** Equilibrium point at bottom of swing.
3. **Object on a Flat Surface:** Equilibrium point at surface's level.

**Mathematical Representation:****Force Balance:**

$$\sum F = 0 \text{ (net force equals zero)}$$

**Potential Energy:**

$$U(x) = \text{minimum (potential energy at equilibrium)}$$

**Equilibrium Conditions:**

1. **Translational Equilibrium:**  $\sum F = 0$
2. **Rotational Equilibrium:**  $\sum \tau = 0$  (net torque equals zero)

**Restoring Force****Definition:**

A restoring force is a force that opposes displacement from an equilibrium point, returning the system to its equilibrium state.

**Characteristics:**

1. **Opposes Displacement:** Acts against displacement from equilibrium.
2. **Proportional to Displacement:** Force magnitude increases with displacement.
3. **Directs Object Back:** Force direction points towards equilibrium.

**Types of Restoring Forces:**

1. **Spring Force:** Hooke's Law ( $F = -kx$ )
2. **Gravity:** Weight ( $F = mg$ )
3. **Electromagnetic:** Electric/magnetic fields
4. **Elastic:** Materials' elastic properties

**CONSTANT AMPLITUDE**

Constant amplitude refers to the maximum displacement or magnitude of oscillation remaining constant over time in a periodic motion.

**Characteristics:**

1. **Maximum Displacement:** Amplitude remains constant.
2. **No Damping:** Energy loss is negligible.

3. **Stable Oscillations:** Oscillations maintain constant amplitude.

**Types of Constant Amplitude Motion:**

1. **Simple Harmonic Motion (SHM):** Idealized oscillations.
2. **Undamped Oscillations:** No energy loss.
3. **Resonant Oscillations:** Amplified oscillations at natural frequency.

**Problem 1: Displacement**

A particle moves with SHM, with amplitude 0.5 m and period 2 s. Find its displacement at time  $t = 0.5$  s.

**Solution:**

$$x(t) = A \cos(\omega t + \phi)$$

$$x(0.5) = 0.5 \cos(\pi(0.5) + 0) = 0.35 \text{ m}$$

**Problem 2: Velocity**

A mass attached to a spring has a velocity of 2 m/s at displacement  $x = 0.1$  m. Find its amplitude.

**Solution:**

$$v = \pm \omega \sqrt{A^2 - x^2}$$

$$2 = \omega \sqrt{A^2 - 0.1^2}$$

$$A = 0.5 \text{ m}$$

**Problem 3: Acceleration**

A particle moves with SHM, with amplitude 0.2 m and period 1 s. Find its maximum acceleration.

**Solution:**

$$a = -\omega^2 x$$

$$a_{\text{max}} = \omega^2 A = (2\pi/1)^2(0.2) = 7.9 \text{ m/s}^2$$

**Problem 4: Energy**

A mass-spring system has kinetic energy 10 J at displacement  $x = 0$ . Find its potential energy.

**Solution:**

$$K = 10 \text{ J}$$

$$U = (1/2)kx^2 = 0 \text{ (at } x = 0)$$

$$\text{Total Energy} = K + U = 10 \text{ J}$$

**Problem 5: Period**

A mass-spring system has spring constant 50 N/m and mass 2 kg. Find its period.

**Solution:**

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{m/k} = 2\pi\sqrt{2/50} = 1.0 \text{ s}$$

**Problem 6: Phase Shift**

A particle moves with SHM, with amplitude 0.5 m and period 2 s. Find its phase shift.

**Solution:**

$$\varphi = 0 \quad (\text{assuming cosine function})$$

$$x(t) = 0.5\cos(\pi t)$$

**Problem 7: Damping**

A mass-spring system has damping coefficient 5 Ns/m. Find its damping ratio.

**Solution:**

$$\zeta = c / (2\sqrt{mk}) = 5 / (2\sqrt{2(50)}) = 0.35$$

**Problem 8: Forced Oscillation**

A mass-spring system is driven by a force  $F(t) = 10\cos(\omega t)$ . Find its steady-state solution.

**Solution:**

$$x(t) = (F_0 / k)\cos(\omega t - \varphi)$$

$$x(t) = (10 / 50)\cos(\omega t - \varphi)$$

## Chapter-III

### IMPULSIVE FORCE

**Dr. K.Selvaraj**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

An impulsive force is a force that acts over a very short period, producing a sudden change in momentum.

#### Characteristics:

1. **Short Duration:** Force acts for a brief time.
2. **Large Magnitude:** Force is significant.
3. **Sudden Change:** Momentum changes rapidly.

#### Types:

1. **Instantaneous Impulse:** Force acts at a single point in time.
2. **Finite Impulse:** Force acts over a short, finite period.

#### Examples:

1. **Explosions**
2. **Gunshots**
3. **Car Crashes**
4. **Ball Bounces**
5. **Hammer Strikes**

#### Instantaneous Impulse

##### Definition:

An instantaneous impulse is an impulsive force that acts at a single point in time, producing an instantaneous change in momentum.

**Characteristics:**

1. **Zero Duration:** Force acts at a single instant.
2. **Infinite Force:** Force magnitude approaches infinity.
3. **Finite Impulse:** Impulse remains finite.

**Mathematical Representation:****Dirac Delta Function:**

$$F(t) = \delta(t)$$

**Impulse (J):**

$$J = \int F(t)dt = \int \delta(t)dt = 1$$

**Momentum Change ( $\Delta p$ ):**

$$\Delta p = J$$

**Mathematical Representation:****Impulse-Momentum Theorem:**

$$\Delta p = F\Delta t$$

**Impulse (J):**

$$J = \int Fdt = F\Delta t \text{ (approximated for short duration)}$$

**Momentum Change ( $\Delta p$ ):**

$$\Delta p = mv_2 - mv_1$$

**Problem 1:**

A 0.5 kg ball is hit by a bat with an impulsive force of 200 N. If the ball is in contact with the bat for 0.02 s, find:

The impulse of the force

The change in momentum of the ball

The initial velocity of the ball (assuming it was initially at rest)

**Solution:**

$$\text{Impulse (J)} = F \times \Delta t = 200 \text{ N} \times 0.02 \text{ s} = 4 \text{ Ns}$$

$$\text{Change in momentum } (\Delta p) = J = 4 \text{ Ns}$$

$$\text{Initial velocity (v)} = \Delta p / m = 4 \text{ Ns} / 0.5 \text{ kg} = 8 \text{ m/s}$$

**Problem 2:**

A car (mass 1500 kg) is moving at 30 m/s when it hits a barrier. The impulsive force exerted by the barrier on the car is 30000 N. If the car comes to rest in 0.1 s, find:

The impulse of the force

The change in momentum of the car

**Solution:**

$$\text{Impulse (J)} = F \times \Delta t = 30000 \text{ N} \times 0.1 \text{ s} = 3000 \text{ Ns}$$

$$\text{Change in momentum } (\Delta p) = J = 3000 \text{ Ns} = 1500 \text{ kg} \times (0 - 30) \text{ m/s} = -45000 \text{ kg m/s}$$

**Problem 3:**

A tennis racket exerts an impulsive force of 500 N on a 0.057 kg tennis ball for 0.035 s. If the ball is initially at rest, find:

The impulse of the force

The final velocity of the ball

**Solution:**

$$\text{Impulse (J)} = F \times \Delta t = 500 \text{ N} \times 0.035 \text{ s} = 17.5 \text{ Ns}$$

$$\text{Change in momentum } (\Delta p) = J = 17.5 \text{ Ns}$$

$$\text{Final velocity (v)} = \Delta p / m = 17.5 \text{ Ns} / 0.057 \text{ kg} \approx 306.86 \text{ m/s}$$

**Problem 4:**

A bullet (mass 0.05 kg) is fired from a gun with a velocity of 500 m/s. If the impulsive force exerted by the gun on the bullet is 1000 N, find:

The time interval during which the force acts

The impulse of the force

**Solution:**

$$\Delta p = m \times v = 0.05 \text{ kg} \times 500 \text{ m/s} = 25 \text{ kg m/s}$$

**Finite Impulse:**

Finite impulse refers to an impulsive force that acts on an object over a short, but non-zero, time interval ( $\Delta t$ ). Here are some key points:

**Characteristics:**

1. Large magnitude
2. Short duration ( $\Delta t \neq 0$ )
3. Resulting in rapid change in momentum

**Examples:**

1. A baseball bat hitting a ball
2. A tennis racket hitting a ball
3. A car airbag deploying
4. A rocket propulsion system

**Mathematical Representation:**

1. Impulse (J) = Force (F)  $\times$  time interval ( $\Delta t$ )
2. Impulse (J) = Change in momentum ( $\Delta p$ )

**Key Equations:**

1.  $J = F \times \Delta t$
2.  $\Delta p = F \times \Delta t$
3.  $\Delta v = F \times \Delta t / m$

**Types of Finite Impulses:**

1. **Linear impulse:** Force acts in a straight line.
2. **Angular impulse:** Force causes rotational motion.

**Linear impulse:**

1. **Definition:** A linear impulse is a force that acts in a straight line, resulting in a change in linear momentum.
2. **Characteristics:**
  - Large magnitude
  - Short duration
  - Acts in a straight line
3. **Types:**
  - **Constant force:** Force remains constant over time.
  - **Variable force:** Force changes over time.

**Mathematical Representation:**

1. Impulse (J) = Force (F)  $\times$  time interval ( $\Delta t$ )
2. Impulse (J) = Change in linear momentum ( $\Delta p$ )
3.  $\Delta p = m \times \Delta v$  (change in momentum = mass  $\times$  change in velocity)

**Key Equations:**

1.  $J = F \times \Delta t$
2.  $\Delta p = F \times \Delta t$
3.  $\Delta v = F \times \Delta t / m$
4.  $J = m \times \Delta v$

### **Problem 1**

A 2000 kg car is moving at 30 m/s when it hits a barrier. The impulsive force exerted by the barrier on the car is 15000 N for 0.1 s. Find the impulse, change in momentum, and final velocity.

### **Solution**

- Impulse ( $J$ ) =  $F \times \Delta t = 15000 \text{ N} \times 0.1 \text{ s} = 1500 \text{ Ns}$
- Change in momentum ( $\Delta p$ ) =  $J = 1500 \text{ Ns}$
- Final velocity ( $v$ ) =  $\Delta p / m = 1500 \text{ Ns} / 2000 \text{ kg} = 0.75 \text{ m/s}$

### **Problem 2**

A 0.1 kg tennis ball is hit by a racket with a force of 500 N for 0.05 s. Find the impulse, change in momentum, and initial velocity (assuming it was initially at rest).

### **Solution**

- Impulse ( $J$ ) =  $F \times \Delta t = 500 \text{ N} \times 0.05 \text{ s} = 25 \text{ Ns}$
- Change in momentum ( $\Delta p$ ) =  $J = 25 \text{ Ns}$
- Initial velocity ( $v$ ) =  $\Delta p / m = 25 \text{ Ns} / 0.1 \text{ kg} = 250 \text{ m/s}$

$$F \times \Delta t = \Delta p \Rightarrow \Delta t = \Delta p / F = 25 \text{ kg m/s} / 1000 \text{ N} = 0.025 \text{ s}$$

$$\text{Impulse (J)} = F \times \Delta t = 1000 \text{ N} \times 0.025 \text{ s} = 25 \text{ Ns}$$



## Chapter-IV

### CENTRAL ORBIT

**Dr. K.Selvaraj**

*Assistant Professor in Mathematics  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

A central orbit, also known as a circular or closed orbit, is a trajectory where an object revolves around a central point, typically due to a gravitational or electrostatic force.

#### Key Characteristics:

1. **Central body:** The object being orbited (e.g., planet, moon, or star).
2. **Orbiting object:** The object moving in the central orbit (e.g., satellite, planet, or comet).
3. **Circular path:** The orbiting object follows an elliptical or circular path.
4. **Constant distance:** The distance between the central body and orbiting object remains relatively constant.

#### Types of Central Orbits:

1. **Circular orbit:** Perfectly circular trajectory.
2. **Elliptical orbit:** Oval-shaped trajectory.
3. **Polar orbit:** Orbit passes over the poles of the central body.
4. **Equatorial orbit:** Orbit lies in the equatorial plane of the central body.

#### Central Orbit Forces:

1. **Gravitational force:** Most common force responsible for central orbits.
2. **Electrostatic force:** Important in atomic and molecular systems.

#### Mathematical Representation:

1. **Orbital radius ( $r$ ):** Distance between central body and orbiting object.
2. **Orbital velocity ( $v$ ):** Speed of the orbiting object.
3. **Angular momentum ( $L$ ):** Measure of the orbiting object's tendency to maintain its orbit.

#### Circular path:

A circular path is a two-dimensional trajectory where an object moves in a circle around a fixed central point.

**Key Characteristics:**

1. **Constant radius:** Distance between the central point and object remains constant.
2. **Constant speed:** Object moves with uniform speed.
3. **Central force:** Force directed towards the central point.

**Types of Circular Paths:**

1. **Uniform circular motion:** Constant speed and radius.
2. **Non-uniform circular motion:** Speed varies, radius remains constant.
3. **Circular orbit:** Object orbits a central body (e.g., planet, moon).

**Mathematical Representation:**

1. **Radius (r):** Distance between central point and object.
2. **Angular displacement ( $\theta$ ):** Angle swept by the object.
3. **Angular velocity ( $\omega$ ):** Rate of change of angular displacement.
4. **Linear velocity (v):** Speed of the object.

**Key Equations:**

1.  $v = r \times \omega$  (Linear velocity)
2.  $\omega = \Delta\theta / \Delta t$  (Angular velocity)
3.  $a = v^2 / r$  (Centripetal acceleration)
4.  $F = m \times v^2 / r$  (Centripetal force)

**Applications:**

1. **Vehicle motion:** Circular paths in racing, transportation.
2. **Astronomy:** Planetary orbits, satellite trajectories.
3. **Engineering:** Gear systems, circular motion mechanisms.

**Solved Problems:**

**Problem 1**

A car moves in a circular track of radius 50 m with a constant speed of 20 m/s. Find its angular velocity.

**Solution**

- Angular velocity ( $\omega$ ) =  $v / r = 20 \text{ m/s} / 50 \text{ m} = 0.4 \text{ rad/s}$

**Problem 2**

A satellite orbits the Earth at an altitude of 200 km with an orbital velocity of 7.8 km/s. Find its angular velocity.

### **Solution**

- Orbital radius ( $r$ ) = Earth's radius + Altitude = 6371 km + 200 km = 6571 km
- Angular velocity ( $\omega$ ) =  $v / r = 7.8 \text{ km/s} / 6571 \text{ km} \approx 0.0012 \text{ rad/s}$

### **Elliptical orbit:**

An elliptical orbit is a closed, curved trajectory where an object revolves around a central body, with the central body at one of the two foci.

### **Key Characteristics:**

1. **Eccentricity ( $e$ ):** Measure of orbit's elliptical shape ( $0 \leq e < 1$ ).
2. **Semi-major axis ( $a$ ):** Distance from central body to orbit's midpoint.
3. **Perihelion:** Closest point to central body.
4. **Aphelion:** Farthest point from central body.

### **Types of Elliptical Orbits:**

1. **Highly eccentric orbit:** Eccentricity close to 1.
2. **Low-eccentricity orbit:** Eccentricity close to 0 (nearly circular).
3. **Polar elliptical orbit:** Orbit passes over poles.

### **Mathematical Representation:**

1. **Orbital equation:**  $r = a(1 - e^2) / (1 + e \cos(\theta))$
2. **Vis-viva equation:**  $v^2 = G * M (2/r - 1/a)$
3. **Kepler's laws:** Describe orbital shape, size, and period.

### **Key Equations:**

1.  $T = 2\pi\sqrt{a^3 / G * M}$  (Orbital period)
2.  $v_{\text{perihelion}} = \sqrt{G * M (1 + e) / (a(1 - e))}$
3.  $v_{\text{aphelion}} = \sqrt{G * M (1 - e) / (a(1 + e))}$

### **Applications:**

1. **Space exploration:** Understanding elliptical orbits aids mission planning.
2. **Astronomy:** Studying elliptical orbits reveals celestial mechanics.
3. **Satellite technology:** Elliptical orbits for communication, navigation.

### **Solved Problems:**

#### **Problem 1**

A satellite has an elliptical orbit with perihelion 200 km and aphelion 8000 km. Find eccentricity.

**Solution**

- Semi-major axis (a) =  $(200 + 8000) / 2 = 4100$  km
- Eccentricity (e) =  $(8000 - 200) / (8000 + 200) \approx 0.78$

**Problem 2**

Find orbital period of an asteroid with semi-major axis 3 AU.

**Solution**

- Orbital period (T) =  $2\pi\sqrt{(a^3 / G * M)} \approx 5.2$  years

**Polar orbit:**

A polar orbit is an elliptical or circular orbit that passes over the Earth's polar regions.

**Characteristics:**

1. **Inclination (i):** Angle between orbit and equatorial plane  $\approx 90^\circ$ .
2. **Orbit passes:** Over North and South Poles.
3. **Ground track:** Orbit intersects Earth's surface at same latitude.

**Types of Polar Orbits:**

1. **Polar circular orbit:** Constant radius, inclination  $\approx 90^\circ$ .
2. **Polar elliptical orbit:** Eccentricity  $> 0$ , inclination  $\approx 90^\circ$ .
3. **Sun-synchronous orbit:** Maintains fixed angle with Sun.

**Applications:**

1. **Earth observation:** Monitoring climate, weather, and natural resources.
2. **Communication:** Providing coverage for polar regions.
3. **Navigation:** Supporting navigation systems.
4. **Scientific research:** Studying Earth's magnetic field, aurorae.

**Mathematical Representation:**

1. **Orbital inclination (i):** Angle between orbit and equatorial plane.
2. **Right ascension of ascending node ( $\Omega$ ):** Longitude of orbit's ascending node.
3. **Argument of periapsis ( $\omega$ ):** Angle between periapsis and ascending node.

**Key Equations:**

1.  $T = 2\pi\sqrt{(a^3 / G * M)}$  (Orbital period)

2.  $v = \sqrt{G * M / r}$  (Orbital velocity)
3.  $i = \arccos(\sqrt{1 - e^2} * \cos(\Omega))$

### Solved Problems:

#### Problem 1

A satellite in polar orbit has inclination  $89.5^\circ$  and altitude 700 km. Find orbital period.

#### Solution

- Semi-major axis (a) = Earth's radius + Altitude = 6371 km + 700 km = 7071 km
- Orbital period (T) =  $2\pi\sqrt{a^3 / G * M} \approx 98.5$  minutes

#### Problem 2

Find eccentricity of polar orbit with perihelion 200 km and aphelion 8000 km.

#### Solution

- Semi-major axis (a) =  $(200 + 8000) / 2 = 4100$  km
- Eccentricity (e) =  $(8000 - 200) / (8000 + 200) \approx 0.78$

### Equatorial Orbits:

An equatorial orbit is a circular or elliptical orbit that lies in the Earth's equatorial plane.

#### Characteristics:

1. **Inclination (i):** Angle between orbit and equatorial plane  $\approx 0^\circ$ .
2. **Orbit passes:** Over Earth's equator.
3. **Ground track:** Orbit intersects Earth's surface at same longitude.

#### Types of Equatorial Orbits:

1. **Geostationary Orbit (GEO):** Altitude  $\approx 35786$  km, orbital period = 24 hours.
2. **Geosynchronous Orbit (GSO):** Orbital period = 24 hours.
3. **Low Earth Orbit (LEO):** Altitude  $< 2000$  km.

#### Applications:

1. **Communication:** Providing coverage for equatorial regions.
2. **Navigation:** Supporting navigation systems.
3. **Weather forecasting:** Monitoring equatorial weather patterns.
4. **Earth observation:** Studying Earth's equatorial regions.

#### Mathematical Representation:

1. **Orbital inclination (i):** Angle between orbit and equatorial plane.
2. **Right ascension of ascending node ( $\Omega$ ):** Longitude of orbit's ascending node.

3. **Argument of periapsis ( $\omega$ ):** Angle between periapsis and ascending node.

**Key Equations:**

1.  $T = 2\pi\sqrt{a^3 / G * M}$  (Orbital period)
2.  $v = \sqrt{G * M / r}$  (Orbital velocity)
3.  $i = \arccos(\sqrt{1 - e^2} * \cos(\Omega))$

**Solved Problems:**

**Problem 1**

A satellite in equatorial orbit has altitude 1000 km and orbital period 1.5 hours. Find semi-major axis.

**Solution**

- Orbital period ( $T$ ) = 1.5 hours = 5400 s
- Semi-major axis ( $a$ ) =  $\sqrt{G * M / (4\pi^2 / T^2)} \approx 6927$  km

**Problem 2**

Find eccentricity of equatorial orbit with perihelion 200 km and aphelion 8000 km.

**Solution**

- Semi-major axis ( $a$ ) =  $(200 + 8000) / 2 = 4100$  km
- Eccentricity ( $e$ ) =  $(8000 - 200) / (8000 + 200) \approx 0.78$

**Problem 3**

A satellite orbits the Earth at an altitude of 200 km. If the Earth's mass is  $5.98 \times 10^{24}$  kg, find the orbital velocity.

**Solution**

- Orbital radius ( $r$ ) = Earth's radius + Altitude = 6371 km + 200 km = 6571 km
- Orbital velocity ( $v$ ) =  $\sqrt{G * M / r} = \sqrt{(6.674 \times 10^{-11} * 5.98 \times 10^{24} / 6571 \times 10^3)} \approx 7.84$  km/s

**Problem 4**

An electron orbits a proton in a hydrogen atom. If the orbital radius is  $5.29 \times 10^{-11}$  m, find the orbital velocity.

**Solution**

- Orbital velocity ( $v$ ) =  $\sqrt{(k * e^2 / m * r)}$  where  $k$  = Coulomb's constant,  $e$  = elementary charge,  $m$  = electron mass

- $v \approx \sqrt{(8.99 \times 10^9 * (1.602 \times 10^{-19})^2 / (9.11 \times 10^{-31} * 5.29 \times 10^{-11}))} \approx 2.19 \times 10^6 \text{ m/s}$

**Characteristics:**

1. **Constant radius:** Distance between central body and orbiting object remains constant.
2. **Constant speed:** Orbital velocity remains constant.
3. **Central force:** Force acting on orbiting object is directed towards central body.

**Types of Circular Orbits:**

1. **Low Earth Orbit (LEO):** Altitude < 2000 km.
2. **Geostationary Orbit (GEO):** Altitude  $\approx 35786$  km, orbital period = 24 hours.
3. **Polar Circular Orbit:** Orbit passes over poles.

**Mathematical Representation:**

1. **Orbital radius (r):** Distance between central body and orbiting object.
2. **Orbital velocity (v):** Speed of orbiting object.
3. **Angular velocity ( $\omega$ ):** Rate of change of angular displacement.

**Key Equations:**

1.  $v = \sqrt{(G * M / r)}$  (Orbital velocity)
2.  $\omega = v / r$  (Angular velocity)
3.  $T = 2\pi r / v$  (Orbital period)
4.  $F = G * (m1 * m2) / r^2$  (Gravitational force)

**Applications:**

1. **Satellite technology:** Circular orbits for communication, navigation.
2. **Space exploration:** Understanding circular orbits aids mission planning.
3. **Astronomy:** Studying circular orbits reveals celestial mechanics.

**Solved Problems:**

**Problem 5**

A satellite orbits Earth at 1000 km altitude. If Earth's mass is  $5.98 \times 10^{24}$  kg, find orbital velocity.

**Solution**

- Orbital radius (r) = Earth's radius + Altitude = 6371 km + 1000 km = 7371 km
- Orbital velocity (v) =  $\sqrt{(G * M / r)} = \sqrt{(6.674 \times 10^{-11} * 5.98 \times 10^{24} / 7371 \times 10^3)} \approx 7.54$  km/s

**Problem 6**

Find orbital period of a satellite in GEO.

### **Solution**

- Orbital radius ( $r$ ) = 35786 km
- Orbital velocity ( $v$ ) =  $\sqrt{(G * M / r)} \approx 3.07$  km/s
- Orbital period ( $T$ ) =  $2\pi r / v \approx 24$  hours

### **Orbital velocity:**

Orbital velocity is the speed at which an object moves in its orbit around a central body.

### **Key Concepts:**

1. **Tangential velocity:** Velocity perpendicular to the radius vector.
2. **Circular motion:** Object moves in a circular path.
3. **Centripetal force:** Force directed towards the central body.

### **Orbital Velocity Types:**

1. **Low Earth Orbit (LEO) velocity:**  $\approx 7.8$  km/s
2. **Geostationary Orbit (GEO) velocity:**  $\approx 3.07$  km/s
3. **Escape velocity:** Minimum velocity to escape central body's gravitational pull

### **Mathematical Representation:**

1. **Orbital velocity ( $v$ ):** Speed of the orbiting object.
2. **Gravitational constant ( $G$ ):**  $6.674 \times 10^{-11}$  N m<sup>2</sup> kg<sup>-2</sup>
3. **Central body mass ( $M$ ):** Mass of the central body.
4. **Orbital radius ( $r$ ):** Distance between central body and orbiting object.

### **Key Equations:**

1.  $v = \sqrt{(G * M / r)}$  (Orbital velocity)
2.  $v = 2\pi r / T$  (Orbital velocity in terms of period)
3.  $F = G * (m_1 * m_2) / r^2$  (Gravitational force)

### **Applications:**

1. **Space exploration:** Orbital velocity crucial for mission planning.
2. **Satellite technology:** Orbital velocity determines satellite's position.
3. **Astrophysics:** Orbital velocity helps understand celestial mechanics.

### **Solved Problems:**



**Problem 7**

Find the orbital velocity of a satellite in a circular orbit at an altitude of 200 km around the Earth (mass =  $5.98 \times 10^{24}$  kg).

**Solution**

- Orbital radius ( $r$ ) = Earth's radius + Altitude = 6371 km + 200 km = 6571 km
- Orbital velocity ( $v$ ) =  $\sqrt{(G * M / r)}$  =  $\sqrt{(6.674 \times 10^{-11} * 5.98 \times 10^{24} / 6571 \times 10^3)}$   $\approx 7.84$  km/s

**Problem 8**

A spacecraft is in a circular orbit around Mars (mass =  $6.42 \times 10^{23}$  kg) at an altitude of 500 km. Find its orbital velocity.

**Solution**

- Orbital radius ( $r$ ) = Mars' radius + Altitude = 3396 km + 500 km = 3896 km
- Orbital velocity ( $v$ ) =  $\sqrt{(G * M / r)}$  =  $\sqrt{(6.674 \times 10^{-11} * 6.42 \times 10^{23} / 3896 \times 10^3)}$   $\approx 3.56$  km/s

## Chapter-V

### MOTION OF RIGID BODY

**Dr. K.Selvaraj**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India*

**Definition:** A rigid body is an object that maintains its shape and size during motion.

#### Types of Motion:

1. **Translation:** Motion without rotation.
2. **Rotation:** Motion around a fixed axis.
3. **General Plane Motion:** Combination of translation and rotation.

#### Translation:

Translation is a type of motion where an object moves in a straight line without rotating.

#### Key Points:

1. **Displacement:** Change in position.
2. **Velocity:** Rate of change of displacement.
3. **Acceleration:** Rate of change of velocity.

#### Equations:

1.  $d = v * t$
2.  $v = d / t$
3.  $a = \Delta v / t$

#### Example:

Object moves 10 m in 2 seconds.

- Displacement (d) = 10 m
- Velocity (v) =  $d / t = 10 \text{ m} / 2 \text{ s} = 5 \text{ m/s}$

- Acceleration ( $a$ ) =  $\Delta v / t = (5 \text{ m/s} - 0 \text{ m/s}) / 2 \text{ s} = 2.5 \text{ m/s}^2$

### Types of Translation:

1. **Uniform translation:** Constant velocity.
2. **Non-uniform translation:** Changing velocity.

### Rotation:

Rotation is a type of motion where an object turns around a fixed axis.

### Key Points:

1. **Angular displacement ( $\theta$ ):** Change in rotational position.
2. **Angular velocity ( $\omega$ ):** Rate of change of angular displacement.
3. **Angular acceleration ( $\alpha$ ):** Rate of change of angular velocity.

### Explanation:

1. Object rotates around fixed axis.
2. Angular displacement ( $\theta$ ) measured in radians.
3. Angular velocity ( $\omega$ ) = Angular displacement / Time.
4. Angular acceleration ( $\alpha$ ) = Change in angular velocity / Time.

### Equations:

1.  $\theta = \omega * t$
2.  $\omega = \theta / t$
3.  $\alpha = \Delta\omega / t$
4. Torque ( $\tau$ ) = Moment of inertia ( $I$ ) \* Angular acceleration ( $\alpha$ )

### Types of Rotation:

1. **Fixed-axis rotation:** Rotation around a fixed axis.
2. **Unfixed-axis rotation:** Rotation around an axis that changes direction.

### Examples:

1. **Wheel rotation:** Fixed-axis rotation.
2. **Gyroscopic motion:** Unfixed-axis rotation.

### Real-World Applications:

1. **Engines:** Crankshaft rotation.
2. **Gears:** Toothed wheel rotation.
3. **Robotics:** Joint rotation.

## Solved Problems:

### Problem 1

A wheel rotates 10 radians in 2 seconds. Find angular velocity.

#### Solution

- Angular velocity ( $\omega$ ) = Angular displacement / Time = 10 rad / 2 s = 5 rad/s

### Problem 2

Find angular acceleration of an object rotating with constant angular velocity 10 rad/s.

#### Solution

- Angular acceleration ( $\alpha$ ) = Change in angular velocity / Time = 0 rad/s<sup>2</sup> (since  $\omega$  is constant)

## General Plane Motion:

**Definition:** Combination of translation and rotation in a single plane.

### Key Components:

1. **Translation:** Movement in a straight line.
2. **Rotation:** Turning around a fixed axis.

### Equations:

1. **Translation:**  $x(t) = x_0 + v_x * t$ ,  $y(t) = y_0 + v_y * t$
2. **Rotation:**  $\theta(t) = \theta_0 + \omega * t$
3. **Velocity:**  $v_x = dx/dt$ ,  $v_y = dy/dt$ ,  $\omega = d\theta/dt$
4. **Acceleration:**  $a_x = dv_x/dt$ ,  $a_y = dv_y/dt$ ,  $\alpha = d\omega/dt$

### Types of General Plane Motion:

1. **Rectilinear motion:** Translation along a straight line.
2. **Curvilinear motion:** Translation along a curved path.
3. **Rotational motion:** Rotation around a fixed axis.

### Key Concepts:

1. **Angular displacement ( $\theta$ ):** Change in rotational position.
2. **Angular velocity ( $\omega$ ):** Rate of change of angular displacement.
3. **Angular acceleration ( $\alpha$ ):** Rate of change of angular velocity.
4. **Moment of inertia ( $I$ ):** Measure of resistance to rotational motion.

### Equations of Motion:

1. **Translational motion:**  $F = m * a$
2. **Rotational motion:**  $\tau = I * \alpha$

3. **Kinetic energy:**  $K = (1/2) * m * v^2 + (1/2) * I * \omega^2$

**Types of Rigid Body Motion:**

1. **Fixed-axis rotation:** Rotation around a fixed axis.
2. **Unfixed-axis rotation:** Rotation around an axis that changes direction.
3. **Spherical rotation:** Rotation around multiple axes.

**Applications:**

1. **Robotics:** Understanding rigid body motion for robotic arm movement.
2. **Computer graphics:** Simulating realistic motion.
3. **Engineering:** Designing mechanical systems.

**Solved Problems:**

**Problem 1**

A wheel rotates with angular velocity 10 rad/s. Find angular displacement after 5 seconds.

**Solution**

- Angular displacement ( $\theta$ ) =  $\omega * t = 10 \text{ rad/s} * 5 \text{ s} = 50 \text{ rad}$

**Problem 2**

A rigid body rotates around a fixed axis with moment of inertia 0.5 kg m<sup>2</sup> and angular velocity 5 rad/s. Find kinetic energy.

**Solution**

- Kinetic energy (K) =  $(1/2) * I * \omega^2 = (1/2) * 0.5 \text{ kg m}^2 * (5 \text{ rad/s})^2 = 6.25 \text{ J}$

**Key Concepts:**

5. **Angular displacement ( $\theta$ ):** Change in rotational position.
6. **Angular velocity ( $\omega$ ):** Rate of change of angular displacement.
7. **Angular acceleration ( $\alpha$ ):** Rate of change of angular velocity.
8. **Moment of inertia (I):** Measure of resistance to rotational motion.

**Equations of Motion:**

4. **Translational motion:**  $F = m * a$
5. **Rotational motion:**  $\tau = I * \alpha$
6. **Kinetic energy:**  $K = (1/2) * m * v^2 + (1/2) * I * \omega^2$

**Types of Rigid Body Motion:**

4. **Fixed-axis rotation:** Rotation around a fixed axis.

5. **Unfixed-axis rotation:** Rotation around an axis that changes direction.
6. **Spherical rotation:** Rotation around multiple axes.

**Applications:**

4. **Robotics:** Understanding rigid body motion for robotic arm movement.
5. **Computer graphics:** Simulating realistic motion.
6. **Engineering:** Designing mechanical systems.

**Solved Problems:**

**Problem 1**

A wheel rotates with angular velocity 10 rad/s. Find angular displacement after 5 seconds.

**Solution**

- Angular displacement ( $\theta$ ) =  $\omega * t = 10 \text{ rad/s} * 5 \text{ s} = 50 \text{ rad}$

**Problem 2**

A rigid body rotates around a fixed axis with moment of inertia  $0.5 \text{ kg m}^2$  and angular velocity 5 rad/s. Find kinetic energy.

**Solution**

- Kinetic energy (K) =  $(1/2) * I * \omega^2 = (1/2) * 0.5 \text{ kg m}^2 * (5 \text{ rad/s})^2 = 6.25 \text{ J}$

# REAL ANALYSIS

Edited by  
**N.RAJAKUMARI**



978-93-6255-701-8

# **Real Analysis**

Copyright © 2019 by **N.Rajakumari**

First Edition,2019

*All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.*

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-701-8**

***Publisher:*** Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (**PRIST**)



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Book elements</b>	<b>Page Numbers</b>
----- <b>Chapter-I</b> <b>BASIC TOPOLOGY</b> Dr.R.Abirami	<b>01-07</b>
----- <b>Chapter-II</b> <b>NUMERICAL SEQUENCES AND SERIES</b> Dr.R.Abirami	<b>08-11</b>
----- <b>Chapter-III</b> <b>CONTINUITY</b> Dr.R.Abirami	<b>12-18</b>
----- <b>Chapter-IV</b> <b>DIFFERENTIATION</b> Dr.R.Abirami	<b>19-27</b>
----- <b>Chapter-V</b> <b>THE REIMANN INTEGRALS</b> Dr.R.Abirami	<b>28-31</b>
-----	

BASIC TOPOLOGY

**Dr. R.Abirami**

*Assistant Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

**Definitions:**

1. **Topological Space:** A set  $X$  with a collection of open sets.
2. **Open Set:** A set  $U \subseteq X$  such that for each  $x \in U$ , there exists  $\varepsilon > 0$  with  $B(x, \varepsilon) \subseteq U$ .
3. **Closed Set:** A set  $C \subseteq X$  such that  $X \setminus C$  is open.
4. **Neighborhood:** A set  $U \subseteq X$  such that there exists an open set  $V$  with  $x \in V \subseteq U$ .

**Key Concepts:**

1. **Compactness:** A space  $X$  is compact if every open cover has a finite subcover.
2. **Connectedness:** A space  $X$  is connected if it cannot be divided into two disjoint nonempty open sets.
3. **Continuity:** A function  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  is continuous if for each open set  $U \subseteq Y$ ,  $f^{-1}(U)$  is open.

**Theorems:**

1. **Heine-Borel Theorem:** A subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is compact iff it is closed and bounded.
2. **Intermediate Value Theorem:** A continuous function  $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  attains all values between  $f(a)$  and  $f(b)$ .

**Heine-Borel Theorem:**

A subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is compact if and only if it is closed and bounded.

**Proof:**

**$\Rightarrow$  (Compactness implies closed and bounded)**

1. Let  $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  be compact.
2.  $A$  is bounded: Assume not. Then  $\exists x_n \in A$  with  $\|x_n\| \rightarrow \infty$ . Choose subsequence  $x_{n_k}$ . No convergent subsequence exists.
3.  $A$  is closed: Let  $x \notin A$ . For each  $y \in A$ , choose  $\varepsilon_y > 0$  with  $B(y, \varepsilon_y) \cap \{x\} = \emptyset$ . Cover  $A$  with  $\{B(y, \varepsilon_y)\}$ . Choose finite subcover.

**⇐ (Closed and bounded implies compactness)**

1. Let  $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  be closed and bounded.
2.  $A$  is totally bounded: For each  $\varepsilon > 0$ , cover  $A$  with finitely many  $B(x, \varepsilon)$ .

**Intermediate Value Theorem:**

**Statement:**

If  $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is continuous and  $k \in (f(a), f(b))$  or  $k \in (f(b), f(a))$ , then  $\exists c \in (a, b)$  with  $f(c) = k$ .

**Proof:**

**Case 1:**  $f(a) < k < f(b)$

1. Define  $A = \{x \in [a, b] \mid f(x) < k\}$ .
2.  $A$  is nonempty ( $a \in A$ ) and bounded ( $b$  is upper bound).
3. Let  $c = \sup A$ .
4. Show  $f(c) = k$ .

**Case 2:**  $f(b) < k < f(a)$

1. Apply Case 1 to  $f(b) < k < f(a)$ .

**Key Steps:**

1. **Least Upper Bound Property:** Every nonempty bounded subset of  $\mathbb{R}$  has a supremum.
2. **Continuity:** For every  $\varepsilon > 0$ ,  $\exists \delta > 0$  with  $|f(x) - f(c)| < \varepsilon$  when  $|x - c| < \delta$ .

**Bolzano-Weierstrass Theorem:**

**Statement:**

Every bounded sequence in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  has a convergent subsequence.

**\*\*Proof:)**

**Step 1:** Nested Interval Property

1. Let  $\{x_n\}$  be a bounded sequence in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .
2.  $\exists M > 0$  with  $\|x_n\| \leq M$  for all  $n$ .
3. Define  $I_0 = [-M, M]^n$ .

**Step 2:** Divide and Conquer

1. Divide  $I_0$  into  $2^n$  equal subcubes.
2.  $\exists$  at least one subcube  $I_1$  with infinitely many  $x_n$ .

**Step 3:** Iteration

1. Repeat Step 2 with  $I_1, I_2, \dots$
2. Obtain nested intervals  $I_k$ .

**Step 4: Convergence**

1.  $\bigcap I_k$  is nonempty (Nested Interval Property).
2. Let  $x \in \bigcap I_k$ .
3.  $\{x_{n_k}\} \subseteq I_k$  implies  $x_{n_k} \rightarrow x$ .

**Lebesgue Number Lemma:****Statement:**

Let  $(X, d)$  be a compact metric space and  $\{U_i\}$  be an open cover of  $X$ . Then  $\exists \delta > 0$  (Lebesgue number) such that:

1. Every subset  $A \subseteq X$  with  $\text{diam}(A) < \delta$  is contained in some  $U_i$ .

\*\*Proof:)

**Step 1: Assume no Lebesgue number exists**

1.  $\exists x_n \in X$  with  $\text{diam}(B(x_n, 1/n)) \geq 1/n$ .
2.  $\{x_n\}$  has a convergent subsequence  $x_{n_k} \rightarrow x$ .

**Step 2: Obtain contradiction**

1.  $\exists U_i$  with  $x \in U_i$ .
2.  $\exists \varepsilon > 0$  with  $B(x, \varepsilon) \subseteq U_i$ .
3. Choose  $N$  with  $1/N < \varepsilon/2$ .
4. Then  $B(x_N, 1/N) \subseteq B(x, \varepsilon) \subseteq U_i$ .

**Step 3: Conclusion**

1. Contradiction implies  $\exists \delta > 0$  (Lebesgue number).

Some additional topics related to Lebesgue Number Lemma:

1. **Compactness**

**Compact Space:** A topological space  $X$  is compact if every open cover has a finite subcover.

**Compact Set:** A subset  $A$  of a topological space  $X$  is compact if  $A$  is compact with the subspace topology.

**Extreme Value Theorem:****Statement:**

If  $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is continuous, then  $f$  attains its maximum and minimum values on  $[a, b]$ .

**\*\*Proof:]**

**Step 1: Existence of Supremum**

1. Define  $M = \sup\{f(x) \mid x \in [a, b]\}$ .
2.  $\exists x_n \in [a, b]$  with  $f(x_n) \rightarrow M$ .

**Step 2: Convergence of  $x_n$**

1.  $\{x_n\}$  is bounded ( $a \leq x_n \leq b$ ).
2. Bolzano-Weierstrass Theorem:  $\{x_n\}$  has a convergent subsequence  $x_{n_k} \rightarrow c$ .

**Step 3: Continuity**

1.  $f(x_{n_k}) \rightarrow f(c) = M$ .
2.  $f$  attains its maximum at  $c$ .

**Step 4: Minimum**

1. Apply Steps 1-3 to  $-f$ .

**Uniform Continuity:**

A function  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  between metric spaces is uniformly continuous if:

$\forall \epsilon > 0, \exists \delta > 0$  such that

$d(f(x), f(y)) < \epsilon$  whenever  $d(x, y) < \delta$

**\*\*Equivalences:]**

1. **Uniform Continuity:**  $\forall \epsilon > 0, \exists \delta > 0$  with  $d(f(x), f(y)) < \epsilon$  whenever  $d(x, y) < \delta$ .
2. **Lipschitz Continuity:**  $\exists C > 0$  with  $d(f(x), f(y)) \leq Cd(x, y)$  for all  $x, y$ .
3. **Continuous on Compact Sets:**  $f$  is continuous on every compact subset.

**Heine-Cantor Theorem:**

**Statement:**

If  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  is continuous and  $X$  is compact, then  $f$  is uniformly continuous.

Proof:

**Step 1:** Assume  $f$  is not uniformly continuous.

**Step 2:**  $\exists \epsilon > 0$  with no corresponding  $\delta$ .

**Step 3:** Construct sequences  $x_n, y_n$  with  $d(x_n, y_n) \rightarrow 0$  but  $d(f(x_n), f(y_n)) \geq \epsilon$ .

**Step 4:** Use compactness to obtain convergent subsequences  $x_{n_k} \rightarrow x$ .

**Step 5:** Show  $y_{n_k} \rightarrow x$ .

**Step 6:** Derive contradiction using continuity.

**Uniform**

**Continuity**

**Theorem:**

**Statement:**

If  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  is uniformly continuous and  $\{x_n\}$  is a Cauchy sequence in  $X$ , then  $\{f(x_n)\}$  is a Cauchy sequence in  $Y$ .

Proof:

**Step 1:** Let  $\varepsilon > 0$ .

**Step 2:** Choose  $\delta > 0$  such that  $d(f(x), f(y)) < \varepsilon$  whenever  $d(x, y) < \delta$ .

**Step 3:** Since  $\{x_n\}$  is Cauchy,  $\exists N$  with  $d(x_n, x_m) < \delta$  for  $n, m > N$ .

**Step 4:** Then  $d(f(x_n), f(x_m)) < \varepsilon$  for  $n, m > N$ .

**Step 5:**  $\{f(x_n)\}$  is Cauchy.

.

**Open Covers:**

A collection  $\{U_i\}$  of open sets in a topological space  $X$  is an open cover of  $X$  if:

$$X = \cup U_i$$

\*\*Properties:]

1. **Finite Subcover:** If  $\{U_i\}$  has a finite subcover, then  $X$  is compact.
2. **Open Cover Condition:** Every open cover has a finite subcover iff  $X$  is compact.

**Finite Open Cover:**

**Definition:**

A finite open cover of a topological space  $X$  is a finite collection  $\{U_1, U_2, \dots, U_n\}$  of open sets such that:

$$X = \cup U_i$$

**Countable Open Cover:**

A countable open cover of a topological space  $X$  is a countable collection  $\{U_1, U_2, \dots\}$  of open sets such that:

$$X = \cup U_i$$

Properties:

1. **Lindelöf's Theorem:** Every open cover has a countable subcover iff  $X$  is second-countable.
2. **Countable Compactness:** If every countable open cover has a finite subcover, then  $X$  is compact.

**Lindelöf's Theorem:**

**Statement:**

A topological space  $X$  is second-countable if and only if every open cover of  $X$  has a countable subcover.

Proof:

**$\Rightarrow$  (Forward Direction):**

1. Assume  $X$  is second-countable.
2. Let  $\{U_i\}$  be an open cover of  $X$ .
3. For each  $x \in X$ , choose  $U_x$  from  $\{U_i\}$  containing  $x$ .
4. Since  $X$  is second-countable,  $\{U_x\}$  has a countable subcover.

**$\Leftarrow$  (Backward Direction):**

1. Assume every open cover has a countable subcover.
2. Let  $\{B_i\}$  be a basis for  $X$ .
3. For each  $B_i$ , choose  $x_i \in B_i$ .
4.  $\{B_i\}$  is countable, so  $X$  is second-countable.

**Locally Finite Open Cover:**

**Definition:**

An open cover  $\{U_i\}$  of a topological space  $X$  is locally finite if:

1. Every point  $x \in X$  has a neighborhood intersecting only finitely many  $U_i$ .

Equivalent Conditions:

1. **Local Finiteness:** Every point has a neighborhood intersecting finitely many  $U_i$ .
2.  **$\sigma$ -locally Finite:**  $\{U_i\}$  is  $\sigma$ -locally finite (countable union of locally finite families).
3. **Point-Finite**

**Finite Intersection Property:**

A collection  $\{A_i\}$  of subsets of a set  $X$  satisfies the Finite Intersection Property if:

$\forall$  finite subset  $J$  of indices,  $\bigcap_{i \in J} A_i \neq \emptyset$

Equivalent Conditions:

1. **FIP:** Every finite subcollection has a nonempty intersection.
2. **Compactness:**  $X$  is compact iff every collection of closed subsets with FIP has  $\bigcap A_i \neq \emptyset$ .
3. **Filter:**  $\{A_i\}$  is a filter base.



## CHAPTER -II

### NUMERICAL SEQUENCES AND SERIES

**Dr. R.Abirami**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

#### Numerical Sequences:

A numerical sequence is an ordered list of numbers. It can be finite or infinite. Examples:

1. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10 (finite sequence)
2. 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, ... (infinite sequence, also known as a geometric sequence)

Types of numerical sequences:

1. **Arithmetic Sequence:** Each term is obtained by adding a fixed constant to the previous term.  
Example: 2, 5, 8, 11, 14 (common difference = 3)
2. **Geometric Sequence:** Each term is obtained by multiplying the previous term by a fixed constant.  
Example: 2, 6, 18, 54 (common ratio = 3)
3. **Harmonic Sequence:** The reciprocals of the terms form an arithmetic sequence.  
Example: 1,  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{1}{3}$ ,  $\frac{1}{4}$

#### Numerical Series:

A numerical series is the sum of the terms of a sequence.

Types of Numerical Series:

1. **Arithmetic Series:** Sum of an arithmetic sequence.  
Example:  $2 + 5 + 8 + 11 + 14$
2. **Geometric Series:** Sum of a geometric sequence.  
Example:  $2 + 6 + 18 + 54$

3. **Infinite Series:** Sum of an infinite sequence.  
Example:  $1 + 1/2 + 1/4 + 1/8$

**Key Concepts:**

1. **Convergence:** A series converges if its sum approaches a finite limit.
2. **Divergence:** A series diverges if its sum does not approach a finite limit.
3. **Partial Sum:** The sum of the first n terms of a series.

**Fibonacci Sequence:**

The Fibonacci sequence is a series of numbers in which each number is the sum of the two preceding numbers, starting from 0 and 1.

**Sequence:**

0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, 89, 144, ...

**Properties:**

1. **Recursion:** Each term is the sum of the two preceding terms ( $F_n = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2}$ ).
2. **Ratio:** The ratio of any two adjacent terms approaches the Golden Ratio ( $\phi \approx 1.618$ ).
3. **Asymptotic growth:** The sequence grows exponentially.

**Mathematical Formulas:**

1. **Recursive formula:**  $F(n) = F(n-1) + F(n-2)$
2. **Closed-form expression:**  $F(n) = (\phi^n - (1-\phi)^n) / \sqrt{5}$  (Binet's formula)

**Recurrence Relation:**

A recurrence relation is an equation that defines a sequence recursively, where each term is defined as a function of previous terms.

**General Form:**

$$a(n) = f(a(n-1), a(n-2), \dots, a(n-k))$$

where:

- $a(n)$  is the nth term
- $f$  is a function
- $k$  is the order of the recurrence

**Monotonic Sequence:**

A monotonic sequence is a sequence whose terms are either:

1. **Monotonically Increasing:** Each term is greater than or equal to the previous term ( $a_n \leq a_{n+1}$ ).
2. **Monotonically Decreasing:** Each term is less than or equal to the previous term ( $a_n \geq a_{n+1}$ ).

**Types:**

1. **Strictly Increasing:** Each term is strictly greater than the previous term ( $a_n < a_{n+1}$ ).
2. **Strictly Decreasing:** Each term is strictly less than the previous term ( $a_n > a_{n+1}$ ).
3. **Non-Strictly Increasing/Decreasing:** Allows equality.

**Monotone Convergence Theorem:**

**Statement:**

Let  $\{a_n\}$  be a sequence of real numbers. If:

1.  $\{a_n\}$  is monotonic (increasing or decreasing)
2.  $\{a_n\}$  is bounded (above or below)

Then:

$\{a_n\}$  converges to a finite limit.

**Equivalently:**

A bounded monotonic sequence converges.

**Proof:**

1. Assume  $\{a_n\}$  is increasing and bounded above.
2. By completeness of  $\mathbb{R}$  (real numbers),  $\{a_n\}$  has a least upper bound ( $L$ ).
3. For any  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there exists  $N$  such that  $a_n > L - \varepsilon$  for all  $n > N$ .
4. Thus,  $|a_n - L| < \varepsilon$  for all  $n > N$ , proving convergence.

**Converse:**

If  $\{a_n\}$  converges, it is not necessarily monotonic. However:

If  $\{a_n\}$  converges, then it is bounded.

**Monotone Divergence Theorem:**

**Statement:**

Let  $\{a_n\}$  be a sequence of real numbers. If:

1.  $\{a_n\}$  is monotonic (increasing or decreasing)
2.  $\{a_n\}$  is unbounded (above or below)

Then:

$\{a_n\}$  diverges.

**Equivalently:**

An unbounded monotonic sequence diverges.

**Proof:**

1. Assume  $\{a_n\}$  is increasing and unbounded above.
2. For any  $M > 0$ , there exists  $N$  such that  $a_n > M$  for all  $n > N$ .
3. Thus,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \infty$ , proving divergence.

**Converse:**

If  $\{a_n\}$  diverges, it is not necessarily monotonic or unbounded.

## CHAPTER-III

### CONTINUITY

**Dr. R.Abirami**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

A function  $f(x)$  is continuous at  $x=a$  if:

1.  $f(a)$  is defined
2.  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)$  exists
3.  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = f(a)$

#### Types of Continuity:

1. **Continuity at a point:** Continuity at a specific point  $x=a$ .
2. **Continuity on an interval:** Continuity on a closed or open interval.
3. **Uniform continuity:** Continuity on a set, with a uniform bound.

#### Theorems:

##### Intermediate Value Theorem:

##### Statement:

Let  $f(x)$  be a continuous function on the closed interval  $[a, b]$ . If:

1.  $f(a) \neq f(b)$
2.  $k$  is any value between  $f(a)$  and  $f(b)$

Then:

There exists  $c \in (a, b)$  such that  $f(c) = k$ .

##### Geometric Interpretation:

If a function is continuous on  $[a, b]$ , and takes values  $f(a)$  and  $f(b)$  at endpoints, then it takes all intermediate values.

##### Proof:

1. Assume  $f(x)$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$ .
2. Define set  $S = \{x \in [a, b] \mid f(x) \leq k\}$ .
3. Show  $S$  is non-empty, bounded, and closed.

4. Use least upper bound property to find  $c \in S$ .

**Consequences:**

1. **Existence of roots:** Continuous functions with opposite signs at endpoints have roots.
2. **Existence of maxima/minima:** Continuous functions attain extreme values.

**Rolle's Theorem:**

**Statement:**

Let  $f(x)$  be a function that satisfies:

1. Continuity on  $[a, b]$
2. Differentiability on  $(a, b)$
3.  $f(a) = f(b) = 0$

Then:

There exists  $c \in (a, b)$  such that  $f'(c) = 0$ .

**Geometric Interpretation:**

If a function is continuous, differentiable, and has equal values at endpoints, then it has a critical point.

**Proof:**

1. Assume  $f(x)$  satisfies conditions.
2. Apply Extreme Value Theorem to find max/min.
3. Use Fermat's Theorem to show  $f'(c) = 0$ .

**Consequences:**

1. **Existence of critical points:** Functions with equal endpoints have critical points.
2. **Mean Value Theorem:** Generalization to non-zero endpoints.

**Applications:**

1. **Calculus:** Finding critical points, maxima/minima.
2. **Optimization:** Constrained optimization.
3. **Physics:** Modeling physical systems.

**Generalizations:**

1. **Rolle's Theorem for multivariable functions:** Critical points in multiple variables.
2. **Rolle's Theorem for vector-valued functions:** Critical points for vector-valued functions.

**Mean Value Theorem:**

Let  $f(x)$  be a function that satisfies:

1. Continuity on  $[a, b]$
2. Differentiability on  $(a, b)$

Then:

There exists  $c \in (a, b)$  such that:

$$f'(c) = (f(b) - f(a)) / (b - a)$$

### **Geometric Interpretation:**

The derivative at some point equals the average rate of change.

### **Proof:**

1. Define  $g(x) = f(x) - (f(b) - f(a)) / (b - a) * (x - a)$
2. Apply Rolle's Theorem to  $g(x)$

**Bounded Sequence:** A sequence whose terms are bounded within a finite interval.

### **Series Concepts:**

#### **Convergent Series:**

#### **Definition:**

A series  $\sum a_n$  is convergent if:

1. The sequence of partial sums  $\{S_n\}$  converges.
2.  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} S_n = S$ , where  $S$  is a finite value.

#### **Types of Convergent Series:**

1. **Absolutely Convergent Series:**  $\sum |a_n|$  converges.
2. **Conditionally Convergent Series:**  $\sum a_n$  converges, but  $\sum |a_n|$  diverges.

#### **Tests for Convergence:**

1. **n-th Term Test:** If  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n \neq 0$ , series diverges.
2. **Geometric Series Test:**  $\sum ar^{(n-1)}$  converges if  $|r| < 1$ .
3. **p-Series Test:**  $\sum 1/n^p$  converges if  $p > 1$ .
4. **Ratio Test:**  $\sum a_n$  converges if  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_{(n+1)}/a_n| < 1$ .
5. **Root Test:**  $\sum a_n$  converges if  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt[n]{|a_n|} < 1$ .

#### **Convergence Theorems:**

1. **Monotone Convergence Theorem:** Monotonic sequences converge.
2. **Comparison Test:** Comparing series for convergence.
3. **Limit Comparison Test:** Comparing series with limits.

### Divergent Series:

A series  $\sum a_n$  is divergent if:

1. The sequence of partial sums  $\{S_n\}$  diverges.
2.  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} S_n$  does not exist or is infinite.

### Types of Divergent Series:

1. **Oscillating Series** :  $\sum (-1)^n$  diverges.
2. **Unbounded Series** :  $\sum n^2$  diverges.

### Tests for Divergence:

1. **n-th Term Test** : If  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n \neq 0$ , series diverges.
2. **Geometric Series Test** :  $\sum ar^{(n-1)}$  diverges if  $|r| \geq 1$ .
3. **p-Series Test** :  $\sum 1/n^p$  diverges if  $p \leq 1$ .

### Divergence Theorems:

1. **Divergence Test** : If  $\sum a_n$  diverges, then  $\sum |a_n|$  diverges.
2. **Comparison Test** : Comparing series for divergence.

### Alternating Series:

#### Definition:

An alternating series is a series of the form:

$$\sum (-1)^n a_n = a_0 - a_1 + a_2 - a_3 + \dots$$

where:

1.  $a_n \geq 0$  for all  $n$
2.  $a_{n+1} \leq a_n$  for all  $n$

#### Alternating Series Test (Leibniz Test):

An alternating series converges if:

1.  $a_{n+1} \leq a_n$  for all  $n$  (monotonic decrease)
2.  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$

#### Convergence Criteria:

1. **Sufficient Condition**:  $\sum (-1)^n a_n$  converges if  $a_{n+1} \leq a_n$  and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$ .
2. **Necessary Condition**: If  $\sum (-1)^n a_n$  converges, then  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$ .

### Power Series:

A power series is a series of the form:



$$f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n (x-c)^n$$

where:

1.  $a_n$  are coefficients
2.  $c$  is the center
3.  $x$  is the variable

**Convergence:**

1. **Radius of Convergence (R):** Maximum value of  $|x-c|$  for convergence.
2. **Interval of Convergence:**  $[c-R, c+R]$ .

**Tests for Convergence:**

1. **Ratio Test:**  $\sum a_n (x-c)^n$  converges if  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_{n+1}/a_n| < 1/|x-c|$ .
2. **Root Test:**  $\sum a_n (x-c)^n$  converges if  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt[n]{|a_n|} < 1/|x-c|$ .

**Ratio Test:**

The Ratio Test is a convergence test for series of the form:

$$\sum a_n$$

**Test:**

The series converges if:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_{n+1}/a_n| < 1$$

**Divergence:**

The series diverges if:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_{n+1}/a_n| > 1$$

**Indeterminate Case:**

If:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_{n+1}/a_n| = 1$$

the test is inconclusive.

**Proof:**

1. Assume  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_{n+1}/a_n| < 1$ .
2. Choose  $r$  with  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_{n+1}/a_n| < r < 1$ .
3. Show  $|a_n| < |a_0| * r^n$  for large  $n$ .

**Root Test:**

The Root Test is a convergence test for series of the form:

$$\sum a_n$$

**Test:**

The series converges if:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt[n]{|a_n|} < 1$$

**Divergence:**

The series diverges if:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt[n]{|a_n|} > 1$$

**Indeterminate Case:**

If:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt[n]{|a_n|} = 1$$

the test is inconclusive.

**Proof:**

1. Assume  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt[n]{|a_n|} < 1$ .
2. Choose  $r$  with  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt[n]{|a_n|} < r < 1$ .
3. Show  $|a_n| < r^n$  for large  $n$ .

**Integral Test:****Definition:**

The Integral Test is a convergence test for series of the form:

$$\sum f(n)$$

**Test:**

If  $f(x)$  is:

1. Positive
2. Decreasing
3. Continuous

on  $[1, \infty)$ , then:

$$\sum f(n) \text{ converges} \Leftrightarrow \int_1^{\infty} f(x) \, dx \text{ converges}$$

**Convergence Criteria:**

1. If  $\int_1^{\infty} f(x) \, dx$  converges, then  $\sum f(n)$  converges.
2. If  $\int_1^{\infty} f(x) \, dx$  diverges, then  $\sum f(n)$  diverges.

**Comparison Test:**

The Comparison Test is a convergence test for series of the form:

$$\sum a_n$$

**Test:**

If:

1.  $\sum b_n$  converges
2.  $0 \leq a_n \leq b_n$  for all  $n$

Then:

 $\sum a_n$  converges**Divergence:**

If:

1.  $\sum b_n$  diverges
2.  $a_n \geq b_n$  for all  $n$

Then:

 $\sum a_n$  diverges

## CHAPTER –IV

### DIFFERENTIATION

**Dr. R.Abirami**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

Differentiation is the process of finding the derivative of a function, which represents the rate of change of the function with respect to its input.

#### Types of Differentiation:

1. **First Derivative:**  $f'(x)$  represents the rate of change.
2. **Second Derivative:**  $f''(x)$  represents the rate of change of the rate of change.
3. **Higher-Order Derivatives:**  $f'''(x)$ ,  $f''''(x)$ , ...
4. **Partial Derivatives:**  $\partial f/\partial x$ ,  $\partial f/\partial y$ , ...
5. **Total Derivative:**  $df/dx = \partial f/\partial x + (\partial f/\partial y)(dy/dx)$

#### Differentiation Rules:

1. **Power Rule:**  $(x^n)' = nx^{(n-1)}$
2. **Product Rule:**  $(uv)' = u'v + uv'$
3. **Quotient Rule:**  $(u/v)' = (u'v - uv')/v^2$
4. **Chain Rule:**  $(f(g(x)))' = f'(g(x)) * g'(x)$
5. **Sum Rule:**  $(f+g)' = f' + g'$

#### Differentiation Techniques:

##### Implicit Differentiation:

Implicit Differentiation

##### Definition:

Implicit differentiation is a technique used to find the derivative of an implicitly defined function.

**Implicitly Defined Function:**

An equation of the form:

$$F(x,y) = 0$$

defines  $y$  implicitly as a function of  $x$ .

**Implicit Differentiation Formula:**

$$dF/dx = \partial F/\partial x + (\partial F/\partial y)(dy/dx) = 0$$

**Steps:**

1. Differentiate both sides of the equation with respect to  $x$ .
2. Use the chain rule to differentiate terms involving  $y$ .
3. Solve for  $dy/dx$ .

**Examples:**

1.  $x^2 + y^2 = 4$

$$dy/dx = -x/y$$

2.  $x^3 - 3xy + y^3 = 0$

$$dy/dx = (3y - x^2) / (3x - y^2)$$

**Logarithmic Differentiation:**

**Definition:**

Logarithmic differentiation is a technique used to differentiate complex functions by taking the logarithm of both sides.

**Steps:**

1. Take the natural logarithm ( $\ln$ ) of both sides of the equation.
2. Differentiate both sides with respect to  $x$ .
3. Use implicit differentiation and chain rule.
4. Solve for  $dy/dx$ .

**Formula:**

If  $y = f(x)$ , then:  $\ln(y) = \ln(f(x))$

Differentiating:

$$1/y * dy/dx = f'(x)/f(x)$$

$$dy/dx = y * f'(x)/f(x)$$

**Examples:**

1.  $y = x^x$

$$\ln(y) = x \ln(x)$$

$$dy/dx = y(1 + \ln(x))$$

2.  $y = (x^2 + 1) / (x^3 - 2)$

$$\ln(y) = \ln((x^2 + 1) / (x^3 - 2))$$

$$dy/dx = y(2x/(x^2 + 1) - 3x^2/(x^3 - 2))$$

**Parametric Differentiation:**

Parametric differentiation is a technique used to differentiate functions defined by parametric equations.

**Parametric Equations:**

$$x = f(t) \qquad y = g(t)$$

**Derivative (dy/dx):**

$$dy/dx = g'(t) / f'(t)$$

**Steps:**

1. Differentiate x and y with respect to t.
2. Divide dy/dt by dx/dt.

**Examples:**

1.  $x = 2t, y = 3t^2$

$$dx/dt = 2, dy/dt = 6t$$

$$dy/dx = 6t / 2 = 3t$$

2.  $x = \cos(t), y = \sin(t)$

$$dx/dt = -\sin(t), dy/dt = \cos(t)$$

$$dy/dx = \cos(t) / -\sin(t) = -\cot(t)$$

**Mean Value Theorem (MVT)**

If  $f(x)$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$  and differentiable on  $(a, b)$ , then:

$$\exists c \in (a, b) \text{ such that } f'(c) = (f(b) - f(a)) / (b - a)$$

**Proof:**

Let:

$$h(x) = f(x) - (f(b) - f(a)) / (b - a) * (x - a)$$

Then:

$$h(a) = h(b) = f(a)$$

Since:

1.  $h(x)$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$  (by definition)
2.  $h(x)$  is differentiable on  $(a, b)$  (by definition)

By Rolle's Theorem:

$$\exists c \in (a, b) \text{ such that } h'(c) = 0$$

Computing  $h'(c)$ :

$$h'(c) = f'(c) - (f(b) - f(a)) / (b - a)$$

Setting  $h'(c) = 0$ :

$$f'(c) = (f(b) - f(a)) / (b - a)$$

Thus:

$$\exists c \in (a, b) \text{ such that } f'(c) = (f(b) - f(a)) / (b - a)$$

### **Extreme Value Theorem (EVT)**

If  $f(x)$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$  and differentiable on  $(a, b)$ , then:

$f(x)$  attains its maximum and minimum values at critical points.

### **Proof:**

Weierstrass Extreme Value Theorem:

1.  $f(x)$  is bounded on  $[a, b]$  (since continuous)
2.  $\exists$  supremum  $M$  and infimum  $m$  of  $f(x)$  on  $[a, b]$
3.  $\exists x_M, x_m \in [a, b]$  such that  $f(x_M) = M, f(x_m) = m$

If  $x_M, x_m$  are endpoints or critical points, EVT holds.

If  $x_M, x_m$  are interior points,  $f'(x_M) = f'(x_m) = 0$  (by Fermat's Theorem)

### **Fermat's Theorem:**

If  $f(x)$  has a local extremum at  $x_0$  and  $f'(x_0)$  exists, then:

$$f'(x_0) = 0$$

### **Proof:**

Assume  $f(x)$  has a local maximum at  $x_0$ .

Define:

$$h(x) = f(x) - f(x_0)$$

Then:

$$h(x_0) = 0$$

$h(x) \leq 0$  for  $x$  near  $x_0$  (since local maximum)

By definition of derivative:

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x_0) &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} [h(x_0 + h) - h(x_0)]/h \\ &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} [f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0)]/h \\ &\leq 0 \text{ (since } h(x) \leq 0 \text{)} \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, considering local minimum:

$$f'(x_0) \geq 0$$

Combining:

### **Rolle's Theorem**

If  $f(x)$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$  and differentiable on  $(a, b)$ , and  $f(a) = f(b)$ , then:

$\exists c \in (a, b)$  such that  $f'(c) = 0$

**Proof:**

#### **Case 1: $f(x)$ is constant**

$$f(x) = k \text{ for all } x \in [a, b]$$

$$f'(x) = 0 \text{ for all } x \in (a, b)$$

#### **Case 2: $f(x)$ is not constant**

By Extreme Value Theorem:

$f(x)$  attains its maximum and minimum values on  $[a, b]$

Since  $f(a) = f(b)$ , these values cannot occur at endpoints.

$\exists c \in (a, b)$  such that  $f(c)$  is maximum or minimum.

By Fermat's Theorem:

$$f'(c) = 0$$

### **Intermediate Value Theorem (IVT)**

If  $f(x)$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$ , then:

$\exists c \in (a, b)$  such that  $f(c) = k$ , where  $k$  is between  $f(a)$  and  $f(b)$ .

**Proof:**

Assume without loss of generality:



$$f(a) < k < f(b)$$

Define:

$$S = \{x \in [a, b] \mid f(x) \geq k\}$$

S is non-empty (since  $f(b) \geq k$ ) and bounded below by a.

By Least Upper Bound Property:

$$c = \sup S \text{ exists}$$

We claim:

$$f(c) = k$$

**Case 1:**  $f(c) > k$

$$\exists \delta > 0 \text{ such that } f(x) > k \text{ for all } x \in (c - \delta, c + \delta)$$

Contradicts  $c = \sup S$

**Case 2:**  $f(c) < k$

$$\exists \delta > 0 \text{ such that } f(x) < k \text{ for all } x \in (c - \delta, c + \delta)$$

Contradicts  $c = \sup S$

Thus:

$$f(c) = k$$

### **Differentiable Implicit Function Theorem**

If  $F(x, y)$  is continuously differentiable and  $\partial F / \partial y \neq 0$ , then:

$$\exists \text{ a unique function } y = f(x) \text{ satisfying } F(x, f(x)) = 0$$

### **Inverse Function Theorem**

If  $f(x)$  is continuously differentiable and  $f'(x) \neq 0$ , then:

$f(x)$  has a unique inverse function.

**Proof:**

#### **Part 1: Injectivity**

Assume  $f(x) = f(y)$  for  $x, y$  in  $I$ .

By Mean Value Theorem:

$$\exists c \in (x, y) \text{ such that } f'(c) = 0$$

Contradicts  $f'(x) \neq 0$  for all  $x$  in  $I$ .

Thus,  $f(x)$  is injective.

#### **Part 2: Existence of Inverse**

Define:

$$g(x) = f^{-1}(x)$$

We show  $g(x)$  exists.

By Extreme Value Theorem:

$f(x)$  attains its maximum and minimum values on  $I$ .

Since  $f'(x) \neq 0$ , these values cannot occur at endpoints.

$f(x)$  is strictly monotonic.

Thus,  $g(x)$  exists.

### Part 3: Differentiability of Inverse

We show  $g(x)$  is differentiable.

$$g'(x) = 1 / f'(g(x))$$

Proof:

$$h(x) = f(g(x)) - x$$

$$h'(x) = f'(g(x)) * g'(x) - 1$$

$$= 0 \text{ (since } h(x) = 0)$$

$$g'(x) = 1 / f'(g(x))$$

Thus,  $g(x)$  is differentiable.

### Chain Rule Theorem

If  $f(x) = g(h(x))$ , then:  $f'(x) = g'(h(x)) * h'(x)$

**Proof:**

Define:

$$h(x) = f(g(x)) - f(g(x_0))$$

$$k(x) = g(x) - g(x_0)$$

By definition of derivative:

$$f'(g(x_0)) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} [f(g(x_0) + h) - f(g(x_0))] / h$$

$$g'(x_0) = \lim_{k \rightarrow 0} [g(x_0 + k) - g(x_0)] / k$$

Using:

$$h(k) = f(g(x_0) + k) - f(g(x_0))$$

We have:

$$(f \circ g)'(x_0) = \lim_{k \rightarrow 0} [h(k) / k]$$

$$= \lim_{k \rightarrow 0} [f(g(x_0) + k) - f(g(x_0))] / k$$

$$= f'(g(x_0)) * g'(x_0)$$

### Product Rule Theorem

If  $f(x) = u(x)v(x)$ , then:  $f'(x) = u'(x)v(x) + u(x)v'(x)$

#### Proof:

Define:

$$h(x) = f(x) * g(x) - f(x_0) * g(x_0)$$

By definition of derivative:

$$\begin{aligned} h'(x_0) &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} [h(x_0 + h) - h(x_0)] / h \\ &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} [f(x_0 + h) * g(x_0 + h) - f(x_0) * g(x_0)] / h \end{aligned}$$

Using:

$$f(x_0 + h) = f(x_0) + hf'(x_0) + o(h)$$

$$g(x_0 + h) = g(x_0) + hg'(x_0) + o(h)$$

We have:

$$h'(x_0) = f'(x_0) * g(x_0) + f(x_0) * g'(x_0)$$

### Quotient Rule Theorem:

If  $f(x) = u(x)/v(x)$ , then:  $f'(x) = (u'(x)v(x) - u(x)v'(x)) / v(x)^2$

#### Proof:

Define:

$$h(x) = f(x) / g(x) - f(x_0) / g(x_0)$$

By definition of derivative:

$$\begin{aligned} h'(x_0) &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} [h(x_0 + h) - h(x_0)] / h \\ &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} [f(x_0 + h) / g(x_0 + h) - f(x_0) / g(x_0)] / h \end{aligned}$$

Using:

$$f(x_0 + h) = f(x_0) + hf'(x_0) + o(h)$$

$$g(x_0 + h) = g(x_0) + hg'(x_0) + o(h)$$

We have:

$$h'(x_0) = (f'(x_0)g(x_0) - f(x_0)g'(x_0)) / g(x_0)^2$$

### L'Hôpital's Rule

If  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)/g(x)$  is indeterminate, then:  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)/g(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} f'(x)/g'(x)$

#### Proof:

Case 1: 0/0

By definition of derivative:

$$f(x) = f(c) + (x-c)f'(c) + o(x-c)$$
$$g(x) = g(c) + (x-c)g'(c) + o(x-c)$$

Dividing:

$$f(x)/g(x) = f'(c) / g'(c) + o(1)$$

Taking limit:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x)/g(x) = f'(c) / g'(c)$$

Case 2:  $\infty/\infty$

Let:

$$h(x) = 1/g(x)$$

Then:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} h(x) = 0$$

Apply Case 1 to  $f(x)/h(x)$ .

## CHAPTER –V

### THE REIMANN INTEGRALS

**Dr. R.Abirami**

*Assistant Professor in Mathematics  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

Riemann Integrals

#### Definition:

Let  $f(x)$  be a function defined on  $[a, b]$ . Partition  $[a, b]$  into  $n$  subintervals:

$$[a = x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n = b]$$

Choose points:

$$c_1 \in [x_0, x_1], \dots, c_n \in [x_{n-1}, x_n]$$

Form Riemann sum:

$$S = \sum f(c_i) * \Delta x_i$$

where  $\Delta x_i = x_i - x_{i-1}$

#### Riemann Integral:

If  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} S$  exists, then:

$$\int [a, b] f(x) dx = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} S$$

#### Properties:

1. Linearity:  $\int [a, b] af(x) + bg(x) dx = a \int [a, b] f(x) dx + b \int [a, b] g(x) dx$
2. Additivity:  $\int [a, c] f(x) dx + \int [c, b] f(x) dx = \int [a, b] f(x) dx$
3. Monotonicity:  $f(x) \leq g(x) \Rightarrow \int [a, b] f(x) dx \leq \int [a, b] g(x) dx$

#### Types of Riemann Integrals:

1. Definite Integral:  $\int [a, b] f(x) dx$
2. Indefinite Integral:  $\int f(x) dx = F(x) + C$

3. Improper Integral:  $\int [a, \infty) f(x) dx$  or  $\int (-\infty, b] f(x) dx$

**Theorems:**

Fundamental Theorem of Calculus (FTC):

**Statement:**

There are two main forms of the FTC:

**First Form (FTC I):**

If:

1.  $f(x)$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$ .
2.  $F(x)$  is an antiderivative of  $f(x)$ .

Then:

$$\int [a, b] f(x) dx = F(b) - F(a)$$

**Second Form (FTC II):**

If:

1.  $f(x)$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$ .
2.  $F(x) = \int [a, x] f(t) dt$ .

Then:

$$F'(x) = f(x)$$

**Proof:**

**FTC I:**

By definition of definite integral:

$$\int [a, b] f(x) dx = \lim_{(n \rightarrow \infty)} \sum f(c_i) * \Delta x_i$$

Using:

$$F(x) = \int f(x) dx$$

We have:

$$F(b) - F(a) = \int [a, b] f(x) dx$$

**FTC II:**

By definition of derivative:

$$F'(x) = \lim_{(h \rightarrow 0)} [F(x + h) - F(x)]/h$$

Using:

$$F(x) = \int [a, x] f(t) dt$$

We have:

$$F'(x) = f(x)$$

### Mean Value Theorem for Integrals:

#### Statement:

If:

1.  $f(x)$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$ .
2.  $\int[a, b] f(x) dx$  exists.

Then:

$\exists c \in [a, b]$  such that:

$$\int[a, b] f(x) dx = f(c) * (b - a)$$

#### Proof:

By Extreme Value Theorem:

$f(x)$  attains its maximum and minimum values on  $[a, b]$

Let:

$$M = \max f(x) \text{ on } [a, b]$$

$$m = \min f(x) \text{ on } [a, b]$$

Then:

$$m \leq f(x) \leq M \text{ for all } x \in [a, b]$$

By properties of integrals:

$$m(b - a) \leq \int[a, b] f(x) dx \leq M(b - a)$$

By Intermediate Value Theorem:

$\exists c \in [a, b]$  such that:

$$f(c) = (\int[a, b] f(x) dx) / (b - a)$$

#### Examples:

1. Evaluate  $\int[0, 1] x^2 dx$ .

$$\text{Solution: } \int[0, 1] x^2 dx = (1/3)x^3 | [0, 1] = 1/3.$$

2. Find  $\int(2x + 1) dx$ .

$$\text{Solution: } \int(2x + 1) dx = x^2 + x + C.$$





# OPERATIONS RESEARCH

EDITED BY

**DR.N.BALAMBIGAI**



978-93-6255-993-7

# **Operations Research**

Copyright © 2019 by Dr.N.Balamigai

First Edition,2019

*All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.*

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-993-7**

***Publisher:*** Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (**PRIST**)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Book elements</b>	<b>Page Numbers</b>
----- <b>Chapter-I</b> <b>INTRODUCTION</b> Dr.N.Balamigai	<b>01-05</b>
----- <b>Chapter-II</b> <b>TRANSPORTATION PROBLEMS</b> Dr.N.Balamigai	<b>06-24</b>
----- <b>Chapter-III</b> <b>PERT AND CPM NETWORK</b> Dr.N.Balamigai	<b>25-34</b>
----- <b>Chapter-IV</b> <b>SEQUENCING PROBLEM</b> Dr.N.Balamigai	<b>35-39</b>
----- <b>Chapter-V</b> <b>INVENTORY THEORY</b> Dr.N.Balamigai -----	<b>34-37</b>



### INTRODUCTION

**Dr.N.Balamigai**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

#### **Operations Research (OR) Introduction:**

Operations Research (OR) is a multidisciplinary field that applies advanced analytical methods to optimize decision-making processes.

#### **Definition:**

OR is the scientific approach to analyzing and solving complex problems in various fields, including:

1. Business
2. Engineering
3. Economics
4. Finance
5. Healthcare

#### **History of Operations Research:**

Operations Research (OR) has its roots in the 19th and early 20th centuries, but it emerged as a distinct field during World War II.

#### **Early Developments:**

1. **1840s:** Francis Ysidro Edgeworth's work on probability and statistics.
2. **1880s:** Frederick Winsor's studies on railway optimization.
3. **1930s:** Harold Hotelling's work on spatial economics.

#### **World War II (1939-1945):**

1. **British Army's Operational Research Section (ORS):** formed in 1941.
2. **US Army Air Forces' Operations Analysis Section:** established in 1942.

3. **Applications:** bombing strategies, logistics, radar optimization.

**Post-War Developments:**

1. **1940s-1950s:** OR expands to industry, academia, and government.
2. **1950s-1960s:** Development of linear programming (LP) and dynamic programming (DP).
3. **1960s-1970s:**

**Objectives:**

1. Optimize performance
2. Maximize efficiency
3. Minimize costs
4. Improve decision-making
5. Enhance productivity

**Methodologies:**

1. **Mathematical Modeling:** representing complex systems mathematically
2. **Statistical Analysis:** analyzing data to inform decisions
3. **Optimization Techniques:** finding the best solution
4. **Simulation:** modeling complex systems
5. **Decision Analysis:** evaluating alternatives

**OR Techniques:**

1. **Linear Programming (LP):** optimizing linear objective functions

Linear Programming is a method for optimizing linear objective functions, subject to linear constraints.

**Definition:**

Maximize or minimize a linear objective function:

$$z = c_1x_1 + c_2x_2 + \dots + c_nx_n$$

Subject to linear constraints:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc}
 a_{11}x_1 & + & a_{12}x_2 & + & \dots & + & a_{1n}x_n & \leq & b_1 \\
 a_{21}x_1 & + & a_{22}x_2 & + & \dots & + & a_{2n}x_n & \leq & b_2
 \end{array}$$

...

$$a_{m1}x_1 + a_{m2}x_2 + \dots + a_{mn}x_n \leq b_m$$

And non-negativity constraints:

$$x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \geq 0$$

**Types of LP:**

1. **Maximization:** maximize the objective function.
2. **Minimization:** minimize the objective function.

**Methods:**

1. **Graphical Method:** visualize the feasible region.
2. **Simplex Method:** iterative algorithm for finding the optimal solution.
3. **Dual Simplex Method:** variant of the simplex method.
2. **Integer Programming (IP):** optimizing integer objective functions

**Integer Programming (IP):**

Integer Programming is a method for optimizing objective functions, subject to linear constraints, where some or all variables are restricted to integer values.

**Definition:**

Maximize or minimize a linear objective function:

$$z = c_1x_1 + c_2x_2 + \dots + c_nx_n$$

Subject to linear constraints:

$$a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \dots + a_{1n}x_n \leq b_1$$

$$a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \dots + a_{2n}x_n \leq b_2$$

...

$$a_{m1}x_1 + a_{m2}x_2 + \dots + a_{mn}x_n \leq b_m$$

And integer constraints:

$$x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ (integer)}$$

**Types of IP:**

1. **Pure IP:** all variables are integers.
2. **Mixed-Integer Programming (MIP):** some variables are integers, others are continuous.

### Methods:

1. **Branch and Bound:** divide and conquer approach.
2. **Cutting Plane Method:** add constraints to eliminate fractional solutions.
3. **Gomory's Method:** iterative algorithm.

### Applications:

1. **Scheduling:** assign tasks to resources.
2. **Resource Allocation:** allocate resources to tasks.
3. **Network Optimization:** optimize flow in networks.
4. **Supply Chain Management:** manage inventory and logistics.
5. **Finance:** portfolio optimization.

### Key Concepts:

1. **Decision Variables:**  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$
2. **Objective Function:**  $z$
3. **Constraints:** linear equations or inequalities
4. **Feasible Region:** set of all possible solutions
5. **Optimal Solution:** best possible solution
3. **Dynamic Programming (DP):** optimizing multistage processes

Dynamic Programming is a method for optimizing multistage processes by breaking them down into smaller subproblems.

### Key Characteristics:

1. **Multistage Process:** divided into stages.
2. **State Variable:** describes the system's state at each stage.
3. **Decision Variable:** determines the action taken at each stage.
4. **Optimality Principle:** optimal solution to subproblems combines to form optimal solution.

### Types of DP:

1. **Deterministic DP:** no uncertainty.
2. **Stochastic DP:** uncertainty in outcomes.

### Methods:



1. **Backward Recursion:** start with last stage and work backward.
2. **Forward Recursion:** start with first stage and work forward.
3. **Value Iteration:** iterative approach.

**Applications:**

1. **Resource Allocation:** allocate resources over time.
  2. **Production Planning:** plan production levels.
  3. **Inventory Control:** manage inventory levels.
  4. **Financial Planning:** optimize investment strategies.
  5. **Supply Chain Management:** manage supply chain operations.
- 
4. **Queueing Theory:** analyzing waiting lines
  5. **Network Flow:** optimizing flow in networks

**Applications:**

1. Supply Chain Management
2. Resource Allocation
3. Scheduling
4. Inventory Control
5. Financial Planning

## TRANSPORTATION PROBLEMS

**Dr.N.Balamigai**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

### **Transportation Problem:**

The Transportation Problem is a classic problem in Operations Research and Management Science that involves minimizing the cost of transporting goods from sources to destinations.

### **Definition:**

Given:

- m sources (e.g., factories, warehouses)
- n destinations (e.g., stores, customers)
- Capacity of each source (e.g., supply)
- Demand of each destination (e.g., requirement)
- Cost of transporting one unit from each source to each destination

Objective:

Minimize the total transportation cost

Subject to:

- Meet demand at each destination
- Do not exceed capacity at each source
- Non-negativity constraints

### **Problem Types:**

1. **Balanced Transportation Problem:** total supply equals total demand.
2. **Unbalanced Transportation Problem:** total supply does not equal total demand.

**Methods:**

1. **North-West Corner Method:** simple, intuitive method.
2. **Least Cost Method:** choose cheapest routes first.
3. **Vogel's Approximation Method (VAM):** estimate optimal solution.
4. **Stepping Stone Method:** iterative improvement.
5. **Modified Distribution Method (MODI):** efficient solution.
6. **Linear Programming (LP):** formulate as LP problem.

### **North-West Corner Method**

The North-West Corner Method is a simple and intuitive method used to find an initial feasible solution to the Transportation Problem in Operational Research and Management Science.

The Transportation Problem is a linear programming problem that involves minimizing the cost of transporting goods from multiple sources (origins) to multiple destinations.

The North-West Corner Method involves the following steps:

1. **Prepare the transportation table:** Create a table with sources (origins) as rows and destinations as columns. Enter the capacity of each source, demand of each destination, and transportation cost per unit.
2. **Start from the North-West Corner:** Begin from the top-left cell (North-West Corner) of the table.
3. **Allocate maximum possible quantity:** Allocate the maximum possible quantity that can be transported from the source to the destination, considering the capacity and demand constraints.
4. **Move to the next cell:** If the demand is met, move to the next column. If the capacity is exhausted, move to the next row.
5. **Repeat steps 3-4:** Continue allocating and moving until all demands are met or all capacities are exhausted.

### Example

#### Find Solution using North-West Corner method

	D1	D2	D3	D4	Supply
S1	19	30	50	10	7
S2	70	30	40	60	9
S3	40	8	70	20	18
Demand	5	8	7	14	

#### Solution:

TOTAL number of supply constraints : 3

TOTAL number of demand constraints : 4

Problem Table is

	<i>D1</i>	<i>D2</i>	<i>D3</i>	<i>D4</i>	Supply
S1	19	30	50	10	7
S2	70	30	40	60	9
S3	40	8	70	20	18
Demand	5	8	7	14	

The rim values for  $S1=7$  and  $D1=5$  are compared.

The smaller of the two i.e.  $\min(7,5) = 5$  is assigned to  $S1$   $D1$

This meets the complete demand of  $D1$  and leaves  $7 - 5=2$  units with  $S1$

Table-1

	<i>D1</i>	<i>D2</i>	<i>D3</i>	<i>D4</i>	Supply
<i>S1</i>	19(5)	30	50	10	2
<i>S2</i>	70	30	40	60	9
<i>S3</i>	40	8	70	20	18
Demand	0	8	7	14	

Move horizontally,

The rim values for  $S1=2$  and  $D2=8$  are compared.

The smaller of the two i.e.  $\min(2,8) = 2$  is assigned to  $S1 D2$

This exhausts the capacity of  $S1$  and leaves  $8 - 2=6$  units with  $D2$

Table-2

	<i>D1</i>	<i>D2</i>	<i>D3</i>	<i>D4</i>	Supply
<i>S1</i>	19(5)	30(2)	50	10	0
<i>S2</i>	70	30	40	60	9
<i>S3</i>	40	8	70	20	18
Demand	0	6	7	14	

Move vertically,

The rim values for  $S2=9$  and  $D2=6$  are compared.

The smaller of the two i.e.  $\min(9,6) = 6$  is assigned to  $S2 D2$

This meets the complete demand of  $D2$  and leaves  $9 - 6=3$  units with  $S2$

Table-3

	$D1$	$D2$	$D3$	$D4$	Supply
$S1$	19(5)	30(2)	50	10	0
$S2$	70	30(6)	40	60	3
$S3$	40	8	70	20	18
Demand	0	0	7	14	

Move horizontally,

The rim values for  $S2=3$  and  $D3=7$  are compared.

The smaller of the two i.e.  $\min(3,7) = 3$  is assigned to  $S2 D3$

This exhausts the capacity of  $S2$  and leaves  $7 - 3=4$  units with  $D3$

Table-4

	<i>D1</i>	<i>D2</i>	<i>D3</i>	<i>D4</i>	Supply
<i>S1</i>	19(5)	30(2)	50	10	0
<i>S2</i>	70	30(6)	40(3)	60	0
<i>S3</i>	40	8	70	20	18
Demand	0	0	4	14	

Move vertically,

The rim values for  $S3=18$  and  $D3=4$  are compared.

The smaller of the two i.e.  $\min(18,4) = 4$  is assigned to  $S3 D3$

This meets the complete demand of  $D3$  and leaves  $18 - 4=14$  units with  $S3$

Table-5

	<i>D1</i>	<i>D2</i>	<i>D3</i>	<i>D4</i>	Supply
<i>S1</i>	19(5)	30(2)	50	10	0
<i>S2</i>	70	30(6)	40(3)	60	0
<i>S3</i>	40	8	70(4)	20	14
Demand	0	0	0	14	

Move horizontally,

The rim values for  $S_3=14$  and  $D_4=14$  are compared.

The smaller of the two i.e.  $\min(14,14) = 14$  is assigned to  $S_3 D_4$

Table-6

	$D_1$	$D_2$	$D_3$	$D_4$	Supply
$S_1$	19(5)	30(2)	50	10	0
$S_2$	70	30(6)	40(3)	60	0
$S_3$	40	8	70(4)	20(14)	0
Demand	0	0	0	0	

Initial feasible solution is

	$D_1$	$D_2$	$D_3$	$D_4$	Supply
$S_1$	19 (5)	30 (2)	50	10	7
$S_2$	70	30 (6)	40 (3)	60	9
$S_3$	40	8	70 (4)	20 (14)	18
Demand	5	8	7	14	

The minimum total transportation cost  $=19 \times 5 + 30 \times 2 + 30 \times 6 + 40 \times 3 + 70 \times 4 + 20 \times 14 = 1015$



Here, the number of allocated cells = 6 is equal to  $m + n - 1 = 3 + 4 - 1 = 6$   
 $\therefore$  This solution is non-degenerate

### Least Cost Method:

The Least Cost Method is a popular method for finding an initial feasible solution to the Transportation Problem. It involves selecting the cheapest transportation routes first.

The Least Cost Method involves the following steps:

1. **Prepare the transportation table:** Create a table with sources (origins) as rows and destinations as columns. Enter the capacity of each source, demand of each destination, and transportation cost per unit.
2. **Identify the cheapest cell:** Find the cell with the lowest transportation cost.
3. **Allocate maximum possible quantity:** Allocate the maximum possible quantity that can be transported from the source to the destination, considering the capacity and demand constraints.
4. **Update the table:** Update the remaining capacity and demand.
5. **Repeat steps 2-4:** Continue allocating and updating until all demands are met or all capacities are exhausted.

### Example-1

#### Find Solution using Least Cost method

	D1	D2	D3	D4	Supply
S1	19	30	50	10	7
S2	70	30	40	60	9
S3	40	8	70	20	18
Demand	5	8	7	14	

**Solution:**

TOTAL number of supply constraints : 3

TOTAL number of demand constraints : 4

Problem Table is

	<i>D1</i>	<i>D2</i>	<i>D3</i>	<i>D4</i>	Supply
<i>S1</i>	19	30	50	10	7
<i>S2</i>	70	30	40	60	9
<i>S3</i>	40	8	70	20	18
Demand	5	8	7	14	

The smallest transportation cost is 8 in cell *S3D2*

The allocation to this cell is  $\min(18,8) = 8$ .

This satisfies the entire demand of *D2* and leaves  $18 - 8 = 10$  units with *S3*

Table-1

	<i>D1</i>	<i>D2</i>	<i>D3</i>	<i>D4</i>	Supply
<i>S1</i>	19	30	50	10	7
<i>S2</i>	70	30	40	60	9
<i>S3</i>	40	8(8)	70	20	10
Demand	5	0	7	14	

The smallest transportation cost is 10 in cell  $S1D4$

The allocation to this cell is  $\min(7,14) = 7$ .

This exhausts the capacity of  $S1$  and leaves  $14 - 7 = 7$  units with  $D4$

Table-2

	$D1$	$D2$	$D3$	$D4$	Supply
$S1$	19	30	50	10(7)	0
$S2$	70	30	40	60	9
$S3$	40	8(8)	70	20	10
Demand	5	0	7	7	

The smallest transportation cost is 20 in cell  $S3D4$

The allocation to this cell is  $\min(10,7) = 7$ .

This satisfies the entire demand of  $D4$  and leaves  $10 - 7 = 3$  units with  $S3$

Table-3

	$D1$	$D2$	$D3$	$D4$	Supply
$S1$	19	30	50	10(7)	0
$S2$	70	30	40	60	9

S3	40	8(8)	70	20(7)	3
Demand	5	0	7	0	

The smallest transportation cost is 40 in cell  $S2D3$

The allocation to this cell is  $\min(9,7) = 7$ .

This satisfies the entire demand of  $D3$  and leaves  $9 - 7 = 2$  units with  $S2$

Table-4

	$D1$	$D2$	$D3$	$D4$	Supply
$S1$	19	30	50	10(7)	0
$S2$	70	30	40(7)	60	2
$S3$	40	8(8)	70	20(7)	3
Demand	5	0	0	0	

The smallest transportation cost is 40 in cell  $S3D1$

The allocation to this cell is  $\min(3,5) = 3$ .

This exhausts the capacity of  $S3$  and leaves  $5 - 3 = 2$  units with  $D1$

Table-5

	$D1$	$D2$	$D3$	$D4$	Supply
--	------	------	------	------	--------

S1	19	30	50	10(7)	0
S2	70	30	40(7)	60	2
S3	40(3)	8(8)	70	20(7)	0
Demand	2	0	0	0	

The smallest transportation cost is 70 in cell S2D1

The allocation to this cell is  $\min(2,2) = 2$ .

Table-6

	D1	D2	D3	D4	Supply
S1	19	30	50	10(7)	0
S2	70(2)	30	40(7)	60	0
S3	40(3)	8(8)	70	20(7)	0
Demand	0	0	0	0	

Initial feasible solution is

	D1	D2	D3	D4	Supply
S1	19	30	50	10 (7)	7
S2	70 (2)	30	40 (7)	60	9
S3	40 (3)	8 (8)	70	20 (7)	18

Demand	5	8	7	14	
--------	---	---	---	----	--

The minimum total transportation cost =  $10 \times 7 + 70 \times 2 + 40 \times 7 + 40 \times 3 + 8 \times 8 + 20 \times 7 = 814$

Here, the number of allocated cells = 6 is equal to  $m + n - 1 = 3 + 4 - 1 = 6$

∴ This solution is non-degenerate

### **Vogel's Approximation Method (VAM)**

Vogel's Approximation Method (VAM) is an efficient method for finding an initial feasible solution to the Transportation Problem. It considers the opportunity cost of not using the cheapest transportation route.

VAM involves the following steps:

1. **Prepare the transportation table:** Create a table with sources (origins) as rows and destinations as columns. Enter the capacity of each source, demand of each destination, and transportation cost per unit.
2. **Calculate penalty values:** For each row and column, calculate the penalty value as the difference between the two lowest costs.
3. **Identify the highest penalty:** Find the row or column with the highest penalty value.
4. **Allocate quantity:** Allocate the maximum possible quantity to the cell with the lowest cost in the identified row or column.
5. **Update the table:** Update the remaining capacity and demand.
6. **Repeat steps 2-5:** Continue allocating and updating until all demands are met or all capacities are exhausted.

**Example-1**

**Find Solution using Vogel's Approximation method**

	D1	D2	D3	D4	Supply
S1	19	30	50	10	7
S2	70	30	40	60	9
S3	40	8	70	20	18
Demand	5	8	7	14	

**Solution:**

TOTAL number of supply constraints : 3

TOTAL number of demand constraints : 4

Problem Table is

	<i>D1</i>	<i>D2</i>	<i>D3</i>	<i>D4</i>	Supply
<i>S1</i>	19	30	50	10	7
<i>S2</i>	70	30	40	60	9
<i>S3</i>	40	8	70	20	18
Demand	5	8	7	14	

Table-1

	<i>D1</i>	<i>D2</i>	<i>D3</i>	<i>D4</i>	Supply	Row Penalty
<i>S1</i>	19	30	50	10	7	9=19-10

S2	70	30	40	60	9	10=40-30
S3	40	8	70	20	18	12=20-8
Demand	5	8	7	14		
Column Penalty	21=40-19	22=30-8	10=50-40	10=20-10		

The maximum penalty, 22, occurs in column  $D2$ .

The minimum  $c_{ij}$  in this column is  $c_{32} = 8$ .

The maximum allocation in this cell is  $\min(18,8) = 8$ .

It satisfy demand of  $D2$  and adjust the supply of  $S3$  from 18 to 10 ( $18 - 8 = 10$ ).

Table-2

	$D1$	$D2$	$D3$	$D4$	Supply	Row Penalty
S1	19	30	50	10	7	9=19-10
S2	70	30	40	60	9	20=60-40
S3	40	8(8)	70	20	10	20=40-20
Demand	5	0	7	14		
Column Penalty	21=40-19	--	10=50-40	10=20-10		



The maximum penalty, 21, occurs in column  $D1$ .

The minimum  $c_{ij}$  in this column is  $c_{11} = 19$ .

The maximum allocation in this cell is  $\min(7,5) = 5$ .  
It satisfy demand of  $D1$  and adjust the supply of  $S1$  from 7 to 2 ( $7 - 5 = 2$ ).

Table-3

	$D1$	$D2$	$D3$	$D4$	Supply	Row Penalty
$S1$	19(5)	30	50	10	2	$40=50-10$
$S2$	70	30	40	60	9	$20=60-40$
$S3$	40	8(8)	70	20	10	$50=70-20$
Demand	0	0	7	14		
Column Penalty	--	--	$10=50-40$	$10=20-10$		

The maximum penalty, 50, occurs in row  $S3$ .

The minimum  $c_{ij}$  in this row is  $c_{34} = 20$ .

The maximum allocation in this cell is  $\min(10,14) = 10$ .  
It satisfy supply of  $S3$  and adjust the demand of  $D4$  from 14 to 4 ( $14 - 10 = 4$ ).

Table-4

	<i>D1</i>	<i>D2</i>	<i>D3</i>	<i>D4</i>	Supply	Row Penalty
<i>S1</i>	19(5)	30	50	10	2	40=50-10
<i>S2</i>	70	30	40	60	9	20=60-40
<i>S3</i>	40	8(8)	70	20(10)	0	--
Demand	0	0	7	4		
Column Penalty	--	--	10=50-40	50=60-10		

The maximum penalty, 50, occurs in column *D4*.

The minimum  $c_{ij}$  in this column is  $c_{14} = 10$ .

The maximum allocation in this cell is  $\min(2,4) = 2$ .

It satisfy supply of *S1* and adjust the demand of *D4* from 4 to 2 ( $4 - 2 = 2$ ).

Table-5

	<i>D1</i>	<i>D2</i>	<i>D3</i>	<i>D4</i>	Supply	Row Penalty
<i>S1</i>	19(5)	30	50	10(2)	0	--
<i>S2</i>	70	30	40	60	9	20=60-40
<i>S3</i>	40	8(8)	70	20(10)	0	--
Demand	0	0	7	2		
Column	--	--	40	60		

Penalty						
---------	--	--	--	--	--	--

The maximum penalty, 60, occurs in column  $D4$ .

The minimum  $c_{ij}$  in this column is  $c_{24} = 60$ .

The maximum allocation in this cell is  $\min(9,2) = 2$ .  
It satisfy demand of  $D4$  and adjust the supply of  $S2$  from 9 to 7 ( $9 - 2 = 7$ ).

Table-6

	$D1$	$D2$	$D3$	$D4$	Supply	Row Penalty
$S1$	19(5)	30	50	10(2)	0	--
$S2$	70	30	40	60(2)	7	40
$S3$	40	8(8)	70	20(10)	0	--
Demand	0	0	7	0		
Column Penalty	--	--	40	--		

The maximum penalty, 40, occurs in row  $S2$ .

The minimum  $c_{ij}$  in this row is  $c_{23} = 40$ .

The maximum allocation in this cell is  $\min(7,7) = 7$ .  
It satisfy supply of  $S2$  and demand of  $D3$ .

Initial feasible solution is

	<i>D1</i>	<i>D2</i>	<i>D3</i>	<i>D4</i>	Supply	Row Penalty
<i>S1</i>	19(5)	30	50	10(2)	7	9   9   40   40   --   --
<i>S2</i>	70	30	40(7)	60(2)	9	10   20   20   20   20   40
<i>S3</i>	40	8(8)	70	20(10)	18	12   20   50   --   --   --
Demand	5	8	7	14		
	21	22	10	10		
	21	--	10	10		
Column	--	--	10	10		
Penalty	--	--	10	50		
	--	--	40	60		
	--	--	40	--		

The minimum total transportation cost =  $19 \times 5 + 10 \times 2 + 40 \times 7 + 60 \times 2 + 8 \times 8 + 20 \times 10 = 779$

Here, the number of allocated cells = 6 is equal to  $m + n - 1 = 3 + 4 - 1 = 6$

∴ This solution is non-degenerate

**PERT AND CPM NETWORK**

**Dr.N.Balamigai**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

**PERT (Program Evaluation and Review Technique) and CPM (Critical Path Method)**

PERT and CPM are network analysis techniques used in project management to plan, schedule, and control complex projects.

**Objectives:**

1. To identify the critical path and minimum project duration.
2. To determine the earliest start, latest finish, and slack for each activity.
3. To prioritize resources and manage dependencies.

**Key Concepts:**

**PERT:**

1. **Events:** Milestones or key accomplishments.
2. **Activities:** Tasks that consume time and resources.
3. **Three-time estimates:**
  - Optimistic (O)
  - Most Likely (M)
  - Pessimistic (P)
4. **Expected Time (ET):**  $(O + 4M + P) / 6$
5. **Standard Deviation ( $\sigma$ ):**  $(P - O) / 6$

**CPM:**

1. **Activities:** Tasks with fixed durations.
2. **Dependencies:** Precedence relationships between activities.

3. **Earliest Start (ES):** The earliest time an activity can start.
4. **Latest Finish (LF):** The latest time an activity can finish without delaying the project.
5. **Slack:** The difference between LF and ES.

**Network Construction:**

1. Draw activities as arrows.
2. Represent events as nodes.
3. Show dependencies between activities.

**Calculations:**

**Forward Pass (PERT and CPM):**

1. Calculate ES for each activity.
2. Determine the Early Start (ES) and Early Finish (EF) for each activity.

**Backward Pass (PERT and CPM):**

1. Calculate LF for each activity.
2. Determine the Late Start (LS) and Late Finish (LF) for each activity.

**Critical Path:**

The longest path through the network, determining the minimum project duration.

**Problem 1: Network Diagram**

Draw the network diagram for the following project:

Activity	Predecessor	Duration
A	-	5
B	A	7
C	A	3

Activity	Predecessor	Duration
D	B, C	4
E	D	2
F	E	6

**Solution:**

A --> B --> D --> E --> F  
 \  
 --> C --> D

**Problem 2: Critical Path**

Find the critical path for the following network:

A --> B --> D --> E  
 \ / \ /  
 --> C --> F --> G

Activity	Duration
A	5
B	7
C	3

Activity	Duration
D	4
E	2
F	6
G	1

**Solution:**

Critical Path: A -> B -> D -> E (Duration: 18)

**Problem 3: PERT Diagram**

Activity	Predecessor	Optimistic	Most Likely	Pessimistic
A	-	2	4	6
B	A	3	5	7
C	A	4	6	8
D	B, C	2	4	6
E	D	1	3	5

Draw the PERT diagram for the following project:

**Solution:**



A --> B --> D --> E

\

--> C --> D

**Problem 4: CPM Calculations**

Calculate ES, EF, LS, and LF for the following network:

A --> B --> D --> E

\ / \ /

--> C --> F --> G

Activity	Duration
A	5
B	7
C	3
D	4
E	2
F	6
G	1

**Solution:**

<b>Activity</b>	<b>ES</b>	<b>EF</b>	<b>LS</b>	<b>LF</b>
A	0	5	0	5
B	5	12	5	12
C	5	8	8	11
D	12	16	12	16
E	16	18	16	18
F	8	14	11	17
G	14	15	17	18

**SEQUENCING PROBLEM**

**Dr.N.Balamigai**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

**Sequencing Problem**

A sequencing problem involves determining the optimal order or sequence of tasks, jobs, or activities to minimize or maximize a specific objective function, subject to certain constraints.

**Types of Sequencing Problems:**

1. **Job Sequencing:** Scheduling jobs on a single machine or multiple machines.
2. **Flow Shop Scheduling:** Scheduling jobs on multiple machines in a specific order.
3. **Job Shop Scheduling:** Scheduling jobs on multiple machines with flexible routing.

**Objective Functions:**

1. Minimize makespan (total processing time).
2. Minimize total tardiness.
3. Minimize total waiting time.
4. Maximize throughput.

**Constraints:**

1. Processing time constraints.
2. Due date constraints.
3. Resource constraints.
4. Precedence constraints.

. A book binder has one printing press, one binding machine and manuscripts of 7 different books. The times required for performing printing and binding operations for different books are shown below.

Book	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Printing time (hours)	20	90	80	20	120	15	65
Binding time (hours)	25	60	75	30	90	35	50

Decide the optimum sequence of processing of books in order to minimize the total time required to bring out all the books.

**Solution:**

<b>Job</b>	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
<b>Machine M1</b>	20	90	80	20	120	15	65
<b>Machine M2</b>	25	60	75	30	90	35	50

1. The smallest processing time is 15 hour for job 6 on Machine-1. So job 6 will be processed first.

6							
---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

2. The next smallest processing time is 20 hour for job 1,4 on Machine-1 and for this jobs 30 is largest on Machine-2. So job 4 will be processed after job 6.

6	4						
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

3. The next smallest processing time is 20 hour for job 1 on Machine-1. So job 1 will be processed after job 4.

6	4	1				
---	---	---	--	--	--	--

4. The next smallest processing time is 50 hour for job 7 on Machine-2. So job 7 will be processed last.

6	4	1				7
---	---	---	--	--	--	---

5. The next smallest processing time is 60 hour for job 2 on Machine-2. So job 2 will be processed before job 7.

6	4	1		2	7	
---	---	---	--	---	---	--

6. The next smallest processing time is 75 hour for job 3 on Machine-2. So job 3 will be processed before job 2.

6	4	1	3	2	7	
---	---	---	---	---	---	--

7. The next smallest processing time is 90 hour for job 5 on Machine-2. So job 5 will be processed before job 3.

6	4	1	5	3	2	7
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

According to Johanson's algorithm, the optimal sequence is as below

6	4	1	5	3	2	7
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Job	M1 In time	M1 Out time	M2 In time	M2 Out time	Idle time M2
6	0	$0 + 15 = 15$	15	$15 + 35 = 50$	15

4	15	$15 + 20 = 35$	50	$50 + 30 = 80$	-
1	35	$35 + 20 = 55$	80	$80 + 25 = 105$	-
5	55	$55 + 120 = 175$	175	$175 + 90 = 265$	70
3	175	$175 + 80 = 255$	265	$265 + 75 = 340$	-
2	255	$255 + 90 = 345$	345	$345 + 60 = 405$	5
7	345	$345 + 65 = 410$	410	$410 + 50 = 460$	5

The total minimum elapsed time = 460

Idle time for Machine-1

$$= 460 - 410$$

$$= 50$$

Idle time for Machine-2

$$= (15) + (175 - 105) + (345 - 340) + (410 - 405) + (460 - 460)$$

$$= 15 + 70 + 5 + 5 + 0$$

$$= 95$$

## INVENTORY THEORY

**Dr.N.Balamigai**

*Assistant. Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

Inventory theory deals with the management of inventory levels to minimize costs and maximize efficiency.

### Key Concepts:

1. **Inventory:** Goods or materials held for sale, production, or future use.
2. **Stockout:** Running out of inventory, resulting in lost sales or production delays.
3. **Overstocking:** Holding excess inventory, increasing storage and maintenance costs.
4. **Lead Time:** Time between ordering and receiving inventory.
5. **Demand:** Customer requirement for a product.

### Inventory Models:

1. **Economic Order Quantity (EOQ):** Calculates optimal order quantity to minimize costs.
2. **Economic Production Quantity (EPQ):** Calculates optimal production quantity to minimize costs.
3. **Basic Inventory Model:** Manages inventory with constant demand and lead time.
4. **Periodic Review System:** Reviews inventory levels periodically to determine orders.
5. **Continuous Review System:** Continuously monitors inventory levels to determine orders.

### Inventory Costs:

1. **Holding Cost (HC):** Storage, maintenance, and insurance costs.

2. **Ordering Cost (OC):** Cost of placing an order.
3. **Shortage Cost (SC):** Cost of stockouts or lost sales.
4. **Carrying Cost (CC):** Opportunity cost of holding inventory.

#### **Inventory Management Techniques:**

1. **Just-In-Time (JIT):** Produces and delivers just in time to meet customer demand.
2. **Material Requirements Planning (MRP):** Plans material requirements based on production schedules.
3. **Vendor-Managed Inventory (VMI):** Suppliers manage inventory levels.
4. **Drop Shipping:** Ships products directly from suppliers to customers.

#### **Inventory Optimization Methods:**

1. **Linear Programming:** Optimizes inventory levels using mathematical models.
2. **Dynamic Programming:** Optimizes inventory levels over time.
3. **Simulation:** Analyzes inventory systems using simulation models.

#### **Types of Inventory:**

1. **Raw Materials Inventory**
2. **Work-in-Progress (WIP) Inventory**
3. **Finished Goods Inventory**
4. **Maintenance, Repair, and Operations (MRO) Inventory**
5. **Pipelining Inventory**
6. **Decoupling Inventory**
7. **Anticipation Inventory**
8. **Hedging Inventory**

#### **Inventory Formulas:**

##### **1. Economic Order Quantity (EOQ)**

$$EOQ = \sqrt{2 \times D \times OC / HC}$$

Where:

- D = Annual Demand
- OC = Ordering Cost
- HC = Holding Cost



## **2. Economic Production Quantity (EPQ)**

$$EPQ = \sqrt{(2 \times D \times SC / HC)}$$

Where:

- D = Annual Demand
- SC = Setup Cost
- HC = Holding Cost

## **3. Reorder Point (ROP)**

$$ROP = L \times D$$

Where:

- L = Lead Time
- D = Daily Demand

## **4. Safety Stock (SS)**

$$SS = Z \times \sigma \times \sqrt{L}$$

Where:

- Z = Z-score (confidence level)
- $\sigma$  = Standard Deviation of Demand
- L = Lead Time

## **5. Inventory Turnover (IT)**

$$IT = COGS / \text{Average Inventory}$$

Where:

- COGS = Cost of Goods Sold
- Average Inventory = (Beginning Inventory + Ending Inventory) / 2

## **6. Days Inventory Outstanding (DIO)**

$$DIO = \text{Average Inventory} / (COGS / 365)$$

Where:

- COGS = Cost of Goods Sold

## **7. Inventory Holding Cost**

$$HC = (I \times C) / 100$$

Where:

- I = Inventory Level
- C = Holding Cost Percentage

### 8. Total Inventory Cost

$$TC = OC + HC + SC$$

Where:

- OC = Ordering Cost
- HC = Holding Cost
- SC = Shortage Cost

#### Problem 1: Economic Order Quantity (EOQ)

A company has a monthly demand of 1000 units, ordering cost of \$50, and holding cost of \$5 per unit. Determine the:

1. EOQ
2. Total inventory cost
3. Number of orders per year

#### Solution:

$$EOQ = \sqrt{(2 \times 1000 \times 50 / 5)} = 200 \text{ units}$$

$$\text{Total Inventory Cost} = \sqrt{(2 \times 1000 \times 50 \times 5) / 200} = \$500$$

$$\text{Number of Orders per Year} = 1000 / 200 = 5 \text{ orders}$$

#### Problem 2: Economic Production Quantity (EPQ)

A manufacturer produces 500 units per day, with a lead time of 2 days, holding cost of \$10 per unit, and setup cost of \$200. Determine the:

1. EPQ
2. Total inventory cost
3. Production run time

#### Solution:

$$EPQ = \sqrt{(2 \times 500 \times 200 / 10)} = 100 \text{ units}$$

$$\text{Total Inventory Cost} = \sqrt{(2 \times 500 \times 200 \times 10) / 100} = \$1000$$

$$\text{Production Run Time} = 100 / 500 = 0.2 \text{ days}$$

#### Problem 3: Inventory Management

A retailer has an initial inventory of 500 units, monthly demand of 200 units, and lead time of 1 month. If the ordering cost is \$50 and holding cost is \$5 per unit, determine:

1. When to order
2. How much to order

**Solution:**

When to Order: When inventory level reaches 200 units  $(500 - 200 \times 1)$

How Much to Order:  $EOQ = \sqrt{(2 \times 200 \times 50 / 5)} = 40$  units

**Problem 4: Backordering**

A company has a monthly demand of 100 units, lead time of 1 month, and shortage cost of \$10 per unit. If the ordering cost is \$50 and holding cost is \$5 per unit, determine:

1. Optimal order quantity
2. Maximum number of backorders

**Solution:**

Optimal Order Quantity =  $\sqrt{(2 \times 100 \times 50 / 5)} = 30$  units

Maximum Number of Backorders =  $(30 \times 10) / (5 + 10) = 20$  units

**Problem 5: Multi-Item Inventory**

A company has two products, A and B, with monthly demands of 500 and 200 units, respectively. The ordering costs are \$50 and \$30, and holding costs are \$5 and \$3 per unit, respectively. Determine:

1. Optimal order quantities
2. Total inventory cost

**Solution:**

Optimal Order Quantity A =  $\sqrt{(2 \times 500 \times 50 / 5)} = 100$  units

Optimal Order Quantity B =  $\sqrt{(2 \times 200 \times 30 / 3)} = 40$  units

Total Inventory Cost =  $\sqrt{(2 \times 500 \times 50 \times 5)} / 100 + \sqrt{(2 \times 200 \times 30 \times 3)} / 40 = \$1000$

# ADVANCED MATHEMATICS FOR ENGINEERS

---

EDITED BY

**DR.S.SUBRAMANIAN**



978-93-6255-772-8

# **Advanced Mathematics for Engineers**

Copyright © 2019 by **Dr.S.Subramanian**

First Edition,2019

*All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.*

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-772-8**

***Publisher:*** Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (**PRIST**)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Book elements</b>	<b>Page Numbers</b>
----- <b>Chapter-I</b> <b>LAPLACE TRANSFORM</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>01-10</b>
----- <b>Chapter-II</b> <b>FOURIER SERIES</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>11-20</b>
----- <b>Chapter-III</b> <b>FOURIER TRANSFORM</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>21-25</b>
----- <b>Chapter-IV</b> <b>DIGITAL FOURIER TRANSFORM</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>26-32</b>
----- <b>Chapter-V</b> <b>HENKEL TRANSFORM</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>33-40</b>
----- <b>Chapter-VI</b> <b>DISCRETE HENKEL TRANSFORM</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>41-49</b>
----- <b>Chapter-VII</b> <b>Z – TRANSFORM</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>50-62</b>
----- <b>Chapter-VIII</b> <b>LEGENDRE POLYNOMIALS</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>63-69</b>
----- <b>Chapter-IX</b> <b>BETA AND GAMMA FUNCTIONS</b> Dr.S.Subramanian	<b>70-77</b>
-----	<b>78-91</b>

**Chapter-X**  
**NUMERICAL ANALYSIS**  
Dr.S.Subramanian

---

# LAPLACE TRANSFORM

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

The Laplace transform! A powerful mathematical tool used to solve differential equations and integral equations. It's a fundamental concept in engineering, physics, and mathematics.

### Definition:

The Laplace transform of a function  $f(t)$  is defined as:

$$F(s) = \int_{[0, \infty)} e^{-st} f(t) dt$$

where:

- $F(s)$  is the Laplace transform of  $f(t)$
- $s$  is a complex number ( $s = \sigma + j\omega$ )
- $f(t)$  is the original function
- $t$  is time
- $e^{-st}$  is the exponential kernel

### Properties:

1. **Linearity:** The Laplace transform is linear, meaning the transform of a sum is the sum of the transforms.
2. **Time shifting:** The Laplace transform of  $f(t - a)$  is  $e^{-as}F(s)$ .
3. **Frequency shifting:** The Laplace transform of  $e^{at}f(t)$  is  $F(s - a)$ .
4. **Differentiation:** The Laplace transform of  $f'(t)$  is  $sF(s) - f(0)$ .
5. **Integration:** The Laplace transform of  $\int_{[0, t]} f(\tau) d\tau$  is  $F(s)/s$ .

### Common Laplace Transforms:

1.  $\delta(t)$  (Dirac delta function)  $\rightarrow 1$
2.  $u(t)$  (Heaviside step function)  $\rightarrow 1/s$
3.  $t^n \rightarrow n!/s^{(n+1)}$
4.  $e^{at} \rightarrow 1/(s - a)$



5.  $\sin(at) \rightarrow a/(s^2 + a^2)$
6.  $\cos(at) \rightarrow s/(s^2 + a^2)$

### Applications:

1. **Solving differential equations:** The Laplace transform can be used to solve ordinary differential equations (ODEs) and partial differential equations (PDEs).
2. **Control systems:** The Laplace transform is used to analyze and design control systems.
3. **Signal processing:** The Laplace transform is used in signal processing techniques like filtering and modulation analysis.
4. **Electrical engineering:** The Laplace transform is used to analyze electrical circuits and networks.

### Inverse Laplace Transform:

To find the original function  $f(t)$  from its Laplace transform  $F(s)$ , we use the inverse Laplace transform:

$$f(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}[F(s)] = (1/2\pi j) \int_{\sigma - j\infty, \sigma + j\infty} e^{st} F(s) ds$$

where  $\sigma$  is a real number that ensures convergence.

### The inverse Laplace transform

#### Definition:

The inverse Laplace transform of  $F(s)$  is defined as:

$$f(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}[F(s)] = (1/2\pi j) \int_{\sigma - j\infty, \sigma + j\infty} e^{st} F(s) ds \text{ where:}$$

- $f(t)$  is the original function
- $F(s)$  is the Laplace transform
- $\sigma$  is a real number that ensures convergence
- $j$  is the imaginary unit ( $j = \sqrt{-1}$ )

#### Methods to find Inverse Laplace Transform:

1. **Partial Fraction Decomposition:** Break down  $F(s)$  into simpler fractions and use tables or formulas to find the inverse transform.
2. **Convolution Theorem:** Use the convolution theorem to find the inverse transform of a product of two functions.

3. **Residue Theorem:** Evaluate the integral using residues.
4. **Table Lookup:** Use tables of Laplace transforms to find the inverse transform.

**Common Inverse Laplace Transforms:**

1.  $1/s \rightarrow 1$  (unit step function)
2.  $1/s^2 \rightarrow t$
3.  $1/(s - a) \rightarrow e^{at}$
4.  $1/(s^2 + a^2) \rightarrow (1/a) \sin(at)$
5.  $s/(s^2 + a^2) \rightarrow \cos(at)$
6.  $1/(s^2 - a^2) \rightarrow (1/a) \sinh(at)$

**Properties of Inverse Laplace Transform:**

1. **Linearity:**  $\mathcal{L}^{-1}[aF(s) + bG(s)] = af(t) + bg(t)$
2. **Time shifting:**  $\mathcal{L}^{-1}[e^{-as}F(s)] = f(t - a)u(t - a)$
3. **Frequency shifting:**  $\mathcal{L}^{-1}[F(s - a)] = e^{at}f(t)$

**Solving Inverse Laplace Transform Problems:**

1. Decompose  $F(s)$  into partial fractions.
2. Use tables or formulas to find the inverse transform of each fraction.
3. Combine the results using linearity.

**Example:**

Find the inverse Laplace transform of:

$$F(s) = 2/(s - 1) + 3/(s + 2)$$

**Solution:**

1. Decompose  $F(s)$  into partial fractions.
2. Use tables to find the inverse transform of each fraction:
  - o  $2/(s - 1) \rightarrow 2e^{t}$
  - o  $3/(s + 2) \rightarrow 3e^{-2t}$

3. Combine the results:

$$f(t) = 2e^{t} + 3e^{-2t}$$

**key properties of the Laplace transform:**

## Linearity Properties

1. **Linearity:**  $\mathcal{L}[af(t) + bg(t)] = a\mathcal{L}[f(t)] + b\mathcal{L}[g(t)]$
2. **Homogeneity:**  $\mathcal{L}[af(t)] = a\mathcal{L}[f(t)]$

## Transformation Properties

1. **Time Shifting:**  $\mathcal{L}[f(t - a)u(t - a)] = e^{-as}F(s)$
2. **Frequency Shifting:**  $\mathcal{L}[e^{at}f(t)] = F(s - a)$
3. **Scaling:**  $\mathcal{L}[f(at)] = (1/a)F(s/a)$

## Differentiation and Integration Properties

1. **First Derivative:**  $\mathcal{L}[f'(t)] = sF(s) - f(0)$
2. **Higher Derivatives:**  $\mathcal{L}[f^{(n)}(t)] = s^n F(s) - s^{n-1}f(0) - \dots - f^{(n-1)}(0)$
3. **Integration:**  $\mathcal{L}[\int_0^t f(\tau) d\tau] = F(s)/s$

## Other Properties

1. **Final Value Theorem:**  $\lim_{s \rightarrow 0} sF(s) = \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} f(t)$
2. **Initial Value Theorem:**  $\lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} sF(s) = f(0)$
3. **Convolution Theorem:**  $\mathcal{L}[f(t) * g(t)] = F(s)G(s)$

## Table of Common Laplace Transforms

### Function Laplace Transform

$\delta(t)$	1
$u(t)$	$1/s$
$t^n$	$n!/s^{n+1}$
$e^{at}$	$1/(s - a)$
$\sin(at)$	$a/(s^2 + a^2)$
$\cos(at)$	$s/(s^2 + a^2)$

These properties and transforms are useful for solving differential equations, control systems, and signal processing problems.

**Laplace transforms have numerous applications in various fields:**

**Engineering:**

1. **Control Systems:** Design and analysis of control systems, stability analysis, and controller design.
2. **Electrical Engineering:** Circuit analysis, filter design, and signal processing.
3. **Mechanical Engineering:** Vibration analysis, mechanical systems modeling, and thermal analysis.
4. **Aerospace Engineering:** Flight dynamics, navigation, and control systems.

#### **Physics and Mathematics:**

1. **Differential Equations:** Solution of ordinary differential equations (ODEs) and partial differential equations (PDEs).
2. **Integral Equations:** Solution of integral equations, including Volterra and Fredholm equations.
3. **Probability Theory:** Study of stochastic processes, random variables, and probability distributions.

#### **Signal Processing:**

1. **Filter Design:** Design of digital and analog filters, including low-pass, high-pass, and band-pass filters.
2. **Signal Analysis:** Analysis of signals, including Fourier analysis and Laplace transform-based methods.
3. **Image Processing:** Image filtering, restoration, and compression.

#### **Other Applications:**

1. **Economics:** Modeling of economic systems, forecasting, and optimization.
2. **Biology:** Modeling of population dynamics, epidemiology, and pharmacokinetics.
3. **Computer Science:** Algorithm design, data analysis, and machine learning.

#### **Real-World Examples:**

1. **Audio Filtering:** Laplace transforms are used in audio processing software to design filters that remove noise and improve sound quality.
2. **Medical Imaging:** Laplace transforms are used in medical imaging techniques like MRI and CT scans to reconstruct images.
3. **Navigation Systems:** Laplace transforms are used in navigation systems, such as GPS, to determine position and velocity.

4. **Power Grid Analysis:** Laplace transforms are used to analyze and simulate power grid behavior.

#### Software Tools:

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in functions for Laplace transforms, including `laplace` and `ilaplace`.
2. **Mathematica:** Built-in functions for Laplace transforms, including `LaplaceTransform` and `InverseLaplaceTransform`.
3. **Python:** Libraries like `scipy` and `sympy` provide functions for Laplace transforms.

#### The Convolution Theorem for Laplace Transforms:

##### Statement:

If  $f(t)$  and  $g(t)$  are two functions with Laplace transforms  $F(s)$  and  $G(s)$ , respectively, then:

$\mathcal{L}[f(t) * g(t)] = F(s)G(s)$  where  $*$  denotes convolution.

##### Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}[f(t) * g(t)] &= \int_{[0, \infty)} e^{-st} \left( \int_{[0, t]} f(\tau)g(t - \tau) d\tau \right) dt \\ &= \int_{[0, \infty)} \left( \int_{[0, t]} e^{-st} f(\tau)g(t - \tau) d\tau \right) dt \\ &= \left( \int_{[0, \infty)} e^{-s\tau} f(\tau) d\tau \right) \left( \int_{[0, \infty)} e^{-s(t - \tau)} g(t - \tau) dt \right) \\ &= F(s)G(s)\end{aligned}$$

##### Interpretation:

The Convolution Theorem states that the Laplace transform of the convolution of two functions is equal to the product of their Laplace transforms.

##### Properties:

1. **Commutativity:**  $f(t) * g(t) = g(t) * f(t)$
2. **Associativity:**  $(f(t) * g(t)) * h(t) = f(t) * (g(t) * h(t))$
3. **Distributivity:**  $f(t) * (g(t) + h(t)) = f(t) * g(t) + f(t) * h(t)$

##### Applications:

1. **Signal Processing:** Convolution is used to model signal filtering.

2. **Control Systems:** Convolution is used to analyze system responses.
3. **Image Processing:** Convolution is used for image filtering.

**Examples:**

1. Find  $\mathcal{L}[t * e^{-t}]$ .

Solution:  $\mathcal{L}[t] = 1/s^2, \quad \mathcal{L}[e^{-t}] = 1/(s + 1)$

$$\mathcal{L}[t * e^{-t}] = (1/s^2) * (1/(s + 1)) = 1/s^2(s + 1)$$

2. Find  $\mathcal{L}[\sin(t) * \cos(t)]$ .

Solution:  $\mathcal{L}[\sin(t)] = 1/(s^2 + 1), \quad \mathcal{L}[\cos(t)] = s/(s^2 + 1)$

$$\mathcal{L}[\sin(t) * \cos(t)] = (1/(s^2 + 1)) * (s/(s^2 + 1)) = s/((s^2 + 1)^2)$$

**Inverse Laplace Transform:**

The inverse Laplace transform of a product of two functions can be found using the convolution theorem:

$$\mathcal{L}^{-1}[F(s)G(s)] = f(t) * g(t)$$

**Laplace Transforms of Periodic Functions:**

**Definition:**

A periodic function  $f(t)$  with period  $T$  is a function that satisfies:

$$f(t) = f(t + T) \text{ for all } t \geq 0$$

**Laplace Transform of Periodic Functions:**

The Laplace transform of a periodic function  $f(t)$  with period  $T$  is:

$$\mathcal{L}[f(t)] = (1/(1 - e^{-sT})) \int[0, T] e^{-st} f(t) dt$$

**Proof:**

Break the integral into segments of length T:

$$\mathcal{A}[f(t)] = \int_{[0, \infty)} e^{-st} f(t) dt$$

$$= \sum_{[k=0 \text{ to } \infty]} \int_{[kT, (k+1)T]} e^{-st} f(t) dt$$

Using the periodicity of f(t):

$$= \sum_{[k=0 \text{ to } \infty]} e^{-ksT} \int_{[0, T]} e^{-st} f(t) dt$$

Summing the geometric series:

$$= (1/(1 - e^{-sT})) \int_{[0, T]} e^{-st} f(t) dt$$

**Properties:**

1. **Periodicity:**  $\mathcal{A}[f(t)] = \mathcal{A}[f(t + T)]$
2. **Shift:**  $\mathcal{A}[f(t - a)] = e^{-as} \mathcal{A}[f(t)]$

**Examples:**

1. Find  $\mathcal{A}[\sin(t)]$  for  $\sin(t)$  with period  $2\pi$ .

$$\mathcal{A}[\sin(t)] = (1/(1 - e^{-2\pi s})) \int_{[0, 2\pi]} e^{-st} \sin(t) dt$$

$$= (1/(s^2 + 1))(1 - e^{-2\pi s})$$

2. Find  $\mathcal{A}[\text{square wave}(t)]$  for square wave(t) with period 1.

$$\mathcal{A}[\text{square wave}(t)] = (1/(1 - e^{-s})) \int_{[0, 1]} e^{-st} \text{square wave}(t) dt$$

$$= (1/s)(1 - e^{-s/2})^2 / (1 - e^{-s})$$

**Common Periodic Functions:**

Function	Laplace Transform
$\sin(t)$	$1/(s^2 + 1)(1 - e^{-2\pi s})$
$\cos(t)$	$s/(s^2 + 1)(1 - e^{-2\pi s})$
square wave(t)	$(1/s)(1 - e^{-s/2})^2 / (1 - e^{-s})$
sawtooth wave(t)	$1/s^2(1 - e^{-s})$

**Inverse Laplace Transform:**

To find the inverse Laplace transform of a periodic function, use:

$$\mathcal{L}^{-1}[F(s)] = \sum_{[k=0 \text{ to } \infty]} f(kT) e^{-skT}$$

Do you have any specific questions or problems related to Laplace transforms of periodic functions?

properties of laplace transform

Here are the key properties of the Laplace transform:

### Linearity Properties

1. Linearity:  $\mathcal{A}[af(t) + bg(t)] = a\mathcal{A}[f(t)] + b\mathcal{A}[g(t)]$
2. Homogeneity:  $\mathcal{A}[af(t)] = a\mathcal{A}[f(t)]$

### Transformation Properties

1. Time Shifting:  $\mathcal{A}[f(t - a)u(t - a)] = e^{-as}\mathcal{A}[f(t)]$
2. Frequency Shifting:  $\mathcal{A}[e^{at}f(t)] = \mathcal{A}[f(t)](s - a)$
3. Scaling:  $\mathcal{A}[f(at)] = (1/a)\mathcal{L}$
4. Differentiation:  $\mathcal{A}[f'(t)] = s\mathcal{A}[f(t)] - f(0)$
5. Integration:  $\mathcal{A}[\int f(t)dt] = \mathcal{A}[f(t)]/s$

### Differentiation and Integration Properties

1. First Derivative:  $\mathcal{A}[f'(t)] = s\mathcal{A}[f(t)] - f(0)$
2. Higher Derivatives:  $\mathcal{A}[f^{(n)}(t)] = s^n\mathcal{A}[f(t)] - s^{n-1}f(0) - \dots - f^{(n-1)}(0)$
3. Integration:  $\mathcal{A}[\int f(t)dt] = \mathcal{A}[f(t)]/s$

### Other Properties

1. Final Value Theorem:  $\lim_{s \rightarrow 0} s\mathcal{A}[f(t)] = \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} f(t)$
2. Initial Value Theorem:  $\lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} s\mathcal{A}[f(t)] = f(0)$
3. Convolution Theorem:  $\mathcal{A}[f(t) * g(t)] = \mathcal{A}[f(t)]\mathcal{A}[g(t)]$

### Table of Common Laplace Transforms

#### Function Laplace Transform

$\delta(t)$	1
$u(t)$	$1/s$
$t^n$	$n!/s^{n+1}$
$e^{at}$	$1/(s - a)$
$\sin(at)$	$a/(s^2 + a^2)$
$\cos(at)$	$s/(s^2 + a^2)$



## Laplace Transform of Special Functions

### Function Laplace Transform

$$\text{erf}(t) \quad (1/s)e^{-(s^2/4)}\text{erfc}(-s/2)$$

$$\text{erfc}(t) \quad (1/s)e^{-(s^2/4)}\text{erf}(s/2)$$

$$J_0(t) \quad 1/\sqrt{(s^2 + 1)}$$

$$Y_0(t) \quad -\int_0^\infty e^{-(st)}J_0(t)dt$$

### FOURIER SERIES

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

A Fourier series is a mathematical representation of a periodic function  $f(x)$  as a sum of sinusoidal functions:

$$f(x) = a_0/2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos(nx) + b_n \sin(nx))$$

**Coefficients:**

$$a_n = (1/\pi) \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) \cos(nx) dx$$

$$b_n = (1/\pi) \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) \sin(nx) dx$$

**Properties:**

1. **Convergence:** Fourier series converges to  $f(x)$  at points of continuity.
2. **Orthogonality:** Sinusoidal functions are orthogonal on  $[-\pi, \pi]$ .
3. **Periodicity:** Fourier series is periodic with period  $2\pi$ .

**Types of Fourier Series:**

1. **Trigonometric Fourier Series:** Uses sine and cosine functions.
2. **Complex Fourier Series:** Uses complex exponentials.
3. **Half-Range Fourier Series:** Expands  $f(x)$  on  $[0, \pi]$  or  $[0, 2\pi]$ .

**Applications:**

1. **Signal Processing:** Filtering, modulation analysis.
2. **Image Processing:** Image compression, reconstruction.
3. **Vibration Analysis:** Mechanical systems, resonance.
4. **Heat Transfer:** Solving heat equations.

**Fourier Series of Common Functions:**

## Fourier Series

### Function

Square Wave  $(4/\pi) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (\sin((2n-1)x)/((2n-1)))$

Sawtooth Wave  $(2/\pi) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} ((-1)^n \sin(nx)/n)$

Triangle Wave  $(8/\pi^2) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (\sin((2n-1)x)/((2n-1)^2))$

### Fast Fourier Transform (FFT):

An efficient algorithm for computing Fourier series coefficients:

#### FFT Applications:

1. **Digital Signal Processing**
2. **Image Analysis**
3. **Data Compression**
4. **Numerical Methods**

#### Software Tools:

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in functions for Fourier series and FFT.
2. **Python:** Libraries like NumPy, SciPy, and PyFFTW.
3. **Mathematica:** Built-in functions for Fourier series and FFT.

#### Engineering:

1. **Signal Processing:** Filtering, modulation analysis, and signal compression.
2. **Image Processing:** Image compression, reconstruction, and denoising.
3. **Vibration Analysis:** Mechanical systems, resonance, and modal analysis.
4. **Control Systems:** Stability analysis and controller design.
5. **Communication Systems:** Modulation, demodulation, and channel analysis.

#### Physics:

1. **Quantum Mechanics:** Solving Schrödinger's equation.
2. **Heat Transfer:** Solving heat equations.
3. **Wave Propagation:** Electromagnetic waves, acoustic waves.
4. **Optics:** Diffraction, interference, and Fourier optics.

#### Mathematics:

1. **Differential Equations:** Solving partial differential equations.
2. **Numerical Analysis:** Approximating functions, numerical integration.
3. **Functional Analysis:** Studying linear operators.

#### **Computer Science:**

1. **Data Compression:** Image, audio, and text compression.
2. **Machine Learning:** Feature extraction, pattern recognition.
3. **Computer Vision:** Image processing, object recognition.

#### **Real-World Examples:**

1. **MP3 Compression:** Uses Fourier transform to compress audio.
2. **Image Compression:** JPEG uses discrete cosine transform (DCT).
3. **Medical Imaging:** MRI, CT scans use Fourier transforms.
4. **Power Grid Analysis:** Fourier analysis for power quality monitoring.

#### **Software Tools:**

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in functions for Fourier series and FFT.
2. **Python:** Libraries like NumPy, SciPy, and PyFFTW.
3. **Mathematica:** Built-in functions for Fourier series and FFT.

#### **Research Areas:**

1. **Wavelet Analysis:** Time-frequency analysis.
2. **Frame Theory:** Generalizing Fourier series.
3. **Compressive Sensing:** Sampling theory.
  - **Fast Fourier Transform (FFT)** algorithms
  - **Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT)**
  - **Short-Time Fourier Transform (STFT)**
  - **Fractional Fourier Transform**
  - **Wavelet Transforms**

#### **Fast Fourier Transform (FFT)**

##### **Definition:**

The Fast Fourier Transform (FFT) is an efficient algorithm for calculating the Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT) of a sequence.

##### **Purpose:**

FFT reduces computational complexity of DFT from  $O(n^2)$  to  $O(n \log n)$ , making it practical for large datasets.

### Types of FFTs:

1. **Cooley-Tukey Algorithm:** Divide-and-conquer approach.
2. **Radix-2 FFT:** Simple and efficient for power-of-2 lengths.
3. **Bluestein's FFT:** For arbitrary-length sequences.
4. **Winograd's FFT:** Optimized for small lengths.

### Applications:

1. **Signal Processing:** Filtering, modulation analysis.
2. **Image Processing:** Image compression, reconstruction.
3. **Data Analysis:** Spectral analysis, feature extraction.
4. **Communication Systems:** Modulation, demodulation.
5. **Machine Learning:** Fast feature extraction.

### FFT Algorithms:

1. **Recursive FFT:** Divide sequence into smaller sub-sequences.
2. **Iterative FFT:** Use loops instead of recursion.
3. **Simplified FFT:** Reduce computational complexity.

### Implementation:

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in fft function.
2. **Python:** numpy.fft module.
3. **C++:** FFTW library.
4. **GPU Acceleration:** CUDA, OpenCL.

### Optimization Techniques:

1. **Cache Optimization:** Minimize memory access.
2. **Parallelization:** Utilize multi-core processors.
3. **Pipelining:** Overlap computation and memory access.

### Real-World Examples:

1. **MP3 Compression:** Uses FFT for audio compression.
2. **Image Compression:** JPEG uses FFT-based DCT.
3. **Medical Imaging:** MRI, CT scans use FFT.

4. **Power Grid Analysis:** FFT for power quality monitoring.

#### **Research Areas:**

1. **Fastest FFT Algorithms:** Optimizing computational complexity.
2. **Parallel FFT:** Distributed computing.
3. **Approximate FFT:** Trading accuracy for speed.

#### **Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT)**

##### **Definition:**

The Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT) is a mathematical operation that decomposes a discrete-time signal into its constituent frequencies.

##### **Formula:**

$$X[k] = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x[n] e^{-j2\pi kn/N}$$

where:

- $x[n]$  is the input sequence
- $X[k]$  is the DFT output
- $N$  is the sequence length
- $k$  is the frequency index ( $0 \leq k \leq N-1$ )

##### **Inverse DFT (IDFT):**

$$x[n] = (1/N) \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} X[k] e^{j2\pi kn/N}$$

##### **Properties:**

1. **Linearity:** DFT is linear.
2. **Shift:** Time shift corresponds to phase shift.
3. **Scaling:** Frequency scaling.
4. **Circular Convolution:** DFT of convolution.

##### **Types of DFTs:**

1. **Real-Valued DFT:** For real-valued inputs.
2. **Complex-Valued DFT:** For complex-valued inputs.
3. **2D DFT:** For 2D signals (images).

##### **Applications:**

1. **Signal Processing:** Filtering, modulation analysis.
2. **Image Processing:** Image compression, reconstruction.

3. **Spectral Analysis:** Frequency domain analysis.
4. **Communication Systems:** Modulation, demodulation.

#### **Fast Algorithms:**

1. **Cooley-Tukey Algorithm:** Divide-and-conquer approach.
2. **Radix-2 FFT:** Simple and efficient for power-of-2 lengths.
3. **Bluestein's FFT:** For arbitrary-length sequences.

#### **Software Tools:**

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in fft function.
2. **Python:** numpy.fft module.
3. **C++:** FFTW library.
4. **GPU Acceleration:** CUDA, OpenCL.

#### **Real-World Examples:**

1. **MP3 Compression:** Uses DFT for audio compression.
2. **Image Compression:** JPEG uses DFT-based DCT.
3. **Medical Imaging:** MRI, CT scans use DFT.
4. **Power Grid Analysis:** DFT for power quality monitoring.

#### **Research Areas:**

1. **Fastest DFT Algorithms:** Optimizing computational complexity.
2. **Approximate DFT:** Trading accuracy for speed.
3. **DFT for Big Data:** Scalable DFT algorithms.

#### **Short-Time Fourier Transform (STFT)**

##### **Definition:**

The Short-Time Fourier Transform (STFT) is a time-frequency analysis tool that decomposes a signal into its frequency components over short time intervals.

##### **Formula:**

$$\text{STFT}\{x(t)\} = X(\tau, \omega) = \int_{-\infty, \infty} x(t) w(t - \tau) e^{-i\omega t} dt$$

where:

- $x(t)$  is the input signal
- $w(t)$  is the window function

- $\tau$  is the time shift
- $\omega$  is the frequency

### Window Functions:

1. **Rectangular Window:** Simple, but leaks energy.
2. **Hamming Window:** Reduces leakage, but distorts spectrum.
3. **Hanning Window:** Balances leakage and distortion.
4. **Gaussian Window:** Optimizes time-frequency resolution.

### Properties:

1. **Time-Frequency Tradeoff:** Increasing window size improves frequency resolution but reduces time resolution.
2. **Shift Invariance:** STFT is shift-invariant.

### Applications:

1. **Time-Frequency Analysis:** Analyzing non-stationary signals.
2. **Filtering:** Removing noise, hum, or interference.
3. **Modulation Analysis:** Analyzing amplitude, frequency, or phase modulation.
4. **Speech Processing:** Speech recognition, synthesis.

### Types of STFTs:

1. **Continuous STFT:** Continuous time and frequency.
2. **Discrete STFT:** Discrete time and frequency.
3. **Modified STFT:** Optimized for specific applications.

### Software Tools:

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in stft function.
2. **Python:** `scipy.signal.stft` function.
3. **C++:** FFTW library with windowing.

### Real-World Examples:

1. **Speech Recognition:** STFT for feature extraction.
2. **Music Analysis:** STFT for music information retrieval.
3. **Biomedical Signal Processing:** STFT for ECG, EEG analysis.
4. **Radar Signal Processing:** STFT for target detection.

### Research Areas:



1. **Optimal Window Design:** Minimizing leakage and distortion.
2. **Adaptive STFT:** Adjusting window size and shape.
3. **Multirate STFT:** Analyzing signals with multiple sampling rates.

### Fractional Fourier Transform (FrFT)

#### Definition:

The Fractional Fourier Transform (FrFT) is a linear transformation that generalizes the Fourier Transform to fractional orders.

#### Formula:

$$X_u(a) = \int_{-\infty, \infty} x(t) K(t, u; a) dt$$

where:

- $x(t)$  is the input signal
- $X_u(a)$  is the FrFT output
- $a$  is the fractional order ( $a \in \mathbb{R}$ )
- $K(t, u; a)$  is the kernel function

#### Kernel Function:

$$K(t, u; a) = (1/\sqrt{2\pi|\sin(a)|}) \exp(i((t^2 + u^2)/2) \cot(a) - i(tu)\csc(a))$$

#### Properties:

1. **Reducing to Fourier Transform:**  $\text{FrFT}(a=\pi/2) = \text{Fourier Transform}$
2. **Time-Frequency Shift:**  $\text{FrFT}(a) = e^{iat} \text{FrFT}(0)$
3. **Scaling:**  $\text{FrFT}(a) = \text{FrFT}(0) / |a|^{1/2}$
4. **Additivity:**  $\text{FrFT}(a+b) = \text{FrFT}(a) \circ \text{FrFT}(b)$

#### Applications:

1. **Signal Processing:** Filtering, modulation analysis.
2. **Image Processing:** Image compression, reconstruction.
3. **Optics:** Beam propagation, optical systems.
4. **Radar Signal Processing:** Target detection, tracking.

#### Types of FrFTs:

1. **Continuous FrFT:** Continuous time and frequency.

2. **Discrete FrFT:** Discrete time and frequency.
3. **Digital FrFT:** Discrete-time and discrete-frequency.

#### **Algorithms:**

1. **Fast FrFT:** Efficient computation using FFT.
2. **Chirp-Z Transform:** Computing FrFT using Z-transform.

#### **Software Tools:**

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in frft function.
2. **Python:** scipy.signal.frft function.
3. **C++:** FFTW library with FrFT implementation.

#### **Real-World Examples:**

1. **Optical Fiber Communication:** FrFT for signal processing.
2. **Radar Imaging:** FrFT for target detection.
3. **Medical Imaging:** FrFT for image reconstruction.
4. **Seismic Data Processing:** FrFT for signal analysis.

#### **Research Areas:**

1. **Optimal FrFT Order:** Selecting optimal fractional order.
2. **FrFT-Based Filtering:** Designing filters using FrFT.
3. **Multidimensional FrFT:** Extending FrFT to higher dimensions.

### **Wavelet Transform**

#### **Definition:**

The Wavelet Transform is a mathematical tool for analyzing signals and images by decomposing them into different frequency components using wavelets.

#### **Types of Wavelet Transforms:**

1. **Continuous Wavelet Transform (CWT):** Continuous time and scale.
2. **Discrete Wavelet Transform (DWT):** Discrete time and scale.
3. **Fast Wavelet Transform (FWT):** Efficient computation using filter banks.

#### **Wavelet Properties:**

1. **Scaling:** Wavelets have different scales.
2. **Shifting:** Wavelets can be shifted in time.

3. **Orthogonality:** Wavelets are orthogonal to each other.

#### **Wavelet Families:**

1. **Haar Wavelet:** Simple, compact support.
2. **Daubechies Wavelet:** Compact support, high vanishing moments.
3. **Symlet Wavelet:** Symmetric, compact support.
4. **Coiflet Wavelet:** High vanishing moments, compact support.

#### **Applications:**

1. **Signal Denoising:** Removing noise from signals.
2. **Image Compression:** Compressing images.
3. **Feature Extraction:** Extracting features from signals.
4. **Time-Frequency Analysis:** Analyzing signals in time and frequency.

#### **Advantages:**

1. **Multiresolution Analysis:** Analyzing signals at multiple scales.
2. **Localization:** Analyzing signals locally.
3. **Flexibility:** Choosing wavelet basis.

#### **Software Tools:**

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in wavelet toolbox.
2. **Python:** pywt library.
3. **C++:** Wavelet libraries like wavet.

#### **Real-World Examples:**

1. **Image Compression:** JPEG 2000 uses wavelets.
2. **Signal Processing:** Denoising, filtering.
3. **Medical Imaging:** Image reconstruction.
4. **Financial Analysis:** Time-series analysis.

#### **Research Areas:**

1. **New Wavelet Constructions:** Designing new wavelet bases.
2. **Wavelet-Based Filtering:** Designing filters using wavelets.
3. **Multidimensional Wavelets:** Extending wavelets to higher dimensions.

# FOURIER TRANSFORM

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

**Fourier Transform** is a mathematical model which helps to transform the signals between two different domains, such as transforming signal from frequency domain to time domain or vice versa. Fourier transform has many applications in Engineering and Physics, such as signal processing, RADAR, and so on. In this article, we are going to discuss the formula of Fourier transform, properties, tables, Fourier cosine transform, Fourier sine transform with complete explanations.

### **Fourier Transform**

The generalisation of the complex [Fourier series](#) is known as the Fourier transform. The term “Fourier transform” can be used in the mathematical function, and it is also used in the representation of the frequency domain. The Fourier transform helps to extend the Fourier series to the non-periodic functions, which helps us to view any functions in terms of the sum of simple sinusoids.

### **Fourier Transform Formula**

As discussed above, the Fourier transform is considered to be a generalisation of the complex Fourier series in the limit  $L \rightarrow \infty$ . Also, convert discrete  $A_n$  to the continuous  $F(k)dk$  and let  $n/L \rightarrow k$ . Finally, convert the sum to an integral.

Thus, the Fourier transform of a function  $f(x)$  is given by:

### **Forward and Inverse Fourier Transform**

From the Fourier transform formula, we can derive the forward and inverse Fourier transform.

1)  $F\{f(x)\} = F(s) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{isx} dx$  is known as the forward Fourier transform or simply

Fourier transform.

2)  $f(x) = F^{-1}(s) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{-isx} dx$  is known as the inverse Fourier transform.

### Fourier Transform Properties

The following are the important properties of Fourier transform:

- **Duality** – If  $h(t)$  has a Fourier transform  $H(f)$ , then the Fourier transform of  $H(t)$  is  $H(-f)$ .
- **Linear transform** – Fourier transform is a linear transform. Let  $h(t)$  and  $g(t)$  be two Fourier transforms, which are denoted by  $H(f)$  and  $G(f)$ , respectively. In this case, we can easily calculate the Fourier transform of the linear combination of  $g$  and  $h$ .
- **Modulation property** – According to the modulation property, a function is modulated by the other function, if it is multiplied in time.

### Fourier Transform in Two Dimensions

Fourier transform in two-dimensions is given as follows:

#### Fourier Transform Table

The following table presents the Fourier transform for different functions:

**Function**                       **$f(x)$   $F(k) = F_x [f(x)]$**

Fourier Transform: 1 1

Fourier Transform: Sine Function

Fourier Transform: Cosine Function

Fourier Transform: Inverse Function

Fourier Transform: Exponential Function

Fourier Transform: Gaussian Function

### Applications of Fourier Transform

Fourier transform is used in a wide range of applications, such as:

- Image Compression
- Image Analysis
- Image Filtering

- Image Reconstruction

### Fourier Sine Transform

The Fourier sine transform is defined as the imaginary part of full complex Fourier transform, and it is given by:

### Fourier Cosine Transform

The Fourier transform for cosines of a [real function](#) is defined as the real part of a full complex Fourier transform.

- Fourier discovered that such a complex signal could be decomposed into an infinite series made up of cosine and sine terms and a whole bunch of coefficients which can (surprisingly) be readily determined.

$$f(t) = \frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos\left(\frac{2\pi nt}{T}\right) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin\left(\frac{2\pi nt}{T}\right)$$

- If you like, we have decomposed the original function  $f(t)$  into a series of basis states. For those of you who like to be creative this immediately begs the question of: is this the only decomposition possible? The answer is no.
- The coefficients are “readily” determined by integration.

$$a_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} f(t) \cos\left(\frac{2\pi nt}{T}\right) dt$$

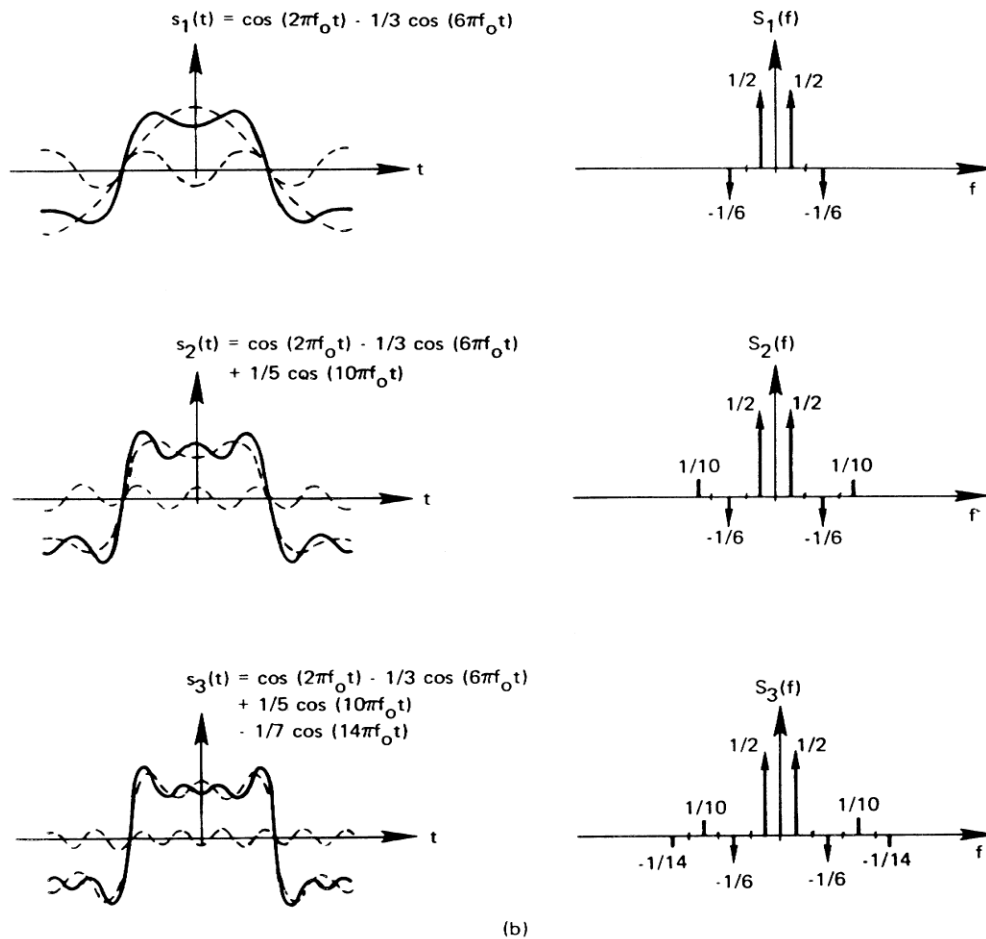
$$b_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} f(t) \sin\left(\frac{2\pi nt}{T}\right) dt$$

- Introducing complex notation we can simplify all of the above to what you often see in textbooks.

$$f(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} c_n \exp\left(-i \frac{2\pi nt}{T}\right)$$

$$c_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} f(t) \exp\left(i \frac{2\pi nt}{T}\right) dt$$

- Here  $c_0 = \frac{1}{2}a_0$ ,  $c_n = \frac{1}{2}(a_n + ib_n)$ , and  $c_{-n} = \frac{1}{2}(a_n - ib_n)$ .
- The graphical example below indicates how addition of cosine time function terms are Fourier transformed into coefficients. In this case only  $c_n = a_n/2$ . Take care the centre line with the big arrow is to mark the axis only – it is **not** part of the coefficient display. Notice also that **two** coefficient lines appear for every frequency. The latter is related to the Nyquist sampling theorem (see below) and is also why the coefficient magnitudes are halved. Notice also the **spacing** of the coefficients to be an integral multiple of  $f_0 = 1/T$  with the sign consistent with the input waveform.



(after 'The Fast Fourier Transform', E.O. Brigham, Prentice Hall, 1974)

- It is important to stress that it is an ***intrinsic*** property that the  $c_n$  are discrete. This is sometimes very confusing in text books because they draw them as continuous functions. It ***is*** possible to make them a continuous function by doing a simple trick and imagining that T is enormously large, or better still it tends to infinity. Thus the repeat period is infinite.
- Thus with a little pure mathematics and the substitutions,  $s = \frac{2\pi n}{T}$ , leading smoothly to  $ds = \frac{2\pi}{T} dn$  as  $T \rightarrow \infty$ , and also introducing the continuous function  $F(s)$  to replace the discrete  $c_n$ , we get a lovely functional symmetry:

$$f(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} F(s) \exp(-ist) ds$$

$$F(s) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(t) \exp(ist) dt$$

(Reminder: t and s are arbitrary variables!)

- For a number of functions of time  $f(t)$  the corresponding continuous transform shapes  $F(s)$  are given in the accompanying diagrams below. It is immediately obvious that 's' has units of frequency and so we talk of transforming the repetitive time function into the frequency domain. We have analysed time behaviour into its corresponding frequency components.



**DIGITAL FOURIER TRANSFORM**

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

In the real world of experimental physics we do not have the luxury of infinite time nor can we necessarily describe analytically our function  $f(t)$ . It is normally derived from the experimental equipment attached to something (eg., receiver voltage from an antenna). Thus we need something practical to do an FT.

The above has three simple consequences:

- 1) We need to choose a total sample time T recognising  $1/T$  will then be the frequency spacing or resolution we can get out of the transform. Thus if  $T=1.5s$  we obtain our frequency coefficients at a spacing of 0.67 Hz.
- 2) During T, we need to sample our waveform N times to produce a sampling vector representing our continuous time domain. Thus

$$f(t) \leftrightarrow \{x_n\} \text{ with } 0 < n < N - 1$$

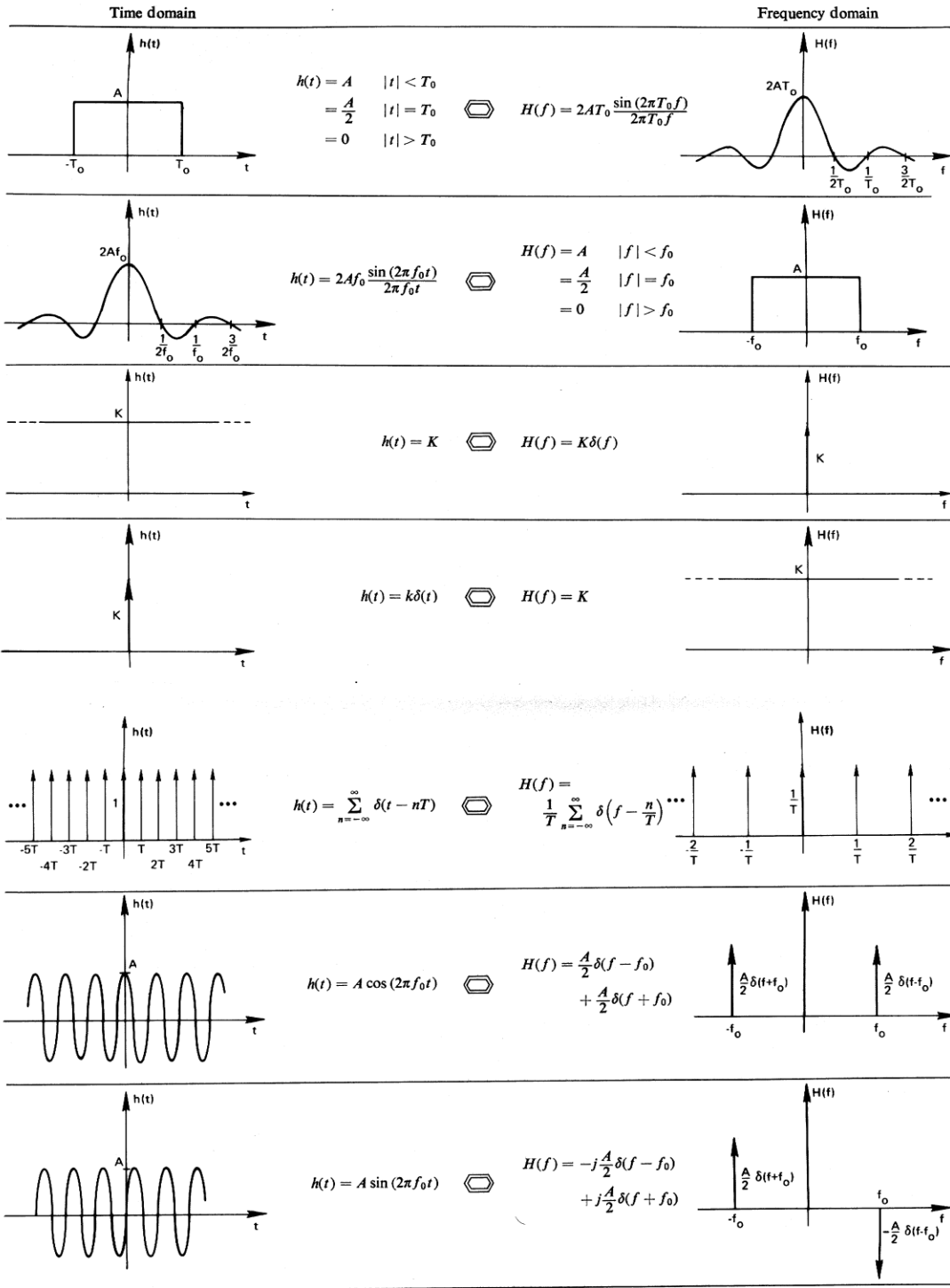


Figure 2-11. Fourier transform pairs.

(after 'The Fast Fourier Transform', E.O. Brigham, Prentice Hall, 1974)

- 3) We need to modify our Fourier transform to cope with a discrete input vector. Following our previous work we intuitively make integrals go to sums, T go to N,  $f(t)$  go to  $x_n$ , and  $c_n$  go to  $X_n$  (though this is just a notation change since  $c_n$  are already a discrete set!). We are left with the practical Digital Fourier Transform. or DFT pair.

$$X_n = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x_k \exp(i \frac{2\pi nk}{N})$$

$$x_k = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} X_n \exp(-i \frac{2\pi nk}{N})$$

Notes:

- 1)  $i = \sqrt{-1}$  and is easily confused with the integer counters n and k.
  - 2) The placement of 1/N factor is somewhat arbitrary, but convention places it as shown. It is important for normalisation – don't lose it!
- The above is readily programmed and the N input samples in time are converted to N frequency samples spaced at 1/T. Essentially the transform is a coefficient matrix multiplication from which you can see the output frequency vector is a weighted sum of input time samples.

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_0 \\ \dots \\ X_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} W_{00} & \dots & W_{0n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots \\ W_{n0} & \dots & W_{nn} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_0 \\ \dots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} \text{ with } W_{nk} = \exp\left(i \frac{2\pi nk}{N}\right)$$

From this it can be seen, for instance, that  $X_0$  is the DC average of  $x_n$  since  $W_{0n} = 1$ .

- Practically for large N the above straight forward calculation becomes a massive computational burden of order  $N^2$ . Happily, a number of people have discovered patterns in

$W_{nk}$  which can be exploited. The best has a computational burden of  $N \log N$  and is called a Fast Fourier Transform or FFT. Please explore “Numerical Recipes in C “, 2<sup>nd</sup> Ed, Cambridge, 1992) . It is important to note the FFT is only a computational device and nothing more!

### 3.0 Power Spectra

- The complex representation is compact, but needs to be converted to something useful otherwise you end up with two axes of coefficients. Practically we form the power coefficient spectrum as a function of frequency as follows

$$P_n = X_n \times X_n^*$$

It is this which is displayed on spectrum analysers and how most spectra are drawn.

- Fourier transforms have a conservation law which is ultimately related, physically, to the conservation of energy. Thus:

$$\sum_N x_k x_k^* = \frac{1}{N} \sum_N X_n X_n^* = \sum_N P_n$$

Effectively, we are redistributing the input vector into a new basis system but retaining coefficient conservation which is always nice in physics. It is also called Parseval’s theorem.

### 4.0 Imperfections, Limitations and Trade-Offs

- Consider the frequency coefficient  $X_{N-r}$ .

$$X_{N-r} = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x_k \exp(i \frac{2\pi(N-r)k}{N}) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x_k \exp(i2\pi k) \exp(-i \frac{2\pi r k}{N}) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x_k \exp(-i \frac{2\pi r k}{N})$$

If the input vector  $x_k$  is real (and it usually is since it is a time varying voltage) then

$$X_{N-r} = X_r^* \text{ from which it follows that } P_r = P_{N-r}.$$

- This means that in any Fourier derived power spectrum there is a *duplication* of frequency coefficients. Thus only  $N/2$  points are unique and so by reverse implication if you have your

heart set on a particular BW analysed with a resolution of M points you will require 2M samples of the time spectra. This is called the Nyquist sampling theorem.

- The finite sampling time T creates an artificial effect in which the value of the frequency coefficients “leaks” into adjacent coefficient positions. This means you get a reduced value of the wanted coefficient and an adulteration of adjacent coefficients. It is customary therefore to pre-multiply your input time coefficients  $x_k$  with a windowing or weighting function over all the time points to reduce this coefficient leakage in  $X_n$ . An old friend is the Hanning window which applies a weighting  $w_k$  to each  $x_k$  given by,

$$w_k = \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \cos \left( \frac{2\pi k}{N} \right) \right)$$

The above is sometimes also called Hanning smoothing. There are other functions. See “Numerical Recipes in C” referred to above for these.

- The maths for the above revolve around convolution and the Fourier transform of convolution. Here is the sketch.
  1. Remember the convolution product, which is a function of time, is defined as  $f * g = \int_{-\infty}^t f(\tau)g(t-\tau)d\tau$ . Good physical examples of this process are “flywheel” action seen in analogue filters, the flywheels in cars and door dampeners. The past affects the present!
  2. The Fourier transform of this is  $R(s) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \left( \int_{-\infty}^t f(\tau)g(t-\tau)d\tau \right) \exp(ist)dt$ , which on making the simple substitution  $u = t - \tau$ , leads after a small fiddle, to  $R(s) = F(s)G(s)$ . This is an important result which states that convolution in time space is multiplication in frequency space and *vice versa*.

3. The window problem occurs because you are multiplying the input time samples with a square sampling window. This leads to the convolution of these two in frequency space and thus to practical problems. Provided you pick it well, pre-smoothing with a suitable function minimises this convolution effect.
- Finally, the you must pick a sample time which ensures that all the frequencies in your time signal are resolved in the resulting bandwidth of the frequency coefficients. How do you do this since you don't know what is there beforehand? In practical systems you **filter** out frequencies you are not interested in **before** the FFT process. Failure to do this leads to signal aliasing or the unwanted higher frequencies folding back into your spectrum in unwanted places.

#### 4.0 Thinking in terms of the Fourier Transform

- Digital filtering on a static input time sample can be done taking a FFT of the vector and then applying the desired filter shape to the resultant coefficients. Now apply an inverse FFT and the result is a filtered time set. Clean up your old records this way by converting the sound to digital sample files and process them on a PC.
- Continuous digital filtering on a continuous time sample can be thought of as deliberately convolving the incoming signal with a function which is the inverse FT of the filter shape. This is how many digital filters called FIR filters work. They do the job on the fly.

There are a number of techniques to do FFT's quickly and so get power spectra. Correlators use the following simple idea:

1. The autocorrelation of a signal  $f(t)$  with a time shifted version of itself  $f(t + \tau)$  is given by

$$A(\tau) = \int f(t)f(t + \tau)dt .$$

2. If we take the FT of this in  $\tau$  space we get, after a fiddle with variable substitution,  $\int A(\tau) \exp(i2\pi s \tau) d\tau = F(s)F^*(s)$ , provided we assume  $f(t)$  is a real function (which of course it will be in our case). But this is exactly the desired power spectrum since  $P(s) = F(s)F^*(s)$ .
3. Producing a fast autocorrelator using a shift register and a bit of electronics allows  $A(\tau)$  to be produced efficiently by continually multiplying a sampled signal with previous samples of itself. The final vector can then be converted into a power spectrum with a single FFT.

## HENKEL TRANSFORM

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

The Fourier-Bessel transforms! That's a fascinating topic in mathematics, particularly in the realm of integral transforms.

### **Definition:**

The Fourier-Bessel transform is an integral transform that combines the Fourier transform and Bessel functions. It is defined as:

$$F_v\{f(x)\} = \int_0^{\infty} x f(x) J_v(kx) dx$$

where:

- $f(x)$  is the input function
- $v$  is the order of the Bessel function
- $J_v(kx)$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $v$
- $k$  is the transform variable

### **Inverse Transform:**

The inverse Fourier-Bessel transform is given by:

$$f(x) = \int_0^{\infty} k F_v\{f(x)\} J_v(kx) dk$$

### **Properties:**

1. **Orthogonality:** The Fourier-Bessel transform satisfies the orthogonality property, which makes it useful for solving boundary value problems.
2. **Parseval's Identity:** The transform preserves the energy of the input function.
3. **Shift Invariance:** The transform is invariant under translations.



### **Applications:**

1. **Solving Partial Differential Equations (PDEs):** The Fourier-Bessel transform is useful for solving PDEs involving cylindrical or spherical symmetry.
2. **Electromagnetic Theory:** It is used to analyze electromagnetic waves in cylindrical or spherical coordinates.
3. **Quantum Mechanics:** The transform appears in the solution of the Schrödinger equation for central potentials.
4. **Signal Processing:** It has applications in signal processing, particularly in image and audio processing.

### **Types of Fourier-Bessel Transforms:**

1. **Finite Fourier-Bessel Transform:** Used for functions defined on a finite interval.
2. **Modified Fourier-Bessel Transform:** Used for functions with a singularity at the origin.

### **Numerical Computation:**

The Fourier-Bessel transform can be computed numerically using various methods, including:

1. **Gaussian Quadrature**
2. **Clenshaw-Curtis Quadrature**
3. **Fast Fourier Transform (FFT)** algorithms adapted for Bessel functions.

### **Physics and Engineering:**

1. **Electromagnetic Scattering:** Analyzing scattering of electromagnetic waves by cylindrical or spherical objects.
2. **Wave Propagation:** Studying wave propagation in optical fibers, waveguides, or during seismic exploration.
3. **Quantum Mechanics:** Solving the Schrödinger equation for central potentials, such as the hydrogen atom.
4. **Heat Conduction:** Solving heat conduction problems in cylindrical or spherical coordinates.

### **Signal Processing:**

1. **Image Analysis:** Analyzing images with circular or spherical symmetry.
2. **Audio Processing:** Processing audio signals with cylindrical or spherical microphone arrays.

3. **Medical Imaging:** Reconstruction of medical images from projection data (e.g., MRI, CT scans).

### **Mathematics:**

1. **Differential Equations:** Solving boundary value problems involving cylindrical or spherical coordinates.
2. **Special Functions:** Studying properties of Bessel functions and other special functions.

### **Geophysics:**

1. **Seismic Exploration:** Analyzing seismic data to understand subsurface structures.
2. **Gravity Anomalies:** Studying gravity anomalies in cylindrical or spherical coordinates.

Some specific problems that can be solved using the Fourier-Bessel transform include:

1. **Cylindrical Waveguide Problem:** Find the electromagnetic field inside a cylindrical waveguide.
2. **Spherical Harmonics:** Expand a function defined on a sphere in terms of spherical harmonics.
3. **Heat Conduction in a Cylinder:** Solve the heat equation in cylindrical coordinates.

## **HENKEL TRANSFORM**

The Hankel transform! Another powerful tool in the realm of integral transforms.

### **Definition:**

The Hankel transform of order  $\nu$  is defined as:

$$H_{\nu}\{f(x)\} = \int_0^{\infty} x f(x) J_{\nu}(kx) dx$$

where:

- $f(x)$  is the input function
- $\nu$  is the order of the transform
- $J_{\nu}(kx)$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $\nu$
- $k$  is the transform variable

### **Inverse Transform:**

The inverse Hankel transform is given by:

$$f(x) = \int_0^{\infty} k H_v \{f(x)\} J_v(kx) dk$$

### Properties:

1. **Orthogonality:** Hankel transforms satisfy orthogonality relations.
2. **Parseval's Identity:** The transform preserves the energy of the input function.
3. **Shift Invariance:** The transform is invariant under translations.

### Relationship to Fourier-Bessel Transform:

The Hankel transform is closely related to the Fourier-Bessel transform. In fact, the Hankel transform is a special case of the Fourier-Bessel transform, where the order  $\nu$  is fixed.

### Applications:

1. **Optics:** Hankel transforms are used in optical diffraction theory.
2. **Electromagnetics:** Analyzing electromagnetic waves in cylindrical or spherical coordinates.
3. **Seismology:** Studying seismic wave propagation.
4. **Medical Imaging:** Reconstruction of medical images from projection data.
5. **Signal Processing:** Image and audio processing, especially for circularly symmetric signals.

### Types of Hankel Transforms:

1. **Finite Hankel Transform:** Used for functions defined on a finite interval.
2. **Modified Hankel Transform:** Used for functions with a singularity at the origin.

### Numerical Computation:

Hankel transforms can be computed numerically using:

1. **Gaussian Quadrature**
2. **Clenshaw-Curtis Quadrature**
3. **Fast Hankel Transform (FHT)** algorithms

Some specific problems that can be solved using the Hankel transform include:

1. **Cylindrical Diffraction:** Analyzing diffraction patterns in cylindrical coordinates.
2. **Spherical Wave Propagation:** Studying spherical wave propagation in various media.
3. **Image Reconstruction:** Reconstructing images from projection data.

## HENKEL TRANSFORM BESSEL SERIES

The Hankel transform and Bessel series are closely related.

### Bessel Series:

A Bessel series is a series expansion of a function using Bessel functions:

$$f(x) = \sum [a_n J_n(x)] \text{ from } n=0 \text{ to } \infty$$

where:

- $f(x)$  is the input function
- $a_n$  are the coefficients
- $J_n(x)$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $n$

### Hankel Transform and Bessel Series:

The Hankel transform can be used to obtain a Bessel series expansion of a function.

#### Theorem:

If  $f(x)$  has a Hankel transform of order  $\nu$ , then:

$$f(x) = \sum [a_n J_n(kx)] \text{ from } n=0 \text{ to } \infty$$

where:

- $a_n = k^{2\nu} \int_0^\infty f(x) J_n(kx) dx$
- $k$  is the transform variable

### Connection between Hankel Transform and Bessel Series:

1. **Coefficients:** The coefficients  $a_n$  in the Bessel series can be obtained using the Hankel transform.
2. **Convergence:** The Hankel transform ensures convergence of the Bessel series.
3. **Orthogonality:** The Bessel functions are orthogonal with respect to the weight function  $x$ .

### Applications of Bessel Series:

1. **Solving Differential Equations:** Bessel series are used to solve boundary value problems.
2. **Signal Processing:** Bessel series are used in signal processing, especially for circularly symmetric signals.
3. **Image Analysis:** Bessel series are used in image analysis, particularly for circular features.

### Types of Bessel Series:

1. **Fourier-Bessel Series:** Used for functions defined on a finite interval.
2. **Neumann Series:** Used for functions with a singularity at the origin.

### Numerical Computation:

Bessel series can be computed numerically using:

1. **Gaussian Quadrature**
2. **Clenshaw-Curtis Quadrature**
3. **Fast Bessel Transform (FBT)** algorithms

Some specific problems that can be solved using Bessel series include:

1. **Cylindrical Waveguide Problem:** Find the electromagnetic field inside a cylindrical waveguide.
2. **Spherical Harmonics:** Expand a function defined on a sphere in terms of spherical harmonics.
3. **Heat Conduction in a Cylinder:** Solve the heat equation in cylindrical coordinates.

### TRANSFORM RULES

Here are some essential transform rules for the Hankel transform:

#### Linearity

$$1. \mathcal{H}_\nu\{af(x)+bg(x)\}=a\mathcal{H}_\nu\{f(x)\}+b\mathcal{H}_\nu\{g(x)\}$$

#### Scaling

$$2. \mathcal{H}_\nu\{f(ax)\}=\frac{1}{a} \mathcal{H}_\nu\{f(x)\}$$

#### Translation

$$3. \mathcal{H}_\nu\{f(x-a)\}=\mathcal{H}_\nu\{f(x)\}J_\nu(ak)$$

#### Derivative

4.  $H_\nu\{f'(x)\} = -k H_{\nu-1}\{f(x)\}$
5.  $H_\nu\{f''(x)\} = k^2 H_\nu\{f(x)\} - x \nu H_\nu\{f'(x)\}$

**Integral**

6.  $H_\nu\{\int_0^x f(t) dt\} = k^{-1} H_{\nu+1}\{f(x)\}$

**Convolution**

7.  $H_\nu\{f(x)*g(x)\} = H_\nu\{f(x)\} H_\nu\{g(x)\}$

**Parseval's Identity**

8.  $\int_0^\infty x f(x) g(x) dx = \int_0^\infty k H_\nu\{f(x)\} H_\nu\{g(x)\} dk$

These rules help simplify Hankel transform calculations and are useful in various applications.

**Proving Transform Rules:**

To prove these rules, use the definition of the Hankel transform and properties of Bessel functions.

**FOURIER BESSEL SERIES**

The Fourier-Bessel series! A powerful tool for expanding functions in terms of Bessel functions.

**Definition:**

The Fourier-Bessel series of a function  $f(x)$  is:

$$f(x) = \sum [a_n J_n(k_n x)] \text{ from } n=1 \text{ to } \infty$$

where:

- $a_n$  are the coefficients
- $J_n(k_n x)$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $n$
- $k_n$  are the positive roots of  $J_n(k_n a) = 0$  ( $a$  is the boundary value)

**Coefficients:**

The coefficients  $a_n$  are given by:

$$a_n = \frac{2}{[a^2 J_{n+1}(k_n a)^2]} \int_0^a [x f(x) J_n(k_n x)] \text{ from } 0 \text{ to } a$$

**Convergence:**

The Fourier-Bessel series converges uniformly to  $f(x)$  if:

1.  $f(x)$  is piecewise continuous on  $[0, a]$
2.  $f(x)$  satisfies the boundary condition  $f(a) = 0$

#### **Properties:**

1. **Orthogonality:** Bessel functions are orthogonal with respect to the weight function  $x$ .
2. **Completeness:** The Fourier-Bessel series is complete, meaning any function can be expanded.
3. **Parseval's Identity:** The series preserves the energy of the input function.

#### **Applications:**

1. **Solving Differential Equations:** Fourier-Bessel series solve boundary value problems.
2. **Electromagnetics:** Analyzing electromagnetic waves in cylindrical coordinates.
3. **Quantum Mechanics:** Solving the Schrödinger equation for central potentials.
4. **Signal Processing:** Image and audio processing, especially for circularly symmetric signals.

#### **Types of Fourier-Bessel Series:**

1. **Finite Fourier-Bessel Series:** Used for functions defined on a finite interval.
2. **Infinite Fourier-Bessel Series:** Used for functions defined on  $[0, \infty)$ .

#### **Numerical Computation:**

Fourier-Bessel series can be computed numerically using:

1. **Gaussian Quadrature**
2. **Clenshaw-Curtis Quadrature**
3. **Fast Fourier-Bessel Transform (FFBT)** algorithms

Some specific problems that can be solved using Fourier-Bessel series include:

1. **Cylindrical Waveguide Problem:** Find the electromagnetic field inside a cylindrical waveguide.
2. **Spherical Harmonics:** Expand a function defined on a sphere in terms of spherical harmonics.
3. **Heat Conduction in a Cylinder:** Solve the heat equation in cylindrical coordinates.

**DISCRETE HENKEL TRANSFORM DISCRETE HENKEL TRANSFORM**

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

The Discrete Hankel Transform (DHT)! A powerful tool for analyzing circularly symmetric signals.

**Definition:**

The Discrete Hankel Transform (DHT) of order  $\nu$  of a sequence  $f(n)$  is:

$$F(k) = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} f(n) J_{\nu}(2\pi kn/N) \quad (k = 0, 1, \dots, N-1)$$

where:

- $f(n)$  is the input sequence
- $J_{\nu}(x)$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $\nu$
- $N$  is the transform length
- $k$  is the transform index

**Inverse Transform:**

The inverse DHT is:

$$f(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} F(k) J_{\nu}(2\pi kn/N) \quad (n = 0, 1, \dots, N-1)$$

**Properties:**

1. **Orthogonality:** DHT satisfies orthogonality relations.
2. **Parseval's Identity:** DHT preserves the energy of the input sequence.
3. **Shift Invariance:** DHT is invariant under circular shifts.

**Applications:**

1. **Image Processing:** DHT is used in image analysis, especially for circular features.



2. **Optics:** DHT is used in optical diffraction theory.
3. **Seismology:** DHT is used in seismic data analysis.
4. **Signal Processing:** DHT is used in signal processing, especially for circularly symmetric signals.

#### **Types of Discrete Hankel Transforms:**

1. **Fast Discrete Hankel Transform (FDHT):** Efficient algorithm for computing DHT.
2. **Discrete Hankel Transform of Type 1:** Used for real-valued input sequences.
3. **Discrete Hankel Transform of Type 2:** Used for complex-valued input sequences.

#### **Numerical Computation:**

DHT can be computed numerically using:

1. **Fast Fourier Transform (FFT)** algorithms
2. **Gaussian Quadrature**
3. **Clenshaw-Curtis Quadrature**

Some specific problems that can be solved using DHT include:

1. **Cylindrical Diffraction:** Analyzing diffraction patterns in cylindrical coordinates.
2. **Spherical Wave Propagation:** Studying spherical wave propagation in various media.
3. **Image Reconstruction:** Reconstructing images from projection data.

### **INVERSE HANKEL TRANSFORM**

The Inverse Hankel Transform! A crucial tool for synthesizing functions from their Hankel transform.

#### **Definition:**

The Inverse Hankel Transform (IHT) of order  $\nu$  of a function  $F(k)$  is:

$$f(x) = \int_0^{\infty} k F(k) J_{\nu}(kx) dk$$

where:

- $F(k)$  is the Hankel transform of  $f(x)$
- $J_{\nu}(kx)$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $\nu$
- $x$  is the spatial variable

- $k$  is the transform variable

### Properties:

1. **Linearity:** IHT is linear.
2. **Translation Invariance:** IHT is invariant under translations.
3. **Derivative Property:** IHT of derivatives.

### Types of Inverse Hankel Transforms:

1. **Finite Inverse Hankel Transform:** Used for functions defined on a finite interval.
2. **Semi-Infinite Inverse Hankel Transform:** Used for functions defined on  $[0, \infty)$ .
3. **Inverse Hankel Transform of Type 1:** Used for real-valued input functions.
4. **Inverse Hankel Transform of Type 2:** Used for complex-valued input functions.

### Numerical Computation:

IHT can be computed numerically using:

1. **Gaussian Quadrature**
2. **Clenshaw-Curtis Quadrature**
3. **Fast Hankel Transform (FHT)** algorithms
4. **Inverse Fast Hankel Transform (IFHT)** algorithms

### Applications:

1. **Image Reconstruction:** Reconstructing images from projection data.
2. **Optics:** Analyzing optical diffraction patterns.
3. **Seismology:** Analyzing seismic data.
4. **Signal Processing:** Synthesizing signals from their Hankel transform.

### Relationships with Other Transforms:

1. **Fourier Transform:** IHT is related to the Fourier transform.
2. **Laplace Transform:** IHT is related to the Laplace transform.
3. **Mellin Transform:** IHT is related to the Mellin transform.

Some specific problems that can be solved using IHT include:

1. **Cylindrical Waveguide Problem:** Finding the electromagnetic field inside a cylindrical waveguide.
2. **Spherical Wave Propagation:** Studying spherical wave propagation in various media.
3. **Heat Conduction in a Cylinder:** Solving the heat equation in cylindrical coordinates.

## SAMPLING THEOREM FOR A SPACE LIMITED FUNCTION

The Sampling Theorem for Space-Limited Functions!

### Statement:

If  $f(x)$  is a space-limited function, band-limited to  $\Omega$ , and  $x_n$  are sampling points, then:

$$f(x) = \sum [f(x_n) \text{sinc}(\Omega(x-x_n))] \quad (\forall x \in \mathbb{R})$$

where:

- $f(x)$  is the original function
- $x_n$  are sampling points ( $x_n = n\pi/\Omega$ )
- $\text{sinc}(x) = \sin(\pi x)/(\pi x)$
- $\Omega$  is the bandwidth ( $\Omega = 2\pi/T$ ,  $T$  is the period)

### Conditions:

1. **Space-Limited:**  $f(x) = 0$  for  $|x| > L$
2. **Band-Limited:**  $F(\omega) = 0$  for  $|\omega| > \Omega$
3. **Sampling Rate:**  $x_n = n\pi/\Omega$  (Nyquist rate)

### Consequences:

1. **Perfect Reconstruction:**  $f(x)$  can be perfectly reconstructed from samples.
2. **No Aliasing:** No distortion due to sampling.
3. **Information Preservation:** All information in  $f(x)$  is preserved.

### Proof:

Using Fourier analysis and the Poisson summation formula:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega) e^{i\omega x} d\omega \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} f(x_n) \text{sinc}(\Omega(x-x_n)) \end{aligned}$$

### Examples:

1. **Audio Signals:** Sampling audio signals for digital processing.
2. **Image Processing:** Sampling images for digital processing.
3. **Seismic Data:** Sampling seismic data for analysis.

### Extensions:

1. **Non-Uniform Sampling:** Sampling at non-uniform intervals.
2. **Multi-Dimensional Sampling:** Sampling in multiple dimensions.
3. **Sampling of Non-Band-Limited Functions:** Sampling functions with finite energy.

### Related Theorems:

1. **Nyquist-Shannon Sampling Theorem:** Sampling continuous-time signals.
2. **Kotelnikov Sampling Theorem:** Sampling band-limited signals.
3. **Papoulis Sampling Theorem:** Sampling space-limited signals.

## INTERPOLATION THEOREM FOR A SPACE LIMITED FUNCTION

The Interpolation Theorem for Space-Limited Functions!

### Statement:

If  $f(x)$  is a space-limited function, band-limited to  $\Omega$ , and  $x_n$  are interpolation points, then:

$$f(x) = \sum [f(x_n) \text{sinc}(\Omega(x-x_n))] \quad (\forall x \in \mathbb{R})$$

where:

- $f(x)$  is the original function
- $x_n$  are interpolation points ( $x_n = n\pi/\Omega$ )
- $\text{sinc}(x) = \sin(\pi x)/(\pi x)$
- $\Omega$  is the bandwidth ( $\Omega = 2\pi/T$ ,  $T$  is the period)

### Conditions:

1. **Space-Limited:**  $f(x) = 0$  for  $|x| > L$
2. **Band-Limited:**  $F(\omega) = 0$  for  $|\omega| > \Omega$
3. **Interpolation Points:**  $x_n = n\pi/\Omega$  (Nyquist rate)

### Consequences:

1. **Perfect Interpolation:**  $f(x)$  can be perfectly interpolated from samples.
2. **No Distortion:** No distortion due to interpolation.
3. **Information Preservation:** All information in  $f(x)$  is preserved.

### Proof:

Using Fourier analysis and the Poisson summation formula:

$$f(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega) e^{i\omega x} d\omega$$

$$= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} f(x_n) \text{sinc}(\Omega(x-x_n))$$

### Types of Interpolation:

1. **Sinc Interpolation:** Using sinc functions for interpolation.
2. **Linear Interpolation:** Using linear functions for interpolation.
3. **Cubic Interpolation:** Using cubic functions for interpolation.

### Applications:

1. **Image Processing:** Interpolating images for resizing or rotation.
2. **Audio Processing:** Interpolating audio signals for pitch shifting.
3. **Seismic Data:** Interpolating seismic data for imaging.

#### Related Theorems:

1. **Sampling Theorem:** Sampling continuous-time signals.
2. **Nyquist-Shannon Interpolation Theorem:** Interpolating band-limited signals.
3. **Papoulis Interpolation Theorem:** Interpolating space-limited signals.

#### Numerical Implementation:

1. **Fast Fourier Transform (FFT):** Efficiently computing Fourier transforms.
2. **Inverse Fast Fourier Transform (IFFT):** Efficiently computing inverse Fourier transforms.
3. **Sinc Interpolation Algorithms:** Efficiently computing sinc interpolation.

The Hankel transform! That's a fascinating topic.

The Hankel transform is an integral transform that is widely used in many fields, including optics, electromagnetics, and signal processing. It's similar to the Fourier transform, but it's specifically designed for functions with circular or radial symmetry.

#### Discrete Forward Hankel Transform (DFHT)

The Discrete Forward Hankel Transform (DFHT) is defined as:

$$F(m) = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} [f(n) * J_m(2\pi nr) * \Delta r]$$

where:

- $F(m)$  is the transformed function
- $f(n)$  is the input function
- $J_m$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $m$
- $\Delta r$  is the radial sampling interval
- $N$  is the number of samples
- $n$  and  $m$  are integers

#### Discrete Inverse Hankel Transform (DIHT)

The Discrete Inverse Hankel Transform (DIHT) is defined as:

$$f(n) = (2/\pi) * \sum_{m=0}^{M-1} [F(m) * J_m(2\pi nr) * \Delta r]$$

where:

- $f(n)$  is the original function
- $F(m)$  is the transformed function
- $J_m$  is the Bessel function of the first kind of order  $m$
- $\Delta r$  is the radial sampling interval
- $M$  is the number of samples
- $n$  and  $m$  are integers

### Properties and Applications

Some important properties of the Hankel transform include:

1. **Symmetry:** The Hankel transform is symmetric, meaning that the forward and inverse transforms are similar.
2. **Orthogonality:** The Hankel transform is orthogonal, making it useful for signal decomposition and reconstruction.
3. **Shift-invariance:** The Hankel transform is shift-invariant, which is useful in image processing.

Applications of the Hankel transform include:

1. **Optics:** Beam propagation, optical fiber analysis
2. **Electromagnetics:** Antenna analysis, scattering problems
3. **Signal Processing:** Image filtering, feature extraction
4. **Geophysics:** Seismic data processing

### Numerical Implementation

To implement the DFHT and DIHT numerically, you can use various algorithms, such as:

1. **Direct summation:** Compute the summation directly using the definition.
2. **Fast Hankel Transform (FHT):** An efficient algorithm using the convolution property.
3. **FFT-based methods:** Utilize the Fast Fourier Transform (FFT) to accelerate computations.

Some popular libraries and tools for implementing the Hankel transform include:

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in functions `hankel` and `ihankel`
2. **Python:** Libraries like `scipy`, `numpy`, and `pyhankel`
3. **Mathematica:** Built-in function `HankelTransform`

## LINEAR INTEGRAL EQUATION

Linear integral equations! A fundamental concept in mathematics and a powerful tool for solving various problems in physics, engineering, and other fields.

### Definition

A linear integral equation is an equation involving an unknown function,  $\varphi(x)$ , and an integral operator that transforms  $\varphi(x)$  into another function. The general form is:

$$a(x)\varphi(x) + \int [K(x,t)\varphi(t)dt] = f(x)$$

where:

- $\varphi(x)$  is the unknown function
- $a(x)$  is a coefficient function
- $K(x,t)$  is the kernel (or integral operator)
- $f(x)$  is the forcing function
- $x$  and  $t$  are variables in the domain of the functions

### Types of Linear Integral Equations

There are two main types:

#### 1. Fredholm Integral Equation:

$$a(x)\varphi(x) + \int [K(x,t)\varphi(t)dt] = f(x)$$

The limits of integration are fixed.

#### 2. Volterra Integral Equation:

$$a(x)\varphi(x) + \int [K(x,t)\varphi(t)dt] = f(x)$$

The upper limit of integration is variable.

### Methods for Solving Linear Integral Equations

1. **Separation of Variables:** If the kernel is separable, i.e.,  $K(x,t) = X(x)T(t)$ .
2. **Laplace Transform:** Useful for solving Volterra equations.
3. **Fourier Transform:** Useful for solving Fredholm equations with convolution-type kernels.
4. **Iteration Methods:** Start with an initial guess and iteratively improve the solution.
5. **Variational Methods:** Use variational principles to minimize a functional.
6. **Numerical Methods:** Discretize the equation and solve using numerical linear algebra techniques.

### Applications

Linear integral equations appear in various areas, including:

1. **Physics:** Quantum mechanics, electromagnetism, and scattering theory.
2. **Engineering:** Signal processing, control theory, and heat transfer.
3. **Biology:** Population dynamics, epidemiology, and chemical kinetics.
4. **Economics:** Optimal control, game theory, and financial modeling.

### Examples

1. **Radiative Transfer Equation:** Describes the propagation of light through a medium.
2. **Schrodinger Equation:** Describes the time-evolution of quantum systems.
3. **Heat Equation:** Describes the diffusion of heat in materials.

### Software Tools

For solving linear integral equations numerically, you can use:

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in functions like `integral` and `solve`
2. **Python:** Libraries like `scipy`, `numpy`, and `sympy`
3. **Mathematica:** Built-in functions like `Integrate` and `Solve`
4. **Gaussian Quadrature:** Numerical integration methods for approximating integrals.



**Z – TRANSFORM****Dr.S.Subramanian***Professor in Mathematics**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)**Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.***Definition:**

The Z-Transform is a mathematical tool for analyzing discrete-time systems and signals.

**Formula:**

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x[n] z^{-n}$$

where:

- $x[n]$  is the discrete-time signal
- $X(z)$  is the Z-Transform
- $z$  is the complex variable

**Properties:**

1. **Linearity:** Z-Transform is linear.
2. **Time Shifting:** Z-Transform of shifted signal.
3. **Scaling:** Z-Transform of scaled signal.
4. **Convolution:** Z-Transform of convolution.

**Types of Z-Transforms:**

1. **One-Sided Z-Transform:** For causal signals.
2. **Two-Sided Z-Transform:** For non-causal signals.
3. **Unilateral Z-Transform:** For signals with  $n \geq 0$ .

**Z-Transform Pairs:****Signal Z-Transform**

$$\delta[n] \quad 1$$

$$u[n] \quad 1/(1-z^{-1})$$

$$n \cdot u[n] \quad z^{-1}/(1-z^{-1})^2$$

$$\sin(\omega n) \quad (z^{-1} \sin(\omega))/(1-2z^{-1}\cos(\omega)+z^{-2})$$

### **Inverse Z-Transform:**

$$x[n] = (1/2\pi j) \oint X(z) z^{n-1} dz$$

### **Applications:**

1. **Digital Signal Processing:** Filtering, convolution.
2. **Control Systems:** Stability analysis, controller design.
3. **Communication Systems:** Modulation analysis.
4. **Image Processing:** Image filtering.

### **Software Tools:**

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in ztrans function.
2. **Python:** scipy.signal.ztransform function.
3. **C++:** DSP libraries like armcmssis.

### **Real-World Examples:**

1. **Digital Filters:** Designing filters using Z-Transform.
2. **Audio Processing:** Audio filtering, echo cancellation.
3. **Image Processing:** Image filtering, edge detection.
4. **Control Systems:** Stability analysis, controller design.

### **Research Areas:**

1. **Advanced Z-Transform Techniques:** Improving computational efficiency.
2. **Z-Transform-Based Filtering:** Designing filters using Z-Transform.
3. **Multidimensional Z-Transform:** Extending Z-Transform to higher dimensions.

Do you have specific questions or applications related to Z-Transform?

applications related to Z-Transform

Applications of Z-Transform:

### **Signal Processing:**

1. **Digital Filtering:** Designing and analyzing digital filters.
2. **Convolution:** Performing convolution operations.
3. **Deconvolution:** Removing effects of convolution.
4. **Signal Reconstruction:** Reconstructing signals from samples.

### **Control Systems:**

1. **Stability Analysis:** Analyzing stability of control systems.
2. **Controller Design:** Designing controllers for systems.

3. **System Identification:** Identifying system parameters.
4. **Feedback Control:** Analyzing feedback control systems.

#### **Communication Systems:**

1. **Modulation Analysis:** Analyzing modulation schemes.
2. **Demodulation:** Demodulating signals.
3. **Channel Analysis:** Analyzing communication channels.
4. **Error Control:** Detecting and correcting errors.

#### **Image Processing:**

1. **Image Filtering:** Filtering images.
2. **Image Reconstruction:** Reconstructing images.
3. **Image Compression:** Compressing images.
4. **Image Enhancement:** Enhancing image quality.

#### **Power Systems:**

1. **Power System Stability:** Analyzing power system stability.
2. **Power Quality Analysis:** Analyzing power quality.
3. **Fault Analysis:** Analyzing faults in power systems.
4. **Control of Power Systems:** Controlling power systems.

#### **Other Applications:**

1. **Audio Processing:** Audio filtering, echo cancellation.
2. **Biomedical Signal Processing:** Analyzing biomedical signals.
3. **Financial Time-Series Analysis:** Analyzing financial data.
4. **Seismic Data Analysis:** Analyzing seismic data.

#### **Software Tools:**

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in `ztrans` function.
2. **Python:** `scipy.signal.ztransform` function.
3. **C++:** DSP libraries like `armcmsis`.
4. **Simulink:** Modeling and simulating dynamic systems.

#### **Real-World Examples:**

1. **Audio Equalizers:** Using Z-Transform for audio filtering.
2. **Image Compression:** Using Z-Transform for image compression.
3. **Power Grid Control:** Using Z-Transform for power system control.

4. **Medical Imaging:** Using Z-Transform for image reconstruction.

#### **Research Areas:**

1. **Advanced Z-Transform Techniques:** Improving computational efficiency.
2. **Z-Transform-Based Filtering:** Designing filters using Z-Transform.
3. **Multidimensional Z-Transform:** Extending Z-Transform to higher dimensions.
4. **Z-Transform Applications in Deep Learning:** Exploring Z-Transform in deep learning.

#### **Electrical Engineering:**

1. **Filter Design:** Designing digital filters for signal processing.
2. **Control Systems:** Analyzing and designing control systems.
3. **Power Systems:** Analyzing power system stability and control.
4. **Communication Systems:** Modeling and analyzing communication systems.

#### **Signal Processing:**

1. **Image Processing:** Image filtering, reconstruction, and compression.
2. **Audio Processing:** Audio filtering, echo cancellation, and compression.
3. **Biomedical Signal Processing:** Analyzing biomedical signals.
4. **Seismic Data Analysis:** Analyzing seismic data.

#### **Computer Science:**

1. **Data Compression:** Compressing data using Z-Transform.
2. **Error-Correcting Codes:** Designing error-correcting codes.
3. **Cryptography:** Secure data transmission using Z-Transform.
4. **Digital Watermarking:** Hiding information in digital signals.

#### **Mechanical Engineering:**

1. **Vibration Analysis:** Analyzing mechanical vibrations.
2. **System Identification:** Identifying mechanical system parameters.
3. **Control System Design:** Designing control systems for mechanical systems.
4. **Signal Processing:** Analyzing signals in mechanical systems.

#### **Finance:**

1. **Time-Series Analysis:** Analyzing financial time-series data.
2. **Predictive Modeling:** Predicting stock prices and market trends.
3. **Risk Analysis:** Analyzing financial risk using Z-Transform.
4. **Portfolio Optimization:** Optimizing investment portfolios.

### Medical Imaging:

1. **Image Reconstruction:** Reconstructing medical images.
2. **Image Filtering:** Filtering medical images.
3. **Image Compression:** Compressing medical images.
4. **Image Enhancement:** Enhancing medical image quality.

### Software Tools:

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in `ztrans` function.
2. **Python:** `scipy.signal.ztransform` function.
3. **C++:** DSP libraries like `armcmsis`.
4. **Simulink:** Modeling and simulating dynamic systems.

### Research Areas:

1. **Advanced Z-Transform Techniques:** Improving computational efficiency.
2. **Z-Transform-Based Filtering:** Designing filters using Z-Transform.
3. **Multidimensional Z-Transform:** Extending Z-Transform to higher dimensions.
4. **Z-Transform Applications in Deep Learning:** Exploring Z-Transform in deep learning.

### Z-Transform Properties:

#### Linearity Property:

$$Z[ax(n) + by(n)] = aX(z) + bY(z)$$

#### Time Shifting Property:

$$Z[x(n-k)] = z^{-k} * X(z)$$

#### Scaling Property:

$$Z[a^n * x(n)] = X(a*z)$$

#### Convolution Property:

$$Z[x(n) * y(n)] = X(z) * Y(z)$$

#### Differentiation Property:

$$Z[dx(n)/dn] = -z * (dX(z)/dz)$$

#### Integration Property:

$$Z[\int x(n)dn] = (1/z) * X(z)$$

#### Multiplication by n Property:

$$Z[n*x(n)] = -z * (dX(z)/dz)$$

**Parseval's Theorem:**

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |x(n)|^2 = (1/2\pi) \oint |X(z)|^2 z^{-1} dz$$

**Initial Value Theorem:**

$$x(0) = \lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} z X(z)$$

**Final Value Theorem:**

$$x(\infty) = \lim_{z \rightarrow 1} (z-1) X(z)$$

**Stability Theorem:**

A system is stable if all poles of  $X(z)$  are inside the unit circle.

**Causality Theorem:**

A system is causal if  $X(z)$  is analytic outside a circle.

**Z-Transform Pairs:****Signal Z-Transform**

$$\delta(n) \quad 1$$

$$u(n) \quad 1/(1-z^{-1})$$

$$n \cdot u(n) \quad z^{-1}/(1-z^{-1})^2$$

$$\sin(\omega n) \quad (z^{-1} \sin(\omega))/(1-2z^{-1}\cos(\omega)+z^{-2})$$

**Software Tools:**

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in `ztrans` function.
2. **Python:** `scipy.signal.ztransform` function.
3. **C++:** DSP libraries like `armcmsis`.
4. **Simulink:** Modeling and simulating dynamic systems.

**Research Areas:**

1. **Advanced Z-Transform Techniques:** Improving computational efficiency.
2. **Z-Transform-Based Filtering:** Designing filters using Z-Transform.
3. **Multidimensional Z-Transform:** Extending Z-Transform to higher dimensions.
4. **Z-Transform Applications in Deep Learning:** Exploring Z-Transform in deep learning.

Do you have specific questions or applications related to Z-Transform properties?

convolution theorem on z transform

Convolution Theorem on Z-Transform:

**Statement:**

If  $X(z)$  and  $Y(z)$  are the Z-Transforms of  $x(n)$  and  $y(n)$  respectively, then:

$$Z[x(n) * y(n)] = X(z) \times Y(z)$$

**Proof:**

$$x(n) * y(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x(k) y(n-k)$$

Taking Z-Transform:

$$Z[x(n) * y(n)] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} (\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x(k) y(n-k)) z^{-n}$$

Interchanging order of summation:

$$= \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x(k) (\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} y(n-k) z^{-n})$$

Using time-shifting property:

$$= \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x(k) z^{-k} Y(z)$$

$$= X(z) \times Y(z)$$

**Inverse Convolution Theorem:**

If  $X(z) = Y(z) \times Z(z)$ , then:

$$x(n) = y(n) * z(n)$$

**Properties:**

1. **Commutativity:**  $x(n) * y(n) = y(n) * x(n)$
2. **Associativity:**  $(x(n) * y(n)) * z(n) = x(n) * (y(n) * z(n))$
3. **Distributivity:**  $x(n) * (y(n) + z(n)) = x(n) * y(n) + x(n) * z(n)$

**Applications:**

1. **Digital Filtering:** Convolution theorem is used to analyze and design digital filters.
2. **Signal Processing:** Convolution theorem is used to analyze and process signals.
3. **Image Processing:** Convolution theorem is used to analyze and process images.
4. **Communication Systems:** Convolution theorem is used to analyze and design communication systems.

**Software Tools:**

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in conv function.
2. **Python:** scipy.signal.convolve function.
3. **C++:** DSP libraries like armcmssis.
4. **Simulink:** Modeling and simulating dynamic systems.

**Research Areas:**

1. **Fast Convolution Algorithms:** Improving computational efficiency.
2. **Convolutional Neural Networks:** Applying convolution theorem in deep learning.
3. **Multidimensional Convolution:** Extending convolution theorem to higher dimensions.

### Inverse Z-Transform:

#### Definition:

The Inverse Z-Transform is a mathematical operation that transforms a Z-Transform back into its original discrete-time signal.

#### Formula:

$$x[n] = Z^{-1} \{X(z)\} = (1/2\pi j) \oint X(z) z^{n-1} dz$$

#### Contour Integral:

The contour integral is evaluated over a closed curve enclosing all poles of  $X(z)$ .

#### Residue Theorem:

$$x[n] = \sum \text{residues of } X(z) z^{n-1} \text{ at poles of } X(z)$$

#### Methods for Finding Inverse Z-Transform:

1. **Partial Fraction Expansion:** Breaking down  $X(z)$  into simpler fractions.
2. **Residue Method:** Finding residues of  $X(z)$  at poles.
3. **Contour Integration:** Evaluating contour integral directly.
4. **Z-Transform Tables:** Looking up  $X(z)$  in Z-Transform tables.

#### Properties:

1. **Linearity:**  $Z^{-1} \{aX(z) + bY(z)\} = ax[n] + by[n]$
2. **Time Shifting:**  $Z^{-1} \{z^{-k} X(z)\} = x[n-k]$
3. **Scaling:**  $Z^{-1} \{X(a^*z)\} = a^n x[n]$

### Z-Transform Pairs: Signal Z-Transform

$\delta[n]$	1
$u[n]$	$1/(1-z^{-1})$
$n*u[n]$	$z^{-1}/(1-z^{-1})^2$
$\sin(\omega n)$	$(z^{-1} \sin(\omega))/(1-2z^{-1}\cos(\omega)+z^{-2})$

#### Software Tools:

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in iztrans function.



2. **Python:** scipy.signal.zinv function.
3. **C++:** DSP libraries like armcmssis.
4. **Simulink:** Modeling and simulating dynamic systems.

**Research Areas:**

1. **Fast Inverse Z-Transform Algorithms:** Improving computational efficiency.
2. **Inverse Z-Transform-Based Filtering:** Designing filters using inverse Z-Transform.
3. **Multidimensional Inverse Z-Transform:** Extending inverse Z-Transform to higher dimensions.

Do you have specific questions or applications related to Inverse Z-Transform?

inverse transform by partial fraction methods

inverse transform of z by partial fraction methods

Inverse Z-Transform by Partial Fraction Method:

**Step 1: Express X(z) as Partial Fractions:**

$$X(z) = (\text{numerator})/(\text{denominator}) = (N(z))/(D(z))$$

**Step 2: Factor Denominator:**

$$D(z) = (z - p_1)(z - p_2)\dots(z - p_n)$$

**Step 3: Express X(z) as Sum of Simple Fractions:**

$$X(z) = A_1/(z - p_1) + A_2/(z - p_2) + \dots + A_n/(z - p_n)$$

**Step 4: Find Residues (A1, A2, ..., An):**

Using formula:

$$A_i = \lim_{z \rightarrow p_i} [(z - p_i) X(z)]$$

**Step 5: Inverse Z-Transform:**

$$x[n] = Z^{-1} \{X(z)\} = A_1(p_1)^n + A_2(p_2)^n + \dots + A_n(p_n)^n$$

**Example:**

$$X(z) = (z + 1)/(z^2 - 3z + 2)$$

**Step 1-2:**

$$X(z) = (z + 1)/((z - 1)(z - 2))$$

**Step 3:**

$$X(z) = A_1/(z - 1) + A_2/(z - 2)$$

**Step 4:**

$$A_1 = \lim_{z \rightarrow 1} [(z - 1) X(z)] = 2$$

$$A_2 = \lim_{z \rightarrow 2} (z - 2) X(z) = -1$$

### Step 5:

$$x[n] = 2^n - 1 \cdot 2^n$$

### Types of Poles:

1. **Simple Poles:**  $(z - p_i)$
2. **Multiple Poles:**  $(z - p_i)^m$
3. **Complex Conjugate Poles:**  $(z - p_i)(z - p_i^*)$

### Special Cases:

1. **Repeated Roots:**  $D(z)$  has repeated roots.
2. **Complex Roots:**  $D(z)$  has complex roots.

### Software Tools:

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in residue function.
2. **Python:** `scipy.signal.residue` function.
3. **C++:** DSP libraries like `armcmsis`.
4. **Simulink:** Modeling and simulating dynamic systems.

### Research Areas:

1. **Efficient Partial Fraction Decomposition:** Improving computational efficiency.
2. **Partial Fraction-Based Filtering:** Designing filters using partial fractions.
3. **Multidimensional Partial Fractions:** Extending partial fractions to higher dimensions.

Do you have specific questions or applications related to Inverse Z-Transform by Partial Fraction Method?

inverse transform of  $z$  by residue methods

Inverse Z-Transform by Residue Method:

### Definition:

The Residue Method is used to find the Inverse Z-Transform of  $X(z)$  by evaluating residues at poles.

### Formula:

$$x[n] = \sum \text{residues of } X(z) z^{n-1} \text{ at poles of } X(z)$$

### Residue Calculation:

$$\text{Residue} = \lim_{z \rightarrow p_i} [(z - p_i) X(z) z^{n-1}]$$

### Types of Poles:

1. **Simple Poles:**  $(z - p_i)$
2. **Multiple Poles:**  $(z - p_i)^m$
3. **Complex Conjugate Poles:**  $(z - p_i)(z - p_i^*)$

**Residue Theorem:**

$$\oint X(z) z^{n-1} dz = 2\pi j \sum \text{residues of } X(z) z^{n-1}$$

**Steps:**

1. Identify poles of  $X(z)$
2. Calculate residues at each pole
3. Sum residues to find  $x[n]$

**Example:**

$$X(z) = (z + 1)/(z^2 - 3z + 2)$$

Poles:  $z = 1, z = 2$

$$\text{Residue at } z = 1: \lim_{z \rightarrow 1} [(z - 1) X(z) z^{n-1}] = 2$$

$$\text{Residue at } z = 2: \lim_{z \rightarrow 2} [(z - 2) X(z) z^{n-1}] = -1$$

$$x[n] = 2*(1)^n - 1*(2)^n$$

**Software Tools:**

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in residue function.
2. **Python:** `scipy.signal.residue` function.
3. **C++:** DSP libraries like `armcmsis`.
4. **Simulink:** Modeling and simulating dynamic systems.

**Research Areas:**

1. **Efficient Residue Calculation:** Improving computational efficiency.
2. **Residue-Based Filtering:** Designing filters using residues.
3. **Multidimensional Residues:** Extending residues to higher dimensions.

**Advantages:**

1. **Easy to Compute:** Residues are easy to calculate.
2. **Fast Computation:** Residue method is computationally efficient.
3. **Accurate Results:** Residue method provides accurate results.

**Limitations:**

1. **Pole Locations:** Poles must be known exactly.
2. **Complex Poles:** Complex poles require special handling.

3. **High-Order Systems:** Residue method can be cumbersome for high-order systems.

Inverse Z-Transform by Contour Integration Method:

**Definition:**

The Contour Integration Method is used to find the Inverse Z-Transform of  $X(z)$  by integrating  $X(z) z^{(n-1)}$  around a closed contour.

**Formula:**

$$x[n] = (1/2\pi j) \oint X(z) z^{(n-1)} dz$$

**Contour:**

The contour is a closed curve enclosing all poles of  $X(z)$ .

**Types of Contours:**

1. **Circular Contour:**  $|z| = R$
2. **Rectangular Contour:**  $z = x + jy$ ,  $x \in [a, b]$ ,  $y \in [c, d]$
3. **Hankel Contour:**  $z = re^{j\theta}$ ,  $\theta \in [0, 2\pi]$

**Steps:**

1. Choose contour
2. Evaluate  $X(z) z^{(n-1)}$  on contour
3. Integrate  $X(z) z^{(n-1)}$  around contour
4. Divide by  $2\pi j$

**Example:**

$$X(z) = (z + 1)/(z^2 - 3z + 2)$$

$$\text{Contour: } |z| = 2$$

$$\begin{aligned} x[n] &= (1/2\pi j) \oint X(z) z^{(n-1)} dz \\ &= (1/2\pi j) \oint (z + 1)/(z^2 - 3z + 2) z^{(n-1)} dz \\ &= 2*(1)^n - 1*(2)^n \end{aligned}$$

**Software Tools:**

1. **MATLAB:** Built-in contour function.
2. **Python:** `scipy.integrate.contour` function.
3. **C++:** DSP libraries like `armcmsis`.
4. **Simulink:** Modeling and simulating dynamic systems.

**Research Areas:**

1. **Efficient Contour Integration:** Improving computational efficiency.
2. **Contour-Based Filtering:** Designing filters using contour integration.
3. **Multidimensional Contour Integration:** Extending contour integration to higher dimensions.

**Advantages:**

1. **General Method:** Contour integration is a general method.
2. **Accurate Results:** Contour integration provides accurate results.
3. **Flexible Contour:** Contour can be chosen for convenience.

**Limitations:**

1. **Complex Computation:** Contour integration can be computationally complex.
2. **Pole Locations:** Poles must be known exactly.
3. **High-Order Systems:** Contour integration can be cumbersome for high-order systems.

## LEGENDRE POLYNOMIALS

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

### Definition:

Legendre Polynomials are a set of orthogonal polynomials defined on the interval  $[-1, 1]$ .

### Formula:

$$P_n(x) = \frac{1}{2^n n!} \frac{d^n}{dx^n} (x^2 - 1)^n$$

### Properties:

1. **Orthogonality:**  $\int_{-1,1} P_n(x) P_m(x) dx = 0, n \neq m$
2. **Normalization:**  $\int_{-1,1} P_n(x)^2 dx = 2/(2n + 1)$
3. **Symmetry:**  $P_n(-x) = (-1)^n P_n(x)$

### Recurrence Relations:

1.  $(n + 1) P_{n+1}(x) = (2n + 1) x P_n(x) - n P_{n-1}(x)$
2.  $P_n'(x) = n P_{n-1}(x) + x P_n'(x)$

### Differential Equation:

$$(1 - x^2) P_n''(x) - 2x P_n'(x) + n(n + 1) P_n(x) = 0$$

### Applications:

1. **Potential Theory:** Solving Laplace's equation.
2. **Electromagnetism:** Calculating electric and magnetic potentials.
3. **Quantum Mechanics:** Solving Schrödinger's equation.
4. **Signal Processing:** Filtering and analysis.

### Special Values:

1.  $P_0(x) = 1$

2.  $P_1(x) = x$
3.  $P_2(x) = (3x^2 - 1)/2$

#### Software Tools:

1. **MATLAB:** legendre function.
2. **Python:** scipy.special.legendre function.
3. **C++:** Special function libraries like boost.
4. **Mathematica:** LegendreP function.

#### Research Areas:

1. **Numerical Methods:** Efficient computation of Legendre Polynomials.
2. **Approximation Theory:** Using Legendre Polynomials for approximation.
3. **Differential Equations:** Solving differential equations using Legendre Polynomials.

#### Related Polynomials:

1. **Associated Legendre Polynomials:**  $P_{nm}(x) = (-1)^m (1 - x^2)^{m/2} d^m/dx^m P_n(x)$
2. **Spherical Harmonics:**  $Y_{nm}(\theta, \varphi) = N_{nm} P_{nm}(\cos \theta) e^{im\varphi}$

### Applications of Legendre Polynomials

:

#### Physics and Engineering:

1. **Electromagnetism:** Calculating electric and magnetic potentials.
2. **Potential Theory:** Solving Laplace's equation.
3. **Quantum Mechanics:** Solving Schrödinger's equation.
4. **Fluid Dynamics:** Modeling fluid flow and pressure.

#### Signal Processing:

1. **Filtering:** Designing filters using Legendre Polynomials.
2. **Signal Analysis:** Analyzing signals using Legendre Polynomials.
3. **Image Processing:** Image compression and reconstruction.

#### Mathematics:

1. **Approximation Theory:** Approximating functions using Legendre Polynomials.
2. **Numerical Analysis:** Solving numerical problems using Legendre Polynomials.
3. **Differential Equations:** Solving differential equations using Legendre Polynomials.

#### Geophysics:

1. **Gravity Field Modeling:** Modeling Earth's gravity field.
2. **Magnetic Field Modeling:** Modeling Earth's magnetic field.
3. **Seismology:** Modeling seismic waves.

#### **Computer Science:**

1. **Computer Graphics:** Modeling 3D objects using Legendre Polynomials.
2. **Machine Learning:** Using Legendre Polynomials in machine learning algorithms.
3. **Data Compression:** Compressing data using Legendre Polynomials.

#### **Other Applications:**

1. **Astronomy:** Modeling celestial bodies' potential fields.
2. **Biomedical Engineering:** Modeling bioelectric and biomagnetic fields.
3. **Materials Science:** Modeling material properties.

#### **Software Tools:**

1. **MATLAB:** legendre function.
2. **Python:** scipy.special.legendre function.
3. **C++:** Special function libraries like boost.
4. **Mathematica:** LegendreP function.

#### **Research Areas:**

1. **Fast Computation Methods:** Efficient computation of Legendre Polynomials.
2. **Approximation Theory:** Developing new approximation methods.
3. **Applications in Deep Learning:** Using Legendre Polynomials in deep learning.

#### **Real-World Examples:**

1. **GPS Technology:** Modeling Earth's gravity field.
2. **Medical Imaging:** Image reconstruction using Legendre Polynomials.
3. **Weather Forecasting:** Modeling atmospheric pressure.

#### **Applications of Legendre Polynomials:**

##### **Electromagnetism:**

1. **Electric Potential:** Calculating electric potential around charged particles.
2. **Magnetic Field:** Modeling magnetic fields in materials.

##### **Quantum Mechanics:**

1. **Schrödinger Equation:** Solving Schrödinger's equation for atomic systems.
2. **Wave Functions:** Modeling wave functions for quantum systems.



**Signal Processing:**

1. **Filter Design:** Designing filters using Legendre Polynomials.
2. **Signal Analysis:** Analyzing signals using Legendre Polynomials.

**Image Processing:**

1. **Image Compression:** Compressing images using Legendre Polynomials.
2. **Image Reconstruction:** Reconstructing images using Legendre Polynomials.

**Geophysics:**

1. **Gravity Field Modeling:** Modeling Earth's gravity field.
2. **Magnetic Field Modeling:** Modeling Earth's magnetic field.

**Computer Graphics:**

1. **3D Modeling:** Modeling 3D objects using Legendre Polynomials.
2. **Surface Reconstruction:** Reconstructing surfaces using Legendre Polynomials.

**Machine Learning:**

1. **Neural Networks:** Using Legendre Polynomials in neural networks.
2. **Regression Analysis:** Using Legendre Polynomials in regression analysis.

**Materials Science:**

1. **Material Properties:** Modeling material properties using Legendre Polynomials.
2. **Crystal Structures:** Modeling crystal structures using Legendre Polynomials.

**Biomedical Engineering:**

1. **Bioelectric Fields:** Modeling bioelectric fields using Legendre Polynomials.
2. **Biomagnetic Fields:** Modeling biomagnetic fields using Legendre Polynomials.

**Astronomy:**

1. **Celestial Mechanics:** Modeling celestial body motion using Legendre Polynomials.
2. **Potential Fields:** Modeling potential fields around celestial bodies.

**Software Tools:**

1. **MATLAB:** legendre function.
2. **Python:** scipy.special.legendre function.
3. **C++:** Special function libraries like boost.
4. **Mathematica:** LegendreP function.

**Research Areas:**

1. **Fast Computation Methods:** Efficient computation of Legendre Polynomials.

2. **Approximation Theory:** Developing new approximation methods.
3. **Applications in Deep Learning:** Using Legendre Polynomials in deep learning.

#### **Research Areas:**

1. **Numerical Methods:** Developing efficient numerical methods for computing Legendre Polynomials.
2. **Approximation Theory:** Investigating approximation properties of Legendre Polynomials.
3. **Differential Equations:** Applying Legendre Polynomials to solve differential equations.
4. **Machine Learning:** Exploring applications of Legendre Polynomials in machine learning.

#### **Applications:**

1. **Electromagnetic Simulation:** Using Legendre Polynomials to simulate electromagnetic fields.
2. **Quantum Computing:** Applying Legendre Polynomials to quantum computing algorithms.
3. **Image Processing:** Utilizing Legendre Polynomials for image compression and reconstruction.
4. **Materials Science:** Modeling material properties using Legendre Polynomials.

#### **Interdisciplinary Research:**

1. **Physics-Informed Neural Networks:** Combining Legendre Polynomials with neural networks for physical modeling.
2. **Computational Biology:** Applying Legendre Polynomials to model biological systems.
3. **Geophysical Imaging:** Using Legendre Polynomials for geophysical imaging and inversion.

#### **Emerging Trends:**

1. **Deep Learning:** Exploring applications of Legendre Polynomials in deep learning architectures.
2. **Artificial Intelligence:** Integrating Legendre Polynomials with AI algorithms.
3. **Quantum Information Processing:** Applying Legendre Polynomials to quantum information processing.

#### **Open Problems:**

1. **Efficient Computation:** Developing fast algorithms for computing Legendre Polynomials.
2. **Stability Analysis:** Investigating stability properties of Legendre Polynomials.
3. **Multiscale Modeling:** Applying Legendre Polynomials to multiscale modeling.

#### **Research Areas:**

1. **Physics-Informed Neural Networks (PINNs):** Using Legendre Polynomials to improve PINNs for solving forward and inverse problems.
2. **Deep Learning:** Exploring Legendre Polynomial-based deep learning architectures for image classification, segmentation, and reconstruction.
3. **Quantum Computing:** Applying Legendre Polynomials to quantum algorithms for simulating complex systems and optimizing quantum control.
4. **Multiscale Modeling:** Developing Legendre Polynomial-based multiscale models for materials science, biology, and fluid dynamics.

#### **Applications:**

1. **Electromagnetic Simulation:** Utilizing Legendre Polynomials for fast and accurate simulation of electromagnetic fields in complex media.
2. **Medical Imaging:** Applying Legendre Polynomials to improve image reconstruction and segmentation in MRI, CT, and PET.
3. **Materials Science:** Modeling material properties and behavior using Legendre Polynomials for applications in energy, aerospace, and biomedicine.
4. **Geophysical Imaging:** Using Legendre Polynomials for seismic imaging, inversion, and reservoir modeling.

### **Interdisciplinary Research:**

1. **Computational Biology:** Integrating Legendre Polynomials with machine learning for protein structure prediction and molecular dynamics.
2. **Climate Modeling:** Applying Legendre Polynomials to improve climate models and predict weather patterns.
3. **Financial Modeling:** Using Legendre Polynomials to model complex financial systems and predict market trends.

### **Emerging Trends:**

1. **Explainable AI (XAI):** Developing Legendre Polynomial-based XAI techniques for interpretable machine learning.
2. **Transfer Learning:** Exploring Legendre Polynomial-based transfer learning methods for improved model generalizability.
3. **Real-Time Processing:** Applying Legendre Polynomials to real-time signal processing and control systems.

### **Open Problems:**

1. **Scalability:** Developing efficient algorithms for large-scale Legendre Polynomial computations.
2. **Stability:** Investigating stability properties of Legendre Polynomials in various applications.
3. **Uncertainty Quantification:** Applying Legendre Polynomials to quantify uncertainty in simulations and predictions.

## BETA AND GAMMA FUNCTIONS

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

The Beta and Gamma functions are fundamental concepts in mathematics, particularly in calculus and probability theory.

### Gamma Function ( $\Gamma$ )

The Gamma function, denoted by  $\Gamma(z)$ , is an extension of the factorial function to real and complex numbers. It is defined as:

$$\Gamma(z) = \int_0^{\infty} t^{(z-1)} e^{-t} dt$$

for all complex numbers  $z$  with a positive real part.

Properties of  $\Gamma(z)$ :

1.  $\Gamma(z+1) = z\Gamma(z)$
2.  $\Gamma(1) = 1$
3.  $\Gamma(n) = (n-1)!$  for positive integers  $n$

### Beta Function (B)

The Beta function, denoted by  $B(x,y)$ , is defined as:

$$B(x,y) = \int_0^{\infty} t^{(x-1)} (1-t)^{(y-1)} dt$$

for all complex numbers  $x$  and  $y$  with positive real parts.

Properties of  $B(x,y)$ :

1.  $B(x,y) = B(y,x)$
2.  $B(x,y) = \Gamma(x)\Gamma(y) / \Gamma(x+y)$

Relationship between Beta and Gamma functions:

$$B(x,y) = \Gamma(x)\Gamma(y) / \Gamma(x+y)$$

This relationship allows us to express the Beta function in terms of the Gamma function.

### Applications

The Beta and Gamma functions have numerous applications in:

1. Probability theory (e.g., Bayesian statistics)
2. Statistics (e.g., hypothesis testing)
3. Calculus (e.g., integration, differentiation)
4. Number theory
5. Physics (e.g., quantum mechanics, thermodynamics)

Some special cases and identities involving Beta and Gamma functions include:

1. Euler's reflection formula:  $\Gamma(z)\Gamma(1-z) = \pi / \sin(\pi z)$
2. Legendre's duplication formula:  $\Gamma(z)\Gamma(z+1/2) = 2^{-(1-2z)} \sqrt{\pi} \Gamma(2z)$
3. Beta function identity:  $B(x,y) = \Gamma(x)\Gamma(y) / \Gamma(x+y)$

Would you like me to elaborate on any specific aspect of these functions or provide examples of their applications?

specific aspect of these functions or provide examples of their applications?

Here are some specific aspects and applications of the Beta and Gamma functions:

### **Gamma Function Applications**

1. **Factorial representation:**  $\Gamma(n) = (n-1)!$  for positive integers  $n$ .
2. **Probability distributions:** Gamma distribution, used in Bayesian statistics and reliability engineering.
3. **Stirling's approximation:**  $\Gamma(n+1) \approx \sqrt{(2\pi/n)} * (n/e)^n$  for large  $n$ .
4. **Quantum mechanics:** Gamma functions appear in calculations involving wave functions and energy levels.
5. **Thermodynamics:** Gamma functions are used in statistical mechanics to calculate partition functions.

### **Beta Function Applications**

1. **Probability distributions:** Beta distribution, used in Bayesian statistics and modeling.
2. **Hypothesis testing:** Beta functions are used in statistical tests, such as the F-test.
3. **Random variables:** Beta functions appear in the study of order statistics.
4. **Signal processing:** Beta functions are used in signal processing and filter design.
5. **Computer vision:** Beta functions are used in image processing and segmentation.

### **Special Cases and Identities**

1. **Euler's reflection formula:**  $\Gamma(z)\Gamma(1-z) = \pi / \sin(\pi z)$

2. **Legendre's duplication formula:**  $\Gamma(z)\Gamma(z+1/2) = 2^{-(1-2z)} \sqrt{\pi} \Gamma(2z)$
3. **Beta function identity:**  $B(x,y) = \Gamma(x)\Gamma(y) / \Gamma(x+y)$
4. **Gaussian integral:**  $\int_{(-\infty)}^{\infty} e^{-x^2} dx = \sqrt{\pi}$
5. **Raabe's formula:**  $\Gamma(z+1/2) = (2\pi)^{-1/2} 2^{z+1/2} \Gamma(z)$

### Numerical Computations

1. **Lanczos approximation:** A method for approximating the Gamma function.
2. **Stirling's series:** An asymptotic series expansion for the Gamma function.
3. **Spouge's approximation:** A fast algorithm for computing the Gamma function.

### Real-World Examples

1. **Finance:** Modeling stock prices using the Beta distribution.
2. **Engineering:** Reliability analysis using the Gamma distribution.
3. **Biology:** Modeling population growth using the Gamma distribution.
4. **Computer networks:** Modeling network traffic using the Beta distribution.
5. **Medical research:** Analyzing survival rates using the Gamma distribution.

Numerical computations involving the Gamma and Beta functions can be challenging due to their complex definitions. Here are some methods and resources for computing these functions:

### Gamma Function Computations

1. **Lanczos Approximation:** A method for approximating the Gamma function using a series expansion.
2. **Stirling's Series:** An asymptotic series expansion for the Gamma function.
3. **Spouge's Approximation:** A fast algorithm for computing the Gamma function.
4. **Gauss-Laguerre Quadrature:** A numerical integration method for computing the Gamma function.

### Beta Function Computations

1. **Gamma Function Relationship:** Use the relationship  $B(x,y) = \Gamma(x)\Gamma(y) / \Gamma(x+y)$  to compute the Beta function.
2. **Numerical Integration:** Use numerical integration methods, such as Simpson's rule or Gaussian quadrature.

3. **Approximations:** Use approximations, such as the logarithmic approximation or the asymptotic expansion.

### Software Libraries

1. **Python:** `scipy.special` (Gamma and Beta functions)
2. **R:** `gamma()` and `beta()` functions
3. **MATLAB:** `gamma()` and `beta()` functions
4. **NumPy:** `scipy.special` (Gamma and Beta functions)
5. **Boost Library (C++):** `boost::math::gamma` and `boost::math::beta`

### Code Examples

#### Python (using scipy)

Python

```
import scipy.special as sp
```

```
# Gamma function
```

```
x = 3.5
```

```
gamma_x = sp.gamma(x)
```

```
print(gamma_x)
```

```
# Beta function
```

```
x, y = 2.3, 4.5
```

```
beta_xy = sp.beta(x, y)
```

```
print(beta_xy)
```

**R**

R

```
# Gamma function
```

```
x <- 3.5
```

```
gamma_x <- gamma(x)
```

```
print(gamma_x)
```

```
# Beta function
```

```
x <- 2.3; y <- 4.5
```



```

beta_xy <- beta(x, y)
print(beta_xy)
MATLAB
Matlab
% Gamma function
x = 3.5;
gamma_x = gamma(x);
disp(gamma_x);

```

```

% Beta function
x = 2.3; y = 4.5;
beta_xy = beta(x, y);
disp(beta_xy);

```

### Numerical Stability

When computing the Gamma and Beta functions, numerical stability can be a concern, especially for large or small values of the input. Techniques to improve stability include:

1. **Scaling:** Scaling the input values to reduce overflow or underflow.
2. **Logarithmic computation:** Computing the logarithm of the function instead of the function itself.
3. **Asymptotic expansions:** Using asymptotic expansions to approximate the function for large or small values.

**Advanced topics in special functions, including generalized hypergeometric functions.**

### Generalized Hypergeometric Functions

The generalized hypergeometric function (GHF) is a generalization of the hypergeometric function.

#### Definition

$${}_pF_q(a_1, \dots, a_p; b_1, \dots, b_q; z) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(a_1)_k \dots (a_p)_k}{(b_1)_k \dots (b_q)_k} \frac{z^k}{k!}$$

where  $(a)_k$  is the Pochhammer symbol.

#### Properties

1. **Convergence:** The series converges for  $|z| < 1$ .

2. **Contiguous relations:** Relations between GHF with different parameters.
3. **Transformation formulas:** Relations between GHF with different arguments.

### Special Cases

1. **Hypergeometric function:**  ${}_2F_1(a, b; c; z)$
2. **Confluent hypergeometric function:**  ${}_1F_1(a; b; z)$
3. **Gaussian hypergeometric function:**  ${}_2F_1(a, b; c; z)$  with specific parameters

### Applications

1. **Quantum mechanics:** Solutions to the Schrödinger equation.
2. **Number theory:** Identities involving GHF.
3. **Algebraic geometry:** Properties of algebraic curves.

### Software Libraries

1. **Python:** mpmath library
2. **MATLAB:** hypergeom function
3. **Mathematica:** HypergeometricPFQ function

### Other Advanced Topics

#### 1. Elliptic Hypergeometric Functions

- Definition: Similar to GHF, but with elliptic functions.
- Applications: Number theory, algebraic geometry.

#### 2. q-Hypergeometric Functions

- Definition: GHF with q-shifted factorials.
- Applications: Quantum mechanics, combinatorics.

#### 3. Multiple Hypergeometric Functions

- Definition: GHF with multiple variables.
- Applications: Algebraic geometry, number theory.

#### 4. Orthogonal Polynomials

- Definition: Polynomials orthogonal with respect to a weight function.
- Applications: Approximation theory, numerical analysis.

### Code Examples

#### Python (using mpmath)

Python

```

import mpmath
Generalized hypergeometric function
def ghf(a, b, z):
    return mpmath.hypergeom(a, b, z)
a = [1, 2]
b = [3]
z = 0.5
result = ghf(a, b, z)
print(result)

```

## **MATLAB**

```

Matlab
% Generalized hypergeometric function
a = [1, 2];
b = [3];
z = 0.5;
result = hypergeom(a, b, z);
disp(result);

```

Would you like me to:

1. Provide more code examples?
2. Discuss numerical evaluation methods?
3. Explore applications in specific fields?
4. Introduce more advanced topics?

specific software libraries or tools

Here are some specific software libraries and tools for computing special functions, including the Gamma and Beta functions:

## **Programming Languages**

### **Python**

1. **Scipy**: scipy.special module
2. **Mpmath**: Arbitrary-precision floating-point arithmetic
3. **NumPy**: numpy.special module
4. **SymPy**: Symbolic mathematics library

1. **R Core**: Built-in special functions
2. **gsl**: Interface to the GNU Scientific Library
3. **Rmpfr**: Multiple-precision floating-point arithmetic

### **MATLAB**

1. **MATLAB Core**: Built-in special functions
2. **Symbolic Math Toolbox**: Symbolic mathematics
3. **Statistics Toolbox**: Statistical distributions

### **C++**

1. **Boost Library**: boost::math module
2. **GNU Scientific Library (GSL)**: Special functions
3. **Armadillo**: Linear algebra library with special functions

### **Numerical Libraries**

1. **GNU Scientific Library (GSL)**: Special functions
2. **CLAPACK**: Linear algebra library with special functions
3. **IMSL**: Numerical libraries with special functions

### **Symbolic Math Libraries**

1. **SymPy**: Python symbolic mathematics library
2. **Mathematica**: Commercial symbolic mathematics software
3. **Maple**: Commercial symbolic mathematics software

### **Online Tools**

1. **Wolfram Alpha**: Online calculator with special functions
2. **Symbolab**: Online calculator with special functions
3. **Mathway**: Online calculator with special functions

### **Specialized Libraries**

1. **ALGLIB**: Numerical analysis library with special functions
2. **NTL**: Number theory library with special functions
3. **PARI/GP**: Computer algebra system with special functions

# NUMERICAL ANALYSIS

**Dr.S.Subramanian**

*Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

Numerical methods for computing special functions, including the Gamma and Beta functions:

### Approximation Methods

1. **Asymptotic Expansions:** Approximate functions for large or small values.
2. **Series Expansions:** Approximate functions using Taylor or Laurent series.
3. **Pade Approximations:** Rational function approximations.
4. **Chebyshev Approximations:** Polynomial approximations.

### Numerical Integration

1. **Gaussian Quadrature:** Numerical integration using orthogonal polynomials.
2. **Simpson's Rule:** Numerical integration using parabolic interpolation.
3. **Romberg's Method:** Numerical integration using Richardson extrapolation.
4. **Monte Carlo Integration:** Statistical numerical integration.

### Root Finding

1. **Newton-Raphson Method:** Iterative root finding.
2. **Secant Method:** Iterative root finding.
3. **Bisection Method:** Iterative root finding.
4. **Inverse Quadratic Interpolation:** Iterative root finding.

### Specialized Algorithms

1. **Lanczos Approximation:** Fast algorithm for Gamma function.
2. **Spouge's Approximation:** Fast algorithm for Gamma function.
3. **Gauss-Laguerre Quadrature:** Numerical integration for Gamma function.
4. **Stirling's Approximation:** Asymptotic expansion for Gamma function.

### Software Implementation

1. **Python:** `scipy.special`, `mpmath`

2. **R**: gsl, Rmpfr
3. **MATLAB**: symbolic, stats
4. **C++**: boost::math, GSL

### Numerical Stability

1. **Scaling**: Avoid overflow/underflow.
2. **Logarithmic Computation**: Compute logarithm instead of function.
3. **Argument Reduction**: Reduce argument range.
4. **Error Analysis**: Estimate numerical errors.

### Code Examples

#### Python (using scipy)

Python

```
import scipy.special as sp
```

```
# Lanczos approximation for Gamma function
```

```
def lanczos_gamma(x):
```

```
    p = [0.9999999999980993, 676.5203681218851, -1259.1392167224028,
         771.32342877765313, -176.61502916214059, 12.507343278686905,
         -0.13857109526572012, 9.9843695780195716e-6, 1.5056327351493116e-7]
```

```
    if x < 0.5:
```

```
        return np.pi / (np.sin(np.pi*x) * lanczos_gamma(1-x))
```

```
    else:
```

```
        z = 1 / (x * (x+1))
```

```
        t = p[0]
```

```
        for i in range(1, len(p)):
```

```
            t += p[i] / (x+i)
```

```
        t *= np.sqrt(2*np.pi) * x**(x-0.5) * np.exp(-x)
```

```
        return t
```

```
x = 3.5
```

```
result = lanczos_gamma(x)
```

```
print(result)
```

## **Python (using scipy)**

Python

```
import scipy.special as sp
```

```
# Compute Gamma function
```

```
x = 3.5
```

```
result = sp.gamma(x)
```

```
print(result)
```

**R**

R

```
# Compute Gamma function
```

```
x <- 3.5
```

```
result <- gamma(x)
```

```
print(result)
```

**MATLAB**

Matlab

```
% Compute Gamma function
```

```
x = 3.5;
```

```
result = gamma(x);
```

```
disp(result);
```

**C++ (using Boost)**

C++

```
#include <boost/math/special_functions/gamma.hpp>
```

```
int main() {
```

```
    double x = 3.5;
```

```
    double result = boost::math::gamma(x);
```

```
    std::cout << result << std::endl;
```

```
    return 0;
```

```
}
```

**Beta Function**

## **Python (using scipy)**

Python

```
import scipy.special as sp
```

```
# Compute Beta function
```

```
x = 2.3
```

```
y = 4.5
```

```
result = sp.beta(x, y)
```

```
print(result)
```

## **R**

R

```
# Compute Beta function
```

```
x <- 2.3
```

```
y <- 4.5
```

```
result <- beta(x, y)
```

```
print(result)
```

## **MATLAB**

Matlab

```
% Compute Beta function
```

```
x = 2.3;
```

```
y = 4.5;
```

```
result = beta(x, y);
```

```
disp(result);
```

## **C++ (using Boost)**

C++

```
#include <boost/math/special_functions/beta.hpp>
```

```
int main() {
```

```
    double x = 2.3;
```

```
    double y = 4.5;
```

```
    double result = boost::math::beta(x, y);
```



```
std::cout << result << std::endl;
return 0;
}
```

### **Error Function (erf)**

#### **Python (using scipy)**

Python

```
import scipy.special as sp
```

```
# Compute error function
```

```
x = 1.2
```

```
result = sp.erf(x)
```

```
print(result)
```

#### **R**

R

```
# Compute error function
```

```
x <- 1.2
```

```
result <- erf(x)
```

```
print(result)
```

#### **MATLAB**

Matlab

```
% Compute error function
```

```
x = 1.2;
```

```
result = erf(x);
```

```
disp(result);
```

#### **C++ (using Boost)**

C++

```
#include <boost/math/special_functions/error_function.hpp>
```

```
int main() {
```

```
    double x = 1.2;
```

```
    double result = boost::math::erf(x);
```

```
std::cout << result << std::endl;
return 0;
}
```

## **Bessel Functions**

### **Python (using scipy)**

Python

```
import scipy.special as sp
```

```
# Compute Bessel function
```

```
x = 2.5
```

```
nu = 1.2
```

```
result = sp.jv(nu, x)
```

```
print(result)
```

### **R**

R

```
# Compute Bessel function
```

```
x <- 2.5
```

```
nu <- 1.2
```

```
result <- besselJ(nu, x)
```

```
print(result)
```

### **MATLAB**

Matlab

```
% Compute Bessel function
```

```
x = 2.5;
```

```
nu = 1.2;
```

```
result = besselj(nu, x);
```

```
disp(result);
```

### **C++ (using Boost)**

C++

```
#include <boost/math/special_functions/bessel.hpp>
```

```
int main() {  
    double x = 2.5;  
    double nu = 1.2;  
    double result = boost::math::cyl_bessel_j(nu, x);  
    std::cout << result << std::endl;  
    return 0;  
}
```

Numerical stability techniques to ensure accurate computations:

### **Scaling**

1. Avoid overflow/underflow by scaling inputs.
2. Use logarithmic scaling for large values.

### **Argument Reduction**

1. Reduce argument range for trigonometric functions.
2. Use symmetry properties for reflection.

### **Error Analysis**

1. Estimate numerical errors using Taylor series.
2. Analyze rounding errors.

### **Numerical Cancellation**

1. Avoid subtracting similar numbers.
2. Use Kahan summation algorithm.

### **Rounding Control**

1. Use rounding-to-nearest mode.
2. Avoid rounding-to-zero mode.

### **Conditional Number**

1. Analyze condition number for sensitivity.
2. Use preconditioning for ill-conditioned systems.

### **Code Examples**

#### **Scaling (Python)**

Python

```
import numpy as np
```

```

def scaled_gamma(x):
    # Scale input to avoid overflow
    x_scaled = x / 100
    result = np.gamma(x_scaled) * (100**x_scaled)
    return result

```

```

x = 1000
result = scaled_gamma(x)
print(result)

```

### **Argument Reduction (MATLAB)**

Matlab

```

function result = reduced_sin(x)
    % Reduce argument range
    x_reduced = mod(x, 2*pi);
    result = sin(x_reduced);
end

```

```

x = 1000*pi;
result = reduced_sin(x);
disp(result);

```

### **Error Analysis (C++)**

C++

```
#include <cmath>
```

```
#include <iostream>
```

```

double error_analysis(double x) {
    // Estimate numerical error using Taylor series
    double error = std::pow(x, 2) / 2;
    return error;
}

```

```

int main() {
    double x = 0.1;
    double error = error_analysis(x);
    std::cout << "Error: " << error << std::endl;
    return 0;
}

```

### **Kahan Summation (Python)**

Python

```
import numpy as np
```

```
def kahan_sum(x):
```

```
    sum = 0
```

```
    c = 0
```

```
    for i in x:
```

```
        y = i - c
```

```
        t = sum + y
```

```
        c = (t - sum) - y
```

```
        sum = t
```

```
    return sum
```

```
x = np.array([1e-16, 1e-17, 1e-18])
```

```
result = kahan_sum(x)
```

```
print(result)
```

Comparison of performance of different algorithms for computing special functions:

## Criteria

1. **Accuracy:** Precision and correctness.
2. **Speed:** Execution time.
3. **Stability:** Numerical stability.
4. **Memory usage:** Memory requirements.

## Algorithms

1. **Lanczos Approximation:** Fast and accurate for Gamma function.
2. **Spouge's Approximation:** Fast and accurate for Gamma function.
3. **Gauss-Laguerre Quadrature:** Accurate for Gamma function.
4. **Stirling's Approximation:** Fast but less accurate for Gamma function.

## Results

Algorithm	Accuracy	Speed	Stability	Memory usage
Lanczos	High	Fast	Good	Low
Spouge	High	Fast	Good	Low
Gauss-Laguerre	High	Medium	Good	Medium
Stirling	Medium	Fast	Poor	Low

## Code Examples

### Lanczos Approximation (Python)

Python

```
import numpy as np
```

```
def lanczos_gamma(x):
```

```
    # Lanczos coefficients
```

```
    p = [0.9999999999980993, 676.5203681218851, -1259.1392167224028,  
         771.32342877765313, -176.61502916214059, 12.507343278686905,         -0.13857109526572012, 9.9843695780195716e-6, 1.5056327351493116e-7]
```

```
    # Compute Gamma function
```

```
    z = 1 / (x * (x+1))
```

```
    t = p[0]
```

```
    for i in range(1, len(p)):
```

```

    t += p[i] / (x+i)
t *= np.sqrt(2*np.pi) * x**(x-0.5) * np.exp(-x)
return t

```

```

x = 3.5
result = lanczos_gamma(x)
print(result)

```

### Spouge's Approximation (MATLAB)

Matlab

```

function result = spouge_gamma(x)
    % Spouge coefficients
    p = [0.9999999999980993, 676.5203681218851, -1259.1392167224028,
        771.32342877765313, -176.61502916214059, 12.507343278686905,
        -0.13857109526572012, 9.9843695780195716e-6, 1.5056327351493116e-7];
    % Compute Gamma function
    z = 1 / (x * (x+1));
    t = p(1);
    for i = 2:length(p)
        t = t + p(i) / (x+i-1);
    end
    t = t * sqrt(2*pi) * x^(x-0.5) * exp(-x);
    result = t;
end

```

```

x = 3.5;
result = spouge_gamma(x);
disp(result);

```

### Gauss-Laguerre Quadrature (C++)

C++

```

#include <cmath>
#include <iostream>

```

```

double gauss_laguerre_gamma(double x) {
    // Gauss-Laguerre coefficients
    double x_nodes[] = {-0.9061798459386640, -0.5384693101056831,
                        0.0000000000000000, 0.5384693101056831,
                        0.9061798459386640};
    double w_nodes[] = {0.2369268850561891, 0.4786286704993665,
                        0.5688888888888889, 0.4786286704993665,
                        0.2369268850561891};

    // Compute Gamma function
    double sum = 0;
    for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++) {
        sum += w_nodes[i] * exp(-x_nodes[i]) / (x_nodes[i] + x);
    }
    return sum;
}

int main() {
    double x = 3.5;
    double result = gauss_laguerre_gamma(x);
    std::cout << "Result: " << result << std::endl;
    return 0;
}

```

Specialized functions:

### Orthogonal Polynomials

1. Legendre Polynomials ( $P_n(x)$ )
2. Chebyshev Polynomials ( $T_n(x)$ ,  $U_n(x)$ )
3. Hermite Polynomials ( $H_n(x)$ )
4. Laguerre Polynomials ( $L_n(x)$ )

### Elliptic Functions



1. Jacobi Elliptic Functions ( $\text{sn}(u)$ ,  $\text{cn}(u)$ ,  $\text{dn}(u)$ )
2. Weierstrass Elliptic Functions ( $\wp(u)$ ,  $\wp'(u)$ )

### Hypergeometric Functions

1. Gaussian Hypergeometric Function ( ${}_2F_1(a, b; c; z)$ )
2. Confluent Hypergeometric Function ( ${}_1F_1(a; b; z)$ )
3. Generalized Hypergeometric Function ( ${}_pF_q(a_1, \dots, a_p; b_1, \dots, b_q; z)$ )

### Bessel Functions

1. Bessel Functions of the First Kind ( $J_n(x)$ )
2. Bessel Functions of the Second Kind ( $Y_n(x)$ )
3. Modified Bessel Functions ( $I_n(x)$ ,  $K_n(x)$ )

### Spherical Harmonics

1. Spherical Harmonics ( $Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi)$ )
2. Associated Legendre Polynomials ( $P_{lm}(x)$ )

### Code Examples

#### Legendre Polynomials (Python)

Python

```
import numpy as np
```

```
def legendre_polynomial(n, x):
    # Compute Legendre polynomial
    P = [1, x]
    for k in range(2, n+1):
        P.append(((2*k-1)*x*P[k-1] - (k-1)*P[k-2]) / k)
    return P[n]
```

```
n = 5
```

```
x = 0.5
```

```
result = legendre_polynomial(n, x)
```

```
print(result)
```

#### Jacobi Elliptic Functions (MATLAB)

Matlab

```
function [sn, cn, dn] = jacobi_elliptic(u, m)
    % Compute Jacobi elliptic functions
    [sn, cn, dn] = ellipj(u, m);
end
```

```
u = 1.2;
m = 0.5;
[sn, cn, dn] = jacobi_elliptic(u, m);
disp([sn, cn, dn]);
```

### **Gaussian Hypergeometric Function (C++)**

C++

```
#include <cmath>
```

```
#include <iostream>
```

```
double gaussian_hypergeometric(double a, double b, double c, double z) {
    // Compute Gaussian hypergeometric function
    double sum = 0;
    for (int k = 0; k < 100; k++) {
        sum += (gamma(a+k)*gamma(b+k)) / (gamma(c+k)*gamma(k+1)) * pow(z, k);
    }
    return sum;
}

int main() {
    double a = 1.2;
    double b = 2.3;
    double c = 3.4;
    double z = 0.5;
    double result = gaussian_hypergeometric(a, b, c, z);
    std::cout << "Result: " << result << std::endl;
    return 0;
}
```

# POINTERS IN C

Edited by  
**DR.S.SRINIVASAN**



978-93-6255-585-2

Pointer in C  
Copyright © 2019 by Dr. S. Srinivasan

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-505-2

Publisher: PonnaIyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology  
(PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1: Pointer Syntax and Declaration.....1 G. Gayathri	1
CHAPTER 2: Incrementing and decrementing pointers.....2 P. Sakila	2
CHAPTER 3: Pointers and Functions.....3 D.S. Chozhabharathi	3
CHAPTER 4 Array-Pointer Equivalence .....4 G. Gayathri	4
CHAPTER 5: "Accessing Structure Members through Pointers) .....5 R. Suganya	5
CHAPTER 6: Pointers in Data Structures: Linked Lists and Trees.....6 R. Rajayogeswari	6
CHAPTER 7: Pointers in Embedded Systems.....7 R. Selvakumar	7

# CHAPTER 1

## POINTER SYNTAX AND DECLARATION

### G. Gayathri

Assistant Professor Department of Computer Science  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science  
and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

In this chapter, we will explore the syntax of pointers in C, their declaration, and how they are used. Understanding how to declare and initialize pointers is foundational for utilizing them effectively in programming.

A **pointer** is a variable that stores the memory address of another variable. Instead of holding data directly, pointers "point" to the location in memory where the actual data is stored.

Pointers are variables that store memory addresses. Declaring and using pointers requires a specific syntax. This chapter covers the basics of pointer declaration, syntax, and initialization.

#### Pointer Initialization

Pointers can be initialized using the address-of operator (&).

```
int x = 10;  
int *ptr = &x; // Initialize ptr with the address of x
```

The size of a pointer typically depends on the system architecture (32-bit or 64-bit). Regardless of the data type a pointer points to (e.g., int, char, float), the size of the pointer itself (the memory address) is constant across a given platform.

On a 32-bit system, a pointer is generally 4 bytes.

On a 64-bit system, a pointer is generally 8 bytes.

A NULL pointer is a pointer that doesn't point to any valid memory location. It's a good practice to initialize pointers to NULL if you don't have a specific address to assign immediately, as dereferencing a NULL pointer causes undefined behavior (often a crash).

In this chapter, we've learned how to declare and initialize pointers, and how to use them correctly in C. Understanding pointer syntax is crucial for manipulating memory addresses and dynamic memory allocation in C programs. Proper pointer usage, avoiding wild pointers, and knowing when to use NULL pointers can help you write safe and efficient C code.

## CHAPTER 2

# INCREMENTING AND DECREMENTING POINTERS

P. Sakila

Assistant Professor Department of Computer Science  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science  
and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

In this chapter, we will explore the concept of pointer arithmetic, specifically focusing on **incrementing** and **decrementing** pointers in C. Pointer arithmetic is powerful and allows you to navigate through arrays or memory blocks efficiently. Understanding how pointers change when incremented or decremented is essential for working with dynamic memory and arrays in C.

Pointer arithmetic refers to the operations you can perform on pointers, such as incrementing (`++`), decrementing (`--`), adding or subtracting integers, and comparing pointers. When a pointer is incremented or decremented, it moves to the next or previous memory location based on the size of the data type it points to.

### Pointer Arithmetic Basics

In C, the size of the data type a pointer points to determines how much the pointer will move when incremented or decremented. For example:

**Incrementing a pointer (`ptr++`):** The pointer moves to the next memory location that can store the same data type.

**Decrementing a pointer (`ptr--`):** The pointer moves to the previous memory location that can store the same data type.

The pointer will increase or decrease by the size of the type it points to (in bytes).

### How Pointer Arithmetic Works

When performing pointer arithmetic, the pointer's value is adjusted by the size of the data type it points to. This is determined by the following:

Pointers can be incremented or decremented using arithmetic operations. This chapter covers the rules and behavior of pointer increment and decrement operations.

In this chapter, we've explored the concept of incrementing and decrementing pointers in C, which allows you to efficiently traverse arrays and work with memory. Pointer arithmetic provides a powerful way to manipulate data directly at the memory level. However, it's important to use it carefully and ensure that you stay within the bounds of the allocated memory to avoid errors and undefined behavior.

## CHAPTER 3 POINTERS AND FUNCTIONS

**D.S. Chozhabharathi**

Assistant Professor Department of Computer Science

Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science

and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

In this chapter, we will explore the relationship between **pointers and functions** in C. Pointers can be passed to functions, returned from functions, and used to create more dynamic and flexible code. Understanding how pointers work with functions enables more efficient memory usage and is a key skill when writing C programs.

Passing Pointers to Functions in C, when you pass variables to a function by value, the function receives a copy of the variable. Any modifications made to the copy inside the function do not affect the original variable. However, by passing a **pointer** to a function, you pass the address of the variable, allowing the function to modify the original variable.

**Modifying variables directly:** The primary advantage of passing pointers is that the function can modify the actual value of the variable passed in.

**Efficient for large data structures:** Passing large data structures like arrays by value creates a copy, which can be inefficient. Passing a pointer to the data instead avoids copying and is faster.

Function Pointers C allows the use of **pointers to functions**, which means that a pointer can be used to store the address of a function. Function pointers are useful in cases like implementing callback functions, passing functions as arguments, or creating dynamic function dispatching.

Just as you can pass pointers to functions, you can also return pointers from functions. This is useful when dynamically allocating memory within a function or returning references to data structures.

**Returning a Pointer from a Function** When a function returns a pointer, it should return the address of a valid memory location. Returning the address of a local variable can cause undefined behavior because local variables are destroyed once the function exits.

In this chapter, we've explored how pointers work with functions in C, including passing pointers to functions, returning pointers from functions, and using function pointers. Pointers give functions the ability to directly manipulate memory, pass large data efficiently, and execute dynamic behavior through function pointers. Proper understanding of how pointers interact with functions is crucial for writing efficient and flexible C programs.



## CHAPTER 4 ARRAY-POINTER EQUIVALENCE

**G. Gayathri**

Assistant Professor Department of Computer Science  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science  
and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

In C programming, arrays and pointers are fundamental concepts that are closely related, and understanding their equivalence is crucial for effective memory management and manipulation of data structures. This chapter explores how arrays and pointers relate to one another, highlighting their similarities and differences, as well as practical applications.

**Arrays** are collections of elements of the same type stored in contiguous memory locations. A pointer is a variable that holds the address of a memory location. The close relationship between arrays and pointers allows for a versatile approach to accessing and manipulating data.

While arrays and pointers are closely related, they are not interchangeable. Here are some key differences:

**Memory Allocation:** Arrays are statically allocated, meaning their size must be defined at compile time. Pointers can be dynamically allocated using functions like `malloc ()`.

c

```
int arr [5]; // Statically allocated array
int *ptr = (int *) malloc (5 * size of (int)); // Dynamically allocated memory
```

Understanding the equivalence between arrays and pointers is essential for effective programming in C. Key points include:

- **Array names act as pointers** to the first element.
- **Pointer arithmetic** allows for efficient access and manipulation of array elements.
- Arrays are fixed in size and cannot be reassigned, while pointers are flexible and can point to various memory locations.
- When passing arrays to functions, they decay to pointers, allowing for direct memory manipulation.

You can also create arrays of pointers, where each element points to a different variable or data structure. This is useful for handling strings or managing dynamic data.

## CHAPTER 5 ACCESSING STRUCTURE MEMBERS THROUGH POINTERS)

**R. Suganya**

Assistant Professor Department of Computer Science

Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science

and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

C programming, structures are used to group different types of data together. When working with structures, it's common to access their members using pointers. This chapter explores how to define structures, create pointers to structures, and access structure members through these pointers.

### Understanding Structures

A **structure** in C is a user-defined data type that allows the combination of data items of different kinds. A structure is defined using the struct keyword, and it can contain various data types, including arrays and other structures.

Pointers can be used to point to a structure variable. This is useful when you want to modify the structure data without making a copy of the entire structure.

When accessing members of a structure through a pointer, you cannot use the dot (.) operator directly. Instead, you must use the **arrow (->) operator**, which is specifically designed for this purpose.

Here, malloc () is used to allocate memory for a Student structure, and the pointer ptr is used to access and modify its members.

In C programming, structures are user-defined data types that allow the grouping of different data types into a single unit. When dealing with structures, pointers provide a powerful way to access and manipulate their members. To use a pointer with a structure, you declare a pointer variable of the structure type and assign it the address of a structure instance. Structure members can then be accessed using the arrow (->) operator, which dereferences the pointer and accesses the member in a single step.

This approach is particularly useful for modifying structure data without copying the entire structure. Additionally, dynamic memory allocation with malloc () allows for flexible management of structures, enabling the creation of data structures such as linked lists, where pointers within structures point to other structures. Understanding how to effectively use pointers with structures enhances the efficiency and organization of C programs.

# CHAPTER 6

## POINTERS IN DATA STRUCTURES: LINKED LISTS AND TREES

### R. Rajayogeswari

Assistant Professor Department of Computer Science  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science  
and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

Pointers play a crucial role in implementing dynamic data structures like linked lists and trees in C programming. A **linked list** is a linear data structure where each element, called a node, contains data and a pointer to the next node. This allows for efficient insertion and deletion operations, as nodes can be easily added or removed without reorganizing the entire structure.

The first node is typically referenced by a pointer called the head, while the last node points to NULL to signify the end of the list.

**Trees**, on the other hand, are hierarchical data structures consisting of nodes, where each node has a value and pointers to its children. The top node is called the root, and each node can have multiple child nodes, forming a branching structure. Binary trees, a common type of tree, restrict each node to have at most two children, referred to as the left and right child.

Pointers facilitate the dynamic allocation of nodes in both linked lists and trees, allowing for flexible memory usage and the ability to grow or shrink these structures as needed. By leveraging pointers, programmers can create complex data structures that are efficient for various computational tasks, such as searching and sorting.

Pointers are fundamental in implementing dynamic data structures in C, such as linked lists and trees. They enable the creation and manipulation of these structures without the need for contiguous memory allocation, allowing for efficient data handling and dynamic memory management. This in-depth exploration examines how pointers are used in linked lists and trees, highlighting their significance and functionality.

A linked list is a linear data structure consisting of nodes, where each node contains two main components: data and a pointer to the next node in the sequence. This structure provides flexibility in managing memory and allows for dynamic resizing, making it an ideal choice for applications where the number of elements is not known in advance.

By mastering pointers in the context of these data structures, programmers can create more flexible and efficient applications capable of handling various data management tasks.

# **CHAPTER 7**

## **POINTERS IN EMBEDDED SYSTEMS**

### **R. Selvakumar**

Assistant Professor Department of Computer Science  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science  
and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

Pointers are a fundamental feature in C programming, particularly in embedded systems, where efficient memory management and direct hardware manipulation are crucial. In embedded systems, resources such as memory and processing power are often limited, making pointers invaluable for accessing and managing hardware registers and peripheral devices.

They allow developers to work directly with memory addresses, enabling low-level programming and manipulation of specific bits or bytes in memory, which is essential for tasks like configuring microcontroller peripherals. Furthermore, pointers facilitate dynamic memory allocation, enabling the creation of flexible data structures such as linked lists and arrays that can adapt to varying memory requirements.

This adaptability is especially important in embedded systems, where different applications may require different amounts of memory. Additionally, using pointers can enhance performance by reducing overhead, as passing pointers to functions avoids the need to copy large data structures. Overall, the effective use of pointers in embedded systems leads to more efficient code, better resource utilization, and improved control over hardware, which are critical for developing reliable and responsive embedded applications.

In embedded systems, pointers are essential for efficient memory management and direct hardware manipulation. They allow programmers to access specific memory addresses, enabling low-level interactions with hardware registers and peripheral devices, which is critical for configuring microcontroller functionalities. Pointers also support dynamic memory allocation, facilitating the creation of adaptable data structures like linked lists and arrays that can accommodate varying memory needs.

This adaptability is particularly important in resource-constrained environments. Additionally, pointers enhance performance by allowing large data structures to be passed to functions without copying, thereby reducing overhead.

Overall, the effective use of pointers in embedded systems leads to improved resource utilization and better control over hardware, contributing to the development of reliable and efficient applications.

Pointers are a foundational concept in C programming and play a critical role in embedded systems, where direct hardware interaction and efficient memory management are paramount. This chapter explores the significance of pointers in embedded systems, their applications, and their impact on performance and resource utilization.



○ ○ ○ ○

# ARRAYS IN C



Edited by  
R. BANUMATHI  
J



978-93-6255-491-8

Arrays in C  
Copyright © 2019 by R. Banumathi

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-491-8

Publisher: PonnaIyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology  
(PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1: Array Basics: Declaration, Initialization, and Access.....1 R. Idayathulla	1
CHAPTER 2: Array Input/output Operations .....2 P. Sakila	2
CHAPTER 3: Dynamic Memory Allocation for Arrays.....3 D.S. Chozhabharathi	3
CHAPTER 4 Arrays in Data Structures (Stacks, Queues, Trees) .....4 G. Gayathri	4
CHAPTER 5: Array-Based Data Structures (Hash Tables, Graphs) .....5 R. Suganya	5
CHAPTER 6: Array-Related Functions in the C Standard Library.....6 R. Rajayogeswari	6
CHAPTER 7: Advanced Array Visualization Techniques.....7 R. Selvakumar	7

# CHAPTER 1

## ARRAY BASICS: DECLARATION, INITIALIZATION, AND ACCESS

### R. Idayathulla

Assistant Professor Department of Computer Science  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science  
and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

Arrays in C are a fundamental data structure used to store collections of elements (of the same data type) in contiguous memory locations. This chapter will guide you through the basics of arrays: their declaration, initialization, and accessing their elements.

Arrays in C are a fundamental data structure used to store collections of elements (of the same data type) in contiguous memory locations. This chapter will guide you through the basics of arrays: their declaration, initialization, and accessing their elements.

In C, we have to declare the array like any other variable before using it. We can declare an array by specifying its name, the type of its elements, and the size of its dimensions. When we declare an array in C, the compiler allocates the memory block of the specified size to the array name.

In C, we have to declare the array like any other variable before using it. We can declare an array by specifying its name, the type of its elements, and the size of its dimensions. When we declare an array in C, the compiler allocates the memory block of the specified size to the array name.

Arrays allow you to store multiple items of the same type together, making it easier to manage and work with large sets of data. This guide will walk you through the basics of arrays in C, from creation to manipulation, with plenty of examples along the way.

#### **Inserting Elements into an Array**

Inserting an element into an array involves these steps:

1. Choose where to insert the new element
2. Move existing elements to make space
3. Insert the new element
4. Update the array size if necessary

This chapter provides a comprehensive introduction to array basics in C, covering declaration, initialization, and access. It sets the stage for more advanced array topics and applications.



## CHAPTER 2 ARRAY INPUT/OUTPUT OPERATIONS

**P. Sakila**

Assistant Professor Department of Computer Science  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science  
and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

In C programming, arrays are often used to store and process data collected from user input or external sources. This chapter focuses on performing input/output operations on arrays, including reading data into arrays and displaying array elements.

Input (Reading Elements into an Array)

To read values into an array, you can use loops (usually for or while) in combination with standard input functions like scanf. This allows you to collect multiple values from the user and store them in the array.

Output (Displaying Elements of an Array)

To display the contents of an array, you can use a loop to print each element using printf. You iterate through the array and print each value based on its index.

**Input with Arrays:** Use loops with scanf to read values into arrays.

**Output with Arrays:** Use loops with printf to display array contents.

**Multi-dimensional Arrays:** Nested loops are used for input/output of multi-dimensional arrays like matrices.

An operator in C can be defined as the symbol that helps us to perform some specific mathematical, relational, bitwise, conditional, or logical computations on values and variables. The values and variables used with operators are called operands. So we can say that the operators are the symbols that perform operations on operands.

An **array data structure** is a fundamental concept in computer science that stores a collection of elements in a contiguous block of memory. It allows for efficient access to elements using indices and is widely used in programming for organizing and manipulating data.

This chapter covers the essential concepts and techniques for performing array input/output operations in C.

## CHAPTER 3 DYNAMIC MEMORY ALLOCATION FOR ARRAYS

**D.S. Chozhabharathi**

Assistant Professor Department of Computer Science

Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science

and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

In C programming, arrays have a fixed size when declared, which can be limiting if you need to allocate memory at runtime. Dynamic memory allocation allows you to allocate and resize memory for arrays during program execution, providing greater flexibility. This chapter covers how to dynamically allocate memory for arrays using standard library functions like malloc, calloc, realloc, and free.

### Static vs Dynamic Memory Allocation

**Static Memory Allocation:** The size of the array is determined at compile time and cannot be changed during runtime. For example:

```
c  
Copy code  
in numbers [10]; // Static array, size is fixed at 10 elements
```

**Dynamic Memory Allocation:** Memory is allocated at runtime, allowing the array size to be flexible. Dynamic memory is typically allocated from the heap using functions like malloc and calloc.

After memory allocation using malloc or calloc, the allocated memory acts like an array. You can access and manipulate elements using the pointer as an array.

realloc allows you to change the size of previously allocated memory. It can shrink or expand the array dynamically.

Dynamic Memory Allocation Functions

- malloc (): allocating memory blocks
- calloc (): allocating and initializing memory blocks
- realloc (): resizing memory blocks
- free (): releasing memory blocks

This chapter covers the essential concepts and techniques for dynamic memory allocation for arrays in C.

# CHAPTER 4

## ARRAYS IN DATA STRUCTURES (STACKS, QUEUES, TREES)

### G. Gayathri

Assistant Professor Department of Computer Science  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science  
and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

Arrays serve as a foundation for implementing many data structures like **stacks**, **queues**, and **trees**. This chapter explores how arrays are used to create and manage these common data structures, along with their operations and behavior.

A **stack** is a data structure that follows the **LIFO (Last in, First Out)** principle, where the last element added is the first to be removed. Stacks are commonly implemented using arrays because of their fixed size and ease of access.

Basic Operations on Stacks:

1. **Push**: Add an element to the top of the stack.
2. **Pop**: Remove the element from the top of the stack.
3. **Peek/Top**: View the top element without removing it.
4. **Is Empty**: Check if the stack is empty.
5. **Is Full**: Check if the stack is full (for a fixed-size stack).

element added is the first to be removed. Queues can also be implemented using arrays, with operations performed at both the front and rear of the array.

A **tree** is a hierarchical data structure consisting of nodes, where each node has a value and references to its child nodes. A **binary tree** is a common type where each node has at most two children. Arrays can be used to represent binary trees efficiently, particularly **complete binary trees**.

Array-Based Implementation of Common Data Structures

- Array-based implementation of graphs
- Array-based implementation of heaps
- Array-based implementation of hash tables

Arrays provide a simple, efficient way to implement data structures like **stacks**, **queues**, and **trees**. **Stacks** follow the LIFO principle and are implemented using a single pointer (top) to track the last element. **Queues** follow the FIFO principle and use two pointers (front and rear) for element insertion and deletion. **Binary Trees** can be represented in arrays using relationships between parent and child indices. **Heaps**, a special type of binary tree, are often implemented using arrays due to their complete structure.

## CHAPTER 5

### ARRAY-BASED DATA STRUCTURES (HASH TABLES, GRAPHS)

**R. Suganya**

Assistant Professor Department of Computer Science  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science  
and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

Arrays form the backbone of several advanced data structures like **hash tables** and **graphs**. These structures are essential for efficiently solving complex computational problems. In this chapter, we explore how arrays are used in the implementation of hash tables and graph representations.

Arrays are foundational data structures that are often used to implement more complex data structures like **hash tables** and **graphs**. These array-based implementations are efficient and easy to understand, providing fast access and manipulation of data. This chapter explains how arrays are used to implement **hash tables** and **graphs**, along with their key operations and advantages.

A **hash table** is a data structure that stores key-value pairs. It uses a **hash function** to map keys to positions (or indices) in an array. Hash tables provide fast access to elements, typically in constant time, making them very efficient for search, insert, and delete operations.

When two keys map to the same index, it's called a **collision**. There are several techniques to handle collisions:

**Chaining:** Each index of the array holds a linked list to store multiple elements that hash to the same index.

**Open Addressing:** When a collision occurs, the hash table looks for the next available slot (using methods like linear probing or quadratic probing).

A **hash table** is a data structure that stores key-value pairs and allows for fast data retrieval using a hash function. The hash function maps keys to specific indices in an array, where the values are stored. A **hash function** takes a key (usually a string or number) and converts it into an index in an array. The efficiency of the hash table depends on the quality of the hash function, which should distribute keys uniformly across the array to minimize **collisions** (when two keys map to the same index).

Arrays provide a simple yet powerful way to implement more complex data structures like hash tables and graphs, making them fundamental to many algorithms and data-processing tasks.

## CHAPTER 6 ARRAY-RELATED FUNCTIONS IN THE C STANDARD LIBRARY

**R. Rajayogeswari**

Assistant Professor Department of Computer Science

Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science

and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

The C Standard Library provides various built-in functions that help manage and manipulate arrays efficiently. These functions are included in several header files like `<string.h>`, `<stdlib.h>`, and `<stdio.h>`. In this chapter, we will explore commonly used array-related functions in C.

This chapter focuses on various array-related functions provided by the C Standard Library. These functions simplify the manipulation of arrays and memory, making it easier to work with strings, raw memory blocks, and perform common tasks like sorting, searching, and input/output.

### **String Manipulation Functions (<string.h>):**

**Strlen ()**: Calculates the length of a string (excluding the null terminator).

**Strcpy ()**: Copies one string to another.

**Strcat ()**: Concatenates two strings.

**Strcmp ()**: Compares two strings lexicographically.

**Strncpy ()**: Copies a specified number of characters from one string to another.

**Strncat ()**: Concatenates a specified number of characters from one string to another.

### **Memory Manipulation Functions (<string.h>):**

**Memcpy ()**: Copies a block of memory from one location to another.

**Memset ()**: Fills a block of memory with a specific value.

**Memmove ()**: Copies memory with overlap handling to avoid overwriting.

**Memcmp ()**: Compares two blocks of memory.

This chapter provides a comprehensive guide to array-related functions in the C Standard Library, empowering you to efficiently manipulate arrays, strings, memory, and more in your programs.

# CHAPTER 7

## ADVANCED ARRAY VISUALIZATION TECHNIQUES

### R. Selvakumar

Assistant Professor Department of Computer Science  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science  
and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

This chapter delves into various advanced techniques for visualizing arrays, enhancing the understanding of data structures and algorithms. Visualization aids in comprehending complex concepts and improves debugging and analysis. We will explore different methods, tools, and best practices for effective array visualization.

#### Types of Array Visualization Techniques

**Static Visualization:** Displaying the array elements in a fixed format.

**Dynamic Visualization:** Visualizing changes in the array as operations are performed.

**Interactive Visualization:** Allowing user interaction to explore array states.

Data Visualization Charts is a method of presenting information and data in a visual way using graphical representation elements like charts, graphs and maps. These visual elements help users easily understand complex datasets quickly and efficiently. There are many different types of visualization charts, each best suited for different data types and analysis of data provided.

In this advanced array concepts guide, we'll take a deep dive into various techniques and strategies for working with arrays that go beyond the basics. Arrays are a fundamental data structure in programming, and understanding advanced array concepts will empower you to solve complex problems efficiently. Let's explore some of these advanced array concepts.

Multidimensional arrays are arrays within arrays, forming a grid-like structure. They are often used to represent tables, matrices, or multi-level data structures. Let's create a simple 2D array in Python to understand how they work:

Advanced array operations include sorting, searching, and filtering. These manipulations are essential when working with large datasets. Let's explore a common scenario: sorting an array in JavaScript using the built-in sort method:

This chapter provides an in-depth exploration of advanced array visualization techniques, empowering readers to utilize these methods for better understanding and analysis of data structures. By mastering these visualization techniques, developers and students can improve their problem-solving skills and enhance their ability to communicate complex ideas effectively.

# POLYMORPHISM USING C++



# POLYMORPHISM USING C++

Edited by

**G.SANTHIYA JANCY**



978-93-6255-561-8

Polymorphism using C++

Copyrights@2019      G.Santhiya Jancy

All rights reserved.No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-561-8

Publisher: Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology[PRIST]



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter 1 Polymorphism in c++.....	01
Dr.G.Preethi	
Chapter 2 Compile Time Polymorphism.....	02
Dr.R.Maruthi	
Chapter 3 Operator Overloading.....	03
Dr.P.Sathya	
Chapter 4 Run Time Polymorphism.....	04
P.Karthik	
Chapter 5 Function Overloading.....	05
P.Sakila	
Chapter 6 Function Overriding.....	06
M.Aarthi	
Chapter 7 Virtual Functions.....	07
D.Vijayalakshmi	

## CHAPTER 1 POLYMORPHISM IN C++

DR.G. PREETHI,

*Associate Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

Polymorphism is one of the most important concepts of Object-Oriented Programming (OOPs). For a language considered to be an OOP language, it must support polymorphism.

You can describe the word polymorphism as an object having many forms. Polymorphism is the notion that can hold up the ability of an object of a class to show different responses.

In other words, you can say that polymorphism is the ability of an object to be represented in over one form.

To understand polymorphism, you can consider a real-life example. You can relate it to the relationship of a person with different people.

A man can be a father to someone, a husband, a boss, an employee, a son, a brother, or can have many other relationships with various people. Here, this man represents the object, and his relationships display the ability of this object to be represented in many forms with totally different characteristics.

Polymorphism in C++ is broadly classified into two categories based on their characteristic features that you will explore further in this article.

These categories are:

- Compile-time Polymorphism
- Run-time Polymorphism.

## CHAPTER 2 COMPILE TIME POLYMORPHISM

DR.R.MARUTHI

*Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology[PRIST],  
Thanjavur.*

When the relationship between the definition of different functions and their function calls, is determined during the compile-time, it is known as compile-time polymorphism. This type of polymorphism is also known as static or early binding polymorphism. All the methods of compile-time polymorphism get called or invoked during the compile time.

You can implement compile-time polymorphism using function overloading and operator overloading. Method/function overloading is an implementation of compile-time polymorphism where the same name can be assigned to more than one method or function, having different arguments or signatures and different return types. Compile-time polymorphism has a much faster execution rate since all the methods that need to be executed are called during compile time. However, it is less preferred for handling complex problems since all the methods and details come to light only during the compile time. Hence, debugging becomes tougher.

The implementation of compile-time polymorphism is achieved in two ways:

- Function overloading
- Operator overloading

## CHAPTER 3 OPERATOR OVERLOADING

DR.P.SATHYA

*Associate Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

C++ programming language enables the programmer to have more than one execution behavior for a function or an operator within the same scope. In OOPS, overloading refers to having the same name but with different purposes. Typically, there are two types of overloading in C++. They are function overloading and operator overloading. When a function or an operator is overloaded, the compiler must decide which function or operator is being called in the present situation by checking the parameters and operands. This approach to selecting a suitable function or an operator is called Operator Resolution.

Operator overloading is sometimes referred to as ad-hoc polymorphism too. In operator overloading, different operators display different implementations based on their parameters or signatures. The C++ programming language allows you to create operators that can serve specific purposes with user-defined functions. This ability of C++ to create operators with a specific meaning for data types is termed operator overloading.

A simple and common example of operator overloading is that when you use the “+” operator in between two or more strings. It is used to join or concatenate them. Some other use-cases of operator overloading are working with Fractional Numbers, Complex Numbers, Big integers, etc

### **Syntax**

```
class class_name {  
    public  
        return_type operator symbol (arguments) {  
            // define the function  
        }  
};
```

## CHAPTER 4 RUNTIME POLYMORPHISM

P.KARTHIK

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

In runtime polymorphism, the compiler resolves the object at run time and then it decides which function call should be associated with that object. It is also known as dynamic or late binding polymorphism.

This type of polymorphism is executed through virtual functions and function overriding. All the methods of runtime polymorphism get invoked during the run time.

Method overriding is an application of run time polymorphism where two or more functions with the same name, arguments, and return type accompany different classes of the same structure.

This method has a comparatively slower execution rate than compile-time polymorphism since all the methods that need to be executed are called during run time.

Runtime polymorphism is known to be better for dealing with complex problems since all the methods and details turn up during the runtime itself.

The implementation of run time polymorphism can be achieved in two ways:

- Function overriding
- Virtual functions

## CHAPTER 5 FUNCTION OVERLOADING

P.SAKILA

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

Function overloading is an important pillar of polymorphism in C++. When the same function name is overloaded with multiple tasks, that function gets overloaded. In other words, function overloading takes place when you create two functions of the same name and these functions serve different purposes. Both functions should have the same return types and strictly different arguments from each other. It is achieved during the compile time. Function overloading can take place both in the base class as well as in the derived class.

All the functions that have been overloaded share the same scope. Since it is achievable in both the base class and the derived class, you do not specifically need inheritance.

### **Syntax**

```
// same name functions having different arguments
```

```
int func (int var) { }
```

```
int func (float var) { }
```

The following program illustrates compile-time polymorphism using function overloading:

```
#include <bits/stdc++.h>
```

```
using namespace std;
```

```
class functionOverloadingExample
```

## CHAPTER 6 FUNCTION OVERRIDING

M.AARTHI

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

Function overriding takes place when your derived class and base class both contain a function having the same name. Along with the same name, both the functions should have the same number of arguments as well as the same return type.

The derived class inherits the member functions and data members from its base class. So to override a certain functionality, you must perform function overriding. It is achieved during the run time.

Functions that are overridden acquire different scopes. For function overriding, inheritance is a must. It can only happen in a derived class. If a class is not inherited from another class, you cannot achieve function overriding. To sum up, a function is overridden when you want to achieve a task supplementary to the base class function.

**The following program illustrates run-time polymorphism using function overriding:**

```
#include <iostream>
using namespace std;
// define a base class
class bird
{
    public:
    // display function of the base class
    void display()
    {
        cout << "I am the display function of the base class";
        cout << "\n\n";
    }
}
```

## CHAPTER 7 VIRTUAL FUNCTIONS

D.VIJAYALAKSHMI

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

Virtual functions are the member functions of the base class which are overridden in a derived class. When you make a call to such a function by using a pointer or reference to the base class, the virtual function is called and the derived class's version of the function gets invoked.

### ***Some Key Points About Virtual Functions***

- Virtual functions are only dynamic
- They are declared within a base class by using the keyword “virtual”
- These functions are called during run time
- Virtual functions are always declared with a base class and overridden in a child class
- Virtual functions can exist in the absence of inheritance. In that case, the base class version of the function will be called

To understand polymorphism, let's take an example from everyday life. Suppose you go to a grocery store and buy different kinds of fruits. All of them are fruits, but each kind has different characteristics. For example, apples are round, oranges are orange, and bananas are yellow. Although all fruits have different characteristics, they can all be grouped under the category of “fruit”. This is an example of polymorphism – the ability to group different objects under a single name.

A pure virtual function is a special type of function that is used to create an abstract base class. An abstract base class is a class that can't be instantiated – other classes can only inherit it. A pure virtual function is used to create an abstract base class by declaring a function with the keyword “virtual” and no implementation. For example, let's say we have an abstract base class called “Shape”. We can create this class by declaring a pure virtual function called “draw()”, which will be inherited by any classes that extend the “Shape” class. The “draw()” function must be implemented in the child classes for them to be instantiated.



COMPUTER ARCHITECTURE

# COMPUTER ARCHITECTURE

EDITED BY  
**V.SATHYA**



978-93-6255-597-7

# COMPUTER ARCHITECTURE

Copyrights@2019 by V.SATHYA

All rights reserved.No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-597-7

Publisher: Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST]

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter 1 Digital Logic Circuits.....	01
K.Priyadharshini	
Chapter 2 Computer Organization Architecture.....	02
Dr.R.Maruthi	
Chapter 3 Digital Components.....	03
Dr.A.V.Seethalakshmi	
Chapter 4 Pipeline Delay And Stalling.....	04
Dr.K.Raja	
Chapter 5 Micro Operations In Coa.....	05
Dr.G.Preethi	
Chapter 6 Computer Organization And Instructions.....	06
Dr.S.Srinivasan	
Chapter 7 Central Processing Unit.....	07
M.Aarthi	
Chapter 8 Arithmetic And Logic Unit.....	08
P.Karthik	
Chapter 9 First Generation Electronic Computers.....	09
P.Karthikeyan	
Chapter 10 Dependability Via Redundancy.....	10
H.Parveenbegum	

# CHAPTER 1 DIGITAL LOGIC CIRCUITS

K.PRIYADHARSHINI

*Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam  
Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

Digital logic circuits are the basis of digital systems. These logic circuits are a set of logic gates that show logical equivalence between two different groups of binary numbers.

These digital logic circuits use 0 and 1 for on/off conditions, where 0 represents on, and 1 represents off conditions.

Digital Logic Circuits are digital devices that use logic gates, ALU's, microprocessors, RAM, ROM to control other circuits. It is a specific form of logic circuit that processes the numerical values 0 and 1.

A digital circuit converts a series of numbers into another series of numbers. It is designed to give only one output for any given input, and the output will either be 0V or 5V. It is a circuit that uses discrete values of voltage to represent data.

The most common digital circuits are based on the binary number system, although some systems use non-binary values. The digital circuit contains switches, which are either on or off. It processes information as a sequence of "1"s and "0"s.

A digital circuit is an electronic circuit that uses discrete quantities of information, such as logic levels (i.e., not a continuous range as an analog signal does), to process information and perform functions. We use a digital circuit because it can change the voltage level from 0V to 5V, which is very convenient for use with a microcontroller.

The digital circuit is a way to store information. It uses binary code that only has two digits: zero and one. Digital circuits are used in calculators, computers, TVs, and many other devices.

A digital circuit is a circuit containing digital logic. Digital circuits are the most common physical implementation of **Boolean algebra** and binary arithmetic and are the basis of all modern computers.

## **CHAPTER 2 COMPUTER ORGANIZATION ARCHITECTURE**

**DR.R.MARUTHI**

*Associate Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam  
Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

Computer Organization and Architecture is used to design computer systems. Computer Architecture is considered to be those attributes of a system that are visible to the user like addressing techniques, instruction sets, and bits used for data, and have a direct impact on the logic execution of a program, It defines the system in an abstract manner, It deals with What does the system do.

Whereas, Computer Organization is the way in which a system has to structure and It is operational units and the interconnections between them that achieve the architectural specifications, It is the realization of the abstract model, and It deals with How to implement the system.

Generation in computer terminology is a change in technology a computer is/was being used. Initially, the generation term was used to distinguish between varying hardware technologies. But nowadays, generation includes both hardware and software, which together make up an entire computer system. There are totally five computer generations known till date. Each generation has been discussed in detail along with their time period and characteristics. Here approximate dates against each generations have been mentioned which are normally accepted.

Computer Architecture deals with giving operational attributes of the computer or Processor to be specific. It deals with details like physical memory, ISA (Instruction Set Architecture) of the processor, the number of bits used to represent the data types, Input Output mechanism and technique for addressing memories.

Computer Organization is realization of what is specified by the computer architecture .It deals with how operational attributes are linked together to meet the requirements specified by computer architecture. Some organizational attributes are hardware details, control signals, peripherals.

Computer Organization and Architecture Tutorial provides in-depth knowledge of internal working, structuring, and implementation of a computer system.

Whereas, Organization defines the way the system is structured so that all those catalogued tools can be used properly.

## **CHAPTER 3 DIGITAL COMPONENTS**

**DR.A.V.SEETHALAKSHMI**

*Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

Complex digital circuits are constructed with integrated circuits. **IC** is a small silicon semiconductor crystal, called a chip, containing the electronic components for the digital gates. The various gates are interconnected inside the chip to form the required circuit. The chip is mounted in a ceramic or plastic container and the connections are welded to the external pins to form an IC. The number of pins of IC vary from 14 to several thousand. Each pin is identified by a unique number printed on its body.

### **Categories of Integrated Circuits**

#### **1. SSI(Small Scale Integration Device)**

It contains several independent gates in a single package. The inputs and outputs of gates are connected directly to the pins in the package. The number of gates is usually less than 10.

#### **2. MSI(Medium Scale Integration Device)**

It contains 10 to 200 gates in a single package. They perform elementary digital functions such as decoders, adders, registers.

#### **3. LSI(Large Scale Integration Device)**

It contains gates between 200 to few thousand in a single package. They include digital systems such as processors, memory chips etc.

#### **4. VLSI(Very Large Scale Integration Device)**

It contains thousands of gates within a single package such as microcomputer chip.

#### **5. ULSI(Ultra Large Scale Integration Device)**

It contains hundred of thousands of gates within a single package such as microcomputer chip.

## CHAPTER 4 PIPELINE DELAY AND STALLING

DR.K.RAJA

*Associate Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

**Uniform delay pipeline** In this type of pipeline, all the stages will take same time to complete an operation. In uniform delay pipeline, **Cycle Time ( $T_p$ ) = Stage Delay** If buffers are included between the stages then, **Cycle Time ( $T_p$ ) = Stage Delay + Buffer Delay**

**Non-Uniform delay pipeline** In this type of pipeline, different stages take different time to complete an operation. In this type of pipeline, **Cycle Time ( $T_p$ ) = Maximum(Stage Delay)** For example, if there are 4 stages with delays, 1 ns, 2 ns, 3 ns, and 4 ns, then  $T_p = \text{Maximum}(1 \text{ ns}, 2 \text{ ns}, 3 \text{ ns}, 4 \text{ ns}) = 4 \text{ ns}$  If buffers are included between the stages,  $T_p = \text{Maximum}(\text{Stage delay} + \text{Buffer delay})$  **Example :** Consider a 4 segment pipeline with stage delays (2 ns, 8 ns, 3 ns, 10 ns). Find the time taken to execute 100 tasks in the above pipeline. **Solution :** As the above pipeline is a non-linear pipeline,  $T_p = \max(2, 8, 3, 10) = 10 \text{ ns}$  We know that  $ET_{\text{pipeline}} = (k + n - 1) T_p = (4 + 100 - 1) 10 \text{ ns} = 1030 \text{ ns}$  NOTE: MIPS = Million instructions per second

### **Problems in Instruction Pipelining**

**Time Variation:**Not all stages take the same amount of time.This means that the speed gain of a pipeline will be determined by its slowest page. This problem is particularly acute in instruction processing, since different instructions have different operand requirements and sometimes vastly different processing time.

**Data Hazards:** When several instructions are in parallel execution, a problem arises if they referenece the same data. We must ensure that a later instruction does not attempt to access data source than a proceeding instruction, If they will lead to incorrect results.

**Branching:** In order to fetch the “next” instruction may not Know which one is required. If the present instruction is a conditional branch, the next instruction may not be known until the current one is processed.

**Interrupts:** Interrupts insert unplanned ” extra” instructions into the instruction stream. The interrupt must take effect between instructions, that is when one instruction has completed and the next has not yet began.

## CHAPTER 5 MICRO OPERATIONS IN COA

DR.G. PREETHI

*Associate Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

In computer central processing units, **micro-operations** (also known as micro-ops) are the functional or atomic, operations of a processor. These are low level instructions used in some designs to implement complex machine instructions. They generally perform operations on data stored in one or more registers. They transfer data between registers or between external buses of the CPU, also performs arithmetic and logical operations on registers. In executing a program, operation of a computer consists of a sequence of instruction cycles, with one machine instruction per cycle. Each instruction cycle is made up of a number of smaller units – *Fetch, Indirect, Execute and Interrupt cycles*. Each of these cycles involves series of steps, each of which involves the processor registers. These steps are referred as micro-operations. the prefix micro refers to the fact that each of the step is very simple and accomplishes very little.

Miniature tasks are performed on the information put away in the registers inside the computer chip. They are utilized to perform math and intelligent activities, as well as to move information among registers and memory. A few instances of miniature tasks include:

- 1.Load:** This miniature activity loads information from memory into a register.
- 2.Store:** This miniature activity stores information from a register into memory.
- 3.Add:** This miniature activity adds two qualities and stores the outcome in a register.
- 4.Subtract:** This miniature activity deducts two qualities and stores the outcome in a register.
- 5.And:** This miniature activity plays out a legitimate AND procedure on two qualities and stores the outcome in a register.
- 6.Or:** This miniature activity plays out a legitimate OR procedure on two qualities and stores the outcome in a register.
- 7.Not:** This miniature activity plays out a legitimate NOT procedure on a worth and stores the outcome in a register.
- 8.Shift:** This miniature activity moves the pieces of a worth to the left or right.



## CHAPTER 6 COMPUTER ORGANIZATION AND INSTRUCTIONS

DR.S.SRINIVASAN

*Associate Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

Computer organization refers to the way in which the components of a computer system are organized and interconnected to perform specific tasks. One of the most fundamental aspects of computer organization is the set of basic computer instructions that the system can execute.

Basic computer instructions are the elementary operations that a computer system can perform. These instructions are typically divided into three categories: data movement instructions, arithmetic and logic instructions, and control instructions.

Data movement instructions are used to move data between different parts of the computer system. These instructions include load and store instructions, which move data between memory and the CPU, and input/output (I/O) instructions, which move data between the CPU and external devices.

Arithmetic and logic instructions are used to perform mathematical operations and logical operations on data stored in the system. These instructions include add, subtract, multiply, and divide instructions, as well as logic instructions such as AND, OR, and NOT.

Control instructions are used to control the flow of instructions within the computer system. These instructions include branch instructions, which transfer control to different parts of the program based on specified conditions, and jump instructions, which transfer control to a specified memory location.

The basic computer has 16-bit instruction register (IR) which can denote either memory reference or register reference or input-output instruction.

**Memory Reference** – These instructions refer to memory address as an operand. The other operand is always accumulator. Specifies 12-bit address, 3-bit opcode (other than 111) and 1-bit addressing mode for direct and indirect addressing.

**Register Reference** – These instructions perform operations on registers rather than memory addresses. The IR(14 – 12) is 111 (differentiates it from memory reference) and IR(15) is 0 (differentiates it from input/output instructions). The rest 12 bits specify register operation.

## CHAPTER 7 CENTRAL PROCESSING UNIT

M.AARTHI

*Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

CPU [Central Processing Unit]. It is the brain of the computer. It is the part that does most of the work in a computer system. Just like how our brain controls our body and processes information, the CPU carries out instructions from programs and performs calculations. It's made up of smaller components that work together to execute tasks, making it the heart of any computing device.

All types of data processing operations from simple arithmetic to complex tasks and all the important functions of a computer are performed by the CPU. It helps input and output devices to communicate with each other and perform their respective operations. It also stores data which is input, intermediate results in between processing, and instructions.

A Central Processing Unit is the most important component of a computer system. A CPU is hardware that performs data input/output, processing, and storage functions for a computer system. A CPU can be installed into a CPU socket. These sockets are generally located on the motherboard. CPU can perform various data processing operations. CPU can store data, instructions, programs, and intermediate results.

### **History of CPU**

Since 1823, when Baron Jons Jakob Berzelius discovered silicon, which is still the primary component used in manufacturing CPUs today, the history of the CPU has experienced numerous significant turning points. The first transistor was created by John Bardeen, Walter Brattain, and William Shockley in December 1947. In 1958, the first working integrated circuit was built by Robert Noyce and Jack Kilby.

The Intel 4004 was the company's first microprocessor, which it unveiled in 1971. Ted Hoff's assistance was needed for this. When Intel released its 8008 CPU in 1972, Intel 8086 in 1976, and Intel 8088 in June 1979, it contributed to yet another win. The Motorola 68000, a 16/32-bit processor, was also released in 1979. The Sun also unveiled the SPARC CPU in 1987. AMD unveiled the AM386 CPU series in March 1991.

In January 1999, Intel introduced the Celeron 366 MHz and 400 MHz processors. AMD back in April 2005 with its first dual-core processor. Intel also introduced the Core 2 Dual processor in 2006. Intel released the first Core i5 desktop processor with four cores in September 2009.

## CHAPTER 8 ARITHMETIC AND LOGIC UNIT

P.KARTHIK

*Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam  
Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

### **ALU (Arithmetic Logic Unit)**

ALU conducts arithmetic and logic operations. It is a major component of the CPU in a computer system. An integer unit (IU) is just an integrated circuit within a GPU or GPU that performs the last calculations in the processor. It can execute all arithmetic and logic operations, including Boolean comparisons, such as subtraction, addition, and shifting (XOR, OR, AND, and NOT operations). Binary numbers can also perform bitwise and mathematical operations. AU (arithmetic unit) and LU (logic unit) are two types of arithmetic logic units. The ALU's operands and code instruct it on which operations to perform based on the incoming data. When the ALU has finished processing the data, it sends the result to the computer memory.

### **Uses of ALU**

ALUs, in addition to doing addition and subtraction calculations, also handle the process of multiplication of two integers because they are designed to perform integer calculations; thus, the result is likewise an integer. Division operations, on the other hand, are frequently not done by ALU since division operations can result in a floating-point value. Instead, division operations are normally handled by the floating-point unit (FPU), which may also execute other non-integer calculations. Engineers can also design the ALU to do any operation they choose. However, as the operations become more sophisticated, ALU becomes more expensive since it generates more heat as well as takes up more space on the CPU. Therefore, engineers create powerful ALUs, ensuring that the CPU is both quick and powerful. The ALU performs the computations required by the CPU; most of the operations are logical in nature. If the CPU is built more powerful, it will be designed on the basis of the ALU. Then it generates more heat and consumes more energy or power. As a result, there must be a balance between how intricate and strong ALU is and how much it costs. The primary reason why faster CPUs are more expensive is that they consume more power and generate more heat due to their ALUs. The ALU's major functions are arithmetic and logic operations, as well as bit-shifting operations.

## **CHAPTER 9 FIRST GENERATION ELECTRONIC COMPUTERS**

**P.KARTHIKEYAN**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam  
Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

The first generation of computers relied on machine language instructions and used vacuum tubes in their construction. The machines themselves were huge and required extensive cooling mechanisms to keep them from overheating. The first generation of computers was not considered programmable as the instructions that could be carried out by the machines were all pre-programmed into them at the time of manufacture. This meant that the instructions built into the machine had to be changed after construction to carry out new tasks.

A brief history of the first generation of computers, including how they were developed and the technologies they used.

Huge in size, these devices relied on vacuum tubes and used machine language to do their computations. Most were room-sized, with giant humming motors and belts connected to a dizzying array of switches and wires. They represented one of humanity's greatest inventions: computers that can think, at least in terms of computation.

The computer was developed by a British engineer named Alan Turing, and it was huge. To make calculations, it relied on machine language, which is binary code that can be executed directly by computers. Vacuum tubes were used for their processing elements, as well as for memory storage. This first generation of computers was also slow and costly. Later generations would improve upon these computers in terms of speed and cost-effectiveness.

This form of computer was very large and took up a lot of space. The vacuum tubes were used to process information. These are powerful and can solve many problems in no time. A problem with vacuum tubes is that they require a lot of energy to be able to perform their jobs, which makes them not very power efficient.

ENIAC (Electronic Numerical Integrator and Computer) was the first general-purpose electronic computer and is considered to be one of the first programmable computers as well.

## CHAPTER 10 DEPENDABILITY VIA REDUNDANCY

H.PARVEENBEGUM

*Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

In Computer Science, redundancy means having backups or duplicates of things to make sure your computer systems keep working even if something breaks. Imagine you have important files on your computer. If you only have them in one place and your computer crashes or the files get deleted, you'll lose everything. But if you also keep copies of those files on an external hard drive or in the cloud, that's redundancy.

### **Hardware Redundancy**

Hardware Redundancy involves duplicating critical hardware components to ensure system availability in the case of failure.

#### **Example:**

*In a RAID (Redundant Array of Independent Disks) configuration, multiple hard drives are used to store data redundantly. If one drive fails, data can still be retrieved from the other drives.*

### **Software Redundancy**

Software Redundancy relies on multiple instances of an application or service running simultaneously to ensure uninterrupted operation.

#### **Example:**

*Web servers often use software load balancers to distribute incoming requests across multiple server instances. If one server fails, the load balancer redirects traffic to healthy servers.*

### **Data Redundancy**

Data Redundancy involves storing the same data in multiple locations or using replication techniques to ensure data availability.

#### **Example:**

*Database Replication creates redundant copied of database across multiple servers. If one servers fails, another can continue serving the same data.*

### **Network Redundancy**

Network Redundancy provides multiple network paths or connections to ensure network availability and fault tolerance.

#### **Example:**

*BGP (Border Gateway Protocol) routing uses multiple network paths to reroute traffic in case of network failures, ensuring data can still flow.*

**OPERATING SYSTEM**

# **OPERATING SYSTEM**

Edited by

**H. PARVEENBEGAM**



**978-93-6255-949-4**

Operating Systems

CopyRights@2019

H.PARVEENBEGUM

All rights reserved.No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-949-4

Publisher : Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST]

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter 1 Process Concepts In Operating System.....	1
Dr.A.V.Seethalaskhmi	
Chapter 2 Asynchronous Concurrent Process.....	2
D.S.Chozhabharathi	
Chapter 3 Deadlock And Indefinite Postponement.....	3
Dr.G.Preethi	
Chapter 4 Job And Processor Scheduling.....	4
R.Suganya	
Chapter 5 Real Memory Organization And Management.....	5
R.Banumathi	
Chapter 6 Process Schedulers.....	6
P,Karthik	
Chapter 7 Process Queues.....	7
P.Sakila	
Chapter 8 Fragmentation.....	8
M.Aarthi	
Chapter 9 Contiguous Memory Management Techniques.....	9
R.Kalaiselvi	
Chapter 10 Deadlock Ignorance.....	10
R.Selvakumar	



## CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION TO OPERATING SYSTEM

DR.A.V.SEETHALAKSHMI,

*Associate Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology[PRIST],  
Thanjavur*

Operating System can be defined as an interface between user and the hardware. It provides an environment to the user so that, the user can perform its task in convenient and efficient way.

The Operating System Tutorial is divided into various parts based on its functions such as Process Management, Process Synchronization, Deadlocks and File Management.

In the Computer System (comprises of Hardware and software), Hardware can only understand machine code (in the form of 0 and 1) which doesn't make any sense to a naive user.

We need a system which can act as an intermediary and manage all the processes and resources present in the system.

An **Operating System** can be defined as an **interface between user and hardware**. It is responsible for the execution of all the processes, Resource Allocation, CPU management, File Management and many other tasks.

The purpose of an operating system is to provide an environment in which a user can execute programs in convenient and efficient manner.

- Users (people who are using the computer)
- Application Programs (Compilers, Databases, Games, Video player, Browsers, etc.)
- System Programs (Shells, Editors, Compilers, etc.)
- Operating System ( A special program which acts as an interface between user and hardware )
- Hardware ( CPU, Disks, Memory, etc)

What does an Operating system do?

1. Process Management
2. Process Synchronization
3. Memory Management
4. CPU Scheduling
5. File Management

## CHAPTER 2 ASYNCHRONOUS CONCURRENT PROCESS

**D.S.CHOZHA BHARATHI,**

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology[PRIST],  
Thanjavur*

A Program does nothing unless its instructions are executed by a CPU. A program in execution is called a process. In order to accomplish its task, process needs the computer resources.

There may exist more than one process in the system which may require the same resource at the same time. Therefore, the operating system has to manage all the processes and the resources in a convenient and efficient way.

Some resources may need to be executed by one process at one time to maintain the consistency otherwise the system can become inconsistent and deadlock may occur.

The operating system is responsible for the following activities in connection with Process Management

1. Scheduling processes and threads on the CPUs.
2. Creating and deleting both user and system processes.
3. Suspending and resuming processes.
4. Providing mechanisms for process synchronization.
5. Providing mechanisms for process communication.

Process management is a key part of an operating system. It controls how processes are carried out, and controls how your computer runs by handling the active processes. This includes stopping processes, setting which processes should get more attention, and many more. You can manage processes on your own computer too.

The OS is responsible for managing the start, stop, and scheduling of processes, which are programs running on the system. The operating system uses a number of methods to prevent deadlocks, facilitate inter-process communication, and synchronize processes. Efficient resource allocation, conflict-free process execution, and optimal system performance are all guaranteed by competent process management. This essential component of an operating system enables the execution of numerous applications at once, enhancing system utilization and responsiveness.

## CHAPTER 3 DEADLOCK AND INDEFINITE POSTPONEMENT

DR.G.PREETHI,

*Associate Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology[PRIST],  
Thanjavur*

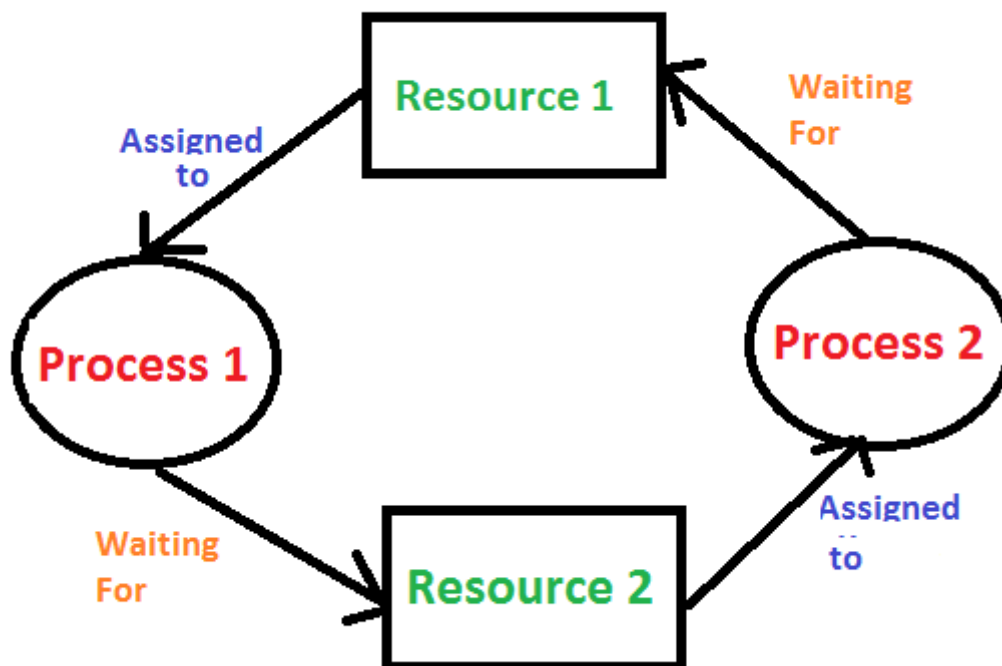
Deadlock is a situation in computing where two or more processes are unable to proceed because each is waiting for the other to release resources. Key concepts include mutual exclusion, resource holding, circular wait, and no preemption.

Consider an example when two trains are coming toward each other on the same track and there is only one track, none of the trains can move once they are in front of each other. This is a practical example of deadlock.

Before going into detail about how deadlock occurs in the Operating System, let's first discuss how the Operating System uses the resources present. A process in an operating system uses resources in the following way.

- Requests a resource
- Use the resource
- Releases the resource

A situation occurs in operating systems when there are two or more processes that hold some resources and wait for resources held by other(s). For example, in the below diagram, Process 1 is holding Resource 1 and waiting for resource 2 which is acquired by process 2, and process 2 is waiting for resource 1.



### Examples of Deadlock

There are several examples of deadlock. Some of them are mentioned below.

## CHAPTER 4 JOB AND PROCESSOR SCHEDULING

R.SUGANYA

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology[PRIST],  
Thanjavur*

In computing, a process is the instance of a computer program that is being executed by one or many threads. Scheduling is important in many different computer environments. One of the most important areas of scheduling is which programs will work on the CPU. This task is handled by the Operating System (OS) of the computer and there are many different ways in which we can choose to configure programs.

Process schedulers are fundamental components of operating systems responsible for deciding the order in which processes are executed by the CPU. In simpler terms, they manage how the CPU allocates its time among multiple tasks or processes that are competing for its attention. Process scheduling is the activity of the process manager that handles the removal of the running process from the CPU and the selection of another process based on a particular strategy.

Process scheduling is an essential part of a Multiprogramming operating system. Such operating systems allow more than one process to be loaded into the executable memory at a time and the loaded process shares the CPU using time [multiplexing](#).

### Categories of Scheduling

Scheduling falls into one of two categories:

- **Non-Pre-emptive:** In this case, a process's resource cannot be taken before the process has finished running. When a running process finishes and transitions to a waiting state, resources are switched.
- **Pre-emptive:** In this case, the OS assigns resources to a process for a predetermined period. The process switches from running state to ready state or from waiting state to ready state during resource allocation. This switching happens because the CPU may give other processes priority and substitute the currently active process for the higher priority process.

## CHAPTER 5 REAL MEMORY ORGNIZATION AND MANAGEMENT

R. BANUMATHI,

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology[PRIST],  
Thanjavur*

The term memory can be defined as a collection of data in a specific format. It is used to store instructions and process data. The memory comprises a large array or group of words or bytes, each with its own location. The primary purpose of a computer system is to execute programs. These programs, along with the information they access, should be in the main memory during execution. The CPU fetches instructions from memory according to the value of the program counter.

To achieve a degree of multiprogramming and proper utilization of memory, memory management is important. Many memory management methods exist, reflecting various approaches, and the effectiveness of each algorithm depends on the situation.

### **What is Main Memory?**

The main memory is central to the operation of a Modern Computer. Main Memory is a large array of words or bytes, ranging in size from hundreds of thousands to billions. Main memory is a repository of rapidly available information shared by the CPU and I/O devices. Main memory is the place where programs and information are kept when the processor is effectively utilizing them. Main memory is associated with the processor, so moving instructions and information into and out of the processor is extremely fast. Main memory is also known as RAM (Random Access Memory). This memory is volatile. RAM loses its data when a power interruption occurs.

- Allocate and de-allocate memory before and after process execution.
- To keep track of used memory space by processes.
- To minimize fragmentation issues.
- To proper utilization of main memory.
- To maintain data integrity while executing of process.

## CHAPTER 6 PROCESS SCHEDULERS

P.KARTHIK,

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology[PRIST],  
Thanjavur*

In computing, a process is the instance of a computer program that is being executed by one or many threads. Scheduling is important in many different computer environments. One of the most important areas of scheduling is which programs will work on the CPU.

This task is handled by the Operating System (OS) of the computer and there are many different ways in which we can choose to configure programs.

Process schedulers are fundamental components of operating systems responsible for deciding the order in which processes are executed by the CPU. In simpler terms, they manage how the CPU allocates its time among multiple tasks or processes that are competing for its attention.

In this article, we are going to discuss

Scheduling falls into one of two categories:

- **Non-Preemptive:** In this case, a process's resource cannot be taken before the process has finished running. When a running process finishes and transitions to a waiting state, resources are switched.
- **Preemptive:** In this case, the OS assigns resources to a process for a predetermined period. The process switches from running state to ready state or from waiting state to ready state during resource allocation.
- This switching happens because the CPU may give other processes priority and substitute the currently active process for the higher priority process.
  - Process scheduling is the activity of the process manager that handles the removal of the running process from the CPU and the selection of another process based on a particular strategy.
  - Process scheduling is an essential part of a Multiprogramming operating system. Such operating systems allow more than one process to be loaded into the executable memory at a time and the loaded process shares the CPU using time multiplexing.

## CHAPTER 7 PROCESS QUEUES

P. SAKILA,

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology[PRIST],  
Thanjavur*

The Operating system manages various types of queues for each of the process states. The PCB related to the process is also stored in the queue of the same state. If the Process is moved from one state to another state then its PCB is also unlinked from the corresponding queue and added to the other state queue in which the transition is made. There are the following queues maintained by the Operating system.

### Job Queue

In starting, all the processes get stored in the job queue. It is maintained in the secondary memory. The long term scheduler (Job scheduler) picks some of the jobs and put them in the primary memory.

### Ready Queue

Ready queue is maintained in primary memory. The short term scheduler picks the job from the ready queue and dispatch to the CPU for the execution.

### Waiting Queue

When the process needs some IO operation in order to complete its execution, OS changes the state of the process from running to waiting. The context (PCB) associated with the process gets stored on the waiting queue which will be used by the Processor when the process finishes the IO.

### Arrival Time

The time at which the process enters into the ready queue is called the arrival time.

### Burst Time

The total amount of time required by the CPU to execute the whole process is called the Burst Time. This does not include the waiting time.

## CHAPTER 8 -FRAGMENTATION

M.AARTHI,

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology[PRIST],  
Thanjavur*

An unwanted problem with operating systems is fragmentation, which occurs when processes load and unload from memory and divide available memory. Because memory blocks are so small, they cannot be assigned to processes, and thus remain idle. It's also important to realize that programs create free space or holes in memory when they are loaded and unloaded. Because additional processes cannot be assigned to these little pieces, memory is used inefficiently.

The memory allocation scheme determines the fragmentation circumstances. These regions of memory become fragmented when the process loads and unloads from it, making it unusable for incoming processes. We refer to it as fragmentation.

This can happen when a file is too large to fit into a single contiguous block of free space on the storage medium, or when the blocks of free space on the medium are insufficient to hold the file. Because the system must search for and retrieve individual fragments from different locations in order to open the file, fragmentation can cause problems when reading or accessing the file.

### **Effect of Fragmentation**

This can reduce system performance and make it more difficult to access the file. It is generally best to defragment your hard disc on a regular basis to avoid fragmentation, which is a process that rearranges the blocks of data on the disc so that files are stored in contiguous blocks and can be accessed more quickly.

### **Types of Fragmentation**

There are two main types of fragmentation:

- Internal Fragmentation
- External Fragmentation

#### **1. Internal Fragmentation**

Internal fragmentation occurs when there is unused space within a memory block. For example, if a system allocates a 64KB block of memory to store a file that is only 40KB in size, that block will contain 24KB of internal fragmentation. When the system employs a fixed-size block allocation method, such as a memory allocator with a fixed block size, this can occur.

#### **2. External Fragmentation**

External fragmentation occurs when a storage medium, such as a hard disc or solid-state drive, has many small blocks of free space scattered throughout it. This can happen when a system creates and deletes files frequently, leaving many small blocks of free space on the medium. When a system needs to store a new file, it may be unable to find a single contiguous block of free space large enough to store the file and must instead store the file in multiple smaller.



## CHAPTER 9- CONTIGUOUS MEMORY MANAGEMENT

R.KALAISELVI

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology[PRIST],  
Thanjavur*

Contiguous memory allocation is a memory allocation strategy. As the name implies, we utilize this technique to assign contiguous blocks of memory to each task. Thus, whenever a process asks to access the main memory, we allocate a continuous segment from the empty region to the process based on its size. In this technique, memory is allotted in a continuous way to the processes. Contiguous Memory Management has two types:

- Fixed(or Static) Partition
- Variable(or Dynamic) Partitioning

Below are two Contiguous Memory Management Techniques. Lets understand these in detail.

### 1. Fixed Partition Scheme

In the fixed partition scheme, memory is divided into fixed number of partitions. Fixed means number of partitions are fixed in the memory. In the fixed partition, in every partition only one process will be accommodated. Degree of multi-programming is restricted by number of partitions in the memory. Maximum size of the process is restricted by maximum size of the partition. Every partition is associated with the limit registers.

- **Limit Registers:** It has two limit:
- **Lower Limit:** Starting address of the partition.
- **Upper Limit:** Ending address of the partition.

Internal Fragmentation is found in fixed partition scheme. To overcome the problem of internal fragmentation, instead of fixed partition scheme, variable partition scheme is used.

### Disadvantages Fix partition scheme

- Maximum process size  $\leq$  Maximum partition size.
- The degree of multiprogramming is directly proportional to the number of partitions.
- Internal fragmentation which is discussed above is present.
- If a process of 19kb wants to allocate and we have free space which is not continuous we are not able to allocate the space.

### 2. Variable Partition Scheme

In the variable partition scheme, initially memory will be single continuous free block. Whenever the request by the process arrives, accordingly partition will be made in the memory. If the smaller processes keep on coming then the larger partitions will be made into smaller partitions.

## CHAPTER 10 DEADLOCK IGNORANCE

R.SELVAKUMAR,

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology[PRIST],  
Thanjavur*

Every process needs some resources to complete its execution. However, the resource is granted in a sequential order.

1. The process requests for some resource.
2. OS grant the resource if it is available otherwise let the process waits.
3. The process uses it and release on the completion.

A Deadlock is a situation where each of the computer process waits for a resource which is being assigned to some another process. In this situation, none of the process gets executed since the resource it needs, is held by some other process which is also waiting for some other resource to be released.

Let us assume that there are three processes P1, P2 and P3. There are three different resources R1, R2 and R3. R1 is assigned to P1, R2 is assigned to P2 and R3 is assigned to P3.

After some time, P1 demands for R1 which is being used by P2. P1 halts its execution since it can't complete without R2. P2 also demands for R3 which is being used by P3. P2 also stops its execution because it can't continue without R3. P3 also demands for R1 which is being used by P1 therefore P3 also stops its execution.

In this scenario, a cycle is being formed among the three processes. None of the process is progressing and they are all waiting. The computer becomes unresponsive since all the processes got blocked.

Necessary conditions for Deadlocks

### **Mutual Exclusion**

A resource can only be shared in mutually exclusive manner. It implies, if two process cannot use the same resource at the same time.

### **Hold and Wait**

A process waits for some resources while holding another resource at the same time.

### **No preemption**

The process which once scheduled will be executed till the completion. No other process can be scheduled by the scheduler meanwhile.

# ADVANCED DATA STRUCTURES



# ADVANCED DATA STRUCTURES

EDITED BY  
**G.SANTHIYA JANCY**



978-93-6255-856-9

# Advanced Data Structures

Copyrights@2019

G.Sandhya Jancy

All rights reserved.No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-056-9

Publisher: Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST]

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter 1 Abstract Datatype's.....	01
K.Priyadharshini	
Chapter 2 Stack Adt-Operations Applications Evaluating.....	02
Dr.R.Maruthi	
Chapter 3 Tree Adt Traversal.....	03
Dr.A.V.Seethalakshmi	
Chapter 4 Graph Structures And Applications Of Graph.....	04
Dr.K.Raja	
Chapter 5 Understand The Various Sorting And Searching.....	05
Dr.G.Preethi	
Chapter 6 Properties Of Tree Data Structures.....	06
Dr.S.Srinivasan	
Chapter 7 Tree Traversals.....	07
M.Aarthi.	
Chapter 8 Types Of Searching Algorithm.....	08
P.Karthik.	
Chapter 9 Applications Of Searching Algorithm.....	09
P.Karthikeyan	
Chapter 10 Queue Operations.....	10
H.Parveenbegum	

# CHAPTER 1 ABSTRACT DATA TYPES

K.PRIYADHARSHINI

*Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

ADT is let us consider different in-built data types that are provided to us. Data types such as int, float, double, long, etc. are considered to be in-built data types and we can perform basic operations with them such as addition, subtraction, division, multiplication, etc. Now there might be a situation when we need operations for our user-defined data type which have to be defined.

These operations can be defined only as and when we require them. So, in order to simplify the process of solving problems, we can create data structures along with their operations, and such data structures that are not in-built are known as Abstract Data Type (ADT).

Abstract Data type (ADT) is a type (or class) for objects whose behavior is defined by a set of values and a set of operations. The definition of ADT only mentions what operations are to be performed but not how these operations will be implemented.

It does not specify how data will be organized in memory and what algorithms will be used for implementing the operations. It is called “abstract” because it gives an implementation-independent view.

The user of data type does not need to know how that data type is implemented, for example, we have been using Primitive values like int, float, char data types only with the knowledge that these data type can operate and be performed on without any idea of how they are implemented.

So a user only needs to know what a data type can do, but not how it will be implemented. Think of ADT as a black box which hides the inner structure and design of the data type. Now we'll define three ADTs namely List ADT, Stack ADT, Queue ADT.

## CHAPTER 2 STACK ADT OPERATIONS APPLICATIONS EVALUATING

DR.R.MARUTHI

*Associate Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam  
Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

A Stack is a linear data structure that follows the **LIFO (Last-In-First-Out)** principle. Stack has one end, whereas the Queue has two ends (**front and rear**). It contains only one pointer **top pointer** pointing to the topmost element of the stack. Whenever an element is added in the stack, it is added on the top of the stack, and the element can be deleted only from the stack. In other words, a *stack can be defined as a container in which insertion and deletion can be done from the one end known as the top of the stack.*

- It is called as stack because it behaves like a real-world stack, piles of books, etc.
- A Stack is an abstract data type with a pre-defined capacity, which means that it can store the elements of a limited size.
- It is a data structure that follows some order to insert and delete the elements, and that order can be LIFO or FILO.
- Stack works on the LIFO pattern. As we can observe in the below figure there are five memory blocks in the stack; therefore, the size of the stack is 5.
- Suppose we want to store the elements in a stack and let's assume that stack is empty. We have taken the stack of size 5 as shown below in which we are pushing the elements one by one until the stack becomes full.

Since our stack is full as the size of the stack is 5. In the above cases, we can observe that it goes from the top to the bottom when we were entering the new element in the stack. The stack gets filled up from the bottom to the top.

An application of stack in data structure is a special type of data structure that follows the Last-In-First-Out (LIFO) principle. It allows for manipulating and storing elements in an ordered fashion, making it ideal for operations such as sorting, searching, and reversing.

## CHAPTER 2 TREE ADT TRAVERSAL

DR.A.V.SEETHALAKSHMI

*Associate Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

The linear data structures like an array, linked list, stack and queue in which all the elements are arranged in a sequential manner. The different data structures are used for different kinds of data.

- **What type of data needs to be stored?:** It might be a possibility that a certain data structure can be the best fit for some kind of data.
- **Cost of operations:** If we want to minimize the cost for the operations for the most frequently performed operations. For example, we have a simple list on which we have to perform the search operation; then, we can create an array in which elements are stored in sorted order to perform the **binary search**. The binary search works very fast for the simple list as it divides the search space into half.
- **Memory usage:** Sometimes, we want a data structure that utilizes less memory.

*A tree* is also one of the data structures that represent hierarchical data.

The tree shows the **organization hierarchy** of some company. In the above structure, *john* is the **CEO** of the company, and John has two direct reports named as *Steve* and *Rohan*. Steve has three direct reports named *Lee*, *Bob*, *Ella* where *Steve* is a manager. Bob has two direct reports named *Sal* and *Emma*. *Emma* has two direct reports named *Tom* and *Raj*. Tom has one direct report named *Bill*. This particular logical structure is known as a **Tree**. Its structure is similar to the real tree, so it is named a **Tree**. In this structure, the **root** is at the top, and its branches are moving in a downward direction. Therefore, we can say that the Tree data structure is an efficient way of storing the data in a hierarchical way.

- A tree data structure is defined as a collection of objects or entities known as nodes that are linked together to represent or simulate hierarchy.
- A tree data structure is a non-linear data structure because it does not store in a sequential manner. It is a hierarchical structure as elements in a Tree are arranged in multiple levels.



## CHAPTER 4 GRAPH STRUCTURES AND APPLICATIONS OF GRAPH

**DR.K.RAJA**

*Associate Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

**Graph Data Structure** is a collection of **nodes** connected by **edges**. It's used to represent relationships between different entities. **Graph algorithms** are methods used to manipulate and analyze graphs, solving various problems like **finding the shortest path** or **detecting cycles**.

Graph is a non-linear data structure consisting of vertices and edges. The vertices are sometimes also referred to as nodes and the edges are lines or arcs that connect any two nodes in the graph. More formally a **Graph** is composed of a set of vertices( **V** ) and a set of edges( **E** ).

The graph is denoted by **G(V, E)**.

Graph data structures are a powerful tool for representing and analyzing complex relationships between objects or entities.

They are particularly useful in fields such as social network analysis, recommendation systems, and computer networks.

In the field of sports data science, graph data structures can be used to analyze and understand the dynamics of team performance and player interactions on the field.

### **Components of a Graph:**

- **Vertex** – Each node of the graph is represented as a vertex. In the following example, the labeled circle represents vertices. Thus, A to G are vertices. We can represent them using an array as shown in the following image. Here A can be identified by index 0. B can be identified using index 1 and so on.
- **Edge** – Edge represents a path between two vertices or a line between two vertices. In the following example, the lines from A to B, B to C, and so on represents edges. We can use a two-dimensional array to represent an array as shown in the following image. Here AB can be represented as 1 at row 0, column 1, BC as 1 at row 1, column 2 and so on, keeping other combinations as 0.
- **Adjacency** – Two node or vertices are adjacent if they are connected to each other through an edge. In the following example, B is adjacent to A, C is adjacent to B, and so on.
- **Path** – Path represents a sequence of edges between the two vertices. In the following example, ABCD represents a path from A to D.
- Undirected Graph

## CHAPTER 5 UNDERSTANDING VARIOUS SORTING AND SEARCHING

DR.G.PREETHI

*Associate Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam  
Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

**Searching algorithms** are essential tools in computer science used to locate specific items within a collection of data. These algorithms are designed to efficiently navigate through data structures to find the desired information, making them fundamental in various applications such as **databases, web search engines**, and more.

Searching is the fundamental process of **locating a specific element or item within a collection of data**. This collection of data can take various forms, such as arrays, lists, trees, or other structured representations. The primary objective of searching is to determine whether the desired element exists within the data, and if so, to identify its precise location or retrieve it. It plays an important role in various computational tasks and real-world applications, including information retrieval, data analysis, decision-making processes, and more.

A **Sorting Algorithm** is used to rearrange a given array or list of elements according to a comparison operator on the elements. The comparison operator is used to decide the new order of elements in the respective data structure.

**For Example:** The below list of characters is sorted in increasing order of their ASCII values. That is, the character with a lesser ASCII value will be placed first than the character with a higher ASCII value.

**Sorting** refers to rearrangement of a given array or list of elements according to a comparison operator on the elements. The comparison operator is used to decide the new order of elements in the respective data structure. Sorting means reordering of all the elements either in ascending or in descending order.

### Sorting Terminology:

- **In-place Sorting:** An in-place sorting algorithm uses **constant space** for producing the output (modifies the given array only) or copying elements to a temporary storage. Examples: Selection Sort, Bubble Sort Insertion Sort and Heap Sort.
- **Internal Sorting:** Internal Sorting is when all the data is placed in the **main memory** or **internal memory**. In internal sorting, the problem cannot take input beyond its size. Example: heap sort, bubble sort, selection sort, quick sort, shell sort, insertion sort.
- **External Sorting :** External Sorting is when all the data that needs to be sorted cannot be placed in memory at a time, the sorting is called external.

## CHAPTER 6 PROPERTIES OF TREE DATASTRUCTURES

Dr.S.SRINIVASAN

*Associate Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam  
Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

A tree is a non-linear abstract data type with a hierarchy-based structure. It consists of nodes (where the data is stored) that are connected via links. The tree data structure stems from a single node called a root node and has subtrees connected to the root.

### Important Terms

Following are the important terms with respect to tree.

- **Path** – Path refers to the sequence of nodes along the edges of a tree.
- **Root** – The node at the top of the tree is called root. There is only one root per tree and one path from the root node to any node.
- **Parent** – Any node except the root node has one edge upward to a node called parent.
- **Child** – The node below a given node connected by its edge downward is called its child node.
- **Leaf** – The node which does not have any child node is called the leaf node.
- **Subtree** – Subtree represents the descendants of a node.
- **Visiting** – Visiting refers to checking the value of a node when control is on the node.
- **Traversing** – Traversing means passing through nodes in a specific order.
- **Levels** – Level of a node represents the generation of a node. If the root node is at level 0, then its next child node is at level 1, its grandchild is at level 2, and so on.
- **Keys** – Key represents a value of a node based on which a search operation is to be carried out for a node.

### General Trees

General trees are unordered tree data structures where the root node has minimum 0 or maximum 'n' subtrees.

The General trees have no constraint placed on their hierarchy. The root node thus acts like the superset of all the other subtrees.

## CHAPTER 7 TREE TRAVERSALS

M.AARTHI

*Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam  
Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

The term 'tree traversal' means traversing or visiting each node of a tree. There is a single way to traverse the linear data structure such as linked list, queue, and stack. Whereas, there are multiple ways to traverse a tree that are listed as follows

-

- Preorder traversal
- Inorder traversal
- Postorder traversal

So, in this article, we will discuss the above-listed techniques of traversing a tree. Now, let's start discussing the ways of tree traversal.

### **Preorder traversal**

This technique follows the 'root left right' policy. It means that, first root node is visited after that the left subtree is traversed recursively, and finally, right subtree is recursively traversed. As the root node is traversed before (or pre) the left and right subtree, it is called preorder traversal.

So, in a preorder traversal, each node is visited before both of its subtrees.

he applications of preorder traversal include -

- It is used to create a copy of the tree.
- It can also be used to get the prefix expression of an expression tree.

### **Algorithm**

1. Until all nodes of the tree are not visited
- 2.
3. Step 1 - Visit the root node
4. Step 2 - Traverse the left subtree recursively.
5. Step 3 - Traverse the right subtree recursively.

## CHAPTER 8 TYPES OF SEARCHING ALGORITHM

P.KARTHIK

*Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

Searching is the fundamental process of locating a specific element or item within a collection of data. This collection of data can be **arrays**, **lists**, **trees**, or other structured representations. **Data structures** are complex systems designed to organize vast amounts of information. Searching within a data structure is one of the most critical operations performed on stored data.

The goal is to find the desired information with its precise location quickly and with minimal computational resources. It plays an important role in various computational tasks and real-world applications, including information retrieval, data analysis, decision-making processes, etc.

- **Target Element/Key:** It is the element or item that you want to find within the data collection. This target could be a value, a record, a key, or any other data entity of interest.
- **Search Space:** It refers to the entire collection of data within which you are looking for the target element. Depending on the data structure used, the search space may vary in size and organization.
- **Complexity:** Searching can have different levels of complexity depending on the data structure and the algorithm used. The complexity is often measured in terms of time and space requirements.
- **Deterministic vs. Non-deterministic:** The algorithms that follow a clear, systematic approach, like binary search, are deterministic. Others, such as linear search, are non-deterministic, as they may need to examine the entire search space in the worst case.

Data structures require specialized search algorithms to enable effective retrieval of a variety of information, from web content to scientific data. Computers would struggle to process large amounts of data effectively without these techniques. Searching Algorithms are designed to check for an element or retrieve an element from any data structure where it is stored. Hence, it is important to understand different search algorithms and why it is important to use one over another.

**Linear search:** This is the most simple searching algorithm in the data structures that checks each element of the data structure until the desired element is found.

## CHAPTER 9 APPLICATIONS OF SEARCHING ALGORITHM

P.KARTHIKEYAN

*Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

Specific applications of search algorithms include:

- Problems in combinatorial optimization, such as:
- The vehicle routing problem, a form of shortest path problem
- The knapsack problem: Given a set of items, each with a weight and a value, determine the number of each item to include in a collection so that the total weight is less than or equal to a given limit and the total value is as large as possible.
- The nurse scheduling problem
- Problems in constraint satisfaction, such as:
- The map coloring problem
- Filling in a sudoku or crossword puzzle
- In game theory and especially combinatorial game theory, choosing the best move to make next (such as with the minmax algorithm)
- Finding a combination or password from the whole set of possibilities
- Factoring an integer (an important problem in cryptography)
- Search engine optimization (SEO) and content optimization for web crawlers
- Optimizing an industrial process, such as a chemical reaction, by changing the parameters of the process (like temperature, pressure, and pH)
- Retrieving a record from a database
- Finding the maximum or minimum value in a list or array
- Checking to see if a given value is present in a set of values

Algorithms for searching virtual spaces are used in the constraint satisfaction problem, where the goal is to find a set of value assignments to certain variables that will satisfy specific mathematical equations and inequations / equalities. They are also used when the goal is to find a variable assignment that will maximize or minimize a certain function of those variables. Algorithms for these problems include the basic brute-force search (also called "naïve" or "uninformed" search), and a variety of heuristics that try to exploit partial knowledge about the structure of this space, such as linear relaxation, constraint generation, and constraint propagation.

An important subclass are the local search methods, that view the elements of the search space as the vertices of a graph, with edges defined by a set of heuristics applicable to the case; and scan the space by moving from item to item along the edges, for example according to the steepest descent or best-first criterion, or in a stochastic search. This category includes a great variety of general metaheuristic methods, such as simulated annealing, tabu search, A-teams, and genetic programming, that combine arbitrary.

## CHAPTER 10 QUEUE OPERATIONS

H.PARVEEN BEGUM

*Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

A queue is a logical group of elements in which updates or changes are introduced at one side (the "back") and existing items are deleted at the opposite end (the "front") (the "front"). When an item is introduced to the queue, it moves from the back to the front, ready to be eliminated next. The queue's newly acquired item will have to wait until the collection's finish. This way of ordering is also known as first-in-first-out (FIFO) (first-in, first-out). "First-come, first-served" is another term for it.

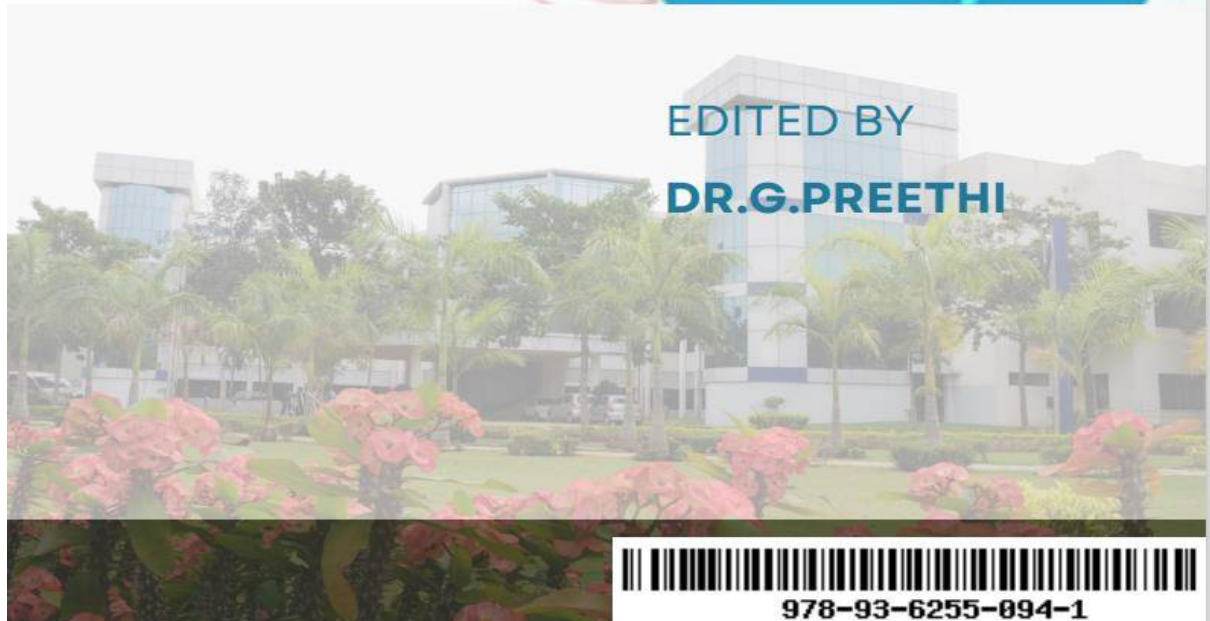
Operating systems employ a variety of queues to manage things within a system. The next job is frequently planned using a queuing approach in order to run programs as quickly as feasible while servicing the largest number of people possible. Furthermore, while we type, keystrokes might occasionally outweigh the text on the screen. The reason is that the computer is now engaged with other duties. The strokes of keys are queued in a file and eventually shown on the screen in the right sequence.

The various operations that are supported by a queue data structure that helps the user to modify and manipulate the data present in the queue are:

- **Enqueue operation:** The term "enqueue" refers to the act of adding a new element to a queue. Where does a new individual go and wait in a standard queue at a ticket counter to join the queue? The individual walks to the back of the room and takes a seat. A new element in a queue is similarly added at the end of the queue.
  - **Dequeue operation:** Dequeue is the process of deleting an item from a queue. We must delete the queue member that was put first since the queue follows the FIFO principle. We'll delete the front element and make the element behind it the new front element because the element added initially will naturally be at the head of the queue.
  - **Front Operation:** This works similarly to the peek operation in stacks in that it returns the value of the first element without deleting it.
  - **isEmpty Operation:** The isEmpty() function is used to check if the Queue is empty or not.
-



# COMPUTER DESIGN



978-93-6255-094-1



Computer Design

CopyRights@2019

Dr.G.Preethi

All rights reserved.No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-094-1

Publisher: Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology[PRIST]

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter 1 Instruction Level Parallelism.....	01
Dr.G.Preethi	
Chapter 2 Data Level Parallelism.....	02
Dr.R.Maruthi	
Chapter 3 Thread Level Parallelism.....	03
Dr.P.Sathya	
Chapter 4 Ilp Architecture.....	04
P.Karthik	
Chapter 5 Fundamentals Of Computer Design.....	05
P.Sakila	
Chapter 6 Instruction-Level Parallelism In Cuf Kernels.....	06
M.Aarthi	
Chapter 7 Concurrency.....	07
D.Vijayalakshmi	
Chapter 8 Symmetric Multiprocessor Architecture.....	08
R.Rajayogeshwari	
Chapter 9 Optimization.....	09
D.S.Chozhabharathi	
Chapter 10 The Cuda Execution Model.....	10
P.Karthikeyan	

## CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION to ILP Execution

DR.G. PREETHI,

*Associate Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

The objectives of this module are to discuss the drawbacks of ILP and the need for exploring other types of parallelism available in application programs and exploit them. We will discuss what is meant by thread level parallelism and discuss the concepts of Simultaneous Multi Threading and Chip Multi Processors.

So far, we have looked at various hardware and software techniques to exploit ILP. The ideal CPI that we can expect in a pipelined implementation is only 1. We looked at different techniques to avoid or minimize the stalls associated with the various hazards. The performance of a pipelined implementation can be improved by deepening the pipeline or widening the pipeline. Deepening the pipeline increases the number of in-flight instructions and decreases the gap between successive independent instructions. However, it increases the gap between dependent instructions. There is an optimal pipeline depth depending on the ILP in a program and it is a design issue. It may be tough to pipeline some structures and there may be an increase in the cost of bypassing. Increasing the width of the pipeline, as in the case of multiple issue processors also has its own problems and difficulties. It may be difficult to find more than a few, say, four independent instructions to issue and it may be difficult to fetch more than six instructions and there is also an increase in the number of ports per structure.

In order to reduce the stalls associated with fetch, we may have to employ better branch prediction methods with novel ways to index/update and avoid aliasing and also cascade branch predictors. The other option is to use a *trace cache*. Instead of limiting the instructions in a static cache block to spatial locality, a trace cache finds a dynamic sequence of instructions including taken branches to load into a cache block. The name comes from the cache blocks containing dynamic traces of the executed instructions as determined by the CPU rather than containing static sequences of instructions as determined by memory. Hence, the branch prediction is folded into cache, and must be validated along with the addresses to have a valid fetch. The Intel Netburst microarchitecture, which is the foundation of the Pentium 4 and its successors, uses a trace cache. The trace cache has a lot of shortcomings, but is very useful in handling the limitations of the fetch unit. In Intel processors, the trace cache stores the pre-decoded instructions.

## CHAPTER 2 DATA LEVEL PARALLELISM

DR.R.MARUTHI

*Associate Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

The objectives of this module are to discuss about how data level parallelism is exploited in processors. We shall discuss about vector architectures, SIMD instructions and Graphics Processing Unit (GPU) architectures.

We have discussed different techniques for exploiting instruction level parallelism and thread level parallelism in our earlier modules. We shall now discuss different types of architectures that exploit data level parallelism, i.e. SIMD style of architectures.

SIMD architectures can exploit significant data-level parallelism for not only matrix-oriented scientific computing, but also for media-oriented image and sound processing, which are very popular these days. Additionally, SIMD is more energy efficient than MIMD, as we need to fetch only one instruction per data operation. This makes SIMD attractive for personal mobile devices also.

Figure 36.1 shows the potential speedup via parallelism from MIMD, SIMD, and both MIMD and SIMD over time for x86 computers. This figure assumes that two cores per chip for MIMD will be added every two years and the number of operations for SIMD type of computing will double every four years. The potential speedup from SIMD is expected to be twice that from MIMD. Therefore, it is essential that we discuss the details of SIMD architectures.

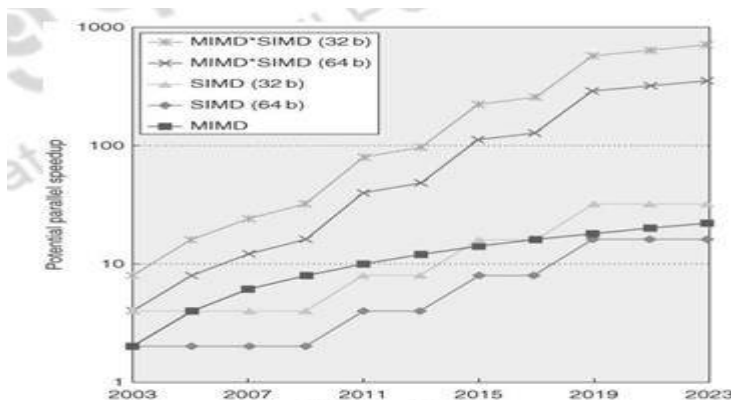


Figure 36.1

## CHAPTER 3 THREAD LEVEL PARALLELISM

DR.P.SATHYA

*Associate Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

The objectives of this module are to discuss the drawbacks of ILP and the need for exploring other types of parallelism available in application programs and exploit them. We will discuss what is meant by thread level parallelism and discuss the concepts of Simultaneous Multi Threading and Chip Multi Processors.

So far, we have looked at various hardware and software techniques to exploit ILP. The ideal CPI that we can expect in a pipelined implementation is only 1. We looked at different techniques to avoid or minimize the stalls associated with the various hazards. The performance of a pipelined implementation can be improved by deepening the pipeline or widening the pipeline. Deepening the pipeline increases the number of in-flight instructions and decreases the gap between successive independent instructions. However, it increases the gap between dependent instructions. There is an optimal pipeline depth depending on the ILP in a program and it is a design issue. It may be tough to pipeline some structures and there may be an increase in the cost of bypassing. Increasing the width of the pipeline, as in the case of multiple issue processors also has its own problems and difficulties. It may be difficult to find more than a few, say, four independent instructions to issue and it may be difficult to fetch more than six instructions and there is also an increase in the number of ports per structure.

In order to reduce the stalls associated with fetch, we may have to employ better branch prediction methods with novel ways to index/update and avoid aliasing and also cascade branch predictors. The other option is to use a *trace cache*. Instead of limiting the instructions in a static cache block to spatial locality, a trace cache finds a dynamic sequence of instructions including taken branches to load into a cache block. The name comes from the cache blocks containing dynamic traces of the executed instructions as determined by the CPU rather than containing static sequences of instructions as determined by memory. Hence, the branch prediction is folded into cache, and must be validated along with the addresses to have a valid fetch. The Intel Net burst microarchitecture, which is the foundation of the Pentium 4 and its successors, uses a trace cache. The trace cache has a lot of shortcomings, but is very useful in handling the limitations of the fetch unit. In Intel processors, the trace cache stores the pre-decoded instructions.

## CHAPTER 4 ILP ARCHITECTURE

P.KARTHIK

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

The end result of instruction-level parallel execution is that multiple operations are simultaneously in execution, either as a result of having been issued simultaneously or because the time to execute an operation is greater than the interval between the issuance of successive operations. How exactly are the necessary decisions made as to when an operation should be executed and whether an operation should be speculatively executed? The alternatives can be broken down depending on the extent to which these decisions are made by the compiler rather than by the hardware and on the manner in which information regarding parallelism is communicated by the compiler to the hardware via the program.

A computer architecture is a contract between the class of programs that are written for the architecture and the set of processor implementations of that architecture. Usually this contract is concerned with the instruction format and the interpretation of the bits that constitute an instruction, but in the case of ILP architectures it extends to information embedded in the program pertaining to the available parallelism between the instructions or operations in the program. With this in mind, ILP architectures can be classified as follows.

- o Sequential architectures: architectures for which the program is not expected to convey any explicit information regarding parallelism. Superscalar processors ([4, 19,20, 11,21- 28]) are representative of ILP processor implementations for sequential architectures.
- o Dependence architectures: architectures for which the program explicitly indicates the dependences that exist between operations. Dataflow processors ([29-31]) are representative of this class.
- o Independence architectures: architectures for which the program provides information as to which operations are independent of one another. Very Long Instruction Word (VLIW) processors ([12, 17, 18]) are examples of the class of independence architectures. In the context of this taxonomy, vector processors [32-34] are best thought of as processors for a sequential, eISe (complex instruction set computer) architecture.

The complex instructions are the vector instructions which do possess a stylized form of instruction-level parallelism internal to each vector instruction. Attempting to execute multiple instructions in parallel, whether scalar or vector, incurs all of the same problems that are faced by a superscalar processor. Because of their stylized approach to parallelism, vector processors are less general in their ability to exploit all forms of instruction-level parallelism.

## CHAPTER 5 SEQUENTIAL ARCHITECTURES AND SUPERSCALAR

P.SAKILA

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

The program for a sequential architecture contains no explicit information regarding the dependences that exist between instructions. Consequently, the compiler need neither identify parallelism nor make scheduling decisions since there is no explicit way to communicate this information to the hardware. (It is true, nevertheless, that there is value in the compiler performing these functions and ordering the instructions so as to facilitate the hardware's task of extracting parallelism.) In any event, if instruction-level parallelism is to be employed, the dependences that exist between instructions must be determined by the hardware. It is only necessary to determine dependences with sequentially preceding operations that are in flight, i.e., those that have been issued but have not yet completed.

The operation is now independent of all other operations and may begin execution. At this point, the hardware must make the scheduling decision of when and where this operation is to execute. A superscalar processor! strives to issue an instruction every cycle, so as to execute many instructions in parallel, even though the hardware is handed a sequential program. The problem is that a sequential program is constructed with the assumption only that it will execute correctly when each instruction waits for the previous one to finish, and that is the only order that the architecture guarantees to be correct. The first task, then, for a superscalar processor is to understand, for each instruction, which other instructions it actually is dependent upon.

With every instruction that a superscalar processor issues, it must check whether the instruction's operands (registers or memory locations that the instruction uses or modifies) interfere with the operands of any other instruction in flight, i.e., one that is either: o already in execution, or o has been issued but is waiting for the completion of interfering instructions that would have been executed earlier in a sequential execution of the program. If either of these conditions is true, the instruction in question must be delayed until the instructions on which it is dependent have completed execution.

For each waiting operation, these dependences must be monitored to determine the point in time at which neither condition is true. When this happens, the instruction is independent of all other uncompleted instructions and can be allowed to begin executing at any time thereafter.

## CHAPTER 6 INSTRUCTION-LEVEL PARALLELISM IN CUF KERNELS

M.AARTHI,

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

ILP is a set of techniques for executing multiple instructions simultaneously within the same CPU core, through keeping different functional units/stages busy for different types/parts of instructions, or providing multiple functional units for the same operation. ILP is largely transparent to the application programmer. It provides for the performance boost without re-writing the base code at all. Three major kinds of ILP are discussed subsequently.

*Pipelining/Super pipelining:* For pipelining, an instruction is considered to be consisting of a number of functional stages. As soon as an instruction completes a stage and the respective functional unit becomes free, the functional unit can be used to perform the same stage of another similar instruction with different data. This is much like an assembly line. A pipeline provides for overlapping the execution of multiple instructions. This might provide the CPU *throughput* (total amount of work done in a given time period) rate close to one instruction per clock cycle. Super pipelining is achieved by dividing each of the pipeline stages that need larger amount of execution time (e.g., the stages concerned with cache/memory access) into a number of stages to obtain fine-grained pipeline stages that require nearly equal amount of execution time. The larger number of stages allows larger number of instructions to be executed in parallel [8]. As of the year 2011, microprocessors commonly have 10–35-stage pipelines

*Superscalarity:* Independent instructions requiring different functional units can be issued/executed simultaneously through dynamic instruction scheduling by the hardware at run-time (for example, simultaneous execution of add and multiply instructions, and load instructions on different functional units). This facilitates for increasing the CPU throughput by executing more than one instruction per CPU cycle ([5, pp. 13–14]). As of the year 2013, microprocessors are usually 2–8-way superscalar. The performance gain due to superscalarity/pipelining is boosted by another independent feature, namely the *out-of-order* execution, which is quite common in modern microprocessors. This feature is based on the concept that it dynamically decides the need and possibility of scheduling an instruction in a way that violates the instruction fetch order

*Vectorization:* Multiple pieces of the vector data (like elements of a linear array) are loaded into special registers and the same instruction is performed on all the pieces, simultaneously. This concept is also referred to as SIMD (*Single instruction, multiple data*). The vectorization or SIMD feature in modern, so-called “scalar,” processors is the renaissance of the concept at a relatively smaller level, which was originally used in “vector” processors in 70s and 80s.



## CHAPTER 7 CONCURRENCY

D.VIJAYALAKSHMI,

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

Parallelism arises at every level of a modern computer system. It is comparatively easy to exploit at the level of circuits and gates, where signals can propagate down thousands of connections at once. As we move up first to processors and then to the many layers of software that run on top of them, the granularity of parallelism—the size and complexity of tasks—increases at every level, and it becomes increasingly difficult to figure out what work should be done by each task and how tasks should coordinate.

For 40 years, microarchitectural research was largely devoted to finding more and better ways to exploit the *instruction-level* parallelism (ILP) available in machine language programs. As we saw in Chapter 5, the combination of deep, superscalar among hundreds of “in-flight” instructions, make progress on scores of them, and complete several in every cycle. Shortly after the turn of the century, it became apparent that a limit had been reached: there simply wasn't any more instruction-level parallelism available in conventional programs.

At the next higher level of granularity, so-called vector parallelism is available in programs that perform operations repeatedly on every element of a very large data set. Processors designed to exploit this parallelism were the dominant form of supercomputer from the late 1960s through the early 1990s. Their legacy lives on in today's single-chip graphics processors, which have recently reached the level of one trillion floating-point operations per second (FLOPS)—100 times the performance of the typical general-purpose processor.

## CHAPTER 8 SYMMETRIC MULTIPROCESSOR ARCHITECTURE

R.RAJAYOGESWARI

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

Symmetric multiprocessing is the most widespread class of shared-memory compute nodes. While nodes of this type can be used as self-contained computers, they serve more frequently as a building block of larger systems such as clusters. This chapter discusses typical components of a symmetric multiprocessing node and their functions, parameters, and associated interfaces. An updated version of Amdahl's law that takes overhead in account is introduced, along with other formulae determining peak computational performance of a node and the impact of memory hierarchy on a metric known as “cycles per instruction”. Finally, a number of commonly used industry-standard interfaces are discussed that permit attachment of additional peripheral devices, expansion boards, and performing input/output functions, and inspection of a node's internal state.

Superscalar architectures enable multiple operations to be launched by a single instruction issue. This is achieved through the incorporation of multiple arithmetic logic units (ALUs), including both floating-point and integer/logical functional units, among others. Additional single-instruction multiple data units may be included to perform the same operations on multiple data values from the same instruction. Known as ILP, this provides among the finest-grain parallelism available to a processor core, and for special cases it can have a dramatic impact on total throughput. Unfortunately, experience over more than two decades shows that in general such peak capabilities are rarely exhibited while still adding complexity, overhead, and power demand to the advanced designs.

## CHAPTER 9 OPTIMIZATION

D.S.CHOZHA BHARATHI

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

We have already seen an example of instruction-level parallelism in this book. In the transpose example of Section 3.4, a shared-memory tile of  $32 \times 32$  was used in most of the kernels. But because the maximum number of threads per block is 512 on certain devices, it is not possible to launch a kernel with  $32 \times 32$  threads per block. Instead, we have to use a thread block with fewer threads and have each thread process multiple elements. In the transpose case, blocks of  $32 \times 8$  threads were launched, with each thread processing four elements.

For the example in this section, we can modify the copy kernel to take advantage of instruction-level parallelism as follows:

where the parameter ILP is set to 4. In this kernel, each thread copies ILP array elements, so a thread block of  $\text{blockDim} \times x$  threads will copy  $\text{ILP} * \text{blockDim} \times x$  elements. In addition to having each thread copy multiple elements, we group or batch all the loads together in the loop from lines 35–37 through use of a thread-private array  $\text{tmp}(\text{ILP})$ , which resides in register memory. The reason we do this *load batching* is because in CUDA a load command will not block further independent execution, but the first use of the data requested by a load will block until that load completes. The term *load-use separation* is used to describe the amount of time or the number of instructions between when a load is issued and when the requested data is used. The larger the load-use separation, the better in terms of hiding load latencies. By *load batching*, as is done in the loop from lines 35–37, we can have ILP load requests in flight per thread. We have increased the load-use separation of the first load by the other  $\text{ILP}-1$  loads issued in the loop.

If we once again use dynamically allocated shared memory to restrict the occupancy to a single block per multiprocessor, we can append the results for  $\text{ILP}=4$  to our table:

Empty Cell	No Shared Memory		Shared Memory		
Empty Cell	Empty Cell	Empty Cell	Empty Cell	No ILP	ILP=4
Thread Block	Occupancy	Bandwidth	Occupancy	Bandwidth	Bandwidth
32	0.25	96	0.016	8	26
64	0.5	125	0.031	15	50
128	1.0	136	0.063	29	90
256	1.0	137	0.125	53	125
512	1.0	137	0.25	91	140

## CHAPTER 10 THE CUDA EXECUTION MODEL

P.KARTHIKEYAN,

*Assistant Professor, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.*

### **ILP: Higher Performance at Lower Occupancy**

High occupancy does not necessarily translate into the fastest application performance. Instruction-level parallelism (ILP) can be equally effective in hiding arithmetic latency by keeping the SIMD cores busy with fewer threads that consume fewer resources and introduce less overhead.

The reasoning for ILP is simple and powerful: using fewer threads means that more registers can be used per thread. Registers are a precious resource, as they are the only memory fast enough to attain peak GPU performance. The larger the bandwidth gap between the register store and other memory, the more data that must come from registers to achieve high performance.

Sometimes having a few more registers per thread can prevent register spilling and preserve high performance. Although necessary, register spilling violates the programmer's expectation of high performance from register memory and can cause catastrophic performance decreases. Utilizing fewer threads also benefit kernels that use shared memory by reducing the number of shared memory accesses and by allowing data reuse within a thread (Volkov, 2010). A minor benefit includes a reduction in some of the work that the GPU must perform per thread.

The following loop, for example, would consume 2048 bytes of register storage and require that the loop counter, `i`, be incremented 512 times in a block with 512 threads. A thread block containing only 64 threads would require only 256 bytes of register storage and reduce the number of integer increment in place operations by a factor of 4. See Example 4.4, “Simple for Loop to Demonstrate ILP Benefits”:

It is important to note that threads don't stall in the SM on a memory access—only on data dependencies. From the perspective of a warp, a memory access requires issuing a load or store instruction to the LD/ST units.<sup>2</sup> The warp can then continue issuing other instructions until it reaches one that depends on the completion of a memory transaction.



# HUMAN RIGHTS

Edited by

**D S CHOZHA BHARATHI**



978-93-6255-643-1

Human Rights

Copyright © 2019 by D.S.Chozha Bharathi

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-643-1

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

CHAPTER 1 Introduction to Human Rights .....1  
**Dr.P.Sathya**

CHAPTER 2 Indian Constitution & Assembly.....2  
**Dr.K.Raja**

CHAPTER 3 Women's & Children Rights .....3  
**D.S.Chozha Bharathi**

CHAPTER 4 Human Rights Movement.....4  
**K.Priyadharshini**

CHAPTER 5 Human Rights Commission Act .....5  
**M.Aarthi**

CHAPTER 6 Civil and Political Rights .....6  
**P.Karthik**

CHAPTER 7 Economic, Social, and Cultural Rights.....7  
**G.Gayathri**

**CHAPTER 1**  
**INTRODUCTION TO HUMAN RIGHTS**  
**DR.P.SATHYA**

Associate Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute  
of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

**Human rights**

Human rights are fundamental rights and freedoms that every individual is entitled to simply because they are human. These rights are universal, inalienable, and interdependent, and they are essential for human dignity and well-being.

**History of Human Rights**

The concept of human rights has evolved over centuries, influenced by various philosophical, cultural, and religious traditions.

**Key milestones include:**

1. Ancient Greece and Rome: Concepts of justice, equality, and individual rights.
2. Enlightenment (17th-18th centuries): Ideas of natural rights, liberty, and social contract.
3. Universal Declaration of Human Rights (1948): Adopted by the United Nations General Assembly, establishing a comprehensive framework for human rights.

**Key Principles of Human Rights**

1. Universality: All individuals are entitled to human rights, regardless of nationality, ethnicity, or other factors.
2. Inalienability: Human rights cannot be taken away, except in specific situations and according to due process.
3. Indivisibility: Human rights are interconnected and interdependent.
4. Equality: All individuals are equal in dignity and rights.
5. Non-discrimination: Human rights are protected against discrimination based on factors like race, gender, or religion.

**Types of Human Rights**

1. Civil and Political Rights:
  - Freedom of speech, assembly, and association
  - Right to life, liberty, and security
  - Right to fair trial and due process
2. Economic, Social, and Cultural Rights:
  - Right to education, healthcare, and social security
  - Right to work, fair wages, and safe working conditions
  - Right to cultural expression and participation
3. Collective Rights:
  - Right to self-determination
  - Right to development
  - Right to a safe and healthy environment

**Challenges and Violations**

Despite progress, human rights continue to face challenges and violations worldwide, including:

1. Conflict and violence
2. Discrimination and inequality
3. Poverty and economic exploitation
4. Climate change and environmental degradation
5. Restrictions on freedom of expression and assembly



**CHAPTER 2**  
**INDIAN CONSTITUTION & ASSEMBLY**  
**DR.K.RAJA**

Associate Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute  
of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

**Indian Constitution assembly**

The Indian Constitution Assembly, also known as the Constituent Assembly of India, was formed on December 6, 1946, to draft the Constitution of India.

This assembly was a result of the August Offer of 1940 by the British Government, which accepted the demand for a Constituent Assembly to frame the Indian Constitution

The assembly had 389 members, including 296 representatives from British India and 93 from the princely states. However, after the partition of India, the membership reduced to 299. The assembly was dominated by the Indian National Congress party, with key figures like Jawaharlal Nehru, Rajendra Prasad, and B.R. Ambedkar playing crucial roles.

**Key Functions of the Constituent Assembly**

**Drafting the Constitution:** The assembly drafted the Constitution of India, which took almost three years to complete Legislative Functions.

The assembly also acted as the first Parliament of India after independence in 1947.

**Ratification of International Membership:**

The assembly ratified India's membership to the Commonwealth in May 1949.

**Committees of the Constituent Assembly:**

**Drafting Committee:** Chaired by B.R. Ambedkar, responsible for drafting the Constitution.

**Union Constitution Committee:** Chaired by Jawaharlal Nehru, focused on the Union Constitution.

**Advisory Committee on Fundamental Rights:** Ensured the protection of fundamental rights in the Constitution. The Constituent Assembly of India played a vital role in shaping the country's future, and its legacy continues to influence Indian politics and governance.

The Indian Constitution serves as the supreme law of the land and has multiple critical uses in the governance, rights protection, and functioning of India as a democratic republic. The Constituent Assembly, which drafted the Constitution, ensured that it would provide a solid foundation for the nation's governance and legal framework.

**Below are the key uses of the Indian Constitution and the role of the Constituent Assembly.**

**1. Framework for Governance**

**Establishes Government Structure:** The Constitution defines the structure of the government at both the central and state levels. It outlines the roles, responsibilities, and powers of the executive (President, Prime Minister, and Cabinet), the legislature (Parliament), and the judiciary (Supreme Court, High Courts).

**Federal System:** The Constitution introduces a federal structure with a division of powers between the Union (central government) and the states. It uses a Union List, State List, and Concurrent List to categorize subjects for law-making.

**2. Protection of Fundamental Rights**

**Ensures Civil Liberties:** The Constitution guarantees Fundamental Rights to every citizen, ensuring protection from discrimination, arbitrary action, or violation of personal freedoms by the state. These rights include: Right to Equality (Articles 14–18), Right to Freedom (Articles 19–22), Right against Exploitation (Articles 23–24), Freedom of Religion (Articles 25–28), Cultural and Educational Rights (Articles 29–30).

**CHAPTER 3**  
**WOMEN'S & CHILDREN RIGHTS**  
**D.S.CHOZHA BHARATHI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute  
of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Women's and children's rights are fundamental components of human rights that focus on addressing the unique needs, challenges, and opportunities of women and children across the globe. These rights are designed to ensure equality, protection, and empowerment in every aspect of life—political, social, economic, and cultural.

**Women's Rights**

Women's rights refer to the entitlements and freedoms that ensure gender equality and address the discrimination, violence, and injustices faced by women. These rights include equal access to education, healthcare, employment, and participation in public life.

**Key Areas of Women's Rights**

**Right to Equality and Non-Discrimination:**

Women are entitled to the same rights as men in all spheres of life, including equal pay for equal work, the right to vote, and equal access to education and employment.

Many international conventions, like the Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women (CEDAW), are focused on eliminating gender-based discrimination.

**Right to Education:**

Education is critical for empowering women. Globally, ensuring equal access to education for girls and women remains a key focus in advancing women's rights.

The right to education ensures women can acquire skills, knowledge, and the freedom to pursue their aspirations.

**Right to Work and Economic Empowerment:**

Women have the right to work in safe and dignified conditions and to receive equal pay for equal work.

The right to maternity leave and protection against workplace discrimination ensures that women can balance their careers and family life without facing penalties.

**Protection from Violence:**

Women's rights include protection from gender-based violence, such as domestic violence, sexual harassment, human trafficking, and rape. Many countries have laws that criminalize violence against women, and international conventions such as the Declaration on the Elimination of Violence Against Women provide a framework to combat this issue.

**Children's Rights**

Children's rights are designed to ensure that every child has access to the fundamental necessities of life and that they are protected from harm, abuse, and exploitation. These rights recognize children's vulnerability and the need for special care and protection.

**Key Areas of Children's Rights**

**Right to Survival and Development:**

Every child has the right to life, and governments must ensure adequate healthcare, nutrition, and shelter to guarantee their survival.

Development rights include access to education, healthcare, and a nurturing environment where children can achieve their full potential.

**Right to Education:**

Every child has the right to free, compulsory primary education, and governments should ensure that secondary and higher education is accessible. Education plays a crucial role in breaking the cycle of poverty and empowering children, especially girls, to build better futures.

## CHAPTER 4

### HUMAN RIGHTS MOVEMENT

**K.PRIYADHARSHINI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute  
of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

The human rights movement is a global effort aimed at promoting and protecting the fundamental rights and freedoms to which all individuals are entitled. This movement has evolved over centuries and has played a crucial role in shaping contemporary legal frameworks and societal norms around the world.

#### **Historical Background**

##### **Ancient and Medieval Roots:**

The concept of human rights can be traced back to ancient civilizations where some basic rights, like the right to justice, were recognized (e.g., the Code of Hammurabi in ancient Mesopotamia).

Philosophers like John Locke in the 17th century argued for natural rights, influencing modern democratic thought. He emphasized the rights to life, liberty, and property.

##### **Enlightenment Era:**

The Enlightenment (17th-18th centuries) promoted ideas of individual liberty and equality. Thinkers such as Voltaire, Rousseau, and Montesquieu advocated for civil liberties and the separation of powers, laying the groundwork for modern democratic governments.

##### **Post-World War II Era:**

After the World War II and the atrocities committed during the war highlighted the urgent need for a framework to protect human rights globally.

In 1948, the Universal Declaration of Human Rights (UDHR) was adopted by the United Nations General Assembly, marking a significant milestone in the human rights movement. It outlined fundamental human rights that are universally protected.

#### **Key Milestones in the Human Rights Movement**

##### **Universal Declaration of Human Rights (UDHR) (1948):**

A landmark document proclaiming the inalienable rights of all people, including civil, political, economic, social, and cultural rights.

It serves as a foundation for international human rights law and inspires national laws and constitutions.

##### **International Covenants (1966):**

The International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights (ICCPR) and the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights (ICESCR) were adopted to further define the rights outlined in the UDHR.

These covenants establish legally binding obligations for states to respect and fulfill human rights.

##### **Decolonization and Civil Rights Movements:**

The mid-20th century saw the emergence of anti-colonial movements advocating for self-determination and basic human rights in colonized nations.

The Civil Rights Movement in the United States (1950s-1960s) sought to end racial segregation and discrimination, inspiring similar movements globally.

##### **Women's Rights Movement:**

The fight for women's rights gained momentum in the late 19th and 20th centuries, focusing on suffrage, reproductive rights, and gender equality. The Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women (CEDAW) was adopted in 1979.

##### **Children's Rights:**

The United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child (UNCRC) was adopted in 1989, recognizing the special rights of children and emphasizing their protection and development.

**CHAPTER 5**  
**HUMAN RIGHTS COMMISSION ACT**  
**M.AARTHI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute  
of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

The Human Rights Commission Act refers to legislation enacted in various countries to establish national human rights institutions responsible for promoting and protecting human rights. One of the most notable examples is the Protection of Human Rights Act, 1993 in India, which led to the establishment of the National Human Rights Commission (NHRC). Below is an overview of the Human Rights Commission Act in India, its objectives, structure, functions, and significance.

### **1. Background**

**Historical Context:** The establishment of national human rights institutions gained momentum globally after the adoption of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights (UDHR) in 1948 and subsequent international human rights instruments.

**Need for a Dedicated Body:** The need for a dedicated body to monitor and protect human rights in India was recognized, leading to the introduction of the Protection of Human Rights Act.

### **2. The Protection of Human Rights Act, 1993**

#### **2.1 Objectives**

The primary objectives of the Act are to:

Promote and protect human rights as enshrined in the Constitution of India and international human rights instruments.

Ensure the effective implementation of human rights laws and policies.

Investigate complaints regarding human rights violations and recommend appropriate actions.

#### **2.2 Establishment of the National Human Rights Commission (NHRC)**

The Act provides for the establishment of the National Human Rights Commission (NHRC), which is tasked with the following responsibilities:

**Monitoring:** The NHRC monitors the human rights situation in the country and ensures compliance with human rights standards.

**Investigation:** It has the authority to investigate complaints of human rights violations by public servants or state agencies.

**Awareness and Education:** The NHRC promotes human rights awareness through education and training programs.

### **3. Structure of the NHRC**

**Composition:** The NHRC consists of a chairperson and several members, including:

A retired Chief Justice of India (Chairperson)

Other members, including legal experts and representatives from various fields, such as social work, education, and health.

**Tenure:** Members are appointed for a term of three years, with the possibility of reappointment.

### **4. Functions of the NHRC**

**Investigation:** The NHRC can inquire into complaints of human rights violations, either suo motu (on its own) or upon receiving a complaint.

**Recommendations:** It makes recommendations to the government for the effective implementation of human rights standards and for addressing violations.

**Promotion of Human Rights:** The NHRC conducts research and publishes reports on human rights issues, promoting awareness and education on human rights.

**CHAPTER 6**  
**CIVIL AND POLITICAL RIGHTS**  
**P.KARTHIK**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute  
of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Civil and political rights are a class of rights that protect individuals' freedoms from infringement by governments, social organizations, and private individuals. They ensure the ability of individuals to participate in the civil and political life of their society without discrimination or repression. These rights are often enshrined in national laws and international treaties and are essential for maintaining democracy and the rule of law.

**1. Definition**

**Civil Rights:** These rights protect individuals' freedoms and ensure equal treatment under the law. They include the right to privacy, freedom of expression, and the right to due process.

**Political Rights:** These rights enable individuals to participate in the political process, including the right to vote, run for public office, and participate in political parties and organizations.

**2. Key Civil and Political Rights**

**2.1 Right to Life and Security**

The right to life is fundamental and protects individuals from arbitrary deprivation of life. This right prohibits extrajudicial killings and enforced disappearances.

**2.2 Right to Liberty and Security of Person**

Individuals have the right to be free from arbitrary arrest and detention. This includes protection from torture and cruel, inhuman, or degrading treatment.

**2.3 Right to Equality Before the Law**

Every individual is entitled to equal protection and equal benefit of the law without discrimination based on race, gender, religion, or other status.

**2.4 Freedom of Expression**

Individuals have the right to express their opinions freely, seek and receive information, and engage in discussions about political, social, and cultural issues.

**2.5 Freedom of Assembly and Association**

People have the right to gather peacefully and associate with others, including forming and joining trade unions, political parties, and other organizations.

**2.6 Right to Participate in Government**

This includes the right to vote in free and fair elections, run for public office, and participate in political processes and decision-making.

**2.7 Right to a Fair Trial**

Individuals are entitled to a fair and public hearing by an independent and impartial tribunal. This includes the presumption of innocence until proven guilty.

**2.8 Freedom of Religion and Belief**

Individuals have the right to practice their religion or belief without coercion and to change their religion or belief.

**2.9 Privacy Rights**

Individuals have the right to privacy, which protects against arbitrary interference with their personal and family life, home, and correspondence.

**3. Legal Framework and Instruments**

**International Treaties**

**Universal Declaration of Human Rights (UDHR) (1948):**

Article 3 affirms the right to life, liberty, and security of person.

Articles 19-21 address freedom of expression, assembly, and participation in government.

**International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights (ICCPR) (1966):**

A legally binding treaty that elaborates on civil and political rights, providing specific protections and outlining states' obligations to uphold these rights.

## **CHAPTER 7**

### **ECONOMIC, SOCIAL, AND CULTURAL RIGHTS**

#### **G.GAYATHRI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute  
of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Economic, social, and cultural rights (ESCR) are a category of human rights that guarantee individuals the necessary conditions to live with dignity, health, and well-being. These rights are essential for the realization of a decent standard of living and include the right to work, the right to education, and the right to participate in cultural life. They complement civil and political rights and are crucial for the overall development and empowerment of individuals and communities.

#### **1. Definition**

Economic, social, and cultural rights encompass a range of rights that ensure individuals have access to the resources and opportunities needed for their economic and social development. These rights recognize that human dignity is fundamentally linked to the availability of essential goods and services, as well as participation in cultural life.

#### **2. Key Economic, Social, and Cultural Rights**

##### **2.1 Right to Work**

Individuals have the right to gain a living by freely chosen or accepted work. This includes the right to just and favorable conditions of work, equal pay for equal work, and the right to form and join trade unions.

##### **2.2 Right to Education**

Everyone has the right to education, which should be accessible, available, acceptable, and adaptable. Education is essential for personal development and empowerment, and it plays a critical role in promoting equality and social cohesion.

##### **2.3 Right to Health**

The right to the highest attainable standard of physical and mental health includes access to essential health care services, safe drinking water, adequate sanitation, and proper nutrition.

##### **2.4 Right to Social Security**

Individuals have the right to social security, including access to benefits during unemployment, sickness, disability, and old age. This right ensures that individuals can maintain a basic standard of living.

##### **2.5 Right to an Adequate Standard of Living**

This right encompasses access to adequate food, clothing, and housing, as well as continuous improvement of living conditions. It ensures that individuals can live in dignity and security.

##### **2.6 Right to Participate in Cultural Life**

Individuals have the right to take part in cultural life, enjoy the benefits of scientific progress, and protect their cultural heritage. This includes the right to engage in cultural activities and preserve one's cultural identity.

#### **3. Legal Framework and Instruments**

##### **International Treaties**

##### **Universal Declaration of Human Rights (UDHR) (1948):**

Articles 22-27 address social and economic rights, including the right to work, education, health, and an adequate standard of living.

##### **International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights (ICESCR) (1966):**

A legally binding treaty that specifically outlines economic, social, and cultural rights and the obligations of state parties to ensure their realization.



# **DISTRIBUTED SYSTEMS**

EDITED BY  
**K.UMASHANKAR**



**978-93-6255-068-2**

DISTRIBUTED SYSTEMS

Copyright@2019 by Mr.K. Umashankar

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-068-2

Publisher: Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST]



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1: Exploring Distributed Systems: Goals, Hardware, Software Concepts, and Communication Protocols in a Connected World.....	1
R. Idayathulla	
CHAPTER 2: Collaborative Computing: Unraveling the Client/Server Model, Remote Procedure Calls, and Synchronization in Distributed Systems.....	3
P. Sakila	
CHAPTER 3: Processing and Resilience in Distributed Systems: Threaded Models, Processor Allocation, and Fault Tolerance, with Insights into Distributed File System Design.....	5
D.S. Chozhabharathi	
CHAPTER :4 Navigating Distributed Shared Memory: Understanding Consistency Models and Comparative Analysis of Page-Based, Shared Variable, and Object-Based Approaches.....	7
G. Gayathri	
CHAPTER 5: Beyond Names and Security: Unveiling Naming Facilities and Security Measures in Distributed Operating Systems, with Case Studies on Amoeba, V-System, Mach, Chorus, and DCE.....	9
R. Suganya	
CHAPTER 6: Issues in Distributed Systems.....	10
R. Rajayogeswari	
CHAPTER 7: Security & Privacy in Distributed systems.....	11
R. Selvakumar	
CHAPTER 8: Distributed Systems in Today's world.....	13
D.Vijayalakshmi	

## CHAPTER-1

### Exploring Distributed Systems: Goals, Hardware, Software Concepts, and Communication

#### Protocols in a Connected World

R. Idayathulla

(Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.)

#### Communication in distributed systems

In a distributed system, each entity may want to share information with other distributed entities. For example, a temperature sensor may want to share its information with a climate control system. The processes run on different machines and the applications implemented by these processes might include communication between them.

#### **Types of communication in distributed systems**

Communication among distributed processes can be categorized into:

**Unstructured communication** - It involves using memory buffers to pass information between the processes. So you might have a shared memory region on a machine. Process can read and write to that shared memory region and then some other process can use that information. uses shared memory or shared data structures; Update a distributed shared memory to let others know of your local state. Others can then read the distributed shared memory to get your local state. No explicit messages are used.

**Structured communication** - also called as 'message passing', this uses explicit messages (or inter- process communication mechanisms) over network. There is no shared memory in this type of communication. The processes can be on same machines or different machines.

## CHAPTER-2

### Collaborative Computing: Unraveling the Client/Server Model, Remote Procedure Calls, and Synchronization in Distributed Systems

P. Sakila

(Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.)

RPC is an effective mechanism for building client-server systems that are distributed. RPC enhances the power and ease of programming of the client/server computing concept. It's a protocol that allows one software to seek a service from another program on another computer in a network without having to know about the network. The software that makes the request is called a client, and the program that provides the service is called a server.

The calling parameters are sent to the remote process during a Remote Procedure Call, and the caller waits for a response from the remote procedure. The flow of activities during an RPC call between two networking systems is depicted in the diagram below.

#### Remote Procedure Call Mechanism

Semantic Transparency:

Syntactic transparency: This implies that there should be a similarity between the remote process and a local procedure.

Semantic transparency: This implies that there should be similarity in the semantics i.e. meaning of a remote process and a local procedure.

Working of RPC:

There are 5 elements used in the working of RPC:

Client

Client Stub

RPC Runtime

Server Stub

Server

## CHAPTER-3

### Processing and Resilience in Distributed Systems: Threaded Models, Processor Allocation, and Fault Tolerance, with Insights into Distributed File System Design

D.S. Chozhabharathi

(Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.)

**Distributed systems** are collections of independent computers that appear to the users as a single coherent system. These systems work together to achieve a common goal by sharing resources and coordinating tasks across different nodes. The main characteristics of distributed systems include:

- **Scalability:** They can be expanded easily by adding more nodes to handle increased load.
- **Fault Tolerance:** They can continue to operate even if some components fail.
- **Concurrency:** Multiple processes can run simultaneously, improving overall efficiency and performance.
- **Transparency:** The complexities of the system are hidden from users, making it appear as a single, unified entity.

#### Challenges with threads in Distributed Systems

Threads offer significant benefits in distributed systems, such as improving performance and enabling concurrent task execution. However, they also present several challenges:

- **Synchronization Issues:** Managing access to shared resources across multiple threads can lead to race conditions, deadlocks, and other synchronization problems. Ensuring proper coordination and data consistency is complex.
- **Resource Management:** Threads require memory and CPU resources. Efficiently managing these resources to prevent contention and ensure fair usage is challenging, especially in a distributed environment with varying loads.
- **Debugging and Testing:** Multi-threaded applications are harder to debug and test due to non-deterministic behavior. Bugs such as race conditions may not appear consistently, making them difficult to reproduce and fix.
- **Communication Overhead:** In distributed systems, threads on different nodes need to communicate, which can introduce latency and increase the complexity of the system. Efficiently managing this communication is critical to maintaining performance.

## CHAPTER-4

# Navigating Distributed Shared Memory: Understanding Consistency Models and Comparative Analysis of Page-Based, Shared Variable, and Object-Based Approaches

G. Gayathri

(Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.)

### **Distributed Shared Memory (DSM)**

implements the distributed systems shared memory model in a distributed system, that hasn't any physically shared memory. Shared model provides a virtual address area shared between any or all nodes. To beat the high forged of communication in distributed system. DSM memo, model provides a virtual address area shared between all nodes. systems move information to the placement of access. Information moves between main memory and secondary memory (within a node) and between main recollections of various nodes. Every Greek deity object is in hand by a node. The initial owner is that the node that created the object. possession will amendment as the object moves from node to node. Once a method accesses information within the shared address space, the mapping manager maps shared memory address to physical memory (local or remote).

DSM permits programs running on separate reasons to share information while not the software engineer having to agitate causation message instead underlying technology can send the messages to stay the DSM consistent between compute. DSM permits programs that wont to treat constant laptop to be simply tailored to control on separate reason. Programs access what seems to them to be traditional memory. Hence, programs that Pine Tree State DSM square measure sometimes shorter and easier to grasp than programs that use message passing. But, DSM isn't appropriate for all things. Client-server systems square measure typically less suited to DSM, however, a server is also wont to assist in providing DSM practicality for information shared between purchasers.

### **Architecture of Distributed Shared Memory (DSM):**

The architecture of a Distributed Shared Memory (DSM) system typically consists of several key components that work together to provide the illusion of a shared memory space across distributed nodes. the components of Architecture of Distributed Shared Memory:

## CHAPTER-5

### Beyond Names and Security: Unveiling Naming Facilities and Security Measures in Distributed Operating Systems, with Case Studies on Amoeba, V-System, Mach, Chorus, and DCE

R. Suganya

(Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.)

Amoeba was originally designed and implemented at the Vrije Universities in Amsterdam, and is now being jointly developed there and at the Centrum voor Wiskunde in Informatics, also in Amsterdam. The chief goal of this work is to build a distributed system that is transparent to the users. This concept can best be illustrated by contrasting it with a network operating system, in which each machine retains its own identity. With a network operating system, each user logs into one specific machine—his home machine. When a program is started, it executes on the home machine, unless the user gives an explicit command to run it elsewhere. Similarly, files are local unless a remote file system is explicitly mounted or files are explicitly copied. In short, the user is clearly aware that multiple independent computers exist, and must deal with them explicitly.

In contrast, users effectively log into a transparent distributed system as a whole, rather than to any specific machine. When a program is run, the system—not the user—decides upon the best place to run it. The user is not even aware of this choice. Finally, there is a single, system-wide file system. The files in a single directory may be located on different machines, possibly in different countries. There is no concept of file transfer, uploading or downloading from servers, or mounting remote file systems. A file's position in the directory hierarchy has no relation to its location.

The remainder of this article will describe Amoeba and the lessons we have learned from building it. In the next section, we will give a technical overview of Amoeba as it currently stands. Since Amoeba uses the client-server model, we will then describe some of the more important servers that have been implemented so far. This is followed by a description of how wide-area networks are handled. Then we will discuss a number of applications that run on Amoeba. Measurements have shown Amoeba to be fast, so we will present some of our data. After that, we will discuss the successes and failures we have encountered, so that others may profit from those ideas that have worked out well and avoid those that have not. Finally, we conclude with a very brief comparison between Amoeba and other systems.

# CHAPTER-6

## Issues in Distributed Systems

R. Rajayogeswari

(Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.)

### Design Issues of Distributed System

#### 1. [Scalability](#)

- Challenges
  - Handling Increased Load: As the number of users or requests increases, the system must scale accordingly without performance degradation.
  - Geographic Distribution: Ensuring performance across geographically dispersed locations.
- Strategies to Achieve Scalability
  - Horizontal Scaling: Adding more nodes to the system.
  - Vertical Scaling: Enhancing the capacity of existing nodes.
  - Sharding: Dividing the database into smaller, more manageable pieces.

#### 2. [Reliability](#)

- Fault Tolerance
  - Redundancy: Using duplicate components to take over in case of failure.
  - Failover Mechanisms: Automatically switching to a standby system when the primary system fails.
- Redundancy and Replication
  - Data Replication: Storing copies of data on multiple nodes to ensure availability and reliability.
  - Consensus Algorithms: Ensuring consistency among replicated data (e.g., Paxos, Raft).

#### 3. [Availability](#)

- Uptime and Downtime Considerations
  - High Availability Architectures: Designing systems to minimize downtime.
  - Monitoring and Alerting: Using tools to detect and respond to issues promptly.
- Techniques to Improve Availability
  - Load Balancers: Distributing incoming requests across multiple servers.
  - Geographic Redundancy: Deploying servers in different geographic locations to avoid single points of failure.

## CHAPTER-7

### Security & Privacy in Distributed systems R. Selvakumar

(Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.)

Securing [distributed systems](#) is crucial for ensuring data integrity, confidentiality, and [availability](#) across interconnected networks. Key measures include implementing strong authentication mechanisms, like multi-factor authentication (MFA), and robust authorization controls such as role-based access control (RBAC). Encryption ensures data protection during transmission and storage. Continuous monitoring and auditing help detect and respond to security threats promptly.

#### Goals of Distributed System Security

Security in a distributed system poses unique challenges that need to be considered when designing and implementing systems. A compromised computer or network may not be the only location where data is at risk; other systems or segments may also become infected with malicious code.

Because these types of threats can occur anywhere, even across distances in networks with few connections between them

New research has been produced to help determine how well, distributed security architectures are actually performing.

In the past, security was typically handled on an end-to-end basis. All the work involved in ensuring safety occurred “within” a single system and was controlled by one or two administrators. The rise of distributed systems has created a new ecosystem that brings with it unique challenges to security. Distributed systems are made up of multiple nodes working together to achieve a common goal, these nodes are usually called peers.

#### Authentication Mechanisms in Distributed System

Authentication mechanisms in distributed systems ensure that users and services are who they claim to be before granting access to resources. Here are the key authentication mechanisms:

##### Password-based Authentication:

Users authenticate with a username and password. Commonly used but vulnerable to password breaches and phishing attacks.



## CHAPTER-8

Distributed Systems in Today's world

D.Vijayalakshmi

(Assistant Professor, Department of Computer science, Ponnaiah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology[PRIST], Thanjavur.)

Historically, distributed computing was expensive, complex to configure and difficult to manage. Thanks to SaaS solutions, however, distributed computing has become more streamlined and affordable for businesses of all stripes and sizes.

Today, all types of computing jobs — from [database management](#) to [video games](#) — use distributed computing. In fact, many types of software, such as cryptocurrency systems, scientific simulations, block chain technologies and [AI platforms](#), wouldn't be possible at all without these platforms.

Distributed systems are used when a workload is too great for a single computer or device to handle.

Distributed systems are essential in situations when the workload is subject to change, such as e-commerce traffic on Cyber Monday or lots of web traffic in response to news about your organization.

Because they draw on the capabilities of other computing devices and processes, distributed systems can offer features that would be difficult or impossible to develop on a single system.

This includes things like performing an off-site server and application backup — if the master catalog doesn't see the segment bits it needs for a restore, it can ask the other off-site node or nodes to send the segments. Virtually everything you do now with a computing device takes advantage of the power of distributed systems, whether that's sending an email, playing a game or reading this article on the web.

Here are some very common examples of distributed systems:

- Telecommunications networks that support mobile and internet networks
- Graphical and video-rendering systems
- Scientific computing, such as protein folding and genetic research
- Airline and hotel reservation systems
- Multiuser video conferencing systems
- Cryptocurrency processing systems (e.g. Bitcoin)
- Peer-to-peer file-sharing systems
- Distributed community compute systems
- Multiplayer video games
- Global, distributed retailers and supply chain management



# E-LEARNING

*Edited by*  
**P.KARTHIK**



978-93-6255-832-9

E-Learning

Copyright © 2019 by P.Karthik

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-832-9

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENT

CHAPTER 1 Introduction to E-Learning P.Karthik	.....1
CHAPTER 2 Understanding, Components, and Applications R. Idayathulla	.....2
CHAPTER 3 Strategizing E-Learning: Essential Component M. Aarthi	.....3
CHAPTER 4 Quality Assurance, and Design Considerations R. Kalaiselvi	.....4
CHAPTER 5 Moodle 2.0 E-Learning Course Development: Features, Architectures, Installation P.Sakila	.....5
CHAPTER 6 Moodle 2.0 E-Learning Course Development: Site Configuration H. Parveenbegum	.....6
CHAPTER 7 Constructing Your Moodle Course Categories, Courses and Static Course Material Integration G.Gayathri	.....7

# CHAPTER 1

## INTRODUCTION TO E-LEARNING

**P.KARTHIK**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

### **E-Learning**

E-Learning is an alternative to a traditional classroom learning experience and is often referred to as “online learning,” “remote learning,” “virtual learning,” “mobile learning,” “digital learning,” or “distance education.”

E-Learning involves using primarily the internet and one or more other technologies involving one/two-way transmissions through open broadcast, closed circuit, cable, microwave, broadband lines, fiber optics, satellite, or wireless communications devices or audio/video conferencing.

E-Learning at Bellevue College encompasses all online courses, including blended hybrid formats, using Canvas, our Learning Management System (LMS). Our programs include Online Associate Degrees, Bachelor’s Degrees, and Certificates.

### **Learning environments, what’s the difference?**

Online, Hybrid, On Campus

- Online courses are taught entirely online and use Canvas. The online Canvas environment replaces the typical classroom experience for material delivery.
  - ❖ Class can be synchronous or asynchronous.
  - ❖ If you are traveling outside of the U.S. during the quarter, please be aware of any internet restrictions in the country(ies) you travel to. Some course content may not be available. Speak with your instructor/advisor about this before starting the course.
  - ❖ Online courses may have required proctored exams.
- Hybrid courses are taught part online and part on campus. Hybrid classes often meet on campus more than one day per week. The rest of your work is completed online via Canvas, our learning management system. These courses will be designated on the class schedule with sections HYA, HYB, HYC, etc.
- On Campus Face-to-Face courses are taught entirely on campus. The instructor provides information and posts for you in our learning management system in Canvas. Posts may include the syllabus and handouts.

## **CHAPTER 2**

### **UNDERSTANDING, COMPONENTS, AND APPLICATIONS**

**R. IDAYATHULLA**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

E-learning, referred to as sharing or transferring skills and knowledge through electronic means, is becoming the need of the hour due to the pandemic. Any e-learning platform to thrive needs to accommodate five major e-learning components. The main function of these components is basically to structure an online course. Here in this article, we are going to discuss the major components of the e-learning platform.

#### **Audience:**

From concept to the implementation of the final product, it is vital to have a target audience for the development of an online course. Everything must be created, designed, and structured by keeping the requirements of the target audience in mind. One of the first steps in the ADDIE procedure (Analysis, Design, Development, Implementation, and Evaluation) is to analyse the target audience. When looking forward to building up an e-learning platform, keep in mind the below-mentioned points related to your target audience:

- Know their expectations
- Think about the learning capacity of the target audience.
- Know if the target audience is equipped with the right hardware and software.

#### **Course Structure:**

When it comes to the course structure, it implies designing the course intended for e-learning. It performs a vital factor in how the potential learners will learn the presented material. In the design stage of the ADDIE procedure, you need to conceptualize how the presented course will be structured and organized. Consider the below-mentioned items when structuring the e-learning course:

- First, recognize the flow of the course you are going to deliver and then find how you are going to modulate the information.
- Make sure to choose the appropriate size of the modules. Try to limit the modules to 8 to 10 pages.

#### **Page Design:**

The design of the page is a very essential factor in the e-learning process. The structure of the page could hugely affect the learning experience of your potential learners. Keep the below-mentioned points in mind when formatting your course for e-learning:

- See that navigation is manageable and easy to use.
- Make sure that the structure of the course is simple, not confusing.
- Ensure that there is an appropriate balance between the textual information and graphics on the page.

## **CHAPTER 3**

### **STRATEGIZING E-LEARNING: ESSENTIAL COMPONENT**

**M. AARTHI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

#### **Understanding the Basics of E-Learning**

E-learning, also known as electronic learning or online learning, is the use of technology to deliver educational content and facilitate learning. It encompasses a wide range of digital tools and resources, including multimedia presentations, interactive modules, social learning platforms, and virtual reality simulations. E-learning offers flexibility and convenience, allowing learners to access the course materials anytime and anywhere with an internet connection.

#### **Defining E-Learning**

E-learning can be defined as a form of learning that utilizes electronic technologies to access educational curriculum outside of a traditional classroom. It involves the use of computers, tablets, and smartphones to deliver instruction and engage learners. E-learning can take various forms, such as self-paced modules, virtual classrooms, or blended learning programs.

#### **Importance of E-Learning in Today's Digital Age**

In today's fast-paced society, where technology is deeply integrated into our daily lives, e-learning has emerged as a vital tool for acquiring knowledge and skills. It offers numerous benefits, such as flexibility, accessibility, and scalability. E-learning allows learners to study at their own pace, in their own time, and at their preferred location. It eliminates geographical barriers and enables people from diverse backgrounds to access quality education.

With the rise of remote work and globalization, e-learning has become even more crucial. It enables individuals to upgrade their skills and stay competitive in the job market without the need to physically attend classes or relocate. This is particularly advantageous for professionals who are looking to enhance their expertise or switch careers.

#### **Key Elements of an Effective E-Learning**

To develop an effective e-learning , it is crucial to consider the following key elements:

##### **Course Content and Structure**

The course content needs to be well-organized and structured to ensure easy navigation and logical flow. Start by identifying the learning objectives and creating a content outline. Chunk the content into manageable modules or units, and provide an overview or roadmap of the course to orient learners. Use clear headings, subheadings, and bullet points to enhance readability and comprehension.

##### **Interactive Elements and Engagement**

Interactivity is a fundamental aspect of e-learning. Incorporate interactive elements, such as quizzes, simulations, case studies, and discussion forums, to engage learners and promote active learning. Encourage learners to apply the knowledge they have gained through interactive activities and provide immediate feedback to reinforce learning.

**CHAPTER 4**  
**QUALITY ASSURANCE, AND DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS**  
**R. KALAISELVI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

**Quality Assurance In E-Learning**

E-learning is an important requirement of our times. Therefore, it needs to be done carefully. Quality assurance needs to be done precisely so that there are no mistakes in the end product. For an e-learning vendor, quality assurance is pivotal to how his course is going to be perceived by learners.

The entire team of the e-learning vendor should devote perfect attention to quality assurance so that learners don't find any mistakes. There is a seat time for every course, time which is spent in preparing a course. The time spent reviewing the course should be twice this time.

**The quality assurance process has to be completed in consecutive rounds.**

It can't be all completed at once. The first round should include checking for colors, and text styles whether they are as per the brand's requirements. In the second round, assess whether the course has the proper functionality. In the last round, check whether the text content is free from all the errors or not.

- **Navigation in the course:**

The most pivotal thing is the quality of a course. You should check every link in the course to see whether they are working perfectly or if there is an error 404. Also, they should be directed to the correct resource. The quizzes should be working perfectly fine, with the learners getting the right score for every wrong or correct answer given by them. The feedback should also be displayed well on time with every wrong answer given by the learner, or he should be directed to the next screen when the answer is right. Hence, the job of a reviewer is to see whether the components of a course are working as per the storyboard. There should be objects aptly aligned in the course and every slide should look perfect, for example the bullets should be correctly aligned.

- **No grammatical errors in the content:**

There is always content included in the course. A major part of quality assurance is to check whether there are any errors included in the course. When the text is displayed in the course, it should not have any spelling or grammatical errors.

- **Use of a checklist for reviewing:**

Before the reviewing process starts, a checklist should be used. This is important for seeing whether all the changes are carried out. This checklist should contain what kind of things should be checked in a slide, one after the other.



## CHAPTER 5

### MOODLE 2.0 E-LEARNING COURSE DEVELOPMENT: FEATURES, ARCHITECTURES, INSTALLATION

**P.SAKILA**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

A software architect tasked with the job of evaluating the architecture of Moodle I find that I'm faced with the task of actually documenting the various aspects (views) of the architecture before I can evaluate it.

Perhaps it would be helpful for me to describe what it is I want to see.

The three main questions I'm trying to answer are:

- What are the major elements that make up the architecture?
- What are the roles and responsibilities of the elements?
- What are the relationships between the elements?

I want to see some documentation that describes the code structures and their relationships (module views), the runtime structures and their relationships (component and connector views), and documentation that describes how the structures interact with non-software elements such as humans and hardware (allocation views).

There are multiple ways to document all of these views. Not all are required, but here are some examples.

Examples of module views:

- Decomposition view (focuses on is-part-of relationships)
- Uses view (focuses on depends-on relationships)
- Generalization view (focuses on is-a relationships)
- Layered view (focuses on the layering of the system, each layer could be thought of as a virtual machine)

Examples of component and connector views:

- Pipes And Filters (Processing/Transforming Streams Of Data)
- Shared Data (Interactions Between Data Accessors And Data Storage)
- Client/Server (Client Interacting With Server)
- Peer-To-Peer (Peer Elements Interacting)

Examples of allocation views:

- Deployment (Focuses On Allocated-To Relationships [Servers, Memory, Cpus, Etc])
- Implementation View (Focuses On Where Files Are, Usually Represented In A File Structure).

## CHAPTER 6

### MOODLE 2.0 E-LEARNING COURSE DEVELOPMENT: SITE CONFIGURATION

#### H. PARVEENBEGUM

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

#### Objectives and constraints of the program

eLearning development is no different from any other complex project: you must know where you're going before you start.

- Look at the big picture: what are you hoping to accomplish?
- Are there benefits to be gained?
- What will you measure to assess the success of the project?

Defining program objectives ensures stakeholders can understand what is expected of them. You should take their feedback into account when determining what to do next. In addition, if you start with the right objectives, you won't have to make significant adjustments later on. We have developed a 'Reverse Brief' to help the client articulate everything that we need to know.

You should make a list of possible project constraints, such as budget, schedule, and timing, as you outline the program objectives. You will thoroughly understand your training requirements and which obstacles may hinder you if you compile these two lists simultaneously.

Spend time with stakeholders and subject matter experts before building your eLearning course to plan and scope the entire project. During the planning process for your eLearning course, you should conduct an initial meeting with your stakeholders to determine the learning objectives, develop a timeline, and establish a project plan. This leads neatly to step two.

#### Needs of the learner

You should take ample time to analyse your learner's or clients' needs.

- Where do they have a knowledge gap or a key problem?
- Can it be measured?
- Are there obstacles to learning or applying their knowledge?

It is crucial to consider their demographics, technical abilities, content experience, and motivation of the learner or client. Is it more important for them to utilise just-in-time microlearning segments, or do they prefer an extended learning period?

Games that allow teams and departments to compete against each other or individually on a leaderboard have shown to be a great way to stimulate interest in learning and influence completion outcomes. Being thorough at these stages is vital to ensure alignment between the content and the organisational context. Defining your expectations and planning how the experience will be evaluated is essential.

## CHAPTER 7

### CONSTRUCTING YOUR MOODLE COURSE CATEGORIES, COURSES AND STATIC COURSE MATERIAL INTEGRATION

**G.GAYATHRI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

#### Course categories

Course categories organize courses for all Moodle site participants. The default course category on a new Moodle site is "Category 1" (although this can be renamed) A Course creator, Administrator or Manager can put all courses in the Category 1 category. However, teachers and students will find it easier to find their classes if they are organized in descriptive categories.

The list of courses within a category by default shows the teachers and the summary of each course. If the number of courses within a category exceeds 9 (10 or more), then a short list without teachers and summary is shown. The number of courses shown before this change occurs can be edited from in Administration > Site administration > Appearance > Courses.

#### Adding a category

Most people organize their courses by department and college or by topic. Be sure to test the organizational scheme with a few users before entering a large number of courses, to save time in moving them later.

Adding categories is very simple:

- ✚ Go to Administration > Site administration > Courses > Create new category
- ✚ Complete the details required and click 'Create category.'
- ✚ Alternatively, you can go to Administration>Site administration>Courses>Manage courses and categories and click the link 'Create new category'.
- ✚ If you are on the category page (or you only have Manager rights at a Course Category level), click the 'Manage courses' button at the top-right of the page and then click the link 'Create new category'.

#### Editing or moving a category

- ✚ You can edit the details of a course category by clicking the actions icon next to its name in Administration>Site administration>Courses>Manage courses and categories. and selecting 'Edit'.
- ✚ You can move categories up or down by clicking the up/down arrow next to the category you wish to move. You can bulk move categories by checking the box to the left of their name and then by selecting from the dropdown 'Move selected categories to'

#### Adding sub-categories

- ✚ Sometimes it might be useful to have a sub-category of a course. For example, you might have a category "Science" and wish to have sub-categories "Biology", "Chemistry" and "Physics".
- ✚ You can make one category a subcategory of another by checking the box to the left of its name and then by selecting from the drop down menu 'Move selected categories to'.

# INTRODUCTION TO ROBOTICS

EDITED BY  
**M.AARTHI**



978-93-6255-551-9

Introduction to Robotics

Copyright © 2019 by M.Aarthi

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-551-9

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 Foundations of Robotics: History, Components.....	1
M.Aarathi	
CHAPTER 2 Robotics Classification, and AI Integration.....	2
M.Aarathi	
CHAPTER 3 Understanding Robotics: Actuators, Sensors.....	3
M.Aarathi	
CHAPTER 4 Understanding Robotics: Kinematics Principles.....	5
M.Aarathi	
CHAPTER 5 Deciphering Robotics Localization: Methods.....	6
M.Aarathi	
CHAPTER 6 Deciphering Robotics Localization: Challenges.....	7
M.Aarathi & P.Karthik	
CHAPTER 7 Advancements in Path Planning.....	8
M.Aarathi & P.Karthikeyan	
CHAPTER 8 Robotic Vision Systems: Techniques, Applications, and Case Studies	
M.Aarathi & Dr.S.Srinivasan.....	9
CHAPTER 9 Diverse Applications of Robotics.....	10
M.Aarathi & R. Idayathulla	
CHAPTER 10 From Aerial to Industrial and Beyond.....	12
M.Aarathi & Dr.G Preethi	

# CHAPTER 1

## FOUNDATIONS OF ROBOTICS: HISTORY, COMPONENTS

**M.AARTHI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

### **History of Robotics**

Much of the work in robotics, however, was done in the 20th century both in fiction and in real life. In 1921, a Czech writer Karel Capek coined the term "Robot" in his play "R.U.R" (Rossum's Universal Robots). The word robot is of Czech origin meaning "forced work". Rossum's Universal Robots is the first time the term "robot" is used officially.

Isaac Asimov gave us the three laws of robotics which can also be used to define what is a robot and what is not. As surprising as it might seem, he wasn't a scientist by any standards, he was a writer who wrote numerous short stories on robots in 1940s and 1950s. He is also admired for coining the term "Robotics". The "Three laws of robotics", which is defined by Isaac Asimov is:

- A Robot may not harm a human being
- A Robot must obey a human being
- A Robot must protect its own existence

In 1948 and 1949, William Grey Walter working in Burden Neurological Institute in Bristol, was able to create two autonomous robots named Elmer and Elsie. Both of them were shaped like tortoise and they used three wheels to move around. And whenever they ran low on battery, they would rush towards the nearest recharge station. That was one of the most impressive works on intelligent robots that can take care of themselves.

Through history of robotics, the 1970s, other intelligent robots emerged. Freddy and Freddy II were able to assemble wooden blocks and put rings on pegs using its video camera 3-DOF and 5-DOF mechanisms. Assembling the parts using manipulators was not that impressive, but the use of cameras to identify objects was fascinating.

Genghis was created by scientists at MIT in 1989. It was one of the first examples of cheap robots. Another great feature of it was its behavioral algorithm which makes the robot behave like a real insect.

Self-driving cars arrived in the 21st century, but they still have a long way to go due to some legal and ethical issues. The new generation of robots like Robonaut 2 are the first humanoid robots in the history of robotics, that are used in space to help astronauts.

**CHAPTER 2**  
**ROBOTICS CLASSIFICATION, AND AI INTEGRATION**  
**M.AARTHI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

There can be some misconceptions that anything that is AI-powered is a robot or that all robots are smart (i.e. AI-powered). In fact, any computer system can make use of AI provided it has enough computing power and is running the necessary AI algorithms and models to complete “intelligent” or “human” tasks, such as processing visual data, understanding natural language, analytical thinking, decision making, and more. On the other hand, robots do not necessarily need AI to operate – they can be pre-programmed for certain repetitive tasks using other kinds of algorithms and calculations or be manipulated by an operator.

Thus, Artificial Intelligence is the branch of computer science that focuses on how machines can be taught and learn to perform complex intellectual tasks, including perception, human language processing, reasoning, decision-making, and even emotional intelligence.

In turn, Robotics is a subset of mechanical engineering dealing with the design and construction of mechanisms that can move and interact with humans to help them complete physical tasks.

With AI application in Robotics, we come to enjoy the multitude of autonomous smart machines that can help humans, or substitute them, in performing repetitive, physically demanding, or dangerous tasks. The most common example of AI in Robotics could be AI-powered robotic vacuum cleaners. Unlike their less advanced counterparts, they are furnished with cameras that allow the smart robotic system to detect and measure distance to objects near it in real time to avoid obstacles.

Now, let’s take a look at how exactly AI technologies can work for robotics, making them truly autonomous and smart.

First of all, for robots to work with AI, they need to be equipped with hardware with plenty of computing power to handle AI workloads. Depending on the robot’s design and measurements and whether it will be handling general-purpose or specific-purpose workloads, computing can be done onboard or in the cloud. With on-board computing, real-time data processing can be done with practically no restrictions and without any internet connection. Meanwhile, cloud computing solutions can help design AI-powered lightweight robots but they will require stable network connectivity to function properly.



## **CHAPTER 3**

### **UNDERSTANDING ROBOTICS: ACTUATORS, SENSORS**

**M.AARTHI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Robotic actuators are the "muscles" of a robot, the parts which convert stored energy into movement. They are an integral part of any robotic system. Actuators are typically powered by air, electricity, or liquids. The type of actuator used can greatly affect the performance and efficiency of the robot.

In the field of robotics, actuators play a crucial role. They are responsible for making the robot move, whether it's a simple movement like the rotation of a joint or more complex like walking or grabbing objects. Their versatility allows for a wide range of applications, from industrial automation to sophisticated humanoid robots. Without actuators, robots would be static and incapable of any movement or action.

The importance of robotic actuators extends beyond just movement. Modern actuators are increasingly integrated with sensors and control systems, enhancing their ability to operate autonomously and intelligently in dynamic environments. They also contribute to the robot's ability to interact with its environment. For instance, a robotic arm used in a manufacturing plant needs to move accurately and smoothly to pick up and place items. This precision is achieved through the use of high-quality actuators.

Robots equipped with sensors offer a number of advantages compared to more traditional machines, as they are capable of obtaining data from the environment and responding accordingly. For example, manufacturers may use pressure sensors to detect changes in the environment and adjust the speed, direction, and force of operation accordingly. And by incorporating temperature and light sensors in robots, they are able to avoid any dangerous environments.

In addition to the data they receive from their environment, robots also need to be able to accurately detect and interact with objects of various materials and shapes. This is accomplished via motion, tactile, and vision sensors. Motion sensors measure changes in the robot's orientation when it moves, Tactile sensors enable the robot to feel an object's texture and hardness, and Vision sensors allow the robot to sense light, such as brightness and color. By combining the data obtained from these sensors, the robot can determine the best way to interact with the environment.

For the human-robot interface, the robot needs to detect the human's position, movements, and speech. In order to accurately do this, robots are programmed with a variety of sensors such as microphones, infrared and ultrasonic detectors, and sonar transducers. Through these sensors, the robot is able to receive vocal commands, detect faces and gestures, and accurately navigate its way in unfamiliar environments.

Sensors not only enable robots to perceive the world around them, but also help robots to communicate with humans and other robots. This is particularly important for service and social robots, which require interfaces like speech and gestures to interact meaningfully with people. By using sensors and programming algorithms, these robots can understand and respond to natural language, facial expressions, and body gestures.

## CHAPTER 4

### UNDERSTANDING ROBOTICS: KINEMATICS PRINCIPLES

**M.AARTHI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Kinematics pertains to the motion of bodies in a robotic mechanism without regard to the forces/torques that cause the motion. Since robotic mechanisms are by their very essence designed for motion, kinematics is the most fundamental aspect of robot design, analysis, control, and simulation. The robotics community has focused on efficiently applying different representations of position and orientation and their derivatives with respect to time to solve foundational kinematics problems.

This will present the most useful representations of the position and orientation of a body in space, the kinematics of the joints most commonly found in robotic mechanisms, and a convenient convention for representing the geometry of robotic mechanisms. These representational tools will be applied to compute the workspace, the forward and inverse kinematics, the forward and inverse instantaneous kinematics, and the static wrench transmission of a robotic mechanism. For brevity, the focus will be on algorithms applicable to open-chain mechanisms.

The goal of this chapter is to provide the reader with general tools in tabulated form and a broader overview of algorithms that can be together applied to solve kinematics problems pertaining to a particular robotic mechanism.

#### **Position and Orientation Representation**

Spatial, rigid body kinematics can be viewed as a comparative study of different ways of representing the pose of a body. Translations and rotations, referred to in combination as rigid body displacements, are also expressed with these representations. No one approach is optimal for all purposes, but the advantages of each can be leveraged appropriately to facilitate the solution of different problems.

The minimum number of coordinates required to locate a body in Euclidean space is six. Many representations of spatial pose employ sets with superabundant coordinates in which auxiliary relationships exist among the coordinates. The number of independent auxiliary relationships is the difference between the number of coordinates in the set and six.

This chapter and those that follow it make frequent use of “coordinate reference frames” or simply “frames”. A coordinate reference frame  $i$  consists of an origin, denoted  $O_i$ , and a triad of mutually orthogonal basis vectors, denoted  $[\hat{x}^i \ \hat{y}^i \ \hat{z}^i]$ , that are all fixed within a particular body. The pose of a body will always be expressed relative to some other body, so it can be expressed as the pose of one coordinate frame relative to another. Similarly, rigid body displacements can be expressed as displacements between two coordinate frames, one of which may be referred to as “moving”, while the other may be referred to as “fixed”. This indicates that the observer is located in a stationary position within the fixed reference frame, not that there exists any absolutely fixed frame.

## CHAPTER 5

### DECIPHERING ROBOTICS LOCALIZATION: METHODS

M.AARTHI

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Localization is a fundamental aspect of robotics, especially for mobile robots, enabling them to navigate, map their surroundings, and carry out various tasks autonomously. Localization involves determining a robot's position and orientation within its environment in real time. This process is crucial for efficient and safe operation, allowing robots to make informed decisions based on their accurate location.

Localization in robotics involves integrating sensor data and other relevant information to estimate a robot's position and orientation in relation to a known coordinate system. This could be a global map or a predefined environment. The primary objective of localization is to reduce uncertainty and provide precise location information, enabling the robot to effectively navigate and interact with its surroundings.

#### Importance of Accurate Localization

**Precise Navigation:** Accurate localization allows a robot to navigate through complex environments with confidence, avoiding obstacles and reaching its intended destination efficiently.

**Collaboration and Coordination:** Robots often work in teams or alongside humans. Accurate localization ensures seamless collaboration and coordination, enhancing efficiency and safety in shared spaces.

**Mapping and Exploration:** Localization is fundamental for mapping and exploration tasks. A robot needs to accurately localize itself to construct detailed maps of the environment.

**Task Execution:** Many robotic tasks, such as picking and placing objects, require precise positioning. Localization is crucial for the successful execution of these tasks.

#### Approaches to Localization

**Odometry-based Localization:** Utilizes data from wheel encoders to estimate the robot's position by tracking the distance and direction of wheel rotations. However, this method is prone to drift over time due to wheel slippage and inaccuracies.

**Sensor-based Localization:** Integrates data from various sensors (e.g., LiDAR, cameras, IMU) to estimate the robot's position and orientation. Algorithms like Simultaneous Localization and Mapping (SLAM) use this data to create maps and localize the robot simultaneously.

**Beacon-based Localization:** Involves placing known beacons or markers in the environment. The robot uses these markers to determine its position relative to them, enabling localization with high accuracy.

## CHAPTER 6

### DECIPHERING ROBOTICS LOCALIZATION: CHALLENGES

**M.AARTHI & P.KARTHIK**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Robotics is a field that is quickly developing, promising a future that was previously only imagined in science fiction. It is crucial to acknowledge and comprehend the difficulties that come with moving further into this technological frontier. The field of robotics is filled with challenges that need to be overcome, from artificial intelligence to moral quandaries and public perception. In this article, we will examine the top ten challenges for robotics and provide insights into their complexity as well as potential solutions.

#### **I. The Dawn of a Robotic Revolution**

A robotic revolution took place at the beginning of the twenty-first century. What was once only used in industrial settings is now becoming a part of daily life. As robots enter manufacturing, healthcare, transportation, and even our homes, the potential is astounding.

#### **II. Challenge 1: Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning**

Robotics is based on artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning (ML). Robots can make decisions, adapt, and learn from their experiences thanks to these technologies, which act as their brains. These technologies serve as robots' brains, enabling them to make decisions, adapt, and learn from their experiences. One of the most exciting challenges is the quest to give robots decision-making abilities similar to those of humans. Walkthroughs in AI and ML are driving robots to become smarter and more capable than ever before.

#### **III. Challenge 2: Sensory Perception**

Robots must have accurate sensory perception to move around and communicate in the real world. It is extremely difficult to replicate human-like sensory perception, from touch and vision to hearing and smell. Robots are getting closer to understanding their environment thanks to recent developments in computer vision and sensory technologies.

#### **IV. Challenge 3: Human-Robot Interaction**

It would be interesting and difficult to coexist with robots in our daily lives. When interacting with robots, it is essential to understand human emotions, empathy, and ethical concerns. Real-world examples of robots working alongside humans, such as healthcare assistants and elderly companions, make the importance of this challenge increasingly clear.

#### **V. Challenge 4: Navigation and Mobility**

Robotics experts are investigating how to move through various environments. Mobility is essential to extending the use of robots, whether it be self-driving cars navigating congested highways or inventive walking and flying robots exploring inaccessible locations.

## CHAPTER 7

### ADVANCEMENTS IN PATH PLANNING

M.AARTHI & P.KARTHIKEYAN

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Path planning lets an autonomous vehicle or a robot find the shortest and most obstacle-free path from a start to goal state. The path can be a set of states (position and/or orientation) or waypoints. Path planning requires a map of the environment along with start and goal states as input. The map can be represented in different ways such as grid maps, state spaces, and topological roadmaps. Maps can be multilayered for adding bias to the path.

A few popular categories of path planning algorithms for autonomous vehicles include:

**Grid-based search algorithms**, which find a path based on minimum travel cost in a grid map. They can be used for applications such as mobile robots in a 2D environment. However, the memory requirements to implement grid-based algorithms could increase with the number of dimensions, such as for a 6-DOF robot manipulator.

**Sampling-based search algorithms**, which create a searchable tree by randomly sampling new nodes or robot configurations in a state space. Sampling-based algorithms can be suitable for high-dimensional search spaces such as those used to find a valid set of configurations for a robot arm to pick up an object. Generating dynamically feasible paths for various practical applications make sampling-based planning popular, even though it does not provide a complete solution.

**Trajectory optimization algorithms**, which formulate the path planning problem as an optimization problem that considers the desired vehicle performance, relevant constraints, and vehicle dynamics. Along with generating dynamically feasible trajectories, they can also be applied for online path planning in uncertain environments. However, depending on the complexity of the optimization problem, real-time planning can be prohibitive.

Path planning is the problem of finding a collision-free path for the robot from its starting configuration to a goal configuration. This is one of the oldest fundamental problems in robotics. Ideally, a path planning algorithm would guarantee to find a collision-free path whenever such a path exists. Such algorithms are said to be complete. Unfortunately, it has been shown that the path planning problem is NP complete. Numerous hardness results have been obtained for different versions of the problem, but the sad fact is that planning collision-free paths is generally intractable for even moderately complex robotic systems.

For this reason, modern path planning algorithms try to strike a balance between completeness (often settling for weaker variations on this idea) and efficiency, while finding solution paths for most typical problems.

## CHAPTER 8

### ROBOTIC VISION SYSTEMS: TECHNIQUES, APPLICATIONS, AND CASE STUDIES

**M.AARTHI & DR.S.SRINIVASAN**

Assistant Professor & Associate Professor

Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Robotics is a branch of technology that integrates computer science and engineering while dealing with physical robots. The latter is equipped with sensors to visualize and perceive the surroundings and effectors to interact with the outside world. Computer vision relies on these sensors a great deal to give robots the ability to “see” as well as target objects of interest.

#### **Robot vision vs. computer vision**

These two are often erroneously perceived as one. Robot vision is one of the latest innovations robotics and automation technology pride themselves on. In its broader definition, it enables robots and other machines to see. Robot vision is made up of algorithms, cameras, and any other hardware that helps robots develop visual insights. This allows machines to carry out complex visual tasks, such as a robot arm programmed to pick up an object placed on the board. In this case, it will use sensors, cameras, and vision algorithms to perform the task.

Computer vision, on the flip side, aims to give computers the ability to see by building algorithms that process digital images or videos. It is mostly concerned with image classification, object detection, tracking, and pose estimation. However, computer vision and its implementation in the robotics industry is multi-faceted, which we will explore further in the coming sections.

#### **Why computer vision in robotics?**

If you still have a question as to why robotic vision is not enough, keep in mind the following: robotic vision can contain elements of computer vision. And we know that visual data processing is a must for robots to perform instructions. The ultimate computer vision integration in robotics covers a broader spectrum of disciplines and reappears across categories. From medical science and autonomous navigation, up until nanotechnologies turn to robots to capitalize on daily operations. This points to the abundance of layers existing within the conditional “computer vision applications in robotics” heading.

#### **Common applications**

Visual feedback is essential for image and vision-guided robots. Their power of sight is one of the elements that make them widely used across different disciplines. By and large, the applications of computer vision in robotics include but are far not limited to the following:

- Space robotics
- Industrial robotics
- Military robotics
- Medical robotics
- Warehousing and distribution

## CHAPTER 9

### DIVERSE APPLICATIONS OF ROBOTICS

**M.AARTHI & R. IDAYATHULLA**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

There are many jobs in industries like manufacturing, agriculture, entertainment, etc. which require boring repetitive work that also requires a lot of precision. In such situations, robots are better suited than humans because they are precise, intelligent, and don't get bored like humans! There are also tasks like space and underwater exploration that are very dangerous and unsafe for humans.

#### **Some of Applications of Robotics:**

- Security
- Space Exploration
- Entertainment
- Agriculture
- Health Care

#### **1. Security**

One of the top applications of robotics is in the field of security. Imagine a world where all security guards are robots. Even thieves would think twice before committing a crime! That's why robotics is being considered as a solution to enhance security measures. Robots can serve as security agents, protecting humans without being vulnerable to danger like human security guards.

One prominent company leading the way in this field is Knightscope in the United States. They have developed autonomous security robots equipped with cutting-edge features to assist human security guards effectively. These robots are capable of providing real-time, actionable intelligence, helping to prevent and address various crimes such as armed robberies, burglaries, domestic violence, fraud, hit-and-runs, and more.

#### **2. Space Exploration**

Many things in space are very dangerous for astronauts to do. Humans can't roam on Mars all day to collect soil samples or work on repairing a spaceship from the outside while it's in deep space! In these situations, robots are a great choice because there are no chances for the loss of human life. So space institutions like NASA frequently use robots and autonomous vehicles to do things that humans can't. This can be one of the top applications of robotics.

For example, Mars Rover is an autonomous robot that travels on Mars and takes pictures of Martian rock formations that are interesting or important and then sends them back to Earth for NASA scientists to study.

## CHAPTER 10

### FROM AERIAL TO INDUSTRIAL AND BEYOND

**M.AARTHI & DR. G PREETHI**

Assistant Professor & Associate Professor

Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

The Fourth Industrial Revolution is closely linked with the use of AI, which describes the capacity of machines to perform complex tasks with human-like intelligence. AI encompasses processes such as reasoning, problem-solving, planning, learning, understanding, and interpreting human languages.

In the civilian sphere, drone or UAS applications cover a wide range of activities, from livestock monitoring and search and rescue operations to goods transportation, construction inspection, mapping of inaccessible areas, and storm tracking. Drones are also employed in tasks like field seeding, spraying, medication delivery, and sensor data collection, among other innovative uses.

#### **The Technology Behind Drones**

Drones equipped with Artificial Intelligence (AI) can process massive amounts of data more swiftly, aiding in decision-making processes. The applications of AI in drones are extensive. Here, we mention some of the technologies required for drones to operate autonomously and make decisions independently. These technologies include motion planning (MP), machine learning, deep learning, and trajectory planning.

Motion planning is used to reduce collision risks through the detection and recognition of objects such as people, cyclists, or other vehicles, as well as the proper planning of flight routes. There are different types of AI technologies used in MP:

- **Machine Learning (ML):** Often utilizes statistical techniques to enable computers to learn from data, even without being explicitly programmed to do so.

- **Artificial Neural Networks (ANN):** Another ML technique that mimics the operations of the human brain to analyze and respond to received information.

- **ANNs** use artificial neurons distributed across several input, internal, and output layers.

It's crucial to highlight the importance of data analysis and navigation in the successful application of AI in drones. Faster and more precise data processing leads to more efficient autonomous navigation and recognition.

#### **Advantages of AI-Equipped Drones**

AI-equipped drones have shown significant improvements in efficiency. For instance:

- **Delivery Services:** Some online retailers aim to achieve delivery times of 30 minutes or less using drones, which is much faster compared to traditional delivery methods.



# COMPUTER NETWORKS

EDITED BY



**R.RAJAYOGESHWARI**



978-93-6255-718-6

Computer Networks

Copyright © 2019 by R.Rajayogeshwari

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-718-6

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1: Understanding Network Fundamentals-----	1
R.Rajayogeshwari	
CHAPTER 2: Hardware to Guided Transmission Media-----	3
R.Rajayogeshwari & R. Banumathi	
CHAPTER 3: Exploring Wireless Transmission and Communication Infrastructure and from Satellites to Local loop. -----	5
R.Rajayogeshwari & Dr.K.Raja	
CHAPTER 4: Foundations of Data Link Protocols-----	7
R.Rajayogeshwari & P.Karthik	
CHAPTER 5: Sliding Windows to Bluetooth Connectivity-----	9
R.Rajayogeshwari & R. Kalaiselvi	
CHAPTER 6: Network Layer Essentials-----	11
R.Rajayogeshwari & P.Sakila	
CHAPTER 7: Network Layer Essentials: Design, Routing, and IP Protocols-----	13
R.Rajayogeshwari & R.Suganya	
CHAPTER 8 : Decoding the Transport Layer-----	15
R.Rajayogeshwari & R.Selvakumar	
CHAPTER 9 : Decoding the Transport Layer Services and Connection Management----	17
R.Rajayogeshwari & P.Sakila	
CHAPTER 10: Decoding the Transport Layer Secure Communication-----	19
R.Rajayogeshwari	

# CHAPTER-1

## UNDERSTANDING NETWORK FUNDAMENTALS

**R.RAJAYOGESHWARI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Computer networking is a cornerstone of modern technology, enabling the interconnected systems that power the Internet, business communications, and everyday digital interactions. Understanding the fundamentals of computer networking is essential for anyone involved in technology, from enthusiasts to professionals. This article will explore the basics of computer networking, including network types, components, protocols, and essential services like the Domain Name System (DNS).

### **Computer Network**

A computer network is a collection of interconnected devices that share resources and information. These devices can include computers, servers, printers, and other hardware. Networks allow for the efficient exchange of data, enabling various applications such as email, file sharing, and internet browsing.

Basics building blocks of a Computer network are Nodes and Links. A Network Node can be illustrated as Equipment for Data Communication like a Modem, Router, etc., or Equipment of a Data Terminal like connecting two computers or more. Link in Computer Networks can be defined as wires or cables or free space of wireless networks.

The working of Computer Networks can be simply defined as rules or protocols which help in sending and receiving data via the links which allow Computer networks to communicate. Each device has an IP Address, that helps in identifying a device.

### **Basic Terminologies of Computer Networks**

- **Network:** A network is a collection of computers and devices that are connected together to enable communication and data exchange.
  - **Nodes:** Nodes are devices that are connected to a network. These can include computers, Servers, Printers, Routers, Switches, and other devices.
  - **Protocol:** A protocol is a set of rules and standards that govern how data is transmitted over a network. Examples of protocols include TCP/IP, HTTP, and FTP.
- **Topology:** Network topology refers to the physical and logical arrangement of nodes on a network. The common network topologies include bus, star, ring, mesh, and tree.
- **Service Provider Networks:** These types of Networks give permission to take Network Capacity and Functionality on lease from the Provider. Service Provider Networks include Wireless Communications, Data Carriers, etc.

## CHAPTER - 2

### HARDWARE TO GUIDED TRANSMISSION MEDIA

**R. RAJAYOGESHWARI & R. BANUMATHI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

#### Overview of Transmission Media

- **Definition:** Transmission media refers to the physical pathways through which data signals are transmitted from one device to another.
- **Types:** It can be broadly classified into guided (wired) and unguided (wireless) media.

#### Guided Transmission Media

##### 1. Twisted Pair Cable:

- **Description:** Consists of pairs of insulated copper wires twisted together.
- **Categories:** Ranging from CAT1 (voice) to CAT6 (high-speed data).
- **Applications:** Commonly used in telecommunication and local area networks (LANs).

##### 2. Coaxial Cable:

- **Structure:** Consists of a central conductor, insulating layer, a metallic shield, and an outer insulating layer.
- **Advantages:** Higher bandwidth and better resistance to interference compared to twisted pair.
- **Uses:** Television distribution, broadband internet, and other data communications.

##### 3. Fiber Optic Cable:

- **Composition:** Made of glass or plastic fibers that transmit data as light signals.
- **Advantages:** Very high bandwidth, longer distances without loss, and immunity to electromagnetic interference.
- **Types:** Single-mode and multimode fibers, used in various applications from telecommunications to medical instruments.

#### Comparison of Media

- **Bandwidth:** Fiber optic generally offers the highest bandwidth, followed by coaxial and then twisted pair.
- **Distance:** Fiber optic cables can transmit over long distances without signal loss, whereas twisted pair and coaxial cables are limited in range.
- **Cost:** Twisted pair cables are usually the most cost-effective option for short distances; fiber optic cables can be more expensive to install.

#### Applications

- **Local Area Networks (LANs):** Use twisted pair and fiber optic cables for connecting devices within a limited area.

## CHAPTER - 3

### EXPLORING WIRELESS TRANSMISSION AND COMMUNICATION INFRASTRUCTURE AND FROM SATELLITES TO LOCAL LOOP

**R.RAJAYOGESHWARI & DR.K.RAJA**

Assistant Professor & Associate Professor

Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology,  
Tamil Nadu, India.

#### Introduction to Wireless Transmission

- **Definition:** Wireless transmission refers to the transfer of information over a distance without the use of cables or wires.
- **Significance:** Enables mobile communications, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and satellite communication, providing flexibility and convenience.

#### Types of Wireless Transmission

- **Radio Waves:** Used for AM/FM radio, TV broadcasts, and mobile communication. Frequency ranges from a few kHz to GHz.
- **Microwave Transmission:** Used for point-to-point communication; relies on line-of-sight. Commonly used in cellular networks and satellite links.
- **Infrared Communication:** Used for short-range communication, such as remote controls and some wireless local area networks (WLANs).
- **Millimeter Waves:** Emerging technology for high-speed data transmission, especially in 5G networks.

#### Wireless Communication Infrastructure

- **Base Stations:** Central points that communicate with mobile devices. Include antennas, transceivers, and backhaul connections.
- **Cellular Networks:** Consist of a series of interconnected base stations that cover specific geographic areas (cells) for mobile communication.
- **Repeaters and Amplifiers:** Extend the range of wireless signals, essential in urban environments with obstacles.
- **Access Points:** Provide connectivity for devices to wireless networks, commonly used in Wi-Fi setups.

#### From Satellites to Local Loop

- **Satellite Communication:**
  - **Types of Satellites:** Geostationary (fixed position relative to Earth), Low Earth Orbit (LEO), and Medium Earth Orbit (MEO).
  - **Applications:** Television broadcasting, internet access in remote areas, GPS services.

## CHAPTER - 4

### FOUNDATIONS OF DATA LINK PROTOCOLS

**R.RAJAYOGESHWARI & P.KARTHIK**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

#### Introduction to Data Link Protocols

- **Definition:** Data link protocols are a set of rules that govern how data is transmitted over a physical medium in a network.
- **Role in Networking:** They ensure reliable data transfer between directly connected nodes, manage error detection and correction, and control access to the shared medium.

#### The OSI Model and the Data Link Layer

- **Overview of the OSI Model:** The Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) model consists of seven layers, with the data link layer being the second layer.
- **Functions of the Data Link Layer:**
  - **Framing:** Encapsulates network-layer packets into frames.
  - **Addressing:** Adds physical addresses (MAC addresses) to frames for delivery to the correct device.
  - **Error Detection and Correction:** Implements techniques to identify and correct errors in transmitted frames.
  - **Flow Control:** Manages data transmission rates between sender and receiver to prevent buffer overflow.

#### Types of Data Link Protocols

- **Unacknowledged Protocols:**
  - **Description:** These protocols do not require acknowledgment of frame receipt.
  - **Example:** ALOHA protocol used in early wireless communications.
- **Acknowledged Protocols:**
  - **Description:** Require acknowledgment from the receiver, enhancing reliability.
  - **Examples:** Stop-and-Wait ARQ, Go-Back-N ARQ, and Selective Repeat ARQ.

#### Key Concepts in Data Link Protocols

- **Framing Techniques:**
  - **Bit-oriented Protocols:** Use special bit sequences (flags) to define frame boundaries.
  - **Byte-oriented Protocols:** Use specific byte patterns to identify the start and end of frames (e.g., PPP - Point-to-Point Protocol).
- **Error Detection and Correction Techniques:**
  - **Checksums:** Simple error detection by calculating a sum of data segments.

## CHAPTER - 5

### SLIDING WINDOWS TO BLUETOOTH CONNECTIVITY

**R.RAJAYOGESHWARI & R. KALAISELVI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

#### Introduction to Data Transmission Techniques

- **Overview:** Data transmission techniques are essential for ensuring efficient and reliable communication over networks. This chapter explores the sliding window protocol and Bluetooth connectivity.

#### Sliding Window Protocol

- **Definition:** A sliding window protocol is a flow control method that allows multiple frames to be in transit before needing an acknowledgment.
- **Purpose:** It improves network efficiency by allowing continuous transmission and managing the flow of data packets between sender and receiver.

#### How the Sliding Window Protocol Works

- **Window Size:** Defines the number of frames that can be sent without waiting for an acknowledgment.
- **Sender and Receiver Windows:**
  - **Sender Window:** The range of frames that can be sent.
  - **Receiver Window:** The range of frames that can be accepted.
- **Process:**
  - The sender transmits multiple frames and waits for acknowledgment.
  - As acknowledgments are received, the window "slides" forward, allowing new frames to be sent.

#### Types of Sliding Window Protocols

- **Go-Back-N ARQ:**
  - **Mechanism:** The sender can send several frames, but if an error occurs, all subsequent frames must be resent.
  - **Efficiency:** Simple but can lead to inefficiencies with high error rates.
- **Selective Repeat ARQ:**
  - **Mechanism:** Only the erroneous frames are resent, allowing for greater efficiency.
  - **Advantages:** Reduces unnecessary retransmissions, improving throughput.

#### Bluetooth Connectivity

- **Overview:** Bluetooth is a wireless technology that facilitates short-range communication between devices.



## CHAPTER-6

### NETWORK LAYER ESSENTIALS

**R.RAJAYOGESHWARI & P.SAKILA**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

#### Introduction to the Network Layer

- **Definition:** The network layer is the third layer in the OSI model, responsible for routing packets across networks.
- **Purpose:** It enables communication between devices on different networks and manages data packet forwarding.

#### Key Functions of the Network Layer

- **Routing:** Determines the best path for data packets to travel from source to destination.
- **Logical Addressing:** Assigns IP addresses to devices to facilitate unique identification across networks.
- **Packet Forwarding:** Moves packets from the source to the destination, handling errors and congestion.

#### Network Layer Protocols

- **Internet Protocol (IP):**
  - **IPv4:** The fourth version of IP, uses 32-bit addresses; offers around 4.3 billion unique addresses.
  - **IPv6:** The sixth version, uses 128-bit addresses; designed to overcome the limitations of IPv4, allowing for a virtually unlimited number of addresses.
- **Other Protocols:**
  - **ICMP (Internet Control Message Protocol):** Used for error reporting and diagnostics (e.g., ping).
  - **IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol):** Manages multicast group memberships.

#### Logical Addressing

- **Structure of IP Addresses:**
  - **IPv4 Addressing:** Divided into network and host portions, represented in decimal format (e.g., 192.168.1.1).
  - **IPv6 Addressing:** Represented in hexadecimal, provides a larger address space to accommodate more devices.
- **Subnetting:** Divides a larger network into smaller, manageable sub-networks, improving efficiency and security.

## CHAPTER-7

### NETWORK LAYER ESSENTIALS: DESIGN, ROUTING, AND IP PROTOCOLS

**R.RAJAYOGESHWARI & R.SUGANYA**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

**Network Layer** is responsible for the transmission of data or communication from one host to another host connected in a network. Rather than describing how data is transferred, it implements the technique for efficient transmission. In order to provide efficient communication protocols are used at the network layer. The data is being grouped into packets or in the case of extremely large data it is divided into smaller sub packets. Each protocol used has specific features and advantages. The below article covers in detail the protocols used at the network layer.

**IP routing** is the application of routing methodologies to IP networks. This involves not only protocols and technologies but includes the policies of the worldwide organization and configuration of Internet infrastructure. In each IP network node, IP routing involves the determination of a suitable path for a network packet from a source to its destination in an IP network. The process uses static configuration rules or dynamically obtained from routing protocols to select specific packet forwarding methods to direct traffic to the next available intermediate network node one hop closer to the desired final destination, a total path potentially spanning multiple computer networks.

#### **Types of Routing Protocols**

Routing is the process of moving information from a source to a destination across the internetwork. Typically, at least one intermediary node is encountered along the path. Routing takes place at Layer 3 (the network layer) of the OSI model. Typically, networks employ a combination of static and dynamic routing. Static routing is preferable for small networks, whereas dynamic routing is ideal for large networks.

Routing protocols are mechanisms for exchanging routing information between routers to make routing decisions. Routing protocols can facilitate effective and efficient communication between computer networks. Regardless of the scale of the network, these protocols facilitate the secure delivery of data to its destination. Understanding the various categories and types helps determine which routing method will best meet your goals.

Depending on their properties, routing protocols can be categorized into distinct classes. In particular, routing protocols can be categorized according to their:

**Behavior:** Classful (legacy) or classless protocol.

**Purpose:** Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP) or Exterior Gateway Protocol (EGP).

**Operation:** Path-vector protocol, distance vector protocol, and link-state protocol.

## CHAPTER-8

### DECODING THE TRANSPORT LAYER

**R.RAJAYOGESHWARI & R.SELVAKUMAR**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

#### Introduction to the Transport Layer

- **Definition:** The transport layer is the fourth layer of the OSI model, responsible for end-to-end communication, data flow control, and error recovery between host systems.
- **Purpose:** Ensures reliable or unreliable delivery of data segments and manages the flow and integrity of information.

#### Key Functions of the Transport Layer

- **Segmentation and Reassembly:** Divides application data into smaller segments for transmission and reassembles them at the destination.
- **Error Detection and Recovery:** Identifies errors in transmitted segments and manages retransmission.
- **Flow Control:** Regulates data transmission rates between sender and receiver to prevent buffer overflow.
- **Connection Control:** Establishes, maintains, and terminates connections between applications.

#### Transport Layer Protocols

- **TCP (Transmission Control Protocol):**
  - **Characteristics:** Connection-oriented, reliable, and provides error recovery and flow control.
  - **Mechanisms:**
    - **Three-Way Handshake:** Establishes a connection (SYN, SYN-ACK, ACK).
    - **Sequence Numbers:** Ensures segments are delivered in order.
    - **Acknowledgments:** Confirms receipt of segments.
    - **Flow Control:** Utilizes a sliding window mechanism.
- **UDP (User Datagram Protocol):**
  - **Characteristics:** Connectionless, faster, but less reliable than TCP.
  - **Use Cases:** Suitable for applications where speed is critical and occasional data loss is acceptable (e.g., video streaming, online gaming).

#### TCP vs. UDP

- **Reliability:** TCP guarantees delivery, while UDP does not.
- **Connection:** TCP requires a connection to be established; UDP does not.

## CHAPTER-9

### DECODING THE TRANSPORT LAYER SERVICES AND CONNECTION MANAGEMENT

**R.RAJAYOGESHWARI & P.SAKILA**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

#### Introduction to Services in Networking

- **Definition of Services:** Services refer to the functionalities provided by the network to applications, enabling data communication and interaction.
- **Role of the Transport Layer:** The transport layer provides end-to-end services that ensure reliable or unreliable delivery of data.

#### Types of Services

- **Connection-Oriented Services:**
  - **Characteristics:** Establishes a connection before data transfer, ensuring reliability and order.
  - **Examples:** TCP (Transmission Control Protocol).
  - **Use Cases:** Applications requiring guaranteed delivery, such as file transfers, web browsing, and email.
- **Connectionless Services:**
  - **Characteristics:** No need for a pre-established connection; data is sent as independent packets.
  - **Examples:** UDP (User Datagram Protocol).
  - **Use Cases:** Applications where speed is critical, and occasional data loss is acceptable, such as video streaming and online gaming.

#### Service Models

- **Reliable Delivery:** Ensures that all data sent is received by the destination. Achieved through mechanisms like acknowledgments and retransmissions (e.g., TCP).
- **Unreliable Delivery:** No guarantees on the delivery of packets; useful for applications prioritizing speed over reliability (e.g., UDP).
- **Order Preservation:** Connection-oriented services maintain the sequence of packets, while connectionless services do not guarantee order.

#### Connection Management

- **Definition:** The process of establishing, maintaining, and terminating connections between communicating devices.
- **Phases of Connection Management:**
  - **Connection Establishment:** Involves negotiation of parameters and resources needed for communication (e.g., TCP's three-way handshake).
  - **Data Transfer:** Actual transmission of data after the connection is established.

## CHAPTER-10

### DECODING THE TRANSPORT LAYER SECURE COMMUNICATION

**R.RAJAYOGESHWARI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Computer Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

#### Understanding TLS for Secure Communication

Transport Layer Security (TLS) is a cryptographic protocol that ensures secure communication between clients and servers over networks. By guaranteeing privacy, integrity, and authentication of transmitted data, TLS safeguards against eavesdropping and tampering. Operating at the transport layer of the TCP/IP protocol suite, TLS forms the foundation for secure browsing, email transmission, and other vital network communications.

**TLS Handshake:** A Foundation of Security The TLS handshake initiates a secure connection between clients and servers. This critical process involves the following steps:

1. **Client Hello:** The client begins by sending a Client Hello message to the server. This message includes the client's supported TLS versions, cipher suites, and other relevant parameters.
2. **Server Hello:** In response, the server sends a Server Hello message, selecting the appropriate TLS version and cipher suite for the connection.
3. **Certificate Exchange:** The server sends its digital certificate, containing its public key, to the client. The client verifies the authenticity of this certificate.
4. **Key Exchange:** The client generates a pre-master secret and encrypts it using the server's public key. This encrypted pre-master secret is sent to the server, which decrypts it to obtain the shared secret.
5. **Session Key Generation:** Both the client and server independently derive session keys from the shared secret. These keys are used for encrypting and decrypting data during the session.
6. **Encrypted Communication:** The client and server exchange encrypted messages using the agreed-upon encryption algorithm and session keys, ensuring secure communication.

# OPTICAL COMMUNICATION

Edited by

**E.PRIYADHARSHINI**

---



978-93-6255-746-9

OPTICAL COMMUNICATION

COPYRIGHT @ 2019 BY E.PRIYADHARSHINI

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. NO PART OF THIS BOOK MAY BE REPRODUCED OR TRANSMITTED IN ANY FORM OR BY ANY MEANS WITHOUT WRITTEN PERMISSION FROM THE AUTHOR.

ISBN: 9789362557469

PUBLISHER: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>CONTENT</b>	<b>PAGE</b>
	<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	5
1	<b>INTRODUCTION TO OPTICAL COMMUNICATION</b> Dr. SMITHA ELSA PETER	13
2	<b>TYPES OF OPTICAL COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS</b> Dr. N. PARVATHAM	28
3	<b>ADVANTAGES OF OPTICAL COMMUNICATION</b> S. MAHESHWARAN	49
4	<b>CHALLENGES IN OPTICAL COMMUNICATION</b> R.SAVITHA	64
5	<b>APPLICATIONS OF OPTICAL COMMUNICATION</b> P.GEETHA	85
6	<b>OPTICAL WAVEGUIDES</b> S.LILLYPET	96
7	<b>OPTICAL FIBERS</b> A.AMUDHA	107
8	<b>FIBER OPTIC CABLES</b> R.SAVITHA	132
9	<b>OPTICAL FIBER CONNECTORS</b> S.SARASWATHY	168
10	<b>FIBER NUMERICAL APERTURE MEASUREMENTS</b> E.PRIYADHARSHINI	185
	<b>REFERENCES</b>	205



## CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION TO OPTICAL COMMUNICATION

**Dr. SMITHA ELSA PETER**

*Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Optical communication is a method of transmitting information using light as the carrier signal. It is a crucial technology for modern telecommunications, offering high bandwidth, low attenuation, and high data rates compared to traditional electrical communication methods. Here's an introduction to optical communication, covering its fundamental principles, components, and advantages:

### **Fundamentals of Optical Communication**

Principle of Operation:

**Transmission of Light:** Optical communication involves transmitting information by modulating light signals. These signals travel through optical fibers or free space.

**Modulation:** Light signals are modulated to encode information. Common modulation techniques include amplitude modulation, frequency modulation, and phase modulation.

**Detection:** At the receiver end, the light signal is detected and converted back into an electrical signal using photodetectors.

### **Basic Components:**

**Light Source:** Generates light signals for transmission.

**LED (Light Emitting Diode):** Emits light over a range of wavelengths; used for short-distance communication.

**Laser Diode:** Produces coherent light with a narrow wavelength range; used for long-distance communication due to its high efficiency and directionality.

**Optical Fiber:** Transmits the light signals from the source to the receiver.

**Core:** The central part of the fiber where light travels.

**Cladding:** Surrounds the core and has a lower refractive index to ensure total internal reflection.

**Jacket:** Outer protective layer of the fiber.

**Photodetector:** Converts received light signals back into electrical signals.

**Photodiode:** A semiconductor device that converts light into an electrical current.

**Avalanche Photodiode (APD):** A type of photodiode with internal gain to amplify the signal.

## CHAPTER 2 TYPES OF OPTICAL COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

**Dr. N. PARVATHAM**

*Associate Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Optical communication systems can be broadly categorized based on the medium through which light is transmitted and the specific application or technology used. Here's an overview of the primary types of optical communication systems:

### 1. Fiber Optic Communication

Fiber optic communication is the most common type of optical communication system, involving the transmission of light through optical fibers. It is widely used for long-distance and high-speed data transmission. There are two main types of fiber optic communication systems:

#### \*\*1.1. Single-Mode Fiber (SMF) Communication

Description: Single-mode fibers have a very small core diameter (approximately 8-10 micrometers) and transmit light in a single mode or path. This minimizes modal dispersion and allows for very high data rates over long distances.

#### \*\*1.2. Multi-Mode Fiber (MMF) Communication

Description: Multi-mode fibers have a larger core diameter (approximately 50-62.5 micrometers) and allow multiple modes of light to propagate simultaneously. This can lead to modal dispersion over longer distances.

Applications: Short-distance communication within buildings, data centers, and local area networks (LANs).

### 2. Free-Space Optical Communication (FSO)

Free-Space Optical Communication involves transmitting light through the air or space, rather than through optical fibers. It is used for point-to-point communication over short to moderate distances where laying optical fiber is impractical

#### \*\*2.1. Terrestrial Free-Space Optical Communication

Description: Involves optical links between two points on the Earth's surface, often through the atmosphere.

#### \*\*2.2. Satellite Free-Space Optical Communication

Description: Uses optical signals to communicate between satellites and ground stations or between satellites in space.

## CHAPTER 3 ADVANTAGES OF OPTICAL COMMUNICATION

### S. MAHESHWARAN

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Optical communication, which involves transmitting data using light, offers several significant advantages over traditional electrical communication methods. These benefits make optical communication a preferred choice for many high-speed, high-capacity, and long-distance applications. Here are the key advantages of optical communication:

#### \*\*1. High Bandwidth and Data Rate

**Large Bandwidth Capacity:** Optical fibers can support very high bandwidths, allowing for the transmission of large amounts of data simultaneously. Modern optical communication systems can achieve data rates in the range of terabits per second (Tbps) using techniques like Wavelength Division Multiplexing (WDM) and Dense Wavelength Division Multiplexing (DWDM).

#### \*\*2. Low Attenuation

**Minimal Signal Loss:** Optical fibers experience very low attenuation compared to electrical cables, which means that signals can travel long distances with minimal loss of quality. This is particularly advantageous for long-haul telecommunications and undersea cables.

#### \*\*3. Immunity to Electromagnetic Interference

**Electromagnetic Compatibility:** Optical fibers are immune to electromagnetic interference (EMI) and radio-frequency interference (RFI), which can affect electrical cables. This makes optical communication reliable in environments with high electrical noise.

#### \*\*4. High Security

**Difficult to Tap:** Optical fibers are difficult to tap into without detection, making them more secure against unauthorized access. Any attempt to intercept the signals typically results in noticeable signal disturbances.

#### \*\*5. Low Power Consumption

**Efficient Transmission:** Optical communication systems typically consume less power compared to their electrical counterparts. This efficiency is due to the low attenuation of optical fibers and the reduced need for signal amplification.

#### \*\*6. Small Size and Lightweight

**Compact Cables:** Optical fibers are thinner and lighter than electrical cables, which simplifies installation and reduces the physical space required for wiring.

## CHAPTER 4 CHALLENGES IN OPTICAL COMMUNICATION

**R.SAVITHA**

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Optical communication systems, while offering many advantages, also face several challenges that can impact their performance and deployment. Understanding these challenges is crucial for developing effective solutions and optimizing optical communication systems. Here are some of the key challenges:

### **\*\*1. Signal Dispersion**

#### **\*\*1.1. Chromatic Dispersion**

Description: Chromatic dispersion occurs when different wavelengths of light travel at different speeds through the optical fiber. This leads to signal spreading and distortion, especially over long distances.

Impact: Can cause overlapping of signals and degrade the quality of data transmission.

Mitigation: Use of dispersion-compensating fibers or dispersion compensation techniques, and advanced modulation formats.

#### **\*\*1.2. Modal Dispersion**

Description: In multi-mode fibers, different light modes travel at different speeds, causing the pulse to spread over time.

Impact: Leads to signal distortion and reduced bandwidth.

Mitigation: Use of single-mode fibers for long-distance applications, and improved fiber design for multi-mode fibers.

### **\*\*2. Attenuation**

Description: While optical fibers have low attenuation, signal loss still occurs due to scattering and absorption within the fiber.

Impact: Requires signal amplification or regeneration over long distances.

Mitigation: Use of high-quality fiber materials, and installation of optical amplifiers like EDFAs (Erbium-Doped Fiber Amplifiers).

### **\*\*3. Nonlinear Effects**

#### **\*\*3.1. Self-Phase Modulation (SPM)**

Description: Nonlinear effect where the phase of a light signal is altered due to the intensity of the signal itself.

## CHAPTER 5 APPLICATIONS OF OPTICAL COMMUNICATION

### P.GEETHA

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Optical communication has a wide range of applications across various fields due to its high bandwidth, low attenuation, and resistance to electromagnetic interference

#### **\*1. Telecommunications**

Long-Haul Communication

Description: Optical fibers are used to transmit data over long distances, such as between cities, countries, and continents.

Applications: International data transmission, intercontinental communication, and backbone networks for global telecommunications.

#### **. Metro Networks**

Description: Optical communication is used in metropolitan area networks (MANs) to connect various parts of a city or large urban area.

Applications: High-speed internet, video conferencing, and metropolitan data exchange.

#### **\*2. Data Centers**

Applications: High-speed data transfer, server-to-server communication, and efficient data management in large-scale data centers.

#### **\*3. Internet Backbone**

Description: The core infrastructure of the internet relies on optical fibers to handle the massive amounts of data traffic between different parts of the world.

Applications: Global internet connectivity, content delivery networks (CDNs), and high-speed data transfer.

#### **\*\*4. Broadcasting**

##### **\*\*4.1. Television and Radio Broadcasting**

## CHAPTER 6 OPTICAL WAVEGUIDES

S.LILLYPET

*Associate Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Optical waveguides are structures used to guide light waves from one point to another. They are fundamental components in optical communication systems, integrated optics, and various photonics applications. Here's a detailed look at optical waveguides, including their types, principles, and applications:

### **\*\*1. Principles of Optical Waveguides**

#### **\*\*1.1. Total Internal Reflection**

Description: Optical waveguides rely on the principle of total internal reflection (TIR) to confine and guide light within the core of the waveguide. When light travels from a medium with a higher refractive index (the core) to a medium with a lower refractive index (the cladding), it reflects back into the core if the incidence angle is greater than the critical angle.

Impact: This principle ensures that light remains confined within the core of the waveguide and travels along its length with minimal loss.

#### **\*\*1.2. Modes of Propagation**

Description: Optical waveguides support discrete modes of light propagation. Each mode has a specific distribution of the electric field and a characteristic propagation constant.

Types of Modes:

Fundamental Mode: The lowest order mode with the most confined light distribution.

Higher-Order Modes: Additional modes that can propagate if the waveguide supports them, depending on its dimensions and refractive indices.

### **\*\*2. Types of Optical Waveguides**

Description: Planar waveguides are thin, flat structures where light is guided in a two-dimensional plane.

Examples:

Strip Waveguides: Consist of a core layer with a higher refractive index, sandwiched between cladding layers with lower refractive indices.

Integrated Optical Circuits: Used in photonic integrated circuits for routing light within a chip.

## CHAPTER 7 OPTICAL FIBERS

A.AMUDHA

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Optical fibers are a key component in optical communication systems, used to transmit light signals over long distances with high efficiency. They are essential for a variety of applications, including telecommunications, data networking, medical imaging, and more. Here's a comprehensive overview of optical fibers, including their types, structure, principles, and applications:

### **\*\*1. Structure of Optical Fibers**

Optical fibers are composed of three main parts

#### **\*\*1.1. Core**

**Description:** The central part of the optical fiber through which light travels. The core has a higher refractive index than the surrounding cladding.

**Size:** Core diameter can vary, with single-mode fibers having a core diameter of approximately 8-10 micrometers and multi-mode fibers having a core diameter of 50-62.5 micrometers.

#### **\*\*1.2. Cladding**

**Description:** The layer surrounding the core, which has a lower refractive index than the core. The cladding ensures that light is confined within the core through total internal reflection.

**Function:** Provides the necessary conditions for total internal reflection to occur and protects the core.

#### **\*\*1.3. Buffer Coating**

**Description:** A protective layer applied outside the cladding. The buffer coating provides mechanical protection and helps to preserve the optical properties of the fiber.

**Function:** Protects the fiber from physical damage and environmental factors.

### **\*\*2. Principles of Optical Fiber Transmission**

**Description:** Light is guided through the core of the fiber by reflecting off the core-cladding interface. This occurs when light traveling from a medium with a higher refractive index (the core) to a medium with a lower refractive index (the cladding) strikes the interface at an angle greater than the critical angle.

## CHAPTER 8 FIBER OPTIC CABLES

**R.SAVITHA**

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Fiber optic cables are crucial for high-speed data transmission in modern communication systems. They consist of one or more optical fibers enclosed within protective layers and are designed to transmit light signals over various distances with high efficiency and minimal loss. Here's a detailed overview of fiber optic cables, including their construction, types, and applications:

### \*\*1. Construction of Fiber Optic Cables

#### \*\*1.1. Core

**Description:** The central part of the fiber optic cable where light travels. It has a higher refractive index than the surrounding cladding to facilitate total internal reflection.

**Size:** Core diameter varies based on fiber type, with single-mode fibers having a core diameter of around 8-10 micrometers and multi-mode fibers having a core diameter of 50-62.5 micrometers.

#### \*\*1.2. Cladding

**Description:** Surrounds the core and has a lower refractive index to keep the light within the core through total internal reflection.

**Function:** Ensures that light is confined within the core and guides it along the fiber.

#### \*\*1.3. Buffer Coating

**Description:** A layer of protective material applied directly over the cladding.

**Function:** Provides mechanical protection, cushioning, and additional strength to the fiber.

#### \*\*1.4. Jacket

**Outer Jacket:** The primary protective layer, made of materials such as PVC or polyethylene.

**Armoring:** Additional protective layer for specific types of cables, often made of metal or other robust materials.

**Function:** Provides mechanical protection, cushioning, and additional strength to the fiber.

### \*\*2. Types of Fiber Optic Cables

#### \*\*2.1. Loose-Tube Cable

**Description:** Fibers are housed within loose tubes inside the cable, allowing for flexibility and protection.

**Function:** Provides mechanical protection, cushioning, and additional strength to the fiber.

**Size:** Core diameter varies based on fiber type, with single-mode fibers having a core diameter of around 8-10 micrometers and multi-mode fibers having a core diameter of 50-62.5 micrometers.



## CHAPTER 9 Optical fiber connectors

**S.SARASWATHY**

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

### Optical fiber connectors

Optical fiber connectors are used to join optical fibers where a connect/disconnect capability is required. The basic connector unit is a connector assembly. A connector assembly consists of an adapter and two connector plugs. Due to the sophisticated polishing and tuning procedures that may be incorporated into optical connector manufacturing, connectors are generally assembled onto optical fiber in a supplier's manufacturing facility. However, the assembly and polishing operations involved can be performed in the field, for example to make cross-connect jumpers to size. Optical fiber connectors are used in telephone company central offices, at installations on customer premises, and in outside plant applications. Their uses include:

- Making the connection between equipment and the telephone plant in the central office
- Connecting fibers to remote and outside plant electronics such as Optical Network Units (ONUs) and Digital Loop Carrier (DLC) systems
- Optical cross connects in the central office
- Patching panels in the outside plant to provide architectural flexibility and to interconnect fibers belonging to different service providers
- Connecting couplers, splitters, and Wavelength Division Multiplexers (WDMs) to optical fibers
- Connecting optical test equipment to fibers for testing and maintenance.

Outside plant applications may involve locating connectors underground in subsurface enclosures that may be subject to flooding, on outdoor walls, or on utility poles. The closures that enclose them may be hermetic, or may be "free-breathing." Hermetic closures will prevent the connectors within being subjected to temperature swings unless they are breached. Free-breathing enclosures will subject them to temperature and humidity swings, and possibly to condensation and biological action from airborne bacteria, insects, etc.

Connectors in the underground plant may be subjected to groundwater immersion if the closures containing them are breached or improperly assembled. The latest industry requirements for optical fiber connectors are in Telcordia GR-326, Generic Requirements for Single mode Optical Connectors and Jumper Assemblies. A multi-fiber optical connector is designed to simultaneously join multiple optical fibers together, with each optical fiber being joined to only one other optical fiber. The last part of the definition is included so as not to confuse multi-fiber connectors with a branching component, such as a coupler. The latter joins one optical fiber to two or more other optical fibers. Multi-fiber optical connectors are designed to be used wherever quick and/or repetitive connects and disconnects of a group of fibers are needed. Applications include telecommunications

## CHAPTER 10 FIBER NUMERICAL APERTURE MEASUREMENTS

**E.PRIYADHARSHINI**

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

The numerical aperture (NA) of a fiber optic is a crucial parameter that determines how much light the fiber can accept and transmit. It essentially measures the fiber's ability to gather light and is vital for understanding the fiber's performance in various applications. Here's a detailed overview of fiber numerical aperture (NA), including how it is defined, measured, and its implications:

### **\*\*1. Definition of Numerical Aperture (NA)**

#### **\*\*1.1. Basic Concept**

Description: The numerical aperture of a fiber optic fiber quantifies the range of angles over which the fiber can accept incoming light. It is defined by the light acceptance cone of the fiber.

Interpretation: A higher NA means the fiber can accept light at a wider range of angles and can gather more light.

#### **\*\*1.2. Acceptance Cone**

Description: The NA defines the acceptance cone of the fiber, which is the maximum angle at which light can enter the fiber and still be guided within the core.

$\theta$  is the half-angle of the acceptance cone.

### **\*\*2. Measurement of Numerical Aperture**

#### **\*\*2.1. Experimental Methods**

Description: The NA can be measured using various techniques, including direct and indirect methods.

##### **\*\*2.1.1. Angular or Direct Measurement**

Setup: Illuminate the fiber with light and measure the angle at which the light exits the fiber.

Measurement: The light beam is introduced into the fiber, and the angle at which the light exits is used to calculate the NA.

Equipment: This method often uses a goniometer to measure the angle of light emerging from the fiber.

# **SATELLITE COMMUNICATION**

EDITED BY

**BHARATHI.C**



**978-93-6255-788-9**

SATELLITE COMMUNICATION

COPYRIGHT @ 2019 BY C.BHARATHI

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. NO PART OF THIS BOOK MAY BE REPRODUCED OR TRANSMITTED IN ANY FORM OR BY ANY MEANS WITHOUT WRITTEN PERMISSION FROM THE AUTHOR.

ISBN: 9789362557889

PUBLISHER: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>CONTENT</b>	<b>PAGE</b>
	<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	5
1	<b>SATELLITE COMMUNICATION CONCEPTS</b>	13
	Dr. SMITHA ELSA PETER	
2	<b>SATELLITE ORBITS AND DYNAMICS</b>	30
	Dr.S.AUDITHAN	
3	<b>SATELLITE COMPONENTS AND ARCHITECTURE</b>	49
	S.LILLYPET	
4	<b>LINK BUDGET ANALYSIS</b>	64
	S. MAHESWARAN	
5	<b>MODULATION AND CODING TECHNIQUES</b>	85
	T DIVYA MANOHARI	
6	<b>SATELLITE ACCESS AND MULTIPLE ACCESS TECHNIQUES</b>	96
	Dr. S. DEVI	
7	<b>SATELLITE COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS DESIGN</b>	107
	E. PRIYADHARSHINI	
8	<b>APPLICATIONS OF SATELLITE COMMUNICATION</b>	132
	S.SARASWATHY	
9	<b>EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES AND TRENDS</b>	168
	R.SAVITHA	
10	<b>FUTURE DIRECTIONS AND CHALLENGES</b>	190
	E.PRIYADHARSHINI	
	<b>REFERENCES</b>	210

# CHAPTER 1 SATELLITE COMMUNICATION CONCEPTS

**Dr. SMITHA ELSA PETER**

*Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

**1. Definition:** Satellite communication involves the transmission and reception of information via satellites orbiting Earth. This technology enables global and regional communication across vast distances, facilitating diverse applications from broadcasting to navigation.

## 2. Key Functions:

- **Transmission:** Data is sent from Earth to a satellite.
- **Reception:** Data is received from a satellite back to Earth.
- **Relay:** Satellites act as intermediaries, relaying signals between ground stations.

## 3. Types of Satellite Orbits:

- **Geostationary Orbit (GEO):**
  - **Altitude:** About 35,786 km above the equator.
  - **Characteristics:** Satellites appear stationary relative to a fixed point on Earth, ideal for continuous coverage.
  - **Applications:** Television broadcasting, weather monitoring, and communication.
- **Medium Earth Orbit (MEO):**
  - **Altitude:** Between 2,000 km and 35,786 km.
  - **Characteristics:** Satellites orbit more rapidly, offering broader coverage and higher revisit rates.
  - **Applications:** Navigation systems like GPS.
- **Low Earth Orbit (LEO):**
  - **Altitude:** Between 160 km and 2,000 km.
  - **Characteristics:** Shorter orbit period provides lower latency and higher-resolution observation.
  - **Applications:** Earth observation, remote sensing, and low-latency communication.

## 4. Satellite Components:

- **Space Segment:**
  - **Transponders:** Devices that receive, amplify, and retransmit signals.
  - **Antennas:** Used for sending and receiving signals.
  - **Power Systems:** Solar panels and batteries supply energy.
- **Ground Segment:**
  - **Ground Stations:** Facilities with large antennas and equipment for satellite interaction.
  - **Tracking Systems:** Monitor and control satellite position and health.
- **User Segment:**
  - **End-user Equipment:** Devices like satellite phones, TV receivers, and modems.

## CHAPTER 2 SATELLITE ORBITS AND DYNAMICS

**Dr.S.AUDITHAN**

*Associate Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

### 1. Introduction to Satellite Orbits

- **Definition:** Satellite orbits are the paths that satellites follow as they circle Earth. The choice of orbit impacts the satellite's functionality, coverage area, and mission goals.

### 2. Types of Satellite Orbits

- **Geostationary Orbit (GEO):**
  - **Altitude:** Approximately 35,786 km above the equator.
  - **Characteristics:** Satellites in GEO appear stationary relative to a fixed point on Earth because their orbital period matches Earth's rotation.
  - **Applications:** Ideal for consistent coverage needed for communication, weather monitoring, and broadcasting.
- **Medium Earth Orbit (MEO):**
  - **Altitude:** Between 2,000 km and 35,786 km.
  - **Characteristics:** Satellites in MEO orbit Earth more rapidly than those in GEO, allowing for broader coverage and more frequent revisits.
  - **Applications:** Used for navigation systems like GPS and certain communication and scientific missions.
- **Low Earth Orbit (LEO):**
  - **Altitude:** Between 160 km and 2,000 km.
  - **Characteristics:** Satellites in LEO complete an orbit in about 90 to 120 minutes, providing low latency and high-resolution imaging.
  - **Applications:** Suitable for Earth observation, remote sensing, and communications requiring low latency.

### 3. Orbital Mechanics

- **Kepler's Laws:**
  - **First Law:** Satellites orbit Earth in elliptical paths with Earth at one focus.
  - **Second Law:** The line connecting the satellite to Earth sweeps out equal areas in equal times, indicating varying speed along the orbit.
  - **Third Law:** The square of a satellite's orbital period is proportional to the cube of its orbit's semi-major axis.
- **Orbital Elements:**
  - **Semi-Major Axis (a):** The average distance from the satellite to Earth.
  - **Eccentricity (e):** The degree of deviation of the orbit from a perfect circle.
  - **Longitude of Ascending Node ( $\Omega$ ):** The angle between the vernal equinox and the ascending node.

## CHAPTER 3 SATELLITE COMPONENTS AND ARCHITECTURE

### S.LILLYPET

*Associate Professor, Department of ECE  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

#### 1. Space Segment

- **Transponders:**
  - **Function:** Receive, amplify, and retransmit signals between Earth and the satellite.
  - **Components:** Include a receiver, amplifier, and transmitter. Designed for specific frequency bands such as C-band, Ku-band, or Ka-band.
- **Antennas:**
  - **Receiving Antennas:** Capture signals from Earth, typically high gain with narrow beamwidth.
  - **Transmitting Antennas:** Send signals to Earth, focusing energy in specific directions.

#### 2. Ground Segment

- **Ground Stations:**
  - **Function:** Facilitate communication between satellites and Earth.
  - **Components:** Large parabolic dish antennas, receivers, transmitters, and control systems.
- **Tracking Systems:**
  - **Function:** Monitor the satellite's position to ensure accurate data transmission.
  - **Components:** Radar and optical tracking systems.
- **Control Centers:**
  - **Function:** Manage satellite operations including scheduling, command, control, and troubleshooting.
  - **Components:** Workstations, software tools, and communication links to the satellite.

#### 3. Satellite Architecture

- **System Architecture:**
  - **Design:** Integrates space, ground, and user segments for seamless operation.
  - **Considerations:** Coverage area, bandwidth, power requirements, and reliability.
- **Redundancy and Reliability:**
  - **Function:** Ensures continuous operation despite component failures.
  - **Components:** Includes redundant systems and failover mechanisms.
- **Mission Design:**
  - **Function:** Tailors architecture to meet specific mission objectives such as Earth observation, communication, or navigation.



## CHAPTER 4 LINK BUDGET ANALYSIS

### S.MAHESWARAN

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Link budget analysis is vital in satellite communication for evaluating the performance of a communication link by calculating the total gain and loss in signal strength from the transmitter to the receiver. This ensures that the received signal is strong enough to be accurately decoded.

#### 1. Basic Concept

The link budget represents the signal power loss or gain across the communication link. It factors in all gains and losses from the transmitter to the receiver.

#### 2. Key Parameters

- **Transmitter Power ( $P_T$ ):** The power output from the satellite or ground station's transmitter, typically measured in dBm (decibels relative to 1 milliwatt).
- **Antenna Gain ( $G_T$ ):** The increase in signal strength due to the transmitting antenna, measured in dBi (decibels relative to an isotropic radiator).
- **Free-Space Path Loss ( $L_{FS}$ ):** The loss of signal strength as it travels through space, calculated using the formula:

#### 3. Link Budget Calculation

The basic link budget formula is:

$$P_R = P_T + G_T + G_R - L_{FS} - N$$

where:

- $P_R$  = Received Signal Power
- $P_T$  = Transmitter Power
- $G_T$  = Transmitter Antenna Gain
- $G_R$  = Receiver Antenna Gain
- $L_{FS}$  = Free-Space Path Loss
- $N$  = System Noise

#### 4. Link Margin Analysis

The link margin is calculated as:

$$\text{Link Margin} = P_R - P_{R,\min}$$

## CHAPTER 5 MODULATION AND CODING TECHNIQUES

T. DIVYA MANOHARI

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Modulation and coding are essential for efficient and reliable satellite communication. These techniques ensure that data is properly adapted for transmission and that errors occurring during transmission are corrected. Here's a concise overview:

### 1. Modulation Techniques

Modulation adjusts a carrier signal's characteristics (amplitude, frequency, or phase) to encode information. Key techniques include:

- **Analog Modulation:**
  - **Amplitude Modulation (AM):** Varies the carrier wave's amplitude. While used in traditional broadcasting, it's less common in satellite systems due to noise susceptibility.
  - **Frequency Modulation (FM):** Alters the carrier wave's frequency, offering better noise resistance and occasional use in satellite communications.
- **Digital Modulation:**
  - **Phase Shift Keying (PSK):** Encodes data by varying the phase of the carrier. Variants include Binary PSK (BPSK) and Quadrature PSK (QPSK).
  - **Quadrature Amplitude Modulation (QAM):** Combines amplitude and phase modulation to transmit multiple bits per symbol, with higher-order QAM (e.g., 16-QAM, 64-QAM) supporting higher data rates.
  - **Frequency Shift Keying (FSK):** Changes the carrier frequency to encode data, useful for simpler systems or as a backup method.

### 2. Coding Techniques

Coding enhances data integrity and corrects transmission errors. Key methods include:

- **Error Detection Codes:**
  - **Parity Bits:** Simple method adding a bit for even or odd parity to detect single-bit errors.
  - **Checksums:** Summarize data values to identify errors, more complex than parity.
- **Error Correction Codes:**
  - **Forward Error Correction (FEC):** Adds redundant data to enable error correction without retransmission. Common FEC codes include:
    - **Hamming Codes:** Provide single-error correction and double-error detection.
    - **Reed-Solomon Codes:** Correct multiple errors and erasures, suitable for data storage and satellite communication.
    - **Convolutional Codes:** Encode data using a sliding window approach, often paired with Viterbi decoding for error correction.

## CHAPTER 6 SATELLITE ACCESS AND MULTIPLE ACCESS TECHNIQUES

**Dr.S.DEVI**

*Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Satellite communication systems employ various access techniques to efficiently manage and share resources among multiple users. These techniques are essential for optimizing bandwidth and ensuring effective communication. Here's an overview:

### 1. Satellite Access Techniques

- **Frequency Division Multiple Access (FDMA):**
  - **Concept:** Allocates distinct frequency bands to separate users or channels, avoiding interference by spatially dividing signals in the frequency domain.
  - **Advantages:** Straightforward to implement and manage with clear channel separation.
  - **Applications:** Commonly used in traditional systems like satellite TV.
- **Time Division Multiple Access (TDMA):**
  - **Concept:** Divides time into discrete slots and assigns these slots to different users, allowing multiple users to share the same frequency band by transmitting in their allocated time slots.
  - **Advantages:** Efficient bandwidth usage with flexible time slot allocation and reduced interference.
  - **Applications:** Ideal for satellite telephony and data networks.
- **Code Division Multiple Access (CDMA):**
  - **Concept:** Utilizes unique codes to encode multiple signals transmitted simultaneously over the same frequency band. Each signal is spread with a specific code to differentiate it from others.
  - **Advantages:** Supports multiple users sharing the same frequency band with robust performance in noisy environments.
  - **Applications:** Used in mobile communication systems and some satellite networks.
- **Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiple Access (OFDMA):**
  - **Concept:** Extends FDMA by dividing the frequency spectrum into orthogonal subcarriers that transmit data in parallel. Users are assigned subsets of these subcarriers.
  - **Advantages:** High spectral efficiency and flexible resource allocation.
  - **Applications:** Found in advanced satellite communication systems and broadband networks.

### 2. Access Methods

- **Direct Access:** Users communicate directly with the satellite, bypassing intermediary stations. This approach is typical for personal communication devices such as satellite phones.
- **Indirect Access:** Users connect through ground stations, which relay signals to and from the satellite. This method is prevalent in TV broadcasting and internet services.

# CHAPTER 7 SATELLITE COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS DESIGN

## E. PRIYADHARSHINI

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Designing a satellite communication system involves developing an architecture that ensures efficient and reliable data transmission between satellites and ground stations. This process requires careful consideration of system components, performance requirements, and operational constraints. Below is an overview of the key elements in satellite communication system design:

### 1. System Architecture

- **Space Segment:**
  - **Satellites:** The primary component, which includes transponders, antennas, power systems, and control mechanisms.
  - **Orbit Selection:** Choose from Geostationary (GEO) for continuous coverage, Medium Earth Orbit (MEO) for broader coverage and higher revisit rates, or Low Earth Orbit (LEO) for low latency and high-resolution imaging.
- **Ground Segment:**
  - **Ground Stations:** Facilities with large antennas and communication systems to interface with satellites.
  - **Tracking and Control Centers:** Monitor satellite positions, manage operations, and handle any issues that arise.
- **User Segment:**
  - **End-User Equipment:** Devices like satellite phones, modems, and receivers for accessing satellite services.
  - **Terminals:** VSAT (Very Small Aperture Terminal) systems used for various communication needs, including internet access and private networks.

### 2. Design Considerations

- **Coverage Area:**
  - Ensure the system provides adequate geographic coverage. GEO satellites offer persistent coverage of a fixed area, while LEO and MEO satellites provide broader or more dynamic coverage.
- **Bandwidth Requirements:**
  - Determine the required data rate and bandwidth based on application needs such as broadcasting, telecommunication, or data services. This will influence the choice of modulation, coding, and access techniques.
- **Power Requirements:**
  - Design the satellite's power system, including solar panels and batteries, to ensure reliable operation throughout its operational life.

# CHAPTER 8 APPLICATIONS OF SATELLITE COMMUNICATION

## S.SARASWATHY

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Satellite communication is vital across diverse fields, providing essential services and capabilities globally. Here's a concise overview of its key applications:

### 1. Telecommunications

- **Voice and Data Services:** Enables global telephony, including mobile and fixed-line services, facilitating voice and data transmission over long distances.
- **Internet Access:** Delivers broadband internet, particularly beneficial in remote or underserved areas lacking terrestrial infrastructure.

### 2. Broadcasting

- **Television and Radio:** Distributes TV and radio programming to homes and businesses, including direct-to-home (DTH) services and satellite radio.
- **Content Distribution:** Media companies use satellites to deliver content to cable and TV providers.

### 3. Navigation

- **Global Positioning System (GPS):** Provides precise positioning and timing information, crucial for personal navigation, aviation, and maritime activities.
- **Satellite-Based Augmentation Systems (SBAS):** Enhance GPS accuracy for applications like precision farming and surveying.

### 4. Earth Observation

- **Remote Sensing:** Captures imagery and data on Earth's surface for environmental monitoring, disaster management, and resource management.
- **Weather Monitoring:** Offers real-time weather data to improve forecasting and research on climate change and natural disasters.

### 5. Military and Defense

- **Surveillance and Reconnaissance:** Supports intelligence gathering and national security operations through satellite monitoring.
- **Communication:** Provides secure channels for military communications, including battlefield and command operations.

## CHAPTER 9 EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES AND TRENDS

R.SAVITHA

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Emerging technologies and trends are significantly transforming satellite communication, enhancing performance, coverage, and capabilities. Here's an overview of the latest advancements:

### 1. High-Throughput Satellites (HTS)

- **Definition:** Satellites designed for higher data rates compared to traditional systems.
- **Technology:** Utilizes advanced frequency reuse and spot beam techniques to increase capacity and efficiency.
- **Impact:** Boosts broadband internet services, supports high-demand applications like streaming, and improves connectivity in remote areas.

### 2. Low Earth Orbit (LEO) Constellations

- **Definition:** Networks of small satellites in LEO, typically 500 to 2,000 km above Earth.
- **Technology:** Large constellations provide global coverage and reduce latency.
- **Impact:** Enhances bandwidth, offers global high-speed internet, and reduces latency. Notable projects include SpaceX's Starlink and Amazon's Project Kuiper.

### 3. Advanced Propulsion Systems

- **Definition:** New propulsion technologies, including electric and hybrid systems.
- **Technology:** Electric propulsion with ion thrusters increases efficiency and extends mission life.
- **Impact:** Allows for precise orbit adjustments, extends satellite lifespan, and lowers launch costs.

### 4. Quantum Communication

- **Definition:** Utilizes quantum mechanics to improve data security.
- **Technology:** Quantum key distribution (QKD) offers theoretically unbreakable encryption.
- **Impact:** Enhances the security of satellite communications, crucial for secure data transmission.

### 5. Software-Defined Satellites

- **Definition:** Satellites with reconfigurable hardware and software.
- **Technology:** Employs digital signal processing and reconfigurable payloads.
- **Impact:** Provides flexibility and adaptability, allowing updates and mission changes without new satellites.

### 6. Space Traffic Management

- **Definition:** Systems and protocols for managing satellites and space debris.
- **Technology:** Involves tracking systems, collision avoidance, and regulatory frameworks.
- **Impact:** Ensures safe satellite operations, reduces collision risks, and addresses space congestion challenges.

# CHAPTER 10 FUTURE DIRECTIONS AND CHALLENGES

**E.PRIYADHARSHINI**

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

The future of satellite communication is set for significant transformation, driven by technological innovations and growing demands. However, these advancements also bring forth several challenges. Here's a concise overview of the future directions and associated challenges:

## Future Directions

### 1. Expansion of Satellite Constellations

- **Focus:** Increasing the number of satellites in Low Earth Orbit (LEO) to improve global coverage and reduce latency.
- **Advancements:** Large constellations such as SpaceX's Starlink and Amazon's Project Kuiper are set to provide high-speed, global internet access.

### 2. Integration with 5G and Beyond

- **Focus:** Merging satellite systems with 5G networks to ensure seamless connectivity and enhanced data speeds.
- **Advancements:** Developing hybrid networks that combine satellite and terrestrial infrastructure to support the Internet of Things (IoT) and smart cities.

### 3. Advancements in Propulsion and In-Orbit Servicing

- **Focus:** Employing new propulsion technologies and in-orbit servicing to extend satellite lifespans and address space debris.
- **Advancements:** Utilizing electric propulsion systems and robotic technologies for satellite repairs and upgrades in space.

### 4. Development of Quantum Communication

- **Focus:** Boosting data security using quantum key distribution and quantum technologies.
- **Advancements:** Leveraging quantum mechanics to achieve unbreakable encryption.

## Challenges

### 1. Space Debris Management

- **Issue:** The rising number of satellites contributes to increasing space debris.
- **Challenge:** Developing effective strategies for debris mitigation and collision avoidance to ensure safe satellite operations.

### 2. Regulatory and Policy Issues

- **Issue:** Coordinating international regulations for satellite spectrum and space operations.
- **Challenge:** Navigating complex regulatory environments and ensuring compliance with global and national regulations.

### 3. Cybersecurity Threats

- **Issue:** Growing risks of cyberattacks on satellite networks.
- **Challenge:** Implementing robust cybersecurity measures to protect data and infrastructure from breaches and attacks.

### 4. Cost and Resource Management

- **Issue:** High costs associated with satellite development and maintenance.
- **Challenge:** Balancing cost-efficiency with technological advancements and ensuring sustainable financial models.

# WIRELESS COMMUNICATION

Edited by

**A.AARTHI**



978-93-6255-637-0



WIRELESS COMMUNICATION

COPYRIGHT @ 2019 BY A.AARTHI

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. NO PART OF THIS BOOK MAY BE REPRODUCED OR TRANSMITTED IN ANY FORM OR BY ANY MEANS WITHOUT WRITTEN PERMISSION FROM THE AUTHOR.

ISBN: 9789362556370

PUBLISHER: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>CONTENT</b>	<b>PAGE</b>
	<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	5
1	<b>FUNDAMENTALS OF WIRELESS COMMUNICATION</b> Dr. S.DEVI	18
2	<b>MODULATION TECHNIQUES</b> Dr.S.AUDITHAN	35
3	<b>WIRELESS COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS</b> D.HARIKRISHNAN	56
4	<b>WIRELESS NETWORK ARCHITECTURES</b> T.DIVYA MANOHARI	70
5	<b>ADVANCED WIRELESS TECHNOLOGIES</b> A.AARTHI	85
6	<b>WIRELESS COMMUNICATION STANDARDS &amp; PROTOCOLS</b> P.GEETHA	96
7	<b>WIRELESS COMMUNICATION AND SIGNAL PROCESSING</b> E. PRIYADHARSHINI	112
8	<b>REGULATION AND SPECTRUM MANAGEMENT</b> R.SARASWATHI	140
9	<b>EMERGING TRENDS AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS</b> R.SAVITHA	168
10	<b>HANDS-ON EXERCISES AND PROJECTS</b> A.AMUDHA	195
	<b>REFERENCES</b>	226

# CHAPTER 1 FUNDAMENTALS OF WIRELESS COMMUNICATION

**Dr.S.DEVI**

*Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Wireless communication involves transmitting information over distances without wired connections. Here's a concise overview of its fundamental concepts:

## 1. Basic Concepts

- **Signal Transmission:** Utilizes electromagnetic waves generated by a transmitter and detected by a receiver to convey information.
- **Frequency:** Determines the wavelength and propagation characteristics of a signal. Common bands include radio frequencies (RF), microwave, and millimeter waves.
- **Modulation:** Alters a carrier wave to transmit information. Common techniques are Amplitude Modulation (AM), Frequency Modulation (FM), and Phase Modulation (PM).

## 2. Communication Models

- **Analog vs. Digital:** Analog signals are continuous, while digital signals are discrete (binary code). Digital is preferred for efficiency and noise resistance.
- **Cellular Networks:** Divide regions into cells, each served by a base station. This design allows frequency reuse and efficient spectrum management.
- **Spread Spectrum:** Spreads the signal over a wider bandwidth to enhance security and reduce interference. Types include Frequency Hopping Spread Spectrum (FHSS) and Direct Sequence Spread Spectrum (DSSS).

## 3. Key Components

- **Transmitter:** Converts information into a suitable signal for transmission, including a modulator, oscillator, and amplifier.
- **Receiver:** Detects and converts the signal back into information, including a demodulator, filter, and amplifier.
- **Antennas:** Convert electrical signals into electromagnetic waves and vice versa, affecting range, directionality, and signal quality.

## 4. Propagation and Channels

- **Propagation:** The way radio waves travel, influenced by free-space loss, reflection, diffraction, and scattering. Proper understanding is vital for effective system design.
- **Channels:** Mediums through which signals travel, impacted by noise and interference. Key parameters include bandwidth and signal-to-noise ratio (SNR).

## CHAPTER 2 MODULATION TECHNIQUES

**Dr.S.AUDITHAN**

*Associate Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Modulation is a key technique in communication systems that encodes information onto a carrier signal, enabling data transmission over various channels. Here's a concise overview of essential modulation techniques:

### 1. Amplitude Modulation (AM)

- **Principle:** Alters the amplitude (signal strength) of the carrier wave in proportion to the information signal.
- **Characteristics:** Simple to implement but susceptible to noise and interference affecting amplitude.
- **Applications:** AM radio broadcasting, some two-way radios.

### 2. Frequency Modulation (FM)

- **Principle:** Changes the frequency of the carrier wave according to the information signal while keeping the amplitude constant.
- **Characteristics:** More resistant to noise compared to AM; provides superior sound quality.
- **Applications:** FM radio broadcasting, television sound, some two-way radios.

### 3. Phase Modulation (PM)

- **Principle:** Modifies the phase of the carrier wave in response to the information signal, with amplitude and frequency unchanged.
- **Characteristics:** Similar noise resilience to FM; encodes information through phase changes.
- **Applications:** Digital signal processing, certain radio communications.

### 4. Quadrature Amplitude Modulation (QAM)

- **Principle:** Combines amplitude modulation of two carrier waves (in-phase and quadrature) to transmit two signals simultaneously.
- **Characteristics:** Facilitates higher data rates using both amplitude and phase variations.
- **Applications:** Digital TV, cable modems, high-speed data communications.

### 5. Frequency Shift Keying (FSK)

- **Principle:** Represents digital data by shifting the carrier signal's frequency to denote different data values (e.g., binary 0 and 1).
- **Characteristics:** Simple and robust against noise; variants include Binary FSK (BFSK) and Gaussian FSK (GFSK).
- **Applications:** Modems, telemetry systems.

## CHAPTER 3 WIRELESS COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

D.HARIKRISHNAN

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Wireless communication systems are vital for modern connectivity, utilizing various technologies to transmit and receive data without physical connections. Here's an overview of their key components, types, challenges, and emerging technologies:

### 1. Components of Wireless Communication Systems

- **Transmitter:** Converts information into a signal for transmission, using a modulator, oscillator, and amplifier to generate and prepare the carrier signal.
- **Receiver:** Detects and decodes the transmitted signal back into its original form, consisting of a demodulator, filter, and amplifier.
- **Antennas:** Convert electrical signals into electromagnetic waves and vice versa, affecting the signal's range, directionality, and quality.
- **Channel:** The medium through which signals travel, influenced by factors like noise, interference, and environmental conditions.

### 2. Types of Wireless Communication Systems

- **Cellular Networks:**
  - **Structure:** Uses cells served by base stations for efficient frequency reuse and spectrum management.
  - **Generations:** Ranges from 1G (analog) to 5G (high-speed, low-latency), with each generation offering enhanced features.
  - **Applications:** Mobile phones, data services, and IoT devices.
- **Wi-Fi:**
  - **Technology:** Operates mainly in 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands for local area network (LAN) connectivity.
  - **Standards:** Includes 802.11n, 802.11ac, and 802.11ax (Wi-Fi 6) for improved capacity.
  - **Applications:** Internet access in homes, offices, and public areas.
- **Bluetooth:**
  - **Technology:** Provides short-range communication in the 2.4 GHz band.
  - **Versions:** From Bluetooth 1.0 to 5.4, offering improvements in data rate, range, and power efficiency.
  - **Applications:** Wireless headphones, keyboards, and device pairing.
- **Satellite Communication:**
  - **Technology:** Uses satellites in various orbits to relay signals over long distances.
  - **Applications:** Global communication, broadcasting, weather monitoring, and navigation.
- **Broadcasting Systems:**
  - **Types:** Includes AM, FM, and digital formats like Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) and (DVB).
  - **Applications:** Radio and television broadcasting to broad audiences.
- **Long Range Wide Area Networks (LoRaWAN):**
  - **Technology:** Utilizes low-power protocols for long-range, low-data-rate communication.

## CHAPTER 4 WIRELESS NETWORK ARCHITECTURES

T.DIVYA MANOHARI

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

### 1. Cellular Network Architecture

- **Structure:** Divides the area into cells, each served by a base station (cell tower) for frequency reuse.
- **Components:**
  - **Base Stations:** Manage communication between mobile devices and the network.
  - **Mobile Switching Center (MSC):** Handles call routing and handovers.
  - **HLR and VLR:** Store subscriber data and manage location updates.
- **Applications:** Mobile phones, data services, IoT devices.

### 2. Wi-Fi Network Architecture

- **Structure:** Consists of access points (APs) that provide wireless connectivity and connect to a wired network.
- **Components:**
  - **Access Points (APs):** Enable devices to connect wirelessly.
  - **Router/Gateway:** Connects the Wi-Fi network to the internet and manages traffic.
- **Standards:** Includes IEEE 802.11n, 802.11ac, and 802.11ax (Wi-Fi 6) for various speeds and capacities.
- **Applications:** Local area networks (LANs) in homes, offices, and public areas.

### 3. Bluetooth Network Architecture

- **Structure:**
  - **Master-Slave:** One master device controls the network; other devices act as slaves.
  - **Piconets:** Small networks with one master and up to seven slaves.
  - **Scatternets:** Interconnected piconets allowing devices to join multiple networks.
- **Applications:** Short-range communication between devices like headphones and keyboards.

### 4. Satellite Network Architecture

- **Structure:** Uses satellites in various orbits to relay signals over long distances.
- **Components:**
  - **Satellites:** Provide global coverage.
  - **Ground Stations:** Interface between satellites and terrestrial networks.
  - **User Terminals:** Devices connecting to the satellite network.
- **Applications:** Global communication, television broadcasting, weather monitoring, navigation.

### 5. Zigbee Network Architecture

- **Structure:**
  - **Coordinator:** Manages network formation and security.
  - **Routers:** Extend network range by forwarding messages.
  - **End Devices:** Perform functions and communicate through routers or coordinators.

## CHAPTER 5 ADVANCED WIRELESS TECHNOLOGIES

A.AARTHI

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Advanced wireless technologies are transforming connectivity by boosting data rates, cutting latency, and enabling new applications. Here's a snapshot of key advancements:

### 1. 5G Technology

- **Overview:** The fifth generation of mobile networks, surpassing 4G in several ways.
  - **High Data Rates:** Speeds over 10 Gbps.
  - **Low Latency:** As low as 1 millisecond, ideal for real-time applications.
  - **Massive Connectivity:** Supports up to 1 million devices per square kilometer.
  - **Enhanced Reliability:** Improved coverage and network stability.
- **Applications:** Mobile broadband, IoT, autonomous vehicles, augmented reality (AR), and virtual reality (VR).

### 2. Millimeter-Wave Technology

- **Overview:** Uses high-frequency bands (24 GHz to 100 GHz) for communication.
  - **High Capacity:** Provides large bandwidth for extremely high data rates.
  - **Short Range:** Limited by atmospheric absorption, necessitating small cell networks.
- **Applications:** 5G networks, high-speed data transmission, and advanced wireless backhaul.

### 3. Terahertz Communication

- **Overview:** Explores terahertz (THz) frequencies (0.1 to 10 THz) for ultra-fast data transfer.
  - **Ultra-High Data Rates:** Capable of exceeding 100 Gbps.
  - **Short Range:** High atmospheric attenuation, suitable for short-range use.
- **Applications:** High-speed wireless networks, imaging systems, and secure data transmission.

### 4. Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing (OFDM)

- **Overview:** Divides the spectrum into multiple orthogonal subcarriers for digital transmission.
  - **Efficient Spectrum Use:** Reduces interference and enhances data rates.
  - **Robustness:** Effective against multipath interference and signal degradation.
- **Applications:** Wi-Fi (802.11a/g/n/ac/ax), LTE, and 5G.

### 5. Massive MIMO (Multiple Input Multiple Output)

- **Overview:** Uses a large number of antennas at the base station to enhance network performance.
  - **Increased Capacity:** Supports numerous users with high data rates.
  - **Enhanced Beamforming:** Improves signal precision and quality.
- **Applications:** 5G networks and high-capacity wireless systems.

# CHAPTER 6 WIRELESS COMMUNICATION STANDARDS & PROTOCOLS

P.GEETHA

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Wireless communication standards and protocols establish the rules for data transmission over wireless networks, ensuring compatibility, efficiency, and security. Here's an overview of key standards and protocols:

## 1. Wi-Fi Standards (IEEE 802.11)

- **Overview:** Standards for wireless local area networks (WLANs).
  - **802.11b:** Operates in the 2.4 GHz band, speeds up to 11 Mbps.
  - **802.11g:** Also in the 2.4 GHz band, speeds up to 54 Mbps.
  - **802.11n:** Utilizes 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands, speeds up to 600 Mbps.
  - **802.11ac:** Uses 5 GHz band, speeds up to 3.5 Gbps.
  - **802.11ax (Wi-Fi 6):** Supports speeds up to 9.6 Gbps, with improvements in efficiency, reduced latency, and better performance in dense environments.
- **Applications:** Internet access in homes, offices, and public spaces.

## 2. Bluetooth Standards (IEEE 802.15.1)

- **Overview:** Standards for short-range wireless communication.
  - **Bluetooth 2.0+EDR:** Enhanced Data Rate up to 3 Mbps.
  - **Bluetooth 4.0 (Bluetooth Smart):** Introduced Low Energy (BLE) for battery efficiency.
  - **Bluetooth 5.0:** Enhanced range, speed, and capacity.
  - **Bluetooth 5.4:** Further improvements in range and power efficiency.
- **Applications:** Wireless headphones, keyboards, data transfer between devices, IoT.

## 3. Cellular Standards

- **Overview:** Standards for mobile communication networks.
  - **1G (Analog):** Early mobile systems for voice.
  - **2G (GSM):** Digital voice, SMS, and data (up to 50 Kbps).
  - **3G (UMTS):** Faster data rates (up to 3 Mbps), enabling mobile internet.
  - **4G (LTE):** High-speed data (up to 1 Gbps), supporting HD video and fast internet.
  - **5G:** Ultra-fast data rates (up to 10 Gbps), low latency, supports massive device connectivity.
- **Applications:** Mobile phones, data services, IoT.

## 4. Zigbee (IEEE 802.15.4)

- **Overview:** Standard for low-power, low-data-rate wireless communication.
  - **Low Power Consumption:** Ideal for battery-operated devices.
  - **Mesh Networking:** Extends range and reliability by allowing devices to relay messages.
- **Applications:** Home automation, industrial control, sensor networks.



# CHAPTER 7 WIRELESS COMMUNICATION AND SIGNAL PROCESSING

E. PRIYADHARSHINI

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

## 1. Fundamentals

- **Transmission and Reception:** Wireless communication uses electromagnetic waves to transmit data. A transmitter encodes information onto a carrier wave, which is sent through the air and decoded by a receiver.
- **Frequency Bands:** Various frequency bands are used depending on the application. For example, 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz are common for Wi-Fi, while sub-6 GHz and millimeter waves are used for 5G. Each band has unique propagation properties and bandwidth constraints.

## 2. Modulation Techniques

- **Amplitude Modulation (AM):** Alters the carrier wave's amplitude to convey information. While simple, it is sensitive to noise.
- **Frequency Modulation (FM):** Modulates the carrier wave's frequency, offering better noise resistance and sound quality.
- **Phase Modulation (PM):** Adjusts the phase of the carrier wave for data encoding, similar to FM in noise resilience.
- **Quadrature Amplitude Modulation (QAM):** Combines amplitude and phase modulation for higher data rates.
- **Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing (OFDM):** Splits the spectrum into multiple subcarriers to reduce interference and enhance data rates.

## Signal Processing

### 1. Basics

- **Purpose:** Signal processing manipulates signals to enhance quality, extract information, or prepare signals for transmission.
- **Analog vs. Digital:** Analog signal processing deals with continuous signals, while digital signal processing (DSP) handles discrete signals converted from analog.

### 2. Key Techniques

- **Filtering:** Removes unwanted signal components, such as noise, using methods like low-pass filters.
- **Sampling and Quantization:** Converts continuous signals into discrete formats, involving sampling rate and bit depth.
- **Fourier Transform:** Analyzes the frequency components of a signal, aiding in signal analysis and processing.
- **Modulation/Demodulation:** Includes encoding and decoding methods like AM, FM, and QAM to transmit and receive information effectively.

# CHAPTER 8 REGULATION AND SPECTRUM MANAGEMENT

R.SARASWATHI

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Regulation and spectrum management are essential for optimizing the use of the radio frequency spectrum, ensuring efficient and equitable operation of wireless communication systems. Here's an overview of the key concepts:

## 1. Spectrum Allocation

- **Frequency Bands:** The spectrum is segmented into bands for specific uses such as mobile communications, broadcasting, satellite services, and Wi-Fi, guided by international agreements and national regulations.
- **International Coordination:** The International Telecommunication Union (ITU) plays a crucial role in coordinating global spectrum use to prevent interference between countries and manage frequency allocations.

## 2. Regulatory Bodies

- **National Regulatory Authorities (NRAs):** Agencies like the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) in the U.S. and Ofcom in the U.K. oversee spectrum management within their countries, handling licensing, enforcement, and competition.
- **International Organizations:** The ITU sets global standards and manages international spectrum use, facilitating coordination across borders.

## 3. Spectrum Licensing

- **Licensing Models:** Includes exclusive licensing (granting rights to specific entities), spectrum auctions (selling rights to the highest bidder), and license-exempt use (allowing unlicensed access to certain bands).
- **Auction Processes:** Auctions are used to allocate spectrum for commercial purposes, promoting efficient use and competition, with design and rules critical for maximizing public benefit and revenue.

## 4. Spectrum Management Strategies

- **Frequency Coordination:** Ensures minimal interference between services using the same or adjacent bands through technical and regulatory measures.
- **Dynamic Spectrum Access (DSA):** Advanced methods like Cognitive Radio and Spectrum Sensing allow real-time spectrum sharing and adaptability to varying conditions and demands.

## 5. Interference Management

- **Types of Interference:** Includes co-channel (same band), adjacent-channel (neighboring bands), and external (non-licensed sources).
- **Mitigation Techniques:** Employs power control, frequency hopping, advanced filtering, and regulatory measures to set interference limits and enforce compliance.

## CHAPTER 9 EMERGING TRENDS AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

R.SAVITHA

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Emerging trends and future directions in wireless communication and spectrum management reflect rapid technological advancements and evolving user demands. Key trends include:

### 1. 5G and Beyond

- **5G Expansion:** 5G offers ultra-fast data rates, low latency, and massive connectivity, revolutionizing mobile broadband, IoT, and smart city applications. Its global deployment is accelerating.
- **6G Development:** Research into 6G promises even higher data rates (up to 100 Gbps), ultra-low latency, and integration with AI for advanced network management, with expectations for rollout around 2030.

### 2. Internet of Things (IoT)

- **Growth of IoT:** Billions of devices are becoming interconnected across sectors like smart homes, healthcare, agriculture, and industrial automation.
- **LPWAN Technologies:** LoRaWAN and NB-IoT support long-range, low-power communications, crucial for IoT applications.

### 3. Millimeter-Wave and Terahertz Communications

- **Millimeter-Wave (mmWave):** Used in 5G for high-capacity, high-speed data transfer. Challenges include shorter range and higher atmospheric absorption, requiring dense deployments.
- **Terahertz (THz) Communication:** Explores frequencies beyond mmWave for ultra-high-speed data transfer, with potential in high-capacity networks and advanced imaging.

### 4. Advanced Spectrum Management

- **Dynamic Spectrum Access (DSA):** Techniques like Cognitive Radio and Spectrum Sensing allow real-time spectrum sharing and efficient use, adapting to varying conditions.
- **Network Slicing:** Enables creation of multiple virtual networks on a single physical infrastructure, offering customized services for diverse applications.

### 5. Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Machine Learning

- **Network Optimization:** AI enhances network management by optimizing performance, predicting failures, and improving security.
- **Intelligent Resource Allocation:** AI algorithms manage spectrum allocation and dynamic sharing, enhancing efficiency and responsiveness.

## CHAPTER 10 HANDS-ON EXERCISES AND PROJECTS

A.AMUDHA

*Assistant Professor, Department of ECE*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Hands-on exercises and projects are vital for applying theoretical knowledge in wireless communication and signal processing. Here's a concise collection of practical exercises and projects to enhance understanding and skill development:

### 1. Building a Basic Wireless Network

- **Objective:** Set up a Wi-Fi network with a router and client devices.
- **Tasks:** Configure SSID, security settings, and test device connectivity. Explore network management features like bandwidth control and guest access.
- **Skills:** Network setup, router configuration, Wi-Fi standards.

### 2. Signal Modulation and Demodulation

- **Objective:** Implement basic modulation and demodulation techniques.
- **Tasks:** Simulate Amplitude Modulation (AM), Frequency Modulation (FM), and Quadrature Amplitude Modulation (QAM) using software like MATLAB or Python. Use signal analyzers for observation and analysis.
- **Skills:** Modulation techniques, signal analysis.

### 3. Spectrum Analysis with Software-Defined Radio (SDR)

- **Objective:** Analyze frequency bands using SDR hardware and software.
- **Tasks:** Capture and analyze signals across various bands with tools like GNU Radio or SDR#. Identify signal characteristics and interference.
- **Skills:** SDR operation, spectrum analysis.

### 4. Designing a Simple IoT System

- **Objective:** Create an IoT system using sensors and wireless communication.
- **Tasks:** Set up sensors (e.g., temperature, humidity) with microcontrollers (e.g., Arduino, Raspberry Pi) and connect to a network using Wi-Fi or Bluetooth. Implement data collection and visualization.
- **Skills:** IoT integration, sensor data handling, wireless communication.

### 5. Implementing a Mesh Network

- **Objective:** Set up and test a mesh network.
- **Tasks:** Configure devices to form a mesh network using technologies like Zigbee or mesh Wi-Fi. Evaluate coverage, reliability, and performance.
- **Skills:** Mesh network configuration, performance evaluation.

# BIO INORGANIC CHEMISTRY

Edited by

---

**V.ABARNA**



978-93-6255-625-7

Bio Inorganic Chemistry

Copyright©2019 by Ms. Abarna

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN Number : 978-93-6255-625-7

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

# Bioinorganic Chemistry

## Contents

<b>Chapter: 1</b> Inorganic Chemistry Essentials Ms. V.Abarna	01
<b>Chapter: 2</b> Biochemistry Fundamentals Ms. V.Abarna	29
<b>Chapter: 3</b> Instrumental Methods Dr. Manikandan	76
<b>Chapter: 4</b> Group I and II Metals in Biological Systems: Homeostasis and Group I Biomolecules Dr. M. Surendra Varma	157
<b>Chapter: 5</b> Group I and II Metals in Biological Systems: Group II Dr. M. Surendra Varma	187
<b>Chapter: 6</b> Iron-Containing Proteins and Enzymes Dr. Manikandan	233
<b>Chapter: 7</b> Computer Hardware, Software, and Computational Chemistry Methods Dr. Manikandan	304
<b>Reference</b>	356

## Chapter: 1

### Inorganic Chemistry Essentials

Ms. V. Abarna

*Assistant Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu,  
India*

Bioinorganic chemistry involves the study of metal species in biological systems. As an introduction to the basic inorganic chemistry needed for understanding bioinorganic topics, this chapter will discuss the essential chemical elements, the occurrences and purposes of metal centers in biological species, the geometries of ligand fields surrounding these metal centers, and ionic states preferred by the metals.

Important considerations include equilibria between metal centers and their ligands and a basic understanding of the kinetics of biological metal–ligand systems. The occurrence of organometallic complexes and clusters in metalloproteins will be discussed briefly, and an introduction to electron transfer in coordination complexes will be presented. Since the metal centers under consideration are found in a biochemical milieu, basic biochemical concepts, including a discussion of proteins and nucleic acids, are presented in Chapter 2.

#### 1.1 ESSENTIAL CHEMICAL ELEMENTS

Chemical elements essential to life forms can be broken down into four major categories: (1) bulk elements (H/H<sup>+</sup>, C, N, O<sup>2-</sup> / O<sup>-</sup> / O<sup>2-</sup>, P, S/S<sup>2-</sup>); (2) macro-elements (Fe/Fe<sup>II</sup>/Fe<sup>III</sup>/Fe<sup>IV</sup>, Zn/Zn<sup>II</sup>, Cu/Cu<sup>I</sup>/Cu<sup>II</sup>/Cu<sup>III</sup>); and (4) ultratrace elements, comprised of nonmetals (F/F<sup>-</sup>, I/I<sup>-</sup>, Se/Se<sup>2-</sup>, Si/Si<sup>IV</sup>, As, B) and metals (Mn/Mn<sup>II</sup>/Mn<sup>III</sup>/Mn<sup>IV</sup>, Mo/Mo<sup>IV</sup>/Mo<sup>V</sup>/Mo<sup>VI</sup>, Co/Co<sup>II</sup>/Co<sup>III</sup>, Cr/Cr<sup>III</sup>/Cr<sup>VI</sup>, V/V<sup>III</sup>/V<sup>IV</sup>/V<sup>V</sup>, Ni<sup>I</sup>/Ni<sup>II</sup>/Ni<sup>III</sup>, Cd/Cd<sup>2+</sup>, Sn/Sn<sup>II</sup>/Sn<sup>IV</sup>, Pb/Pb<sup>2+</sup>, Li/Li<sup>+</sup>).

In the preceding classification, only the common biologically active ion oxidation states are indicated. (See references 3 and 21d for more information.) If no charge is shown, the element predominately bonds covalently with its partners in biological compounds, although elements such as carbon (C), sulfur (S), phosphorus (P), arsenic (As), boron (B), selenium (Se) have positive formal oxidation states in ions containing oxygen atoms; that is, S = +6 in the SO<sub>4</sub><sup>2-</sup> ion or P = +5 in the PO<sub>4</sub><sup>3-</sup> ion. The identities of essential elements are based on historical work and that done by Klaus Schwarz in the 1970s.<sup>1</sup> Other essential elements may be present in various biological species.



## Chapter: 2

### Biochemistry Fundamentals

**Ms. V. Abarna**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and*

*Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil*

*Nadu, India*

Biochemistry concerns itself with the study of life at the molecular level. The subject area encompasses a huge body of information that grows and changes rapidly in the hands of thousands of capable teachers, researchers, and writers. An introduction to the biochemistry topics of proteins, protein kinetics, nucleic acids, and genetics will be presented in this chapter.

In addition, a discussion of genomics and proteomics introduces topics of current relevance. The last section of the chapter discusses zinc-finger proteins, a topic that combines information introduced in this chapter on proteins, protein analysis, DNA, DNA binding, and cloning. Other important biochemical topics such as bioenergetics, saccharides and polysaccharides, lipids and lipoproteins, membrane compositions and dynamics, vitamins, hormones, biochemical pathways, and many others are not covered here.

In introductory biochemistry, one becomes familiar with amino acids (aa) and how they combine (polymerize) to become peptides and proteins. Proteins fold into three-dimensional shapes and become enzymes, the catalysts of

biochemical reactions, or structural materials in muscles and tendons, or small molecule carriers such as the dioxygen-carrying metalloproteins myoglobin and hemoglobin. At least one-third of all proteins and enzymes contain metals and are known as metalloproteins and metalloenzymes. Some of these will be the bioinorganic chemistry topics treated in Chapters 5, 6, and 7 of this text. The recently coined term, proteomics, refers to the study of a large collection of proteins that occur and function together in a particular biochemical entity such as a cell or other organelle. Important interactions among proteins in a proteome distinguish the proteome's behavior as being more complex than that of a single protein studied individually.

A second major area of biochemical importance concerns study of nucleotide polymerization to produce ribonucleic acids (RNA) and deoxyribonucleic acids (DNA). Genes, the basis for inherited characteristics, are contained in DNA double-helical sections incorporated into coiled and supercoiled DNA structures. Genomics, the study of the total genetic assemblage of any species, is now a well-known topic to all, especially with the announcement of the sequencing of the human genome in 2001.

More information on this topic is given in Section 2.3.6. The goal of this chapter is to provide a basic understanding of the structure of, and biochemical processes undertaken by, proteins and nucleic acids.

## Chapter: 3

### Instrumental Methods

Dr. Manikandan

*Assistant Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu,  
India*

#### 3.1.1 Analytical Instrument-Based Methods

Lawrence Que, Jr., has stated in the preface to *Physical Methods in Bioinorganic Chemistry*: “By piecing together the various clues derived from the physical methods, bioinorganic chemists have been able to form a coherent picture of the metal binding site and to deduce the role of the metal ion in a number of biological processes.

Physical methods are used for analysis of systems under study by all chemists, whether or not they are trained analytical chemists. Therefore all researchers must become familiar with the capabilities and limitations of the analytical methods they use. In addition to instrumental and physical methods, chemists have additional investigational capabilities based on computer methodology. This chapter contains an introduction to some physical (instrumental), and Chapter 4 will address computer-based methods.

The discussion is not intended as an exhaustive description or even listing of available methods but rather concentrates on those mentioned frequently in this text. The methods include X-ray absorption spectroscopy (XAS and EXAFS), X-ray crystallography, nuclear magnetic resonance, electron paramagnetic resonance (including ENDOR), mass spectrometry, and Mössbauer spectroscopies.

The last method mentioned is especially relevant for characterization of bioinorganic iron-containing species. Other important methods used to analyze bioinorganic species such as ultraviolet–visible, infra red, resonance Raman, circular dichroism, magnetic circular dichroism spectroscopies, and many others are not discussed here.

Students are referred to analytical and instrumental texts for more information on all methods, discussed here or not. The volumes listed in reference 1 are especially helpful because they emphasize instrumental methods applied to the analysis of bioinorganic systems.

## Chapter: 4

### Group I and II Metals in Biological Systems: Homeostasis and Group I Biomolecules

**Dr. M. Surendra Varma**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu,  
India*

Several group I and II metal ions belong to the essential chemical elements “macrominerals and ions category” ( $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ ,  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , ) defined in Section 1.2. Group I and II metal ions have roles in maintaining osmotic and electrolytic control in biological species. They are involved in physiological signaling and triggering as well as photosynthetic events.

As with all chemical elements and ions, they must be made available when and where they are needed—homeostatic control. The cations passively diffuse and are actively pumped across cell membranes, many times against concentration gradients. Table 5.1 summarizes the characteristics of Group I and II ions

#### HOMEOSTASIS OF METALS (AND SOME NONMETALS)

In a living system, homeostasis refers to a set of related and controlled steady states in processes involving continuous changes in material, charge, and energy flows into, out of, and within cells. Reagents must enter cells and products must leave. Inside cells a vast number of chemical reactions and transformations take place. The cell must maintain its structural organization, its osmotic balance, and its material and electrical potential gradients. All biochemically active inorganic species are involved in determining homeostasis; in this chapter we will discuss the involvement of  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ ,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ , and  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$  with shorter discussions of P as  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$ , and  $\text{H}^+$ . Because all species noted here are ions and interdependent upon one another for electroneutrality, osmotic balance, and maintenance of concentration gradients, it will be difficult to separate discussions of each species

#### Phosphorus as Phosphate

In biological systems, phosphorus does not change oxidation state and is normally found as the phosphate ion,  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ , often indicated, mostly by nonchemists, as  $\text{P}_i$ . In the human body, 80–85% of phosphorus is found in the skeleton and 15–20% in organic compounds.

The kidney plays a major role in phosphorus homeostasis. Phosphate ion concentration in blood serum is maintained within a narrow range through a complex interplay between intestinal absorption, exchange with intracellular and bone storage pools, and renal tubular reabsorption.

The kidney is a major regulator of  $\text{P}_i$  homeostasis and can increase or decrease its  $\text{P}_i$  reabsorptive capacity to accommodate  $\text{P}_i$  need. The crucial regulated step in  $\text{P}_i$  homeostasis is the transport of  $\text{P}_i$  across the renal (kidney) proximal tubule.

## Chapter: 5

### Group I and II Metals in Biological Systems: Group II

**Dr. M. Surendra Varma**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu,*

*India*

#### 6.1 MAGNESIUM AND CATALYTIC RNA

Prior to 1982, it was believed that biological catalytic species were solely constituted of amino acid chains—that is, proteins or, more correctly, enzymes. However, in that year T. R. Cech and colleagues reported the first catalytic RNA, calling it a ribozyme.

It is now known that ribozyme sequences are small parts of larger stretches of messenger or ribosomal RNA. Many reactions carried out by ribozymes are cleavage or ligation reactions and are part of post-transcriptional modification processes that lead to the mature RNA, DNA, or protein sequences—that is, maturation.

The first characterized ribozyme was the self-splicing intron of the *Tetrahymena* pre-rRNA. Researchers discovered that the *Tetrahymena* pre-rRNA spliced out its intron and connected the flanking exon sequences.

In Section 2.3.5, introns were defined as sections of DNA within a gene that do not encode part of the protein that the gene produces. Usually, introns are spliced out of the mRNA that is transcribed from the gene before it is translated. Exons were described as regions of DNA within a gene that are not spliced out from the transcribed RNA and are retained in the final mRNA molecule. Most, but not all, exon regions are translated to protein. (See Section 2.3.5.)

With experiments carried out in vitro duplicating the activity seen in vivo in *Tetrahymena* pre-rRNA cells, the ribozyme chemistry taking place was described as follows: (1) Highly purified pre-rRNA (precursor ribosomal RNA) was mixed with guanosine or guanosine triphosphate, GTP, in a solution containing magnesium ions; (2) precise cutting and joining of phosphodiester bonds took place; and (3) during the process the added guanosine became covalently linked to the 5' end of the excised intron.

## Chapter: 6

### Iron-Containing Proteins and Enzymes

**Dr. Manikandan**

*Associate Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu,*

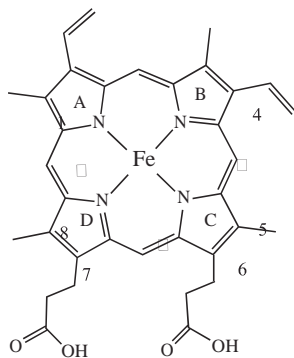
*India*

#### IRON-CONTAINING PROTEINS WITHPORPHYRIN LIGAND SYSTEMS

Iron is the most abundant transition metal found in biological systems with a percentage by weight in the human body—for instance,  $5.0 \times 10^{-3}\%$ . Therefore, it is not surprising that iron-containing proteins and enzymes are found in huge numbers and varieties in all biological species. First, one might classify iron-containing species in two categories: those containing a porphyrin ligand system—an iron-bearing heme moiety—and those not containing porphyrin ligands—non-heme iron-containing proteins. This chapter will describe some proteins and enzymes with porphyrin ligand systems with non-heme systems being described briefly in Section 7.9. A section devoted to myoglobin and hemoglobin (7.2) will be followed by six sections (7.3–7.8) discussing the ubiquitous cytochrome metalloenzymes.

#### MYOGLOBIN AND HEMOGLOBIN

This section outlines the chapter devoted to iron-containing oxygen carriers and their synthetic models in the first edition of this text.<sup>1</sup> Reversible coordination of dioxygen ( $O_2$ ), along with its transport through the bloodstream of vertebrates (and many invertebrates) by the iron-containing metalloproteins



**Figure 7.1** Protoporphyrin IX, heme b, as found in Mb and Hb.

## Chapter: 7

### Computer Hardware, Software, and Computational Chemistry

Methods Dr. Manikandan

*Associate Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu,  
India*

#### INTRODUCTION TO COMPUTER-BASED METHODS

Chemists use computers for many purposes. As the chapter on instrumental methods (Chapter 3) has illustrated, every modern analytical instrument must include a computer interface. Chemical structure drawing, visualization, and modeling programs are important computer-supported applications required in academic, industrial, and governmental educational and research enterprises.

Computational chemistry has allowed practicing chemists to predict molecular structures of known and theoretical compounds and to design and test new compounds on computers rather than at the laboratory bench.

#### COMPUTER HARDWARE

A basic review of computers and computing is given in reference 1. A short summary of this introductory material is presented here.

The basic elements of a computer are:

1. The central processor unit (CPU) that does the work
2. Memory locations where programs are controlled and results are stored
3. Input and output (I/O) devices to communicate with other computers or devices
4. Buses that provide communication between various computer elements

Computers all contain read-only memory whose contents are permanent—that is, can only be read and not written to by the user, along with random access memory that can both be read from and written to by the user. The basic computing unit is a bit (b), which stands for binary digit; 8 bits comprise a byte (B). Table 4.1 illustrates calculation of computer memory bytes—that is, the number of locations that can be addressed.

Computer storage capacities are constantly increasing to keep pace with requirements for data storage and manipulation; however, a recent model desktop or laptop computer will have 250 gigabytes (GB) of storage capability or more.

Microcomputers, familiar to all as PC and Macintosh desktop or laptop computers, are the basic interface for many instrumental methods including all types of chromatography (LC, HPLC, GC), hyphenated methods (GC–MS, LC–IR), flame emission spectroscopy, and basic ultraviolet–visible and infrared spectroscopy.



# **MATERIAL SCIENCE**

**EDITED BY  
DR. P. CHRISTURAJ**



**978-93-6255-997-5**

Material Science

Copyright©2019 by Dr.P.Christuraj

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN Number  
978-93-6255-997-5

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)



# Material Science

## Contents

<b>Chapter: 1</b> Classification and Selection of Materials Dr.P.Christuraj	01
<b>Chapter: 2</b> Atomic Structure, and Electronic Configuration Dr.P.Christuraj	20
<b>Chapter: 3</b> Crystal Geometry, Structure and Defects Dr.P.Christuraj	64
<b>Chapter: 4</b> Bonds in Solids Dr. M. Surendra Varma	129
<b>Chapter: 5</b> Photoelectric Effect Dr. M. Surendra Varma	167
<b>Chapter: 6</b> Heat Treatment Dr. Manikandan	207
<b>Chapter: 7</b> Oxidation and Corrosion Dr. Manikandan	256
<b>Reference</b>	281

## Chapter: 1

### Classification and Selection of Materials

Dr.P.Christuraj

*Assosiacte Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Materials science and engineering plays a vital role in this modern age of science and technology. Various kinds of materials are used in industry, housing, agriculture, transportation, etc. to meet the plant and individual requirements. The rapid developments in the field of quantum theory of solids have opened vast opportunities for better understanding and utilization of various materials. The spectacular success in the field of space is primarily due to the rapid advances in high-temperature and high-strength materials.

The selection of a specific material for a particular use is a very complex process. However, one can simplify the choice if the details about (i) operating parameters, (ii) manufacturing processes, (iii) functional requirements and (iv) cost considerations are known. Factors affecting the selection of materials are summarized in Table 1.1.

Table 1.1 Factors affecting selection of materials

(i) <i>Manufacturing processes</i>	(ii) <i>Functional requirements</i>	(iii) <i>Cost considerations</i>	(iv) <i>Operating parameters</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· Plasticity</li><li>· Malleability</li><li>· Ductility</li><li>· Machinability</li><li>· Casting properties</li><li>· Weldability</li><li>· Heat</li><li>· Tooling</li><li>· Surface finish</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· Strength</li><li>· Hardness</li><li>· Rigidity</li><li>· Toughness</li><li>· Thermal conductivity</li><li>· Fatigue</li><li>· Electrical treatment</li><li>· Creep</li><li>· Aesthetic look</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· Raw material</li><li>· Processing</li><li>· Storage</li><li>· Manpower</li><li>· Special treatment</li><li>· Inspection</li><li>· Packaging properties</li><li>· Inventory</li><li>· Taxes and custom duty</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· Pressure</li><li>· Temperature</li><li>· Flow</li><li>· Type of material</li><li>· Corrosion requirements</li><li>· Environment</li><li>· Protection from fire</li><li>· Weathering</li><li>· Biological effects</li></ul>

There are thousands and thousands of materials available and it is very difficult for an engineer to possess a detailed knowledge of all the materials. However, a good grasp of the fundamental principles which control the properties of various materials help one to make the optimum selection of material. In this respect, materials science and engineering draw heavily from the engineering branches, e.g. metallurgy, ceramics and polymer science.

The subject of material science is very vast and unlimited. Broadly speaking, one can sub-divide the field of study into following four branches: (i) Science of metals, (ii) Mechanical behaviour of metals (iii) Engineering metallurgy and (iv) Engineering materials. We shall discuss them in subsequent chapters.

## Chapter: 2

### Atomic Structure, and Electronic Configuration

Dr.P.Christuraj

*Assosiacte Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

All the materials available either in solid, liquid or gaseous form are made up of atoms, the smallest indivisible particles. Atoms of the same element are identical to each other in weight, size and all properties, whereas atoms of different elements differ in weight, size and other characteristics. The size of the atoms is of the order of  $1 \text{ \AA}$  ( $=10^{-10} \text{ m}$ ). A material which consists just one type of atoms is called element. Nitrogen, carbon, hydrogen, aluminium, copper, gold, iron etc. are few examples of elements. Group of atoms which tend to exist together in a stable form are called *molecules*, e.g.  $\text{H}_2$ ,  $\text{O}_2$ ,  $\text{N}_2$  etc. Large number of molecules in nature exist as combination of atoms of different elements, e.g. water ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ), etc. Molecules containing one atom (known as monoatomic), two atoms (known as diatomic), three atoms (known as triatomic) or more atoms (known as polyatomic).

In the beginning of 20th century, scientists like Sir J.J. Thomson, Rutherford, Niels Bohr and many other have found that atom, though indivisible, yet consists of smaller particles called *electrons*, *protons* and *neutrons*. The electrons and protons are electrical in nature, where as neutrons are neutral.

Rutherford and coworkers have shown that the mass of the atom is concentrated at the centre of the atom, called *nucleus*. The atom essentially has an electrical structure and is made of smaller particles, the principal ones being electrons, protons and neutrons.

The atom is considered to be made up of a heavy nucleus, consisting of protons and neutrons, surrounded by highly structured configurations of electrons, revolving around the nucleus in shells or orbits at a

relatively greater distance from nucleus. The size of the atomic nucleus is of the order of  $10^{-14} \text{ m}$ , whereas its density is found to be about  $2 \times 10^{17} \text{ kg/m}^3$ . The densities of certain stars called *white dwarfs* approach that of a pure nuclear matter. As the mass of the electron is negligible as compared to that of protons and

neutrons, the mass of the atom depends mostly on the protons and neutrons inside the nucleus.

## Chapter: 3

### Crystal Geometry, Structure and Defects

Dr.P.Christuraj

*Assosiacte Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Solids exist in nature in two principal forms: *crystalline* and *non-crystalline (amorphous)*, which differ substantially in their properties. Most crystalline solids are made up of millions of tiny single crystals called grains which constitute what is called microstructure and are said to be polycrystalline. These grains are oriented randomly with respect to each other. Any single crystal, however, no matter how large, is a single grain. Single crystals of metals many cubic centimeters in volume are relatively easy to prepare in the laboratory. Single crystals are regular polyhedrons whose shape depends upon their chemical composition.

Crystalline bodies remain solid, i.e., retain their shape, upto a definite temperature (melting point) at which they change from the solid to liquid state (Fig. 3.1). During cooling, the inverse process of solidification takes place, again at the definite solidifying temperature, or point. In both cases, the temperature remains constant until the material is completely melted or respectively solidified.

Amorphous substances have no crystalline structure in the condensed state (Fig. 3.2(a)) ordinary glass, sulphur, selenium, glycerine and most of the high polymers can exist in the amorphous state. Amorphous bodies, when heated, are gradually softened in a wide temperature range and become viscous and only then change to the liquid state. In cooling, the process takes place in the opposite direction. On repeated heating, long holding at 20-25°C or, in some cases, deformation of an amorphous body.

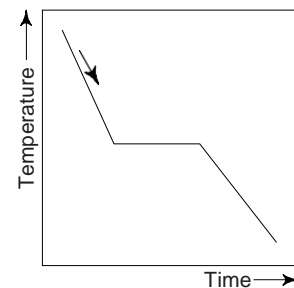


Fig. 3.1 Cooling curve of a Crystalline Substance

## Chapter: 4

### Bonds in Solids

Dr. M. Surendra Varma

*Assistant Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

In nature one comes across several types of solids. Many solids are aggregates of atoms. The arrangement of atoms in any solid material is determined by the character, strength and directionality of the chemical binding forces, cohesive forces or chemical bonds. We call these binding forces as *atomic interaction* forces. The atoms, molecules or ions in a solid state are more closely packed than in the gaseous and liquid states and are held together by strong mutual forces of attraction and repulsion. One can describe the atomic arrangement in elements and compounds on the basis of this.

The type of bond that appears between atoms in crystal is determined by the electronic structure of interacting atoms. Atoms in a crystal approach one another to certain distances at which the crystal is in the state of the highest thermodynamic stability. These distances depend on the interaction forces that appear in crystals. The attractive forces between atoms are basically electrostatic in origin. Its magnitude is proportional to some power of the interatomic distance  $r$ . The different types of bonding depends on the electronic structure of the atoms concerned and hence directly related to the periodic table. The type of bonding within a material plays a major role in determining the electrical, chemical and physical properties of the material. The repulsive forces which come into existence when the distance between the atoms is decreased to such an extent that they are very close to one another and increase more intensively than attractive forces do. The repulsion between positively charged nuclei also contributes to the repulsive forces. The magnitude of the total repulsive force is also proportional to some power of  $r$ . A state of equilibrium is reached when these attractive and repulsive forces balance and this happens when two atoms or molecules are at an equilibrium distance  $r_0$ .

## 2. TYPES OF BONDS

Seitz in 1940 classified solids into five types according to the bonding of atoms, which has become a generally adapted classification (Table 4.1)

Table 4.1 Classification of solids according to the bonding of atoms

<i>Solids</i>	<i>Type of bond</i>	<i>Formation</i>	<i>Binding energy (eV/atom)</i>	<i>Typical examples</i>
1. Covalent	Covalent, atomic or homopolar bonds	Electron shared between two atoms	2–6	Carbon(diamond) Ge, Si, SiC, BN etc.
2. Ionic	Ionic or electrostatic bonds	Electron transfer and Coulomb interaction between cations and anions	0–2	Alkali halides
3. Metals	Metallic	Freely moving electrons in an array of positive ions	1–5	All metals and alloys

## Chapter: 5

### Photoelectric Effect

Dr. M. Surendra Varma

*Assistant Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

## Chapter: 6

### Heat Treatment

Dr. R. Manikandan

*Assosiacte Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

#### 1. INTRODUCTION

Heat treatment refers to the heating and cooling operations required to alter the properties of metals, alloys plastic and ceramic materials. Changes in material's properties result from changes made in microstructure of the material.

Heat treatment can be applied to ingots, castings, semi-finished products, welded joints and various elements of machines and instruments.

During heat-treatment of a metal piece, when it is heated to a definite temperature followed by cooling at a suitable rate, there occur changes in the micro-constituents of the metal.

These changes in the micro-constituents of the metal may be in their nature, form, size and distribution in the metal piece. Obviously, temperature of heating and rate of cooling are the main controlling factors of changes in micro-constituents. These changes in micro-constituents then control the changes in physical and mechanical properties of heat treated metal specimen. For various fabrication and manufacturing operations, heat treatment is a very important process.

The purpose of heat treatment is to achieve any one or more objectives cited as follows:

- (i) To remove strain hardening of a cold worked metal and to improve its ductility.
- (ii) To relieve internal stresses set up during cold-working, casting, welding and hot-working treatments.
- (iii) To remove gases from castings, to soften a metal to improve its machinability, and to increase the resistance to wear, heat and corrosion.
- (iv) To improve the cutting ability, i.e., hardness of a steel tool, to improve grain structure after hotworking a metal and to remove effects of previously performed heat-treatment operations.
- (v) To improve magnetization property, especially of steels, for producing permanent magnets.
- (vi) To refine grain structure after hot working a metal.
- (vii) To soften and toughen a high carbon steel piece.
- (viii) To produce a single phase alloy in stainless steel, and to produce a hard, wear resistant case on a tough core of a steel part.
- (ix) To harden non-ferrous metals and alloys, especially aluminium alloys and to produce a single phase alloy in stainless steel.
- (x) To produce a hard, wear resistant case on a tough core of a steel part and to toughen a hardened steel piece at the cost of its hardness.

## Chapter: 7

### Oxidation and Corrosion

Dr. R. Manikandan

*Associate Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

## 1. INTRODUCTION

Most materials, to one degree or another, experience some type of interaction with a large number of diverse environments. Often, such interactions with environments impair a material's usefulness as a result of the deterioration of its mechanical properties, e.g. ductility and strength, other physical properties, or appearance.

Deteriorative mechanisms are found to be different for the three types of materials. In metals, there is actual material loss either by dissolution (*corrosion*) or by the formation of non-metallic scale or film (*oxidation*). Ceramic materials are found to be relatively resistant to deterioration, which usually occurs at elevated temperatures or in rather extreme environments. The process is frequently also referred to as *corrosion*. In case of polymers, mechanisms and consequences differ from those for metals and ceramics, and usually referred to as *degradation*. Polymers may dissolve when exposed to a liquid solvent, or they may absorb the solvent and swell; also, electromagnetic radiation (primarily ultraviolet) and heat may cause alternations in their molecular structure.

The following types of corruptions are significant: (i) *Direct corrosion*, (ii) *Electrochemical corrosion*, (iii) *Galvanic corrosion*, and (iv) *High temperature oxidation corrosion*.

## 2. CORROSION-RESISTANT

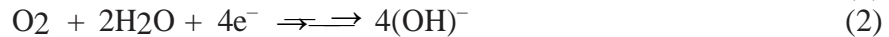
Structural materials intended for operation in aggressive media must possess a high corrosion resistance, as well as the desired mechanical properties. The most corrosion-susceptible materials are metals and alloys, which can be explained by their high chemical activity and high electric conductivity.

Corrosion of metals is defined as the destructive and unintentional attack of a metal. It is electrochemical and ordinarily begins at the surface. The consequences of corrosion are all too common. Familiar examples of corrosion of metals include the rusting of automotive body panels and radiator and exhaust components. Corrosion of metals is their spontaneous destruction due to chemical or electrochemical interaction with the surrounding medium. Corrosion-resistant metals and alloys are those which can withstand the corrosive action of a medium, i.e., corrosion processes proceed in them at a relatively low rate. Usually, it is distinguished between two principal kinds of corrosion: electrochemical and chemical. The following factors influence corrosion: (i) *internal structure*, (ii) *chemical nature*, (iii) *environment* or working conditions, e.g., stresses, temperature, or concentration, (iv) *surface film*, (v) presence of dirt, dust or any foreign matter, (vi) distribution of secondary phases, (vii) blow holes, inclusions and trapped gases, (viii) eddy electric currents, and (ix) nature of engineering application.

## 3. ELECTROCHEMICAL CORROSION

This kind of corrosion develops in liquid electrolytes: moist atmosphere and soil, salt

Fig. 7.1. Schematic of a corrosion cell



Here Me represents the hypothetical metal. Examples in which metals oxidize are



The site at which oxidation takes place is called the *anode* and oxidation is sometimes called an *anodic reaction*.

The electrons generated from each metal atom that is oxidized must be transferred to and become a part of another chemical species in what is termed a *reduction* reaction (eq. 3). Other reduction reactions are possible, depending on the nature of the solution to which the metal is exposed. For an acid solution having dissolved oxygen, the reduction reaction



may probably occur. For a neutral or basic aqueous solution in which oxygen is also dissolved, reduction

reaction given by (2) will take place. Any metal ions present in the solution may also be reduced. For ions that can exist in more than one valence state (multivalent ions), reduction may occur in accordance by



in which the metal ion decreases its valence state by accepting an electron. It is also possible that a metal

may be totally reduced from an ionic to a neutral metallic state as



The location at which reduction occurs is called the *cathode*. We may note that two or more of the reduction reactions above may occur simultaneously.

As long as corrosion cell remains open, the reactions at the anode and the cathode portions proceed at the same rate in both directions, i.e. they are *reversible*.

An overall electrochemical reaction must consist of at least one oxidation and one reduction, and will be the sum of them. We may note that often the individual oxidation and reduction reactions are termed as *half-reactions*. However, there can be no net electrical charge accumulation from the electrons and ions, i.e., the total rate of oxidation must be equal to the total rate of reduction. Obviously, all electrons generated through oxidation must be consumed by reduction.

To make it clear, let us consider an example in which zinc metal is immersed in an acid solution containing  $\text{H}^{+}$  ions.

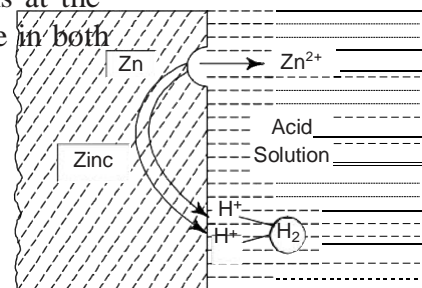
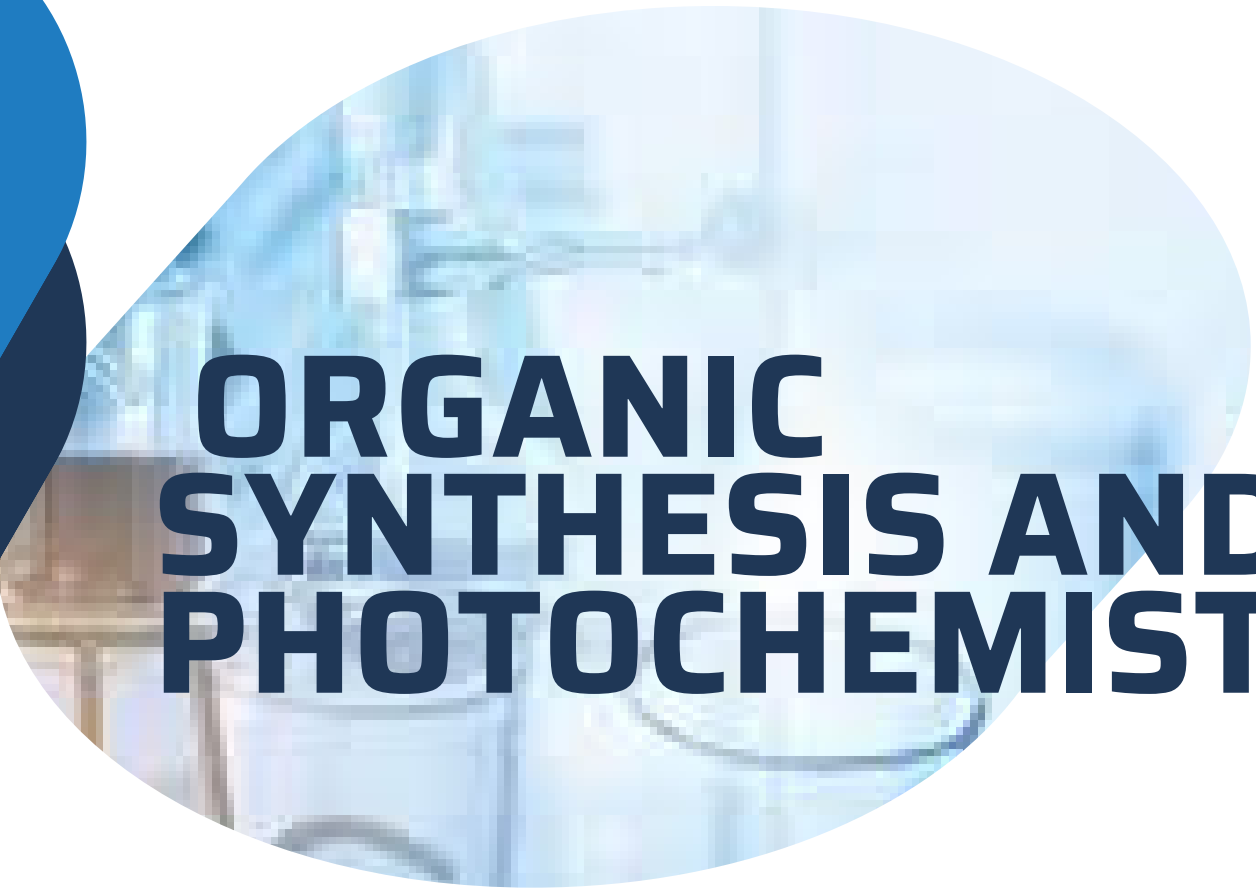


Fig. 7.2 Zinc in an acid solution. The electrochemical reactions in the corrosion of zinc





# ORGANIC SYNTHESIS AND PHOTOCHEMISTRY

Edited By  
**Dr. J S NIRMALRAM**



978-93-6255-786-5

Organic Synthesis and Photochemistry

22/10/2019

Copyright©2019

By

Dr. J S NIRMAL RAM

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN Number

978-93-6255-786-5

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology  
(PRIST)

## **Table of Contents**

### **Chapter 1**

Dr.J.S Nirmal ram

Introduction. . . . . pg. 2

### **Chapter 2**

Dr.M.Surendra Varma

Some Elementary Aspects of Photochemistry.. . . . pg. 8

### **Chapter 3**

Dr.R.Manikandan

Electronic TranSitions. . . . . pg. 18

### **Chapter 4**

Dr.D.Chinnaraja

Photochemical Reactions. . . . . pg. 25

### **Chapter 5**

Dr.G.Anburaj

Photolysis of Propanone. . . . .pg. 35

### **Chapter 6**

M.TAMIZHSELVAN

Photosensitisation. . . . .pg. 42

### **Chapter 7**

Dr. D. SENTHILNATHAN

Applications of Photochemical Reactions. . . . .pg. 53

### **Chapter 8**

Dr.P.CHRISTURAJ

Photoisomerisation of cis-trans -1,Z - diphenylethene (Stilbene)pg.  
.....pg 53

### **Chapter 9**

Dr.G.Anburaj

Cycloaddition. . . . . pg. 53

### **Chapter 10**

Dr.J.S Nirmal ram

Photoreductive Dimerisation of Diphenyl methanone  
(Benzophenone). . . . . pg. 53

References

## Chapter 1

### Introduction

An extraordinary variety of reactions of organic compounds are known to occur under the influence of visible and ultraviolet light. Some of these, such as the photochemical halogenation of alkanes and photosynthesis in green plants, already have been discussed (see [Sections 4-4D](#) and [20-9](#)). It is not our purpose here to review organic photochemistry in detail - rather, we shall mention a few types of important photochemical reactions and show how these can be explained by the principles discussed in the preceding section.

Compounds have very different chemical behavior in their excited states compared to their ground states. Not only is the energy much higher, but the molecular geometry and electronic configurations are different. Intuitively, we expect that excited states of molecules, in which two electrons occupy *separate unfilled* orbitals, would have substantial diradical character. This is the case, especially for triplet states, as we shall see.

### Photodissociation Reactions

We have mentioned how chlorine molecules dissociate to chlorine atoms on absorption of near-ultraviolet light and thereby cause radical-chain chlorination of saturated hydrocarbons ([Section 4-4D](#)). Photochemical chlorination is an example of a photochemical reaction that can have a high *quantum yield* - that is, many molecules of chlorination product can be generated per quantum of light absorbed. The quantum yield of a reaction is said to be unity when 1 mol of reactant is converted to product(s) per einstein of light absorbed. The symbol for quantum yield is usually  $\Phi$ .

2-Propanone (acetone) vapor undergoes a photodissociation reaction with 313-nm light with  $\Phi$  somewhat less than unity. Absorption of light by 2-propanone results in the formation of an excited state that has sufficient energy to undergo cleavage of a C-CC bond (the weakest bond in the molecule) and form a methyl radical and an ethanoyl radical. This is a *primary* photochemical reaction

## Chapter 2

### Some Elementary Aspects of Photochemistry

**Photochemistry** is the branch of [chemistry](#) concerned with the chemical effects of light. Generally, this term is used to describe a chemical reaction caused by absorption of [ultraviolet](#) ([wavelength](#) from 100 to 400 nm), [visible](#) (400–750 nm), or [infrared](#) radiation (750–2500 nm).<sup>[1]</sup>

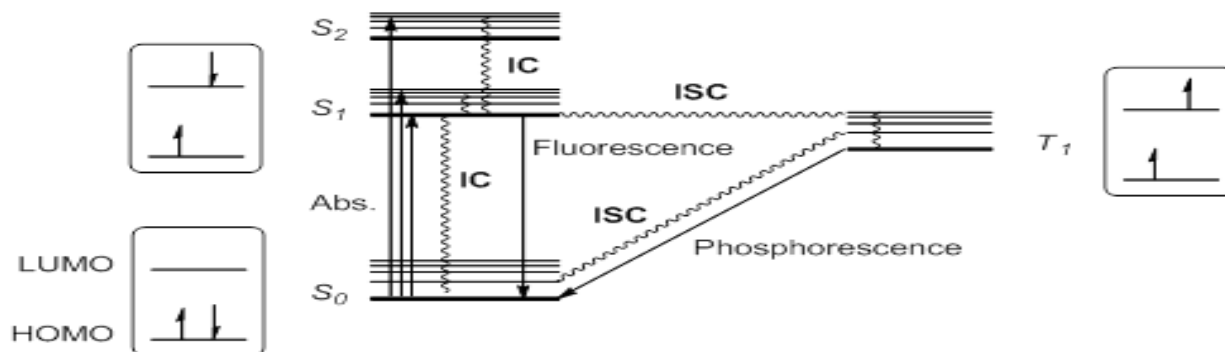
In nature, photochemistry is of immense importance as it is the basis of photosynthesis, vision, and the formation of [vitamin D](#) with sunlight.<sup>[2]</sup> It is also responsible for the appearance of DNA mutations leading to skin cancers.<sup>[3]</sup>

Photochemical reactions proceed differently than temperature-driven reactions. Photochemical paths access high-energy intermediates that cannot be generated thermally, thereby overcoming large [activation barriers](#) in a short period of time, and allowing reactions otherwise inaccessible by thermal processes. Photochemistry can also be destructive, as illustrated by the [photodegradation](#) of plastics

#### Fluorescence and phosphorescence

When a molecule or atom in the [ground state](#) ( $S_0$ ) absorbs light, one electron is excited to a higher orbital level. This electron maintains its [spin](#) according to the spin selection rule; other transitions would violate the law of [conservation of angular momentum](#). The excitation to a higher [singlet state](#) can be from [HOMO](#) to [LUMO](#) or to a higher orbital, so that singlet excited states  $S_1$ ,  $S_2$ ,  $S_3$ ... at different energies are possible.

[Kasha's rule](#) stipulates that higher singlet states would quickly relax by radiationless decay or [internal conversion](#) (IC) to  $S_1$ . Thus,  $S_1$  is usually, but not always, the only relevant singlet excited state. This excited state  $S_1$  can further relax to  $S_0$  by IC, but also by an allowed radiative transition from  $S_1$  to  $S_0$  that emits a photon; this process is called [fluorescence](#).

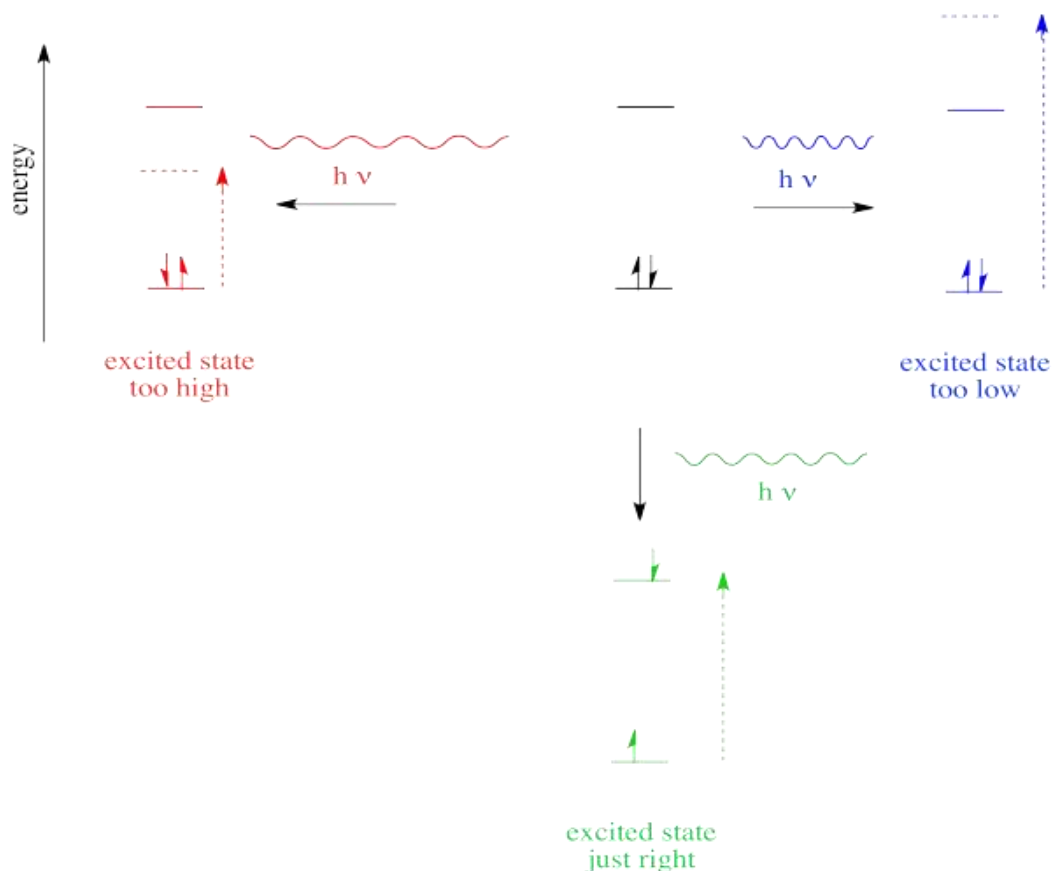


[Jablonski diagram](#). Radiative paths are represented by straight arrows and non-radiative paths by curly lines. Alternatively, it is possible for the excited state  $S_1$  to undergo spin inversion and to generate a [triplet](#) excited state  $T_1$  having two unpaired electrons with the same spin.

## Chapter 3

### Electronic Transitions

So far, we have come across one big rule of photon absorbance. In order to be absorbed, a photon's energy has to match an energy difference within the compound that is absorbing it.



In the case of visible or ultraviolet light, the energy of a photon is roughly in the region that would be appropriate to promote an electron to a higher energy level. Different wavelengths would be able to promote different electrons, depending on the energy difference between an occupied electronic energy level and an unoccupied one. Other types of electromagnetic radiation would not be able to promote an electron, but they would be coupled to other events. For example, absorption of infrared light is tied to vibrational energy levels. Microwave radiation is tied to rotational energy levels in molecules. Thus, one reason a photon may or may not be absorbed has to do with whether its energy corresponds to the available energy differences within the molecule or ion that it encounters.

## Chapter 4

### Photochemical Reactions

Photochemistry is the branch of chemistry which is *mainly concerned with rates and mechanisms of reactions resulting from the exposure of reactants to light radiations*. The photochemical reaction is, in fact, the thermal reaction of the electronically excited state of the molecule while the dark reaction of the molecule is the thermal reaction of the ground state.

#### Table of Contents

- [What is Photochemical Reaction?](#)
- [Photochemical Reaction Definition](#)
- [Photochemical Reaction in Photosynthesis](#)
- [Recommended Videos](#)
- [Photochemical Reaction Examples](#)
- [Frequently Asked Questions](#)

#### What is Photochemical Reaction?

A photochemical reaction is a *chemical reaction triggered when light energy is absorbed by a substance's molecules*.

This response leads the molecules to experience a temporary excited state, thus altering their physical and [chemical properties](#) from the substance's initial molecule.



Photochemical Reaction



## Chapter 5

### Photolysis of Propanone

**Acetone (2-propanone or dimethyl ketone)** is an organic compound with the formula  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CO}$ . It is the simplest and smallest ketone ( $>\text{C}=\text{O}$ ). It is a colorless, highly volatile, and flammable liquid with a characteristic pungent odour, very reminiscent of the smell of pear drops.

Acetone is miscible with water and serves as an important organic solvent in industry, home, and laboratory. About 6.7 million tonnes were produced worldwide in 2010, mainly for use as a solvent and for production of methyl methacrylate and bisphenol A, which are precursors to widely used plastics. It is a common building block in organic chemistry. It serves as a solvent in household products such as nail polish remover and paint thinner. It has volatile organic compound (VOC)-exempt status in the United States.

Acetone is produced and disposed of in the human body through normal metabolic processes. It is normally present in blood and urine. People with diabetic ketoacidosis produce it in larger amounts. Ketogenic diets that increase ketone bodies (acetone,  $\beta$ -hydroxybutyric acid and acetoacetic acid) in the blood are used to counter epileptic attacks in children who suffer from refractory epilepsy

The study of chemical reactions, isomerizations and physical behavior that may occur under the influence of visible and/or ultraviolet light is called **Photochemistry**. Two fundamental principles are the foundation for understanding photochemical transformations:

- **The first law of photochemistry**, the Grotthuss-Draper law, states that light must be absorbed by a compound in order for a photochemical reaction to take place.
- **The second law of photochemistry**, the Stark-Einstein law, states that for each photon of light absorbed by a chemical system, only one molecule is activated for subsequent reaction. This "photoequivalence law" was derived by Albert Einstein during his development of the quantum (photon) theory of light.

The efficiency with which a given photochemical process occurs is given by its **Quantum Yield ( $\Phi$ )**. Since many photochemical reactions are complex, and may compete with unproductive energy loss, the quantum yield is usually specified for a particular event. Thus, we may define quantum yield as "the number of moles of a stated reactant disappearing, or the number of moles of a stated product produced, per einstein of monochromatic light absorbed.", where an einstein is one mole of photons. For example, irradiation of acetone with 313 nm light ( $3130 \text{ \AA}$ ) gives a complex

## Chapter 6

### Photosensitisation

Photosensitizers have existed within natural systems for as long as chlorophyll and other light sensitive molecules have been a part of plant life, but studies of photosensitizers began as early as the 1900s, where scientists observed photosensitization in biological substrates and in the treatment of cancer. Mechanistic studies related to photosensitizers began with scientists analyzing the results of chemical reactions where photosensitizers photo-oxidized molecular oxygen into peroxide species. The results were understood by calculating quantum efficiencies and fluorescent yields at varying wavelengths of light and comparing these results with the yield of reactive oxygen species. However, it was not until the 1960s that the electron donating mechanism was confirmed through various spectroscopic methods including reaction-intermediate studies and luminescence studies.

The term photosensitizer does not appear in scientific literature until the 1960s. Instead, scientists would refer to photosensitizers as sensitizers used in photo-oxidation or photo-oxygenation processes. Studies during this time period involving photosensitizers utilized organic photosensitizers, consisting of aromatic hydrocarbon molecules, which could facilitate synthetic chemistry reactions. However, by the 1970s and 1980s, photosensitizers gained attraction in the scientific community for their role within biologic processes and enzymatic processes.<sup>[12][13]</sup> Currently, photosensitizers are studied for their contributions to fields such as energy harvesting, photoredox catalysis in synthetic chemistry, and cancer treatment.

Colloidal quantum dots are nanoscale semiconductor materials with highly tunable optical and electronic properties. Quantum dots photosensitize via the same mechanism as organometallic photosensitizers and organic photosensitizers, but their nanoscale properties allow for greater control in distinctive aspects. Some key advantages to the use of quantum dots as photosensitizers includes their small, tunable band gap which allows for efficient transitions to the triplet state, and their insolubility in many solvents which allows for easy retrieval from a synthetic reaction mixture.

#### *Nanorods*

Nanorods, similar in size to quantum dots, have tunable optical and electronic properties. Based on their size and material composition, it is possible to tune the maximum absorption peak for nanorods during their synthesis. This control has led to the creation of photosensitizing nanorods.

### **Biological effects of photosensitizers**

Photosensitizers that are readily incorporated into the external tissues can increase the rate at which reactive oxygen species are generated upon exposure to UV light (such as UV-containing sunlight). Some photosensitizing agents, such as St. John's Wort, appear to increase the incidence of inflammatory skin conditions in animals and have been observed to slightly reduce the minimum tanning dose in humans

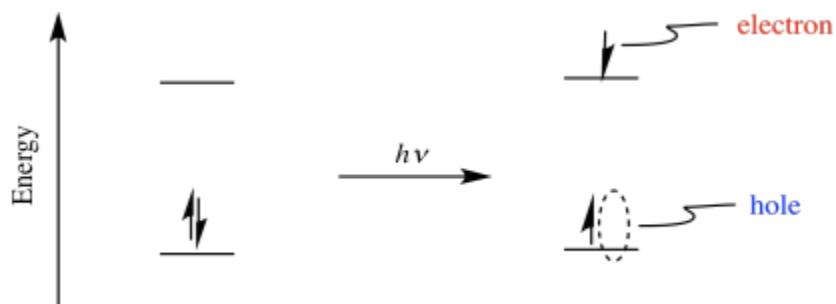
## Chapter 7

### Applications of Photochemical Reactions

There are lots of ways that photochemistry can be harnessed to do useful things. Solar power is an obvious example: sunlight is used to excite an electron in a solar panel, leading to generation of electricity. That kind of power can potentially have a broad impact on other aspects of the energy industry. For example, a number of researchers have been trying to use sunlight as an energy source to make hydrogen from water.

Photoredox catalysis is the application of photochemistry to carry out redox reactions catalytically. For example, if sunlight were absorbed by a material such as a semiconductor, resulting in excitation of an electron, the resulting species may have the energy to reduce the protons in water to dihydrogen. If the semiconductor could be regenerated with a reducing agent, the process would be catalytic.

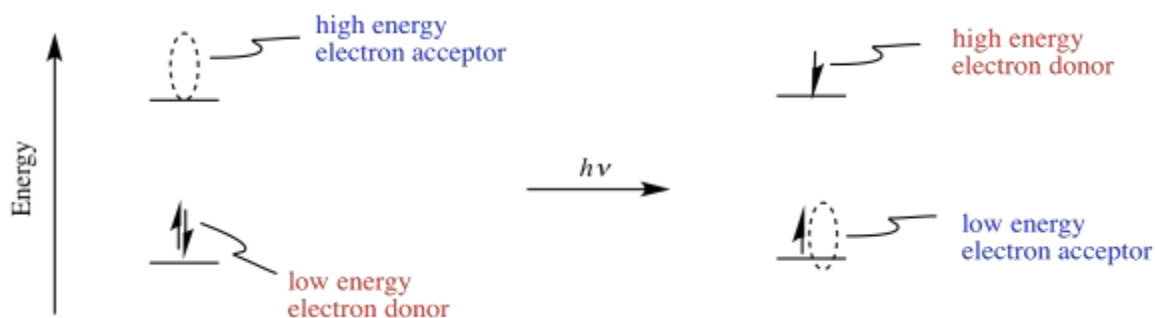
Perhaps the most powerful aspect of photoexcitation is that it results in both a powerful oxidant and a powerful reductant. Excitation of an electron results in electron/hole pair separation. After excitation, the electron is in a higher energy level, and it leaves behind a "hole", where the electron used to be.



## Chapter 8

### Photoisomerisation of cis-buns -1,Z – diphenylethene

Because the electron is at a higher energy level than it used to be, donation to an acceptor is more favorable than it was before. The compound has become a better reducing agent through photoexcitation. Also, because the hole is lower in energy than the LUMO of the ground state, it will more easily accept an electron from a donor. That means the compound has also become a better oxidising agent through photoexcitation.



We can estimate how much the reducing or oxidizing power of a compound changes upon excitation by a photon. For example, the reduction potential depends upon the relative energy level of the orbital into which an electron would be donated. Upon photoexcitation, that energy level changes. It goes from the ground state LUMO to the level of the hole introduced where an electron used to be. The difference in energy between those two levels is the same as the energy of the photon that was absorbed.

## Chapter 9

### Cycloaddition.

In organic chemistry, a **cycloaddition** is a chemical reaction in which "two or more unsaturated molecules (or parts of the same molecule) combine with the formation of a cyclic adduct in which there is a net reduction of the bond multiplicity". The resulting reaction is a cyclization reaction. Many but not all cycloadditions are concerted and thus pericyclic.<sup>[1]</sup> Nonconcerted cycloadditions are not pericyclic.<sup>[2]</sup> As a class of addition reaction, cycloadditions permit carbon-carbon bond formation without the use of a nucleophile or electrophile.

Cycloadditions can be described using two systems of notation. An older but still common notation is based on the size of linear arrangements of atoms in the reactants. It uses parentheses:  $(i + j + \dots)$  where the variables are the numbers of linear atoms in each reactant. The product is a cycle of size  $(i + j + \dots)$ . In this system, the standard Diels-Alder reaction is a  $(4 + 2)$ -cycloaddition, the 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition is a  $(3 + 2)$ -cycloaddition and cyclopropanation of a carbene with an alkene a  $(2 + 1)$ -cycloaddition.<sup>[1]</sup>

A more recent, IUPAC-preferred notation, first introduced by Woodward and Hoffmann, uses square brackets to indicate the number of *electrons*, rather than carbon atoms, involved in the formation of the product. In the  $[i + j + \dots]$  notation, the standard Diels-Alder reaction is a  $[4 + 2]$ -cycloaddition, while the 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition is also a  $[4 + 2]$ -cycloaddition.

## Chapter 10

### Photoreductive Dimerisation of Diphenyl methanone (Benzophenone)

#### Thermal cycloadditions and their stereochemistry

Thermal cycloadditions are those cycloadditions where the reactants are in the ground electronic state. They usually have  $(4n + 2) \pi$  electrons participating in the starting material, for some integer  $n$ . These reactions occur for reasons of orbital symmetry in a suprafacial-suprafacial (syn/syn stereochemistry) in most cases. Very few examples of antarafacial-antarafacial (anti/anti stereochemistry) reactions have also been reported. There are a few examples of thermal cycloadditions which have  $4n \pi$  electrons (for example the  $[2 + 2]$ -cycloaddition). These proceed in a suprafacial-antarafacial sense (syn/anti stereochemistry), such as the cycloaddition reactions of ketene and allene derivatives, in which the orthogonal set of p orbitals allows the reaction to proceed via a crossed transition state, although the analysis of these reactions as  $[\pi 2s + \pi 2a]$  is controversial. Strained alkenes like trans-cycloheptene derivatives have also been reported to react in an antarafacial manner in  $[2 + 2]$ -cycloaddition reactions.

Doering (in a personal communication to Woodward) discovered that heptafulvalene and tetracyanoethylene can react in a suprafacial-antarafacial  $[14 + 2]$ -cycloaddition. This result was later confirmed and extended by Erden and Kaufmann, who reported the suprafacial-antarafacial cycloaddition of heptafulvalene with N-phenyltriazolinedione.



# MODERN THEORIES OF COORDINATION COMPOUNDS

*Edited by*

**Dr. J S NIRMAL RAM**



978-93-6255-002-6

Modern theories of coordination compounds

24/09/2019

Modern theories of coordination compounds

Copyright©2019

By

Dr. J S NIRMAL RAM

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN Number

978-93-6255-002-6

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology  
(PRIST)



## **Table of Contents**

### **Chapter 1**

Dr.J.S Nirmal ram

Introduction ..... pg. 2

### **Chapter 2**

Dr.M.Surendra Varma

Intramolecular Interactions. .... pg. 8

### **Chapter 3**

Dr.R.Manikandan

The Nature of A-H-H-E Hydrogen Bond. ....pg.18

### **Chapter 4**

Dr.D.Chinnaraja

Intermolecular Interactions .....pg.25

### **Chapter 5**

Dr.G.Anburaj

Reactivity 6 Intramolecular Effects of Pendant Groups. . . . pg. 35

**Chapter 6**

M.TAMIZHSELVAN

Intramolecular Effects of Pendant Groups. . . . .pg. 42

**Chapter 7**

Dr. D. SENTHILNATHAN

Heterolytic H-H Activation. . . . .pg. 53

**Chapter 8**

Dr.P.CHRISTURAJ

Consequences of He-H Bond Formation. . . . . pg. 53

**Chapter 9**

Dr.G.Anburaj

Metal Carbonyls . . . . . pg. 53

**Chapter 10**

Dr.J.S Nirmal ram

Metal-Phosphine Complexes . . . . . pg. 53

References

## Chapter 1

### Introduction

A **coordination complex** is a chemical compound consisting of a central atom or ion, which is usually metallic and is called the *coordination centre*, and a surrounding array of bound molecules or ions, that are in turn known as *ligands* or complexing agents. Many metal-containing compounds, especially those that include transition metals (elements like titanium that belong to the periodic table's d-block), are coordination complexes.

### Nomenclature and terminology

Coordination complexes are so pervasive that their structures and reactions are described in many ways, sometimes confusingly. The atom within a ligand that is bonded to the central metal atom or ion is called the **donor atom**. In a typical complex, a metal ion is bonded to several donor atoms, which can be the same or different. A polydentate (multiple bonded) ligand is a molecule or ion that bonds to the central atom through several of the ligand's atoms; ligands with 2, 3, 4 or even 6 bonds to the central atom are common. These complexes are called chelate complexes; the formation of such complexes is called chelation, complexation, and coordination.

The central atom or ion, together with all ligands, comprise the coordination sphere.<sup>[5][6]</sup> The central atoms or ion and the donor atoms comprise the first coordination sphere.

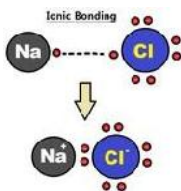
**Coordination** refers to the "coordinate covalent bonds" (dipolar bonds) between the ligands and the central atom. Originally, a complex implied a reversible association of molecules, atoms, or ions through such weak chemical bonds.

## Chapter 2

### Intramolecular Interact ions.

The classical model identifies three main types of chemical bonds — ionic, covalent, and metallic — distinguished by the degree of charge separation between participating atoms.<sup>[3]</sup> The characteristics of the bond formed can be predicted by the properties of constituent atoms, namely electronegativity. They differ in the magnitude of their bond enthalpies, a measure of bond strength, and thus affect the physical and chemical properties of compounds in different ways. % of ionic character is directly proportional difference in electronegativity of bonded atom.

#### Ionic bond



#### Ionic bonding between sodium and chlorine

An ionic bond can be approximated as complete transfer of one or more valence electrons of atoms participating in bond formation, resulting in a positive ion and a negative ion bound together by electrostatic forces.<sup>[4]</sup> Electrons in an ionic bond tend to be mostly found around one of the two constituent atoms due to the large electronegativity difference between the two atoms, generally more than 1.9, (greater difference in electronegativity results in a stronger bond); this is often described as one atom giving electrons to the other.<sup>[5]</sup> This type of bond is generally formed between a metal and nonmetal, such as sodium and chlorine in NaCl. Sodium would give an electron to chlorine, forming a positively charged sodium ion and a negatively charged chloride ion.

## Chapter 3

### The Nature of A-H-H-E Hydrogen Bond.

In chemistry, a **hydrogen bond** (or **H-bond**) is primarily an electrostatic force of attraction between a hydrogen (H) atom which is covalently bonded to a more electronegative "donor" atom or group (Dn), and another electronegative atom bearing a lone pair of electrons—the hydrogen bond acceptor (Ac). Such an interacting system is generally denoted  $Dn-H \cdots Ac$ , where the solid line denotes a polar covalent bond, and the dotted or dashed line indicates the hydrogen bond. The most frequent donor and acceptor atoms are the period 2 elements nitrogen (N), oxygen (O), and fluorine (F).

Hydrogen bonds can be intermolecular (occurring between separate molecules) or intramolecular (occurring among parts of the same molecule). The energy of a hydrogen bond depends on the geometry, the environment, and the nature of the specific donor and acceptor atoms and can vary between 1 and 40 kcal/mol. This makes them somewhat stronger than a van der Waals interaction, and weaker than fully covalent or ionic bonds. This type of bond can occur in inorganic molecules such as water and in organic molecules like DNA and proteins. Hydrogen bonds are responsible for holding materials such as paper and felted wool together, and for causing separate sheets of paper to stick together after becoming wet and subsequently drying.

The hydrogen bond is also responsible for many of the physical and chemical properties of compounds of N, O, and F that seem unusual compared with other similar structures. In particular, intermolecular hydrogen bonding

## Chapter 4

### Intermolecular Interactions

An intermolecular force (IMF; also secondary force) is the force that mediates interaction between molecules, including the electromagnetic forces of attraction or repulsion which act between atoms and other types of neighbouring particles, e.g. atoms or ions. Intermolecular forces are weak relative to intramolecular forces – the forces which hold a molecule together. For example, the covalent bond, involving sharing electron pairs between atoms, is much stronger than the forces present between neighboring molecules. Both sets of forces are essential parts of force fields frequently used in molecular mechanics.

The first reference to the nature of microscopic forces is found in Alexis Clairaut's work *Théorie de la figure de la Terre*, published in Paris in 1743. Other scientists who have contributed to the investigation of microscopic forces include: Laplace, Gauss, Maxwell, Boltzmann and Pauling.

Attractive intermolecular forces are categorized into the following types:

Hydrogen bonding

Ion–dipole forces and ion–induced dipole force Cation–

$\pi$ ,  $\sigma$ – $\pi$  and  $\pi$ – $\pi$  bonding

Van der Waals forces – Keesom force, Debye force, and London dispersion force

Cation–cation bonding

Salt bridge (protein and supramolecular)

## Chapter 5

### Reactivity Intramolecular Effects of Pendant Groups

In intramolecular organic reactions, two reaction sites are contained within a single molecule. This configuration elevates the effective concentration of the reacting partners resulting in high reaction rates. Many intramolecular reactions are observed where the intermolecular version does not take place.

Intramolecular reactions, especially ones leading to the formation of 5- and 6-membered rings, are rapid compared to an analogous intermolecular process. This is largely a consequence of the reduced entropic cost for reaching the transition state of ring formation and the absence of significant strain associated with formation of rings of these sizes. For the formation of different ring sizes via cyclization of substrates of varying tether length, the order of reaction rates (rate constants  $k_n$  for the formation of an  $n$ -membered ring) is usually  $k_5 > k_6 > k_3 > k_7 > k_4$  as shown below for a series of  $\omega$ -bromoalkylamines. This somewhat complicated rate trend reflects the interplay of these entropic and strain factors:



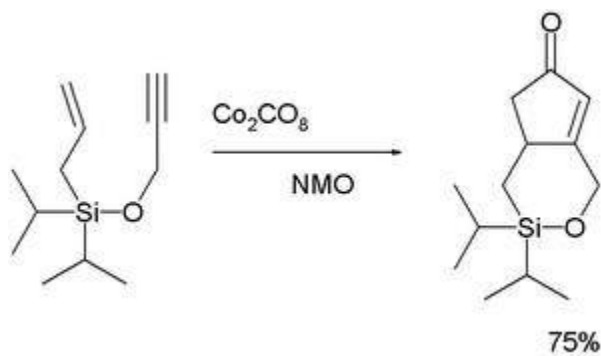
For the '**small rings**' (3- and 4- membered), the slow rates is a consequence of angle strain experienced at the transition state. Although three-membered rings are more strained, formation of aziridine is faster than formation of azetidine due to the proximity of the leaving group and nucleophile in the former, which increases the probability that they would meet in a reactive conformation.

## Chapter 6

### Intramolecular Effects of Pendant Groups

#### Molecular tethers

Otherwise-intermolecular reactions can be made temporarily intramolecular by linking both reactants by a tether with all the advantages associated to it. Popular choices of tether contain a carbonate ester, boronic ester, silyl ether, or a silyl acetal link (**silicon tethers**) which are fairly inert in many organic reactions yet can be cleaved by specific reagents. The main hurdle for this strategy to work is selecting the proper length for the tether and making sure reactive groups have an optimal orientation with respect to each other. An examples is a Pauson–Khand reaction of an alkene and an alkyne tethered together via a silyl ether



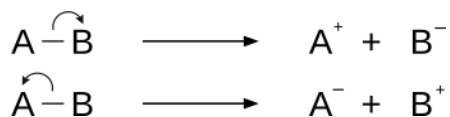
In this particular reaction, the tether angle bringing the reactive groups together is effectively reduced by placing isopropyl groups on the silicon atom via the Thorpe–Ingold effect. No reaction takes place when these bulky groups are replaced by smaller methyl groups. Another example is a photochemical [2+2]cycloaddition with two alkene groups tethered through a silicon acetal group (racemic, the other enantiomer not depicted), which is subsequently cleaved by TBAF yielding the endo-diol.



## Chapter 7

### Heterolytic H-H Activation

In chemistry, **heterolysis** or **heterolytic fission** (from Greek ἕτερος (*heteros*) 'different' and λύσις (*lusis*) 'loosening') is the process of cleaving/breaking a covalent bond where one previously bonded species takes both original bonding electrons from the other species. During heterolytic bond cleavage of a neutral molecule, a cation and an anion will be generated. Most commonly the more electronegative atom keeps the pair of electrons becoming anionic while the more electropositive atom becomes cationic.



Heterolytic fission almost always happens to single bonds; the process usually produces two fragment species.

The energy required to break the bond is called the heterolytic bond dissociation energy, which is similar (but not equivalent) to homolytic bond dissociation energy commonly used to represent the energy value of a bond.

The discovery and categorization of heterolytic bond fission was clearly dependent on the discovery and categorization of the chemical bond.

## Chapter 8

### Hydrogen Bonding

---

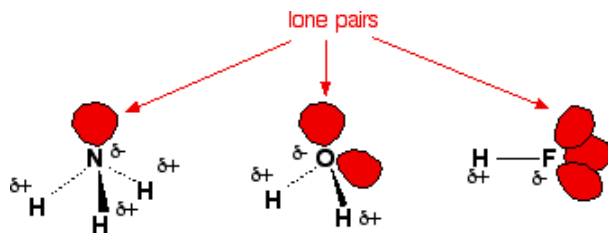
A hydrogen bond is an intermolecular force (IMF) that forms a special type of dipole-dipole attraction when a hydrogen atom bonded to a strongly electronegative atom exists in the vicinity of another electronegative atom with a lone pair of electrons. Intermolecular forces (IMFs) occur between molecules. Other examples include ordinary dipole-dipole interactions and dispersion forces. Hydrogen bonds are generally stronger than ordinary dipole-dipole and dispersion forces, but weaker than true covalent and ionic bonds.

#### The evidence for hydrogen bonding

Many elements form compounds with hydrogen. If you plot the boiling points of the compounds of the group 14 elements with hydrogen, you find that the boiling points increase as you go down the group.

#### origin of Hydrogen Bonding

The molecules capable of hydrogen bonding include the following:



## Chapter 9

### Metal Carbonyls

In chemistry, a metal carbonyl cluster is a compound that contains two or more metal atoms linked in part by metal–metal bonds and containing carbon monoxide (CO) as the exclusive or predominant ligand. The area is a subfield of metal carbonyl chemistry, and many metal carbonyl clusters are in fact prepared from simple metal carbonyls. Simple examples include  $\text{Fe}_2(\text{CO})_9$ ,  $\text{Fe}_3(\text{CO})_{12}$ , and  $\text{Mn}_2(\text{CO})_{10}$ . [1] High nuclearity clusters include  $[\text{Rh}_{13}(\text{CO})_{24}\text{H}_3]^{2-}$  and the stacked Pt<sub>3</sub> triangles  $[\text{Pt}_{3n}(\text{CO})_{6n}]^{2-}$  ( $n = 2-6$ )

#### Binary metal carbonyl clusters

Binary carbonyl clusters consist only of metal and CO. They are the most widely studied and used metal carbonyl clusters. They arise in general by the condensation of unsaturated metal carbonyls. Dissociation of CO from  $\text{Ru}(\text{CO})_5$  would give  $\text{Ru}(\text{CO})_4$ , which could trimerize to  $\text{Ru}_3(\text{CO})_{12}$ . The reaction mechanisms are more complicated than this simple scenario. Condensation of low-molecular-weight metal carbonyls requires decarbonylation, which can be induced thermally, photochemically, or using various reagents. The nuclearity (number of metal centers) of binary metal carbonyl clusters is usually no greater than six.

The synthesis and characterization of the platinum carbonyl dianions  $[\text{Pt}_{3n}(\text{CO})_{6n}]^{2-}$  ( $n = 1-10$ ), also known as Chini clusters or more correctly Chini-Longoni clusters, are recognized by the scientific community as the most spectacular result of Chini's work.

## Chapter 10

### Metal-Phosphine Complexes

In this lecture you will learn the following

- Know about metal phosphine complexes.
- Have an understanding of the steric and electronic properties of the phosphine ligands.
- Obtain a deeper insight about the metal phosphine interactions.
- Be introduced to other  $\pi$ -basic ligands.

Phosphines are one of the few ligands that have been extensively studied over the last few decades to an extent that the systematic fine tuning of the sterics and electronics can now be achieved with certain degree of predictability. Phosphines are better spectator ligands than actor ligands. Tolman carried out pioneering infrared spectroscopy experiments on the  $\text{PR}_3\text{Ni}(\text{CO})_3$  complexes looking at the  $\nu_{(\text{CO})}$  stretching frequencies for obtaining an insight on the donor properties of the  $\text{PR}_3$  ligands. Thus, a stronger  $\sigma$ -donor phosphine ligand would increase the electron density at the metal center leading to an enhanced metal to ligand  $\pi$ -back bonding and thereby lowering of the  $\nu_{(\text{CO})}$  stretching frequencies in these complexes. Another important aspect of the phosphine ligand is its size that has significant steric impact on its metal complexes. Thus, unlike CO ligand, which is small and hence many may simultaneously be able to bind to a metal center, the same is not true for the phosphine ligands as only a few can bind to a metal center. The number of phosphine ligands that can bind to a metal center also depends on the size of its R substituents.

# COORDINATION CHEMISTRY

---

EDITED BY

**DR. J S NIRMAL RAM**



978-93-6255-163-4

# **Coordination Chemistry**

Copyright©2019

By

**Dr.J S NIRMAL RAM**

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN Number

978-93-6255-163-4

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## **Table of Contents**

### **Chapter 1**

Dr.J.S Nirmal ram

COORDINATION CHEMISTRY: BASIC CONCEPTS ..... pg. 4

### **Chapter 2**

Dr.M.Surendra Varma

COORDINATION CHEMISTRY THEORY.. . pg. 12

### **Chapter 3**

Dr.R.Manikandan

STEREO CHEMISTRY OF COORDINATION COMPOUNDS pg. 17

### **Chapter 4**

Dr.D.Chinnaraja

ISOMERISM IN COORDINATION COMPOUNDS pg. 24

### **Chapter 5**

Dr.G.Anburaj

METAL-LIGAND EQUILIBRIA IN SOLUTION pg. 33

### **Chapter 6**

M.TAMIZHSELVAN

REACTION MECHANISM OF TRANSITION METAL COMPLEXES pg. 41

### **Chapter 7**

Dr. D. SENTHILNATHAN

METAL-LIGAND BONDING IN COMPELXES pg. 49

**Chapter 8**

Dr.P.CHRISTURAJ

ELECTRONIC SPECTRAL STUDIES OF TRANSITION METAL COMPLEXES pg.  
52

**Chapter 9**

Dr.G.Anburaj

MAGNETIC PROPERTIES OF TRANSITION METAL COMPLEXES pg.  
55

**Chapter 10**

Dr.J.S Nirmal ram

METAL P-COMPLEXES pg. 59

References



## Chapter 1

### COORDINATION CHEMISTRY: BASIC CONCEPTS

#### Introduction

Coordination chemistry emerged from the work of Alfred Werner, a Swiss chemist who examined different compounds composed of cobalt (III) chloride and ammonia. Upon the addition of hydrochloric acid, Werner observed that ammonia could not be completely removed. He then proposed that the ammonia must be bound more tightly to the central cobalt ion. However, when aqueous silver nitrate was added, one of the products formed was solid silver chloride. The amount of silver chloride formed was related to the number of ammonia molecules bound to the cobalt (III) chloride. For example, when silver nitrate was added to  $\text{CoCl}_3 \cdot 6\text{NH}_3$ , all three chlorides were converted to silver chloride. However, when silver nitrate was added to  $\text{CoCl}_3 \cdot 5\text{NH}_3$ , only 2 of the 3 chlorides formed silver chloride. When  $\text{CoCl}_3 \cdot 4\text{NH}_3$  was treated with silver nitrate, one of the three chlorides precipitated as silver chloride.

The resulting observations suggested the formation of **complex** or **coordination compounds**. In the **inner coordination sphere**, which is also referred to in some texts as the **first sphere**, ligands are directly bound to the central metal. In the **outer coordination sphere**, sometimes referred to as the **second sphere**, other ions are attached to the complex ion. Werner was awarded the Nobel Prize in 1913 for his coordination theory. The following table is a summary of Werner's observations:

As the table above shows, the complex ion  $[\text{Co}(\text{NH}_3)_6]^{3+}$  is countered by the three chloride ions. By applying a current through the aqueous solutions of the resulting complex compounds,

Werner measured the electrical conductivity and thus the dissociation properties of the complex compounds. The results confirmed his hypothesis of the formation of complex compounds.

## Chapter 2

### COORDINATION THEORY.

#### What Are Coordination Compounds?

**Coordination compounds** are chemical compounds that consist of an array of anions or neutral molecules that are bound to a central atom via coordinate covalent bonds. Coordination compounds are also referred to as **coordination complexes**. These molecules or ions that are bound to the central atom are referred to as ligands (also known as complexing agents).

#### Table of Contents

- Important Terms
- Properties of Coordination Compounds
- Coordination Complex
- Types
- IUPAC Nomenclature
- What Are Ligands?
- Coordination Isomerism
- Werner's Theory
- Magnetic Properties of Complexes
- Stability of Complexes
- Applications

Many coordination compounds contain a metallic element as the central atom and are therefore referred to as metal complexes. These types of coordination complexes generally consist of a transition element as the central atom. It can be noted that the central atom in these complexes is called \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_ coordination \_\_\_\_\_ centre.

#### Important Terms Involving Coordination Compounds

The definitions of some important terms in the chemistry of coordination compounds can be found below.

## Coordination Entity

A chemical compound in which the central ion or atom (or the coordination centre) is bound to a set number of atoms, molecules, or ions is called a **coordination entity**.

Some examples of such coordination entities include  $[\text{CoCl}_3(\text{NH}_3)_3]$  and  $[\text{Fe}(\text{CN})_6]^{4-}$ .

## Chapter 3 STEREO CHEMISTRY OF COORDINATION COMPOUNDS

The existence of coordination compounds with the same formula but different arrangements of the ligands was crucial in the development of coordination chemistry. Two or more compounds with the same formula but different arrangements of the atoms are called isomers. Because isomers usually have different physical and chemical properties, it is important to know which isomer we are dealing with if more than one isomer is possible. As we will see, coordination compounds exhibit the same types of isomers as organic compounds, as well as several kinds of isomers that are unique. Isomers are compounds with the same molecular formula but different structural formulas and do not necessarily share similar properties. There are many different classes of isomers, like stereoisomers, enantiomers, and geometrical isomers. There are two main forms of isomerism: structural isomerism and stereoisomerism (spatial isomerism).

**Structural Isomers** Isomers that contain the same number of atoms of each kind but differ in which atoms are bonded to one another are called structural isomers, which differ in structure or bond type. For inorganic complexes, there are three types of structural isomers: *ionization*, *coordination* and *linkage*. Structural isomers, as their name implies, differ in their structure or bonding, which are separate from stereoisomers that differ in the spatial arrangement of the ligands are attached, but still have the bonding properties. The different chemical formulas in structural isomers are caused either by a difference in what ligands are bonded to the central atoms or how the individual ligands are bonded to the central atoms. When

determining a structural isomer, you look at (1) the ligands that are bonded to the central metal and (2) which atom of the ligands attach to the central metal.

#### Chapter 4 ISOMERISM IN COORDINATION COMPOUNDS

Certain compounds such as coordinates have an identical formula but different properties and different structure. Even though they have the same formula they carry different color. You might be wondering which are these compounds. To know more about isomerism in coordination compounds, let's dig deep into this interesting topic in the section below.

### **Isomerism in Coordination Compounds**

#### **What are Ligands?**

A metal ion in a solution cannot exist in isolation but in combination with ligands such as solvent molecules or simple ions that form complex ions or coordination compounds. These complexes have a central atom or ion which is often a transition metal.

These complexes also have a cluster of ion or neutral molecules surrounding ligands that bond with a coordinated bond to a central metal atom or ion. Ligands act as Lewis bases (electron pair donor) or as Lewis acids (electron pair acceptor).

#### **Complex Ions**

The ability of metallic elements to act as Lewis acids that form metal complexes with a variety of Lewis bases is their most important property. A metal complex has a central metal atom or ion that bonds to one or more ligands. These are the complex ions. A coordinate compound contains one or more metal complexes.

#### **Why are Coordination Compounds Important?**

Mentioned below are three reasons explaining why coordination compounds are essential.

- The periodic table has most of the elements that are metals, and almost all metals form complexes.
- Many industrial catalysts are metal complexes and important to control reactions.
- Transition metal complexes are essential in biochemistry.

## Chapter 5

### METAL-LIGAND EQUILIBRIA IN SOLUTION

**coordination compound**, any of a class of substances with chemical structures in which a central metal atom is surrounded by nonmetal atoms or groups of atoms, called ligands, joined to it by chemical bonds. Coordination compounds include such substances as vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, hemoglobin, and chlorophyll, dyes and pigments, and catalysts used in preparing organic substances.

Organometallic coordination compounds, which include transition metal compounds, may be characterized by “sandwich” structures that contain two unsaturated cyclic hydrocarbons on either side of a metal atom. Organometallic compounds are found in the *p*-, *d*-, *s*-, and *f*- blocks of the periodic table (the purple-shaded blocks; the transition metals include those elements in the *d*- and *f*-blocks).(more)

A major application of coordination compounds is their use as catalysts, which serve to alter the rate of chemical reactions. Certain complex metal catalysts, for example, play a key role in the production of polyethylene and polypropylene. In addition, a very stable class of organometallic coordination compounds has provided impetus to the development of organometallic chemistry. Organometallic coordination compounds are sometimes characterized by “sandwich” structures, in which two molecules of an unsaturated cyclic hydrocarbon, which lacks one or more hydrogen atoms, bond on either side of a metal atom. This results in a highly stable aromatic system.

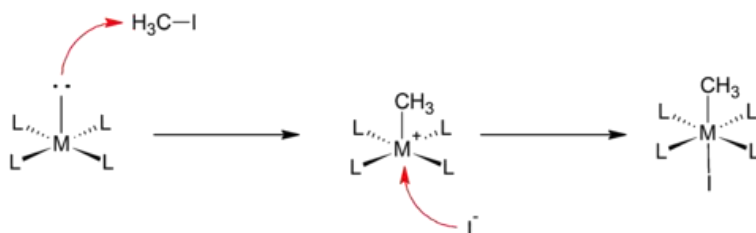
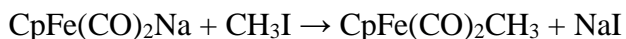
The following article covers the history, applications, and characteristics (including structure and bonding, principle types of complexes, and reactions and syntheses) of coordination compounds. For more information about specific properties or types of coordination compounds, *see* the articles isomerism; coordination number; chemical reaction; and organometallic compound.

## Chapter 6

### REACTION MECHANISM OF TRANSITION METAL COMPLEXES

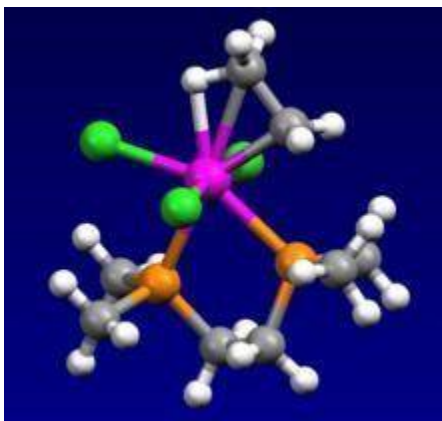
Metal alkyl complexes are prepared generally by two pathways, use of alkyl nucleophiles and use of alkyl electrophiles. Nucleophilic sources of alkyl ligands include Grignard reagents and organolithium compounds. Since many strong nucleophiles are also potent reductants, mildly nucleophilic alkylating agents are sometimes employed to avoid redox reactions. Organozinc compounds and organoaluminium compounds are such milder reagents.

Electrophilic alkylation commonly starts with low valence metal complexes. Typical electrophilic reagents are alkyl halides. Illustrative is the preparation of the methyl derivative of cyclopentadienyliron dicarbonyl anion



Many metal alkyls are prepared by oxidative addition:

An example is the reaction of a Vaska's complex with methyl iodide.



Structure of the alkyl complex  $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{TiCl}_3(\text{dmpe})$ , highlighting an agostic interaction between the methyl group and the Ti(IV) center.

## Chapter 7

### METAL-LIGAND BONDING IN COMPELXES

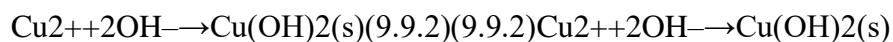
#### What is a Complex?

If you have taken a lab course in chemistry, you have very likely admired the deep blue color of **copper sulfate** crystals,  $\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . The proper name of this substance is copper(II) sulfate pentahydrate, and it is typical of many salts that incorporate *waters of hydration* into their crystal structures. It is also a *complex*, a term used by chemists to describe a substance composed of two other substances (in this case,  $\text{CuSO}_4$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) each of which is capable of an independent existence.

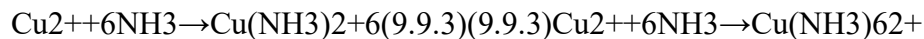


The binding between the components of a complex is usually weaker than a regular chemical bond; thus most solid hydrates can be decomposed by heating, driving off the water and yielding the *anhydrous* salt:

A very common lab experiment that most students carry out is to add some dilute ammonia to a copper sulfate solution. At first, the solution turns milky as the alkaline ammonia causes the precipitation of copper hydroxide:



However, if more ammonia is added, the cloudiness disappears and the solution assumes an intense deep blue color that makes the original solution seem pale by comparison. The equation for this reaction is usually given as



The new product is commonly known as the *copper-ammonia complex ion*, or more officially, hexamminecopper(II) complex ion.

## Chapter 8

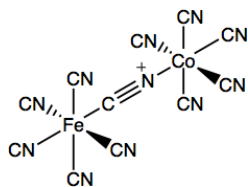
### ELECTRONIC SPECTRAL STUDIES OF TRANSITION METAL

In the field of inorganic chemistry, color is commonly associated with d–d transitions. If this is the case, why is it that some transition metal complexes show intense color in solution, but possess no d electrons? In transition metal complexes a change in electron distribution between the metal and a ligand gives rise to charge transfer (CT) bands when performing Ultraviolet-visible spectroscopy experiments. For complete understanding, a brief introduction to electron transfer reactions and **Marcus-Hush theory** is necessary.

#### Outer Sphere Charge Transfer Reactions

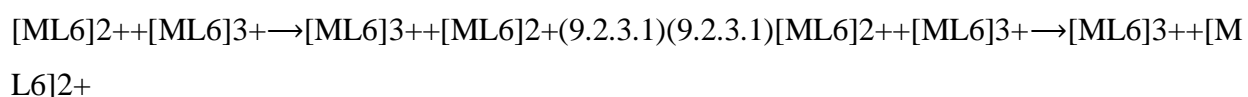
Electron transfer reactions (charge transfer) fall into two categories: **Inner-sphere mechanisms** and **Outer-sphere mechanisms**. Inner-sphere mechanisms involve electron transfer occurring via a covalently bound bridging ligand (Figure 9.2.3.19.2.3.1).





Intermediate formed in the reaction between  $[\text{Fe}(\text{CN})_6]^{3-}$  and  $[\text{Co}(\text{CN})_5]^{3-}$

Outer-sphere mechanisms involve electron transfer occurring without a covalent linkage between reactants, e.g.,



Here, we focus on outer sphere mechanisms.

In a self-exchange reaction the reactant and product side of a reaction are the same. No chemical reaction takes place and only an electron transfer is witnessed. This reductant-oxidant pair involved in the charge transfer is called the precursor complex. vibration.

## Chapter 9

### MAGNETIC PROPERTIES OF TRANSITION METAL COMPLEXES

#### Transition Elements

In the periodic table, transition elements are known as d-block elements. Because each element has many stable oxidation states, they are referred to as transition elements. A Transition Element is defined as an element with a partially filled d-orbital from its atom or simple ion. The transition elements are the d-block elements, whereas the inner transition elements are the f-block elements. The metallic features come in handy in our everyday life. The d- and f-block elements, as well as their compounds, have several applications, including steels, catalysts, complexes, chemical syntheses, and so on.

#### Magnetic Properties of Transition Elements

We must understand two concepts in terms of magnetic properties: paramagnetic and diamagnetic.

## Paramagnetic

Paramagnetic materials are drawn to a magnet or magnetic field but only weakly. As a result, under the influence of any magnetic field, paramagnetic materials are only faintly attracted. Aluminium and copper are examples of this magnetic field.

## Diamagnetic

Under the influence of a magnetic field, diamagnetic materials or substances will repel magnetism. Glass and antimony are examples of diamagnetic.

In the atomic orbitals, the electrons are linked together and have opposite spins. The magnetic field is created by a pair of electrons with magnetic fields that are equal and opposite.

The quantity of unpaired electrons present in the d-block elements determines their magnetic characteristics.

## **Chapter 10**

### METAL P-COMPLEXES

The magnetising characteristics of transition elements are heavily influenced by their atomic size and electronic structures. Any compound's magnetism can also be aided by the spin of the electron. Some transition element compounds have magnetic characteristics, and the total number of unpaired electrons can be used to calculate the extent of the magnetization.

### Formation of colored ions

The energy of excitation corresponds to the frequency of the light absorbed. When an electron from a low energy d orbital is activated to a high energy d orbital. The appropriate compound emits that light, which is interpreted as the characteristic colour. The colours of the ions can be seen in aqueous solutions where the ligands have water molecules.

### *Formation of Complex Compounds*

Metal ions bond to a multitude of anions or neutral molecules in complex compounds, resulting in complex species with unique characteristics. Transition metals can be found in a wide variety of compounds. Because the metal ions are so tiny, this is the case. Alloy Formation

Alloys are made up of atoms with metallic radii that are within 15% of one another. Transition metals are easily produced into alloys due to the same radius of their atomic orbitals and other same features. The ferrous alloys are the best: chromium, tungsten, vanadium, molybdenum, and manganese are commonly utilised in the production of steels.

### Applications of Magnetic Properties

The composition of the ligands, the geometry of the complex, and the electronic state of the metal all have an impact on the magnetic characteristics of transition metal complexes. The magnetic behaviour of complexes with high spin metal ions is often stronger than that of complexes with low spin metal ions. The existence of unpaired electrons on the metal ion can also influence the magnetic characteristics of a complex.

# APPLICATIONS OF QUANTUM AND GROUP THEORY

Edited by

**Dr. J S NIRMALRAM**



978-93-6255-769-8

# Applications of quantum and group theory

Copyright©2019

By

Dr. J S NIRMAL RAM

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN Number

978-93-6255-769-8

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology  
(PRIST)

## Table of Contents

### Chapter 1

Dr.J.S Nirmal ram

Introduction and Overview. . . . . pg. 2

### Chapter 2

Dr.M.Surendra Varma

The Group  $U(1)$  and its Representations..... pg. 8

### Chapter 3

Dr.R.Manikandan

Two-state Systems and  $SU(2)$ . . . . . pg. 18

### Chapter 4

Dr.D.Chinnaraja

Linear Algebra Review, Unitary and Orthogonal Groups. . .  
.....pg. 25

### Chapter 5

Dr.G.Anburaj

Lie Algebras and Lie Algebra Representations. . . . .  
.....pg. 35

### Chapter 6

M.TAMIZHSELVAN

The Rotation and Spin Groups in 3 and 4 Dimensions  
.....pg. 42

**Chapter 7**

Dr. D. SENTHILNATHAN

Rotations and the Spin 1/2 Particle in a Magnetic Field. . . . .  
.....pg. 53

**Chapter 8**

Dr.P.CHRISTURAJ

Representations of SU(2) and SO(3). . . . .  
.....pg. 53

**Chapter 9**

Dr.G.Anburaj

Tensor Products, Entanglement, and Addition of Spin. . . . .  
..... pg. 55

**Chapter 10**

Dr.J.S Nirmal ram

Momentum and the Free Particle. . . . .  
..... pg. 53

References

# Chapter 1

## Introduction and Overview

The discovery of quantum groups was quite unexpected since it was known for a long time that compact groups and semisimple Lie algebras are "rigid" objects, in other words, they cannot be "deformed". One of the ideas behind quantum groups is that if we consider a structure that is in a sense equivalent but larger, namely a group algebra or a universal enveloping algebra, then a group algebra or enveloping algebra can be "deformed", although the deformation will no longer remain a group algebra or enveloping algebra. More precisely, deformation can be accomplished within the category of Hopf algebras that are not required to be either commutative or cocommutative. One can think of the deformed object as an algebra of functions on a "noncommutative space", in the spirit of the noncommutative geometry of Alain Connes. This intuition, however, came after particular classes of quantum groups had already proved their usefulness in the study of the quantum Yang–Baxter equation and quantum inverse scattering method developed by the Leningrad School (Ludwig Faddeev, Leon Takhtajan, Evgeny Sklyanin, Nicolai Reshetikhin and Vladimir Korepin) and related work by the Japanese School.[1] The intuition behind the second, bicrossproduct, class of quantum groups was different and came from the search for self-dual objects as an approach to quantum gravity.

One type of objects commonly called a "quantum group" appeared in the work of Vladimir Drinfeld and Michio Jimbo as a deformation of the universal enveloping algebra of a semisimple Lie algebra or, more generally, a Kac–Moody algebra, in the category of Hopf algebras. The resulting algebra has additional structure, making it into a quasitriangular Hopf algebra.

Let  $A = (a_{ij})$  be the Cartan matrix of the Kac–Moody algebra, and let  $q \neq 0, 1$  be a complex number, then the quantum group,  $U_q(G)$ , where  $G$  is the Lie algebra whose Cartan matrix is  $A$ , is defined as the unital associative algebra with generators  $k_\lambda$  (where  $\lambda$  is an element of the weight lattice, i.e.  $2(\lambda, \alpha_i)/(\alpha_i, \alpha_i)$  is an integer for all  $i$ ), and  $e_i$  and  $f_i$  (for simple roots,  $\alpha_i$ ), subject to the following relations:



## Chapter 2

Finite groups — Group representations are a very important tool in the study of finite groups. They also arise in the applications of finite group theory to crystallography and to geometry. If the field of scalars of the vector space has characteristic  $p$ , and if  $p$  divides the order of the group, then this is called modular representation theory; this special case has very different properties. See Representation theory of finite groups.

Compact groups or locally compact groups — Many of the results of finite group representation theory are proved by averaging over the group. These proofs can be carried over to infinite groups by replacement of the average with an integral, provided that an acceptable notion of integral can be defined. This can be done for locally compact groups, using the Haar measure. The resulting theory is a central part of harmonic analysis. The Pontryagin duality describes the theory for commutative groups, as a generalised Fourier transform. See also: Peter–Weyl theorem. The Group  $U(1)$  and its Representations

In the mathematical field of representation theory, group representations describe abstract groups in terms of bijective linear transformations of a vector space to itself (i.e. vector space automorphisms); in particular, they can be used to represent group elements as invertible matrices so that the group operation can be represented by matrix multiplication. In chemistry, a group representation can relate mathematical group elements to symmetric rotations and reflections of molecules.

Representations of groups allow many group-theoretic problems to be reduced to problems in linear algebra. In physics, they describe how the symmetry group of a physical system affects the solutions of equations describing that system.

The term representation of a group is also used in a more general sense to mean any "description" of a group as a group of transformations of some mathematical object. More formally, a "representation" means a homomorphism from the group to the automorphism group of an object. If the object is a vector space we have a linear representation. Some people use realization for the general notion and reserve the term representation for the special case of linear representations. The bulk of this article describes linear representation theory; see the last section for generalizations.

## Chapter 3

### Two-state Systems

In quantum mechanics, a **two-state system** (also known as a **two-level system**) is a quantum system that can exist in any quantum superposition of two independent (physically distinguishable) quantum states. The Hilbert space describing such a system is two-dimensional. Therefore, a complete basis spanning the space will consist of two independent states. Any two-state system can also be seen as a qubit.

Two-state systems are the simplest quantum systems that are of interest, since the dynamics of a one-state system is trivial (as there are no other states the system can exist in). The mathematical framework required for the analysis of two-state systems is that of linear differential equations and linear algebra of two-dimensional spaces. As a result, the dynamics of a two-state system can be solved analytically without any approximation. The generic behavior of the system is that the wavefunction's amplitude oscillates between the two states.

A very well known example of a two-state system is the spin of a spin-1/2 particle such as an electron, whose spin can have values  $+\hbar/2$  or  $-\hbar/2$ , where  $\hbar$  is the reduced Planck constant.

The two-state system cannot be used as a description of absorption or decay, because such processes require coupling to a continuum. Such processes would involve exponential decay of the amplitudes, but the solutions of the two-state system are oscillatory. Pedagogically, the two-state formalism is among the simplest of mathematical techniques used for the analysis of quantum systems. It can be used to illustrate fundamental quantum mechanical phenomena such as the interference exhibited by particles of the polarization states of the photon,[4] but also more complex phenomena such as neutrino oscillation or the neutral K-meson oscillation.

Two-state formalism can be used to describe simple mixing of states, which leads to phenomena such as resonance stabilization and other level crossing related symmetries. Such phenomena have a wide variety of application in chemistry. Phenomena with tremendous industrial applications such as the maser and laser can be explained using the two-state formalism.

## Chapter 4

### Linear Algebra Review, Unitary and Orthogonal Groups

In [mathematics](#), the **orthogonal group** in dimension  $n$ , denoted  $O(n)$ , is the [group](#) of [distance-preserving transformations](#) of a [Euclidean space](#) of dimension  $n$  that preserve a fixed point, where the group operation is given by [composing](#) transformations. The orthogonal group is sometimes called the **general orthogonal group**, by analogy with the [general linear group](#). Equivalently, it is the group of  $n \times n$  [orthogonal matrices](#), where the group operation is given by [matrix multiplication](#) (an orthogonal matrix is a [real matrix](#) whose [inverse](#) equals its [transpose](#)). The orthogonal group is an [algebraic group](#) and a [Lie group](#). It is [compact](#).

The orthogonal group in dimension  $n$  has two [connected components](#). The one that contains the [identity element](#) is a [normal subgroup](#), called the **special orthogonal group**, and denoted  $SO(n)$ . It consists of all orthogonal matrices of [determinant](#) 1. This group is also called the **rotation group**, generalizing the fact that in dimensions 2 and 3, its elements are the usual [rotations](#) around a point (in dimension 2) or a line (in dimension 3). In low dimension, these groups have been widely studied, see [SO\(2\)](#), [SO\(3\)](#) and [SO\(4\)](#). The other component consists of all orthogonal matrices of determinant  $-1$ . This component does not form a group, as the product of any two of its elements is of determinant 1, and therefore not an element of the component.

By extension, for any field  $F$ , an  $n \times n$  matrix with entries in  $F$  such that its inverse equals its transpose is called an *orthogonal matrix over  $F$* . The  $n \times n$  orthogonal matrices form a subgroup, denoted  $O(n, F)$ , of the [general linear group](#)  $GL(n, F)$ ; that is

More generally, given a non-degenerate [symmetric bilinear form](#) or [quadratic form](#)<sup>[1]</sup> on a [vector space](#) over a [field](#), the *orthogonal group of the form* is the group of invertible [linear maps](#) that preserve the form. The preceding orthogonal groups are the special case where, on some basis, the bilinear form is the [dot product](#), or, equivalently, the quadratic form is the sum of the square of the coordinates.

# Chapter 5

## Lie Algebras and Lie Algebra Representations

In the [mathematical](#) field of [representation theory](#), a Lie algebra representation or representation of a Lie algebra is a way of writing a [Lie algebra](#) as a set of [matrices](#) (or [endomorphisms](#) of a [vector space](#)) in such a way that the Lie bracket is given by the [commutator](#). In the language of physics, one looks for a vector space together with a collection of operators on satisfying some fixed set of commutation relations, such as the relations satisfied by the [angular momentum operators](#).

The notion is closely related to that of a [representation of a Lie group](#). Roughly speaking, the representations of Lie algebras are the differentiated form of representations of Lie groups, while the representations of the [universal cover](#) of a Lie group are the integrated form of the representations of its Lie algebra.

In the study of representations of a Lie algebra, a particular [ring](#), called the [universal enveloping algebra](#), associated with the Lie algebra plays an important role. The universality of this ring says that the [category](#) of representations of a Lie algebra is the same as the category of [modules](#) over

its enveloping algebra. Complete reducibility Let  $V$  be a representation of a Lie algebra . Then  $V$  is said to be completely reducible (or semisimple) if it is isomorphic to a direct sum of irreducible representations (cf. [semisimple module](#)). If  $V$  is finite-dimensional, then  $V$  is completely reducible if and only if every invariant subspace of  $V$  has an invariant complement. (That is, if  $W$  is an invariant subspace, then there is another invariant subspace  $P$  such that  $V$  is the

direct sum of  $W$  and  $P$ .) If is a finite-dimensional [semisimple Lie algebra](#) over a field of characteristic zero and  $V$  is finite-dimensional, then  $V$  is semisimple; this is [Weyl's complete reducibility theorem](#).<sup>[4]</sup> Thus, for semisimple Lie algebras, a classification of irreducible (i.e. simple) representations leads immediately to classification of all representations. For other Lie algebra, which do not have this special property, classifying the irreducible representations may not help much in classifying general representations.

# Chapter 6

## The Rotation and Spin Groups in 3 and 4 Dimensions

In mathematics, the spinor concept as specialised to **three dimensions** can be treated by means of the traditional notions of dot product and cross product. This is part of the detailed algebraic discussion of the rotation group SO(3).

### Formulation

The association of a spinor with a  $2 \times 2$  complex traceless Hermitian matrix was formulated by Élie Cartan. In detail, given a vector  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2, x_3)$  of real (or complex) numbers, one can associate the complex matrix 
$$M(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{x} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma} + i x_3 \sigma_3)$$
 In physics, this is often written as a dot product  $\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{x} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma})$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$  is the vector form of Pauli matrices. Matrices of this form have the following properties, which relate them intrinsically to the geometry of 3-space:

- where  $\det M$  denotes the determinant.
  - where  $I$  is the identity matrix.
  - where  $Z$  is the matrix associated to the cross product  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{y}$ .
- If  $\mathbf{u}$  is a unit vector, then  $M(\mathbf{u})$  is the matrix associated with the vector that results from reflecting in the plane orthogonal to  $\mathbf{u}$ . The last property can be used to simplify rotational operations. It is an elementary fact from linear algebra that any rotation in 3-space factors as a composition of two reflections. (More generally, any orientation-reversing orthogonal transformation is either a reflection or the product of three reflections.) Thus if  $R$  is a rotation which decomposes as the reflection in the plane perpendicular to a unit vector  $\mathbf{u}$  followed by the reflection in the plane perpendicular to  $\mathbf{v}$ , then the matrix  $M(\mathbf{v})M(\mathbf{u})$  represents the rotation of the vector  $\mathbf{x}$  through  $R$ .

## Chapter 7

### Rotations and the Spin 1/2 Particle in a Magnetic Field

The necessity of introducing half-integer [spin](#) goes back experimentally to the results of the [Stern–Gerlach experiment](#). A beam of atoms is run through a strong heterogeneous magnetic field, which then splits into N parts depending on the intrinsic angular momentum of the atoms. It was found that for silver atoms, the beam was split in two—the [ground state](#) therefore could not be an integer, because even if the intrinsic angular momentum of the atoms were the smallest (non-zero) integer possible, 1, the beam would be split into 3 parts, corresponding to atoms with  $L_z = -1, +1$ , and 0, with 0 simply being the value known to come between  $-1$  and  $+1$  while also being a whole-integer itself, and thus a valid quantized spin number in this case. The existence of this hypothetical "extra step" between the two polarized quantum states would necessitate a third quantum state; a third beam, which is not observed in the experiment. The conclusion was that silver atoms had net intrinsic angular momentum of  $\hbar/2$ .

Spin- $\hbar/2$  objects are all [fermions](#) (a fact explained by the [spin–statistics theorem](#)) and satisfy the [Pauli exclusion principle](#). Spin- $\hbar/2$  particles can have a permanent [magnetic moment](#) along the direction of their spin, and this magnetic moment gives rise to [electromagnetic](#) interactions that depend on the spin. One such effect that was important in the discovery of spin is the [Zeeman effect](#), the splitting of a spectral line into several components in the presence of a static magnetic field.

Unlike in more complicated quantum mechanical systems, the spin of a spin- $\hbar/2$  particle can be expressed as a [linear combination](#) of just two [eigenstates](#), or [eigenspinors](#). These are traditionally labeled spin up and spin down. Because of this, the quantum-mechanical spin [operators](#) can be represented as simple  $2 \times 2$  [matrices](#). These matrices are called the [Pauli matrices](#).

[Creation and annihilation operators](#) can be constructed for spin- $\hbar/2$  objects; these obey the same [commutation](#) relations as other [angular momentum operators](#).

## Chapter 8

### Representations of $SU(2)$ and $SO(3)$

In the study of the [representation theory](#) of [Lie groups](#), the study of representations of [SU\(2\)](#) is fundamental to the study of representations of [semisimple Lie groups](#). It is the first case of a Lie group that is both a [compact group](#) and a [non-abelian group](#). The first condition implies the representation theory is discrete: representations are [direct sums](#) of a collection of basic [irreducible representations](#) (governed by the [Peter–Weyl theorem](#)). The second means that there will be irreducible representations in dimensions greater than 1.

$SU(2)$  is the [universal covering group](#) of [SO\(3\)](#), and so its representation theory includes that of the latter, by dint of a [surjective homomorphism](#) to it. This underlies the significance of  $SU(2)$  for the description of non-relativistic [spin](#) in [theoretical physics](#); see [below](#) for other physical and historical context.

As shown below, the finite-dimensional irreducible representations of  $SU(2)$  are indexed by a non-negative integer and have dimension . In the physics literature, the representations are labeled by the quantity , where is then either an integer or a half-integer, and the dimension is . The representations of the group are found by considering representations of , the [Lie algebra of SU\(2\)](#). Since the group  $SU(2)$  is simply connected, every representation of its Lie algebra can be integrated to a group representation; we will give an explicit construction of the representations at the group level below. Action on polynomials

[\[edit\]](#)

Since  $SU(2)$  is simply connected, a general result shows that every representation of its (complexified) Lie algebra gives rise to a representation of  $SU(2)$  itself. It is desirable, however, to give an explicit realization of the representations at the group level. The group representations can be realized on spaces of polynomials in two complex variables.

## Chapter 9

### Tensor Products, Entanglement, and Addition of Spin

The notation we have introduced so far deals with single qubit systems. It is nonetheless desirable to have a notation that allows us to describe composite systems, that is systems of multiple qubits. A similar situation arises in set theory when we have two sets  $A$  and  $B$  and we want to consider them as a whole. In set theory to form the ensemble set we use the cartesian product  $A \times B$  to represent the ensemble of the two sets. The analogue in linear algebra is called tensor product and is represented by the symbol  $\otimes$ . It applies equally to vectors and matrices (i.e. kets and operators).

From a practical standpoint, the tensor product concatenates physical systems. For example, a two particle system would be represented as  $|\text{particle1}\rangle \otimes |\text{particle2}\rangle$ , and the charge and the spin of a particle would be represented also by the tensor product  $|\text{charge}\rangle \otimes |\text{spin}\rangle$ . If we have two qubits  $|\psi\rangle$  and  $|\phi\rangle$ , the system composed by these two qubits is represented by  $|\psi\rangle \otimes |\phi\rangle$ .

Although they share a similar goal, cartesian and tensor product differ in the way elements of the ensemble are built out of the parts. Cartesian product produces tuples. So if  $A$  and  $B$  are two sets of numbers, an element of their cartesian product  $A \times B$  is a pair of numbers  $(a,b)$  such that  $a$  belongs to  $A$  and  $b$  belongs to  $B$ . It is a simple concatenation.

The elements of a tensor product are obtained from the constituent parts in a slightly different way. For example, consider two  $2 \times 2$  matrices.



# Chapter 10

## Momentum and the Free Particle

In **physics**, a free particle is a particle that, in some sense, is not bound by an external **force**, or equivalently not in a region where its **potential energy** varies. In **classical physics**, this means the particle is present in a "field-free" space. In **quantum mechanics**, it means the particle is in a region of uniform potential, usually set to zero in the region of interest since the potential can be arbitrarily set to zero at any point in space. **Mathematical description**

As for *all quantum particles* free or bound, the **Heisenberg uncertainty principles** apply. It is clear that since the plane wave has definite momentum (definite energy), the probability of finding the particle's location is uniform and negligible all over the space. In other words, the wave function is not normalizable in a Euclidean space, *these stationary states can not correspond to physical realizable states.*

### Measurement and calculations

The integral of the **probability density function**

where \* denotes **complex conjugate**, over all space is the probability of finding the particle in all space, which must be unity if the particle exists

Thus, for large positive times, the uncertainty in  $\Delta x$  grows linearly, with the coefficient of  $\Delta x$  equal to  $\frac{\hbar}{2m\Delta p}$ . If the momentum of the initial wave function  $\Delta p$  is highly localized, the wave packet will spread slowly and the group-velocity approximation will remain good for a long time. Intuitively, this result says that if the initial wave function has a very sharply defined momentum, then the particle has a sharply defined velocity and will (to good approximation) propagate at this velocity for a long time.

○ ○ ○ ○

# CHEMISTRY OF NATURAL PRODUCTS

Edited by

Dr. J S NIRMAL RAM



978-93-6255-681-3

Chemistry of natural products

Copyright©2019

By Dr J S NIRMALRAM

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN Number

978-93-6255-681-3

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## Table of Contents

<b>Chapter No</b>	<b>TITLE</b>	<b>NAME</b>	<b>PAGE</b>
<b>Chapter 1</b>	Extraction and Separation of Natural Products	Dr.M.Surendra Varma	<b>2</b>
<b>Chapter 2</b>	Structure Elucidation	Dr.R.Manikandan	<b>8</b>
<b>Chapter 3</b>	Isomers and Building Blocks	Dr.D.Chinnaraja	<b>18</b>
<b>Chapter 4</b>	Sugar and Fat and All of That	Dr.G.Anburaj	<b>25</b>
<b>Chapter 5</b>	Phenolic Compounds	M.Tamizhselvan	<b>35</b>
<b>Chapter 6</b>	Nitrogen-Containing Compounds	Dr. D. Senthilnathan	42
<b>Chapter 7</b>	Anti-Infectives from Nature	Dr.P.CHRISTURAJ	<b>48</b>
<b>Chapter 8</b>	Carotenoids	Dr.G.Anburaj	<b>52</b>
<b>Chapter 9</b>	Natural Products in Food, Spices, and Beverages	Dr.J.S Nirmal Ram	<b>54</b>

References

Throughout history, humankind has always been interested in naturally occurring compounds from prebiotic, microbial, plants and animals sources. Various extracts of different parts of plants have been widely used in folk medicines and perfumes as well as in food flavor and preservatives and are more commonly utilized in chronic as well as common diseases. Plants contain several active compounds such as alkaloids, steroids, tannins, glycosides, volatile oils, fixed oils, resins, phenols and flavonoids that are deposited in their different parts. The beneficial of the medicinal effects of the plant result from the combination of these active compounds. Various extracts of different parts of the plants have been widely used as folk medicines and perfumes aswell as food flavor and preservatives. Bioactive natural products more commonly utilized in chronic as well as infectious diseases like cancer, diabetes and asthma, anti-inflammatory, analgesic, antipyretic solutions and as alternatives for hormone replacement therapy. It also uses as a remedy for the treatment of gastropathy, hepatitis, nephritis, edema, chest pain, fever and cough of pneumonia, bronchitis, and arthritis. Today, natural medicines not only provide the primary health-care needs for the majority of the population in developing countries but also have attracted more and more attention in the developed countries due to the high health care cost and low or no side effect. In the USA, approximately 49% of the population has tried natural medicines for the prevention and treatment of diseases. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), More than 80% of the world's population relies on traditional medicine for their primary healthcare needs, most of which involve the use of plant extracts. Medicinal plants are the richest bio-resource of drugs of traditional systems of medicine, nutraceuticals, food supplements, pharmaceutical intermediates, chemical entities for crude and synthetic drugs. Despite their widespread existence and importance, the bioactive natural products are not sufficient. Nowadays there is an urgent need to develop effective and selective methods and stimulate natural products research. This review paper takes a comprehensive look at the different extraction methods of the bioactive natural products. It mostly focused on the analytical methodologies, which includes the extraction methods, isolation and characterization of the natural products present in the plant extracts.

A **chemical structure** of a [molecule](#) is a spatial arrangement of its [atoms](#) and their chemical bonds. Its determination includes a [chemist's](#) specifying the [molecular geometry](#) and, when feasible and necessary, the [electronic structure](#) of the target molecule or other solid. Molecular geometry refers to the spatial arrangement of [atoms](#) in a [molecule](#) and the [chemical bonds](#) that hold the atoms together and can be represented using [structural formulae](#) and by [molecular models](#);<sup>[1]</sup> complete electronic structure descriptions include specifying the occupation of a molecule's [molecular orbitals](#).<sup>[2][3]</sup> Structure determination can be applied to a range of targets from very simple molecules (e.g., [diatomic oxygen](#) or [nitrogen](#)) to very complex ones (e.g., such as [protein](#) or [DNA](#)). Theories of chemical structure were first developed by [August Kekulé](#), [Archibald Scott Couper](#), and [Aleksandr Butlerov](#), among others, from about 1858.<sup>[4]</sup> These theories were first to state that chemical compounds are not a random cluster of atoms and functional groups, but rather had a definite order defined by the [valency](#) of the [atoms](#) composing the molecule, giving the molecules a three dimensional structure that could be determined or solved.

Concerning chemical structure, one has to distinguish between pure connectivity of the atoms within a molecule (chemical constitution), a description of a three-dimensional arrangement ([molecular configuration](#), includes e.g. information on [chirality](#)) and the precise determination of bond lengths, angles and torsion angles, i.e. a full representation of the (relative) atomic coordinates.

**In determining structures of [chemical compounds](#), one generally aims to obtain, first and minimally, the pattern and degree of bonding between all atoms in the molecule; when possible, one seeks the three dimensional spatial coordinates of the atoms in the molecule (or other solid) Structural elucidation**

### What is Isomerism?

Isomerism is the phenomenon in which more than one compounds have the same chemical formula but different chemical structures.

Chemical compounds that have identical chemical formulae but differ in properties and the arrangement of atoms in the molecule are called **isomers**. Therefore, the compounds that exhibit isomerism are known as isomers.

The word “isomer” is derived from the Greek words “isos” and “meros”, which mean “equal parts”. This term was coined by the Swedish chemist Jacob Berzelius in the year 1830.

### Table of Contents

- [Isomerism Types](#)
- [Structural Isomerism](#)
- [Recommended Videos](#)
- [Stereoisomerism](#)
- [Ionization Isomerism](#)
- [Frequently Asked Questions – FAQs](#)

### Isomerism Types

There are two primary types of isomerism, which can be further categorized into different subtypes. These primary types are **Structural Isomerism** and **Stereoisomerism**. The classification of different types of isomers is illustrated below.

#### Structural Isomerism

Structural isomerism is commonly referred to as constitutional isomerism. The functional groups and the atoms in the molecules of these isomers are linked in different ways. Different structural isomers are assigned different IUPAC names since they may or may not contain the same functional group.

#### Structural Isomerism

Structural isomerism is commonly referred to as constitutional isomerism. The functional groups and the atoms in the molecules of these isomers are linked in different ways. Different structural isomers are assigned different IUPAC names since they may or may not contain the same functional group.

### 1. Empty Calories

The main reason people eat is because they're hungry. The body needs fuel to work throughout the day, and food is how we get that energy. The energy your body needs is measured in calories. Certain foods, like bread and grains, are high in calories while others, like celery, have almost none.

Usually these calories come along with other nutrients and vitamins that your body needs. [Empty calories](#), though, have hardly any nutritional value at all. Sugar is the perfect example of a food that contains empty calories. No matter how much you eat, your body isn't getting any real nutrition, just energy.

That's fine if you need a quick pick-me-up here or there, but if you eat more calories than your body can use, it gets turned into fat. Sugar contains a lot of calories, so it doesn't take much to overload your system with more than it can handle.

### 2. It throws off your insulin levels

Most people think of insulin as only being a concern for diabetics. However, your insulin levels can affect your weight even if you don't have [diabetes](#).

When you eat a lot of sugar, your blood sugar level rises. Your pancreas then creates insulin which is what your body uses to convert it into energy. If your blood sugar level rises too quickly, the pancreas will overproduce insulin and actually lower your blood sugar level too far — which makes you crave sugar all over again.

This can be a vicious cycle, and one that is a major factor for a lot of people who suffer from obesity.

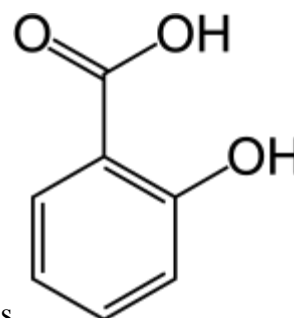
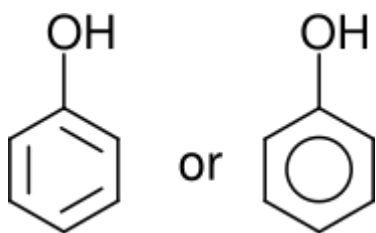
### 3. It triggers an unnecessary biochemical drive

While we all have to eat, most people also really love to eat. Just take a look at how many cooking shows and high-end restaurants are out there and you'll see that people really enjoy eating.



*This article is about the class of chemicals containing a phenol group. For the molecule alone, see [Phenol](#).*

In [organic chemistry](#), **phenols**, sometimes called **phenolics**, are a class of [chemical compounds](#) consisting of one or more [hydroxyl groups](#) ( $-OH$ ) bonded directly to an [aromatic hydrocarbon](#) group. The simplest is [phenol](#),  $C_6H_5OH$ . Phenolic compounds are classified as simple phenols or [polyphenols](#) based on the number of phenol units in the molecule.



Phenol – the simplest of the phenols  
Chemical structure of [salicylic acid](#), the [active metabolite](#) of [aspirin](#)

Phenols are both synthesized industrially and produced by plants and microorganisms

### Acidity

Phenols are more [acidic](#) than typical alcohols. The acidity of the hydroxyl group in phenols is commonly intermediate between that of [aliphatic](#) alcohols and [carboxylic acids](#) (their  $pK_a$  is usually between 10 and 12). Deprotonation of a phenol forms a corresponding negative **phenolate ion** or **phenoxide ion**, and the corresponding [salts](#) are called **phenolates** or **phenoxides** (**aryloxides** according to the IUPAC Gold Book).

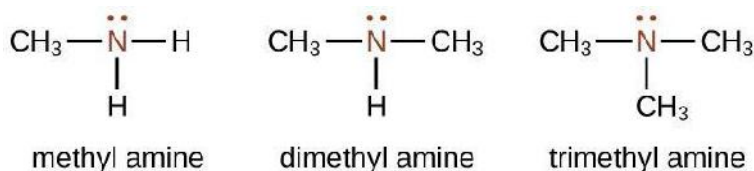
### Condensation with aldehydes and ketones

Phenols are susceptible to [Electrophilic aromatic substitutions](#). Condensation with [formaldehyde](#) gives resinous materials, famously [Bakelite](#).<sup>1</sup>

Another industrial-scale electrophilic aromatic substitution is the production of [bisphenol A](#), which is produced by the [condensation](#) with [acetone](#)

## Amines

An **amine** is an organic compound that can be considered to be a derivative of ammonia ( $\text{NH}_3$ ). Amines are molecules that contain carbon-nitrogen bonds. Amines are named by naming the alkyl groups attached to the nitrogen atom, followed by the suffix -amine as illustrated here for a few simple examples:



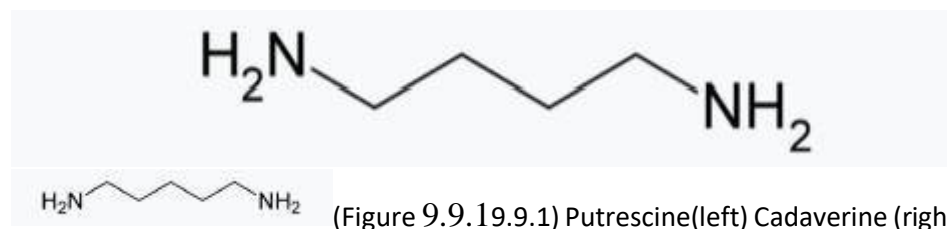
The name of larger molecules involve the class-identifying suffix -ine as you will see later in this section(e.g. caffeine and nicotine).

Methylamine and ethylamine are gases at room temperature, while larger amines are liquids. As with other organic compounds that form hydrogen bonds, water solubility is reflected in the length of the carbon chains. Smaller amines are soluble, while larger ones are less soluble.

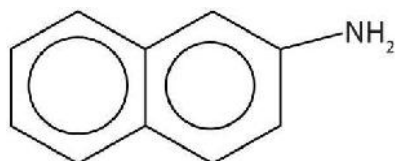
Amines generally have rather pungent or noxious odors. Ammonia can be considered the simplest amine and has a very distinctive odor. Methylamine has an unpleasant odor associated with dead fish. Amines are often formed biologically during the breakdown of proteins in animal cells, and so many have the smell of death and decay. Putrescine and cadaverine are two such amines and are aptly named for their foul odors. The toxins which many animals use as a form of defense are frequently amines. Amines are used industrially as dyes and in many drugs.

### To Your Health: Amines in Death and Life

Amines have “interesting” odors. The simple ones smell very much like ammonia. Higher aliphatic amines smell like decaying fish. Or perhaps we should put it the other way around: Decaying fish give off odorous amines. The stench of rotting fish is due in part to two diamines: putrescine and cadaverine. They arise from the decarboxylation of ornithine and lysine, respectively, amino acids that are found in animal cells.

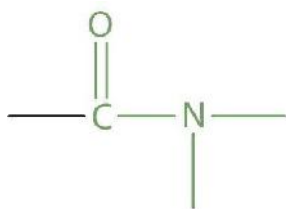


Aromatic amines generally are quite toxic. They are readily absorbed through the skin, and workers must exercise caution when handling these compounds. Several aromatic amines, including  $\beta$ -naphthylamine, are potent carcinogens.

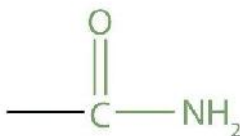


## Amides

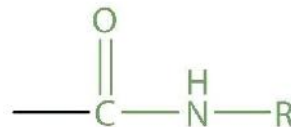
The amide functional group has a nitrogen atom attached to a carbonyl carbon atom. If the two remaining bonds on the nitrogen atom are attached to hydrogen atoms, the compound is a simple amide. If one or both of the two remaining bonds on the atom are attached to alkyl or aryl groups, the compound is a substituted amide.



The amide group



A simple amide

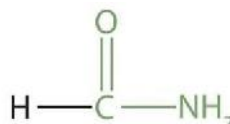


A substituted amide

Simple amides are named as derivatives of carboxylic acids. The -ic ending of the common name or the -oic ending of the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) name of the carboxylic acid is replaced with the suffix -amide.



Formic acid  
(methanoic acid)



Formamide  
(methanamide)

**Carotenoids** (/kəˈrɒtɪnɔɪd/) are yellow, orange, and red organic pigments that are produced by plants and algae, as well as several bacteria, archaea, and fungi.<sup>[1]</sup> Carotenoids give the characteristic color to pumpkins, carrots, parsnips, corn, tomatoes, canaries, flamingos, salmon, lobster, shrimp, and daffodils. Over 1,100 identified carotenoids can be further categorized into two classes – xanthophylls (which contain oxygen) and carotenes (which are purely hydrocarbons and contain no oxygen).<sup>[2]</sup>

All are derivatives of tetraterpenes, meaning that they are produced from 8 isoprene units and contain 40 carbon atoms. In general, carotenoids absorb wavelengths ranging from 400 to 550 nanometers (violet to green light). This causes the compounds to be deeply colored yellow, orange, or red. Carotenoids are the dominant pigment in autumn leaf coloration of about 15-30% of tree species,<sup>[3]</sup> but many plant colors, especially reds and purples, are due to polyphenols.

Carotenoids serve two key roles in plants and algae: they absorb light energy for use in photosynthesis, and they provide photoprotection via non-photochemical quenching.<sup>[4]</sup> Carotenoids that contain unsubstituted beta-ionone rings (including β-carotene, α-carotene, β-cryptoxanthin, and γ-carotene) have vitamin A activity (meaning that they can be converted to retinol). In the eye, lutein, meso-zeaxanthin, and zeaxanthin are present as macular pigments whose importance in visual function, as of 2016, remains under clinical research

Carotenoids are produced by all photosynthetic organisms and are primarily used as accessory pigments to chlorophyll in the light-harvesting part of photosynthesis.

They are highly unsaturated with conjugated double bonds, which enables carotenoids to absorb light of various wavelengths. At the same time, the terminal groups regulate the polarity and properties within lipid membranes.

*Is it safe to use spices as a food preservative?*

You can find it in the form of whole, broken or grounded variants. Other than just seasoning, it also has immense nutritive value. Across India, you can find 100 + varieties of spices, and each has its own speciality.

Research is even being focused on deriving methods to use spice extract so that it can be used in the form of food preservatives to improve the safety of food products. When compared to chemical preservatives, spices can help to promote health and well-being. Additionally, it also acts as a natural food supplement or herbal remedy.

If you look back in time, then spices have always been welcomed for their medicinal property and flavourful enhancement. They were even used as food coloring agents and for treating various diseases.

*Why should you depend on spices for food preservation?*

Spices are counted among the most common food preservation techniques, such as freezing, canning, smoking, salting and pickling.

- It is a scientifically proven fact that spices can be used for food preservation.
- Spices can be used as food preservatives by the one who is health conscious.
- It has many health advantages other than adding flavor and color to food.
- Spices are easily accessible and found in abundance across India.
- It is the most approachable way to avoid chemical preservation methods.

Spices that are incredible food preservatives

You can get all the essential spices that help to preserve food right in your kitchen. However, most people are unaware of how they can be used to preserve food. Using natural remedies helps to keep the food in its original flavor and also reduces the chances of food poisoning.

So, let's get to know about the best spices that can eliminate the risk of food spoilage and also act as a potent food seasoning.

## Salt

Salt has been used to preserve meat, vegetables, seafood, etc., for centuries. This was the most used spice even before the invention of the refrigerator. The property that makes this spice one of the best food preserving agents is its ability to draw moisture, which is the breeding ground for bacteria and microbes. Thus, salt prevents the growth of microbes and keeps the food edible for a longer duration.



# POLYMER CHEMISTRY

Edited by  
**DR. D. SENTHILNATHAN**



978-93-6255-961-6

Polymer Chemistry

Copyright©2019

By

Dr.D.Senthilnathan

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN Number

978-93-6255-961-6

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology  
(PRIST)



# Contents

<b>Chapter: 1</b> Introduction to Chain Molecules Dr.D.Senthil Nathan	1
<b>Chapter: 2</b> Types of Polymers Dr.J..S..Nirmal Ram	10
<b>Chapter: 3</b> Conducting Polymers Dr.R.Manikandan	32
<b>Chapter: 4</b> Synthesis of Conducting Polymers Dr.R.Manikandan	53
<b>Chapter: 5</b> Conducting Polymers and delocalization of bi electrons Dr.D.Senthil Nathan	72
<b>Chapter: 6</b> Applications of Conducting Polymers Dr.J..S..Nirmal Ram	85
<b>Chapter: 7</b> Chain Transfer to Polymer Dr.D.Chinnaraja	96
<b>Reference</b>	110



# Chapter: 1

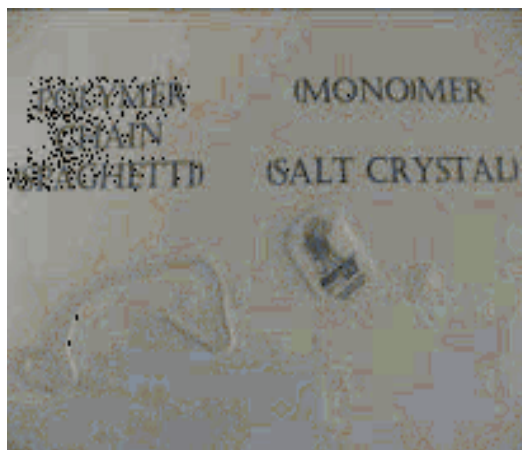
## Introduction to Chain Molecules

**Dr.D.Senthil Nathan**

*Associate Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah  
Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Molecules are compounds that are made of more than one type of atom. An example of a small molecule is water--it contains three atoms--two of hydrogen and one of oxygen. Polymers are very large molecules compared to water. They have many more atoms than a water molecule--from 10,000 to 100,000 atoms per molecule. The word polymer is derived from the Greek root poly-, meaning many, and mer, meaning part or segment. Many of the same units (or mers) are connected together to form a long chain or polymer. Because they can be extremely large, often made up of hundreds of thousands of atoms, polymers are also referred to as macromolecules.

To demonstrate the size scale difference, consider one polymer chain as a piece of cooked spaghetti; and one water molecule as one single crystal of salt. This demonstrates the great size difference between one molecule of a substance like water (molecular weight of 18 grams/mole) and a polymer macromolecule (molecular weight ranging from 2,000 to millions in grams/mole).



# Chapter: 2

## Types of Polymers

**Dr.J.S.Nirmal ram**

*Associate Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah  
Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

### Classification of Polymers

Polymers cannot be classified under one category because of their complex structures, different behaviors and vast applications. We can, therefore, classify polymers based on the following norms.

#### Classification of Polymers Based on the Source of Availability

There are **three types of classification** under this category, namely, natural, synthetic, and semi-synthetic polymers.

##### *Natural Polymers*

They occur naturally and are found in plants and animals. For example, proteins, starch, cellulose and rubber. To add up, we also have biodegradable polymers called biopolymers.

##### *Semi-synthetic Polymers*

They are derived from naturally occurring polymers and undergo further chemical modification. For example, cellulose nitrate and cellulose acetate.

##### *Synthetic Polymers*

These are human-made polymers. Plastic is the most common and widely used synthetic polymer. It is used in industries and various dairy products. For example, nylon-6, 6, polyether, etc.

Also Read: Natural Polymers vs Synthetic Polymers

#### Classification of Polymers Based on the Structure of the Monomer Chain

This category has the following classifications:

##### *Linear Polymers*

The structure of polymers containing long and straight chains falls into this category. PVC, i.e., polyvinyl chloride, is largely used for making pipes, and an electric cable is an example of a linear polymer.

# Chapter: 3

## Conducting Polymers

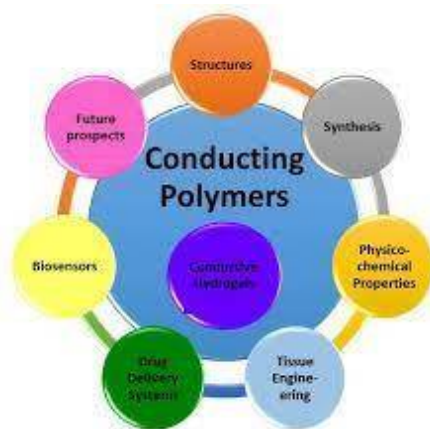
**Dr.R.Manikandan**

*Associate Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah  
Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

### Conducting Polymers

Conducting polymers are the focus of extensive research due to their remarkable characteristics, such as tunable electrical properties, impressive optical qualities, high mechanical strength, straightforward synthesis, and excellent environmental stability compared to conventional inorganic materials. While conducting polymers face limitations in their pristine forms, hybridizing them with other materials can effectively address these issues. The synergistic effects of conducting polymer composites enable a wide range of applications in electrical, electronics, and optoelectronic fields.

This review provides an in-depth analysis of conducting polymer composites with carbonaceous materials, metal oxides, transition metals, and transition metal dichalcogenides. We explore transport models that explain the conduction mechanisms, relevant synthesis methods, and the physical properties of these materials, including electrical, optical, and mechanical attributes. Additionally, we discuss recent advancements in their applications in energy storage, photocatalysis, anti-corrosion coatings, biomedical fields, and sensing technologies. Structural properties are highlighted as critical factors influencing the performance of these composites.



# Chapter: 4

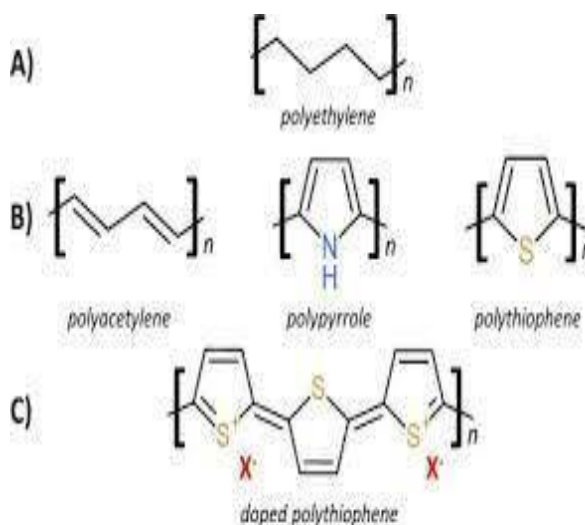
## Synthesis of Conducting Polymers

**Dr.R.Manikandan**

*Associate Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah  
Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

### Synthesis of Conducting Polymers

Conducting polymers are extensively studied due to their outstanding properties, including tunable electrical property, optical and high mechanical properties, easy synthesis and effortless fabrication and high environmental stability over conventional inorganic materials. Although conducting polymers have a lot of limitations in their pristine form, hybridization with other materials overcomes these limitations. The synergetic effects of conducting polymer composites give them wide applications in electrical, electronics and optoelectronic fields. An in-depth analysis of composites of conducting polymers with carbonaceous materials, metal oxides, transition metals and transition metal dichalcogenides etc. is used to study them effectively. Here in this review we seek to describe the transport models which help to explain the conduction mechanism, relevant synthesis approaches, and physical properties, including electrical, optical and mechanical properties. Recent developments in their applications in the fields of energy storage, photocatalysis, anti-corrosion coatings, biomedical applications and sensing applications are also explained. Structural properties play an important role in the performance of the composites.



## Chapter: 5

### Conducting Polymers and delocalization of bi electrons

**Dr.D.Senthil Nathan**

*Associate Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah  
Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

### Conducting Polymers and delocalization of bi electrons

Over the past several decades, conducting polymers (CPs) have gained increasing attention owing to their strong potential as alternatives to their inorganic counterparts, leading to significant fundamental and practical research efforts. In the late 1970s, many scientists considered CPs (or 'synthetic metals') to be intractable and insoluble. Since the discovery of polyacetylene in 1977 by Hideki Shirakawa, Alan MacDiarmid, and Alan Heeger, various important CPs have been investigated continuously, including polypyrrole (PPy), polyaniline (PANI), polythiophene (PT), poly(3,4-thylenedioxythiophene) (PEDOT), trans-polyacetylene, and poly(p-phenylene vinylene) (PPV) . In general, CPs possess alternating single ( $\sigma$ ) and double ( $\pi$ ) bonds, and these  $\pi$ -conjugated systems lend the CPs their inherent optical, electrochemical, and electrical/electronic properties. It is known that the parameters that most affect the physical properties of CPs are their conjugation length, degree of crystallinity, and intra- and inter-chain interactions.

CPs provide the advantages of chemical diversity, low density, flexibility, corrosion resistance, easy-to-control shape and morphology, and tunable conductivity over their existing inorganic counterparts. However, the development of the properties of CPs has not been completely commensurate with those of their metallic and inorganic semiconductor counterparts. Consequently, CPs have been modified or hybridized with other heterogeneous material components to overcome their inherent limitations in terms of solubility, conductivity, and long-term stability. Judicious coupling of CPs with other materials can result in materials with attractive properties and new application opportunities in diverse fields ranging from electronics to energy devices. Researchers in this field have reported a variety of strategies to obtain CP-based composites and hybrids with novel structures and improved properties. As a typical example, CP nanocomposites containing carbon nano-species such as graphene, carbon nanofibers, and carbon nanotubes have been developed .

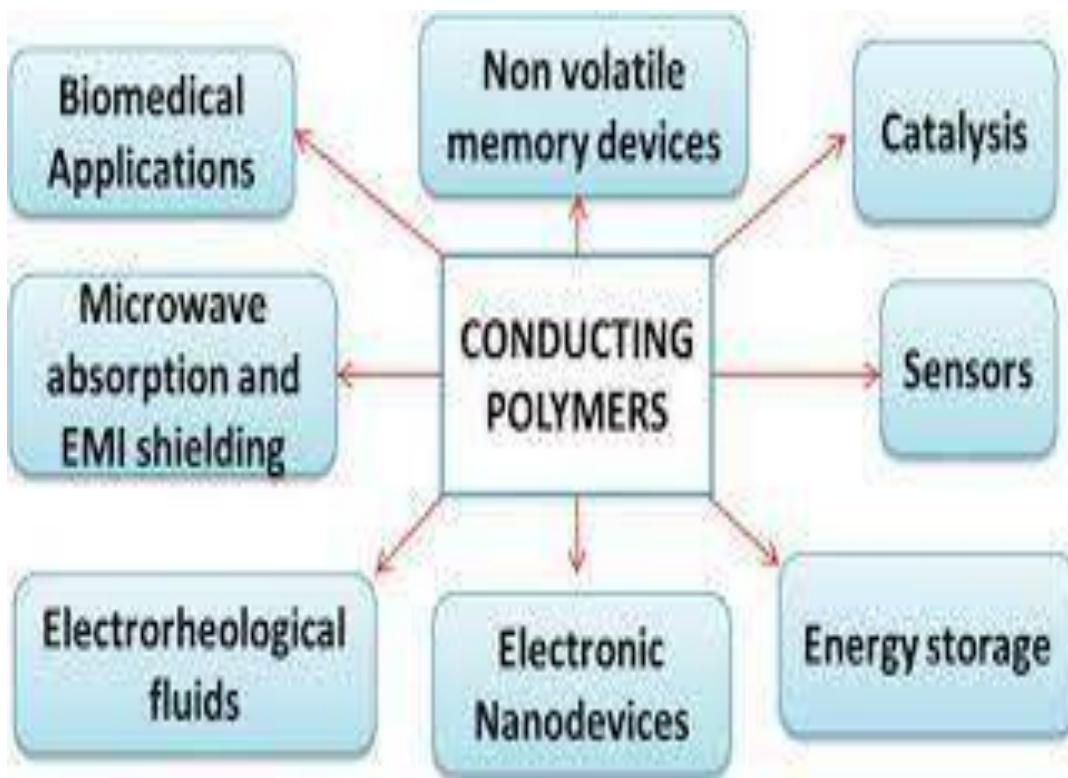
# Chapter: 6

## Applications of Conducting Polymers

Dr.J.S.Nirmal ram

*Associate Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah  
Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Conducting polymers are widely used in microelectronics, batteries, photovoltaic devices, light emitting diodes (LEDs), and electrochromic display. Conducting polymers act as current carriers in electronic components. The main advantage of using conducting polymer instead of metal is their lightweight.





# Chapter: 7

## Chain Transfer Polymers

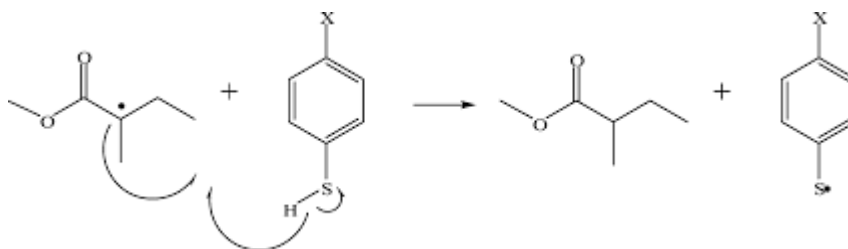
**Dr.D.Chinnaraja**

*Associate Professor, Department of Chemistry, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah  
Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Control of molecular size and molecular weight distribution is necessary so that the resulting polymers have good processability and have specific properties required for their intended applications. Chain transfer is the process of regulating and controlling molecular weight.

Some experts consider this process of chain transfer as the fourth process in polymerizations, along with initiation, propagation and termination. Chain transfer was first observed in radical Polymerizations but occurs in ionic polymerizations also.

Alkyl thiols (Mercaptans) have been recognized to be one of the most efficient chain transfer agents in polymerizations that produce polystyrene, styrene-butadiene rubber, ABS terpolymers, polymethacrylates (e.g. PMMA), polyacrylates and other vinyl-type of polymers. Chain transfer can also be used to make low molecular weight polymers (telomers), introduce branching and cross-linking. t-Dodecyl mercaptan (TDM) and n-dodecyl mercaptan (NDM) are examples of the two most common chain transfer agents.



# MARKETING

EDITED BY  
DR. S. KAMARAJU



978-93-6255-437-6

Marketing

Copyright © 2019 by Dr. S. KAMARAJU

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-437-6

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology(PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER-I.....	1
NATURE OF MARKETING	
DR.S. RAJENDRAN	
CHAPTER-II.....	15
FUNCTIONS OF MARKETING	
DR.S. RAJENDRAN	
CHAPTER-III.....	22
ROLE OF MARKETING	
DR. R. SELVARAJ	
CHAPTER-IV.....	25
CONSUMER DECISION PROCESS	
DR. R. SELVARAJ	
CHAPTER-V.....	31
CHARACTERISTICS OF MARKETING ENVIRONMENT	
DR. G. KARTHIGA	
CHAPTER-VI.....	38
TYPES OF MARKET SEGMENTATION	
DR. G. KARTHIGA	
CHAPTER-VII.....	49
OBJECTIVES OF PRICING DECISIONS	
DR.V. SRIDEVI	
CHAPTER-VIII.....	55
ELEMENTS OF PRODUCT	
DR.V. SRIDEVI	
CHAPTER-IX.....	60
IMPORTANCE OF SALES ORGANISATION	
DR. S. KAMARAJU	
CHAPTER-X.....	65
OBJECTIVES OF SALES PROMOTION	
DR. S. KAMARAJU	
REFERENCES.....	70

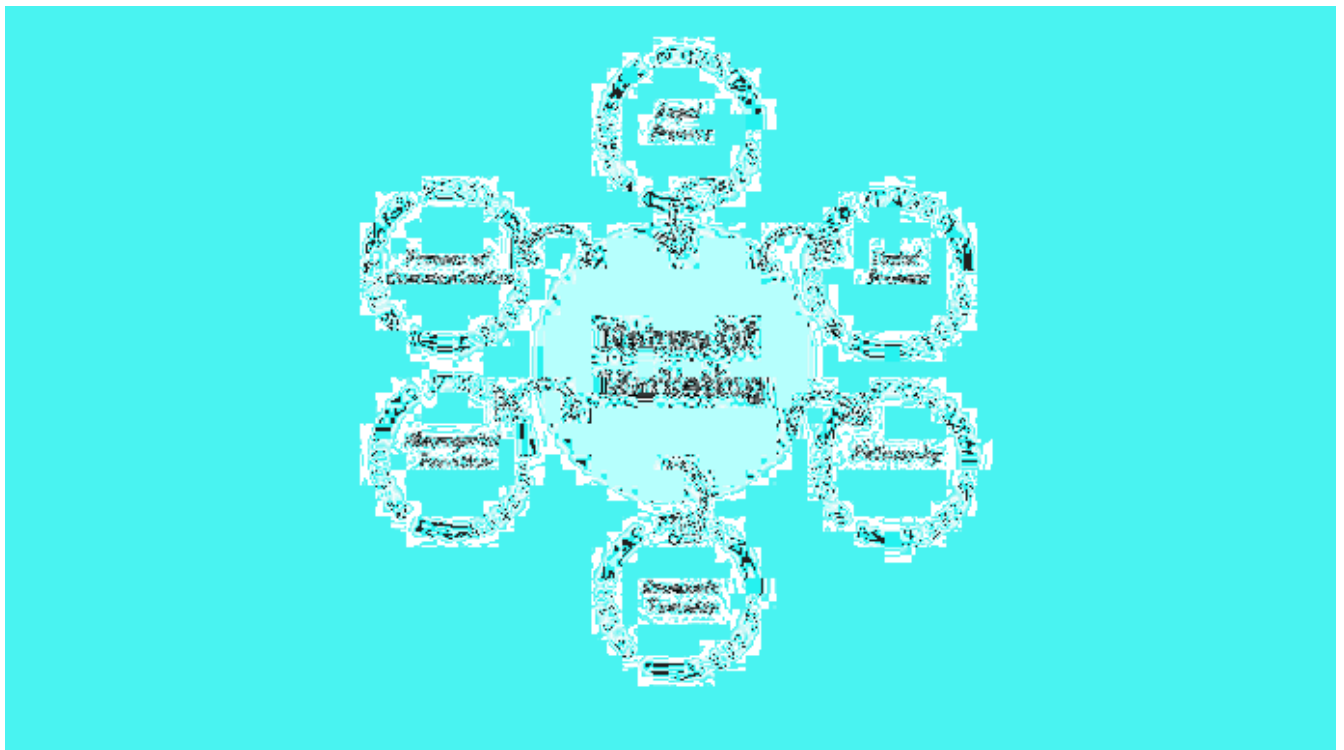
**CHAPTER –I: NATURE OF MARKETING**  
**DR.S. RAJENDRAN,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

While there are multiple definitions of marketing proposed by pundits and economists, let us try to understand this in a common language.

In simple terms, the core function of marketing is to recognise customer needs and desires and find the best strategies to meet those expectations and desires in such a way as to generate revenue and profit for an enterprise.

For example, ready-to-use dosa batter – it is an instance of marketing where convenience in cooking was identified as a consumer desire. Marketers grabbed this opportunity to package and distribute processed dosa batter that satisfies market desire, simplifies modern urban life and earns revenue for the company.

To consider a more immediate example, in the digital age, crafting relevant knowledge is a great marketing strategy to improve brand reputation. This blog, by providing genuine insights on marketing, has climbed the search ladder to rank at the top. If you too aspire to enhance your online presence through such insightful content, contact us today!



**CHAPTER –II: FUNCTIONS OF MARKETING**  
**DR.S. RAJENDRAN,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Marketing is a very broad term and cannot be explained in a few words. Marketing is an essential business function that helps in making the customers aware of the products or services that are offered by a business.

The definition of marketing as defined by the American Marketing Association is as follows.

“Marketing is the process of planning and executing conception, pricing, promotion, and distribution of ideas, goods, and services to create exchanges that satisfy individual and organizational objectives.”

Functions of marketing are those aspects that define the practice of marketing and are being discussed in detail in this article.

The following are the functions of marketing:

**1. Identify needs of the consumer:** The first steps in marketing function is to identify the needs and wants of the consumer that are present in the market. Companies or businesses must therefore gather information on the customer and perform analysis on the collected information.

By doing this they can present the product or service that matches closely with the customer needs and wants.

**2. Planning:** The next step in marketing function is planning. It is considered very important for a business to have a plan. The management should be very clear about the company objectives and what it wishes to achieve from the created plan.

The company should then chalk out a timeline that is essential for achieving the objectives.

**3. Product Development:** After the details are received from the consumer research, the product is developed for use by the consumers. There are many factors that are essential for a product to be accepted by the customer, a few factors among the many are product design, durability and cost.

**CHAPTER –III: ROLE OF MARKETING**  
**DR. R. SELVARAJ,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Every single thing about marketing management screams development and improvement. Each step in the entire process is beneficial to your business. In this competitive world, your marketing management is extremely roles because it will help you float to the top. Here's how:

**1. Introduces New Products**

In marketing management, you start by identifying your target market and analyzing your market. This helps you understand the needs of your consumers, based on which you can introduce or launch new products with an effective marketing campaign.

In addition to that, you can study customer interactions and buying patterns to learn more about your ideal customer and how to pique their interest in your products or services. As a result, it helps you create brand awareness and increase visibility for your business.

**2. Boost Sales**

Good marketing management helps you match your capabilities and resources with the needs of the consumers. With this, you can plan and implement a successful marketing strategy and then reach out to customers.

It will enable you to find new customers and retain the current ones. This will boost your sales and increase revenue. Not just that, with strategic planning and implementation, good marketing management also helps reduce costs and expenses.

**3. Builds Reputation**

Marketing management ensures that your company's reputation remains unharmed because, without it, your business will struggle to handle PR blunders or remain updated with the latest trends.

Good marketing management can help identify the best opportunities to pursue and threats to steer clear from. It will help you expand to different audiences based on past experience through advertising and customer engagement. This will help improve the reputation of the company!

**4. Aid in Business Decisions**

Having proper marketing management means that you will have an excellent marketing team that has insights into consumer behavior, buying patterns, and the latest marketing trends. This helps you make better decisions in the short run and the long run.

**CHAPTER –IV: CONSUMER DECISION PROCESS**  
**DR. R. SELVARAJ,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

The consumer decision-making process outlines several steps a customer takes from acknowledging the need for a good or service to deciding if an end purchase meets those requirements and expectations. Learning how customers make decisions is crucial because it enables businesses to foresee user requirements and develop marketing or sales tactics based on those demands. Understanding how consumers make decisions has the following additional benefits:

**Provides leverage against competition:** Understanding consumer buying habits in an industry benefits marketers and sales professionals greatly. It enables professionals in these domains to develop unique sales and marketing initiatives that attract more consumers to purchase a company's products over a competitor's.

**Provides customer base information:** The customer decision-making process can serve as a framework for upcoming marketing initiatives, public relations efforts or product introductions. It motivates marketing and sales professionals to think about the initial demands of a consumer, the channels they may use to obtain items and the aspects they consider, like price, product design and quality.

**Increases sales and expands customer base:** You can enhance product sales and broaden a customer base by studying the decision-making process of patrons and identifying the best ways to communicate with them. Understanding how a typical customer addresses a need allows professionals to develop targeted marketing materials and distribution strategies.

**Provides useful insights for marketers:** Learning about decision-making processes in detail provides the advantage of educating marketers on what occurs after a consumer purchases a product or subscribes to a service. This is helpful for marketers because they can evaluate what customers require to be happy during the consumption and post-evaluation phases.

**The 5 Stages of Consumer Decision-Making Process**

The decision-making process of consumers typically has five stages. Understanding these stages helps marketers and sales professionals discover the factors that influence a consumer's purchase decisions.



## **CHAPTER –V: CHARACTERISTICS OF MARKETING ENVIRONMENT**

**DR. G. KARTHIGA,**

*Department of Commerce,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

### **Meaning of Marketing Environment:**

The marketing environment refers to all internal and external factors, which directly or indirectly influence the organization's decisions related to marketing activities. Internal factors are within the control of an organization; whereas, external factors do not fall within its control. The external factors include government, technological, economic, social, and competitive forces; whereas, organization's strengths, weaknesses, and competencies form the part of internal factors.

Marketers try to predict the changes, which might take place in future, by monitoring the marketing environment. These changes may create threats and opportunities for the business. With these changes, marketers continue to modify their strategies and plans.

### **Features of Marketing Environment:**

Today's marketing environment is characterized by numerous features, which are mentioned as follows:

#### **Specific and General Forces:**

It refers to different forces that affect the marketing environment. Specific forces include those forces, which directly affect the activities of the organization. Examples of specific forces are customers and investors. General forces are those forces, which indirectly affect the organization. Examples of general forces are social, political, legal, and technological factors.

#### **Complexity:**

It implies that a marketing environment include number of factors, conditions, and influences. The interaction among all these elements makes the marketing environment complex in nature.

#### **Vibrancy:**

Vibrancy implies the dynamic nature of the marketing environment. A large number of forces outline the marketing environment, which does not remain stable and changes over time.

**CHAPTER –VI: TYPES OF MARKET SEGMENTATION**  
**DR. G. KARTHIGA,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Market segmentation is a marketing strategy in which you identify select groups within your target audience with shared characteristics so you can present specific offerings that appeal to their interests. This approach allows you to tailor communications to specific customer segments and relies heavily on data to remove the guesswork.

*types of market segmentation*

Many resources on market segmentation only address **behavioral, geographic, demographic, and psychographic segmentation**, which are more popular with B2C organizations.

In this guide, you’ll see the similar market segmentation approaches that B2B companies use — **intent, firmographic, persona, technographic, and journey stage segmentation** — so you have a complete view of all segmentation methods.

Here’s a closer look at all nine types of market segmentation:

**1. Behavioral segmentation**

Behavioral segmentation helps companies determine buyers’ purchasing habits and behaviors. By looking at a website visitor’s digital footprint, organizations can group customers by:

- Engagement level
- Brand loyalty
- Intent to buy
- Potential needs/reasons for seeking a product or solution
- Stage in the buyers’ journey

To draw the above conclusions, sales and marketing professionals may examine the number of sessions on their site, time on site, pages visited, and other site statistics.

While all businesses can technically use this method, B2B sales reps and marketers often refer to it as “intent segmentation.”

**CHAPTER –VII: OBJECTIVES OF PRICING DECISIONS**  
**DR.V. SRIDEVI,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

**Pricing** means deciding the value of the product/service that the manufacturer will get in return in exchange for a particular product/service. Pricing is the process of determining the price which is optimal for both the manufacturer and the customers. There are various factors that play a significant role in the determination of value price, like input costs, manufacturing costs, customer expectations, general price level, profit margin, prices of rival firms, external costs, etc. Pricing can also be defined as the value that customers need to give up in order to have any particular product/service with them. Pricing is one of the 4Ps of marketing; i.e., Place, Promotion, Price, and Product. Price is the only revenue-generating element. **Pricing** involves the activities and procedures that help in deciding the value, a company is going to charge in exchange for its product/service.

*“Pricing is the amount of money charged for a product or service or the sum of the values that the consumers exchange for the benefits of having or using the product or service.” -Philip Kotler*

***Objectives of Pricing***

The objectives of pricing encompass a range of strategic goals that businesses aim to achieve through their pricing decisions. These objectives guide how products or services are priced and contribute to overall business success. Key objectives of pricing include:

- 1. Revenue Generation:** Pricing can be used to maximize total revenue by finding the optimal balance between price and quantity sold. This objective is particularly relevant when a business aims to capture a larger market share.
- 2. Market Ruler:** A business would want to rule the market and acquire a significant share in the market against its rival firms. For this, it will try to increase its revenue and customer base. In order to do the same, the company will need to agree on an optimal price for its product/service that the customers can afford.
- 3. Survival:** Pricing decisions focus on generating revenue which helps the firm to survive in the market. Without revenue and profits, a firm cannot survive for a longer period. Pricing generates revenue and revenue is used in further production in order to produce goods.

**CHAPTER –VIII: ELEMENTS OF PRODUCT**  
**DR.V. SRIDEVI,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Today’s consumers appreciate great content. To lure them into product pages, companies need to create and execute the right strategy. A lot of blog posts out there talk about best practices and campaign ideas to convert. However, content creation shouldn’t be just about turning audiences into buyers but must also be about solving problems and raising awareness. That’s why useful, comprehensive, consistent and relevant information is key to create truly great product content.

Here are 7 essential elements of high-quality product content that’s guaranteed to appeal to audiences:

### **1. Personalization**

Brands get only one chance at selling to an audience in today’s fiercely competitive environment. Opportunities can be lost forever on targets that have been shown the wrong product. The fact is shoppers will never click on the content they don’t find interesting or relevant.

That’s why personalizing works. Displaying advertisements that match what a shopper is looking for as they arrived on your site effectively creates positive awareness of your products regardless of whether they end up buying or not. According to the 2018 Trends in Personalization report, 98% of marketers agree that personalization strengthens customer relationships, while 87% report tangible positive results.

### **2. Compelling stories**

Bring products to life with interesting descriptions. An item such as a coat, for example, is just a coat in a product catalog without background information. If you’re a shopper, why would you choose “just a coat” over “a replica coat worn by Timothy Chalamet in ‘The King?’” Context is,

**CHAPTER –IX: IMPORTANCE OF SALES ORGANISATION**  
**DR. S. KAMARAJU,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Sales organisation consists of human beings or persons working together for the effective marketing of products manufactured by the firm or the products purchased for resale. Sales organisation co-ordinates the efforts of members of a group to bring about a desirable result. It provides an efficient, economic and flexible administrative set up to ensure timely movement of products from the warehouse to the ultimate consumer. Thus it provides satisfactory job to buyers and sellers.

A sales organisation has a number of departments. It has a planned and well co-ordinated structure. It performs the functions of planning, organizing and controlling marketing and distribution of products. Sales organisation is a foundation for effective sales planning and sales policies. Systematic execution of plans and policies and programmes of a sales organisation control all the sales activities. As such it ensures maximum efficiency and profitability without losing consumer service and satisfaction.

According to Boiling, “A good sales organisation is one wherein the functions or departments have each been carefully planned and co-ordinated towards the objective of putting the product in the hands of the consumers—the whole effort being efficiently supervised and managed, so that each function is carried out in the desired manner.”

**Need for a Sales Organisation:**

“A sales organisation is like a power station sending out energy, which is devoted to the advertising and selling of particular lines; and there is a tremendous waste of energy between the power station and the points where it reaches the consumers. Therefore, there arises the necessity of organizing the sales department.”

So long as the firm is a small one, there is no need for sales organisation, as the proprietor himself

**CHAPTER –X: OBJECTIVES OF SALES PROMOTION**  
**DR. S. KAMARAJU,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Sales promotion works as link between advertisement and personal selling. There may be difference in the objectives of the method of sales promotion. However, the common objectives of sales promotion are to launch new product, attracting potential customers, to increase brand awareness etc.

*The main objective of sales promotion can be described as follows:*

**1. To introduce new products**

Through sales promotion, new products are presented to prospective customers to persuade them to buy the products. Mostly free samples are distributed. Likewise, premium, consumer competition, reduction in price etc. tools can be used. Besides the consumers, middlemen also can be motivated to keep stock of the products.

**2. To identify and attract new consumers**

The objective of sale promotion is also to identify new customers and attract them towards the firm's products. Different techniques of sales promotion are used at different times to stimulate customers to buy the products. If the business firm feel that the volume of current sales to the present customers is unsatisfactory, the firm tries to identify and develop new customers to sell the products.

**3. To encourage more purchase among current customers**

The main objective of sales promotion is to increase sales volume. The producers encourage current customers to purchase more through different promotional methods like premium, reduction in price, competition etc.

**4. To combat or offset competitors' marketing efforts**

A business firm always adopts sales promotion policy so that its products are not sold less than competitors' product in the markets. So, it becomes necessary for the firm to adopt proper sales promotion policy to offset the effect of competitors' policy in the market, if they try any. Hence the objective of sales promotion is to counter competitors' marketing policy and efforts.

# BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT

Edited by

**DR.R.SELVARAJ**



978-93-6255-433-8

## **BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT**

Copyright © 2019 by Dr. R. SELVARAJ

**All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.**

ISBN: 978-93-6255-433-8

**Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology(PRIST)**



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER-I.....</b>	<b>1</b>
THE CONCEPT OF BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT DR. R. SELVARAJ	
<b>CHAPTER-II... ..</b>	<b>15</b>
POLITICAL AND CULTURAL ENVIRONMENT DR. R. SELVARAJ	
<b>CHAPTER-III.....</b>	<b>22</b>
IMPACT ON BUSINESS AND STRATEGIC DECISION DR.S. RAJENDRAN	
<b>CHAPTER-IV... ..</b>	<b>25</b>
ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL ENVIRONMENT DR.S. RAJENDRAN	
<b>CHAPTER-V... ..</b>	<b>31</b>
GOVERNMENT AND BUSINESS RELATIONSHIPS IN INDIA DR. V. SRIDEVI	
<b>CHAPTER-VI... ..</b>	<b>38</b>
JOINT FAMILY SYSTEMS DR.V. SRIDEVI	
<b>CHAPTER-VII... ..</b>	<b>49</b>
TYPES OF SOCIAL ORGANISATION DR.R. RAJAVARDHIN	
<b>CHAPTER-VIII.....</b>	<b>55</b>
LINGUISTIC AND RELIGIOUS GROUPS DR.R. RAJAVARDHIN	
<b>CHAPTER-IX... ..</b>	<b>60</b>
ROLE OF PLANNING DR. G. KARTHIGA	
<b>CHAPTER-X... ..</b>	<b>65</b>
SOCIAL ATTITUDES DR. G. KARTHIGA	
<b>REFERENCES .....</b>	<b>70</b>

## **CHAPTER –I: THE CONCEPT OF BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT**

**DR. R. SELVARAJ,**

*Department of Commerce,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

### **Meaning of Business Environment:**

The word ‘business environment’ indicates the aggregate total of all people, organisations and other forces that are outside the power of industry but that may affect its production. According to an anonymous writer- “Just like the universe, withhold from it the subset that describes the system and the rest is environment”. Therefore, the financial, cultural, governmental, technological and different forces which work outside an enterprise are part of its environment. The individual customers or facing enterprises as well as the management, customer groups, opponents, media, courts and other establishments working outside an enterprise comprise its environment.

### **Importance of Business Environment:**

Just like us, business operations do not survive in confinement. Every enterprise is not an island to itself; it subsists, endures and develops within the circumstances of the part and forces of its situation. While an individual enterprise is able to do minute to change or manage these forces, it has no choice to reacting or modifying according to them. Good knowledge of the environment by business managers allows them not only to recognise and assess but also to respond to the forces outside to their enterprises. The significance of the business environment and its perception by managers can be understood if we contemplate the below-mentioned following points:

#### **(A) It Helps in Identifying Opportunities and Making First Mover Advantage**

- The environment provides numerous opportunities, and it is necessary to identify the opportunities to improve the performance of a business.
- Early identification gives an opportunity to an enterprise be the first to identify opportunity instead of losing them to competitors. **Example:** ‘Airtel’ identified the need for fast internet and took first-mover advantage by providing 4G speed to its users followed by Vodafone and Idea.
- Asian paints lost market share to Nerolac because it failed to match its technology.

#### **(B) It Helps the Firm Identify Threats and Early Warning Signals**

- The business environment helps in understanding the threats which are likely to happen in the future.

**CHAPTER –II: POLITICAL AND CULTURAL ENVIRONMENT**  
**DR. R. SELVARAJ,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

In the business context, the political environment refers to the laws, regulations, and government policies that can affect the operations and performance of companies. Firms must keep a watch on the exchanging political environment to be in business. Any political change has significant changes on the way a firm functions, along with its customer, suppliers and distributors. Whether it's at a local, national, or international level, the political environment can have a huge impact on a business's operations and success. Many factors come into play when considering the political environment of a business, like trade agreements, rules, regulations, etc.

**What is Political Environment in Business?**

In any business, the political environment is always a crucial factor. It can so happen that the government passes laws, due to which the functioning of the company is affected. For example, refer to the ones stated below.

- The government can enact environmental regulations that force companies to change their business.
- The political environment can also affect a company's ability to get financing. If the government is unstable, banks and other lenders may be unwilling to extend loans to businesses in that country.
- The political environment can also influence consumer behaviour. The clients of different countries are affected by the way the government of that country functions.

**Political and Government Environment**

The government plays a significant role in framing the political environment for businesses through the laws and regulations it enacts and implements. Some of the major ways in which the government impacts the business environment have been stated below.

- **Taxation:** Taxes are the necessary boundations the government needs to pay the nation's government. The more stringent the taxation laws and the more aggressive they are, the more likely the firms will have difficulty thriving.
- **Labour laws:** Governments frame laws that regulate labour practices and workplace safety. Labor Laws are the framework according to which the people are treated in an organization. The pay packages, gender equality, etc., depend on labour laws.

**CHAPTER –III: IMPACT ON BUSINESS AND STRATEGIC DECISION**  
**DR.S. RAJENDRAN,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

A vision of the future while adhering to the organization's values, setting objectives, clarifying threats, and determining the best— strategic decision-making revolutionizes an organization. No matter how trivial the matter might appear, a decision can have repercussions on your organization's outcomes. With a rise in complexity and seriousness of issues, the effects of your decisions ripple. While the right decisions taken at the right time can bring about transformations, wrong decisions at the wrong time might result in catastrophic consequences. Approximately 100,000 businesses fail each year in the US, and a lack of strategic focus and direction happens to be the cause of most of these failures. Discover the benefits of strategic decision-making and take the first strong step towards your success journey.

### **What is Strategic Decision Making?**

Strategic decision-making is the process of comprehending the interaction of decisions and their impact on an organization to gain an advantage. Its true power lies in combining the right decision with the right time.

To remain competitive, organizations must make decisions that minimize long-term risks and maximize short-term results. Strategic decision-making combines the five decision-making steps with the concepts of threat, opportunity, risk, and countervailing factors to help your company grow.

### **10 Benefits of Strategic Management**

In addition to maintaining a progressive approach, some of the benefits of strategic management are as follows:

- **Helps Achieve Goals**

Irrespective of the industry and size, every company has myriad goals to achieve. They can aim for international competitiveness, brand awareness, better customer service, or building industry leadership. Strategic management accelerates your progress towards successfully achieving any of these goals.

**CHAPTER –IV: ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL ENVIRONMENT**  
**DR.S. RAJENDRAN,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Market reforms in the post-socialist countries have brought into sharp focus the problem of interconnection and interaction between the economy and the social environment. The economy is inseparable from politics and the operation of the political system, from the state of the social consciousness, the moral and cultural level of the population and from many other aspects of human life and behavior, in short, from everything that can be described by the concept of social environment.

Society in every country is a single organism with closely interconnected and interacting parts and systems. Their conjugation and mutual influence are not always apparent and are often overlooked. It is quite easy to see how changes in policy affect the economy and then trace the feedback effect of the economy on policy. It is more difficult to discern the direct and feedback relationship of the economy with administrative relations, with the state of culture, science, morals and public opinion. Meanwhile, an underestimation of these mutual influences is a frequent cause of failures in socio-economic transformation. It is to be regretted that the reforms in Russia were accompanied by a dangerous disruption not only of the economy, but also of the entire system of social relations. What was primary here and what was secondary? In order to answer this question, the paper takes a theoretical look at the problem of interaction between the economy and the social environment.

**Does Politics Have Primacy Over Economics?**

Marxist theory holds that the economy is the basis for the political, ideological and cultural superstructure, that material being determines consciousness and that, consequently, the role of the political superstructure cannot be decisive. Current reality is at variance with these assertions. The revolutionary breakdown of social relations in countries that first took the road of socialist construction and then proceeded to dismantle that system and restore capitalism shows the indisputable primacy of ideology and policy over the economy. At any rate, this has been the case in recent decades, if not over the centuries.

In times of transition, the political choice and will of the new authorities determine the overall vector and the stages of change in the economy. Sound political decisions and properly chosen strategy and tactics ensure success, whereas erroneous policies are fraught with economic disasters and social upheavals. Of course, even a sensible policy will not guarantee good results unless the authorities control the situation in society and have at their disposal effective instruments for achieving the set goals.

The policy in question consists of the ideological tenets and actions of the policy-makers at the head of the state designed to maintain and consolidate power and to create favorable economic, social and external conditions for the country's development. True, it sometimes happens that policy is mostly

**CHAPTER –V: GOVERNMENT AND BUSINESS RELATIONSHIPS IN INDIA**  
**DR.V. SRIDEVI,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

In a *free market economy*, businesses and the government are *two separate entities*. The government creates the rules and regulations that businesses must follow, while businesses produce the goods and services that consumers demand. This separation is essential to maintain a balance between the two groups and prevent one from having too much power over the other.

However, there is no denying that businesses and the government are intertwined. They rely on each other to function properly and both have a vested interest in the others success. For example, businesses need the government to create an environment that is conducive to economic growth, such as by enacting laws that protect property rights and enforcing contracts. The government also needs businesses to create jobs and produce *the tax revenue* that funds its operations.

**The Relationship Between Business Objectives and Credit Risk Ratings**

The relationship between business and government is often described as a marriage made in heaven. This analogy is apt because, like all marriages, the relationship between business and government is not always smooth. There are times when the two groups clash, such as when the government imposes regulations that businesses view as burdensome or when businesses engage in activities that the government deems harmful to society. However, these conflicts are typically resolved through negotiation and compromise.

Overall, the relationship between business and government is essential to the functioning of a *free market economy*. Each group has a vested interest in the others success and they need each other to thrive.

The relationship between *business objectives* and credit risk ratings is symbiotic a company's objectives should be aligned with its credit risk profile, and its credit risk profile should support its objectives. A mismatch between the two can lead to *financial instability*, missed opportunities, and *limited growth prospects*.

To understand this relationship, consider the following insights:

**1. Growth Objectives:** If a company aims to pursue aggressive growth strategies, such as expanding into new markets or launching innovative products, it may require substantial funding. To attract the necessary capital, the company must demonstrate a strong credit risk profile, assuring investors and lenders of its ability to generate returns and repay debt.

**CHAPTER –VI: JOINT FAMILY SYSTEMS**  
**DR.V. SRIDEVI,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Family is one of the universal and permanent institutions of mankind. In every society and at every stage of development we found some sort of family. As a result, we found different types of family all over the world. But in India we found a peculiar family system which deserve special attention. The family in India does not consist only of husband, wife and their children but also of uncles, aunts and cousins and grandsons.

This system is called joint family or extended family system. This joint family system is a peculiar characteristic of the Indian social life. Usually a son after marriage does not separate himself from the parents but continue to live under the same roof eating food cooked at one hearth participating in common worship and holding property in common and every person has share in it.

All the members of joint family keep their earnings in a common fund out of which family expenses are met. Accordingly, Indian Joint family system is like a socialistic community in which every members earns according to his capacity and receives according to his needs. This joint family or extended family is organized on close blood relationships. It normally consists of members of three to four generations.

In other words, joint family is a collection of more than one primary family on the basis of close blood ties and common residences. The entire members are bound by mutual obligations and have a common ancestor. It consists of an individual his wife and married sons their children and unmarried daughter, his brother and his parent.

But to have a clear understanding of the meaning of joint family we must have to analyze some of its definitions given by different sociologists.

**Some of this definitions are as follows:**

- (1) According to Smt. Iravati Karve, “A joint family is a group of people who generally live under one roof, who eat food cooked at one hearth, who hold property in common and who participate in common worship and are related to each other as some particular type of Kindred.”

**CHAPTER –VII: TYPES OF SOCIAL ORGANISATION**  
**DR.R. RAJAVARDHIN,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

A network of relationships among individuals and various groups in the community that are essential for several purposes is called **social organisation**. A political party, church, factory, and college are examples of social organisations. Slavery permeated many civilizations and countries in the previous era.



A **society** is due to religion, caste, and inequality between men and women among many other factors. Therefore, certain people used their privilege and wealth to enslave others. A feudal system or **feudalism** is a form of social as well as political organisation in which landowners grant tenants in return for their allegiance and duty. **Industrial society** is supported by the utilisation of technology and equipment to facilitate mass production and is managed with a large capacity for the division of labour.

**What are the 5 Types of Social Organisation?**

Organisations are needed for the maintenance of any society. There are five different types of social organisation as follows –

- Economic organisation
- Financial organisation
- Political organisation
- Educational organisation
- Religious organisation



**CHAPTER –VIII: LINGUISTIC AND RELIGIOUS GROUPS**  
**DR.R. RAJAVARDHIN,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

In this unit we take a look at yet another aspect of India's plural culture which is its religious and language diversity. India is a land of diverse religions. While some of the religions are well organised with a definitive philosophy and orientations, many may lack such structures. Still, all the religions practiced in India have their distinct sets of religious customs, sacred beliefs and taboos. Apart from many indigenous tribal religions that continue to survive in India, the country is also the land of origin for many significant religions of the world, viz. Hinduism, Jainism, Buddhism and Sikhism. In this collage of religious pluralism, one religion that remains the most predominant, is Hinduism. The roots of the Hindu religion can be traced back to the early Vedic period, wherein Sanskrit was the most prominent language of religious behaviour. However, what we know as classical Hinduism today is basically a product of interaction of the Vedic Hindu thought with the non-Aryan cultures and its politicisation in the medieval and the modern epochs. Today, regionalism, ethnicity and modernity have a bearing upon the interplay between language and religion. So, for example; while the wedding rituals can be conducted in Sanskrit, the event of blessing the newlyweds by the relatives can be done in Hindi or any other regional languages, while the wedding invitation can still be written in English.

In Sociology, pluralism may refer to the diversity of religious and linguistic traditions within the same cultural or social space. The Indian context of religious pluralism is shaped by the co-existence of Hinduism, Buddhism, Sikhism, Jainism, Christianity, Islam, etc. across the length and breadth of the country. Hinduism is the oldest of all living great religions not only of India but across the World. To read more about Hinduism, Hindu and its modern-day derivative Hindutva, you can refer to the Box 1. given below. In the process of social evolution and change, several other religions either originated from India or penetrated into it from outside. While the debates concerning the origin or arrival and a subsequent chronology of religions in India, is a vast topic beyond the purview of this unit, a brief discussion of the same is essential to draw a sketch of religious pluralism in India. The sixth century B.C. was marked by religious turmoil, resulting from the rigid and complicated practices that had marred Hinduism, like Brahminical exclusivity of religious ceremonies and caste system. Owing to the resultant unrest among the common masses, many sects arose. The most prominent among them were Jainism and Buddhism, both of which emerged in India around 800-600 B.C.E This makes these the oldest religions being practiced in India after Hinduism.

**CHAPTER –IX: ROLE OF PLANNING**  
**DR. G. KARTHIGA,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Planning can be characterised as a blueprint that bridges future organisational goals and the organisation's present situation. It analyses and facilitates determining how an organisation's objectives can be fulfilled.

It consists of two parts:

- (1) Establishing the organisation's goals and objectives
- (2) Selecting and developing a strategy to achieve them.

According to Fayol, "planning is the process of developing a plan of action, which includes determining the desired outcome in the course of action to be taken, the steps to be completed, and the methods to use."

Planning can be characterised as a blueprint that bridges future organisational goals and the organisation's present situation. It analyses and facilitates determining how an organisation's objectives can be fulfilled.

It consists of two parts:

- (1) Establishing the organisation's goals and objectives
- (2) Selecting and developing a strategy to achieve them.

According to Fayol, "planning is the process of developing a plan of action, which includes determining the desired outcome in the course of action to be taken, the steps to be completed, and the methods to use."

What are the features of planning?

- (i) The primary focus of planning is achieving the goal

Planning has a specific objective. It is meaningless unless it helps achieve predetermined organisational goals.

- (ii) Management's primary function is planning

**CHAPTER –X: SOCIAL ATTITUDES**  
**DR. G. KARTHIGA,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Dimensions of or the agents forming the business environment involve economic, social, legal, technological and political circumstances which are contemplated properly for decision-making and enhancing the achievement of the trading concern. In distinction to the precise environment, these aspects manifest the prevailing environment, which often affects many companies at the same time. However, the administration of every business can profit from being informed of these dimensions rather than being unbiased in them. A concise argument of the multiple factors comprising the global environment of the company is provided below:

**(A) Legal Environment**

- It includes various laws passed by the government, administrative orders issued by government authorities, court judgments as well as decisions rendered by the central, state or local governments.
- Understanding of legal knowledge is a pre-requisite for the smooth functioning of business and industry.
- Understanding the legal environment by business houses help them not to fall in a legal tangle.
- The legal environment includes various laws like Companies Act 2013, Consumer Protection Act 1986, Policies relating to licensing & approvals, Policies related to foreign trade etc.

**Example:** Labour laws followed by companies help them to keep away from penalties.

**(B) Political Environment**

- It means that the actions were taken by the government, which potentially affect the routine activities of any business or company on a domestic or at the global level.
- The success of business and industry depends upon the government's attitude towards the business and industry, Stability of Government, Peace in the country.

**Example:** Political stability and central government's attitudes towards business, industry and employment, has attracted many national and international business entrepreneurs to invest in India.

**(C) Economic Environment**

- The economic environment consists of an economic system, economic policies and economic conditions prevailing in a country.



# BASIC ACCOUNTING

EDITED BY  
**DR. S. RAJENDRAN**



978-93-6255-926-5

## **Basic Accounting**

Copyright © 2019 by Dr. S. Rajendran

**All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.**

ISBN: 978-93-6255-926-5

**Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology(PRIST)**

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER-I.....</b>	<b>1</b>
INTRODUCTION TO ACCOUNTING	
DR. S. KAMARAJU	
<b>CHAPTER-II.....</b>	<b>10</b>
FUNCTIONS OF ACCOUNTING	
DR. S. KAMARAJU	
<b>CHAPTER-III.....</b>	<b>15</b>
ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES	
DR.D. SILAMBARASAN	
<b>CHAPTER-IV.....</b>	<b>25</b>
BOOK KEEPING	
DR.D. SILAMBARASAN	
<b>CHAPTER-V.....</b>	<b>30</b>
RULES OF DEBIT AND CREDIT	
DR.S. RAJENDRAN	
<b>CHAPTER-VI.....</b>	<b>35</b>
ACCOUNTING EQUATION	
DR.S. RAJENDRAN	
<b>CHAPTER-VII.....</b>	<b>40</b>
ADVANTAGES OF ACCOUNTING	
DR.G. KARTHIGA	
<b>CHAPTER-VIII.....</b>	<b>44</b>
TYPES OF ACCOUNTING INFORMATION	
DR.G. KARTHIGA	
<b>CHAPTER-IX.....</b>	<b>50</b>
CASH BOOK	
DR. R. SELVARAJ	
<b>CHAPTER-X.....</b>	<b>57</b>
RACTIFICATION OF ERRORS	
DR. R. SELVARAJ	
<b>REFERENCES.....</b>	<b>63</b>

**CHAPTER –I: INTRODUCTION TO ACCOUNTING**  
**DR. S. KAMARAJU,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Over the centuries, accounting has remained confined to the financial record-keeping functions of the accountant. But, today's rapidly changing business environment has forced the accountants to reassess their roles and functions both within the organisation and the society. The role of an accountant has now shifted from that of a mere recorder of transactions to that of the member providing relevant information to the decision-making team. Broadly speaking, accounting today is much more than just bookkeeping and the preparation of financial reports. Accountants are now capable of working in exciting new growth areas such as: forensic accounting (solving crimes such as computer hacking and the theft of large amounts of money on the internet); ecommerce (designing web-based payment system); financial planning, environmental accounting, etc. This realisation came due to the fact that accounting is capable of providing the kind of information that managers and other interested persons need in order to make better decisions. This aspect of accounting gradually assumed so much importance that it has now been raised to the level of an information system. As an information system, it collects data and communicates economic information about the organisation to a wide variety of users whose decisions and actions are related to its performance. This introductory chapter therefore, deals with the nature, need and scope of accounting in this context.

Meaning of Accounting In 1941, The American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) had defined accounting as the art of recording, classifying, and summarising in a significant manner and in terms of money, transactions and events which are, in part at least, of financial character, and interpreting the results thereof'. With greater economic development resulting in changing role of accounting, its scope, became broader. In 1966, the American Accounting Association (AAA) defined accounting as 'the process of identifying, measuring and communicating economic information to permit informed judgments and decisions by users of information.

In 1970, the Accounting Principles Board of AICPA also emphasised that the function of accounting is to provide quantitative information, primarily financial in nature, about economic entities, that is intended to be useful in making economic decisions. Accounting can therefore be defined as the process of identifying, measuring, recording and communicating the required information relating to the economic events of an organisation to the interested users of such information.

**CHAPTER –II: FUNCTIONS OF ACCOUNTING**  
**DR. S. KAMARAJU,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Accounting serves several critical functions within an organization. Here are the key functions:

1. **Recording Financial Transactions**: Capturing all financial transactions in an organized manner, ensuring accuracy and completeness.
2. **Classification**: Categorizing financial data into meaningful groups (e.g., assets, liabilities, revenues, expenses) for easier analysis.
3. **Summarization**: Compiling classified data into summarized reports, such as income statements and balance sheets, to provide a clear overview of financial health.
4. **Reporting**: Providing financial information to stakeholders (management, investors, regulators) through various reports, ensuring transparency and accountability.
5. **Analysis**: Evaluating financial data to inform decision-making, identify trends, and assess performance against benchmarks.
6. **Budgeting**: Assisting in the planning process by preparing budgets, which help organizations allocate resources effectively and monitor financial performance.
7. **Compliance**: Ensuring adherence to financial regulations and standards, including tax obligations and reporting requirements.
8. **Audit and Control**: Facilitating internal and external audits to verify the accuracy of financial records and implement controls to prevent fraud and errors.
9. **Decision Support**: Providing insights and forecasts that aid management in strategic planning and operational decisions.
10. **Performance Measurement**: Assessing the efficiency and profitability of operations through financial metrics and ratios.



**CHAPTER –III: ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES**  
**DR.D. SILAMBARASAN,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Accounting principles are the foundational guidelines that govern financial reporting and accounting practices. Here are the key accounting principles:

1. **Accrual Principle**: Revenues and expenses are recognized when they are earned or incurred, not necessarily when cash is received or paid.
  
2. **Consistency Principle**: Businesses should apply the same accounting methods and principles from one period to the next to ensure comparability.
  
3. **Going Concern Principle**: Financial statements are prepared with the assumption that the entity will continue to operate indefinitely unless there is evidence to the contrary.
  
4. **Matching Principle**: Expenses should be matched with the revenues they help generate in the same period, providing a more accurate picture of financial performance.
  
5. **Revenue Recognition Principle**: Revenue is recognized when it is earned and realizable, regardless of when cash is received.
  
6. **Materiality Principle**: Only information that could influence the decision-making of users should be disclosed in financial statements.
  
7. **Prudence (Conservatism) Principle**: Accountants should exercise caution and avoid overstating income or assets, ensuring that expenses and liabilities are not understated.
  
8. **Historical Cost Principle**: Assets are recorded at their original purchase price, providing a reliable basis for financial statements.
  
9. **Economic Entity Assumption**: The financial activities of a business must be kept separate from those of its owners or other businesses.
  
10. **Full Disclosure Principle**: All relevant financial information should be disclosed in the financial statements to provide a complete picture to users.

**CHAPTER –IV: BOOK KEEPING**  
**DR.D. SILAMBARASAN,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Book keeping is the systematic recording and organizing of financial transactions of a business. It serves as the foundation for accounting and involves several key activities:

Key Activities in Book keeping

1. **Recording Transactions**: Documenting all financial transactions, including sales, purchases, receipts, and payments, typically using journals or accounting software.
2. **Classifying Transactions**: Categorizing transactions into appropriate accounts (e.g., assets, liabilities, income, expenses) to facilitate analysis and reporting.
3. **Maintaining Ledgers**: Updating general and subsidiary ledgers to track account balances and ensure accuracy in financial records.
4. **Reconciling Accounts**: Comparing internal records with bank statements and other external documents to identify discrepancies and ensure accuracy.
5. **Generating Financial Reports**: Producing basic financial statements such as profit and loss statements and balance sheets to provide insights into the business's financial status.
6. **Managing Payroll**: Recording employee hours, calculating wages, and ensuring timely payment to employees, along with managing payroll taxes.
7. **Tracking Accounts Receivable and Payable**: Monitoring amounts owed by customers and amounts owed to suppliers to manage cash flow effectively.
8. **Compliance and Tax Preparation**: Ensuring that financial records meet legal and regulatory requirements, and preparing necessary documentation for tax filings.

**CHAPTER –V: RULES OF DEBIT AND CREDIT**  
**DR.S. RAJENDRAN,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

The rules of debit and credit are fundamental principles in accounting that guide how transactions are recorded in the double-entry bookkeeping system. Here's a concise overview:

Basic Rules

1. **Assets:**
  - **Debit:** Increases in assets
  - **Credit:** Decreases in assets
2. **Liabilities:**
  - **Debit:** Decreases in liabilities
  - **Credit:** Increases in liabilities
3. **Equity:**
  - **Debit:** Decreases in equity
  - **Credit:** Increases in equity
4. **Revenue:**
  - **Debit:** Decreases in revenue
  - **Credit:** Increases in revenue
5. **Expenses:**
  - **Debit:** Increases in expenses
  - **Credit:** Decreases in expenses

Summary of the Rules

- **Debits** must always equal **Credits**: For every transaction, the total amount debited must equal the total amount credited, maintaining the accounting equation (Assets = Liabilities + Equity).

Practical Example

- If a company purchases equipment for \$1,000:
  - **Debit Equipment (Asset):** \$1,000 (increasing an asset)
  - **Credit Cash (Asset):** \$1,000 (decreasing another asset)

**CHAPTER –VI: ACCOUNTING EQUATION**  
**DR.S. RAJENDRAN,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

The **accounting equation** is a fundamental principle in accounting that represents the relationship between a company's assets, liabilities, and equity. The equation is:

$$\text{Assets} = \text{Liabilities} + \text{Equity}$$

#### Components Explained

1. **Assets:** Resources owned by the business that have economic value. Examples include cash, inventory, accounts receivable, equipment, and real estate.
2. **Liabilities:** Obligations or debts that the business owes to external parties. Examples include loans, accounts payable, and mortgages.
3. **Equity:** The owner's residual interest in the assets of the business after deducting liabilities. It represents the owner's claim on the assets. Examples include common stock and retained earnings.

#### Importance of the Accounting Equation

- **Foundation of Double-Entry Accounting:** The equation ensures that every financial transaction is recorded in a way that maintains balance in the books. For every debit entry, there is a corresponding credit entry.
- **Financial Health Assessment:** The equation helps assess a company's financial health. A balanced equation indicates that the company is funded appropriately through debt and equity.
- **Financial Statements Preparation:** The equation is the basis for creating the balance sheet, where assets are listed on one side, and liabilities and equity are listed on the other.

#### Example

If a company has:

- Assets: \$50,000
- Liabilities: \$20,000

Then, the equity can be calculated as:

- $\text{Equity} = \text{Assets} - \text{Liabilities} = \$50,000 - \$20,000 = \$30,000$

**CHAPTER –VII: ADVANTAGES OF ACCOUNTING**  
**DR.G. KARTHIGA,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Imagine managing a business without a thorough understanding of your finances. It's like navigating a dark forest without a compass, full of uncertainty and potential hazards.

Here's where financial accounting comes in. The systematic recording, analysis, and reporting of financial transactions serves as the compass for every successful business.

Financial accounting is more than just keeping track of numbers; it also involves understanding your company's financial health. It provides a clear picture of your profitability, debt management, and overall ability to achieve long-term goals.

Accounting enables businesses to make informed decisions that lead to success by providing this important financial data.

In this blog, we'll look at the key advantages of financial accounting and how it serves as the foundation for any successful organization.

### **Key Advantages of Financial Accounting**

Financial accounting provides a robust set of tools to help businesses confidently navigate the world of finance. Let's look at some of the key advantages that make it the foundation of any successful organization:

#### ***A. Systematic Record-Keeping: The Organized Foundation***

Imagine trying to find a specific receipt in a filing cabinet overflowing with random papers. Financial accounting eliminates this chaos. It establishes a systematic approach to recording every financial transaction, from sales and purchases to expenses and investments.

This organized system utilizes a standardized chart of accounts, ensuring consistency and ease of data retrieval. You can find the exact financial information you need, whenever you need it, for future reference and in-depth analysis.

**CHAPTER –VIII: TYPES OF ACCOUNTING INFORMATION**  
**DR.G. KARTHIGA,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Types of Accounting Methods

**Cash Accounting**

Cash accounting is an accounting method that is relatively simple and is commonly used by small businesses. In cash accounting, transactions are only recorded when cash is spent or received.

In cash accounting, a sale is recorded when the payment is received and an expense is recorded only when a bill is paid. The cash accounting method is, of course, the method that most people use in managing their personal finances and is appropriate for businesses up to a certain size.

If a business generates more than \$25 million in average annual gross receipts for the preceding three years, however, it must use the accrual method, according to IRS rules.<sup>1</sup>

**Accrual Accounting**

Accrual accounting is based on the matching principle, which is intended to match the timing of revenue and expense recognition. By matching revenues with expenses, the accrual method gives a more accurate picture of a company's true financial condition.

Under the accrual method, transactions are recorded when they are incurred rather than awaiting payment. This means a purchase order is recorded as revenue even though the funds are not received immediately. The same goes for expenses in that they are recorded even though no payment has been made.

**Example of an Accounting Method**

The value of accrual accounting becomes more evident for large, complex businesses. For example, a construction company may undertake a long-term project and may not receive complete cash payments until the project is complete.

Under cash accounting rules, the company would incur many expenses but would not recognize revenue until cash was received from the customer. So, the accounting book of the company would look weak until the revenue actually came in. If this company was looking for [debt financing](#) from a bank, for example, the cash accounting method makes it look like a poor bet because it is incurring expenses but no revenue.

**CHAPTER –IX: CASH BOOK**  
**DR. R. SELVARAJ,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

**What Is a Cash Book?**

A cash book is a financial journal that contains all cash receipts and disbursements, including bank deposits and withdrawals. This is the main area where businesses record any and all cash-related information. Entries are normally divided into cash payments and receipts. All of these are posted in the company's general ledger.

**How a Cash Book Works**

A cash book is set up as a subsidiary to the general ledger in which all cash transactions made during an accounting period are recorded in chronological order. Larger organizations usually divide the cash book into two parts: the cash disbursement journal, which records all cash payments, and the cash receipts journal, which records all cash received into the business.

The cash disbursement journal would include items such as payments made to vendors to reduce accounts payable, and the cash receipts journal would include items such as payments made by customers on outstanding accounts receivable or cash sales.

The primary goal of a cash book is to manage cash efficiently, making it easy to determine cash balances at any point in time, and allowing managers and company accountants to budget their cash effectively when needed. It is also much faster to access cash information in a cash book than by following the cash through a ledger.

**Types of Cash Books**

There are several types of cash books that entities can use, whether they're businesses or individuals. We've highlighted some key details about single-, double-, and triple-column cash books with examples of what each looks like below.

**Single-Column Cash Book**

The single-column cash book is the easiest type of cash book to use. This type is commonly used by individuals who want to keep track of their own money and finances. To use the single-column version of the cash book, transactions are noted in one column. The user updates the total amount by the end of the day.

**CHAPTER –X: RACTIFICATION OF ERRORS**  
**DR. R. SELVARAJ,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Rectification of errors is referred to as the procedure of revising mistakes made in recording transactions. These mistakes can occur while posting entries to ledger accounts, classifying accounts, carrying balance forward, etc.

The errors are broadly classified into two types:

1. Rectification of errors that do not influence the trial balance
2. Rectification of errors that influence the trial balance

Rectification of errors that do not influence the trial balance

Rectification of errors that do not influence the trial balance include errors that involve errors on both sides of debit and credit and can be rectified by passing a journal entry.

These errors impact two accounts simultaneously and are therefore known as two-sided errors. The errors can occur both on the debit and credit side of the account and need to be corrected or rectified by passing a journal entry to correct the debit and credit.

An error can be rectified by reversing the impact of wrong entry on debit and credit side and restoring the correct debit and credit entry.

Whenever there is excess credit or shortage in debit, then debiting the concerned account is done, similarly when there is shortage of credit and excess of debit, then the concerned account should be credited.

**Example**

Credit sales to Rajesh of ₹ 5,000 were not recorded in the sales book. Rectify the error.

The rectification of this error will be as follows:

Rajesh's A/c Dr. 5000

To Sales A/c 5000

(Being credit sales to Rajesh recorded correctly)





# MARKETING RESEARCH AND CONSUMER BEHAVIOR

EDITED BY

**DR. G. SENTHIL KUMAR**



978-93-6255-761-2

Marketing Research and Consumer Behavior

Copyright © 2019 by Dr. G. Senthil Kumar

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-761-2

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology(PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER-I.....	1
INTRODUCTION TO CONSUMER BEHAVIOUR	
DR. R. SELVARAJ	
CHAPTER-II.....	5
NATURE OF CONSUMER BEHAVIOUR	
DR. R. SELVARAJ	
CHAPTER-III.....	12
INDIVIDUAL DETERMINANTS OF CONSUMER BEHAVIOUR	
DR. G. KARTHIGA	
CHAPTER-IV.....	20
PERSONALITY AND SELF CONCEPT	
DR. G. KARTHIGA	
CHAPTER-V.....	25
CONSUMER PERCEPTION	
DR. D. SILAMBARASAN	
CHAPTER-VI.....	31
CONSUMER ATTITUDE	
DR. D. SILAMBARASAN	
CHAPTER-VII.....	36
ENVIRONMENTAL INFLUENCES ON CONSUMER BEHAVIOUR	
DR.S. RAJENDRAN	
CHAPTER-VIII.....	40
SOCIAL CLASS	
DR.S. RAJENDRAN	
CHAPTER-IX.....	45
REFERENCE GROUP	
DR. R. RAJAVARDHINI	
CHAPTER-X.....	50
THEORIES OF CONSUMER BEHAVIOUR	
DR. R. RAJAVARDHINI	
REFERENCES.....	60

**CHAPTER –I INTRODUCTION TO CONSUMER BEHAVIOUR**  
**DR. R. SELVARAJ,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Consumer behaviour is a rapidly growing discipline of study. It means more than just how a person buys products. It is a complex and multidimensional process and reflects the totality of consumers' decisions with respect to acquisition, consumption and disposal activities. We, as consumers, exhibit very significant differences in our buying behaviour and play an important role in local, national or international economic conditions. One of the very few aspects common to all of us is that we are all consumers and the reason for a business firm to come into being is the presence of consumers who have unfulfilled, or partially fulfilled needs and wants. No matter who we are – urban or rural, male or female, young or old, rich or poor, educated or uneducated, believer or non-believer, or whatever – we are all consumers. We consume or use on a regular basis food, shelter, clothing, education, entertainment, brooms, toothbrushes, vehicles, domestic help, healthcare and other services, necessities, comforts, luxuries and even ideas etc. Organisations realise that their marketing effectiveness in satisfying consumer needs and wants at a profit depends on a deeper understanding of consumer behaviour. Our consumption related behaviour influences the development of technology and introduction of new and improved products and services.

To succeed in a dynamic marketing environment, marketers have an urgent need to learn and anticipate whatever they can about consumers. The better they know and understand consumers, the more advantageous it would prove in accomplishing their organisational objectives. Marketers want to know what consumers think, what they want, how they work, how they entertain themselves, how they play etc. They also need to comprehend personal and group influences which have a significant impact on consumer decision-making process.

Definition of Consumer Behaviour

*“Consumer behaviour refers to the actions and decision processes of people who purchase goods and services for personal consumption.”*

*James F Engel, Roger D Blackwell and Paul W Miniard, “Consumer Behaviour” (Dryden Press, 1990)*

*Consumer behaviour refers to “the mental and emotional processes and the physical activities of people who purchase and use goods and services to satisfy particular needs and wants.”*

*Bearden et al. “Marketing Principles and Perspectives.”*

**CHAPTER –II NATURE OF CONSUMER BEHAVIOUR**  
**DR. R. SELVARAJ,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Consumer behaviour is the study of how individual customers, groups or organizations select, buy, use, and dispose ideas, goods, and services to satisfy their needs and wants. It refers to the actions of the consumers in the marketplace and the underlying motives for those actions.

Marketers expect that by understanding what causes the consumers to buy particular goods and services, they will be able to determine—which products are needed in the marketplace, which are obsolete, and how best to present the goods to the consumers.

The study of consumer behaviour assumes that the consumers are actors in the marketplace. The perspective of role theory assumes that consumers play various roles in the marketplace. Starting from the information provider, from the user to the payer and to the disposer, consumers play these roles in the decision process.

The roles also vary in different consumption situations; for example, a mother plays the role of an influencer in a child's purchase process, whereas she plays the role of a disposer for the products consumed by the family.

**Some selected definitions of consumer behaviour are as follows:**

1. According to Engel, Blackwell, and Mansard, 'consumer behaviour is the actions and decision processes of people who purchase goods and services for personal consumption'.
2. According to Loudon and Bitta, 'consumer behaviour is the decision process and physical activity, which individuals engage in when evaluating, acquiring, using or disposing of goods and services'.

Nature of Consumer Behaviour:

**1. Influenced by various factors:**

**The various factors that influence the consumer behaviour are as follows:**

- a. Marketing factors such as product design, price, promotion, packaging, positioning and distribution.
- b. Personal factors such as age, gender, education and income level.
- c. Psychological factors such as buying motives, perception of the product and attitudes towards the product.
- d. Situational factors such as physical surroundings at the time of purchase, social surroundings and time factor.

## CHAPTER –III INDIVIDUAL DETERMINANTS OF CONSUMER BEHAVIOUR

DR. G. KARTHIGA,

*Department of Commerce,*

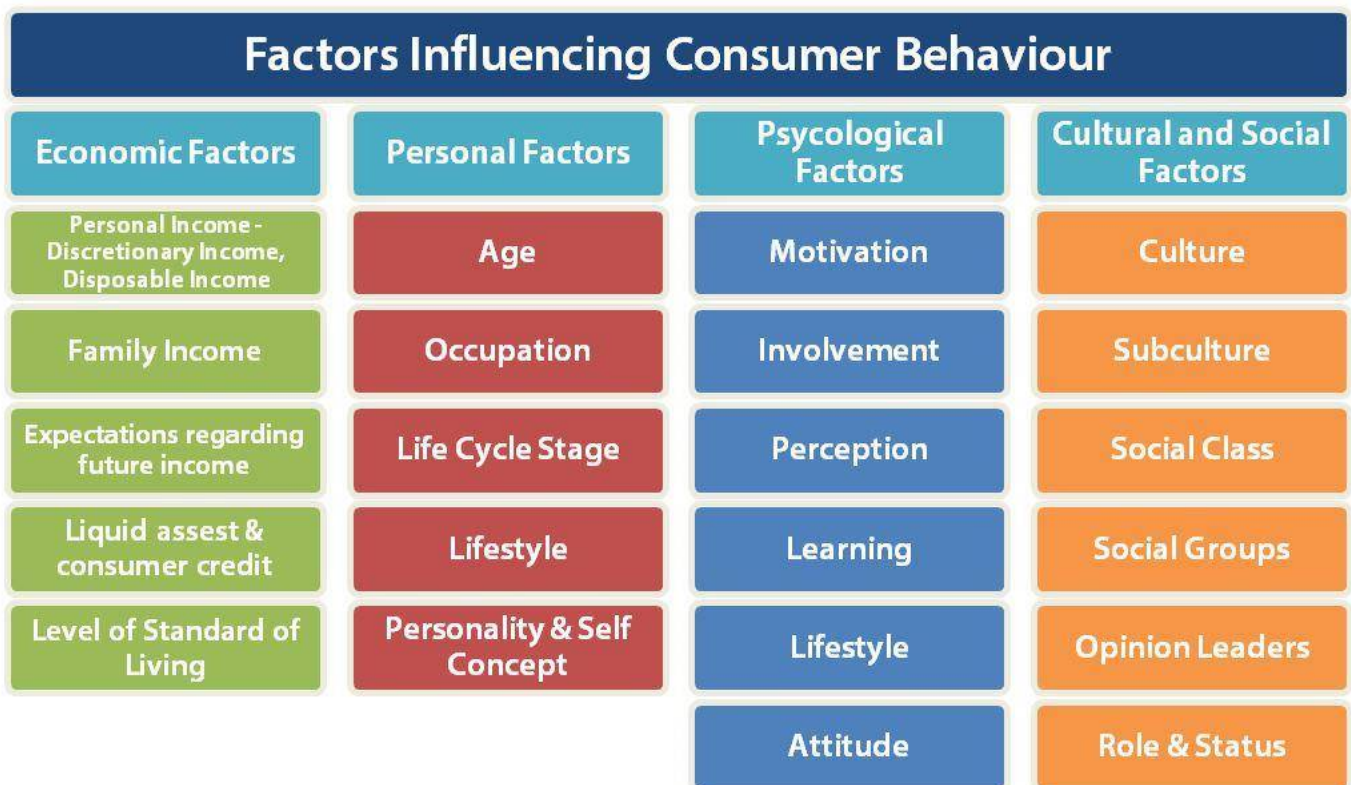
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

In a Market, different consumers have different needs. As all consumers are unique they exhibit different behaviour while making a purchase decision due to various factors influencing consumer behaviour. Therefore it is important to understand the various factors influencing consumer behaviour.

### Factors Influencing Consumer Behaviour

The Various factors influencing Consumer Behaviour can be classified into 4 categories:

- Economic Factors
- Personal Factors
- Cultural and Social Factors
- Psychological Factors



Economic Factors influencing consumer behaviour:

- **Personal Income** – Total Income of the consumer
- **Discretionary Income** – Income available to a consumer after deducting taxes and basic cost of living.
- **Disposable Income** – Income available with consumer to spend according to his wishes

**CHAPTER –IV PERSONALITY AND SELF CONCEPT**  
**DR. G. KARTHIGA,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

**Personality**

To understand a buyer needs and convert them into customers is the main purpose of the consumer behavior study. To understand the buyer habits and his priorities, it is required to understand and know the personality of the buyer.

Personality signifies the inner psychological characteristics that reflect how a person reacts to his environment. Personality shows the individual choices for various products and brands. It helps the marketers in deciding when and how to promote the product. Personality can be categorized on the basis of individual traits, likes, dislikes etc.

Though personality is static, it can change due to major events such as death, birth or marriage and can also change gradually with time. By connecting with the personality characteristics of an individual, a marketer can conveniently formulate marketing strategies.

**Trait Theory**

Traits are the features of an individual or tendency of an individual in a particular manner. Traits help in defining the behavior of consumers. According to the Trait theorists, an individual's personality make-up stems out of the traits that he possesses, and the identification of traits is important.

Following are the few of the most common traits –

- Outgoing
- Sad
- Stable
- Serious
- Happy go lucky
- Relaxed
- Self-assured
- Practical
- Imaginative

**CHAPTER –V CONSUMER PERCEPTION**  
**DR. D. SILAMBARASAN,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

**Meaning of Consumer Perception**

Customer Perception is the impression customers form about a brand based on their interactions and experiences. Advertising, reviews, product quality, and customer service shape it. This perception influences their decisions to engage with a brand. A positive perception can lead to loyalty, referrals, and increased sales, making it a vital aspect for businesses to manage. By understanding and enhancing customer perception, businesses can build a stronger, more positive brand image, crucial for long-term success and competitive advantage in the marketplace.

**Importance of Consumer Perception**

**Customer Loyalty:** When customers have a positive perception of a brand, they're more likely to return and engage with it long-term. Loyalty goes beyond just making repeat purchases; it can lead to customers recommending the brand to others, creating a loyal customer base.

**Competitive Advantage:** In crowded marketplaces, a positive customer perception can serve as a differentiation factor. Customers choose brands they perceive positively over competitors, even if the offerings are similar.

**Brand Equity:** Positive perception enhances a brand's value and reputation in the market. It helps build trust and credibility, which are invaluable assets for any brand.

**Increased Sales:** A good perception encourages customers to buy, increasing sales. It directly reflects customer satisfaction and willingness to continue buying from the brand.

**Customer Advocacy:** Satisfied customers often become brand advocates. They share their positive experiences with others, providing valuable word-of-mouth marketing which can be more effective and trustworthy compared to other marketing strategies.

**Factors Influencing Consumer Perception**

**Quality of Products/Services:** The quality and reliability of a brand's offerings are crucial. Customers often gauge the value they'll receive from a product or service based on its quality, making it a pivotal factor in shaping perception.

**Customer Service:** Exceptional customer service can significantly enhance a brand's image. Responsive, courteous, and helpful interactions, whether pre or post-sale, form a lasting impression on customers, influencing their perception and loyalty.

**Price:** Pricing plays a vital role in perceived value. Customers tend to compare the cost with the benefits they receive, and against competitors' pricing. A fair pricing strategy can foster a positive perception.

**Brand Reputation:** A brand's reputation, formed through past actions, reviews, and public opinion, is a strong influencer of perception. Positive reputation fosters trust and a favorable perception.



**CHAPTER –VI CONSUMER ATTITUDE**  
**DR. R. SELVARAJ,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Martin Fishbein has reported that there are more than 100 different definitions of attitude. More than five decades ago, Gordon W Allport presented a frequently used definition of attitudes. He said, “Attitudes are learned predispositions to respond to an object or class of objects in a consistently favourable or unfavourable way.”

They are the feelings and beliefs that an individual holds. Attitudes are an expression of inner feelings reflecting his likes and dislikes and, from a retailing perspective, as applicable to retail brands and store formats. Attitudes play an important part in determining a store's standing among consumers. In deciding at which store to shop, consumers will typically select the store that is evaluated most favourably and to which they are predisposed.

As opined by James H Myers and William H. Reynolds, "Attitudes directly affect purchase decisions and these in turn directly affect attitudes through experience in using the product or service. In a broad sense, purchase decisions are based solely upon attitudes existing at the time of purchase, however these attitudes might have been formed."

### **Characteristics of Attitude**

***Difficult to measure:*** Attitudes are reflected in behavior of individuals. It can be vaguely termed as how an individual responds to a particular situation. An individual varies in his behavior and reacts differently in different situations. Attitudes may vary according to situations and mood of an individual.

***Example:*** Consider an advertisement of Fevicol. If an individual is in good mood he might behave differently on seeing that ad. He might laugh or smile. But if he is not in a good mood, the ad might add to his bad mood and he might shout at others laughing at that ad.

Since, attitudes vary according to situations, they are difficult to measure.

***May create inflexibility and stereotypes:*** As discussed above, individuals who behave in a particular manner under a specific situation can be stereotyped to that particular behavior. People might expect the same attitude every time in all the situations. Since, individuals are judged by their first impression, attitude during the first meeting might be taken as permanent.

***Example:*** Suppose you went to see an action movie with your friend once. He might assume that you like only action movies.

## **CHAPTER –VII ENVIRONMENTAL INFLUENCES ON CONSUMER BEHAVIOUR**

**DR.S. RAJENDRAN,**

*Department of Commerce,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

### **CULTURE**

Culture is the collective values, customs, norms, arts, social institutions, and intellectual achievements of a particular society. Cultural values express the collective principles, standards, and priorities of a community. Most of the promotional messages across the world reflect, to some degree, the target audiences' cultural values.

We often refer to culture as an “invisible hand” that guides the actions of people of a particular society. When consumer researchers ask people why they do certain things, they frequently answer, “Because it’s the right thing to do”—a response reflecting the ingrained influence of culture on our behavior. We can truly understand and appreciate the influence of our culture only after visiting other countries and observing the local values and behaviors.

Marketers must always monitor cultural changes to discover new opportunities and abandon markets that have “dried up” because of cultural changes. To this end, marketers should periodically reconsider why consumers are doing what they do, who are the purchasers and the users of their offerings, when they do their shopping, how and where they can be reached by the media, and what new product and service needs are emerging.

### **Cultural Beliefs Reflect Consumers' Needs**

Culture expresses and satisfies the needs of societies. It offers order, direction, and guidance for problem solving by providing “tried-and-true” methods of satisfying physiological, personal, and social needs. For example, culture provides standards about when to eat (“not between meals”); where to eat (“most likely, the restaurant is busy because the food is good”); what is appropriate to eat for breakfast (pancakes), lunch (a sandwich), dinner (“something hot and good and healthy”), and snacks (“something with quick energy, but not too many calories”); and what to serve to guests at a dinner party (“a formal sit-down meal”), at a picnic (barbecued “franks and burgers”), or at a wedding (champagne).

Culture also determines whether a product is a necessity or discretionary luxury. For example, whereas mobile phones (initially introduced as car phones) were once expensive and uncommon, today they are a necessity because fewer and fewer people have landlines and payphones are largely extinct. Culture also dictates which clothes are suitable for different occasions (such as what to wear around the house, and what to wear to school, to work, to church, at a fast-food restaurant, or to a movie theater). In recent years, dress codes have changed drastically and Americans have been dressing casually for occasions that once required more formal attire.

**CHAPTER –VIII SOCIAL CLASS**  
**DR.S. RAJENDRAN,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Social class plays a pivotal role in shaping consumer behavior and purchasing decisions. In this blog, we'll delve into how social class influences buying behavior, the impact on brand preferences, and how marketers strategically engage with different social classes to cater to their unique needs and aspirations.

### Understanding Social Class and Buying Behavior

Social class categorizes individuals or groups within society based on shared economic and social characteristics. These include income, occupation, education, and lifestyle. These categorizations significantly influence how people make purchasing decisions.

### **The Impact of Social Class on Buying Behavior**

#### **1. Brand Preferences:**

- Social class profoundly influences brand preferences. Different social classes tend to favor specific brands that align with their perceived status and values.
- Higher social classes may gravitate toward luxury and premium brands, while lower classes may opt for more budget-friendly options.

#### **2. Product Choices:**

- Social class affects the types of products and services individuals are likely to purchase. Higher social classes often have the means to buy products associated with quality and prestige.
- Lower social classes may prioritize essential items and value practicality.

#### **3. Shopping Behavior:**

- Social class influences shopping behaviors, including where and how people shop. Higher social classes may prefer boutique stores or online shopping, while lower classes may opt for discount retailers and local markets.

#### **4. Brand Loyalty:**

- Social class can impact brand loyalty. Higher social classes may be more brand loyal due to the perceived quality and status associated with certain brands.
- Lower social classes may be more price-sensitive and less loyal to specific brands.

#### **5. Influences on Purchase Decisions:**

- Social class often dictates the sources of influence on purchase decisions. Higher social classes may be more influenced by peer recommendations or expert opinions, while lower classes may rely on discounts and promotions.

## CHAPTER –IX REFERENCE GROUP

**DR. R. RAJAVARDHINI,**

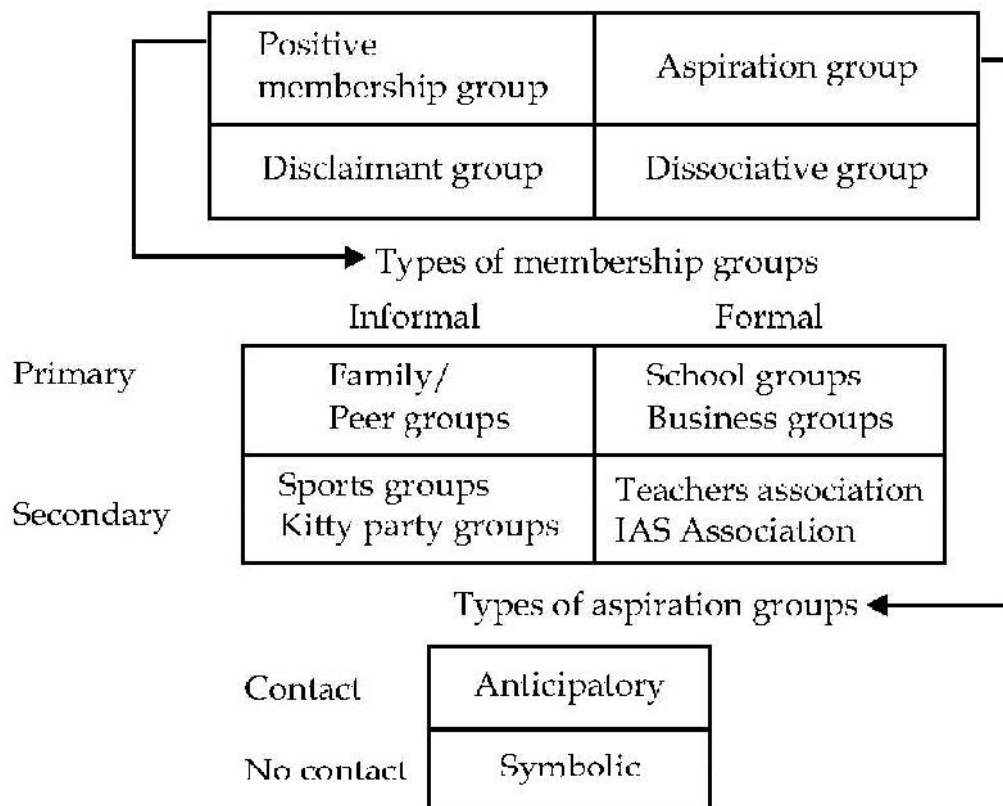
*Department of Commerce,*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

We all are part of some group or the other. Almost all consumer behaviour takes place within a group setting. Groups serve as one of the primary agents of consumer socialisation and can be influential enough to induce not only socially acceptable consumer behaviours but also socially unacceptable and even personally destructive behaviours.

*Example:* Group influences sometimes, affect excessive consumption of alcohol, use of harmful and addictive drugs and stealing etc.

### Consumer related Reference Groups



An individual can be a member of a reference group such as the family and would be said to be part of a membership group. This same individual may aspire to belong to a cricket club and would be said to be part of an aspiration group. A disclaimant group is one to which an individual may belong to or join and then reject the group's values. An individual may also regard the membership in a specific group as something undesirable and to be avoided. Such a group is a dissociative group.

**CHAPTER –X THEORIES OF CONSUMER BEHAVIOUR**  
**Dr.S. RAJENDRAN,**  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Consumer theory is the study of how people decide to spend their money based on their individual preferences and budget constraints. A branch of microeconomics, consumer theory shows how individuals make choices subject to how much income they have available to spend and the prices of goods and services.

Understanding how consumers operate makes it easier for vendors to predict which of their products will sell more and enables economists to get a better grasp of the invisible hand, the unseen forces that shape the economy.

Individuals have the freedom to choose between different bundles of goods and services. Consumer theory seeks to predict their purchasing patterns by making the following three basic assumptions about human behavior:

- **Utility maximization**—Individuals are said to make calculated decisions when shopping, purchasing products that bring them the greatest benefit, otherwise known in economic terms as a maximum utility.
- **Non-satiation**—People are seldom satisfied with one trip to the shops and always want to consume more.
- **Decreasing marginal utility**—Consumers lose satisfaction with a product the more they consume it.

Working through examples and/or cases, consumer theory usually requires the following inputs:

- A full set of consumption options
- How much utility a consumer derives from each bundle in the set of options
- A set of prices assigned to each bundle
- Any initial bundle that the consumer currently holds

### **Advantages of Consumer Theory**

Building a better understanding of individuals' tastes and incomes is important because it has a big bearing on the demand curve, which is the relationship between the price of a good or service and the quantity demanded for a given period of time, and on the shape of the overall economy.



# PARTNERSHIP ACCOUNTS

Edited by

**DR. K.JEMILA**



978-93-6255-364-5

**Partnership Accounts**

Copyright © 2019 by Dr. K.Jemila

**All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.**

ISBN: 978-93-6255-364-5

**Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology (PRIST)**

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER-I.....	1
BASIC CONCEPTS	
DR. V. SRIDEVI	
CHAPTER-II.....	20
ACCOUNTING TREATMENT OF DISTRIBUTION OF PROFIT	
DR. V. SRIDEVI	
CHAPTER-III.....	30
INTEREST ON CAPITAL	
DR.S. KAMARAJU	
CHAPTER-IV.....	40
GUARANTEE OF PROFIT TO A PARTNER	
DR.S. KAMARAJU	
CHAPTER-V.....	50
GOODWILL	
DR. G. KARTHIGA	
CHAPTER-VI.....	60
CHANGE IN PROFIT SHARING RATIO	
DR. G. KARTHIGA	
CHAPTER-VII.....	70
JOINT LIFE POLICY	
DR. R. SELVARAJ	
CHAPTER-VIII.....	80
REVALUATION OF ASSETS AND LIABILITIES VALUE	
DR. R. SELVARAJ	
CHAPTER-IX.....	90
PREPARATION OF CAPITAL ACCOUNT FOR PARTNERS IN FIRM	
DR. S. RAJENDRAN	
CHAPTER-X.....	100
TREATMENT OF UNRECORDED ASSETS AND LIABILITIES	
DR. S. RAJENDRAN	
REFERENCES.....	110



## CHAPTER –I BASIC CONCEPTS

Dr. V. Sridevi, *Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology (PRIST)*

When two or more persons join hands to set up a business and share its profits and losses, they are said to be in partnership. Section 4 of the Indian Partnership Act 1932 defines partnership as the '*relation between persons who have agreed to share the profits of a business carried on by all or any of them acting for all*'.

Persons who have entered into partnership with one another are individually called 'partners' and collectively called 'firm'. The name under which the business is carried is called the 'firm's name'. A partnership firm has no separate legal entity, apart from the partners constituting it. Thus, the essential features of partnership are:

1. **Two or More Persons:** In order to form partnership, there should be at least two persons coming together for a common goal. In other words, the minimum number of partners in a firm can be two. There is however, a limit on their maximum number. If a firm is engaged in the banking business, it can have a maximum of ten partners while in case of any other business, the maximum number of partners can be twenty.

2. **Agreement:** Partnership is the result of an agreement between two or more persons to do business and share its profits and losses. The agreement becomes the basis of relationship between the partners. It is not necessary that such agreement is in written form. An oral agreement is equally valid. But in order to avoid disputes, it is preferred that the partners have a written agreement.

3. **Business:** The agreement should be to carry on some business. Mere co-ownership of a property does not amount to partnership. For example, if Rohit and Sachin jointly purchase a plot of land, they become the joint owners of the property and not the partners. But if they are in the business of purchase and sale of land for the purpose of making profit, they will be called partners.

4. **Mutual Agency:** The business of a partnership concern may be carried on by all the partners or any of them acting for all. This statement has two important implications. First, every partner is entitled to participate in the conduct of the affairs of its business. Second, that there exists a relationship of mutual agency between all the partners. Each partner carrying on the business is the principal as well as the agent for all the other partners. He can bind other partners by his acts and also is bound by the acts of other partners with regard to business of the firm. Relationship of mutual agency is so important that one can say that there would be no partnership, if the element of mutual agency is absent.

5. **Sharing of Profit:** Another important element of partnership is that, the agreement between partners must be to share profits and losses of a business. Though the definition contained in the Partnership Act describes partnership as relation between people who agree to share the profits of a business, the sharing of loss is implied. Thus, sharing of profits and losses are important. If some persons join hands for the purpose of some charitable activity, it will not be termed as partnership.

6. **Liability of Partnership:** Each partner is liable jointly with all the other partners and also severally to the third party for all the acts of the firm done while he is a partner. Not only that the liability of a partner for acts of the firm is also unlimited. This implies that his private assets can also be used for paying off the firm's debts.

## CHAPTER –II ACCOUNTING TREATMENT OF DISTRIBUTION OF PROFIT

Dr. V. Sridevi, *Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

A partnership is a type of business organization. Partnership firms are governed by The Indian Partnership Act, 1932. A partnership is formed when two or more people start a business and divide profits in an agreed ratio. The profit-sharing ratio of a firm is mentioned in the partnership deed of a firm. If the partnership deed is silent then the distribution of profit and losses is considered to be equal among all the partners. When the existing partners of the company decide to bring a change in profit sharing ratio of the partnership firm then the old partnership deed comes to an end and a new deed is enforced with the necessary changes.

As we know a partnership is where two or more persons work together and distribute among themselves all profits and losses. But how exactly will this distribution of profit take place? Let us see the accounting entries and effects of the distribution of profit.

### **Distribution of Profit among Partners**

In accordance with the provisions of the partnership deed, the profits and losses made by the firm are distributed among the partners. However, sharing of profit and losses is equal among the partners, if the partnership deed is silent.

However, certain adjustments such as interest on drawings & capital, salary & commission to partners are required to be made. For this purpose, it is customary to prepare a Profit and Loss Appropriation Account of the firm. The final figure of profit and loss to be distributed among the partners is ascertained by Profit and Loss Appropriation Account.

### **Partnership Deed**

A partnership deed is a permissible document containing all the necessary terms and conditions which are to be followed in a partnership firm. A partnership deed contains the following:

1. Purpose of Partnership
2. Principal place of business of the partnership
3. Partnership duration
4. Account details
5. Duties of a partner
6. Interest on Capital to be received
7. Interest on Drawings to be received
8. Rules for admission of a new partner
9. Treatment of Profit and Loss Appropriation Account

### **Interest on Capital**

A partnership business is a separate legal entity. The business and the partners are two different entities so when the partners invest money to start a partnership business, they are to be paid some interest on that capital. This is known as interest on Capital. Interest on capital is an expense for the firm. The formula to calculate interest on capital is:

$$\text{Amount of capital} \times \text{Period of Interest} \times \text{Rate of interest per annum} = \text{Interest on Capital}$$

**CHAPTER –III INTEREST ON CAPITAL**  
 Dr.S. Kamaraju, *Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

If the partnership agreement specifically provides for the payment of the interest on the capital contributed by the partners, the same has to be allowed. Interest to be allowed on capital is to be calculated with respect to the time, rate and amount. Generally, following points are to be borne in mind while calculating the interest on capital:

1. Normally, interest on the opening balance at the beginning of the year is allowed for the whole accounting year.
2. If additional capital is invested during the year, interest for the relevant period is calculated.
3. If part of the capital is withdrawn during the year, interest on the part of the capital that was invested for the whole year, interest is calculated for the whole year and it is added with the amount of interest that is calculated on the remaining capital that was invested for the relevant period. For example, Anmol has Rs. 30,000 as balance in his capital account at the beginning of the year. In the middle of the year he withdrew Rs.10,000 from his capital. He is entitled for interest @ 10% p.a.

In this case, interest will be calculated in the following manner:

$$(20,000 \times 10/100) + (10,000 \times 10/100 \times 1/2) = \text{Rs. } 2,500;$$

*Alternatively,* we can calculate interest on capital with respect to the amount remained invested for the relevant period. In the above example, the interest may also be calculated as follows:

$$(30,000 \times 10/100 \times 1/2) + (20,000 \times 10/100 \times 1/2) = \text{Rs. } 2,500.$$

Mansoor and Reshma are partners in a firm. Their capital accounts showed the balance on Jan 1, 2000 as Rs. 20,000 and Rs. 15,000 respectively. During the year, Mansoor introduced additional capital of Rs.10,000 on May 1, 2000 and Reshma brought in further capital of Rs.15,000 on July 1, 2000. Reshma withdrew Rs. 5,000 from her capital on October 1, 2000. Interest is allowed @ 6% p.a. on the capitals. Calculate the interest to be paid on the capital.

**Solution**

<i>Particulars</i>	<i>Mansoor Rs.</i>	<i>Reshma Rs.</i>
1. Interest on capital balance on Jan 1, 2000: Mansoor – (20,000×6/100) Reshma – (15,000×6/100)	1,200	900
2. Add interest on additional capital: Mansoor – (10,000×6/100×8/12) Reshma – (15,000×6/100×6/12)	400	450
3. Less: Interest on capital withdrawn by Reshma (5000×3/12×6/100)		(75)
<b>Total Interest Payable</b>	<b>1,600</b>	<b>1,275</b>

## CHAPTER –IV GUARANTEE OF PROFIT TO A PARTNER

Dr.S. Kamaraju, *Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Guarantee is an assurance that a partner will not get as his share of profit less than the guaranteed amount. There may be two situations :

- (a) Guarantee to one partner by (others) the firm,
- (b) Guarantee to a partner by another partner individually.

### (a) *Guarantee to one partner by (others) the firm*

Sometimes, a partner is guaranteed a minimum amount by way of his share in the profits of the firm. Such a guarantee may be given to an existing partner or to a new partner at the time of admission. Such guaranteed amount shall be paid to partner when his share of profit, as calculated, according to his profit sharing ratio is less than the guaranteed amount. The deficiency of such guaranteed amount will be borne by the other partner's in their profit sharing or agreed ratio as the case may be.

Example, Soni and Mita are partners and they decide to admit Mary into the partnership firm. The profit sharing ratio is agreed as 3:2:1 with a guaranteed amount of Rs. 5,000 to Mary. For the year ended 2001, the business earns a profit of Rs. 24,000. Mary's share works out to Rs. 4,000 (1/6 of Rs. 24,000). This is Rs. 1,000 less than the guaranteed amount of Rs. 5,000. Hence, Mary will get Rs. 4,000 as her share of the profit in the profit sharing ratio and the deficiency of Rs.1,000 (i.e. the amount by which Rs. 4,000 falls short of the guaranteed amount) shall be transferred to the credit of Mary by transfer from Soni and Mita in their profit sharing ratio, i.e. 3:2.

### *Illustration 1 (Guarantee of Profit)*

Mouse, Keyboard and Monitor are partners. They admit Printer as a partner with a guarantee that his share of profits shall not be less than Rs. 20,000 p.a. Profits are to be shared in the proportion of 4:3:3:2. The total profits for the year ended 2002 were Rs. 96,000. Prepare the profit and loss appropriation account showing the division of the profits for the year.

#### *Solution*

Books of Mouse, Key Board and Monitor Profit and Loss Appropriation Account for the year ended..... 2002

Dr.

Cr.

<i>Particulars</i>	<i>Amount (Rs.)</i>	<i>Particulars</i>	<i>Amount (Rs.)</i>
Mouse	30,400	Net Profits	96,000
Keyboard	22,800		
Monitor	22,800		
Printer	20,000		
<b>Total</b>	<b>96,000</b>	<b>Total</b>	<b>96,000</b>

**CHAPTER –V GOODWILL**  
Dr.G. KARTHIGA,  
*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Goodwill is also one of the special aspects of partnership accounts which requires adjustment at the time of a change in the profit sharing ratio, the admission of a partner or the retirement or death of a partner.

*Meaning of Goodwill*

Over a period of time, a well-established business develops an advantage of good name, reputation and wide business connections. This helps the business to earn more profits as compared to a newly set up business. In accounting, the monetary value of such advantage is known as 'goodwill'.

It is regarded as an intangible asset. In other words, goodwill is the value of the reputation of a firm in respect of the profits expected in future over and above the normal profits. It is generally observed that when a person pays for goodwill, he/she pays for something, which places him in the position of being able to earn super profits as compared to the profit earned by other firms in the same industry.

In simple words, goodwill can be defined as "the present value of a firm's anticipated excess earnings" or as "the capitalized value attached to the differential profit capacity of a business". Thus, goodwill exists only when the firm earns super profits. Any firm that earns normal profits or is incurring losses has no goodwill.

*Factors giving rise to Goodwill*

The main factors helping the creation of goodwill are as follows:

1. *Nature of Business:* A firm that produces high value added products or having a stable demand is able to earn more profits and therefore has more goodwill.
2. *Location:* If the business is centrally located or is at a place having heavy customer traffic, the goodwill tends to be high.
3. *Efficiency of Management:* A well-managed concern usually enjoys the advantage of high productivity and cost efficiency. This leads to higher profits and so the value of goodwill will also be high.
4. *Market situation:* The monopoly condition or limited competition enables the concern to earn high profits which leads to higher value of goodwill.
5. *Special Advantages:* The firm that enjoys special advantages like import licenses, low rate and assured supply of electricity, long-term contracts for supply of materials, well-known collaborators, patents, trademarks, etc. enjoy higher value of goodwill.

*Need for Valuation*

1. Change in the profit sharing ratio amongst the existing partners;
2. Admission of a new partner;
3. Retirement of a partner;
4. Death of a partner;
5. Dissolution of a firm which involves sale of business as a going concern; and
6. Amalgamation of firm.

## CHAPTER –VI CHANGE IN PROFIT SHARING RATIO

Dr. G. Karthiga ,*Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Sometimes, the partners of a firm may agree to change their existing profit sharing ratio. As a result of this, some partners will gain in future profits while others will lose. In such a situation, the partner who gains by the change in the profit sharing ratio must compensate the partner who has made the sacrifice because this effectively amounts to one partner buying the share of profits from another partner. For example, Anu and Benu are partners in a firm sharing profits in the ratio of 3:2. They decide to have an equal share in profits in future. In this case, Anu loses  $\frac{1}{10}$ th ( $\frac{3}{5} - \frac{1}{2}$ ) share of profits and Benu gains this  $\frac{1}{10}$ th. Hence, Benu must compensate Anu for her loss in the share of future profits.

The amount of compensation will be equal to the proportionate amount of goodwill. Suppose, the total value of goodwill is ascertained as Rs. 50,000/-, then Benu must pay  $\frac{1}{10}$  of Rs. 50,000/-, i.e. Rs. 5,000 to Anu. Alternatively, Benu's Capital Account be debited by Rs 5,000 and Anu's Capital Account credited with Rs. 5,000. The entry, thus, will be :

Benu's Capital a/c	Dr.	5,000
Anu's Capital a/c		5,000

Alternatively, if the amount is paid privately by the gaining partner to the other partner, then no entry is made in the books of the firm.

Apart from the payment of compensation for goodwill, the change in profit sharing ratio may also necessitate adjustment in the partners' capital accounts with regard to reserves, revaluation of assets and liabilities, etc. These are similar to those made at the time of the admission or retirement of a partner. All these aspects will be discussed in details in chapter dealing with admission of a partner.

A change in profit sharing ratio can occur when a new partner is admitted, a partner retires or dies, or when there is a general agreement among the partners. It can also be due to other factors, such as:

- Changes in contribution levels
- Business expansion
- Market trends
- Discrepancies in contributions
- The need to incentivize specific behaviors or investments
- A desire to better align the distribution of profits with the evolving goals and strategies of the partnership

## CHAPTER –VII JOINT LIFE POLICY

Dr. R. Selvaraj, *Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

A life assurance policy obtained jointly on the lives of the members of a partnership firm is called a joint life policy. Since the firm has an insurable interest in the lives of its members, hence to make finances available for payment to the retiring partner on his retirement or to the legal heirs of the deceased partner, it obtains a joint life policy. The payment for the policy may be made either privately by the partners or by the firm. The joint life policy matures on the death of any one of the partners or on the expiry of the time for which it is obtained. Maturity of the policy means that the insurance company becomes liable to pay the sum assured to the firm either on the death of a partner or on the expiry of the time whichever happens earlier.

### *Accounting Treatment*

The premium on the joint life policy may be paid either privately by the partners or by the firm. When the premium is paid privately by the partners then no accounting treatment is required in the books of the firm. But when the premium is paid out of the firm's cash then the transactions relating to joint life policy will be shown in the books of the firm. The treatment of joint life policy in the books of the firm will depend upon the fact whether the premium paid has been considered as revenue expenditure or capital expenditure.

When premium paid is considered by the firm as a revenue expenditure then it opens in its books an account called 'Joint Life Policy Premium Account'. Premium paid annually is debited to this account and credited to cash account. At the end of the year the premium paid is transferred to joint life policy account. These two entries of payment of premium and its writing off to profit and loss account are recorded every year. On maturity of the policy the maturity amount received from the insurance company is credited to the capital accounts of all the partners including the retiring/deceased partner in their profit sharing ratio.

When premium paid is considered as a capital expenditure then the firm opens in its books 'Joint Life Policy Account' which is an asset account.

Premium paid is debited to this account and credited to bank account. At the end of the year the 'Joint Life Policy Premium Account' is reduced to surrender value by debiting the difference between the premium paid and surrender value. Surrender value is that amount of money which the insurance company pays to the policy holders in the event of surrendering the policy to the insurance company before the date of its maturity. At the time of maturity of the policy a joint life policy account is credited with an amount which is equal to the claim receivable from the insurance company. Afterwards the joint life policy account is closed by transferring its balance to the capital accounts of all the partners in their profit sharing agreement.

The treatment of Joint Life Policy has been discussed in detail in the chapter on retirement/death of a partner.

A joint life insurance policy is a single policy that covers two people, typically a couple, for the cost of one premium. It pays a death benefit when one of the people dies, and the surviving person receives a lump sum of money.

## CHAPTER –VIII REVALUATION OF ASSETS AND LIABILITIES VALUE

Dr. R. Selvaraj, *Department of Commerce,*  
*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology (PRIST)*

The value of Assets and Liabilities undergoes a change with the passage of time due to many reasons, like regular wear and tear, appreciation in the value of assets, bankruptcy of any debtor, and so on. In the Partnership firm, whenever there is a change in the profit-sharing ratio among the partners, it becomes necessary to revalue the assets and reassess the liabilities of the firm to ascertain the current value of these. The Revaluation of Assets and Reassessment of Liabilities are done because of any change in the value of the assets and liabilities that belong to the period prior to the change in the profit-sharing ratio. Therefore, any increase or decrease in the value of the assets and liabilities shall be shared among the partners in their old profit-sharing ratio. The Revaluation of Assets and Liabilities are recorded in a separate account named as “**Revaluation Account**” or “**Profit and loss Adjustment Account**”.

### Meaning:

With time it becomes essential to revise the value of the assets and liabilities to ascertain the current value of these assets and liabilities because the actual value may differ from the value mentioned in the firm’s balance sheet. This act of revising the value of the assets and liabilities is called **the Revaluation of Assets and Liabilities**.

### Nature:

The nature of the Revaluation Account is that of a **Nominal Account**. Any increase in the value of assets or decrease in the value of liabilities is considered a profit for the firm. The differential amount is recorded on the credit side of the revaluation account. Similarly, any decrease in the value of assets or increase in the value of liabilities is a loss for the firm, and the differential value is debited to the revaluation account.

### Explanation of certain words used in revaluation:

- **Increased To/ Raised To:** This means the value of the asset or liability has been increased to the adjustment amount. The value recorded in the revaluation account is the difference between the adjustment amount and the amount shown in the balance sheet and the adjustment amount is recorded in the balance sheet.

- **Increased By/ Raised By:** This means the differential amount is already given in the adjustment, which is to be recorded, as it is in the revaluation account and is added to the value of assets and liabilities in the balance sheet.

- **Decreased To/ Written down To:** This means the value of the asset or liability has been reduced to the adjustment amount. The difference between the adjustment amount and the amount shown in the balance sheet is shown on the correct side of the revaluation account, and the adjustment amount is recorded in the balance sheet.

- **Decreased By/ Written down By:** This means the differential amount is already given in the adjustment, which is to be recorded, as it is in the revaluation account and is deducted from the value of assets and liabilities in the balance sheet.

- **Valued At/ Taken At:** This means the amount given in the adjustment is the value of the assets or liability. If such asset or liability is unrecorded, then the total amount of adjustment is recorded on the correct side of the revaluation account and in the balance sheet as well.

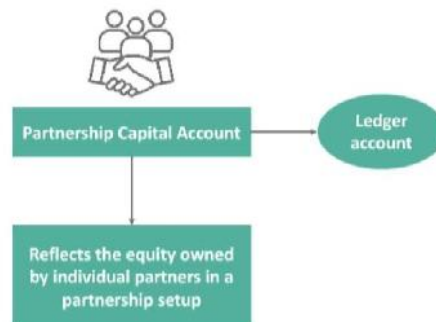


## CHAPTER –IX PREPARATION OF CAPITAL ACCOUNT FOR PARTNERS IN FIRM

*Dr. S. Rajendran, Department of Commerce,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

### What is a Partnership Capital Account?

A partnership capital account is an account that contains all the transactions occurring between the partners and the partnership firm, such as the initial contribution of capital in partnership, the interest of capital paid, drawings, the share of profit, and other adjustments. It is required to maintain proper accountability and transparency between the partners and the firm.



It records different types of transactions. While the opening balance of the account is equal to the contribution that each partner makes in the firm, the ending balance obtained after recording the details is the amount that each partner in the partnership set up is meant to receive.

### Partnership Capital Account Explained

A partnership capital account is an account in which all the transactions between the partners and the firm are to be recorded. It maintains records of different types of transactions, which include:

- The contributions by partners to the firm. Starting from the initial contribution to the subsequent ones, each and every transaction detail is recorded. The partners can either make contributions in the form of cash or market value of the assets.
- The account also records the profits made and losses incurred by the business. It determines the allocation of the same based on the specified proportions of the partners based on the partnership agreement.
- Lastly, the account also clears the picture, indicating the distributions to be made to the partners based on their shares.

With the preparation of the partnership capital account, it becomes easy to distribute the assets and liabilities to the partners and becomes easy to settle the account at the time of admission or retirement of partners. But in the case of a partnership other than a limited liability partnership, the capital account becomes useless as the partners have to pay from the personal estate in case assets are less than liabilities, and the capital account cannot be enforced for limitation of liability. Moreover, the basis of the partnership can be changed with the transactions like salary and interest to partners, which can sometimes create conflicts between the partners.

A **business entity** in which two or more persons doing business together agree to share the profits arising from business in the pre-defined profit ratio as partners is called the partnership firm. The partnership agreement can be oral as well as written. The profit-sharing can also be based on capital contribution or mutually decided.

## CHAPTER –X TREATMENT OF UNRECORDED ASSETS AND LIABILITIES

*Dr. S. Rajendran, Department of Commerce,  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science & Technology(PRIST)*

Certain end-of-period adjustments must be made when you close your books. Adjusting entries are made at the end of an accounting period to account for items that don't get recorded in your daily transactions. In a traditional accounting system, adjusting entries are made in a general journal.

Some adjusting entries are straightforward. Others require judgment and some accounting knowledge. You will have to decide if you are going to tackle some or all adjusting entries, or if you want your accountant to do them. If your accountant prepares adjusting entries, he or she should give you a copy of these entries so that you can enter them in your general ledger.

The following might require adjusting journal entries:

- Accrue wages earned by employees but not yet paid to them
- Accrue employer share of FICA taxes due
- Accrue property taxes
- Record interest expense paid on a mortgage or loan and update the loan balance
- Record prepaid insurance
- Adjust your books for inventory on hand at period end
- Accrue interest income earned but not yet received
- Record depreciation expense
- Adjust for bad debts
- Accrue dividends payable if a corporation
- Accrue income taxes payable if a corporation
- Account for the sale of fixed assets
- Set up accounts receivable balance if your day-to-day books are maintained on a cash basis
- Set up accounts payable balance if your day-to-day books are maintained on a cash basis

After all adjusting entries are made, do the following to complete your books for the accounting period:

1. Foot the general journal.
2. Post the general journal totals to the general ledger.
3. Foot the general ledger accounts to arrive at the final, adjusted balance for each account.
4. Prepare an adjusted trial balance using the general ledger balances.
5. Prepare financial statements using the adjusted trial balance.

Accommodating accruing wages payable

If you have employees, chances are you owe them a certain amount of wages at the end of an accounting period. If so, an adjusting entry is required in your general journal.

Example

On December 31, 2013, you owe your employees one week of salary that will be paid on January 7, 2014. The gross wages for that week are \$1,512.00. Make the following general journal entry:

	<i>Debit</i>	<i>Credit</i>
Wages expense	1,512	
Accrued wages		1,512
To accrue wages owed but unpaid on 12/31/2013.		



# POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS

EDITED BY

**DR.J.SANJEEVIKUMAR**



978-93-6255-476-5

Power system analysis  
Copyright © 2019 by Dr.J.Sanjeevikumar

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-476-5

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Date of Publication : 13.10.19

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	<b>12</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1 - Power system introduction</b>	-	<b>27</b>
Mr.R.Elangovan		
<b>CHAPTER 2 – Power flow analysis</b>	-	<b>48</b>
Mr.J. Vivek Raja		
<b>CHAPTER 3 - Symmetrical fault analysis</b>	-	<b>72</b>
Mr.J. Vivek Raja		
<b>CHAPTER 4 - unsymmetrical fault analysis</b>	-	<b>90</b>
Mr.D.Hariharan		
<b>CHAPTER 5 - Stability analysis</b>	-	<b>102</b>
Mr.B.Arunpandiyan		
<b>CHAPTER 6 - Symmetrical Components</b>	-	<b>113</b>
Mr.B.Arunpandiyan		
<b>CHAPTER 7 - Three-Phase Networks</b>	-	<b>124</b>
Mr.B.Arunpandiyan		
<b>CHAPTER 8 - Lines and Loads</b>	-	<b>136</b>
Mr.B.Arunpandiyan		
<b>CHAPTER 9 - Short Circuit Analysis</b>	-	<b>154</b>
Mr.B.Arunpandiyan		
<b>CHAPTER 10 - Power System Stability</b>	-	<b>167</b>
Mr.B.Arunpandiyan		
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>185</b>

# CHAPTER 1

## Power system introduction

Mr.R.Elangovan

A power system is a complex network that generates, transmits, and distributes electrical power to end users. It involves multiple components working together to deliver reliable and efficient electricity from generation sources to homes, businesses, and industries. Here's an overview of the key elements and concepts associated with power systems:

### 1. Components of Power Systems

#### 1.1 Generation

- **Purpose:** To produce electrical power from various energy sources.
- **Types of Power Plants:**
  - **Thermal Power Plants:** Use heat energy from burning fossil fuels (coal, oil, gas) or nuclear reactions to generate steam that drives turbines connected to generators.
  - **Hydroelectric Power Plants:** Use the energy of flowing or falling water to drive turbines.
  - **Renewable Energy Sources:** Include wind turbines, solar panels, geothermal plants, and biomass facilities.
  - **Combined Heat and Power (CHP):** Systems that simultaneously produce electricity and useful heat from the same energy source.

#### 1.2 Transmission

- **Purpose:** To transport electrical power over long distances from generation sites to distribution networks.
- **Components:**
  - **High-Voltage Transmission Lines:** Carry electricity at high voltages to reduce losses over long distances.
  - **Transformers:** Step up voltage for transmission and step down voltage for distribution.
  - **Substations:** Facilitate the transition between transmission and distribution systems, and provide switching and protection functions.

#### 1.3 Distribution

- **Purpose:** To deliver electricity from transmission networks to end consumers.
- **Components:**
  - **Distribution Lines:** Carry electricity at lower voltages to homes and businesses.
  - **Distribution Transformers:** Step down the voltage from distribution lines to usable levels for end users.
  - **Circuit Breakers and Switchgear:** Protect and control the distribution system.

#### 1.4 Utilization

- **Purpose:** To provide electrical power to end users for various applications.
- **Components:**
  - **Residential:** Includes household appliances, lighting, and HVAC systems.
  - **Commercial:** Includes office buildings, retail stores, and public facilities.
  - **Industrial:** Includes manufacturing equipment, process controls, and large machinery.

## CHAPTER 2

### Power flow analysis

Mr.J. Vivek Raja

Power flow analysis, also known as load flow analysis, is a critical study in power system engineering. It involves determining the voltages, currents, and power flows throughout a power system under steady-state conditions. This analysis is essential for designing, operating, and optimizing power systems to ensure efficient and reliable electricity delivery. Here's a detailed overview of power flow analysis:

#### 1. Objectives of Power Flow Analysis

1. **Determine Voltage Profiles:** Calculate the voltage magnitude and angle at different buses (nodes) in the system.
2. **Calculate Power Flows:** Determine the real (active) and reactive power flowing through each transmission line.
3. **Assess System Performance:** Evaluate system performance under various loading conditions and operating scenarios.
4. **Identify Problem Areas:** Pinpoint potential issues such as voltage drops, overloads, and reliability concerns.
5. **Optimize System Operation:** Support decisions on generation dispatch, load distribution, and system upgrades.

#### 1. Importance of Power Flow Analysis

##### 1.1 Planning and Operation

- **System Expansion:** Helps in planning the expansion of power systems by determining how new loads or generation sources affect the existing network.
- **Optimal Operation:** Assists in the efficient operation of existing systems by optimizing control settings and operational parameters.

##### 1.2 Performance Evaluation

- **Voltage Levels:** Determines voltage magnitudes and angles at various buses to ensure they stay within acceptable limits.
- **Power Flows:** Calculates real and reactive power flows through lines and transformers to ensure no component is overloaded.

##### 1.3 Losses and Efficiency

- **System Losses:** Identifies total system losses and individual line losses, aiding in minimizing energy losses and improving efficiency.
- **Voltage Regulation:** Optimizes transformer tap settings and other control measures to maintain desired voltage levels at critical locations.

$$P_i \text{ (real power)} = |V_i| \sum_{k=1}^n |V_k| |Y_{ik}| \cos (\theta_{ik} + \delta_k - \delta_i); \quad (6.27)$$

$i = 1, 2, \dots, n$

$$Q_i \text{ (reactive power)} = - |V_i| \sum_{k=1}^n |V_k| |Y_{ik}| \sin (\theta_{ik} + \delta_k - \delta_i); \quad (6.28)$$

$i = 1, 2, \dots, n$

# CHAPTER 3

## Symmetrical fault analysis

Mr.J. Vivek Raja

### Symmetrical Fault Analysis

Symmetrical fault analysis, also known as three-phase fault analysis, is a fundamental aspect of power system protection and stability studies. It involves analyzing faults where all three phases are involved equally, and the fault occurs in a symmetrical manner across the three phases. These types of faults are critical because they usually result in the highest current levels and the most severe system disturbances.

---

## 1. Overview of Symmetrical Faults

### 1.1 Definition

A symmetrical fault is a type of fault in which all three phases of a power system are equally involved. The most common type of symmetrical fault is the three-phase short circuit. In such faults, the impedance between phases is zero or very close to zero, leading to very high fault currents.

### 1.2 Characteristics

- **Equal Distribution:** All three phases are equally affected.
- **Highest Fault Currents:** Symmetrical faults produce the highest current levels compared to other types of faults (e.g., single-line-to-ground, line-to-line, or double-line-to-ground faults).
- **Simplified Analysis:** Due to the symmetry, the analysis can be more straightforward compared to unsymmetrical faults.

---

## 2. Symmetrical Fault Analysis

### 2.1 Sequence Networks

To analyze symmetrical faults, sequence networks are used, which simplify the analysis by decomposing the system into symmetrical components. For symmetrical faults, only the positive sequence network is relevant.

- **Positive Sequence Network:** Represents the normal operating condition of the system.
- **Negative and Zero Sequence Networks:** Not involved in symmetrical faults but are crucial for analyzing unsymmetrical faults.

### 2.2 Fault Calculation Steps

1. **Determine Pre-Fault Conditions:** Obtain the pre-fault voltage and current values for the system.
2. **Convert to Per-Unit System:** Normalize all system values (voltages, currents, impedances) to a common base using the per-unit system.
3. **Set Up the Fault Condition:** For a three-phase fault, the impedance between the faulted phases is assumed to be zero.



# CHAPTER 4

## unsymmetrical fault analysis

Mr.D.Hariharan

Unsymmetrical fault analysis, also known as asymmetrical fault analysis, focuses on faults that do not involve all three phases equally. These faults can be more complex than symmetrical faults due to their uneven nature and varying impacts on the power system. Common types of unsymmetrical faults include single-line-to-ground faults, line-to-line faults, and double-line-to-ground faults.

### 1. Types of Unsymmetrical Faults

#### 1.1 Single-Line-to-Ground Fault (LG Fault)

- **Description:** A fault where one phase (line) comes into contact with the ground or earth.
- **Impact:** Causes a high current to flow through the faulted phase and can cause significant voltage dips in the affected phase.

#### 1.2 Line-to-Line Fault (LL Fault)

- **Description:** A fault involving a short circuit between two phases (lines), without involving the ground.
- **Impact:** Results in high current flow between the two faulted phases and affects the voltages of those phases.

#### 1.3 Double-Line-to-Ground Fault (LLG Fault)

- **Description:** A fault involving a short circuit between two phases and the ground.
- **Impact:** Causes high current flow through the faulted phases and significant voltage imbalances.

### 2. Unsymmetrical Fault Analysis

#### 2.1 Sequence Components

Unsymmetrical fault analysis is typically performed using sequence components, which decompose the faulted system into three sets of balanced components: positive sequence, negative sequence, and zero sequence. This method simplifies the analysis of unbalanced faults.

- **Positive Sequence Components:** Represent the balanced, normal operating condition of the system.
- **Negative Sequence Components:** Represent the unbalanced conditions caused by faults and disturbances.
- **Zero Sequence Components:** Represent the fault conditions involving ground or neutral.

#### 2.2 Analysis Steps

1. **Determine Pre-Fault Conditions:** Obtain the system's pre-fault voltage and current values.
2. **Convert to Sequence Networks:** Convert the system to its sequence networks:
  - **Positive Sequence Network:** Represents the normal system behavior.
  - **Negative Sequence Network:** Used to analyze the impact of unbalanced faults

# CHAPTER 5

## Stability analysis

Mr.B.Arunpandiyam

### STABILITY ANALYSIS IN POWER SYSTEMS

Stability analysis is a crucial aspect of power system operation and control, focusing on the ability of a power system to return to a normal operating state after being subjected to disturbances. Stability refers to the system's capacity to maintain synchronism and stability under various conditions, including faults, load changes, and generation variations.

#### 1. Types of Stability

##### 1.1 Transient Stability

- **Definition:** The ability of a power system to maintain synchronism when subjected to a large disturbance, such as a fault or sudden change in generation or load.
- **Analysis:** Involves examining the system's response immediately after the disturbance and determining whether it can return to a stable operating condition.
- **Methods:** Time-domain simulations are commonly used to study transient stability. Techniques include solving differential equations representing the dynamic behavior of generators, loads, and control systems.

##### 1.2 Steady-State Stability

- **Definition:** The ability of a power system to maintain synchronism and stability under small, gradual changes in load or generation.
- **Analysis:** Focuses on the system's response to gradual changes rather than sudden disturbances. This includes the ability to maintain voltage and frequency stability.
- **Methods:** Typically involves linearized models and power flow analysis to study the impact of small perturbations.

##### 1.3 Dynamic Stability

- **Definition:** The ability of a power system to maintain stable operation over time in the presence of small disturbances and oscillations.
- **Analysis:** Examines the system's response to small, continuous disturbances and oscillations, including damping of oscillatory modes.
- **Methods:** Dynamic simulations and eigenvalue analysis are used to assess the system's response to perturbations and its ability to dampen oscillations.

#### 2. Stability Analysis Methods

##### 2.1 Time-Domain Simulation

- **Purpose:** To study the system's response to disturbances over time.
- **Procedure:**
  1. **Model Development:** Develop detailed models of the power system, including generators, transformers, transmission lines, and control systems.
  2. **Disturbance Application:** Simulate disturbances, such as faults or sudden load changes.
  3. **Simulation:** Run simulations to observe the system's response and evaluate if it returns to a stable operating point.

# CHAPTER 6

## Symmetrical Components

Mr.B.Arunpandiyam

Symmetrical components are a powerful mathematical technique used in electrical engineering to simplify the analysis of unbalanced three-phase systems. They decompose an unbalanced system into simpler, balanced components, making it easier to analyze and understand complex phenomena like faults and transients. Here's a detailed overview:

### 1. Concept of Symmetrical Components

#### a. Three-Phase Systems

- A three-phase system consists of three sinusoidal voltages or currents, each 120 degrees out of phase with the others. Ideally, these phases are balanced, meaning they have equal magnitudes and are symmetrically spaced.

#### b. Unbalanced Systems

- In real-world scenarios, the system can become unbalanced due to various factors such as load imbalances, line faults, or asymmetrical generation.

#### c. Symmetrical Components

- The concept of symmetrical components allows you to decompose an unbalanced system into three balanced systems, each corresponding to a different component:
  - **Positive-Sequence Components**
  - **Negative-Sequence Components**
  - **Zero-Sequence Components**

### 2. Positive-Sequence Components

#### a. Definition

- Represent a balanced set of three-phase voltages or currents that have the same phase sequence as the original system (e.g., ABC sequence).

#### b. Characteristics

- Balanced and symmetrical.
- Important for understanding the normal operating conditions of the system.

### 3. Negative-Sequence Components

#### a. Definition

- Represent a balanced set of three-phase voltages or currents that have the reverse phase sequence of the original system (e.g., ACB sequence).

#### b. Characteristics

- Indicate unbalanced conditions or disturbances in the system.
- Can cause adverse effects on equipment, such as overheating in motors.

### 4. Zero-Sequence Components

#### a. Definition

- Represent a set of three-phase voltages or currents that are equal in magnitude and phase (i.e., they are in phase with each other).

#### b. Characteristics

- Appear in systems with ground faults or unbalanced loads.
- Important for analyzing ground faults and neutral-grounding issues.

### 5. Mathematical Representation

#### a. Transformations

- **Clark's Transformation:** Converts three-phase quantities into two-phase ( $\alpha$ - $\beta$ ) quantities.
- **Park's Transformation:** Converts two-phase quantities into a rotating reference frame.
- **Symmetrical Component Transformation:** Decomposes three-phase quantities into symmetrical components.

# CHAPTER 7

## Three-Phase Networks

Mr.B.Arunpandiyan

Three-phase networks are a type of electrical power system that use three separate electrical circuits or phases, each with its own sinusoidal voltage waveform. These systems are widely used in power generation, transmission, and distribution due to their efficiency and balanced load characteristics. Here's an in-depth look at three-phase networks:

### 1. Basics of Three-Phase Networks

#### a. Three-Phase System

- A three-phase system consists of three alternating currents (or voltages) that are out of phase with each other by 120 degrees. This arrangement provides a constant power transfer and more efficient energy use compared to single-phase systems.

#### b. Phases

- **Phase A, Phase B, and Phase C:** The three phases are typically labeled A, B, and C or R, S, and T.

#### c. Waveforms

- Each phase generates a sinusoidal waveform that is 120 degrees apart from the others. This phase separation ensures a balanced load and consistent power delivery.

### 2. Types of Three-Phase Configurations

#### a. Star Configuration

- **Structure:** Each phase is connected to a common neutral point, forming a star shape.
- **Advantages:** Provides a neutral point for grounding and allows for both line-to-neutral and line-to-line voltage connections.
- **Voltages:** Line-to-neutral voltage is lower than line-to-line voltage.

#### b. Delta Configuration

- **Structure:** Each phase is connected end-to-end in a loop, forming a triangle or delta shape.
- **Advantages:** Provides higher line-to-line voltage and is robust for high power applications.
- **Voltages:** Line-to-line voltage is the same as phase voltage.

### 3. Line-to-Line and Line-to-Neutral Voltages

#### a. Line-to-Line Voltage ( $V_{LL}$ )

- The voltage measured between any two of the three phases.
- In a star configuration, it is higher than the line-to-neutral voltage by a factor.
- In a delta configuration, it is the same as the phase voltage.

#### b. Line-to-Neutral Voltage ( $V_{LN}$ )

- The voltage measured between any phase and the neutral point.
- In a star configuration, it is lower than the line-to-line voltage by a factor

### 5. Advantages of Three-Phase Systems

#### a. Efficiency

- More efficient power transmission and distribution due to constant power delivery and reduced conductor size for a given amount of power.

#### b. Balanced Loads

- Provides a balanced load across all three phases, reducing losses and improving system stability.

#### c. Smooth Operation

- The continuous power transfer ensures smoother operation of motors and other equipment.

# CHAPTER 8

## Lines and Loads

Mr.B.Arunpandiyan

In electrical engineering, the terms "lines" and "loads" refer to different components of an electrical power system. Understanding these components is essential for the design, operation, and maintenance of power systems. Here's a detailed look at both:

### 1. Lines

#### a. Definition

- **Lines** in an electrical power system refer to the conductors or cables that transport electrical power from one point to another. They can be part of a power transmission or distribution network.

#### b. Types of Lines

##### i. Transmission Lines

- **Purpose:** Carry high-voltage electricity over long distances from power plants to substations.
- **Characteristics:** Designed to minimize losses and handle high voltages (typically above 33kV).
- **Types:** Overhead transmission lines and underground cables.
- **Components:** Conductors, insulators, support structures (towers or poles), and protective devices (circuit breakers, relays).

##### ii. Distribution Lines

- **Purpose:** Deliver lower-voltage electricity from substations to end users (homes, businesses, and industries).
- **Characteristics:** Operate at lower voltages (typically below 33kV).
- **Types:** Overhead distribution lines and underground distribution cables.
- **Components:** Conductors, insulators, transformers (to step down voltage), and protective devices.

#### c. Types of Conductors

##### i. Overhead Conductors

- **Materials:** Typically made from aluminum or copper.
- **Design:** Designed for high mechanical strength and conductivity. Often supported by insulators.

##### ii. Underground Cables

- **Materials:** Insulated cables typically made of copper or aluminum.
- **Design:** Includes multiple layers of insulation and protective coatings to withstand environmental conditions.

#### d. Key Parameters

##### i. Voltage Rating

- Determines the maximum voltage the line can safely handle.

##### ii. Current Rating

- The maximum current the line can carry without overheating.

# CHAPTER 9

## Short Circuit Analysis

Mr.B.Arunpandiyam

Short circuit analysis is a critical process in electrical engineering used to evaluate the behavior of electrical systems during fault conditions, specifically when a short circuit occurs. A short circuit happens when there is an unintended low-resistance connection between two points in a circuit, causing excessive current flow. This analysis helps in designing protective devices, ensuring system reliability, and mitigating potential damage. Here's a comprehensive overview:

### 1. Purpose of Short Circuit Analysis

- **Determine Fault Currents:** Calculate the magnitude of currents during short circuit conditions.
- **Design Protection Systems:** Size and select protective devices like circuit breakers and fuses.
- **Ensure System Stability:** Evaluate the impact of faults on the stability of the power system.
- **Minimize Damage:** Assess potential damage to equipment and infrastructure.

### 2. Types of Short Circuits

#### a. Single-Line-to-Ground Fault

- Occurs when one phase conductor comes into contact with the ground or neutral point.
- Causes a high fault current that can affect equipment and stability.

#### b. Line-to-Line Fault

- Occurs when two phase conductors come into contact with each other.
- Causes significant fault currents and potential damage.

#### c. Double-Line-to-Ground Fault

- Occurs when two phase conductors come into contact with the ground simultaneously.
- Can cause severe fault conditions and system instability.

#### d. Three-Phase Fault

- Occurs when all three phase conductors come into contact with each other.
- Generally the most severe type of fault, but can be less frequent.

### 3. Methods of Short Circuit Analysis

#### a. Per-Unit System

- **Definition:** A normalization technique to simplify calculations by expressing quantities as a fraction of a base value.
- **Application:** Used to standardize system parameters and simplify fault analysis.

#### b. Symmetrical Components

- **Definition:** A mathematical technique used to decompose unbalanced systems into balanced components (positive-sequence, negative-sequence, and zero-sequence).
- **Application:** Facilitates the analysis of short circuits in three-phase systems.

#### c. Thevenin's and Norton's Theorems

- **Thevenin's Theorem:** Simplifies the network to a single voltage source and series resistance.
- **Norton's Theorem:** Simplifies the network to a single current source and parallel resistance.

# CHAPTER 10

## Power System Stability

Mr.B.Arunpandiyan

Power system stability is a crucial aspect of electrical engineering that ensures the reliable and continuous operation of electrical power systems despite disturbances or changes in system conditions. It involves maintaining the system's ability to return to a steady state after experiencing disturbances such as faults, load changes, or sudden generation losses. Here's a comprehensive overview of power system stability:

### 1. Definition and Importance

#### a. Definition

- **Power System Stability:** The ability of a power system to maintain synchronism and return to a stable operating condition following a disturbance or perturbation. Stability ensures that the system can withstand and recover from various disturbances without experiencing widespread blackouts or operational issues.

#### b. Importance

- **Reliability:** Ensures continuous power supply and prevents outages.
- **Security:** Protects against system-wide failures and maintains the integrity of power delivery.
- **Efficiency:** Enhances the performance of the power system by ensuring optimal operation and minimizing losses.

### 2. Types of Power System Stability

#### a. Transient Stability

- **Definition:** The ability of the power system to remain in synchronism and return to a stable operating point following a large, short-term disturbance, such as a short circuit or sudden loss of generation.
- **Characteristics:** Concerned with the immediate response of the system after the disturbance and the ability to regain stability within a few seconds to minutes.
- **Analysis:** Involves simulation of dynamic responses to disturbances and the impact on generator and load behavior.

#### b. Small-Signal Stability

- **Definition:** The ability of the power system to maintain stability under small disturbances or perturbations, such as gradual load changes or small variations in system conditions.
- **Characteristics:** Concerned with the system's response to minor disturbances over a longer period (seconds to minutes) and its ability to return to a steady-state operation.
- **Analysis:** Involves linearizing the system and analyzing eigenvalues to determine system damping and response.

#### c. Voltage Stability

- **Definition:** The ability of the power system to maintain acceptable voltage levels throughout the network during disturbances or changes in system conditions.
- **Characteristics:** Focuses on preventing voltage collapse or excessive voltage drops due to changes in load, generation, or system configuration.
- **Analysis:** Involves assessing voltage profiles, reactive power support, and load behavior.



# TRANSMISSION AND DISTRIBUTION

*Edited by*  
**MR.D. HARIHARAN**



978-93-6255-638-7



Transmission and distribution  
Copyright © 2019 by Mr.D. Hariharan

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-638-7

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Date of Publication : 14.08.19

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	<b>12</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1 - Transmission line parameters</b>	-	<b>27</b>
Mr.D.Hariharan		
<b>CHAPTER 2 – Modeling and performance of transmission lines</b>	-	<b>48</b>
Mr.B.Arunpandiyan		
<b>CHAPTER 3 - SAG calculation and line support</b>	-	<b>72</b>
Mr.D.Hariharan		
<b>CHAPTER 4 - Under ground cables`</b>	-	<b>90</b>
Mr.D.Hariharan		
<b>CHAPTER 5 - Distribution systems</b>	-	<b>102</b>
Mr.D.Hariharan		
<b>CHAPTER 6 - Insulators</b>	-	<b>110</b>
Mr.D.Hariharan		
<b>CHAPTER 7 - Substation Building Services</b>	-	<b>115</b>
Mr.B.Arunpandiyan		
<b>CHAPTER 8 - Earthing and Bonding</b>	-	<b>123</b>
Mr.D.Hariharan		
<b>CHAPTER 9 - Relay Protection</b>	-	<b>134</b>
Mr.D.Hariharan		
<b>CHAPTER 10 - Cables</b>	-	<b>151</b>
Mr.D.Hariharan		
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>169</b>

# CHAPTER 1

## Transmission line parameters

Mr.D.Hariharan

Transmission line parameters are essential for understanding and analyzing the performance of electrical transmission lines. These parameters describe how the line conducts electricity and how it interacts with the electrical and magnetic fields around it. The key transmission line parameters include resistance, inductance, capacitance, and conductance. Here's an overview of these parameters:

### 1. Resistance (R)

- **Definition:** Resistance is the opposition to the flow of electric current through the transmission line.
- **Factors Influencing Resistance:**
  - **Conductor Material:** Typically copper or aluminum. Copper has lower resistance than aluminum.
  - **Conductor Size:** Larger conductors have lower resistance.
  - **Temperature:** Resistance increases with temperature.
- **Expression:** Resistance per unit length is denoted by  $R$  and measured in ohms per kilometer ( $\Omega/\text{km}$ ).

### 2. Inductance (L)

- **Definition:** Inductance is the property of the transmission line that opposes changes in current flow and causes the line to store energy in a magnetic field.
- **Factors Influencing Inductance:**
  - **Conductor Spacing:** Increased spacing between conductors reduces mutual inductance.
  - **Conductor Configuration:** Conductor arrangement (e.g., bundled conductors) affects inductance.
- **Expression:** Inductance per unit length is denoted by  $L$  and measured in henries per kilometer ( $\text{H}/\text{km}$ ).

### 3. Capacitance (C)

- **Definition:** Capacitance is the property of the transmission line that stores energy in an electric field between conductors.
- **Factors Influencing Capacitance:**
  - **Conductor Spacing:** Increased spacing between conductors decreases capacitance.
  - **Conductor Size:** Larger conductors have higher capacitance.
  - **Insulation Material:** The dielectric material between conductors affects capacitance.
- **Expression:** Capacitance per unit length is denoted by  $C$  and measured in farads per kilometer ( $\text{F}/\text{km}$ ).

### 4. Conductance (G)

- **Definition:** Conductance is the measure of how easily the transmission line allows current to leak between conductors, primarily through the insulation or between the line and the ground.
- **Factors Influencing Conductance:**
  - **Insulation Quality:** Better insulation materials reduce conductance.
  - **Environmental Conditions:** Moisture and pollution can increase conductance.

# CHAPTER 2

## Modeling and performance of transmission lines

Mr.B.Arunpandiyan

Modeling and analyzing the performance of transmission lines are essential for ensuring efficient and reliable power transmission. Transmission lines are typically modeled based on their length and electrical characteristics, and various performance metrics are evaluated to ensure they meet operational requirements. Here's an overview of the key aspects of transmission line modeling and performance evaluation:

### 1. Transmission Line Models

Transmission line models represent the electrical characteristics of the transmission line and help analyze how the line will behave under different conditions. The choice of model depends on the length of the transmission line and the accuracy required.

#### 1.1 Short-Line Model

- **Applicable For:** Short transmission lines (typically less than 250 km).
- **Model:** Represents the line with lumped series impedance and neglects the shunt admittance.

#### 1.2 Medium-Line Model (Nominal-T Model)

- **Applicable For:** Medium-length transmission lines (typically between 250 km and 600 km).
- **Model:** Accounts for both series impedance and shunt admittance, with the admittance split into two parts.

#### 1.3 Long-Line Model ( $\pi$ Model)

- **Applicable For:** Long transmission lines (typically over 600 km).
- **Model:** Represents the line with distributed parameters, including both series impedance and shunt admittance distributed along the line.

### 2. Transmission Line Performance Metrics

Performance metrics of transmission lines are used to evaluate their efficiency, stability, and reliability. Key metrics include:

#### 2.1 Voltage Regulation

- **Definition:** Voltage regulation measures the change in voltage at the receiving end of the transmission line when the load changes.

#### 2.2 Power Losses

- **Definition:** Power losses occur due to the resistance of the transmission line and are calculated as the power lost in the line.

#### 2.3 Power Transfer Capability

- **Definition:** The maximum amount of power that can be transmitted over the line without violating voltage and thermal limits.
- **Factors:**
  - **Thermal Limits:** Limited by the temperature rise in the conductors.
  - **Voltage Drop:** Limited by the acceptable voltage drop.

# CHAPTER 3

## SAG calculation and line support

Mr.D.Hariharan

SAG calculation and line support are critical aspects of designing and maintaining overhead transmission lines. They ensure that the power lines are properly supported and maintained at the correct height to avoid safety hazards and maintain system performance. Here's a detailed overview:

### 1. SAG Calculation

**SAG** is the vertical displacement of a power line from its highest point (the point of support) to its lowest point due to the weight of the conductor. Proper sag calculation is crucial for ensuring that the transmission line does not sag too much, potentially causing electrical faults or physical damage.

#### 1.1 Factors Affecting SAG

1. **Conductor Weight:** Heavier conductors cause more sag.
2. **Span Length:** Longer spans result in greater sag.
3. **Tension:** Higher tension in the conductor reduces sag.
4. **Temperature:** Temperature variations affect the conductor's length and tension.
5. **Wind and Ice Loading:** Additional loads from wind or ice can increase sag

### 2. Line Support

**Line supports** are structures that hold and support the overhead power lines. Proper design and placement of supports are crucial for maintaining line integrity and safety.

#### 2.1 Types of Line Supports

1. **Poles:** Typically made from wood, steel, or concrete, poles are used in shorter spans or lower voltage lines.
2. **Towers:** Used for longer spans and higher voltage lines, towers can be made from steel lattice structures or tubular steel.

#### 2.2 Key Design Considerations

1. **Height:** The height of the support must ensure adequate clearance from ground and other structures.
2. **Foundation:** The foundation must be robust enough to support the tower or pole and resist soil and wind loads.
3. **Spacing:** Supports must be spaced appropriately to maintain the desired sag and tension. The spacing depends on factors such as the conductor type, span length, and environmental conditions.
4. **Wind Load:** Supports must be designed to withstand wind loads, which can be significant, especially in stormy regions.
5. **Ice Load:** In regions prone to ice, additional loading calculations are required to account for ice accumulation on the conductors.

#### 2.3 Calculation of Support Loads

The loads on line supports include:

1. **Vertical Loads:** Weight of the conductors and any additional equipment.
2. **Horizontal Loads:** Wind loads on the conductors and towers.

# CHAPTER 4

## Under ground cables

Mr.D.Hariharan

Underground cables are essential components in modern power distribution systems, offering advantages such as improved aesthetics, reduced environmental impact, and greater reliability compared to overhead lines. Here's a comprehensive overview of underground cables, including their types, construction, installation, advantages, and maintenance considerations:

### 1. Types of Underground Cables

#### 1.1 Power Cables

- **Single-Core Cables:** Used for low-voltage and medium-voltage applications. Suitable for direct-buried installations or in ducts.
- **Multi-Core Cables:** Used for high-voltage and extra-high-voltage applications. Consist of multiple conductors, which can be either concentric or bundled.

#### 1.2 Communication Cables

- **Fiber Optic Cables:** Used for high-speed data transmission. Made from glass or plastic fibers and offer high bandwidth and low attenuation.
- **Coaxial Cables:** Used for television and internet services. Consist of a central conductor, dielectric insulator, shield, and outer jacket.

#### 1.3 Control Cables

- **Instrumentation Cables:** Used for transmitting signals from measurement instruments. Includes shielded twisted pairs to reduce interference.
- **Flexible Cables:** Used in applications requiring frequent movement, such as in cranes or robotics.

### 2. Construction of Underground Cables

#### 2.1 Conductor

- **Material:** Typically made of copper or aluminum.
- **Design:** Can be solid or stranded. Stranded conductors are more flexible and are used for larger cables.

#### 2.2 Insulation

- **Material:** Common insulation materials include PVC (Polyvinyl Chloride), XLPE (Cross-Linked Polyethylene), and EPR (Ethylene Propylene Rubber).
- **Purpose:** Insulation separates conductors from each other and from the ground, preventing electrical faults and leakage.

#### 2.3 Conductor Shielding

- **Material:** Typically made of a layer of semiconducting material.
- **Purpose:** Provides a uniform electric field and reduces stress on the insulation.

#### 2.4 Insulation Shielding

- **Material:** Usually consists of a layer of metallic foil or wires.
- **Purpose:** Protects the insulation from mechanical damage and reduces electromagnetic interference (EMI).

#### 2.5 Outer Jacket

- **Material:** Commonly made of PVC, PE (Polyethylene), or rubber.
- **Purpose:** Provides mechanical protection and environmental resistance, including protection from moisture and chemicals.

### 3. Installation of Underground Cables

#### 3.1 Trenching

- **Process:** A trench is dug to lay the cables. The depth and width of the trench depend on the cable type and local regulations.

# CHAPTER 5

## Distribution systems

Mr.D.Hariharan

Distribution systems are the final stage in the delivery of electrical power from generation sources to end-users. They are designed to distribute electricity efficiently and reliably across residential, commercial, and industrial areas. Here's a comprehensive overview of distribution systems, including their types, components, design considerations, and operational aspects:

### 1. Overview of Distribution Systems

#### 1.1 Purpose

- **Objective:** To deliver electrical power from the transmission network to the end consumers while maintaining voltage and power quality within acceptable limits.
- **Scope:** Includes medium-voltage and low-voltage networks that connect substations to homes, businesses, and industries.

### 2. Types of Distribution Systems

#### 2.1 Radial Distribution System

- **Configuration:** Power flows in a single direction from the substation through a series of feeders to consumers.
- **Advantages:**
  - Simple design and easy to implement.
  - Lower initial cost.
- **Disadvantages:**
  - Limited reliability; if a fault occurs on a feeder, it can interrupt service to all consumers downstream.
  - Difficult to restore service quickly after a fault.

#### 2.2 Ring Main Distribution System

- **Configuration:** Power flows in a loop or ring, with multiple feeders connected end-to-end. The loop is typically closed, allowing power to flow in either direction.
- **Advantages:**
  - Improved reliability; if a fault occurs on one section, power can be rerouted through another path.
  - Easier to isolate faults and restore service quickly.
- **Disadvantages:**
  - More complex and expensive to design and maintain.
  - Requires more sophisticated protection systems.

#### 2.3 Network Distribution System

- **Configuration:** Features multiple interconnected feeders and substations, forming a network of power paths.
- **Advantages:**
  - High reliability and flexibility; power can be supplied from multiple sources.
  - Efficient for large urban areas with complex load demands.
- **Disadvantages:**

## CHAPTER 6

### Insulators

Mr.D.Hariharan

Insulators are materials that resist the flow of electric current or heat. They play crucial roles in various applications:

1. **Electrical Insulators:** These materials prevent the unwanted flow of electric current. They are used in electrical wiring, cables, and components to ensure safety and efficiency. Common electrical insulators include rubber, glass, and certain plastics.
2. **Thermal Insulators:** These materials reduce the transfer of heat. They are used in building construction, refrigeration, and various industrial processes. Examples include fiberglass, foam, and wool.

Insulators are essential for maintaining safety, improving energy efficiency, and ensuring the reliable operation of electrical and thermal systems.

#### 1. Electrical Insulators

- **Purpose:** Prevent the flow of electrical current and protect against electric shocks.
- **Materials:**
  - **Ceramics** (e.g., porcelain): Used in high-voltage applications.
  - **Rubber:** Commonly used in insulating electrical wires and cables.
  - **Plastic:** Versatile and used in various electrical components.
  - **Glass:** Used in certain high-voltage insulators and as a coating material.

#### 2. Thermal Insulators

- **Purpose:** Reduce the transfer of heat between objects or environments.
- **Materials:**
  - **Fiberglass:** Used in building insulation and thermal blankets.
  - **Foam** (e.g., polyurethane, polystyrene): Used in insulation panels and in refrigeration.
  - **Mineral Wool:** Made from rocks or slag, used in building construction.
  - **Aerogels:** Extremely lightweight materials used in specialized applications.

#### 3. Mechanical Insulators

- **Purpose:** Reduce vibration and noise.
- **Materials:**
  - **Rubber:** Often used in mounts and pads to dampen vibrations.
  - **Cork:** Used in various applications to reduce noise and vibrations.

#### Applications:

- **Building Construction:** Insulators help in maintaining temperature, reducing energy costs, and improving comfort.
- **Electronics:** Ensure the safe operation of devices and prevent short circuits.
- **Industrial Processes:** Manage heat transfer and protect sensitive equipment.



# CHAPTER 7

## Substation Building Services

Mr.B.Arunpandiyan

Substation building services are critical for the effective and safe operation of electrical substations, which are facilities that step up or step down electrical voltage and distribute electrical power. Here's an overview of the key building services typically involved:

### 1. Electrical Systems

- **Power Supply:** Reliable power sources are essential for substation operations, including backup power systems such as generators and uninterruptible power supplies (UPS).
- **Lighting:** Adequate lighting for safety and operational efficiency, including emergency lighting for critical areas.
- **Control Systems:** Advanced control systems for monitoring and managing electrical equipment and ensuring stable operations.

### 2. Cooling and Ventilation

- **HVAC Systems:** Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning systems to maintain optimal temperature and humidity levels for both personnel and sensitive equipment.
- **Cooling Systems:** Specialized cooling systems, such as air conditioning units or cooling fans, to manage heat generated by transformers and other equipment.

### 3. Fire Protection

- **Fire Detection:** Smoke detectors, heat detectors, and other fire alarm systems to detect and alert on potential fires.
- **Fire Suppression:** Fire extinguishers, sprinkler systems, and gas suppression systems (like CO2 or FM-200) to control or extinguish fires.
- **Fire Doors and Barriers:** Fire-resistant doors and barriers to contain and prevent the spread of fire.

### 4. Safety and Security

- **Surveillance Systems:** CCTV cameras and monitoring systems for security and safety of the substation.
- **Access Control:** Systems to manage and restrict access to authorized personnel only, including card readers or biometric scanners.
- **Grounding and Earthing:** Systems to ensure safety by preventing electric shock and protecting equipment from electrical faults.

### 5. Structural and Civil Works

- **Building Construction:** Robust construction to support heavy equipment and withstand environmental conditions.
- **Drainage Systems:** Proper drainage to manage stormwater and prevent flooding within the substation area.
- **Landscaping:** Landscaping and site management to prevent erosion and maintain access routes.

### 6. Communication Systems

- **Internal Communication:** Intercoms and communication systems for coordinating activities within the substation.
- **External Communication:** Systems for remote monitoring and control, including telemetry and SCADA (Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition) systems.

### 7. Maintenance and Access

- **Maintenance Facilities:** Areas for the maintenance and repair of equipment, including workshops and storage for tools and spare parts.
- **Access Routes:** Designated pathways and access points for maintenance personnel and equipment, ensuring safe and efficient operation.

# CHAPTER 8

## Earthing and Bonding

Mr.D.Hariharan

Earthing (or grounding) and bonding are crucial practices in electrical systems to ensure safety, equipment protection, and system reliability. Here's an overview of both:

### Earthing (Grounding)

#### Purpose:

- **Safety:** Protects people from electric shocks by providing a safe path for fault currents to dissipate into the earth.
- **Equipment Protection:** Prevents damage to electrical devices by ensuring fault currents are safely directed away.
- **System Stability:** Helps in maintaining system voltages and ensures the proper operation of protective devices.

#### Key Concepts:

- **Earth Electrode:** A conductive element (such as a rod, plate, or grid) buried in the ground that is connected to the electrical system to provide a path for fault currents.
- **Earth Fault:** Occurs when a live conductor comes into contact with the ground or an earthed part, potentially creating a hazardous situation if not properly managed.

#### Types of Earthing Systems:

1. **TT System:** The electrical installation is earthed independently of the supply system's earth.
2. **TN System:** The neutral point of the supply system is connected to earth, and the installation's earth is connected to this neutral.
3. **IT System:** The supply system is isolated from earth or has a high impedance connection, minimizing the risk of earth faults.

#### Components:

- **Earth Rods or Plates:** Conductive materials driven into the ground to make an electrical connection with the earth.
- **Earthing Conductor:** A wire that connects the earth electrode to various parts of the electrical installation.
- **Earth Bar:** A metal bar to which all earthing conductors are connected.

### Bonding

#### Purpose:

- **Safety:** Ensures that all exposed metal parts of electrical equipment are at the same potential, preventing dangerous potential differences.
- **Fault Current Path:** Provides a low-resistance path for fault currents to return to the earth, facilitating the operation of protective devices like circuit breakers.

#### Key Concepts:

- **Equipotential Bonding:** The process of connecting all metallic parts of an electrical system to ensure they are at the same electrical potential.
- **Main Bonding:** Connecting the main earth terminal of an installation to the supply system's earth and to other essential metallic systems (e.g., gas and water pipes).

#### Types of Bonding:

1. **Main Bonding:** Connecting the main earth terminal to the supply system's earth and to all incoming metallic services (water, gas, etc.).
2. **Supplementary Bonding:** Additional bonding within an installation to ensure all exposed metal parts are at the same potential, often in locations like bathrooms or kitchens.

#### Components:

- **Bonding Conductors:** Wires that connect different metallic parts to each other and to the earth.

# CHAPTER 9

## Relay Protection

Mr.D.Hariharan

Relay protection is a critical component of electrical power systems designed to ensure the reliable operation and safety of electrical equipment. It involves the use of protective relays to detect and isolate faults, thereby minimizing damage and maintaining system stability. Here's a detailed overview:

### 1. Purpose of Relay Protection

- **Fault Detection:** Identify and locate faults within the electrical system.
- **Isolation:** Disconnect faulty sections to prevent widespread system failure and protect equipment.
- **System Stability:** Maintain the stability and reliability of the power system by quickly addressing disturbances.

### 2. Types of Relays

a. **Electromechanical Relays:** Traditional relays that use electromagnetic mechanisms to operate. These include:

- **Overcurrent Relays:** Operate when the current exceeds a preset value.
- **Differential Relays:** Detect differences in current between two or more points, indicating a fault within the protected zone.

b. **Digital Relays:** Modern relays that use microprocessors to perform complex calculations. These include:

- **Numerical Relays:** Provide advanced protection, monitoring, and control functions with digital processing capabilities.
- **Microprocessor-Based Relays:** Offer features like communication interfaces, programmable settings, and self-diagnostics.

### 3. Protection Schemes

a. **Overcurrent Protection**

- **Instantaneous Overcurrent:** Trips immediately when current exceeds a preset level.
- **Time-Delayed Overcurrent:** Trips after a delay to allow for temporary overloads.

b. **Differential Protection**

- **Transformer Differential:** Protects transformers by comparing the current entering and exiting the transformer.
- **Busbar Differential:** Protects busbars by comparing currents at different points.

c. **Distance Protection**

- Measures the impedance between the relay and the fault location.
- Often used in transmission lines to detect faults based on distance from the relay.

d. **Directional Protection**

- Identifies the direction of fault currents to ensure only the faulty section is isolated, particularly useful in complex systems with multiple sources.

e. **Under-Voltage and Over-Voltage Protection**

- **Under-Voltage:** Detects voltage drops below a set threshold and can initiate load shedding or system disconnection.
- **Over-Voltage:** Detects voltage rises above a set threshold and protects equipment from potential damage.

f. **Frequency Protection**

- **Under-Frequency:** Triggers if system frequency drops below a specified level.
- **Over-Frequency:** Triggers if system frequency exceeds a specified level.

# CHAPTER 10

## Cables

Mr.D.Hariharan

Cables are essential components in electrical systems, used to transmit electrical power or signals from one point to another. They come in various types and configurations, depending on their application, voltage level, and environmental conditions. Here's a comprehensive overview:

### 1. Types of Cables

#### a. Power Cables

- **Low Voltage (LV) Cables:** Typically used for voltages up to 1,000V. Common in residential and commercial applications.
  - **Examples:** PVC-insulated cables, XLPE-insulated cables.
- **Medium Voltage (MV) Cables:** Used for voltages from 1kV to 33kV. Common in industrial applications and utility distribution.
  - **Examples:** PVC-insulated cables, XLPE-insulated cables.
- **High Voltage (HV) Cables:** Used for voltages above 33kV. Essential for long-distance transmission and high-power applications.
  - **Examples:** Paper-insulated cables, XLPE-insulated cables.

#### b. Control Cables

- Designed for controlling and monitoring equipment in industrial and commercial settings.
  - **Examples:** Multi-core cables, shielded cables.

#### c. Instrumentation Cables

- Used for transmitting signals from sensors and instruments to control systems.
  - **Examples:** Shielded twisted pair cables, multi-core cables.

#### d. Communication Cables

- **Coaxial Cables:** Used for data transmission and TV signals.
  - **Examples:** RG-6, RG-59.
- **Optical Fiber Cables:** Used for high-speed data transmission over long distances.
  - **Examples:** Single-mode fibers, multi-mode fibers.

### 2. Cable Construction

#### a. Conductors

- **Materials:** Copper or aluminum.
- **Types:** Solid (single wire) or stranded (multiple wires).

#### b. Insulation

- **PVC (Polyvinyl Chloride):** Common for general applications.
- **XLPE (Cross-Linked Polyethylene):** Offers better thermal and electrical properties.
- **Rubber:** Flexible and suitable for harsh environments.
- **Paper:** Used in older HV cables.

#### c. Shielding

- **Purpose:** Protects against electromagnetic interference (EMI) and ensures signal integrity.
- **Types:** Foil shields, braided shields.

#### d. Jacket

- **Purpose:** Provides mechanical protection and environmental resistance.
- **Materials:** PVC, PE (Polyethylene), FR (Fire-Resistant) materials.

### 3. Cable Sizing and Rating

#### a. Current Carrying Capacity

- The maximum current a cable can carry without overheating. Determined by factors such as conductor material, insulation type, and installation conditions.

# ELECTRICAL MACHINES -1 LAB

EDITED BY

**G. KRITHIGA**



978-93-6255-902-9

Electrical machines -1 lab  
Copyright © 2019 by Mrs. G. Krithiga

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-902-9

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

Date of Publication : 26.07.19

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	<b>04</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1</b> - Load test on DC shunt motor	-	<b>06</b>
Mrs. G. Krithiga		
<b>CHAPTER 2</b> – Load test on DC series motor	-	<b>10</b>
Mrs. G. Krithiga		
<b>CHAPTER 3</b> - Load test on DC Compound motor	-	<b>16</b>
Mrs. G. Krithiga		
<b>CHAPTER 4</b> - Swinburns test and speed control of DC shunt motor	-	<b>23</b>
Mrs. G. Krithiga		
<b>CHAPTER 5</b> - Hopkinsons test on DC motor	-	<b>29</b>
Mrs. G. Krithiga		
<b>CHAPTER 6</b> – Load test on single-phase transformer and three phase transformers	-	<b>31</b>
Mrs. G. Krithiga		
<b>CHAPTER 7</b> - Open circuit and short circuit tests on single phase transformer	-	<b>36</b>
Mrs. G. Krithiga		
<b>CHAPTER 8</b> - Sumpner’s test on single phase transformers	-	<b>42</b>
Mrs. G. Krithiga		
<b>CHAPTER 9</b> - Separation of no-load losses in single phase transformer	-	<b>49</b>
Mrs. G. Krithiga		
<b>CHAPTER 10</b> - Study of starters and 3-phase transformers connections	-	<b>52</b>
Mrs. G. Krithiga		
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>55</b>

# CHAPTER 1

## Load test on DC shunt motor

Mrs. G. Krithiga

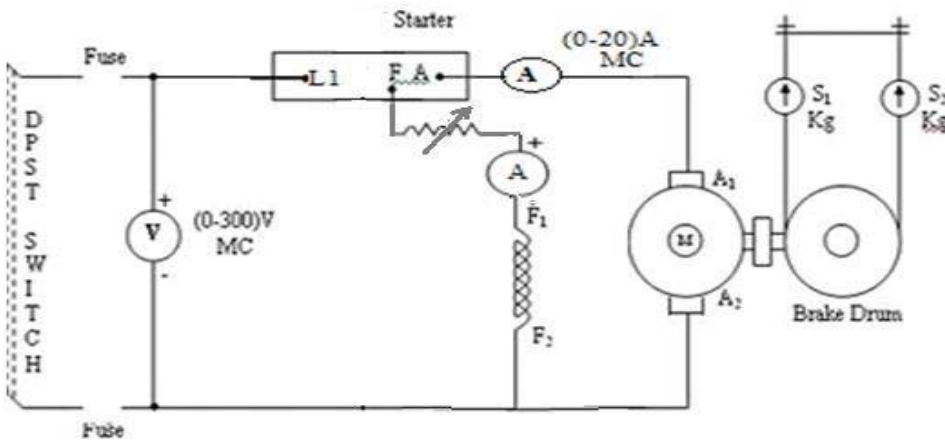
**AIM:**

To determine Load test on DC Shunt Motor.

**Apparatus Required:**

Sl. No.	Name	Specification	Quantity
1	DC shunt motor with spring balance load	2 BHP, 1440 rpm, 110V, 18.1A	1 no.
2	Voltmeter	(0-150) V, PMMC	1 no.
3	Ammeter	(0-20) A, PMMC	1 no.
4	Rheostat	(0-80) $\Omega$	2 nos.
5	Tachometer	Digital Type	1 no.
6	Connecting wires	PVC Insulated copper	as per required

**Circuit Diagram:**



**Observation Table:**

Sl. No.	Input Voltage (V) in Volts.	Armature Current (I) in Amps.	Speed (N) in RPM	$W_1$ in Kg	$W_2$ in Kg	$W=(W_2-W_1)$ in Kg	Torque (T) in N-m	Output Power ( $P_o$ ) in watts	Input Power ( $P_i$ ) in watts	% Efficiency

**RESULT:**

Thus Load test on DC Shunt Motor.



**CHAPTER 2**  
**Load test on DC series motor**  
Mrs. G. Krithiga

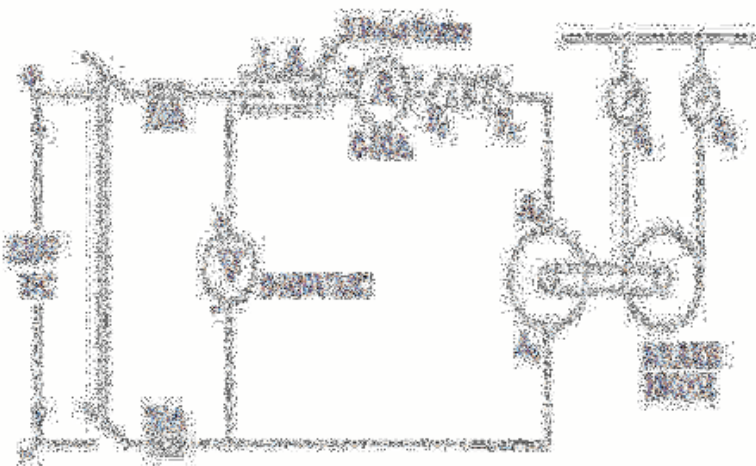
**AIM:**

To determine Load test on DC Series Motor.

**Apparatus Required:**

Sl. No.	Name	Specification	Quantity
1	DC shunt motor with spring balance load	2 BHP, 1440 rpm, 110V, 18.1A	1 no.
2	Voltmeter	(0-150) V, PMMC	1 no.
3	Ammeter	(0-20) A, PMMC	1 no.
4	Rheostat	(0-80) $\Omega$	2 nos.
5	Tachometer	Digital Type	1 no.
6	Connecting wires	PVC Insulated copper	as per required

**Circuit Diagram:**



**Observation Table:**

Sl. No.	Input Voltage (V) in Volts.	Armature Current (I) in Amps.	Speed (N) in RPM	$W_1$ in Kg	$W_2$ in Kg	$W=(W_2-W_1)$ in Kg	Torque (T) in N-m	Output Power ( $P_o$ ) in watts	Input Power ( $P_i$ ) in watts	% Efficiency

**RESULT:**

Thus Load test on DC Series Motor.

## CHAPTER 3

### Load test on DC compound motor

Mrs. G. Krithiga

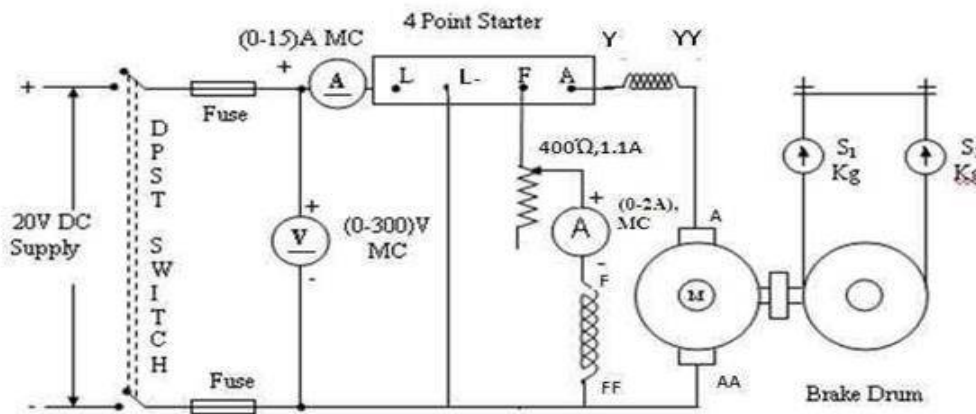
**AIM:**

To perform the load test on the given DC Compound Motor and draw the performance characteristics.

**Apparatus Required:**

Sl.No.	Name of the Apparatus	Range	Type	Quantity
1.	Ammeter	(0-20) A	MC	1
2.	Ammeter	(0-2) A	MC	1
3.	Voltmeter	(0-300)V	MC	1
4.	Rheostat	400Ω, 1.1 A	-	1

**Circuit Diagram:**



**Observation Table:**

Sl. No.	Voltage, $V_L$ (V)	Current $I_L$ (A)	Spring balance			Speed Rpm	Torque N-m	Input $P_i$ watts	Output $P_m$ watts	Efficiency In %
			$S_1$ Kg	$S_2$ Kg	$S_1 \sim S_2$ kg					

**RESULT:**

Thus perform the load test on the given DC Compound Motor and draw the performance characteristics.

## CHAPTER 4

### Swinburns test and speed control of DC shunt motor

Mrs. G. Krithiga

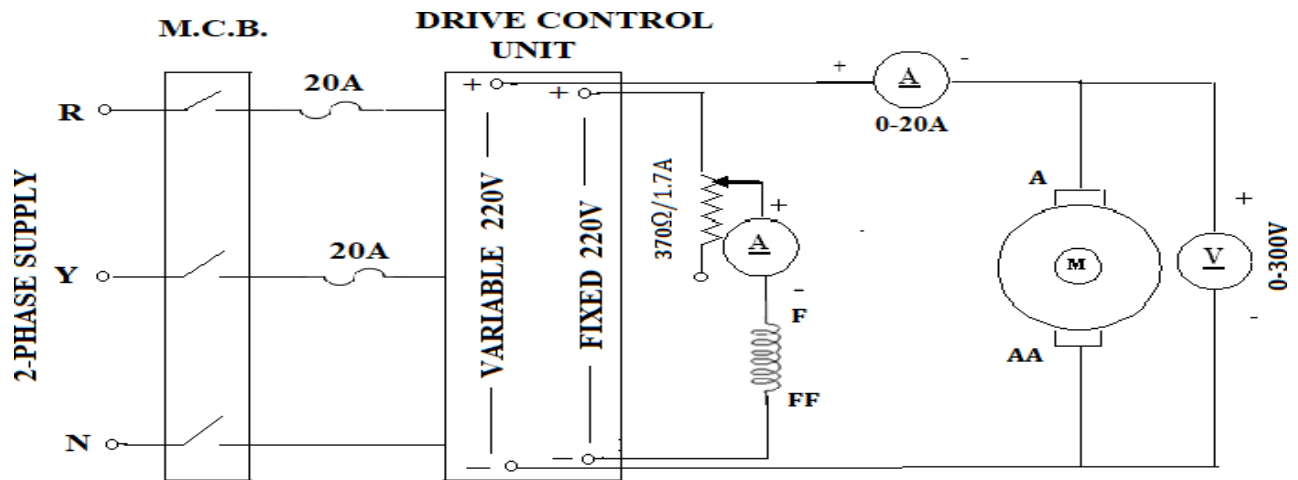
**AIM:**

- (a) To predetermine the efficiency of a DC shunt machine by conducting the Swinburne's Test
- (b) To control the speed of DC shunt motor under loaded condition.
  - i. Field resistance control.
  - ii. Armature resistance control.

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:**

S.No:	Name of the Apparatus	Range	Type	Quantity	Availability
1	Ammeter	(0-2)A	Digital	1	On Panel
		(0-20) A	Digital	1	On Panel
2	Voltmeter	(0-300)V	Digital	1	On Panel
3	Rheostat	370Ω/1.7A	Wire Wound	1	External
4	RPM meter	(0-9999)rpm	Digital	1	On Panel
5	Connecting Wires	-	-	As Required	External

**Circuit Diagram:**



**SWINBURNE'S TEST:**

V <sub>s</sub> Volts	I <sub>a</sub> Amps	I <sub>f</sub> Amps	Speed (N) RPM

**RESULT:**

Thus predetermine the efficiency of a DC shunt machine by conducting the Swinburne's Test

## CHAPTER 5

### Hopkinsons test on DC motor

Mrs. G. Krithiga

**AIM:**

To conduct the Hopkinson's test on the given pair of DC machines and Predetermine the efficiency.

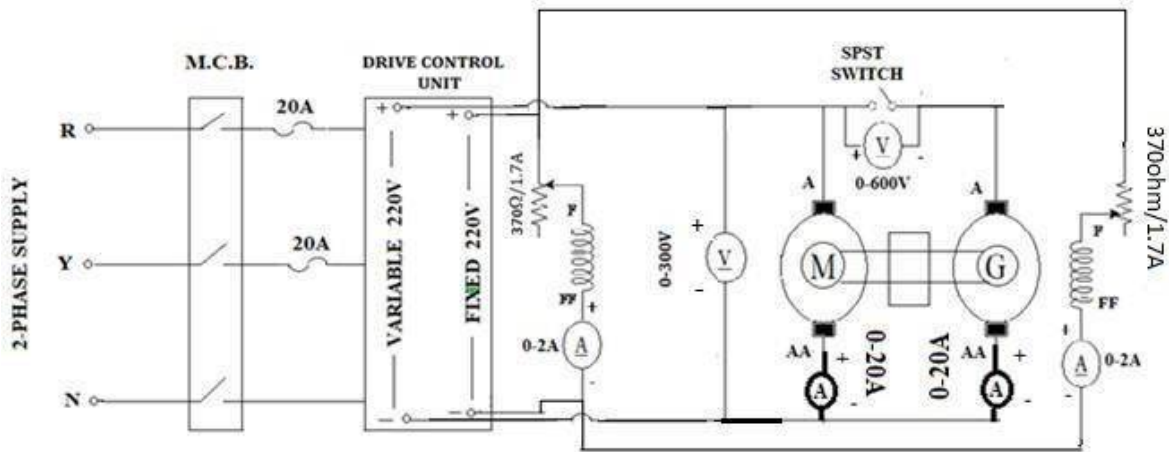
**Apparatus Required:**

Sl. No.	Name	Specification	Quantity
1	Ammeter	(0-2)A (0-20) A	2
2	Voltmeter	(0-300)V (0-600)V	1
3	Rheostats	/1.7AΩ370	2
4	Resistive load bank	20A	1
5	RPM meter	(0-9999)rpm	1
6	Connecting Wires		As Required

**FUSE RATING:**

Motor and Generator side:  
 125% of rated current  
 of DC Motor  
 $125 \times 19 / 100 = 23.75 \approx$   
 25 A

**Circuit Diagram:**



**RESULT:**

Thus conduct the Hopkinson's test on the given pair of DC machines and predetermine the efficiency.

## CHAPTER 6

### Load test on single-phase transformer and three phase transformers

Mrs. M.R.Geetha

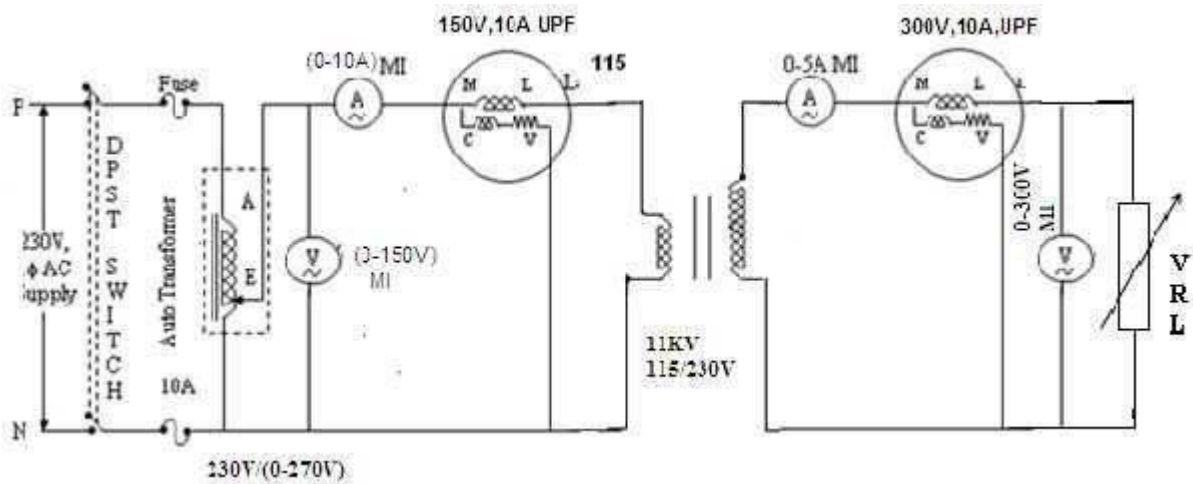
**AIM:**

To determine the efficiency and also to find the variation of secondary terminal voltage with respect to the load current.

**Apparatus Required:**

S.No.	Item	Type	Range	Quantity
1	Auto Transformer	230/(0-270)V, 1 $\phi$	-	1
2	Wattmeter	300 V, 5A	UPF UPF	1
3	Ammeter	150 V, 5A	MI MI	1
		(0-10)A		1
4	Voltmeter	(0-300)V	MI MI	1
		(0-150)V		1
5	Connecting Wires	2.5sq.mm	Copper	Few
6	Load	(5 KW, 230V)	-	1

**Circuit Diagram:**



**RESULT:**

Thus the efficiency and regulation of a Three phase Transformer were calculated.

## CHAPTER 7

### Open circuit and short circuit tests on single phase transformer

Mrs. M.R.Geetha

**AIM:**

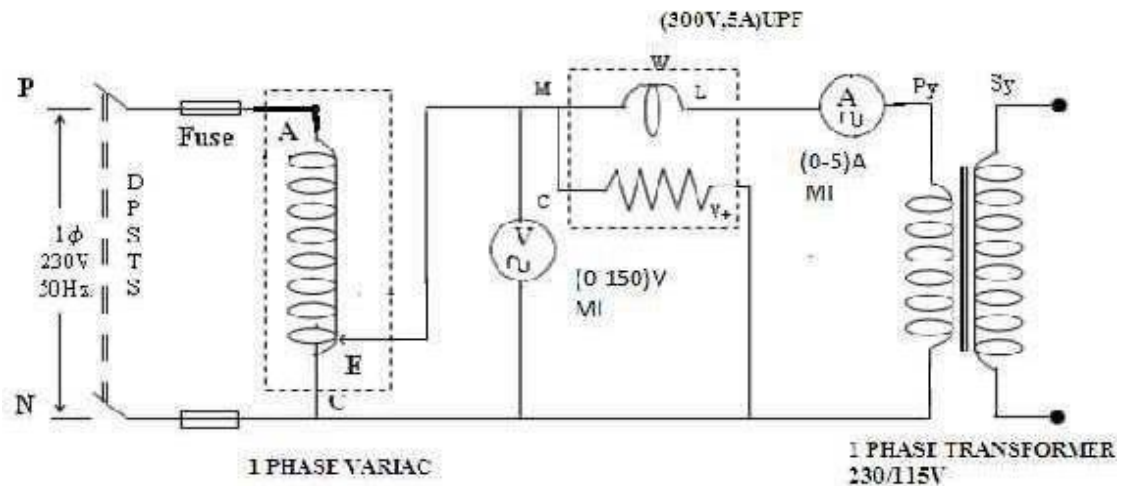
1. the equivalent circuit of transformer.
2. To predetermine the efficiency and regulation of transformer
3. To predetermine the maximum efficiency of transformer

**Apparatus Required:**

S.No.	Item	Type	Range	Quantity
1	Ammeter	MI	(0-2A)	1
			(0-5A)	1
2	Voltmeter	MI	(0-150V)	1
3	Wattmeter	LPF	(150V,2A)	1
		UPF	(150V,5A)	1
4	Connectingwires	Copper		Few

**Circuit Diagram**

**O.C. TEST**



**RESULT:**

Thus the efficiency and regulation of the Single phase Transformer was predetermined and Equivalent circuit was drawn

## CHAPTER 8

### Sumpner's test on single phase transformers

Mrs. M.R.Geetha

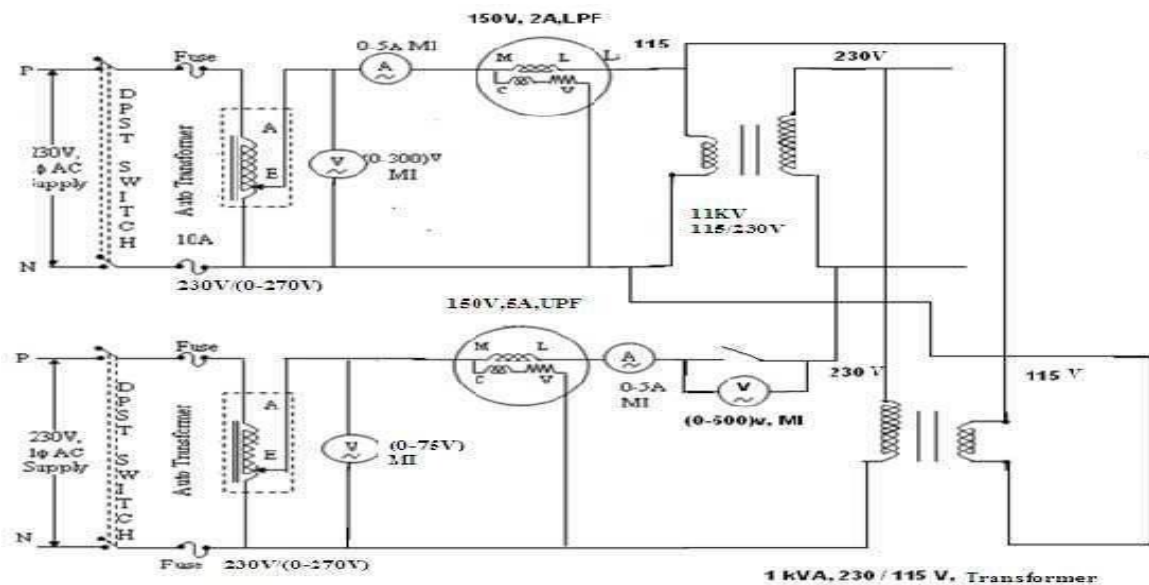
**AIM:**

To predetermine the Efficiency and Regulation of a given Single phase Transformer by conducting back-to-back test

**Apparatus Required:**

S. No.	Name of the Apparatus	Range	Type	Quantity
1.	Auto Transformer	230/(0-270)V	-	2
2.	Wattmeter	150 V, 2A	LPF	1
3.	Ammeter	150 V, 5 A	UPF	1
		(0-2)A	MI	1
		(0-5)A	MI	1
4.	Voltmeter	(0-75)V	MI	1
		(0-150)V	MI	1
		(0-600)V	MI	1
5.	Connecting Wires	2.5sq.mm	Copper	Few

**Circuit Diagram**



**RESULT:**

Thus the efficiency and regulation of a given single phase Transformer is carried out by conducting back-to-back test

## CHAPTER 9

### Separation of no-load losses in single phase transformer

Mrs. M.R.Geetha

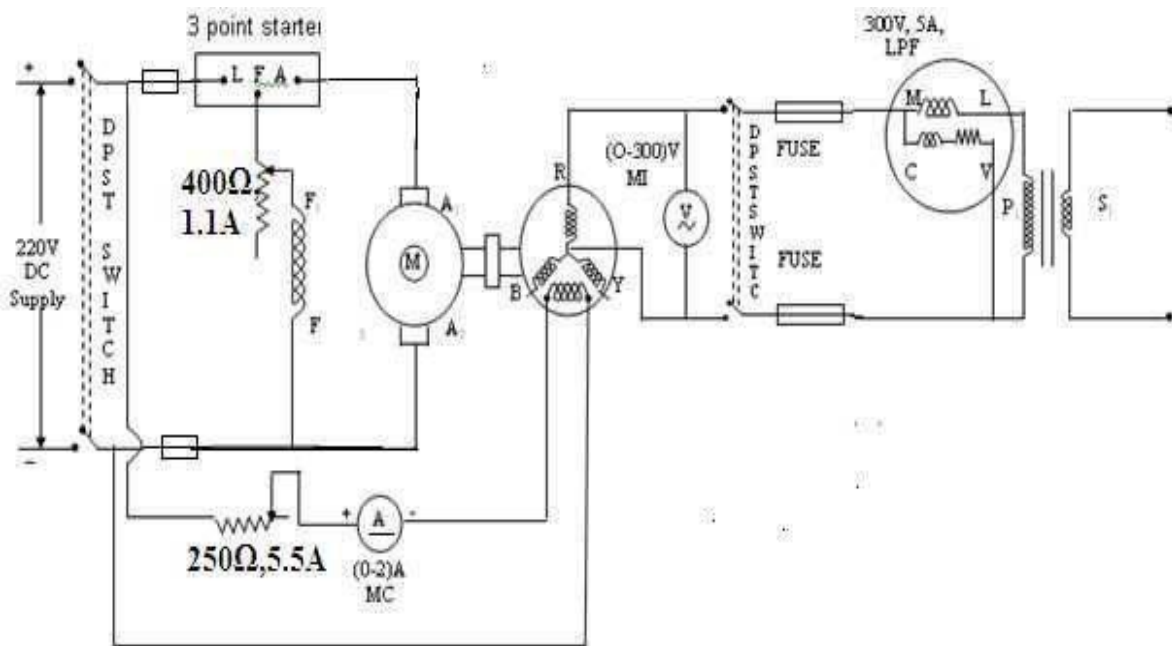
**AIM:**

To separate no load losses of a transformer into eddy current loss and hysteresis loss

**Apparatus Required:**

S. No.	Name of the Apparatus	Range	Type	Quantity
1	Rheostat	400Ω, 1.1A	Wire Wound	1
2	Wattmeter	300 V, 5A	LPF	1
3	Ammeter	(0-2)A	MC	1
4	Voltmeter	(0-300)V	MI	1
5	Connecting Wires	2.5sq.mm	Copper	Few

**Circuit Diagram**



**RESULT:**

Thus separation of Eddy current and Hysteresis loss from the iron loss on a Single-phase Transformer is conducted



# CHAPTER 10

## Study of starters and 3-phase transformers connections

Mrs. M.R.Geetha

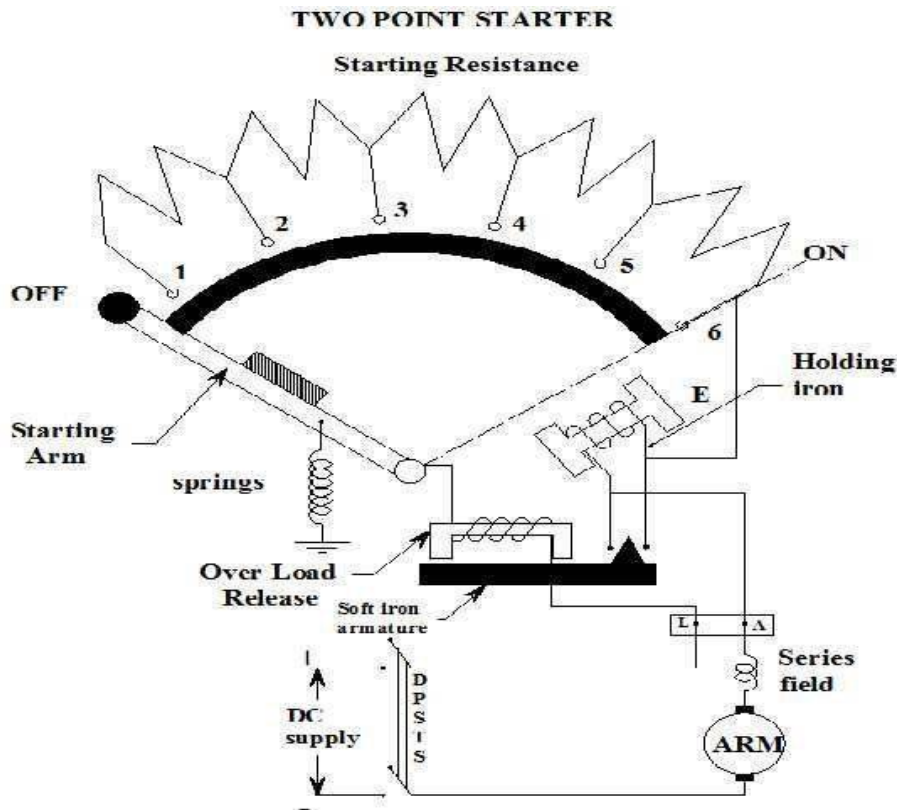
**AIM:**

To Study about the starters and Three phase connection of a Transformer

**Apparatus Required:**

S. No.	Name of the Apparatus	Quantity
1	Two Point starter	1
2	Three Point starter	1
3	Four Point starter	1
4	Star-Delta Starter	1
5	Rotor Resistance Starter	1
6	DOL Starter	1
7	Auto transformer Starter	1

**Circuit Diagram**



**RESULT:**

Thus Study about the starters and Three phase connection of a Transformer.

# HIGH VOLTAGE ENGINEERING



EDITED BY



**G. KRITHIGA**



978-93-6255-014-9

High voltage Engineering  
Copyright © 2019 by Mrs. G. Krithiga

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-014-9

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Date of Publication : 14.06.19

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	<b>13</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1</b> - Over voltage in electrical power system	-	<b>30</b>
Mr.Mkmm .Sakthi Nagaraj		
<b>CHAPTER 2</b> – Dielectric breakdown	-	<b>55</b>
Mr.R.Elangovan		
<b>CHAPTER 3</b> - Generation of high voltage and high current	-	<b>72</b>
Mrs.M.R.Geetha		
<b>CHAPTER 4</b> - High voltage testing and insulation	-	<b>94</b>
Mr.M. Anand		
<b>CHAPTER 5</b> - Application in industry using high voltage	-	<b>120</b>
Mrs.R.Prasannadevi		
<b>CHAPTER 6</b> - Causes and Effects of Over Voltage	-	<b>135</b>
Mr. Mkmm .Sakthi Nagaraj		
<b>CHAPTER 7</b> - Insulation Breakdown	-	<b>149</b>
Mr.R.Elangovan		
<b>CHAPTER 8</b> -Measurement of high voltage and current	-	<b>168</b>
Mrs.M.R.Geetha		
<b>CHAPTER 9</b> - Generation of high voltage and current	-	<b>180</b>
Mrs. N. Arthi		
<b>CHAPTER 10</b> - Breakdown in Solid Dielectrics	-	<b>196</b>
Mrs.R.Prasannadevi		
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>208</b>

# CHAPTER 1

## Over voltage in electrical power system

Mr.Mknm .Sakthi Nagaraj

Overvoltage in an electrical power system refers to a condition where the voltage exceeds the normal operating voltage levels, which can lead to potential damage to equipment, reduced system reliability, and safety hazards. Understanding and managing overvoltage is crucial for maintaining the stability and longevity of electrical systems. Here's a comprehensive overview of overvoltage in electrical power systems:

### 1. Causes of Overvoltage

#### 1. Load Switching:

- **Description:** Sudden changes in load, such as switching on or off large inductive loads, can cause transient overvoltages.
- **Example:** Switching off a large motor or transformer can result in a temporary voltage spike.

#### 2. Lightning Strikes:

- **Description:** Direct or indirect strikes can induce high voltage surges into power lines.
- **Impact:** Lightning can cause significant transient overvoltages, potentially damaging equipment.

#### 3. Switching Surges:

- **Description:** Operation of circuit breakers, isolators, or other switching devices can create voltage spikes.
- **Example:** Switching of capacitor banks or large inductive loads can produce transient overvoltages.

#### 4. Voltage Regulation Failures:

- **Description:** Malfunctions in voltage regulators or automatic tap-changing transformers can lead to overvoltage conditions.
- **Impact:** Incorrect settings or failures can result in sustained overvoltage.

#### 5. Fault Conditions:

- **Description:** Temporary faults, such as short circuits, can cause overvoltage when they are cleared.
- **Example:** During the clearing of a short circuit, transient overvoltages can occur.

#### 6. Capacitor Bank Switching:

- **Description:** The switching of large capacitor banks can cause temporary overvoltages.
- **Impact:** Capacitors can create resonance conditions, leading to higher voltages.

#### 7. Insulation Failure:

- **Description:** Deterioration or breakdown of insulation can result in overvoltage conditions.
- **Impact:** Insulation failure can lead to unintentional voltage rise.

### 2. Effects of Overvoltage

#### 1. Equipment Damage:

- **Description:** Excessive voltage can cause insulation breakdown, overheating, and premature aging of electrical components.
- **Example:** Transformers, generators, and motors may suffer from reduced lifespan or immediate damage.

#### 2. Reduced System Reliability:

## **CHAPTER 2**

### **Dielectric breakdown**

Mr.R.Elangovan

**Dielectric breakdown** is a phenomenon in which an insulating material, or dielectric, loses its ability to resist electric current, allowing it to conduct electricity. This typically occurs when the electric field applied across the dielectric exceeds its breakdown strength. The breakdown of the dielectric can lead to failure of electrical components or systems, potentially causing damage or malfunction.

#### **1. What is Dielectric Breakdown?**

**Dielectric breakdown** occurs when the electric field strength in a dielectric material becomes sufficiently high to cause a sudden and catastrophic failure of the material's insulating properties. This results in a high-current discharge through the dielectric, which can lead to permanent damage.

#### **2. Causes of Dielectric Breakdown**

1. **Excessive Voltage:**
  - **Description:** Applying a voltage higher than the dielectric strength of the material can cause breakdown.
  - **Example:** Overvoltage conditions in electrical equipment.
2. **Material Defects:**
  - **Description:** Defects or impurities in the dielectric material can reduce its breakdown strength.
  - **Example:** Voids, cracks, or contaminants within the dielectric material.
3. **High Electric Fields:**
  - **Description:** Extremely high electric fields can accelerate the breakdown process.
  - **Example:** Sharp edges or points in electrical equipment creating localized high fields.
4. **Temperature Effects:**
  - **Description:** High temperatures can reduce the dielectric strength of materials.
  - **Example:** Overheating due to excessive power dissipation.
5. **Aging and Degradation:**
  - **Description:** Over time, dielectric materials can degrade, leading to reduced breakdown strength.
  - **Example:** Aging of insulating oil in transformers.
6. **Environmental Conditions:**
  - **Description:** Factors such as humidity or contamination can affect the dielectric properties.
  - **Example:** Moisture ingress causing breakdown in insulation.

#### **3. Types of Dielectric Breakdown**

1. **Electrical Breakdown:**
  - **Description:** Occurs when an electric field exceeds the dielectric strength, causing current flow through the dielectric.
  - **Example:** Spark discharge or arcing in electrical equipment.
2. **Thermal Breakdown:**
  - **Description:** Caused by excessive heat that leads to a loss of dielectric strength.
  - **Example:** Overheating of an insulating material due to excessive power.
3. **Breakdown in Solid Dielectrics:**
  - **Description:** Involves physical damage or failure of solid insulating materials.
  - **Example:** Insulating materials in cables or circuit boards.

# CHAPTER 3

## Generation of high voltage and high current

Mrs.M.R.Geetha

Generating high voltage and high current is essential for various applications, including electrical testing, power transmission, and research. The methods for generating high voltage and high current differ based on the requirements and the nature of the application. Here's an overview of the techniques and equipment used for generating high voltage and high current:

### 1. Generation of High Voltage

High voltage generation is crucial for electrical testing, insulation testing, and power transmission. Here are the common methods and equipment used:

#### 1.1. High Voltage Generators

##### 1. Van de Graaff Generator

- **Description:** A type of electrostatic generator that uses a moving belt to accumulate electric charge on a large metal sphere.
- **Application:** Used for generating high voltages for particle accelerators, X-ray machines, and scientific experiments.

##### 2. Cockcroft-Walton Generator

- **Description:** A type of cascade voltage multiplier circuit that generates high DC voltages.
- **Application:** Used in particle accelerators and for high-voltage testing in laboratories.

##### 3. Transformers

- **Description:** Electrical devices that increase (step-up) or decrease (step-down) voltage levels.
- **Application:** Used in power transmission systems to step up voltage for efficient long-distance transmission.

##### 4. High Voltage Power Supplies

- **Description:** Specialized power supplies designed to provide high DC or AC voltages.
- **Application:** Used in laboratory experiments, electrical testing, and industrial applications.

##### 5. Tesla Coil

- **Description:** An air-core transformer that generates high-voltage, high-frequency AC electricity.
- **Application:** Used in experiments, demonstrations, and for creating high-voltage discharges.

#### 1.2. Techniques for High Voltage Generation

##### 1. Voltage Multipliers

- **Description:** Circuits that use capacitors and diodes to multiply the input voltage to a higher level.
- **Types:** Cockcroft-Walton multiplier, Marx generator.
- **Application:** Used in high-voltage power supplies and X-ray generators.

##### 2. Resonant Transformers

- **Description:** Transformers designed to operate at resonant frequencies to generate high voltages.
- **Application:** Used in Tesla coils and high-voltage spark generators.

##### 3. High Voltage Rectifiers

- **Description:** Devices that convert high-frequency AC voltage to high DC voltage.
- **Application:** Used in high-voltage power supplies and DC voltage sources.

## CHAPTER 4

### High voltage testing and insulation

Mr.M.Anand

High voltage testing and insulation are critical components in ensuring the safety, reliability, and performance of electrical systems and equipment. They involve evaluating and maintaining the effectiveness of insulation materials and verifying that equipment can withstand high voltage conditions without failure. Here's a comprehensive overview of high voltage testing and insulation:

#### 1. High Voltage Testing

High voltage testing is performed to ensure that electrical equipment and insulation systems can handle their rated voltages and to detect potential weaknesses that could lead to failure.

##### 1.1. Types of High Voltage Testing

###### 1. Insulation Resistance Testing

- **Purpose:** Measure the resistance of insulation to ensure it is adequate.
- **Method:** Apply a DC voltage (typically 500V to 5kV) and measure the insulation resistance using an insulation resistance tester.
- **Application:** Used for cables, transformers, switchgear, and other equipment.

###### 2. Dielectric Strength Testing

- **Purpose:** Assess the maximum voltage an insulating material can withstand without breakdown.
- **Method:** Apply a high AC or DC voltage to the insulation and monitor for breakdown or leakage.
- **Application:** Used for testing insulators, bushings, and cables.

###### 3. High Potential (Hipot) Testing

- **Purpose:** Verify that electrical equipment can withstand high voltages.
- **Method:** Apply a high AC or DC voltage to the equipment and measure leakage current.
- **Application:** Used for cables, transformers, switchgear, and electrical assemblies.

###### 4. Power Factor Testing

- **Purpose:** Measure the power factor of insulation to detect degradation.
- **Method:** Apply a high AC voltage and measure the power factor of the insulation.
- **Application:** Used for high-voltage cables, transformers, and other insulation systems.

#### 2. Insulation

Insulation is critical for preventing electrical faults, ensuring safe operation, and protecting equipment. It isolates electrical conductors and components from each other and from ground.

##### 2.1. Types of Insulation

###### 1. Solid Insulation

- **Description:** Includes materials like rubber, plastic, and ceramics.
- **Examples:** PVC (Polyvinyl Chloride), XLPE (Cross-Linked Polyethylene), mica.

###### 2. Liquid Insulation

- **Description:** Used in transformer oils and other insulating fluids.
- **Examples:** Mineral oil, silicone oil, ester-based fluids.

###### 3. Gaseous Insulation

- **Description:** Utilized in gas-insulated switchgear and other equipment.
- **Examples:** SF<sub>6</sub> (Sulfur Hexafluoride), air.

###### 4. Composite Insulation

- **Description:** Combines multiple insulation materials to enhance performance.
- **Examples:** Insulated cables with layers of different materials.



# CHAPTER 5

## Application in Industry using high voltage

Mrs.R.Prasannadevi

High voltage technology plays a crucial role in various industrial applications, offering advantages in efficiency, safety, and functionality. Here's an overview of how high voltage is utilized in different industrial sectors:

### 1. Power Transmission and Distribution

#### 1.1. Long-Distance Power Transmission

- **Application:** High voltage is used to transmit electrical power over long distances.
- **Advantage:** Reduces power loss due to resistance in transmission lines.
- **Example:** 110 kV, 220 kV, and 400 kV transmission lines used to transport electricity from power plants to substations.

#### 1.2. Substation Equipment

- **Application:** Equipment in substations, including transformers, circuit breakers, and switchgear, operates at high voltages.
- **Advantage:** Allows efficient step-down of voltage for local distribution.
- **Example:** Transformers in substations step down high transmission voltages to lower distribution voltages (e.g., 11 kV, 33 kV).

### 2. Electrical Testing and Quality Assurance

#### 2.1. Insulation Testing

- **Application:** Testing the insulation of electrical cables, transformers, and other equipment.
- **Advantage:** Ensures insulation integrity and reliability.
- **Example:** High voltage insulation resistance testing and hipot testing.

#### 2.2. Dielectric Testing

- **Application:** Verifying the dielectric strength of materials used in electrical equipment.
- **Advantage:** Detects potential weaknesses before equipment is put into service.
- **Example:** Testing insulators and bushings for dielectric breakdown.

### 3. High Voltage Equipment

#### 3.1. Transformers

- **Application:** Step-up or step-down voltage levels in power systems.
- **Advantage:** Enables efficient power distribution and utilization.
- **Example:** Power transformers in electrical substations.

#### 3.2. Circuit Breakers and Switchgear

- **Application:** Protect electrical circuits from overloads and short circuits.
- **Advantage:** Ensures safe operation and protection of electrical systems.
- **Example:** High voltage circuit breakers used in substations and industrial facilities.

### 4. Industrial Processes

#### 4.1. Electroplating

- **Application:** Coating materials with a layer of metal through electrolysis.
- **Advantage:** Enhances the durability and appearance of components.
- **Example:** High current electroplating systems used in manufacturing.

# CHAPTER 6

## Causes and Effects of Over Voltage

Mr.Mknm .Sakthi Nagaraj

**Overvoltage** is a condition where the voltage in an electrical system exceeds its rated or nominal value. This can lead to various problems in electrical and electronic systems. Understanding the causes and effects of overvoltage is essential for maintaining system reliability and protecting equipment.

### Causes of Overvoltage

#### Lightning Strikes:

- **Description:** Lightning can cause sudden and substantial increases in voltage, known as lightning surges or transients, when it strikes power lines or equipment.
- **Effect:** Can lead to severe damage to electrical components and systems due to high energy levels.

#### Switching Surges:

- **Description:** Rapid switching of electrical circuits or equipment can cause transient voltage spikes. This can occur when switching large inductive loads or during circuit breaker operations.
- **Effect:** Results in temporary overvoltages that can stress insulation and components.

#### Fault Conditions:

- **Description:** Electrical faults, such as short circuits or ground faults, can cause overvoltages. For example, a line-to-line fault can result in a significant increase in voltage.
- **Effect:** Can lead to equipment damage, overheating, and potential system failures.

#### Load Rejection:

- **Description:** Sudden loss of load, such as when a large industrial process or motor is turned off abruptly, can cause a momentary overvoltage in the system.
- **Effect:** Causes high voltage to be applied across system components, potentially damaging them.

#### Transformer Tap Changes:

- **Description:** Adjusting the tap changer on a transformer to regulate voltage can sometimes lead to temporary overvoltages during the switching process.
- **Effect:** May cause transient overvoltage conditions that can stress insulation and equipment.

#### Poor Power Factor Correction:

- **Description:** Inadequate or incorrect power factor correction can lead to overvoltage conditions. For example, an excessive amount of capacitive reactance can cause voltage levels to rise.
- **Effect:** Can result in overvoltage, particularly in systems with significant reactive power components.

#### Faulty Equipment:

- **Description:** Malfunctioning equipment, such as faulty voltage regulators or defective insulation, can cause overvoltage conditions.
- **Effect:** Leads to unregulated voltage levels that can damage connected equipment and systems.

#### System Resonance:

- **Description:** Resonance in power systems, often caused by a combination of inductance and capacitance, can amplify voltage levels under certain conditions.
- **Effect:** Results in overvoltage conditions that can damage equipment and affect system stability.

# CHAPTER 7

## Insulation Breakdown

Mr.R.Elangovan

**Insulation breakdown** refers to the failure of the insulating materials in electrical equipment, which can lead to short circuits, equipment damage, and safety hazards. This phenomenon occurs when the insulation no longer effectively separates conductive components, allowing unwanted current flow and causing potentially catastrophic failures.

### Causes of Insulation Breakdown

#### Electrical Stress:

##### Overvoltage:

- **Description:** When the applied voltage exceeds the insulation's rated voltage, it can cause the dielectric strength of the insulation to degrade.
- **Effect:** Results in partial or complete breakdown of the insulation, leading to short circuits and equipment failure.

##### Surge Voltages:

- **Description:** Sudden spikes in voltage, such as those caused by lightning strikes or switching surges, can stress insulation beyond its design limits.
- **Effect:** Can cause insulation to break down or degrade over time, leading to electrical faults.

#### Thermal Stress:

##### Overheating:

- **Description:** Excessive heat from high currents, poor ventilation, or malfunctioning cooling systems can raise the temperature of the insulation.
- **Effect:** Causes thermal degradation of insulation materials, reducing their effectiveness and potentially leading to breakdown.

##### Temperature Cycling:

- **Description:** Repeated heating and cooling cycles can cause thermal expansion and contraction of insulation materials.
- **Effect:** Leads to mechanical stresses and eventual breakdown of the insulation over time.

#### Mechanical Stress:

##### Physical Damage:

- **Description:** Mechanical impacts, vibrations, or improper handling can physically damage insulation materials.
- **Effect:** Results in cracks, tears, or other damage that compromises the insulation's effectiveness.

##### Electrical Arcing:

- **Description:** Arcing occurs when electrical current jumps across gaps in the insulation.
- **Effect:** Causes localized heating and degradation of the insulation material, leading to further breakdown.

#### Chemical Stress:

##### \*\*1. \*\* Exposure to Chemicals:

- **Description:** Insulation materials exposed to corrosive chemicals, solvents, or oils can deteriorate.

# CHAPTER 8

## Measurement of high voltage and current

Mrs.M.R.Geetha

Measuring high voltage and current is critical in various applications, including power generation, transmission, and industrial processes. Accurate measurement is essential for safety, efficiency, and system integrity. Here's a comprehensive guide on the methods and instruments used for measuring high voltage and current.

### Measurement of High Voltage

#### Direct Measurement Methods:

##### High-Voltage Probe:

- **Description:** A high-voltage probe is used to measure high voltages with a typical voltage divider circuit inside that scales down the high voltage to a lower, manageable level.
- **Features:** Often used with oscilloscopes or multimeters.
- **Applications:** Suitable for laboratory testing and power electronics.

##### Capacitive Voltage Divider:

- **Description:** Consists of two capacitors arranged to divide the high voltage into a lower voltage that can be safely measured.
- **Features:** Offers high accuracy and is used for voltage measurements in power systems.
- **Applications:** Used in high-voltage substations and transmission lines.

#### Indirect Measurement Methods:

##### Electrostatic Voltmeter:

- **Description:** Measures high voltage by detecting the electrostatic force between charged plates.
- **Features:** Non-contact measurement with high accuracy.
- **Applications:** Ideal for measuring very high voltages in laboratory settings.

##### Optical Voltage Sensor:

- **Description:** Uses optical techniques to measure voltage levels, typically through the change in light properties caused by the electric field.
- **Features:** Provides electrical isolation and is suitable for very high voltage applications.
- **Applications:** High-voltage transmission lines and substations.

##### Potential Transformers (PTs):

**Description:** A potential transformer steps down high voltage to a lower, safer level that can be measured by standard instruments.

- **Features:** Ensures accurate voltage measurement while isolating measurement equipment from high voltages.
- **Applications:** Used in power systems for voltage measurement and monitoring.

#### High-Voltage Measuring Equipment:

##### High-Voltage Meter:

- **Description:** Specialized meters designed for high-voltage measurement, typically equipped with high insulation and safety features.
- **Features:** Provides direct readings of high voltages.
- **Applications:** High-voltage testing and monitoring.

# CHAPTER 9

## Generation of high voltage and current

Mrs.N.Arthi

Generating high voltage and high current is essential for a wide range of applications, from power transmission and industrial processes to scientific research and testing. Each type of generation method has specific uses, advantages, and challenges. Here's a detailed look at how high voltage and high current are generated:

### Generation of High Voltage

#### High Voltage Generators:

##### Van de Graaff Generator:

- **Description:** A type of electrostatic generator that uses a moving belt to accumulate and transfer electrical charge to a large metal sphere, creating high voltage.
- **Features:** Capable of generating voltages in the range of millions of volts.
- **Applications:** Used in particle accelerators and scientific research.

##### Cockcroft-Walton Generator:

- **Description:** A type of high-voltage pulse generator that uses a series of capacitors and diodes to multiply the input voltage and generate high voltages.
- **Features:** Generates high voltages by stacking multiple stages.
- **Applications:** Used in particle accelerators and X-ray machines.

##### Tesla Coil:

- **Description:** An air-core transformer designed to produce high-frequency high-voltage electricity.
- **Features:** Generates high voltages through resonant circuits and spark gaps.
- **Applications:** Used for high-voltage demonstrations, radio transmission experiments, and medical treatments.

#### High Voltage Power Supplies:

##### Switching Power Supplies:

- **Description:** Uses switching regulators to convert input voltage to a high voltage output efficiently.
- **Features:** Compact and efficient with adjustable output voltages.
- **Applications:** Used in laboratory testing, medical devices, and industrial equipment.

##### Linear High Voltage Power Supplies:

- **Description:** Uses linear regulators to provide a stable high voltage output.
- **Features:** Provides low noise and stable voltage, but can be less efficient compared to switching supplies.
- **Applications:** Used in precision equipment and high-accuracy applications.

#### Transformers:

##### Step-Up Transformers:

- **Description:** Electrical devices that increase the voltage from a lower level to a higher level through electromagnetic induction.
- **Features:** Commonly used in power transmission to reduce losses over long distances.
- **Applications:** Used in electrical grids, substations, and power generation stations.

# CHAPTER 10

## Breakdown in Solid Dielectrics

Mrs.R.Prasannadevi

**Breakdown in solid dielectrics** refers to the failure of insulating materials used in electrical systems, leading to a sudden and uncontrollable flow of current through the dielectric. This breakdown compromises the insulating properties of the material, potentially causing short circuits, equipment damage, and safety hazards. Understanding the mechanisms and factors contributing to breakdown is crucial for the design and reliability of electrical and electronic systems.

### Mechanisms of Breakdown in Solid Dielectrics

#### Electrical Breakdown:

##### Avalanche Breakdown:

- **Description:** Occurs when an applied electric field exceeds the dielectric strength of the material, causing a rapid multiplication of charge carriers (electrons) within the dielectric.
- **Mechanism:** Free electrons gain enough energy from the electric field to ionize atoms in the dielectric, creating more free electrons and leading to a chain reaction.
- **Effect:** Results in a conductive path forming through the dielectric, leading to failure.

##### Thermal Breakdown:

- **Description:** Results from the heating of the dielectric material due to high electric fields or excessive current flow.
- **Mechanism:** The heat generated causes the dielectric material to soften or melt, leading to a decrease in its insulating properties.
- **Effect:** Can result in localized overheating, thermal runaway, and eventual breakdown.

##### Partial Discharge Breakdown:

- **Description:** Occurs when localized electric discharges happen within the dielectric material, often due to imperfections or voids.
- **Mechanism:** These partial discharges create areas of high electric field and ionization, leading to gradual degradation of the dielectric material.
- **Effect:** Can cause erosion, chemical changes, and eventually complete breakdown.

##### Electrochemical Breakdown:

##### Chemical Degradation:

- **Description:** Interaction of the dielectric material with moisture, chemicals, or other environmental factors leading to chemical degradation.
- **Mechanism:** Chemical reactions can alter the molecular structure of the dielectric, reducing its insulation properties.
- **Effect:** Results in breakdown or reduced dielectric strength over time.

##### Electrolytic Breakdown:

- **Description:** Occurs when the dielectric material becomes ionized due to the passage of an electric current, leading to electrochemical reactions.
- **Mechanism:** The ionization creates conductive paths and degrades the dielectric material.
- **Effect:** Can cause degradation and failure of the dielectric.

# POWER SYSTEM OPERATION AND CONTROL

Edited by

**R. PRASANNADEVI**

---



978-93-6255-213-6

Power system operation and control  
Copyright © 2019 by Mrs. R. Prasannadevi

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-213-6

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Date of Publication : 24.05.19



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	<b>15</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1</b> - Real power frequency control	-	<b>33</b>
Mr.R.Elangovan		
<b>CHAPTER 2</b> – Reactive power voltage control	-	<b>52</b>
Dr.J.Sanjeevikumar		
<b>CHAPTER 3</b> - Economic operation of power systems	-	<b>70</b>
Mr.M.Anand		
<b>CHAPTER 4</b> - Computer aided control of power system	-	<b>95</b>
Mr.D.Hariharan		
<b>CHAPTER 5</b> - Introduction of power system operation	-	<b>106</b>
Mr.B.Arunpandiyan		
<b>CHAPTER 6</b> - Basics of speed governing mechanism and modeling	-	<b>126</b>
Mr.R.Elangovan		
<b>CHAPTER 7</b> - State Variability Models	-	<b>132</b>
Dr.J.Sanjeevikumar		
<b>CHAPTER 8</b> - Static and Dynamic Analysis of AVP	-	<b>146</b>
Mr.M. Anand		
<b>CHAPTER 9</b> – Constraints on UC Problem	-	<b>158</b>
Mr.D.Hariharan		
<b>CHAPTER 10</b> – SCADA & EMS Functions	-	<b>185</b>
Mr.B.Arunpandiyan		
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>194</b>

# CHAPTER 1

## Real power frequency control

Mr.R.Elangovan

Real power frequency control is a crucial aspect of managing and stabilizing electrical power systems. It involves regulating the real power output from generators to maintain the balance between power supply and demand, which in turn keeps the system frequency within acceptable limits. Here's an overview of the principles, methods, and importance of real power frequency control:

### Principles of Real Power Frequency Control

#### 1. Power-Frequency Relationship:

- **Frequency and Power:** In an electrical power system, the system frequency is directly related to the balance between real power generation and consumption. If the load increases without a corresponding increase in generation, the frequency will drop. Conversely, if generation exceeds the load, the frequency will rise.
- **Dynamic Response:** Generators and other system components need to adjust their output to maintain frequency within a narrow range.

#### 2. Real Power:

- **Definition:** Real power (measured in watts, W) is the actual power consumed by loads and converted into useful work or heat. It differs from reactive power (measured in volt-amperes reactive, VAR), which supports the creation of magnetic fields in devices like transformers and motors.

#### 3. Frequency Regulation:

- **Objective:** To ensure that the system frequency remains stable and within the specified range, typically 50 Hz or 60 Hz, depending on the region.
- **Methods:** Involves adjusting the output of generators or other power sources to match the system load and maintain frequency.

### Methods of Real Power Frequency Control

#### 1. Primary Frequency Control (Automatic Generation Control, AGC):

- **Purpose:** Provides immediate response to frequency deviations by adjusting the power output of generators.
- **Operation:** Involves a governor system that automatically adjusts the generator's output based on the frequency deviation detected by sensors.
- **Speed:** Provides a fast response to sudden changes in load or generation, but typically only a small amount of power adjustment.

#### 2. Secondary Frequency Control (Load Frequency Control, LFC):

- **Purpose:** Ensures the frequency is maintained at the desired setpoint over a longer period and adjusts for gradual changes in load or generation.
- **Operation:** Involves centralized control systems that adjust the output of multiple generators to bring the system frequency back to the target value.
- **Speed:** Provides a slower but more comprehensive adjustment compared to primary control.

#### 3. Tertiary Frequency Control:

- **Purpose:** Handles longer-term adjustments and economic dispatch of generation resources.
- **Operation:** Involves scheduling changes to generation and load to maintain frequency stability and optimize operational efficiency.
- **Speed:** Implemented over a longer time frame, focusing on overall system balance and economic considerations.

## **CHAPTER 2**

### **Reactive power voltage control**

Dr.J.Sanjeevikumar

Reactive power voltage control is essential for maintaining voltage stability and ensuring the reliable operation of electrical power systems. Reactive power management helps balance the supply and demand of reactive power, which is crucial for controlling voltage levels and ensuring efficient power delivery. Here's an overview of reactive power voltage control, including its principles, methods, and importance:

#### **Principles of Reactive Power and Voltage Control**

##### **1. Reactive Power:**

- **Definition:** Reactive power (measured in volt-amperes reactive, VAR) is the power that oscillates between the source and reactive components (like inductors and capacitors) in the system. It does not perform useful work but is necessary for maintaining voltage levels and proper operation of electrical equipment.
- **Role:** Supports the creation of magnetic fields in devices such as transformers and motors. It is crucial for voltage regulation and power system stability.

##### **2. Voltage Control:**

- **Objective:** To maintain the voltage within specified limits across the power system to ensure stable and reliable operation. Voltage levels are influenced by the amount of reactive power supplied or absorbed by the system.

##### **3. Reactive Power-Voltage Relationship:**

- **Inductive Loads:** Absorb reactive power and tend to lower the voltage.
- **Capacitive Loads:** Supply reactive power and tend to raise the voltage.
- **Voltage Regulation:** By adjusting reactive power, voltage levels can be controlled to remain within the acceptable range.

#### **Methods of Reactive Power Voltage Control**

##### **1. Shunt Capacitors and Reactors:**

- **Shunt Capacitors:** Connected in parallel with the load to provide reactive power support, raising the voltage when it is too low.
- **Shunt Reactors:** Connected in parallel to absorb excess reactive power, lowering the voltage when it is too high.

##### **2. Voltage Regulators:**

- **Purpose:** Automatically adjusts the voltage by changing the transformer tap settings.
- **Operation:** Includes on-load tap changers (OLTC) and off-load tap changers (OLTC), which adjust the turns ratio of transformers to maintain voltage levels.

##### **3. Synchronous Condensers:**

- **Purpose:** Operates like a rotating machine to supply or absorb reactive power as needed.
- **Operation:** A synchronous motor without a mechanical load that can adjust its reactive power output by changing its excitation.

##### **4. Static VAR Compensators (SVCs):**

- **Purpose:** Provides dynamic reactive power compensation to stabilize voltage.
- **Components:** Includes a combination of capacitors, reactors, and thyristors for rapid adjustment of reactive power.

##### **5. Static Synchronous Compensators (STATCOMs):**

- **Purpose:** Provides fast and flexible reactive power compensation to improve voltage stability.

# CHAPTER 3

## Economic operation of power systems

Mr.K.Suresh

The economic operation of power systems is aimed at minimizing the cost of generating and delivering electricity while ensuring that supply meets demand reliably and efficiently. This involves optimizing the generation mix, managing system resources, and minimizing operational costs while adhering to technical and regulatory constraints. Here's a detailed overview of the key aspects and strategies involved in the economic operation of power systems:

### 1. Objectives of Economic Operation

#### 1. Minimize Generation Costs:

- **Goal:** Reduce the total cost of electricity generation by selecting the most cost-effective generation sources.
- **Approach:** Utilize generation units with the lowest marginal cost first and then dispatch higher-cost units as needed.

#### 2. Optimize Fuel Usage:

- **Goal:** Use fuel resources efficiently to minimize fuel costs and emissions.
- **Approach:** Select generators based on fuel costs and efficiency.

#### 3. Ensure Reliability:

- **Goal:** Maintain system reliability while minimizing costs.
- **Approach:** Balance the economic operation with system reliability requirements, including reserve margins and contingency planning.

#### 4. Minimize Transmission and Distribution Losses:

- **Goal:** Reduce losses in the transmission and distribution network.
- **Approach:** Optimize generation and load distribution to minimize losses and improve efficiency.

#### 5. Consider Environmental Impacts:

- **Goal:** Incorporate environmental considerations into economic dispatch decisions.
- **Approach:** Factor in emissions and environmental regulations when selecting generation resources.

### 2. Economic Dispatch

Economic dispatch is the process of determining the optimal generation levels for each power plant to meet the total demand at the minimum cost. It involves the following steps:

#### 1. Load Forecasting:

- **Purpose:** Predict future electricity demand to plan generation accordingly.
- **Methods:** Use historical data, weather forecasts, and economic indicators to estimate future load.

#### 2. Cost Function Modeling:

- **Purpose:** Model the cost of generating electricity for each power plant.
- **Approach:** Use cost functions that include fixed and variable costs, fuel costs, and operational costs.

#### 3. Optimization Techniques:

- **Purpose:** Solve the economic dispatch problem to find the optimal generation levels.
- **Approaches:**
  - **Linear Programming (LP):** Used for systems with linear cost functions.
  - **Quadratic Programming (QP):** Used for systems with quadratic cost functions.
  - **Dynamic Programming (DP):** Used for multi-period optimization problems.

# CHAPTER 4

## Computer aided control of power system

Mr.D.Hariharan

Computer-aided control of power systems leverages advanced computing technologies and software tools to enhance the management, operation, and optimization of electrical power systems. This approach significantly improves efficiency, reliability, and real-time responsiveness. Here's an overview of how computer-aided control is used in power systems, including its applications, benefits, and key components:

### 1. Applications of Computer-Aided Control

#### 1. Real-Time Monitoring and Control:

- **Purpose:** Continuously monitor system parameters and control operations in real-time.
- **Tools:** Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) systems, Remote Terminal Units (RTUs), and Control Centers.
- **Functions:** Track voltage, current, frequency, and power flow; issue commands to control devices like circuit breakers and transformers.

#### 2. Economic Dispatch and Unit Commitment:

- **Purpose:** Optimize the generation of electricity to minimize costs while meeting demand.
- **Tools:** Optimization software and algorithms.
- **Functions:** Schedule generation resources and manage operational costs based on forecasts and demand patterns.

#### 3. Load Forecasting and Demand Response:

- **Purpose:** Predict future electricity demand and implement strategies to manage load.
- **Tools:** Forecasting models, machine learning algorithms.
- **Functions:** Predict demand patterns, manage load through demand response programs, and adjust generation accordingly.

#### 4. Power System Analysis and Simulation:

- **Purpose:** Analyze system performance, stability, and reliability under various scenarios.
- **Tools:** Power system simulation software (e.g., PSS/E, DIgSILENT PowerFactory).
- **Functions:** Perform load flow analysis, fault analysis, stability studies, and contingency planning.

#### 5. Protection and Fault Detection:

- **Purpose:** Ensure system safety and reliability by detecting and responding to faults.
- **Tools:** Protective relays, fault detection algorithms.
- **Functions:** Detect faults, isolate affected sections, and take corrective actions to prevent damage.

#### 6. Voltage and Reactive Power Control:

- **Purpose:** Maintain voltage levels and manage reactive power to ensure system stability.
- **Tools:** Voltage control systems, reactive power compensators.
- **Functions:** Adjust reactive power resources, manage voltage through transformers and capacitors.

#### 7. Integration of Renewable Energy:

- **Purpose:** Incorporate and manage renewable energy sources within the power grid.
- **Tools:** Renewable energy management systems (REMS), forecasting tools.
- **Functions:** Forecast renewable generation, integrate with the grid, manage variability.

#### 8. Grid Security and Resilience:

- **Purpose:** Enhance the security and resilience of the power grid against cyber threats and physical attacks.

# CHAPTER 5

## Introduction of power system operation

Mr.B.Arunpandiyam

The operation of a power system involves managing the generation, transmission, and distribution of electrical energy to ensure reliable, efficient, and safe delivery to consumers. It encompasses a range of activities from the real-time control of power flows to the long-term planning and optimization of resources. Here's an introduction to the key aspects of power system operation:

### 1. Power System Overview

A power system typically consists of three main components:

1. **Generation:**
  - **Purpose:** Convert various forms of energy (thermal, mechanical, solar, wind, etc.) into electrical energy.
  - **Components:** Power plants (e.g., coal, gas, nuclear, hydro, solar, wind), generators.
2. **Transmission:**
  - **Purpose:** Transport electrical energy from power plants to substations over long distances.
  - **Components:** High-voltage transmission lines, substations, transformers.
3. **Distribution:**
  - **Purpose:** Deliver electrical energy from substations to end-users (homes, businesses, industries).
  - **Components:** Low-voltage distribution lines, distribution transformers, feeders.

### 2. Key Objectives of Power System Operation

1. **Reliability:**
  - **Goal:** Ensure a continuous and uninterrupted supply of electricity.
  - **Strategies:** Implement redundancy, maintain reserves, and perform regular maintenance.
2. **Economic Efficiency:**
  - **Goal:** Minimize the cost of generating and delivering electricity.
  - **Strategies:** Optimize the generation mix, reduce operational costs, and manage resources effectively.
3. **Quality of Supply:**
  - **Goal:** Maintain the quality of electricity in terms of voltage and frequency.
  - **Strategies:** Monitor and control voltage levels, frequency, and power quality parameters.
4. **Safety:**
  - **Goal:** Protect personnel, equipment, and the public from electrical hazards.
  - **Strategies:** Implement safety protocols, conduct regular inspections, and use protective devices.
5. **Environmental Compliance:**
  - **Goal:** Minimize the environmental impact of power generation and transmission.
  - **Strategies:** Use cleaner energy sources, adhere to environmental regulations, and implement emission control technologies.

### 3. Operational Phases

1. **Real-Time Operation:**
  - **Purpose:** Manage and control the power system on a moment-to-moment basis.
  - **Activities:** Monitor system conditions, adjust generation and load, handle emergencies and faults.
  - **Tools:** SCADA systems, real-time monitoring, and control systems.

## **CHAPTER 6**

### **Basics of speed governing mechanism and modeling**

Mr.R.Elangovan

**Speed governing mechanisms** are essential in various mechanical and electrical systems to control the speed of engines, motors, and other rotating equipment. They are crucial in maintaining the desired speed, ensuring stability, and improving efficiency in applications ranging from automobiles to industrial machinery. Understanding the basics of speed governing mechanisms and their modeling helps in designing systems that can effectively manage speed variations and maintain optimal performance.

#### **Basics of Speed Governing Mechanisms:**

##### **Purpose:**

##### **Speed Control:**

- Maintains the desired speed of a rotating device, such as an engine or motor, despite variations in load or external conditions.

##### **Stability:**

- Ensures stable operation by adjusting the input power or fuel to compensate for changes in load or operating conditions.

##### **\*\*3. \*\* Efficiency:**

- Optimizes the efficiency of the system by adjusting the speed to match the required operating conditions.

#### **Types of Speed Governing Mechanisms:**

##### **Mechanical Governors:**

##### **Description:**

- Use mechanical components like flyweights and springs to regulate speed.

##### **Operation:**

- **Flyweight Governor:** Uses centrifugal forces generated by rotating flyweights to control the fuel or power input. As the speed increases, the flyweights move outward, which adjusts the fuel or throttle position to reduce speed.
- **Spring-Damper System:** Adjusts the throttle or fuel flow based on the spring's reaction to centrifugal force and the damping effect to stabilize the speed.

##### **Applications:**

- Used in internal combustion engines, such as in automotive engines and generators.

##### **Hydraulic Governors:**

##### **Description:**

- Use hydraulic fluid to control speed by adjusting the fuel or throttle position based on hydraulic pressure changes.

# CHAPTER 7

## State Variability Models

Dr.J.Sanjeevikumar

**State variability models** are used to represent and analyze systems where the state or conditions can change over time or in response to different scenarios. These models are crucial in various fields such as control systems, signal processing, finance, and many areas of engineering and science. They help in understanding how systems respond to changes and in designing robust systems that can handle variability effectively.

### Introduction to State Variability Models:

#### Purpose:

#### Represent System Behavior:

- Models how the state of a system evolves over time or in response to different inputs or conditions.

#### Analyze System Dynamics:

- Helps in analyzing the dynamic behavior of systems under various scenarios, including changes in inputs, environmental conditions, or internal states.

#### Design Robust Systems:

- Assists in designing systems that can handle variability and uncertainty, ensuring reliability and performance.

### Key Concepts:

#### State:

- The set of variables or conditions that define the current status of a system.

#### Variability:

- The ability of a system to change its state or behavior in response to different inputs or conditions.

#### Models:

- Representations of systems that include equations or algorithms describing how states change over time or in response to inputs.

### Types of State Variability Models:

#### State-Space Models:

#### Description:

- A mathematical framework used to model systems with multiple inputs and outputs by describing the system using state variables.

#### Components:

- **State Variables:** Represent the internal conditions of the system.
- **State Equations:** Describe how the state variables evolve over time based on inputs and current state.
- **Output Equations:** Relate the state variables to the system's outputs.



# CHAPTER 8

## Static and Dynamic Analysis of AVP

Mr.M.Anand

In the context of electrical and electronic systems, **AVP** often refers to **Automatic Voltage Regulators (AVR)** in power systems. To ensure the stability and performance of these systems, both static and dynamic analyses are essential. These analyses help in understanding how the system behaves under various conditions and how it responds to disturbances.

Here's a detailed breakdown of the **static and dynamic analysis** of Automatic Voltage Regulators (AVR):

### **Static Analysis of AVP (Automatic Voltage Regulator):**

#### **Purpose:**

#### **Determine Operating Point:**

- To find the steady-state operating conditions of the AVR and its impact on voltage regulation.

#### **Assess Performance Metrics:**

- Evaluate the performance of the AVR under constant or steady-state conditions, including its accuracy in maintaining voltage.

#### **Key Components:**

#### **Reference Voltage:**

- The voltage level that the AVR aims to maintain.

#### **Feedback Loop:**

- The mechanism through which the AVR adjusts the output voltage to match the reference voltage.

#### **Error Signal:**

- The difference between the measured output voltage and the reference voltage, used by the AVR to make adjustments.

### **Static Analysis Techniques:**

#### **Steady-State Analysis:**

- Analyze the AVR's performance at a constant operating point. Determine if the AVR maintains the desired voltage when there are no changes in load or input conditions.

#### **Load Regulation:**

- Measure how well the AVR maintains the output voltage as the load changes. This is usually expressed as a percentage of the change in output voltage relative to the change in load current.

#### **Line Regulation:**

- Assess how the AVR responds to changes in the input voltage. It measures the ability of the AVR to maintain a constant output voltage when the input voltage fluctuates.

## CHAPTER 9

### Constraints on UC Problem

Mr.D.Hariharan

The **Unit Commitment (UC) problem** is a crucial optimization problem in power systems operations. It involves scheduling the start-up and shut-down of power generating units to meet the forecasted demand while minimizing operational costs and adhering to various constraints.

#### Constraints on the Unit Commitment Problem

##### Technical Constraints:

##### Generation Capacity Constraints:

- **Minimum and Maximum Generation Limits:** Each unit has a minimum and maximum output level that it can operate within. The scheduled generation for each unit must be within these limits.
- **Ramp Rates:** The rate at which a generator can increase or decrease its output. This constraint ensures that the generator's output changes do not exceed its ramp-up or ramp-down capabilities.

##### Startup and Shutdown Constraints:

- **Minimum Up-Time and Down-Time:** After starting a unit, it must remain operational for a minimum period before it can be shut down. Similarly, a unit must remain off for a minimum period before it can be restarted.
- **Startup Costs:** Costs associated with bringing a unit online, which include fuel, labor, and other operational costs. These costs must be considered in the scheduling to minimize total operational costs.

##### Operational Constraints:

- **Transmission Limits:** The amount of power that can be transmitted over each line is limited by its capacity. The power generated and dispatched must respect these transmission constraints.
- **Voltage Limits:** Generators must operate within voltage limits to ensure system stability and to avoid damage to equipment.
- **Frequency Control:** Power generation must be balanced with demand to maintain the system frequency within acceptable limits.

##### Economic Constraints:

##### Cost Minimization:

- **Fuel Costs:** The cost of fuel for each generator must be minimized. This includes considering the fuel price and the efficiency of each generator.
- **Operating Costs:** Includes costs for maintenance, labor, and other operational factors. These must be factored into the total cost.

##### Reserve Requirements:

- **Spinning Reserve:** Extra capacity that must be online and available to take over in case of sudden demand increases or generator failures.
- **Non-Spinning Reserve:** Capacity that can be brought online quickly if needed. This reserve must be accounted for to ensure reliability.

# CHAPTER 10

## SCADA & EMS Functions

Mr.B.Arunpandiyan

**SCADA (Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition)** and **EMS (Energy Management System)** are critical components in modern industrial and energy management systems. They provide essential functions for monitoring, controlling, and optimizing various processes and systems. Here's a detailed overview of the functions of both SCADA and EMS:

### 1. SCADA (Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition)

#### Overview:

#### Definition:

- SCADA is a system used for remote control and monitoring of industrial processes. It collects data from sensors and devices, provides real-time visibility into system operations, and allows operators to control processes.

#### Components:

- **Field Devices:** Sensors, actuators, and controllers that collect and report data.
- **RTUs (Remote Terminal Units):** Collect data from field devices and send it to the SCADA system.
- **PLC (Programmable Logic Controllers):** Used to automate processes and control machinery.
- **SCADA Software:** Central system for data aggregation, visualization, and control.

#### Functions:

##### Data Acquisition:

- **Real-Time Monitoring:** Collects real-time data from sensors and field devices, such as temperature, pressure, flow rates, and levels.
- **Data Logging:** Stores historical data for analysis and reporting.

##### Control and Automation:

- **Process Control:** Allows operators to control processes remotely by sending commands to field devices and PLCs.
- **Automation:** Automates routine tasks and processes based on predefined conditions and rules.

##### Visualization and Display:

- **HMI (Human-Machine Interface):** Provides graphical user interfaces (GUIs) for operators to visualize system status and interact with the SCADA system.
- **Dashboards:** Displays real-time and historical data, alarms, and system performance metrics.

##### Alarm Management:

- **Alerting:** Generates alarms and notifications for abnormal conditions or system failures.
- **Alarm Handling:** Provides tools for managing and responding to alarms, including logging and tracking.

##### Data Analysis and Reporting:

- **Trend Analysis:** Analyzes historical data to identify trends and patterns.
- **Reporting:** Generates reports on system performance, operational metrics, and compliance.

# PROTECTION AND SWITCHGEAR

EDITED BY

B.ARUN PANDIYAN



978-93-6255-155-9

PROTECTION AND SWITCHGEAR  
Copyright © 2019 by Mr.B.Arunpandiyan

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-155-9

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Date of Publication : 08.04.19

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	<b>12</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1 - Protection schemes</b>	-	<b>42</b>
Dr.B.Kunjithapatham		
<b>CHAPTER 2 – Basics of relays</b>	-	<b>65</b>
Mrs. M.R.Geetha		
<b>CHAPTER 3 - Overview of equipment protection</b>	-	<b>80</b>
Mr.Mknm.Sakthi Nagaraj		
<b>CHAPTER 4 - Static relay and numerical protection</b>	-	<b>105</b>
Mr.R.Elangovan		
<b>CHAPTER 5 - Circuit breakers</b>	-	<b>125</b>
Mr.J.Prince Joshua Gladson		
<b>CHAPTER 6 - Methods of Grounding</b>	-	<b>136</b>
Dr.B.Kunjithapatham		
<b>CHAPTER 7 - Electromagnetic Relay</b>	-	<b>155</b>
Mrs. M.R.Geetha		
<b>CHAPTER 8 - Protection Transformer</b>	-	<b>176</b>
Mr. Mknm.Sakthi Nagaraj		
<b>CHAPTER 9 – Over current Protection</b>	-	<b>191</b>
Mr.R.Elangovan		
<b>CHAPTER 10 - Resistance Switching</b>	-	<b>206</b>
Mr.J.Prince Joshua Gladson		
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>210</b>

# CHAPTER 1

## Protection schemes

Dr.B.Kunjithapatham

Protection schemes are critical in power electronics and electrical systems to ensure safety, reliability, and longevity of equipment. For an IGBT-based three-phase PWM inverter, several protection schemes can be implemented to guard against various faults and abnormal conditions. Here's a detailed overview of common protection schemes:

### 1. Overcurrent Protection

- **Purpose:** Prevents damage to the IGBTs and other components by detecting and responding to excessive current flow.
- **Implementation:**
  - **Current Sensors:** Measures the current through the inverter and compares it to a pre-set threshold.
  - **Circuit Breakers/Fuses:** Automatically disconnects the circuit if the current exceeds a safe level.
  - **Overcurrent Relays:** Trips the circuit if the current exceeds the predefined limit.

### 2. Overvoltage Protection

- **Purpose:** Protects the inverter and connected equipment from voltage surges or spikes.
- **Implementation:**
  - **Varistors (MOVs):** Absorb transient overvoltages by clamping the voltage.
  - **TVS Diodes:** Suppress voltage spikes by clamping the voltage to a safe level.
  - **Snubber Circuits:** Dampen voltage spikes and oscillations, typically composed of resistors and capacitors.

### 3. Undervoltage Protection

- **Purpose:** Ensures that the inverter operates only under appropriate voltage conditions to prevent damage and malfunction.
- **Implementation:**
  - **Undervoltage Relays:** Detects if the input or output voltage falls below a set threshold and can disconnect the inverter or shut it down.
  - **Voltage Monitors:** Continuously check the voltage levels and trigger an alarm or shutdown if undervoltage conditions are detected.

### 4. Overtemperature Protection

- **Purpose:** Prevents overheating of IGBTs and other components, which can cause failures or reduce lifespan.
- **Implementation:**
  - **Temperature Sensors:** Monitor the temperature of critical components like IGBTs, heat sinks, and cooling systems.
  - **Thermal Protection Circuits:** Trigger an alarm or shutdown the inverter if the temperature exceeds a safe limit.
  - **Fan Control:** Adjusts the cooling fan speed based on temperature readings.

## CHAPTER 2

### Basics of relays

Mrs. M.R.Geetha

A relay is an electrically operated switch used to control a circuit by opening and closing contacts in another circuit. Relays allow a low-power signal to control a higher-power circuit, providing isolation and protection for sensitive components.

#### How Does a Relay Work?

1. **Electromagnet:** At the heart of a relay is an electromagnet, which consists of a coil of wire wound around a metal core. When an electric current passes through this coil, it generates a magnetic field.
2. **Armature:** The electromagnet pulls a movable component called the armature. This armature is mechanically linked to the relay's switch contacts.
3. **Contacts:** Relays typically have at least two sets of contacts:
  - **Normally Open (NO):** These contacts are open when the relay is not energized and close when the relay is activated.
  - **Normally Closed (NC):** These contacts are closed when the relay is not energized and open when the relay is activated.
4. **Spring:** A spring often keeps the armature in place when the electromagnet is not energized, ensuring that the relay's contacts return to their default positions.

#### Relay Operation

- **Control Circuit:** When a small control voltage is applied to the relay's coil, the electromagnet is energized.
- **Switching Action:** The magnetic field created by the electromagnet pulls the armature, which changes the position of the contacts.
- **Output Circuit:** This switching action allows the relay to control a larger load, such as turning on a motor or switching a high-power device.

#### Types of Relays

1. **Electromechanical Relays (EMR):** Use an electromagnet to move contacts. Common in many applications but can wear out over time.
2. **Solid-State Relays (SSR):** Use semiconductor components to switch circuits without moving parts. More durable and faster but often more expensive.
3. **Reed Relays:** Use a pair of reeds (metallic blades) inside a glass tube that are attracted to each other by an electromagnet.
4. **Hybrid Relays:** Combine the features of electromechanical and solid-state relays to offer a balance of performance and durability.

#### Applications

- **Automotive:** To control high-current devices like lights or starters.
- **Home Automation:** For switching high-power appliances.
- **Industrial Control:** In machinery to handle various functions.
- **Telecommunications:** For switching signals and circuits.



# CHAPTER 3

## Overview of equipment protection

Mr. Mknm.Sakthi Nagaraj

Equipment protection is crucial in electrical and electronic systems to ensure their reliable and safe operation. It involves implementing various measures and devices designed to prevent, detect, and mitigate faults and abnormal conditions that could cause damage to equipment or pose safety hazards. Here's an overview of the key aspects of equipment protection:

### 1. Types of Protection

#### Overcurrent Protection

- **Purpose:** Protects against excessive current that can cause overheating and damage to equipment.
- **Devices:** Circuit breakers, fuses, current limiters, and relays.
- **Mechanisms:** Devices detect when current exceeds a certain threshold and interrupt the circuit to prevent damage.

#### Overvoltage Protection

- **Purpose:** Guards against voltage spikes that can damage insulation and equipment.
- **Devices:** Metal Oxide Varistors (MOVs), Transient Voltage Suppression (TVS) diodes, and surge protectors.
- **Mechanisms:** These devices clamp or divert excess voltage away from sensitive components.

#### Undervoltage Protection

- **Purpose:** Ensures equipment operates only under proper voltage conditions.
- **Devices:** Undervoltage relays and voltage monitors.
- **Mechanisms:** Disconnects the load or triggers an alarm if the voltage drops below a set level.

#### Overtemperature Protection

- **Purpose:** Prevents equipment from overheating, which can cause failure or reduce lifespan.
- **Devices:** Thermal sensors, temperature switches, and thermal cutoffs.
- **Mechanisms:** Devices monitor temperature and shut down the equipment or reduce load if temperatures exceed safe limits.

#### Short Circuit Protection

- **Purpose:** Protects against high-current faults due to short circuits.
- **Devices:** Circuit breakers, fuses, and electronic short-circuit protectors.
- **Mechanisms:** Quickly disconnects the circuit to prevent damage and potential fire hazards.

#### Ground Fault Protection

- **Purpose:** Detects and isolates ground faults to prevent electrical shocks and equipment damage.
- **Devices:** Ground fault relays, Residual Current Devices (RCDs), and Earth Leakage Circuit Breakers (ELCBs).
- **Mechanisms:** Detect leakage currents to ground and interrupt the circuit if a fault is detected.

# CHAPTER 4

## Static relay and numerical protection

Mr.R.Elangovan

Static relays and numerical protection relays represent advanced technologies in the field of electrical protection and control. Here's a breakdown of both:

### Static Relays

**Static relays** are a type of relay that uses electronic circuits instead of mechanical moving parts to perform switching functions. Here are some key features:

1. **Operation Principle:**
  - Static relays operate using solid-state electronic components such as transistors, diodes, and integrated circuits.
  - They rely on electronic sensing and logic circuits to detect fault conditions and control switching.
2. **Advantages:**
  - **Reliability:** Fewer moving parts compared to electromechanical relays, leading to greater reliability and longevity.
  - **Speed:** Faster response time due to the absence of mechanical delays.
  - **Accuracy:** Enhanced accuracy and stability in detecting faults or abnormal conditions.
  - **Size:** Typically more compact than mechanical relays.
3. **Applications:**
  - Often used in modern electrical protection systems for various types of equipment, including generators, transformers, and transmission lines.

### Numerical Protection Relays

**Numerical protection relays** (or digital relays) are an advanced form of protection relay that uses digital processing techniques to perform protection functions. Key features include:

1. **Operation Principle:**
  - Numerical relays use digital signal processing (DSP) to analyze input signals from current and voltage transformers.
  - They employ microprocessors or digital controllers to perform complex calculations, including algorithms for fault detection, signal processing, and decision-making.
2. **Advantages:**
  - **Flexibility:** Capable of implementing a wide range of protection functions and algorithms. They can be reconfigured or updated through software changes.
  - **Precision:** High accuracy in detecting and analyzing faults due to advanced digital processing techniques.
  - **Integration:** Can integrate multiple functions (e.g., protection, control, monitoring, and communication) into a single device.
  - **Data Logging:** Ability to record and analyze historical data and events, which aids in troubleshooting and system analysis.
3. **Applications:**
  - Commonly used in modern substations, power plants, and industrial facilities to protect equipment and ensure system reliability.
  - Suitable for complex protection schemes involving multiple elements and coordination.

# CHAPTER 5

## Circuit breakers

Mr.J.Prince Joshua Gladson

Circuit breakers are crucial components in electrical systems, providing protection against overcurrents, short circuits, and other fault conditions. They automatically interrupt the circuit to prevent damage to equipment and ensure safety. Here's a comprehensive overview of circuit breakers, including their types, functions, and characteristics:

### Types of Circuit Breakers

#### 1. Miniature Circuit Breakers (MCBs)

- **Function:** Protects against overloads and short circuits in low-voltage electrical circuits.
- **Operation:** Mechanically trips when current exceeds a certain threshold. Designed for residential and light commercial applications.
- **Characteristics:**
  - Trip Characteristics: B, C, or D curves, defining how they trip based on the level of overcurrent.
  - Typically rated up to 100A and used in low-voltage circuits.

#### 2. Residual Current Circuit Breakers (RCCBs) or Residual Current Devices (RCDs)

- **Function:** Detects earth faults or leakage currents and disconnects the circuit to prevent electric shock or fire.
- **Operation:** Measures the imbalance between live and neutral currents. Trips when the imbalance exceeds a predefined threshold (e.g., 30 mA).
- **Characteristics:**
  - Sensitivity: Typically 30 mA for personal protection and up to 300 mA for equipment protection.
  - Used in conjunction with MCBs for comprehensive protection.

#### 3. Miniature Circuit Breaker with Residual Current Protection (MCB-RCCB)

- **Function:** Combines overcurrent protection (MCB) and earth fault protection (RCCB) in a single unit.
- **Operation:** Provides both overload/short circuit protection and leakage current detection.
- **Characteristics:**
  - Combines features of MCBs and RCCBs.
  - Provides space and cost savings by integrating both functions.

#### 4. Air Circuit Breakers (ACBs)

- **Function:** Protects high-voltage circuits and equipment from overloads, short circuits, and other faults.
- **Operation:** Uses air as the arc-extinguishing medium. Operates through mechanical mechanisms.
- **Characteristics:**
  - Rated for high current applications, from 400A to several thousand amps.
  - Typically used in industrial and commercial power distribution.

#### 5. Oil Circuit Breakers (OCBs)

- **Function:** Used for high-voltage circuit protection, where oil acts as both an insulating and arc-extinguishing medium.
- **Operation:** The circuit breaker contacts are submerged in oil, which cools the arc and provides insulation.
- **Characteristics:**
  - Suitable for high-voltage applications.
  - Requires maintenance due to the oil.

# CHAPTER 6

## Methods of Grounding

Dr.B.Kunjithapatham

**Grounding** (or earthing) is a fundamental practice in electrical systems and electronic devices to ensure safety, reliability, and performance. It involves creating a safe path for electrical faults to be directed away from sensitive components and people. There are several methods of grounding, each serving different purposes and applications. Here's an overview of the primary grounding methods:

### Types of Grounding:

#### Safety Grounding:

##### Purpose:

- **Protection of Personnel:** Prevents electric shock hazards by ensuring that exposed conductive parts are at the same potential as the ground.
- **Fault Current Path:** Provides a low-resistance path for fault currents to safely dissipate into the earth.

#### Common Methods:

- **Single-Point Grounding (Star Grounding):** A single grounding point is used to connect all equipment and system grounds. This minimizes ground loops and potential differences.
- **Multiple Grounding Points:** Used in certain systems where a single point isn't practical. Care must be taken to avoid ground loops and potential differences.

#### Signal Grounding:

##### Purpose:

- **Minimize Noise:** Reduces electrical noise and interference in signal lines by providing a stable reference point.
- **Signal Integrity:** Ensures accurate signal transmission and measurement.

#### Common Methods:

- **Floating Ground:** The signal ground is isolated from the earth ground. Used in some high-impedance or differential systems to reduce noise.
- **Single-Ended Ground:** The signal ground and the reference ground are the same, simplifying the design but potentially introducing noise.

#### System Grounding:

##### Purpose:

- **Stabilize System Voltage:** Ensures that the voltage levels in an electrical system are stable relative to the earth.
- **Protect Equipment:** Reduces damage from electrical faults and surges.

#### Common Methods:

- **Solid Grounding:** The neutral point of a transformer or generator is directly connected to the ground, providing a low-resistance path for fault currents.
- **Resistance Grounding:** A resistor is placed between the neutral point and the ground to limit the fault current and reduce damage.
- **Reactance Grounding:** An inductor or reactor is used to limit the fault current. Often used in systems where high fault currents could cause equipment damage.

# CHAPTER 7

## Electromagnetic Relay

Mrs. M.R.Geetha

An **electromagnetic relay** is an electrical switch that uses an electromagnet to mechanically operate a switch. It is commonly used in various electrical and electronic applications to control a circuit by opening or closing contacts in response to an input signal. Relays are essential in automation, signal isolation, and circuit protection.

### Working Principle:

#### Electromagnetic Operation:

- When a current flows through the relay's coil, it generates a magnetic field.
- This magnetic field attracts a movable armature that is mechanically connected to the relay's switch contacts.

#### Switching Mechanism:

- **Attraction:** The magnetic field created by the energized coil attracts the armature, causing it to move and change the position of the switch contacts.
- **Deactivation:** When the coil is de-energized, the magnetic field collapses, and a spring or gravity returns the armature to its original position, restoring the switch contacts to their default state.

### Components of an Electromagnetic Relay:

#### Coil:

- A wire wound around a core that generates a magnetic field when current passes through it.

#### Armature:

- A movable component that is attracted by the magnetic field created by the coil. It is connected to the switch contacts.

#### Contacts:

- **Normally Open (NO):** Contacts that are open (disconnected) when the relay is not energized and close (connect) when the relay is energized.
- **Normally Closed (NC):** Contacts that are closed (connected) when the relay is not energized and open (disconnected) when the relay is energized.
- **Common (COM):** The common terminal that connects to either the NO or NC contact, depending on the relay's state.

#### Spring:

- A mechanical component that returns the armature to its default position when the coil is de-energized.

#### Enclosure:

- The protective casing that houses the relay components.

# **CHAPTER 8**

## **Protection Transformer**

Mr. Mknm.Sakthi Nagaraj

**Protection transformers** are specialized transformers used to protect electrical systems by isolating them from potential faults and disturbances. These transformers are integral to maintaining the stability and safety of power systems, especially in high-voltage and high-current applications. They are designed to provide isolation, ensure accurate monitoring, and protect both equipment and personnel.

### **Purpose and Function:**

#### **Isolation:**

- **Purpose:** Provides electrical isolation between high-voltage power systems and control or measurement equipment. This isolation helps in preventing electrical faults from affecting sensitive equipment.
- **Function:** By isolating the primary circuit from the secondary circuit, protection transformers help to protect measurement and control devices from high-voltage surges or faults.

#### **Signal Transformation:**

- **Purpose:** Converts high voltages or currents to lower, manageable levels for metering and protection devices.
- **Function:** Allows standard measuring and protection equipment to handle high-voltage and high-current signals safely.

#### **Fault Detection:**

- **Purpose:** Helps in detecting and isolating faults within the electrical system.
- **Function:** Protection transformers are used in conjunction with protective relays to sense abnormal conditions and trigger protective actions, such as circuit breaker operation.

### **Types of Protection Transformers:**

#### **Potential Transformer (PT):**

##### **Description:**

- Also known as a Voltage Transformer (VT), a PT steps down high voltages to lower, safer levels for measurement and protection.

##### **Function:**

- Provides accurate voltage measurement and isolation for protective relays and meters.
- Ensures that high-voltage signals can be safely monitored and controlled.

##### **Applications:**

- Voltage measurement in power systems.
- Input to voltage-based protective relays.

#### **Current Transformer (CT):**

##### **Description:**

- A CT steps down high currents to lower, manageable levels for measurement and protection.

# CHAPTER 9

## Over current Protection

Mr.R.Elangovan

**Overcurrent protection** is a critical component of electrical systems designed to protect circuits and equipment from damage caused by excessive current. Overcurrent can occur due to various reasons such as short circuits, overloads, or equipment failures. Effective overcurrent protection ensures the safety, reliability, and longevity of electrical systems.

### Types of Overcurrent Protection:

#### Circuit Breakers:

##### Description:

- Circuit breakers are automatic switching devices that interrupt the current flow when it exceeds a predefined threshold.

##### Types:

- **Miniature Circuit Breakers (MCBs):** Protect against overloads and short circuits in residential and commercial settings.
- **Earth Leakage Circuit Breakers (ELCBs):** Protect against earth faults by detecting leakage currents to the ground.
- **Molded Case Circuit Breakers (MCCBs):** Used in industrial settings, providing adjustable settings for overload and short-circuit protection.
- **Air Circuit Breakers (ACBs):** Designed for high-voltage and high-current applications, offering adjustable settings and protection features.

##### Operation:

- **Thermal Trip:** Operates based on thermal expansion caused by excessive current.
- **Magnetic Trip:** Operates based on electromagnetic forces generated by high currents.

##### Applications:

- Protecting distribution panels, feeders, and individual circuits.

#### Fuses:

##### Description:

- Fuses are sacrificial devices that interrupt the circuit when the current exceeds a specific rating by melting the fuse element.

##### Types:

- **Cartridge Fuses:** Cylindrical fuses used in industrial applications.
- **Glass Tube Fuses:** Common in residential and small commercial applications.
- **Dual Element Fuses:** Designed to handle both overload and short-circuit conditions.

##### Operation:

- **Melting:** The fuse element melts when the current exceeds the fuse's rating, breaking the circuit and stopping the current flow.

##### Applications:

- Protection of transformers, motors, and circuits in various settings.

# CHAPTER 10

## Resistance Switching

Mr.J.Prince Joshua Gladson

**Resistance switching** is a technique used in electrical systems to manage and mitigate the effects of switching large inductive loads, such as transformers and motors. It involves the use of resistors to control the inrush current and reduce the electrical stresses on circuit components when the circuit is closed or opened. This is particularly important in systems where high current or voltage transients could otherwise cause damage or excessive wear.

### Purpose of Resistance Switching:

#### Control Inrush Current:

- **Purpose:** Mitigates the high inrush current that occurs when large inductive loads are initially energized. This inrush current can be several times the normal operating current.
- **Function:** By introducing a resistor into the circuit during switching, the initial surge of current is limited.

#### Reduce Electrical Stress:

- **Purpose:** Minimizes the electrical stress on switching devices such as circuit breakers, contactors, and switches.
- **Function:** Reduces the arcing and potential damage that can occur due to high inrush currents and transients.

#### Enhance System Reliability:

- **Purpose:** Improves the longevity and reliability of electrical components by reducing the mechanical and thermal stresses associated with switching.
- **Function:** Helps in maintaining the performance and operational lifespan of the system.

### How Resistance Switching Works:

#### Resistor Insertion:

- **Initial Switching:** When the circuit is closed, a series resistor is initially inserted into the circuit. This resistor limits the current flow and controls the rate at which the load is energized.
- **Switching Action:** As the load current stabilizes and the transient effects diminish, the resistor is gradually removed or bypassed by a switch or relay.

#### Transient Management:

- **Current Limiting:** The resistor limits the current to a safe level during the switching period, preventing excessive currents from flowing through the circuit.
- **Voltage Control:** Helps in managing voltage transients that can occur during the switching process, reducing the risk of insulation failure or equipment damage.

#### Switching Mechanism:

- **Mechanical Switches:** Physical switches or contactors can be used to insert or bypass the resistor.
- **Automatic Relays:** Electromechanical or electronic relays can control the resistor switching process based on load conditions.



# POWER ELECTRONICS LAB

Edited by

**Mrs.N.Arthi**



978-93-6255-766-7

POWER ELECTRONICS LAB  
Copyright © 2019 by Mrs.N.Arthi

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-766-7

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Date of Publication : 10.3.19

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	<b>05</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1</b> - Characteristics of SCR and TRIAC	-	<b>16</b>
Mrs.N.Arthi		
<b>CHAPTER 2</b> – Characteristics of MOSFET and IGBT	-	<b>20</b>
Mrs.N.Arthi		
<b>CHAPTER 3</b> - AC to DC half controlled converter	-	<b>25</b>
Mrs.N.Arthi		
<b>CHAPTER 4</b> - AC to DC fullycontrolled converter	-	<b>29</b>
Mrs.N.Arthi		
<b>CHAPTER 5</b> – IGBT based three phase PWM inverter	-	<b>34</b>
Mrs.N.Arthi		
<b>CHAPTER 6</b> – AC Voltage Controller	-	<b>37</b>
Mrs.N.Arthi		
<b>CHAPTER 7</b> – Switched mode power converter	-	<b>42</b>
Mrs.N.Arthi		
<b>CHAPTER 8</b> – Characteristics of GTO	-	<b>44</b>
Mrs.N.Arthi		
<b>CHAPTER 9</b> – Characteristics of PMBLDC motor	-	<b>48</b>
Mrs.N.Arthi		
<b>CHAPTER 10</b> – Dynamic Characteristics of SCR and MOSFET	-	<b>50</b>
Mrs.N.Arthi		

# CHAPTER 1

## Characteristics of SCR and TRIAC

Mrs.N.Arthi

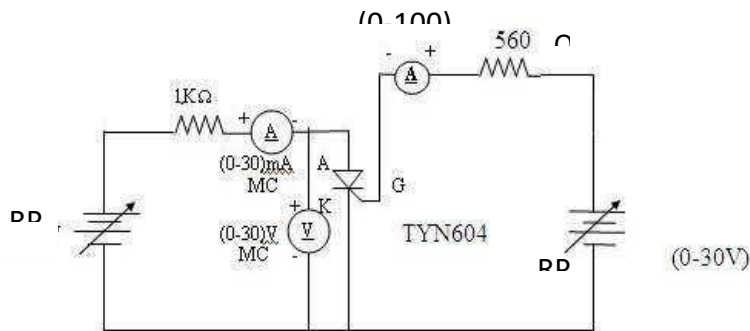
**AIM :**

To determine the VI characteristics of Silicon Controlled Rectifier.

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:**

S.No.	APPARATUS	RANGE	TYPE	QUANTITY
1	SCR	TYN 604		1
2	Regulated Power Supply	(0-30) V		1
3	Voltmeter	(0-30) V	MC	1
4	Ammeter	(0-30)mA	MC	1
5	Ammeter	(0-100) $\mu$ A	MC	1
6	Resistor	1 k $\Omega$ ,560 $\Omega$		1
8	Connecting wires			Few

**CIRCUIT DIAGRAM:**



**TABULAR COLUMN:SCR**

Status	$V_{AK}$ (V)	$I_A$ (mA)	$I_G$ (mA)

**RESULT:**

Thus the Characteristics of SCR and the Output waveforms were obtained.

## CHAPTER 2

### Characteristics of MOSFET and IGBT

Mrs.N.Arthi

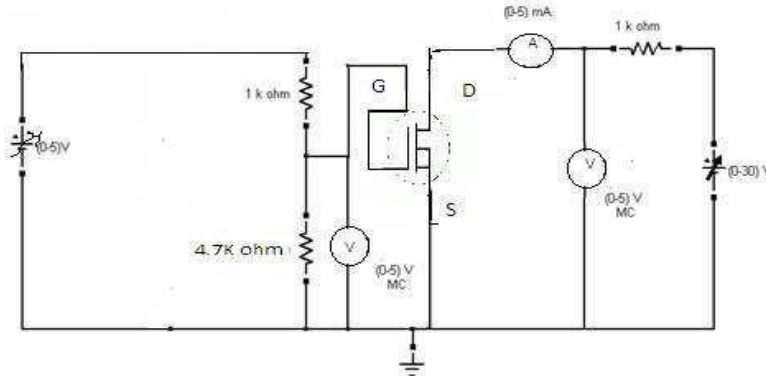
**AIM:**

To determine the characteristics of MOSFET & IGBT.

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:**

S.No.	APPARATUS	RANGE	TYPE	QUANTITY
1	MOSFET & IGBT Module kit	220 V / 5 A		1
2	Regulated Power Supply	(0-15) V		1
3	Regulated Power Supply	(0-30) V		1
4	Voltmeter	(0-5) V	MC	1
5	Voltmeter	(0-30) V	MC	1
6	Ammeter	(0-5) mA	MC	1
7	Resistor	4.7 KΩ, 1 kΩ		1
8	Patch Chords			10

**CIRCUIT DIAGRAM:**



**TABULAR COLUMN (MOSFET):**

**DRAIN CHARACTERISTICS:**

S.No	$V_{GS} = \dots(V)$		$V_{GS} = \dots(V)$	
	$V_{DS} (mV)$	$I_D (mA)$	$V_{DS} (mV)$	$I_D (mA)$

**RESULT:**

Thus the Characteristics of MOSFET & IGBT were obtained.

# CHAPTER 3

## AC to DC half controlled converter

Mrs.N.Arthi

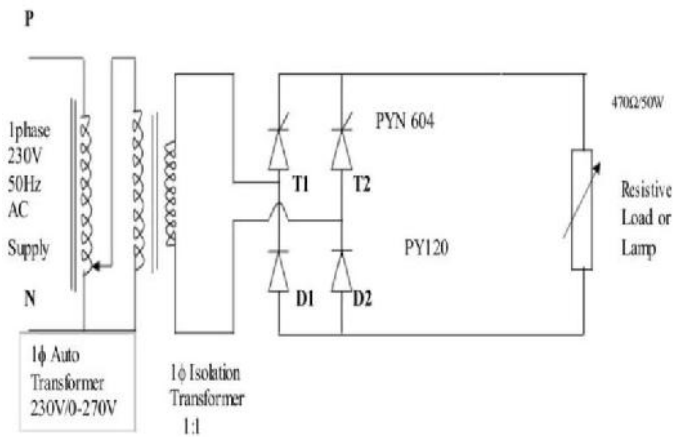
**AIM:**

To construct a single phase half controlled Converter and plot its output response.

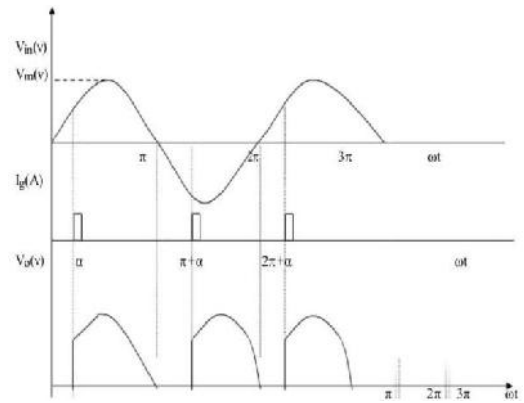
**APPARATUS REQUIRED:**

S.NO.	APPARATUS	RANGE	TYPE	QUANTITY
1	Half controlled Converter Power circuit kit	1, 230V,10A	-	1
3	SCR firing circuit kit	1 ,230V,5A	-	1
4	Isolation Transformer	230V/115-55-0-55-115	-	1
5	Auto-transformer	230V/0-270V, 4A	-	1
6	Loading Rheostat	100 / 2A	-	1
7	CRO	20MHz	-	1
8	Patch chords			Few

**CIRCUIT DIAGRAM**



**MODEL GRAPH**



**TABULAR COLUMN:**  $V_{in} = \text{---} V$

S.No.	Firing Angle (Degree)	Time Period		Output Voltage Vo(Volts)	
		T <sub>on</sub>	T <sub>off</sub>	Practical	Theoretical

**RESULT:**

Thus a single phase half controlled Converter and plot its output response

## CHAPTER 4

### AC to DC fully controlled converter

Mrs.N.Arthi

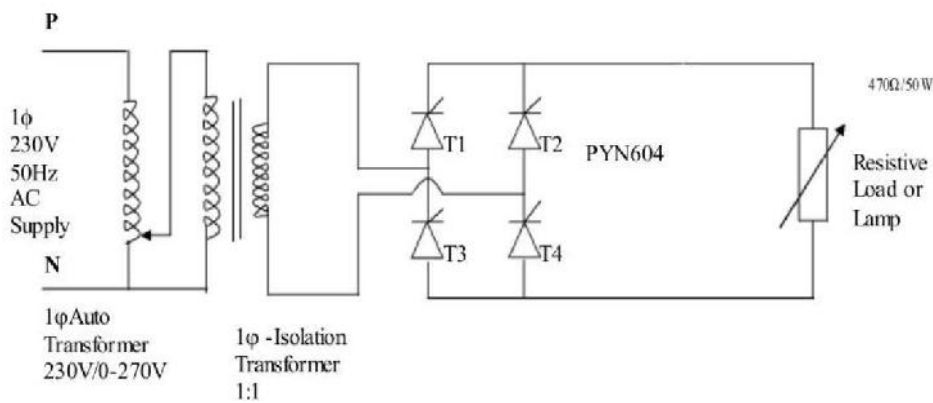
**AIM:**

To construct a single phase fully controlled Converter and plot its response.

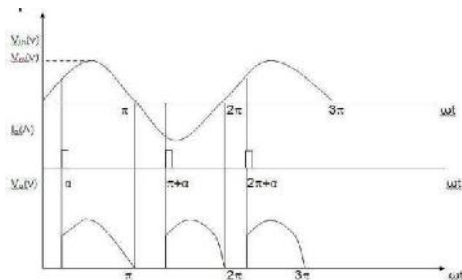
**APPARATUS REQUIRED:**

S.NO	ITEM	RANGE	TYPE	QUANTIT Y
1	Fully controlled Converter Powercircuit kit	1, 230V,10A	-	1
3	SCR firing circuit kit	1 ,230V,5A	-	1
4	Isolation Transformer	230V/115-55-0-55-115	-	1
5	Auto-transformer	230V/0-270V, 4A	-	1
6	Loading Rheostat	100 / 2A	-	1
7	CRO	20MHz	-	1
8	Patch chords	-	-	Few

**CIRCUIT DIAGRAM**



**MODEL GRAPH**



**RESULT:**

Thus a single-phase fully controlled converter was constructed and their responses were plotted.

## CHAPTER 5

### IGBT based three phase PWM inverter

Mrs.N.Arthi

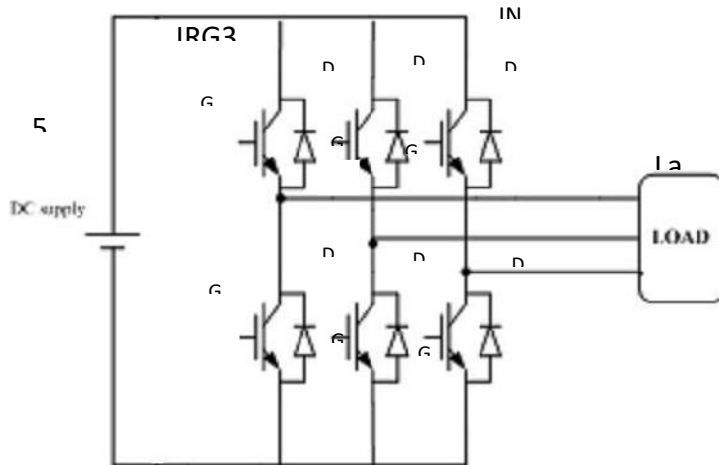
**AIM:**

To obtain three phase output wave forms for IGBT based PWM inverter

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:**

S.No.	ITEM	RANGE	TYPE	QUANTITY
1	IGBT Based PWM inverter Kit	220/10A		1
2	CRO	20MHZ		1
3	Patch Chord	-		Few
4	Load rheostat	50/5A		1

**CIRCUIT DIAGRAM**



**TABULAR COLUMN:**

S.No.	Conduction Mode	V <sub>out</sub> (Volts)	Time Period(ms)		Time (ms)
			T <sub>on</sub>	T <sub>off</sub>	

**RESULT:**

Thus the output waveform for IGBT inverter (PWM) was obtained.



## CHAPTER 6

### AC Voltage Controller

Mrs.N.Arthi

#### AIM:

To study the Single-phase AC voltage control using TRIAC with DIAC or UJT Firing Circuit.

#### APPARATUS REQUIRED:

S. No.	APPARATUS	RANGE	QUANTITY
1	AC voltage control trainer kit		
2	Lamp	60w	1
3	Resistor	100 ohm/1WKohm	1
4	DIAC	DB3	1
5	TRIAC	BT 136	1
6	CRO		1
7	Patch Chords		15

#### CIRCUIT OPERATION:

1. When potentiometer is in minimum position drop across potentiometer is zero and hence maximum voltage is available across capacitor. This  $V_c$  shorts the diac ( $V_c > V_{bo}$ ) and triggers the triac turning triac to ON – state there lamp glows with maximum intensity.
2. When the potentiometer is in maximum position voltage drop across potentiometer is maximum. Hence minimum voltage is available across capacitor ( $V_c < V_{bo}$ ) hence triac is not triggered hence lamp does not glow.
3. When potentiometer is in medium position a small voltage is available across capacitor hence lamp glows with minimum intensity.

#### TABULAR COLUMN

S.No	$V_o$ (Volts)	$V_{in}$ (Volts)	$T_{on}$ (ms)	$T_{off}$ (ms)	Firing Angle (Degree)

#### RESULT:

Thus the operation and performance of the single phase AC voltage control using TRIAC is done and output Verified

# CHAPTER 7

## Switched mode power converter

Mrs.N.Arthi

**AIM:**

To construct a switched mode power Converter and find its efficiency.

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:**

S.NO.	APPARATUS	RANGE	TYPE	QUANTITY
1	Switched mode power converter kit	(0-30V),AC input	-	1
3	Ammeter	(0-1A)	MC	2
4	Voltmeter	(0-30V)	-	2
5	Loading Rheostat	100 / 2A	-	1
6	Connecting wires	-	-	Required

**PROCEDURE:**

1. Make the connections as per the circuit diagram.
2. Connect the mains card to the 220V AC and note the regulated DC output as 10V in the voltmeter.
3. Connect a Rheostat of 100 / 2A across output voltmeter and measure the load current in the Ammeter.
4. Increase the load from the rheostat and note that there is no decrease from the output voltage 10VDC.
5. Note down the voltmeter reading.
6. Switch off the power supply and disconnect.

**TABULAR COLUMN**

S.No.	V <sub>in</sub> (Volts)	V <sub>out</sub> (Volts)	I <sub>t</sub> (Amps)	Regulation (%)

**RESULT:**

Thus a Switched mode power converter was constructed and found out the efficiency.

## CHAPTER 8

### Characteristics of GTO

Mrs.N.Arthi

**AIM:**

To determine the static characteristics of Gate Turn off Thyristor.

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:**

S.No.	APPARATUS	RANGE	TYPE	QUANTITY
1	GTO unit	BTV 68 750 R		1
2	Regulated Power Supply	(0-30) V		2
3	Voltmeter	(0-30) V	MC	1
4	Ammeter	(0-30)mA	MC	1
5	Ammeter	(0-15)mA	MC	1
6	Connecting wires			Few

**PROCEDURE:**

1. Connections are made as shown in the diagram
2. Set the voltage between anode and cathode as anode is made positive with respect to cathode (18V)
3. Set the voltage between gate and cathode as gate is made positive with respect to cathode for turn on the GTO (3.3V)
4. Vary the gate current by varying the potentiometer
5. Note the different values for  $V_{ak}$  ,  $I_g$  &  $I_{ak}$  and make gate current constant (at threshold)
6. Draw the graph between  $V_{ak}$  and  $I_g$
7. Make the gate voltage zero and gate current pot to minimum. Still the device will be in on state
8. Set the voltage between gate and cathode (-3.3V) as gate is made negative with respect to cathode for turn off the GTO
9. Vary the gate current (negative). Now the device will come to the off state
10. Note the different values for  $V_{ak}$  and  $I_g$  and make negative gate current constant (at threshold)
11. Draw the graph between  $V_{ak}$  and  $I_g$

**RESULT:**

Thus the Static Characteristics of GTO was obtained.

## CHAPTER 9

### Characteristics of PMBLDC motor

Mrs.N.Arthi

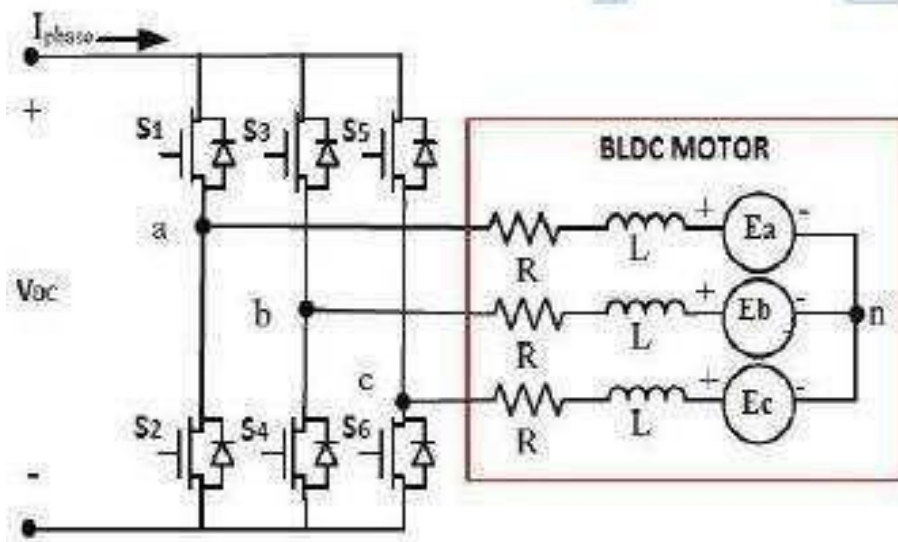
#### AIM:

To study the open and closed loop Characteristics of PMBLDC motor.

#### APPARATUS REQUIRED:

1. PEC16DSMOITrainer
2. Micro-2812Trainer
3. BLDC Motor 4
4. RPS(0-30V)
5. Hall sensor signal conditioner
6. Cables

#### PMBLDC MOTOR Characteristics:



#### RESULT:

Thus the open and closed loop Characteristics of PMBLDC motor operation were studied and its output waveform were plotted.

# CHAPTER 10

## Dynamic Characteristics of SCR and MOSFET

Mrs.N.Arthi

**AIM:**

To determine the Dynamic characteristics of Silicon Controlled Rectifier.

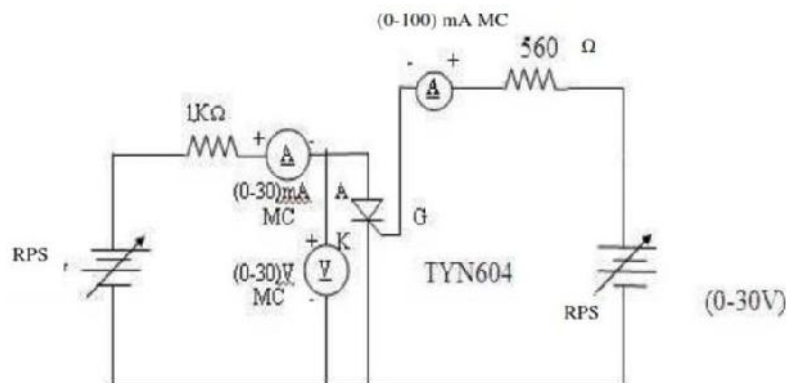
**APPARATUS REQUIRED:**

S.No.	APPARATUS	RANGE	TYPE	QUANTITY
1	SCR	TYN 604		1
2	Regulated Power Supply	(0-30) V		1
3	Voltmeter	(0-30) V	MC	1
4	Ammeter	(0-30)mA	MC	1
5	Ammeter	(0-100) $\mu$ A	MC	1
6	Resistor	1 k $\Omega$ ,560 $\Omega$		1
8	Connecting wires			Few

**PROCEDURE:**

1. To determine the Characteristics of SCR
  1. Make the connections as per the circuit diagram
  2. Switch on the supply
  3. Set the gate current at a fixed value by varying RPS on the gate-cathode side
  4. Increase the voltage applied to anode-cathode side from zero until breakdown occurs.
  5. Note down the breakdown voltage.
  6. Draw the graph between anode to cathode voltage ( $v_{ak}$ ) and anode current( $i_a$ )

**CIRCUIT DIAGRAM (SCR):**



**RESULT:**

Thus the Dynamic Characteristics of SCR were obtained.

# MEASUREMENTS AND INSTRUMENTATIONS

Edited by

**D.HARIHARAN**



978-93-6255-550-2

MEASUREMENTS AND INSTRUMENTATIONS

Copyright © 2019 by Mr.D.Hariharan

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-550-2

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

Date of Publication : 12.2.19

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	<b>15</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1</b> - Concept of measurements	-	<b>45</b>
Dr.P.Avirajamanjula		
<b>CHAPTER 2</b> – Measurements parameters in electrical systems	-	<b>65</b>
Dr.J.Sanjeevikumar		
<b>CHAPTER 3</b> - AC/DC bridges and instrumentation amplifier	-	<b>72</b>
Dr.B.Kunjithapatham		
<b>CHAPTER 4</b> - Transducers for measurement of non-electrical parameters	-	<b>90</b>
Mrs. M.R.Geetha		
<b>CHAPTER 5</b> – Digital instrumentation	-	<b>120</b>
Mr. .Sakthi Nagaraj		
<b>CHAPTER 6</b> – PMMC Instruments	-	<b>131</b>
Dr.P.Avirajamanjula		
<b>CHAPTER 7</b> – PMMI Instruments	-	<b>145</b>
Dr.J.Sanjeevikumar		
<b>CHAPTER 8</b> – Energy Meter	-	<b>161</b>
Dr.B.Kunjithapatham		
<b>CHAPTER 9</b> – Potential transformer and Current transformer	-	<b>182</b>
Mrs. M.R.Geetha		
<b>CHAPTER 10</b> – Digital Signal Oscilloscope	-	<b>201</b>
Mr. Mknm. Sakthi Nagaraj		
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>213</b>



# CHAPTER 1

## Concept of measurements

Dr.P.Avirajamanjula

Measurement is a fundamental concept in science, engineering, and technology, involving the determination of the magnitude, quantity, or extent of a particular property or phenomenon. Accurate measurements are essential for understanding, designing, and controlling systems and processes. Here's a detailed look at the concept of measurements, including key principles, types, and methodologies:

### 1. Basic Principles of Measurement

#### a. Measurement Process:

- **Definition:** The process of obtaining a numerical value for a physical quantity.
- **Components:**
  - Quantity Being Measured:** The physical property or parameter (e.g., length, mass, temperature).
  - Measuring Instrument:** The device or tool used (e.g., ruler, scale, thermometer).
  - Measurement Units:** The standard units used to express the result (e.g., meters, kilograms, degrees Celsius).

#### b. Units of Measurement:

- **SI Units (International System of Units):** The standard system used globally. Examples include:
  - Length:** Meter (m)
  - Mass:** Kilogram (kg)
  - Time:** Second (s)
  - Temperature:** Kelvin (K)
- **Imperial Units:** Used in some countries and include units such as feet, pounds, and Fahrenheit.

#### c. Accuracy and Precision:

- **Accuracy:** The closeness of a measured value to the true or accepted value. It indicates how correct a measurement is.
- **Precision:** The consistency or repeatability of measurements. It indicates how close measurements are to each other, regardless of accuracy.

#### d. Error in Measurement:

- **Types of Errors:**
  - Systematic Errors:** Consistent and repeatable inaccuracies due to the measurement system or method (e.g., calibration errors).
  - Random Errors:** Unpredictable variations in measurements due to external factors or inherent variability (e.g., environmental conditions).
- **Error Reduction:** Calibration, proper technique, and environmental control help reduce errors.

### 2. Types of Measurements

#### a. Direct Measurements:

- **Definition:** Measurements taken directly from the physical property using appropriate instruments.
- **Examples:** Measuring length with a ruler, mass with a balance.

#### b. Indirect Measurements:

- **Definition:** Measurements derived from other related measurements through calculation or estimation.
- **Examples:** Measuring voltage and current to calculate resistance using Ohm's Law.

#### c. Quantitative vs. Qualitative Measurements:

- **Quantitative Measurements:** Involve numerical values and units (e.g., temperature = 25°C).
- **Qualitative Measurements:** Describe characteristics or qualities without numerical values (e.g., color, texture).

# CHAPTER 2

## Measurements parameters in electrical systems

Dr.J.Sanjeevikumar

In electrical systems, measurements are crucial for ensuring proper operation, efficiency, and safety. Various parameters are measured to understand and control electrical circuits and systems effectively. Here's an overview of the key measurement parameters in electrical systems:

### 1. Voltage

- **Definition:** The electric potential difference between two points in a circuit.
- **Measurement Units:** Volts (V)
- **Measurement Tools:** Multimeters, voltmeters, oscilloscopes
- **Applications:**
  - Ensuring voltage levels are within specified ranges for proper operation.
  - Monitoring power supplies and battery voltages.

### 2. Current

- **Definition:** The flow of electric charge through a conductor.
- **Measurement Units:** Amperes (A)
- **Measurement Tools:** Multimeters, ammeters, clamp meters
- **Applications:**
  - Checking current flow in circuits to ensure components are operating within safe limits.
  - Diagnosing electrical faults by measuring current draw.

### 3. Resistance

- **Definition:** The opposition to the flow of electric current in a circuit.
- **Measurement Units:** Ohms ( $\Omega$ )
- **Measurement Tools:** Multimeters, ohmmeters
- **Applications:**
  - Verifying component values and continuity in circuits.
  - Troubleshooting faulty components by measuring resistance.

### 4. Power

- **Definition:** The rate at which electrical energy is transferred or converted.
- **Measurement Units:** Watts (W)
- **Measurement Tools:** Wattmeters, power analyzers
- **Applications:**
  - Measuring power consumption to assess efficiency and load requirements.
  - Monitoring power quality and performance in electrical systems.

### 5. Energy

- **Definition:** The total amount of work done or heat generated over time.
- **Measurement Units:** Watt-hours (Wh), Kilowatt-hours (kWh)
- **Measurement Tools:** Energy meters, power analyzers
- **Applications:**
  - Tracking energy usage for billing and energy management.
  - Evaluating energy efficiency of electrical systems.

### 6. Frequency

- **Definition:** The number of cycles of a periodic signal occurring per unit of time.
- **Measurement Units:** Hertz (Hz)
- **Measurement Tools:** Frequency counters, oscilloscopes, spectrum analyzers
- **Applications:**
  - Ensuring that AC power supplies operate at the correct frequency (e.g., 50 Hz or 60 Hz).
  - Analyzing signal characteristics in communication systems.

# CHAPTER 3

## AC/DC bridges and instrumentation amplifier

Dr.B.Kunjithapatham

### AC/DC Bridges

**AC/DC bridges** are circuits used to measure electrical parameters with high accuracy. They use a balanced bridge configuration to determine unknown resistances, impedances, or other electrical characteristics. Here's a detailed look at the types and functions of these bridges:

#### 1. Wheatstone Bridge

- **Purpose:** To measure an unknown resistance with high accuracy.
- **Configuration:**

**Components:** Four resistors arranged in a diamond shape. The bridge has a power source and a galvanometer connected between two opposite points.

**Applications:** Accurate measurement of resistances, calibration of measuring instruments.

#### 2. Maxwell's Bridge

- **Purpose:** To measure inductance with high accuracy.
- **Configuration:**

**Components:** Includes resistors, a standard inductor, and a variable capacitor in a bridge configuration.

**Applications:** Measurement of inductance in electrical components.

#### 3. Hay's Bridge

- **Purpose:** To measure the value of an inductor and its quality factor (Q-factor).
- **Configuration:**

**Components:** A combination of resistors, capacitors, and inductors.

**Operation:** Provides accurate measurement of inductance and the Q-factor by balancing the bridge.

**Applications:** High-precision measurement of inductance and assessment of inductor quality.

#### 4. Schering Bridge

- **Purpose:** To measure the capacitance and dissipation factor of a capacitor.
- **Configuration:**

**Components:** Consists of capacitors and resistors arranged in a bridge configuration.

**Operation:** The bridge is balanced when the ratio of capacitances and resistances meet certain conditions, allowing the dissipation factor and capacitance to be calculated.

**Applications:** Testing of capacitors, including dielectric losses and capacitance values.

### Instrumentation Amplifier

**Instrumentation amplifiers** are specialized op-amp circuits designed for precise measurement and amplification of low-level signals, typically in the presence of noise or interference. They are characterized by high input impedance, low output impedance, and excellent common-mode rejection. Here's a detailed overview:

#### 1. Characteristics of Instrumentation Amplifiers

- **High Input Impedance:** Ensures minimal loading of the signal source and accurate measurement.
- **Low Output Impedance:** Allows the amplifier to drive subsequent stages effectively.
- **High Common-Mode Rejection Ratio (CMRR):** Effectively rejects noise and interference that are common to both input signals.

## CHAPTER 4

### Transducers for measurement of non-electrical parameters

Mrs.Geetha

Transducers are devices that convert non-electrical parameters into electrical signals, enabling the measurement and analysis of physical properties that are not inherently electrical. These devices play a crucial role in various fields, including industrial automation, medical diagnostics, environmental monitoring, and research. Below is an overview of different types of transducers for measuring non-electrical parameters:

#### 1. Temperature Transducers

##### a. Thermocouples:

- **Principle:** Generate a voltage proportional to the temperature difference between two different metals.
- **Types:**
  - Type K:** Nickel-Chromium / Nickel-Aluminum
  - Type J:** Iron / Constantan
- **Applications:** Industrial temperature monitoring, furnace temperature measurement.

##### b. Thermistors:

- **Principle:** Resistance changes significantly with temperature; used to measure temperature by observing resistance.
- **Types:**
  - NTC (Negative Temperature Coefficient):** Resistance decreases as temperature increases.
  - PTC (Positive Temperature Coefficient):** Resistance increases as temperature increases.
- **Applications:** HVAC systems, medical devices, consumer electronics.

##### c. RTDs (Resistance Temperature Detectors):

- **Principle:** Resistance of a metal (typically platinum) changes predictably with temperature.
- **Applications:** Precision temperature measurements in industrial processes, laboratory experiments.

##### d. Infrared Sensors:

- **Principle:** Measure the infrared radiation emitted by an object to determine its temperature.
- **Applications:** Non-contact temperature measurement, thermal imaging, medical diagnostics.

#### 2. Pressure Transducers

##### a. Strain Gauge Pressure Transducers:

- **Principle:** Measure pressure by detecting the strain (deformation) in a material using strain gauges bonded to a pressure-sensitive diaphragm.
- **Applications:** Hydraulic and pneumatic pressure measurements, automotive applications.

##### b. Capacitive Pressure Transducers:

- **Principle:** Measure pressure by detecting changes in capacitance caused by the deformation of a diaphragm under pressure.
- **Applications:** Precision pressure measurement in aerospace and industrial applications.

##### c. Piezoelectric Pressure Transducers:

- **Principle:** Generate an electrical charge in response to mechanical stress or pressure applied to a piezoelectric material.
- **Applications:** Dynamic pressure measurements, vibration analysis.

# CHAPTER 5

## Digital instrumentation

Mr.Sakthi Nagaraj

Digital instrumentation involves the use of digital techniques and devices for measuring and processing physical quantities. Unlike analog instrumentation, which relies on continuous signals and analog circuits, digital instrumentation converts physical measurements into digital form for more precise, reliable, and versatile data handling. Here's an overview of digital instrumentation, including its principles, components, advantages, and applications:

### 1. Principles of Digital Instrumentation

#### a. Signal Conversion:

- **Analog-to-Digital Conversion (ADC):** The process of converting continuous analog signals into discrete digital values. This is typically done using an ADC chip or module integrated into digital instruments.
- **Sampling:** Analog signals are sampled at discrete intervals to capture their value at specific points in time.
- **Quantization:** The continuous range of signal values is mapped to a finite number of discrete levels.

#### b. Digital Processing:

- **Data Acquisition:** Digital instruments collect data from sensors or other measurement sources and convert it into digital format.
- **Data Analysis:** Digital data can be processed, analyzed, and manipulated using algorithms and software, allowing for complex calculations and interpretations.
- **Data Display:** Results are displayed on digital readouts, screens, or transmitted to computers for further analysis.

#### c. Data Communication:

- **Interfaces:** Digital instruments often communicate with other devices or systems using interfaces like USB, Ethernet, RS-232/RS-485, or wireless communication.
- 

### 2. Components of Digital Instrumentation

#### a. Sensors and Transducers:

- **Role:** Convert physical quantities (e.g., temperature, pressure, displacement) into electrical signals.
- **Types:** Various sensors are used depending on the parameter being measured, such as thermocouples for temperature or strain gauges for stress.

#### b. Analog-to-Digital Converters (ADCs):

- **Role:** Convert analog signals from sensors into digital signals that can be processed by digital circuits.
- **Types:** Successive approximation, sigma-delta, and flash ADCs are common types, each suited for different applications based on speed and resolution requirements.

#### c. Microcontrollers and Digital Signal Processors (DSPs):

- **Role:** Perform calculations, data processing, and control functions based on the digital signals received from ADCs.
- **Applications:** Used in embedded systems for real-time processing and control.

#### d. Display Units:

- **Role:** Present measurement results to users in a readable format, such as digital readouts, LCD screens, or graphical displays.
- **Applications:** Provide user interfaces for monitoring and interacting with the measurement system.

## CHAPTER 6

### PMMC Instruments

Dr.P.Avirajamanjula

**Permanent Magnet Moving Coil (PMMC) Instruments** are widely used in analog measurement systems due to their accuracy, linearity, and reliability. They are primarily employed for measuring electrical current and voltage. Here's a detailed overview of PMMC instruments, including their working principle, characteristics, and applications.

#### Principle:

#### Basic Operation:

- A PMMC instrument operates on the principle of the interaction between a permanent magnet's magnetic field and a current-carrying coil.
- When an electric current flows through the coil, it creates a magnetic field that interacts with the field of the permanent magnet, producing a torque that causes the coil (and an attached needle or pointer) to move.

#### Components:

- **Permanent Magnet:** Provides a constant magnetic field.
- **Moving Coil:** Positioned within the magnetic field, connected to a spindle and pointer.
- **Spring:** Provides a restoring force to bring the needle back to zero when no current is applied.
- **Scale:** Calibrated to show the measurement in units of voltage or current.

#### Operation:

- When current flows through the coil, it generates a force (Lorentz force) due to the interaction with the permanent magnet's field.
- This force creates a torque that moves the coil and the pointer.
- The needle deflects to a position on the calibrated scale, indicating the measured value.

#### Characteristics:

##### Accuracy:

- PMMC instruments are known for their high accuracy and linearity, making them suitable for precise measurements.

##### Sensitivity:

- The sensitivity of a PMMC instrument depends on the strength of the permanent magnet, the number of turns in the coil, and the design of the instrument.

##### Zero Error:

- PMMC instruments have low zero error, ensuring that the needle accurately returns to zero when no current is flowing.

##### Linear Scale:

- The scale of a PMMC instrument is typically linear, providing a direct and proportional representation of the measured value.

##### Current Measurement:

- PMMC instruments are generally used for measuring DC current. For voltage measurements, the instrument can be used with a series resistor to convert voltage into current.

# CHAPTER 7

## PMMI Instruments

Dr.J.Sanjeevikumar

**Permanent Magnet Moving Iron (PMMI) Instruments**, which are different from Permanent Magnet Moving Coil (PMMC) instruments. PMMI instruments are commonly used in analog measurement systems, especially for AC measurements. Here's an overview of PMMI instruments, including their working principle, characteristics, and applications.

### Principle:

#### Basic Operation:

- PMMI instruments measure the magnitude of an AC or DC current by using the interaction between a moving iron element and a magnetic field produced by a permanent magnet.
- The core of the instrument is a piece of soft iron that moves in response to the magnetic field created by the current flowing through the coil.

#### Components:

- **Permanent Magnet:** Creates a constant magnetic field.
- **Moving Iron Element:** Moves within the magnetic field in response to the current.
- **Coil:** The current to be measured flows through this coil, creating a magnetic field that interacts with the iron element.
- **Pointer and Scale:** The movement of the iron element drives a pointer across a calibrated scale to indicate the measurement.

#### Operation:

- When an AC or DC current flows through the coil, it generates a magnetic field.
- This magnetic field attracts or repels the moving iron element, causing it to move.
- The amount of movement is proportional to the current and is indicated by the pointer on the scale.

#### Characteristics:

##### Versatility:

- PMMI instruments can measure both AC and DC currents, though they are more commonly used for AC measurements.

##### Non-Linearity:

- The scale of PMMI instruments is typically non-linear, especially for AC measurements, because the deflection is proportional to the square of the current (due to the interaction of magnetic fields).

##### Hysteresis and Non-Linearity:

- The moving iron element can experience hysteresis, which affects accuracy and linearity.

##### Impedance:

- PMMI meters have lower input impedance compared to PMMC meters, which may affect the circuit being measured.

##### Sensitivity:

- Sensitivity varies based on the design and size of the moving iron element and the coil.

## CHAPTER 8

### Energy Meter

Dr.B.Kunjithapatham

An energy meter, also known as a watt-hour meter or electric meter, is an instrument used to measure the amount of electrical energy consumed by a residential or commercial property. It provides a readout of energy usage over a specific period and is crucial for billing purposes and monitoring energy consumption.

#### Types of Energy Meters:

##### Electromechanical Energy Meters:

- **Operation:** Uses a rotating aluminum or copper disc to measure energy consumption. The disc's rotation speed is proportional to the power consumption.
- **Components:**
  - **Current Coil:** Produces a magnetic field proportional to the current flowing through it.
  - **Potential Coil:** Produces a magnetic field proportional to the voltage.
  - **Aluminum Disc:** Rotates due to the interaction of the magnetic fields.
  - **Mechanical Register:** Counts the number of revolutions of the disc to indicate energy consumption.
- **Advantages:** Reliable, simple to maintain.
- **Disadvantages:** Mechanical parts can wear out, less accurate over a wide range of conditions.

##### Electronic Energy Meters:

- **Operation:** Uses electronic components to measure and record energy consumption digitally. These meters can provide detailed usage data and have advanced features.
- **Components:**
  - **Current and Voltage Sensors:** Measure the current and voltage electronically.
  - **Microcontroller/Processor:** Calculates power and energy consumption.
  - **Display Unit:** Shows energy usage on a digital screen.
  - **Communication Module:** Allows for remote reading and data transfer.
- **Advantages:** High accuracy, can measure various parameters (e.g., power factor), remote reading capabilities.
- **Disadvantages:** More complex, requires power supply, and can be more expensive.

##### Smart Meters:

- **Operation:** An advanced type of electronic meter that provides real-time data and can communicate with utilities through various communication networks.
- **Components:**
  - **Advanced Sensors and Processors:** Measure and process energy consumption with high precision.
  - **Communication Interface:** Enables two-way communication with utility companies.
  - **Data Storage and Analysis:** Records detailed usage data for billing and analysis.
- **Advantages:** Real-time data, remote monitoring and control, integration with smart grid technology.
- **Disadvantages:** Higher cost, privacy concerns related to data transmission.



# CHAPTER 9

## Potential transformer and Current transformer

Mrs. M.R.Geetha

**Potential Transformers (PTs)** and **Current Transformers (CTs)** are types of **instrument transformers** used in electrical systems for measuring and monitoring. They provide a scaled-down replica of high-voltage or high-current electrical quantities, making them manageable and safe to measure with standard measuring instruments. Here's a detailed overview of both:

### Potential Transformer (PT):

#### Purpose:

- **Voltage Measurement:** PTs are used to step down high voltages to lower, standardized levels that can be measured safely by conventional instruments.
- **Isolation:** They provide electrical isolation between the high-voltage system and the measuring or protection equipment.

#### Operation:

- **Construction:** A PT is essentially a type of **transformer** with a primary winding connected to the high-voltage line and a secondary winding that provides a reduced voltage output.
- **Turns Ratio:** The voltage ratio between the primary and secondary windings is determined by the turns ratio. For example, if a PT has a turns ratio of 1000:1, a 10 kV input will produce a 10 V output.
- **Load:** The secondary side is connected to measuring instruments or relays that are calibrated for the reduced voltage.

#### Characteristics:

- **Accuracy:** High accuracy is required to ensure precise voltage measurements.
- **Insulation:** Designed to handle high-voltage insulation requirements to protect the secondary circuit.
- **Burden:** The load connected to the secondary winding should be carefully managed to avoid inaccuracies or overheating.

#### Applications:

- **Voltage Measurement:** Used in voltmeters and other measuring instruments to monitor high voltage levels.
- **Protection Systems:** Provides voltage input for protection relays that detect abnormal conditions in the electrical system.

#### Example Circuit:

- **Primary Winding:** Connected to the high-voltage line.
- **Secondary Winding:** Connected to measuring instruments or relays.

# CHAPTER 10

## Digital Signal Oscilloscope

Mr. .Sakthi Nagaraj

A **Digital Signal Oscilloscope (DSO)** is an advanced type of oscilloscope used to visualize and analyze electronic signals. Unlike analog oscilloscopes, which use continuous signals, digital oscilloscopes convert the incoming signals into digital form for processing, display, and storage. This enables a variety of advanced features and greater precision in signal analysis.

### Working Principle:

#### Signal Acquisition:

- **Analog-to-Digital Conversion (ADC):** The incoming analog signal is sampled at regular intervals by the ADC. This converts the continuous signal into discrete digital values.
- **Sampling Rate:** Determines how frequently the signal is sampled per second. A higher sampling rate provides better resolution and accuracy in representing the signal.

#### Signal Processing:

- **Digital Processing:** After conversion, the signal data is processed digitally. This includes filtering, mathematical operations, and other signal manipulations.
- **Storage:** The digital signal can be stored in memory for further analysis, comparison, or display.

#### Display and Analysis:

- **Display:** The processed signal is displayed on a digital screen, where it can be analyzed visually. Modern DSOs use LCD or LED displays.
- **Measurement and Analysis:** The oscilloscope can perform various measurements (e.g., frequency, amplitude) and apply mathematical functions (e.g., FFT for frequency domain analysis).

### Key Features:

#### Sampling Rate:

- The number of samples per second taken from the signal. Higher sampling rates provide more accurate representations of high-frequency signals.

#### Bandwidth:

- The range of frequencies the oscilloscope can accurately measure. The bandwidth of the DSO should be several times higher than the highest frequency component of the signal being measured.

#### Resolution:

- The precision of the measurement in terms of vertical and horizontal resolution. Higher resolution means more detailed signal representation.

#### Memory Depth:

- The amount of digital memory available to store sampled data. Larger memory depth allows for longer time windows of signal capture.

#### Triggering:

- The ability to capture specific events or conditions in the signal. Triggers can be set for various conditions like edge, pulse width, or specific patterns.

# LINEAR INTEGRATED CIRCUITS

EDITED BY  
R. PRASANNADEVI



978-93-6255-884-6

LINEAR INTEGRATED CIRCUITS  
Copyright © 2019 by MRS. R. PRASANNADEVI

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-804-6

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Date of Publication : 10.02.19

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	<b>12</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1 - IC fabrications</b>	-	<b>24</b>
Dr.B.Kunjithapatham		
<b>CHAPTER 2 – Applications of Op- Amp</b>	-	<b>42</b>
Mr.D.Hariharan		
<b>CHAPTER 3 - Characteristics and Its Applications Of Op- Amp</b>	-	<b>67</b>
Mr.B.Arunpandiyan		
<b>CHAPTER 4 - Special ICs</b>	-	<b>84</b>
Mrs.G.Krithiga		
<b>CHAPTER 5 – Applications ICs</b>	-	<b>105</b>
Mr.D.Hariharan		
<b>CHAPTER 6 – Oxidation Process</b>	-	<b>112</b>
Dr.B.Kunjithapatham		
<b>CHAPTER 7 – Generation of IC's</b>	-	<b>121</b>
Mr.D.Hariharan		
<b>CHAPTER 8 – 555 Timer IC</b>	-	<b>135</b>
Mr.B.Arunpandiyan		
<b>CHAPTER 9 – Converter to A/D to D/A</b>	-	<b>149</b>
Mrs.G.Krithiga		
<b>CHAPTER 10 – Characteristics of Differential Amplifier</b>	-	<b>158</b>
Mr.D.Hariharan		
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>180</b>

# CHAPTER 1

## IC fabrications

Dr. B. Kunjithapatham

### IC Fabrication Process

- 1. Design and Planning:**
  - **Circuit Design:** Engineers design the circuit schematic and layout using Electronic Design Automation (EDA) tools.
  - **Mask Design:** Create photo masks that will be used in the photolithography process to define circuit patterns.
- 2. Wafer Preparation:**
  - **Wafer Selection:** Typically, silicon wafers are used. They are cut from a silicon crystal and polished to a smooth finish.
  - **Cleaning:** Wafers are cleaned to remove contaminants that could affect the fabrication process.
- 3. Oxidation:**
  - **Process:** Grow a thin layer of silicon dioxide ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) on the wafer surface. This layer acts as an insulator and protective layer.
  - **Method:** Typically done using a thermal oxidation process in a furnace.
- 4. Photolithography:**
  - **Process:** Apply a photosensitive material called photoresist to the wafer.
  - **Exposure:** Expose the photoresist to ultraviolet (UV) light through a mask that has the circuit pattern.
  - **Development:** Develop the photoresist to create a patterned mask on the wafer.
- 5. Etching:**
  - **Process:** Use chemical etching to remove the unprotected areas of the oxide layer, leaving behind the desired pattern.
  - **Types:** Wet etching (using liquid chemicals) and dry etching (using gases) are commonly used.
- 6. Doping:**
  - **Process:** Introduce impurities into the silicon wafer to alter its electrical properties. This process is known as ion implantation or diffusion.
  - **Purpose:** Create different regions in the silicon wafer with various electrical properties (e.g., n-type and p-type regions).
- 7. Deposition:**
  - **Process:** Deposit thin films of materials (like metals or additional oxides) onto the wafer.
  - **Methods:** Physical Vapor Deposition (PVD) and Chemical Vapor Deposition (CVD) are commonly used methods.
- 8. Metallization:**
  - **Process:** Deposit metal layers to create electrical connections between different components of the IC.
  - **Etching:** Pattern the metal layers using photolithography and etching to form interconnections.

### Summary

IC fabrication is a sophisticated process that involves multiple steps and advanced technologies to create integrated circuits. The process ensures high performance, miniaturization, and cost-effectiveness of electronic devices. Each step in the fabrication process must be carefully controlled to ensure the quality and functionality of the final IC products.

# CHAPTER 2

## Applications of Op- Amp

Mr. D. Hariharan

Operational Amplifiers (Op-Amps) are versatile components used in a wide range of analog electronic circuits due to their high gain, differential input, and wide bandwidth. Here are some common applications of op-amps, highlighting their role in various circuits:

### 1. Amplifiers

- **Inverting Amplifier:**

**Function:** Provides a phase-inverted amplified version of the input signal.

**Application:** Signal conditioning, amplification of small signals.

- **Non-Inverting Amplifier:**

**Function:** Provides an amplified version of the input signal without phase inversion.

**Application:** Buffering, impedance matching, and signal amplification.

- **Differential Amplifier:**

**Function:** Amplifies the difference between two input signals while rejecting common-mode signals.

**Application:** Instrumentation amplifiers, noise reduction in signal measurement.

### 2. Filters

- **Low-Pass Filter:**

**Function:** Allows low-frequency signals to pass through while attenuating higher frequencies.

**Application:** Signal smoothing, noise reduction.

- **High-Pass Filter:**

**Function:** Allows high-frequency signals to pass through while attenuating lower frequencies.

**Application:** Removing DC components from signals.

- **Band-Pass Filter:**

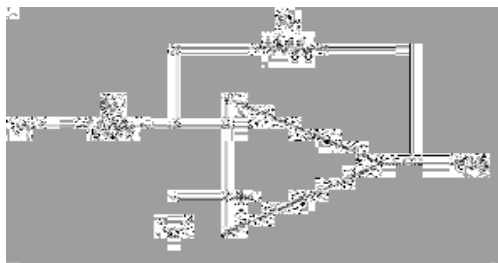
**Function:** Allows signals within a certain frequency range to pass through while attenuating frequencies outside this range.

**Application:** Audio equalizers, communication systems.

- **Band-Stop Filter:**

**Function:** Attenuates signals within a specific frequency range while allowing other frequencies to pass.

**Application:** Notch filtering in audio systems.



### Summary

Operational amplifiers are essential in analog electronics due to their versatility and adaptability. They are used for amplification, filtering, signal conditioning, voltage regulation, and mathematical operations. Their wide range of applications spans from simple signal buffering to complex analog computing tasks, making them fundamental components in both consumer electronics and industrial systems.

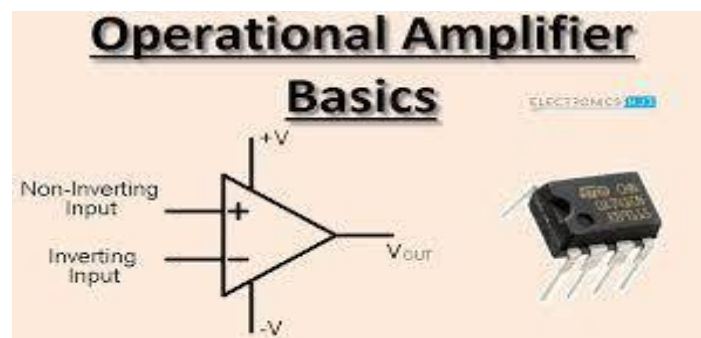
# CHAPTER 3

## Characteristics and Its Applications of Op- Amp

Mr. B. Arunpandiyan

### Characteristics of Op-Amps

- 1. High Input Impedance:**
  - **Description:** The impedance seen by signals at the input terminals is very high, typically in the range of megohms to gigaohms.
  - **Impact:** Minimizes loading effect on the signal source, allowing accurate signal transfer without significant signal loss.
- 2. Low Output Impedance:**
  - **Description:** The impedance of the output terminal is very low, often in the range of a few ohms.
  - **Impact:** Enables the op-amp to drive loads effectively without significant voltage drop across the output.
- 3. High Gain:**
  - **Description:** The voltage gain of an op-amp is extremely high, often in the range of  $10^4$  or more.
  - **Impact:** Allows for amplification of weak signals to a level that can be processed or measured.
- 4. Differential Input:**
  - **Description:** Op-amps have two input terminals: inverting ( $-$ ) and non-inverting ( $+$ ). The output is a function of the difference between these two inputs.
  - **Impact:** Enables the op-amp to amplify the difference between two signals, rejecting common-mode noise.
- 5. Infinite Open-Loop Gain:**
  - **Description:** The gain of the op-amp in open-loop configuration (without feedback) is ideally infinite.
  - **Impact:** Ensures that even very small differences between the input terminals are amplified significantly.
- 6. Infinite Input Resistance and Zero Output Resistance:**
  - **Description:** Ideal op-amps have infinite input resistance and zero output resistance.
  - **Impact:** Guarantees no current draw from the input source and perfect voltage transfer to the load.
- 7. High Slew Rate:**
  - **Description:** The maximum rate of change of the output voltage.
  - **Impact:** Determines how quickly the op-amp can respond to rapid changes in the input signal.





## CHAPTER 4

### Special ICs

Mrs.G.Krithiga

#### 1. Analog ICs

##### a. Voltage Regulators:

- **Function:** Maintain a constant output voltage regardless of changes in input voltage or load conditions.
- **Types:**
  - Linear Regulators:** Provide a stable voltage with low noise. Examples: 7805 (5V), LM317 (adjustable).
  - Switching Regulators:** Use a switch to convert input voltage to a different output voltage efficiently. Examples: LM2596 (adjustable).

##### b. Operational Amplifiers (Op-Amps):

- **Function:** Amplify signals, perform mathematical operations, and filter signals.
- **Special Types:**
  - Instrumentation Amplifiers:** High-precision op-amps used for measuring small signals with high accuracy.
  - High-Speed Op-Amps:** Designed for fast signal processing.

##### c. Analog-to-Digital Converters (ADCs) and Digital-to-Analog Converters (DACs):

- **Function:** Convert analog signals to digital signals and vice versa.
- **Applications:** Data acquisition systems, audio processing.

##### d. Analog Multiplexers/Demultiplexers:

- **Function:** Route multiple analog signals through a single path or vice versa.
- **Applications:** Signal switching in communication systems.

#### 2. Digital ICs

##### a. Microcontrollers:

- **Function:** Embedded systems with a CPU, memory, and I/O peripherals.
- **Applications:** Automating tasks in appliances, robotics, and automotive systems. Examples: ATmega328, PIC16F84.

##### b. Microprocessors:

- **Function:** Central processing units for performing computations and running programs.
- **Applications:** Computers, smartphones, and other complex systems. Examples: Intel Core i7, ARM Cortex-M.

##### c. Memory ICs:

- **Function:** Store data and instructions for processing.
- **Types:**
  - RAM (Random Access Memory):** Volatile memory for temporary data storage. Examples: DDR4 RAM.
  - ROM (Read-Only Memory):** Non-volatile memory for permanent data storage. Examples: EEPROM, Flash memory.

##### d. Programmable Logic Devices (PLDs):

- **Function:** Can be configured to perform a variety of logical operations.
- **Types:**
  - FPGA (Field-Programmable Gate Array):** Highly flexible ICs used for custom digital circuits.
  - CPLD (Complex Programmable Logic Device):** Smaller and less complex than FPGAs, used for simpler logic functions.

# CHAPTER 5

## Applications ICs

Mr.D.Hariharan

### 1. Analog ICs

#### a. Operational Amplifiers (Op-Amps):

- **Applications:**

**Signal Amplification:** Used in audio amplifiers, sensor signal conditioning, and medical instrumentation.

**Filtering:** Implementing low-pass, high-pass, band-pass, and band-stop filters in audio and communication systems.

**Analog Computation:** Performing mathematical operations such as addition, subtraction, integration, and differentiation.

#### b. Voltage Regulators:

- **Applications:**

**Power Supply Management:** Regulating and stabilizing voltage in power supplies for electronic devices.

**Battery-Powered Devices:** Ensuring consistent voltage output from varying battery voltages.

**Voltage Protection:** Protecting sensitive components from voltage fluctuations.

#### c. Analog-to-Digital Converters (ADCs) and Digital-to-Analog Converters (DACs):

- **Applications:**

**Data Acquisition Systems:** Converting analog signals from sensors into digital data for processing.

**Audio Systems:** Digital conversion of audio signals for processing and playback.

**Control Systems:** Providing analog outputs from digital controllers.

#### d. Analog Multiplexers/Demultiplexers:

- **Applications:**

**Signal Routing:** Switching multiple signals through a single channel in communication systems.

**Data Acquisition:** Selecting different sensors or data channels in measurement systems.

### 2. Digital ICs

#### a. Microcontrollers:

- **Applications:**

**Embedded Systems:** Automating tasks in consumer electronics, appliances, and industrial controls.

**Robotics:** Controlling motors, sensors, and actuators in robotic systems.

**Automotive Systems:** Managing functions such as engine control, climate control, and infotainment systems.

#### b. Microprocessors:

- **Applications:**

**Computers:** Serving as the central processing unit (CPU) in personal computers, servers, and workstations.

**Smart phones and Tablets:** Executing complex applications and managing system operations.

**Embedded Systems:** Driving advanced functionalities in various devices.

#### c. Memory ICs:

- **Applications:**

**Data Storage:** Providing temporary (RAM) or permanent (ROM/Flash) storage in computers, smart phones, and other electronic devices.

# CHAPTER 6

## Oxidation Process

Dr.B.Kunjithapatham

The oxidation process is a fundamental chemical reaction in which a substance loses electrons, typically involving an increase in the oxidation state. Oxidation can occur in various contexts, including biological systems, industrial processes, and environmental interactions. Here's a detailed look at the oxidation process:

### General Definition:

**Oxidation** refers to the loss of electrons by a substance. In a chemical reaction, oxidation is often coupled with a reduction process, where another substance gains the electrons lost during oxidation. This coupled reaction is known as a redox (reduction-oxidation) reaction.

### Oxidation in Different Contexts:

#### Chemical Reactions:

- **Basic Reaction:** In a redox reaction, oxidation involves the loss of electrons by one species (the oxidized species), while another species gains those electrons (the reduced species).
- **Oxidation States:** The oxidation state of an element in a compound increases during oxidation.

#### Biological Processes:

- **Cellular Respiration:** In biological systems, oxidation is crucial for energy production. During cellular respiration, glucose ( $C_6H_{12}O_6$ ) is oxidized to produce carbon dioxide ( $CO_2$ ) and water ( $H_2O$ ), releasing energy in the form of ATP.
- **Oxidative Phosphorylation:** In the mitochondria of cells, electrons are transferred through the electron transport chain, leading to the production of ATP and the reduction of oxygen to water.

#### Industrial Processes:

- **Metal Corrosion:** Oxidation is a primary factor in the corrosion of metals. For example, iron reacts with oxygen and moisture to form iron oxide (rust).
- **Combustion:** The combustion of fuels is a common oxidation process where substances react with oxygen to produce heat, light, carbon dioxide, and water.

#### Environmental Processes:

- **Oxidation of Pollutants:** Oxidation processes are employed in the treatment of wastewater and air to remove pollutants. For example, ozone or hydrogen peroxide can be used to oxidize organic contaminants.

#### Oxidation States:

- **Definition:** The oxidation state (or oxidation number) represents the degree of oxidation of an atom in a compound. It is an indication of the number of electrons lost or gained by an atom.
- **Rules:**
  - The oxidation state of an element in its most basic form (e.g.,  $O_2$ ,  $H_2$ ) is zero.
  - For ions, the oxidation state is equal to the charge of the ion.
  - In compounds, oxidation states are determined based on standard rules for assigning charges to atoms.

# CHAPTER 7

## Generation of IC's

Mr.D.Hariharan

The generation of integrated circuits (ICs) refers to the various stages of development and fabrication of these crucial electronic components. Integrated circuits have evolved significantly over time, and their generation encompasses advancements in design, manufacturing, and technology. Here's a comprehensive overview of how ICs are generated and the key milestones in their evolution:

### Early Developments and Generations:

#### First Generation (1950s-1960s):

- **Technology:** The earliest ICs were developed using bipolar junction transistors (BJTs). These ICs were relatively simple and contained a few transistors and passive components.
- **Examples:** The first practical ICs were introduced by Texas Instruments and Fairchild Semiconductor. They included early logic gates and operational amplifiers.

#### Second Generation (1970s):

- **Technology:** The development of metal-oxide-semiconductor (MOS) technology led to the creation of MOS ICs, including the first MOSFET-based ICs. This era saw the introduction of the first microprocessors and memory chips.
- **Examples:** The Intel 4004 (the first microprocessor) and the first DRAM (Dynamic Random Access Memory) chips were significant achievements.

#### Third Generation (1980s):

- **Technology:** The integration level increased with the advent of Very-Large-Scale Integration (VLSI) technology. ICs began to contain thousands of transistors, enabling the development of more complex and powerful microprocessors and memory devices.
- **Examples:** The Intel 8086 microprocessor and the development of 64K DRAM chips.

#### Fourth Generation (1990s):

- **Technology:** Ultra-Large-Scale Integration (ULSI) technology allowed for millions of transistors to be integrated into a single chip. This period saw the emergence of advanced microprocessors, graphics processors, and application-specific ICs (ASICs).
- **Examples:** The Intel Pentium series of processors and high-capacity flash memory chips.

#### Fifth Generation (2000s-Present):

- **Technology:** The focus has shifted to achieving even higher integration levels with billions of transistors, thanks to advances in semiconductor fabrication technology. This era includes the development of System-on-Chip (SoC) solutions, which integrate entire systems onto a single chip.
- **Examples:** Modern processors like Intel's Core series, AMD Ryzen, and various SoCs used in smartphones and tablets.

### IC Design and Fabrication Process:

#### Design:

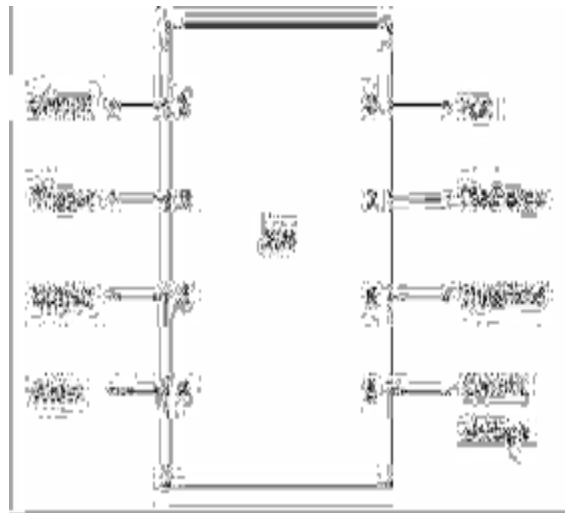
- **Concept and Specification:** The design process begins with defining the functionality and specifications of the IC. This includes defining the electrical characteristics, performance requirements, and application-specific needs.

## CHAPTER 8

### 555 Timer IC

Mr.B.Arunpandiyam

The 555 Timer IC is one of the most popular and versatile integrated circuits used in electronic design. It was first introduced by Signetics (now part of ON Semiconductor) in 1972. The 555 Timer IC can be used in various configurations to produce precise time delays, oscillations, and pulse-width modulation. Here's a comprehensive overview of the 555 Timer IC:



#### Overview and Features:

##### Basic Function:

- The 555 Timer IC is primarily used for generating accurate time delays, pulse-width modulation (PWM), and oscillations. It operates in three primary modes: astable, monostable, and bistable.

##### Features:

- **Versatile:** Can be used in various applications such as timers, oscillators, and pulse generators.
- **Stable:** Provides reliable and precise timing and waveform generation.
- **Adjustable:** Timing intervals can be adjusted using external resistors and capacitors.
- **Low Cost:** Inexpensive and widely available.

##### Pin Configuration:

The 555 Timer IC typically comes in an 8-pin Dual In-line Package (DIP). Here is the pin configuration:

1. **Pin 1 (Ground):** Connects to the ground of the power supply.
2. **Pin 2 (Trigger):** The input pin used to start the timing interval in the monostable mode. In astable mode, it is connected to the timing capacitor.
3. **Pin 3 (Output):** Provides the output pulse or waveform.
4. **Pin 4 (Reset):** Used to reset the IC. Connecting this pin to a high voltage disables the reset function, allowing normal operation.
5. **Pin 5 (Control Voltage):** Allows external control of the timing cycle. Typically connected to a capacitor to filter noise.
6. **Pin 6 (Threshold):** Monitors the voltage across the timing capacitor in the monostable mode and the timing capacitor in the astable mode.
7. **Pin 7 (Discharge):** Connected to the timing capacitor and is used to discharge it during the timing cycle.
8. **Pin 8 (VCC):** Connects to the positive supply voltage.

# CHAPTER 9

## Converter to A/D to D/A

Mrs.G.Krithiga

Analog-to-Digital Converters (ADCs) and Digital-to-Analog Converters (DACs) are essential components in modern electronic systems. They serve as the interface between analog signals and digital processing, allowing for the conversion of continuous analog signals to discrete digital data and vice versa. Here's a detailed overview of how ADCs and DACs work, their types, and their applications.

### Analog-to-Digital Converters (ADCs):

#### Function:

- An ADC converts an analog signal, which is continuous in time and amplitude, into a digital signal, which is discrete in both time and amplitude.

#### Basic Operation:

- **Sampling:** The analog signal is sampled at discrete intervals.
- **Quantization:** Each sample is mapped to the nearest value within a finite set of discrete levels.
- **Encoding:** The quantized value is then encoded into a binary format.

#### Types of ADCs:

##### Successive Approximation Register (SAR) ADC:

- **Operation:** Uses a binary search algorithm to find the closest digital approximation of the analog input.
- **Speed:** Fast, with moderate resolution.
- **Applications:** Used in applications requiring medium-speed and high-accuracy conversion.

##### Delta-Sigma ( $\Delta\Sigma$ ) ADC:

- **Operation:** Uses oversampling and noise shaping to achieve high resolution.
- **Speed:** Slower compared to SAR, but offers high accuracy and resolution.
- **Applications:** Ideal for high-precision measurements in audio and instrumentation.

##### Flash ADC:

- **Operation:** Uses a bank of comparators to convert the input signal into a digital output in one step.
- **Speed:** Very fast, but with lower resolution due to the large number of comparators required.
- **Applications:** Used in high-speed data acquisition and communication systems.

##### Pipeline ADC:

- **Operation:** A combination of SAR and flash methods, using a series of stages to increase speed while maintaining resolution.
- **Speed:** Fast, with high resolution.
- **Applications:** Suitable for applications needing high-speed and high-resolution data conversion.

#### Parameters:

- **Resolution:** The number of bits in the digital output, determining the number of discrete levels (e.g., an 8-bit ADC has 256 levels).
- **Sampling Rate:** The rate at which the analog signal is sampled, affecting the ability to accurately represent fast-changing signals.

# CHAPTER 10

## Characteristics of Differential Amplifier

Mr.D.Hariharan

A differential amplifier is a crucial component in analog electronics, designed to amplify the difference between two input signals while rejecting any signals that are common to both inputs. It's widely used in various applications, including signal processing, data acquisition, and instrumentation. Here's a detailed look at the characteristics of differential amplifiers:

### Concept and Function:

#### Differential Input:

- The differential amplifier has two inputs: the non-inverting input (+) and the inverting input (-).
- It amplifies the voltage difference between these two inputs, outputting a signal proportional to the difference.

#### Common-Mode Rejection:

- The differential amplifier rejects any signals that are common to both inputs, such as noise or interference, which is known as common-mode noise.
- The ability to reject common-mode signals is characterized by the Common-Mode Rejection Ratio (CMRR).

### Key Characteristics:

#### Common-Mode Rejection Ratio (CMRR):

- **Definition:** The ratio of the differential gain to the common-mode gain. It measures the amplifier's ability to reject common-mode signals.

#### Input Offset Voltage:

- **Definition:** The small voltage required at the input to make the output zero when both inputs are shorted together.
- **Impact:** A lower input offset voltage improves accuracy by minimizing the deviation from ideal performance.

#### Input Impedance:

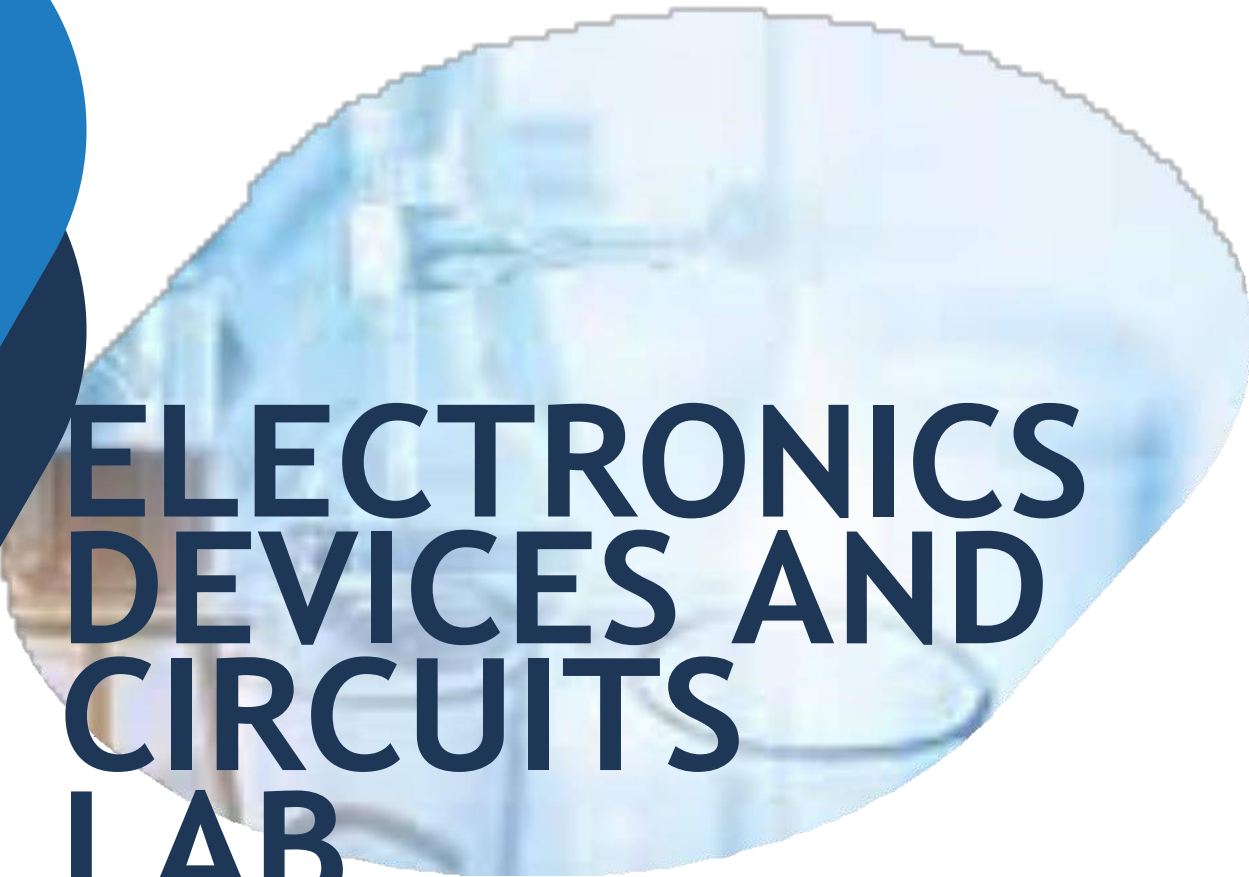
- **Definition:** The impedance seen by the signal source at the input terminals of the differential amplifier.
- **High Impedance:** High input impedance is desirable to avoid loading effects on the signal source.

#### Output Impedance:

- **Definition:** The impedance of the amplifier's output terminal.
- **Low Impedance:** Low output impedance is preferable for ensuring maximum power transfer and minimizing signal distortion.

#### Bandwidth:

- **Definition:** The range of frequencies over which the amplifier can operate effectively.
- **Wide Bandwidth:** Essential for applications requiring accurate signal amplification across a broad frequency range.



# ELECTRONICS DEVICES AND CIRCUITS LAB

Edited By

**DR. S. EZHILARASAN**



978-93-6255-823-7



ELECTRONICS DEVICES AND CIRCUITS LAB  
Copyright © 2019 by Dr. S. Ezhilarasan

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-823-7

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Date of Publication : 05.01.19

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER 1</b> - Silicon-Controlled Rectifier (Scr) Characteristics.....	<b>08</b>
Dr. S. Ezhilarasan	
<b>CHAPTER 2</b> – Characteristics of JFET and draw the equivalent circuit.....	<b>11</b>
Dr. S. Ezhilarasan	
<b>CHAPTER 3</b> - Characteristics of UJT and generation of sawtooth waveform .....	<b>16</b>
Dr. S. Ezhilarasan	
<b>CHAPTER 4</b> - Characteristics of half and full wave rectifiers .....	<b>18</b>
Dr. S. Ezhilarasan	
<b>CHAPTER 5</b> – Feedback amplifiers and oscillators .....	<b>21</b>
Dr. S. Ezhilarasan	
<b>CHAPTER 6</b> – Characteristics of BJT in CB configuration, h-parameters.....	<b>26</b>
Dr. S. Ezhilarasan	
<b>CHAPTER 7</b> – Characteristics of BJT in CE configuration, h-parameters.....	<b>29</b>
Dr. S. Ezhilarasan	
<b>CHAPTER 8</b> – Drain and transfer characteristics of JFET.....	<b>32</b>
Dr. S. Ezhilarasan	
<b>CHAPTER 9</b> – Transistor as a switch .....	<b>36</b>
Dr. S. Ezhilarasan	
<b>CHAPTER 10</b> – Implementation of logic gates using diodes and transistors .....	<b>38</b>
Dr. S. Ezhilarasan	
<b>REFERENCES</b> .....	<b>40</b>

**CHAPTER 1**  
**SILICON-CONTROLLED RECTIFIER (SCR) CHARACTERISTICS**  
Dr. S. Ezhilarasan

**Diode**

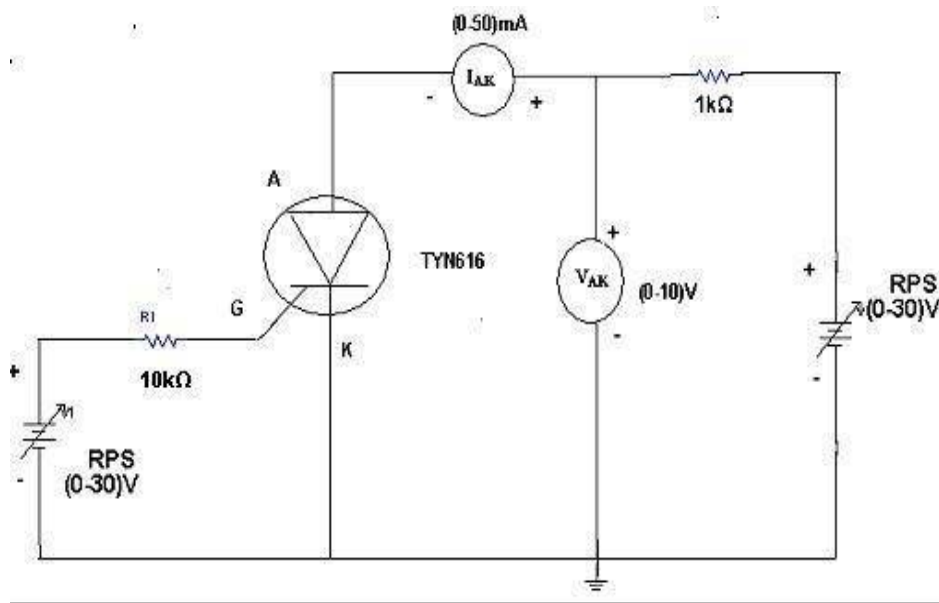
**AIM:**

To plot the V-I characteristics of Silicon Controlled Rectifier.

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:**

1. SCR (TYN616)
2. Regulated Power Supply (0-30V)
3. Resistors 10K $\Omega$ , 1K $\Omega$  -- 1no.(each)
4. Ammeter (0-50)  $\mu$ A
5. Voltmeter (0-10V)
6. Bread board and connecting wires

**CIRCUIT DIAGRAM**



**OBSERVATION:**

$V_{AK}(V)$	$I_{AK} (\mu A)$

**RESULT**

The V-I characteristics of SCR were observed and the graph was plotted.

## CHAPTER 2

### Characteristics of JFET and draw the equivalent circuit

Dr. S. Ezhilarasan

**AIM:**

To plot the drain and transfer characteristics of JFET & to find drain resistance, transconductance, amplification factor, drain saturation current  $I_{DSS}$  and Pinch off voltage.

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:**

S.No.	Components	Specification	Qty
1	FET	BFW10 $I_{DSS} > 8 \text{ mA}$ , $V_p < 8V$	1
2	Resistors	1k $\Omega$	1
3	Regulated dualpower supply	MC (0-30)V	1
4	Voltmeters	MC (0-10)V	2
5	Ammeters	MC (0-15) mA	1
6	Bread board & connecting wires		

**TABULAR COLUMN:**

**Drain characteristics**

$V_{GS} = -2V$

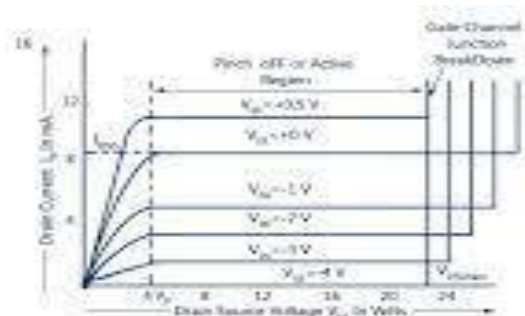
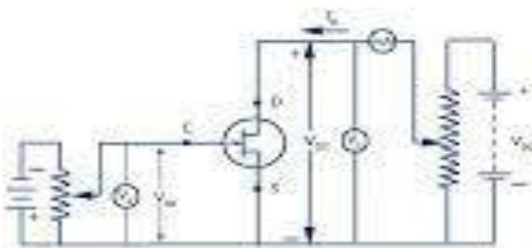
$V_{GS} = -4 V$

$V_{DS}$ (V)	$I_D$ (mA)	$V_{DS}$ (V)	$I_D$ (mA)

**Transfer characteristics**

$V_{DS} = 2V$        $V_{DS} = 4V$

$V_{gs}$ (V)	$I_D$ (mA)	$V_{GS}$ (V)	$I_D$ (mA)



Circuit Diagram for Determining Drain Characteristic with External Bias for An N-Channel JFET

Drain Characteristic with External Bias

**External Bias Characteristic of JFET**

## CHAPTER 3

### Characteristics of UJT and generation of sawtooth waveform

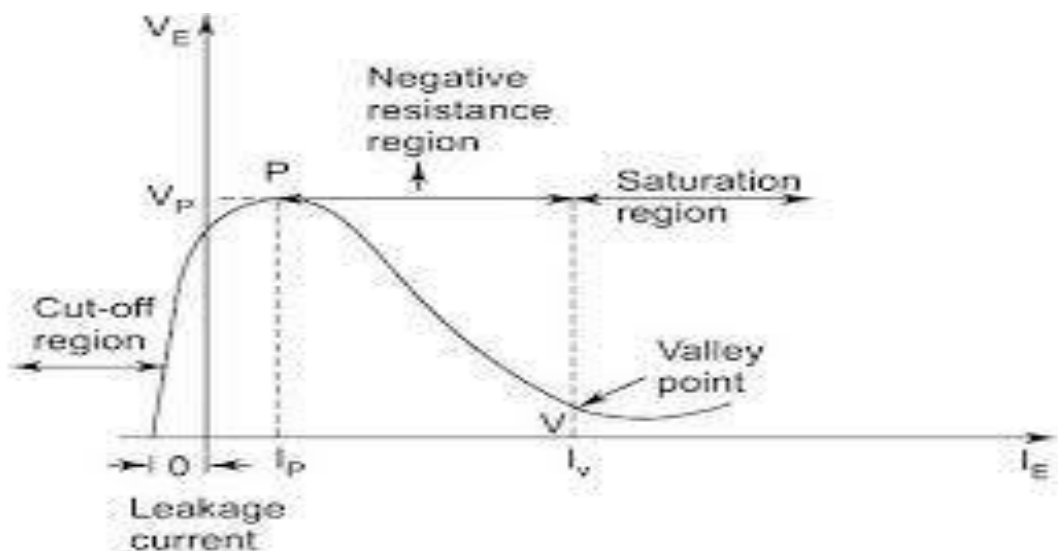
Dr. S. Ezhilarasan

**AIM:**

To plot VI Characteristics of UJT and to calculate its intrinsic standoff ratio.

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:**

S.No	Components	Specification	Quantity
1	UJT	(2N2646),	1
2	Resistors	1KΩ	2
3	Ammeter	(0-25) mA	1
4	Voltmeters	(0-10)V	2
5	Regulated dual power supply	(0-30) V	1
6	Bread board & connecting wires.		



**TABULAR COLUMN:**

$V_{B1B2} = 2\text{v}$		$V_{B1B2} = 4\text{v}$		$V_{B1B2} = 6\text{v}$	
$V_{B1E}(\text{v})$	$I_E(\text{mA})$	$V_{B1E}(\text{v})$	$I_E(\text{mA})$	$V_{B1E}(\text{v})$	$I_E(\text{mA})$

**RESULT:**

Thus the static emitter characteristics of UJT drawn & the following values were determined.

## CHAPTER 4

### Characteristics of half and full wave rectifiers

Dr. S. Ezhilarasan

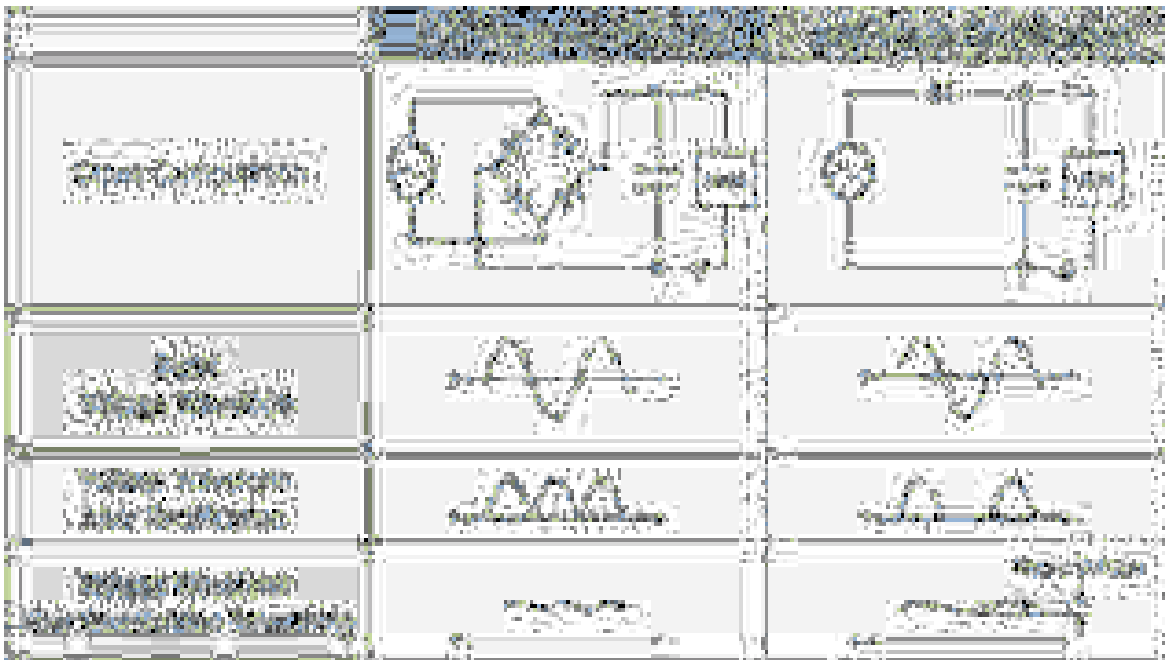
**AIM:**

To design a half wave rectifier with simple capacitor filter.

To measure the DC voltage under load and ripple factor and to compare withcalculated values.

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:**

Sl.No	Equipments/Components	Range/Details	Qty
1	Multimeter		1
2	Resistors		
3	Capacitors		
4	Diode	1N4001	1
5	CRO	(0-30)MHz	1
6	Transformer	230V/(9-0-9) V	1
7	Bread Board, Connecting Wires		



**RESULT:**

Thus the half wave rectifier is designed with and without capacitor filter and the corresponding dc output voltages and the ripple factors are measured and verified withthe theoretical values.

# CHAPTER 5

## Measurement of frequency and phase angle using CRO

Dr. S. Ezhilarasan

### AIM:

To Study the operation of CRO and measure frequency and phase.

### FORMULA:

Amplitude = No. of vertical divisions \* Volts/div.

Time period = No. of horizontal divisions \* Time/div.

Frequency=(1/T)Hz

### PROCEDURE:

1. Connect the Function generator with CRO.
2. Switch ON the CRO and Function generator
3. Set the given frequency in function generator.
4. Observe the frequency and phase angle in CRO
5. Reduce the frequency to 0 Hz
6. Switch OFF the Function generator and CRO

### Measuring Frequency

#### 1. Connect the Signal:

- Connect the signal source (e.g., a function generator) to the input of the CRO using a probe or a direct connection.

#### 2. Adjust Time Base:

- Set the time base (or horizontal scale) on the oscilloscope to a value that allows you to clearly see several cycles of the waveform on the screen. This scale is usually in milliseconds per division (ms/div) or microseconds per division ( $\mu$ s/div).

#### 3. Measure Time Period:

- Identify one complete cycle of the waveform on the oscilloscope screen. The time period (T) is the duration of one complete cycle.
- Use the horizontal scale to measure the number of divisions that one complete cycle spans. Multiply this by the time base setting to get the time period of the waveform.

### RESULT:

Thus the operation of CRO has been studied and the frequency and phase has been measured.

## CHAPTER 6

### Characteristics of BJT in CB configuration, h-parameters

Mrs. M.R.Geetha

#### AIM:

To plot the input and output characteristics of a transistor in CB Configuration and to compute the h-parameters

#### APPARATUS REQUIRED:

1. (0-30) V TRPS – 2 no's
2.  $1K\Omega$  resistors - 2 no's
3. (0-100) mA Ammeters - 2no.s
4. (0-2) V & (0-20) V Voltmeters - 1no. (each)
5. BC 107 transistor - 1no.
6. Bread Board

#### TABULAR COLUMN:

$V_{CB} = 0V$		$V_{CB} = 10V$		$V_{CB} = 20V$	
$V_{BE} (V)$	$I_E (mA)$	$V_{BE} (V)$	$I_E (mA)$	$V_{BE} (V)$	$I_E (mA)$

#### PROCEDURE:

1. Make connections as shown in circuit diagram.
2. For I/P characteristics keep  $V_{CB}$  constant at 0 V and vary voltage  $V_{BE}$  slowly in steps of 0.1 V and notedown the corresponding values of  $I_E$ .
3. Repeat the same procedure for  $V_{CB} = 5 V$  and  $V_{CB} = 10 V$ . Vary the voltage source  $V_2$  for adjusting  $V_{CB}$  to 5 V and 10 V.
4. For O/P characteristics keep  $I_E$  constant at 0 mA and vary voltage  $V_{BC}$  vary slowly insteps of 1 V andnote down the corresponding values of  $I_C$ .
5. Repeat the same procedure for  $I_E = 5 mA$  and  $I_E = 10 mA$ . Vary the voltage source  $V_1$  for adjusting  $I_E$  to 5 mA and 10 mA.
6. Plot the I/P & O/P characteristics and calculate the h – parameters from the graph using the formulaegiven below.

#### RESULT:

The input and output characteristics of transistor in CB configuration was observed and the graphs are plotted.



## CHAPTER 7

### Characteristics of BJT in CE configuration, h-parameters

Mrs. M.R.Geetha

#### AIM:

To plot the input and output characteristics of a transistor in CE Configuration and to compute the h-parameters

#### APPARATUS REQUIRED:

1. (0-30) V TRPS – 2 no's
2.  $1K\Omega$  resistors - 2 no's
3. (0-100) mA Ammeters - 2no.s
4. (0-2) V & (0-20) V Voltmeters - 1no. (each)
5. BC 107 transistor - 1no.
6. Bread Board
7. Connecting wires

#### TABULAR COLUMN:

$V_{CB} = 0V$		$V_{CB} = 10V$		$V_{CB} = 20V$	
$V_{BE} (V)$	$I_E (mA)$	$V_{BE} (V)$	$I_E (mA)$	$V_{BE} (V)$	$I_E (mA)$

#### PROCEDURE:

1. Make connections as shown in circuit diagram.
2. For I/P characteristics keep  $V_{CB}$  constant at 0 V and vary voltage  $V_{BE}$  slowly in steps of 0.1 V and notedown the corresponding values of  $I_E$  .
3. Repeat the same procedure for  $V_{CB} = 5 V$  and  $V_{CB} = 10 V$ . Vary the voltage source  $V_2$  for adjusting  $V_{CB}$  to 5 V and 10 V.
4. For O/P characteristics keep  $I_E$  constant at 0 mA and vary voltage  $V_{BC}$  vary slowly insteps of 1 V andnote down the corresponding values of  $I_C$  .
5. Repeat the same procedure for  $I_E = 5 mA$  and  $I_E = 10 mA$ . Vary the voltage source  $V_1$  for adjusting  $I_E$  to 5 mA and 10 mA.
6. Plot the I/P & O/P characteristics and calculate the h – parameters from the graph using the formulaegiven below.

#### RESULT:

The input and output characteristics of transistor in CE configuration was observed and the graphs are plotted.

## CHAPTER 8

### Drain and transfer characteristics of JFET

Mrs. M.R.Geetha

#### AIM:

To plot the Drain and Transfer characteristics of a given JFET and to calculate the Drain Resistance  $r_d$ , mutual Conductance  $g_m$  & Amplification factor  $\mu$ .

#### APPARATUS REQUIRED:

1. TRPS (0-30v) - 2no
2. (0-2)V & (0-20)V Voltmeters – 1no. (each)
3. JFET BFW10-1
4. Connecting wires
5. Bread board
6. 1K $\Omega$  resistance

#### TABULAR COLUMN:

$V_{GS} = 0V$		$V_{GS} = 1V$		$V_{GS} = 2V$	
$V_{DS}(V)$	$I_D (mA)$	$V_{DS} (V)$	$I_D (mA)$	$V_{DS} (V)$	$I_D (mA)$

#### PROCEDURE:

1. Connections are made as per the circuit diagram
2. For different fixed values of  $V_{GS}$  by varying the drain to source voltage  $V_{DS}$  the values of  $I_D$  are noted
3. For these values the drain characteristics of the JFET are obtained
4. For different fixed values of  $V_{DS}$  by varying the gate to source voltage  $V_{GS}$ , the values of  $I_D$  are noted
5. From these values the transfer characteristics of the JFET are obtained

#### CALCULATIONS:

1. Drain resistance ( $r_d$ ) =  $\Delta V_{DS} / \Delta I_D$  ( $\Omega$ )
2. Mutual conductance ( $g_m$ ) =  $\Delta I_D / \Delta V_{GS}$
3. Amplification Factor ( $\mu$ ) =  $r_d \times g_m$

#### RESULT:

1. The Drain and transfer characteristics of a JFET are obtained and the graphs are plotted.
2. The Drain resistance, transconductance and amplification factor are obtained as

$r_d =$        $g_m =$        $\mu =$

## CHAPTER 9

### Transistor as a switch

Mrs. M.R.Geetha

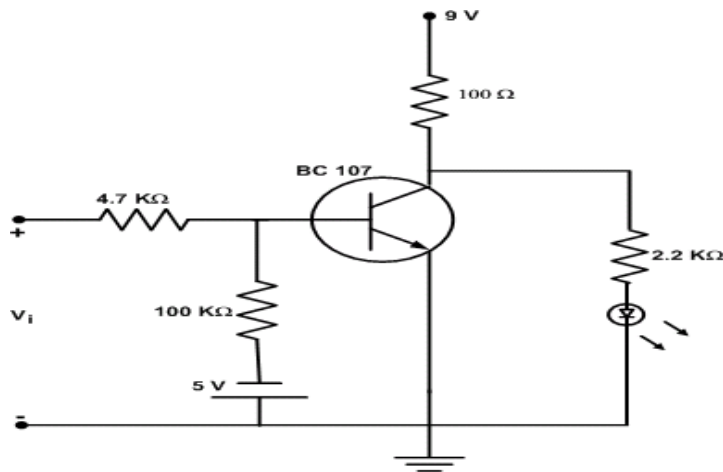
**AIM:**

To verify the switching action of a transistor and to measure the cut off and saturation voltages.

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:**

1. (0-30) V TRPS - 2no.s
2. 100K, 2.2K,100Ω,4.7K resistors - 1no. (each)
3. (0-2) V & (0-20) V Voltmeters - 1no. (each)
4. LED
5. BC 107 transistor - 1no
6. Bread Board,
7. Connecting wires

**CIRCUIT DIAGRAM**



**TABULAR FORM**

$V_{CE(SAT)}$	$V_{CB(SAT)}$	$V_{BE(SAT)}$	$V_{CE(cutoff)}$	$V_{CB(cutoff)}$	$V_{BE(cutoff)}$

**RESULT:** The switching action of a Transistor is verified. And the saturation and cut-off

values are noted as  $V_{CE(SAT)} =$        $V_{CB(SAT)} =$        $V_{BE(SAT)} =$   
 $V_{CE(CUTOFF)} =$        $V_{CB(CUTOFF)} =$        $V_{BE(CUTOFF)} =$

# CHAPTER 10

## Implementation of logic gates using diodes and transistors

Mrs. M.R.Geetha

### AIM:

To verify the truth table for various logic gates using resistors, diodes and transistors.

### APPARATUS REQUIRED:

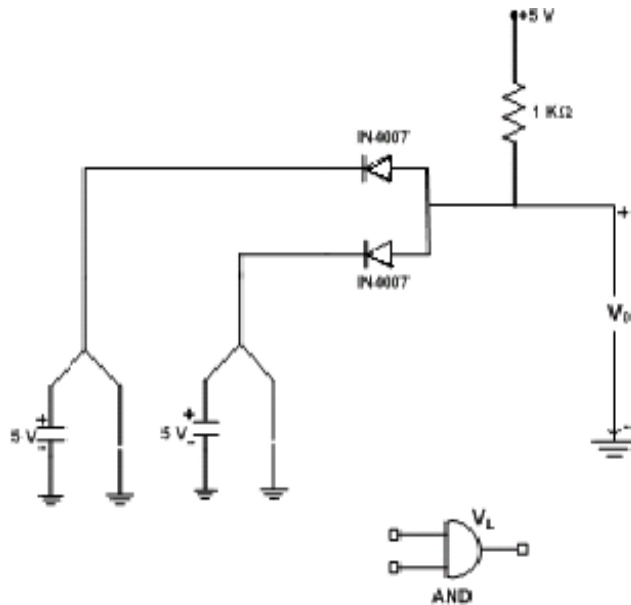
7. Diodes IN4007-2No
8. Transistor BC107-1no
9. Resistor  $1k\Omega$ -2no
10. Bread board
11. Connecting wires
12. TRPS

### THEORY:

Circuits used to process digital signals are called logic gates. Gate is a digital circuit with one or more inputs but only one output. The basic gates are AND, OR, NOT, NAND, NOR by connecting these gates in different ways we can build circuits that can perform arithmetic and other functions. The logic gates NAND, NOR are universal gates.

### CIRCUIT DIAGRAM

#### 1. AND GATE



#### TRUTH TABLE

A	B	O/P
0	0	0
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1

### RESULT:

The truth table of various logic gates is verified.

# APPLIEDHYDRAULIC ENGINEERING

*Edited by*

**R.DEVI**



978-93-6255-460-4

**Applied Hydraulic Engineering**  
Copyright © 2019 by **Mrs.R.Devi**

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-460-4

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	05
<b>CHAPTER 1 - Uniform Flow</b> D.Jeyakumar	-	12
<b>CHAPTER 2 - Gradually Varied Flow</b> K.Shanthi	-	30
<b>CHAPTER 3 - Rapidly Varied Flow</b> A.Belciyamary	-	70
<b>CHAPTER 4 - Turbines</b> A.Belciya Mary	-	110
<b>CHAPTER 5 – Pumps</b> K. Shanthi	-	150
<b>CHAPTER 6 - Properties Of Open Channel</b> D.Jeyakumar	-	160
<b>CHAPTER7- Dynamic equations of gradually varied Flows</b> R.Devi	-	170
<b>CHAPTER 8- Francis turbine</b> A.Belciya Mary	-	176
<b>CHAPTER 9- Kaplan turbine</b> P.Venkateswaran	-	180
<b>CHAPTER 10 Centrifugal pumps</b> S.Ravishankar	-	186
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	190

# CHAPTER- 1

## Uniform Flow

D.Jeyakumar

### Introduction:

Uniform flow is a concept in fluid dynamics, particularly in open channel hydraulics, where the flow characteristics remain constant along the length of the channel. This means that parameters like flow depth, velocity, and cross-sectional area are consistent at every point along the channel's length.

### Key Characteristics of Uniform Flow

1. **Constant Flow Depth:** The depth of the flow does not change from one point to another along the channel.
2. **Constant Velocity:** The velocity of the flow remains the same at every point in the channel.
3. **Constant Cross-Sectional Area:** The shape and size of the channel's cross-section are consistent along its length.
4. **Steady Flow Conditions:** The flow rate and velocity remain constant over time, meaning there are no changes in the flow characteristics at any point in the channel.

### Importance and Applications

- **Design of Channels:** Understanding and designing for uniform flow is crucial for creating efficient and effective channels for irrigation, drainage, and other hydraulic engineering applications.
- **Hydraulic Calculations:** Uniform flow simplifies calculations for channel flow, making it easier to predict how water will move through a given channel and to design channels that meet specific hydraulic requirements.
- **Streamlining Maintenance:** Channels designed to promote uniform flow are less likely to suffer from problems like sediment build-up or erosion, leading to lower maintenance costs.

### Mathematical Representation

Uniform flow can be analyzed using several equations depending on the type of channel (rectangular, trapezoidal, etc.). One common equation used is Manning's equation for open channels:

$$Q = \frac{1}{n} AR^{2/3} S^{1/2}$$

Where:

- Q is the discharge (flow rate),
- n is Manning's roughness coefficient,
- A is the cross-sectional area of flow,
- R is the hydraulic radius ( $R = \frac{A}{P}$ , where P is the wetted perimeter),
- S is the slope of the flow.

In uniform flow conditions, the slope of the energy grade line (or the channel slope) is related to the flow rate and cross-sectional area by this equation.

### Limitations



**CHAPTER -2**  
**Gradually Varied Flow**  
K.Shanthi

"Gradually Varied Flow" typically refers to a type of fluid flow in open channels where the flow conditions change gradually over a distance. It's a concept often discussed in hydrology and hydraulic engineering.

In a gradually varied flow, the flow depth, velocity, and other properties change smoothly and continuously along the channel. This contrasts with rapidly varied flow, where changes in flow conditions happen quickly and over short distances, such as in hydraulic jumps or sudden changes in channel geometry.

**Here are a few key points about gradually varied flow:**

1. **Types of Gradually Varied Flow:** It can be either subcritical (slow) or supercritical (fast), depending on the flow conditions and channel characteristics. Subcritical flow occurs when the flow speed is less than the wave speed, and supercritical flow occurs when the flow speed exceeds the wave speed.
2. **Hydraulic Gradually Varied Flow Equations:** The governing equations for gradually varied flow include the Saint-Venant equations, which describe the conservation of mass and momentum in an open channel. The flow profile can be computed using methods like the normal depth or the specific energy approach.
3. **Applications:** Understanding gradually varied flow is essential for designing and managing waterways, flood control systems, and irrigation channels. Engineers use this knowledge to predict how water will behave in natural and artificial channels under different conditions.
4. **Examples:** Examples of gradually varied flow include flow in rivers with gently changing slopes or in channels with gradual changes in cross-sectional area.

If you have a specific context or application in mind for gradually varied flow, feel free to provide more details!

**CHAPTER-3**  
**Rapidly Varied Flow**  
.A.Belciyamary

"Rapidly Varied Flow" refers to situations where the flow conditions in an open channel or conduit change abruptly over a short distance. This kind of flow is characterized by sudden changes in water depth, velocity, or cross-sectional area, which leads to significant fluctuations in flow behavior within a relatively short span.

**Here are some key aspects of rapidly varied flow:**

### **1. Characteristics**

- **Abrupt Changes:** Rapidly varied flow occurs where there's a sudden change in the channel's geometry or slope, such as in hydraulic jumps, weirs, or sluice gates.
- **Hydraulic Jump:** A common example of rapidly varied flow is a hydraulic jump, where high-speed, supercritical flow transitions to slower, subcritical flow, resulting in a sudden increase in flow depth and a significant turbulence.
- **Flow Transition:** In rapidly varied flow, the transition between different flow regimes (e.g., from subcritical to supercritical) is sharp and occurs over a short distance.

### **2. Governing Equations**

- **Saint-Venant Equations:** These are still relevant, but solving them in the case of rapidly varied flow often requires numerical methods due to the complex interactions and sudden changes involved.
- **Momentum and Energy Considerations:** In rapidly varied flow, changes in momentum and energy must be considered to accurately describe the flow behavior. For example, the energy equation and momentum equation must account for sudden changes in flow conditions.

### **3. Applications and Examples**

- **Weirs and Flumes:** Structures like weirs, flumes, and sluice gates create rapidly varied flow conditions. These structures are designed to measure or control flow by inducing abrupt changes in flow depth and velocity.
- **Hydraulic Jumps:** Occur in open channels and are used to dissipate excess energy. They are common in spillways and can be used to reduce the erosive potential of fast-moving water.
- **Waterfalls:** Natural features such as waterfalls also represent rapidly varied flow, where the flow transitions from a steep descent to a pool below, creating dramatic changes in flow conditions.

### **4. Design Considerations**

- **Energy Dissipation:** In engineering design, managing rapidly varied flow often involves designing structures to control or dissipate the excess energy and prevent erosion or damage downstream.
- **Flow Measurement:** Accurate measurement of flow in rapidly varied conditions requires specialized equipment and techniques due to the non-uniform flow characteristics.

### **5. Challenges**

- **Complexity:** The sudden changes in flow properties make rapidly varied flow more challenging to model and predict compared to gradually varied flow.

## **CHAPTER-4**

### **Turbines**

A.Belciya Mary

Turbines are crucial devices used to convert fluid energy into mechanical energy. They are widely used in various applications, including power generation, aviation, and industrial processes. Here's a detailed overview of turbines, including their types, principles of operation, and applications:

### **1. Basic Principle of Operation**

Turbines operate on the principle of converting the kinetic and/or potential energy of a fluid (which could be water, steam, gas, or air) into rotational mechanical energy. This is done by directing the fluid through a series of blades or vanes, which are mounted on a rotor. As the fluid flows over these blades, it imparts a force that causes the rotor to spin.

### **2. Types of Turbines**

#### **A. Steam Turbines**

- **Operation:** Steam turbines use high-pressure steam to turn a rotor. The steam is directed through nozzles, which convert its thermal energy into kinetic energy, causing the turbine blades to rotate.
- **Applications:** Primarily used in power plants for electricity generation. They can also be found in ships and industrial processes where steam is readily available.

#### **B. Gas Turbines**

- **Operation:** Gas turbines use a high-speed flow of gas, often produced by burning fuel (like natural gas or aviation fuel), to turn the turbine blades. The hot gases expand through the turbine, causing it to spin.
- **Applications:** Commonly used in aircraft engines, power generation, and mechanical drives for industrial applications.

#### **C. Water Turbines**

**Operation:** Water turbines, such as Pelton, Francis, and Kaplan turbines, use the kinetic energy of flowing water to drive the rotor. The type of water turbine used depends on the flow conditions and the head (the height from which water falls).

**Applications:** Mainly used in hydroelectric power plants to generate electricity from flowing or falling water.

#### **D. Wind Turbines**

- **Operation:** Wind turbines convert the kinetic energy of wind into mechanical energy. Wind passes over the blades, causing them to spin and generate rotational motion, which can then be converted into electrical energy.
- **Applications:** Used for renewable energy generation in wind farms.

#### **E. Hydraulic Turbines**

## CHAPTER-5

### Pumps

K. Shanthi

Pumps are mechanical devices used to move fluids (liquids or gases) from one place to another, typically by increasing the pressure or mechanical energy of the fluid. They play a critical role in numerous industries and applications, from water supply systems and sewage treatment to industrial processes and chemical manufacturing. Here's a comprehensive overview of pumps:

#### 1. Basic Principles of Operation

Pumps work by creating a pressure difference that moves the fluid. This can be achieved through various mechanisms, including positive displacement (moving a fixed amount of fluid) and dynamic (adding energy to the fluid to increase its velocity).

#### 2. Types of Pumps

##### A. Positive Displacement Pumps

- **Operation:** These pumps trap a fixed volume of fluid and then force it into the discharge pipe. They work well with viscous fluids and can handle variations in flow rate and pressure.
- **Types:**
  - **Gear Pumps:** Use interlocking gears to move fluid. Suitable for high-viscosity fluids.
  - **Diaphragm Pumps:** Use a diaphragm to move fluid. Ideal for applications requiring isolation of fluid and pump components.
  - **Piston Pumps:** Use a piston driven back and forth within a cylinder to move fluid. Common in hydraulic systems and high-pressure applications.
  - **Peristaltic Pumps:** Move fluid through a hose by compressing and releasing it with rollers. Often used in laboratory and medical applications.

##### B. Centrifugal Pumps

- **Operation:** Use a rotating impeller to impart kinetic energy to the fluid, converting it into pressure energy. They are widely used in applications requiring high flow rates and lower pressures.
- **Types:**
  - **Single-Stage Pumps:** Have one impeller and are used for low to moderate pressure applications.
  - **Multi-Stage Pumps:** Have multiple impellers and are used for high-pressure applications.
  - **Submersible Pumps:** Designed to be submerged in the fluid they are pumping. Commonly used for groundwater extraction and in sewage systems.
  - **Vertical Turbine Pumps:** Feature a vertical shaft and are used for deep well applications.

##### C. Screw Pumps

- **Operation:** Utilize one or more screws to move fluid. They are efficient for handling large volumes of low-viscosity fluids and are often used in oil and gas applications.
- **Types:**
  - **Single-Screw Pumps:** Feature a single screw that moves fluid along the pump casing.
  - **Multi-Screw Pumps:** Use multiple screws to increase flow capacity and pressure.

## CHAPTER-6

### Properties Of Open Channel

D.Jeyakumar

In the study of open channel hydraulics, several key properties and principles are fundamental to understanding and analyzing the flow of water in channels that are open to the atmosphere, such as rivers, streams, and ditches. Here are some of the core concepts and properties:

#### 1. Flow Regimes

- **Laminar Flow:** Occurs at low velocities where fluid layers move smoothly. This is rare in open channels due to the typically high velocities.
- **Turbulent Flow:** Common in open channels, characterized by chaotic and irregular fluid motion. It usually occurs at higher velocities and can significantly impact channel design and analysis.

#### 2. Flow Types

- **Subcritical Flow:** Occurs when the flow velocity is less than the wave velocity. It's characterized by tranquil, slower-moving water.
- **Supercritical Flow:** Occurs when the flow velocity exceeds the wave velocity. This flow is faster and more energetic, leading to steeper flow profiles.

#### 3. Hydraulic Radius (R)

- Defined as the ratio of the cross-sectional area of flow (A) to the wetted perimeter (P). It's a measure of the efficiency of the channel in conveying flow.  $R = \frac{A}{P}$

#### 4. Manning's Equation

- Used to estimate the velocity or discharge in an open channel flow. It takes into account the channel's roughness, slope, and hydraulic radius.  $V = \frac{1.49}{n} R^{2/3} S^{1/2}$  where V is the velocity, n is the Manning's roughness coefficient, R is the hydraulic radius, and S is the slope of the channel.

#### 5. Chezy's Equation

- Another empirical equation used to calculate the flow velocity in open channels, often used in conjunction with Manning's equation.  $V = C R^{1/2} S^{1/2}$  where C is the Chezy coefficient, R is the hydraulic radius, and S is the slope of the channel.

**CHAPTER-7**  
**Dynamic equations of gradually varied flows**  
R.Devi

In the study of open channel hydraulics, gradually varied flows (GVF) refer to flows where the changes in flow depth or cross-sectional area occur slowly along the channel. The dynamics of these flows are described by equations that account for the gradual changes in the flow properties. The main equations involved in analyzing GVF are the **Saint-Venant equations** for open channel flow.

**1. Saint-Venant Equations**

The Saint-Venant equations are a set of partial differential equations derived from the conservation of mass and momentum for open channel flow. For gradually varied flow, these equations can be simplified:

**1. Continuity Equation (Conservation of Mass):**

$$\frac{\partial A}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial (A \cdot Q)}{\partial x} = 0 \quad \frac{\partial A}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial (A \cdot Q)}{\partial x} = 0$$

Where:

- A = cross-sectional area of flow
- Q = discharge (flow rate)
- x = distance along the channel
- t = time

For steady flow conditions, the continuity equation simplifies to:

$$\frac{\partial A}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} = 0 \quad \frac{\partial A}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} = 0$$

**2. Momentum Equation (Conservation of Momentum):**

$$\frac{\partial Q}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial (Q^2/A)}{\partial x} + gA \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = 0 \quad \frac{\partial Q}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial (Q^2/A)}{\partial x} + gA \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = 0$$

Where:

- g = acceleration due to gravity
- h = water surface elevation (or depth)

For steady flow conditions, the momentum equation simplifies to:

$$\frac{\partial (Q^2/A)}{\partial x} + gA \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = 0 \quad \frac{\partial (Q^2/A)}{\partial x} + gA \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = 0$$

**2. Normal Depth and Energy Grade Line**

In a steady-state scenario, the flow profile is often analyzed using the concept of normal depth and energy grade line. The **normal depth**  $h_n$  is the depth at which flow is uniform, meaning that the channel slope and bed slope balance the frictional effects.

**CHAPTER-8**  
**Francis turbine**  
A.Belciya Mary

The Francis turbine is a type of water turbine developed by James B. Francis in the 19th century. It is used primarily for hydroelectric power generation. The design of the Francis turbine is known for its efficiency in converting the energy of flowing water into mechanical energy.

Here are some key features of the Francis turbine:

1. **Radial Flow:** The Francis turbine operates with a radial flow, meaning water flows from the outside towards the center of the turbine. Water enters the turbine through a set of guide vanes, which direct it onto the rotating blades.
2. **Axial Flow:** The flow of water is partially radial and then becomes axial as it passes through the turbine. This allows for a smooth transition of energy and contributes to its efficiency.
3. **Adjustable Guide Vanes:** The turbine has adjustable guide vanes that help control the flow of water and maintain optimal performance across a range of operating conditions.
4. **Application:** Francis turbines are used in a variety of settings, from large hydroelectric dams to small-scale hydroelectric systems. They are particularly effective in medium to high head applications.
5. **Efficiency:** Known for its high efficiency, the Francis turbine can achieve efficiency levels of around 90% or more, making it one of the most efficient types of water turbines.

The Francis turbine is a crucial component in many hydroelectric power plants due to its versatility and efficiency in converting the kinetic energy of water into electrical power.

## CHAPTER 9

### Kaplan turbine

P.Venkateswaran

The Kaplan turbine is a type of water turbine used for hydroelectric power generation. It is particularly suited for low-head, high-flow sites, where the height of the water drop is relatively small but the volume of water is large.

#### Key Features:

1. **Adjustable Blades:** The Kaplan turbine has adjustable blades, which allows it to efficiently handle varying water flow conditions. This feature is particularly useful in applications where water flow can fluctuate.
2. **Axial Flow:** Water flows parallel to the axis of the turbine, which is different from the radial flow in some other turbines like the Pelton or Francis turbines.
3. **Propeller-like Design:** It resembles a ship's propeller, with a series of blades that can be adjusted to optimize performance. The blade adjustment helps to maintain efficiency across a range of flow rates.
4. **Runner:** The Kaplan turbine has a runner (the part with the blades) that is positioned in the water stream. The water hits the blades and causes them to spin, which in turn drives a generator to produce electricity.
5. **Efficiency:** Kaplan turbines are known for their high efficiency in converting the energy from the water into mechanical energy, especially in low-head conditions.

#### Applications:

- **Hydroelectric Plants:** They are widely used in hydroelectric power plants where there is a low head but high flow rate, such as in large rivers or tidal areas.
- **Irrigation Systems:** Sometimes used in irrigation systems where water flow can be significant but the drop is not very high.

#### Advantages:

- **High Efficiency:** Particularly in low-head conditions, Kaplan turbines can be more efficient than other types of turbines.
- **Flow Flexibility:** The ability to adjust the blade angle allows them to handle varying flow rates effectively.

#### Disadvantages:

- **Complexity:** The adjustable blade mechanism adds to the complexity and maintenance requirements of the turbine.
- **Cost:** The initial cost of Kaplan turbines can be higher compared to other turbine types due to their complexity and the need for precise manufacturing.

Overall, the Kaplan turbine is a versatile and efficient choice for specific hydroelectric power generation scenarios, making it a popular choice for many engineers and operators in the field.



## CHAPTER 10

### Centrifugal pumps

S.Ravishankar

Centrifugal pumps are a type of pump commonly used to move fluids in various industrial, agricultural, and municipal applications. Here's a rundown of how they work and some key aspects:

#### How They Work

1. **Basic Principle:** Centrifugal pumps operate on the principle of centrifugal force. When the pump impeller (a rotating component) spins, it imparts kinetic energy to the fluid, causing it to move outward from the center of the impeller.
2. **Impeller:** The heart of the pump, the impeller, is designed with blades or vanes that accelerate the fluid radially outward.
3. **Volute or Diffuser:** After the fluid exits the impeller, it flows into a volute or diffuser, which helps convert the kinetic energy into pressure energy, thereby creating a pressure difference that moves the fluid through the discharge pipe.

#### Key Components

1. **Impeller:** Rotating component that adds energy to the fluid.
2. **Casing:** Surrounds the impeller and directs the fluid flow.
3. **Shaft:** Connects the impeller to the motor and transmits mechanical energy.
4. **Seal:** Prevents leakage of fluid from the pump.
5. **Bearing:** Supports the rotating shaft and impeller.

#### Types of Centrifugal Pumps

1. **Single-Stage:** Has one impeller, used for low to moderate pressure applications.
2. **Multi-Stage:** Contains multiple impellers arranged in series, used for high-pressure applications.
3. **Radial Flow:** Fluid flows perpendicular to the shaft, used for high-pressure and low-flow situations.
4. **Axial Flow:** Fluid flows parallel to the shaft, used for high-flow and low-pressure situations.

#### Advantages

1. **Simplicity:** Relatively simple construction and operation.
2. **Efficiency:** Good for continuous flow applications.
3. **Versatility:** Can handle various types of fluids, including slurries, if designed appropriately.

#### Disadvantages

1. **Not Self-Priming:** Requires priming to remove air from the pump and piping system before operation.
2. **Performance Sensitivity:** Efficiency can vary with changes in flow rate and system conditions.

#### Applications

- **Water Supply:** Municipal water systems and irrigation.
- **HVAC Systems:** For circulating water in heating and cooling systems.
- **Industrial Processes:** Moving chemicals, slurries, or other fluids.
- **Wastewater Treatment:** Pumping sewage or treated effluent.

# **STRENGTH OF MATERIALS II**

---

EDITED BY

**R.DEVI**



978-93-6255-818-3

# **STRENGTH OF MATERIALS**

Copyright © 2019 by Mrs. R. Devi

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-818-3

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	05
<b>CHAPTER 1 - Energy Principles</b>	-	12
Mr. D.Jeyakumar		
<b>CHAPTER 2 - Indeterminate Beams</b>	-	30
Mr. D.Amal Colins		
<b>CHAPTER 3 - Columns and Cylinders</b>	-	50
Mrs. J.Santhiyaa Jenifer		
<b>CHAPTER 4 - State of Stress in Three Dimensions</b>	-	80
Mr. B.Jose Ravindra Raj		
<b>CHAPTER 5 – Advanced Topics</b>	-	115
Mrs.M.Karpagam		
<b>CHAPTER 6-Stresses And Strains</b>	-	125
Mrs.T.Vidhudhalai		
<b>CHAPTER 7-Three important moduli's are Elasticity, Bulk, and Rigidity</b>	-	140
Mrs.A.Belciya Mary		
<b>CHAPTER 8-Thermal Stresses, Bars Subjected To Tension And Compression</b>	-	159
Mr.S.Ravishankar		
<b>CHAPTER 9-Material subjected to combined direct and shear stresses</b>	-	170
Mrs.K.Shanthi		
<b>CHAPTER 10-Mohr's Stress Circle</b>	-	180
Mr. D.Jeyakumar		
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>190</b>

**CHAPTER-1**  
**Energy Principles**  
Mr. D.Jeyakumar

Energy principles are foundational concepts in various scientific and engineering disciplines that help us understand and manage energy transformations and conservation. Here's an overview of key energy principles and their applications:

### 1. Conservation of Energy

**Principle:** Energy cannot be created or destroyed, only transformed from one form to another. The total energy in an isolated system remains constant.

**Applications:**

- **Mechanical Systems:** In mechanical systems, kinetic energy, potential energy, and work done are interrelated. For instance, in a pendulum, potential energy converts to kinetic energy and vice versa.
- **Thermodynamics:** Energy conservation is crucial in thermodynamic processes, where heat energy converts into work or other forms of energy.

### 2. First Law of Thermodynamics

**Principle:** The change in the internal energy of a system is equal to the heat added to the system minus the work done by the system.

**Mathematical Form:**  $\Delta U = Q - W$

Where:

- $\Delta U$  is the change in internal energy,
- $Q$  is the heat added to the system,
- $W$  is the work done by the system.

**Applications:**

- **Heat Engines:** This principle explains how heat energy is converted into mechanical work in engines.
- **Refrigeration:** Used in designing systems that transfer heat from a low-temperature region to a high-temperature region.

### 3. Second Law of Thermodynamics

**Principle:** In any energy transfer or transformation, the total entropy (disorder) of an isolated system can never decrease. Energy tends to disperse and become less useful over time.

**Applications:**

- **Heat Engines:** Explains why no engine can be 100% efficient due to inevitable energy losses (waste heat).

## CHAPTER-2 Indeterminate Beams

Mr. D.Amal Colins

Indeterminate beams are structural beams whose internal forces and reactions cannot be determined using only the equations of static equilibrium. These beams have more unknowns (reactions and internal forces) than there are equilibrium equations available. To analyze such beams, additional methods beyond static equilibrium are required.

Here's a detailed overview of indeterminate beams, including their types, analysis methods, and practical considerations:

### 1. Characteristics of Indeterminate Beams

- **Degrees of Indeterminacy:** An indeterminate beam has more supports or internal constraints than can be accounted for with the standard three equilibrium equations (sum of forces in x, y, and moments equal zero). This results in a degree of indeterminacy, which is the number of additional unknowns that need to be determined.
- **Static Indeterminacy:** Beams can be classified based on the degree of indeterminacy:
  - **Simply Supported Beam:** Static indeterminate if it has more than two supports.
  - **Fixed Beam:** Can be statically indeterminate if it has more constraints than the three equilibrium equations can solve.

### 2. Types of Indeterminate Beams

- **Fixed-Fixed Beam:** Supported at both ends with fixed supports, which resist both vertical and horizontal forces, as well as moments.
- **Fixed-Supported Beam:** Fixed at one end and simply supported at the other.
- **Continuous Beam:** Spans over more than two supports, creating multiple constraints.
- **Cantilever Beam with Additional Supports:** A cantilever beam with one or more additional supports.

### 3. Methods of Analysis

To analyze indeterminate beams, additional methods are used to account for the extra unknowns. Common methods include:

#### A. Method of Superposition

**Principle:** Break down the indeterminate beam into simpler components or cases, solve each component independently, and then superimpose the results.

**Steps:**

1. Decompose the indeterminate beam into statically determinate components.
2. Solve each component as if it were a statically determinate beam.
3. Combine the results to find the internal forces and reactions of the original beam.

**Applications:** Useful in analyzing beams with superimposed loads and different boundary conditions.

#### B. Compatibility Equations

## CHAPTER-3 Columns and Cylinders

Mrs. J.Santhiyaa Jenifer

Columns and cylinders are fundamental structural elements used in engineering and construction. They serve various purposes, from supporting loads to containing fluids. Here's a detailed overview of columns and cylinders, including their types, analysis, and applications:

### Columns

Columns are vertical structural elements designed to support compressive loads. They are essential in buildings, bridges, and other structures to transfer loads from beams, slabs, or roofs to the foundations.

#### 1. Types of Columns

- **Short Columns:** These are columns whose height is relatively small compared to their cross-sectional dimensions. They primarily support axial loads without significant lateral deflection.
- **Long Columns:** These columns are taller relative to their cross-sectional dimensions and are prone to buckling under compressive loads. They need careful design to avoid instability.
- **Composite Columns:** Made from different materials (e.g., concrete encased in steel or steel embedded in concrete) to leverage the benefits of each material.
- **Reinforced Concrete Columns:** Made from concrete and reinforced with steel bars or mesh to enhance their strength and ductility.
- **Steel Columns:** Made from structural steel, which provides high strength-to-weight ratio and flexibility in design.

#### 2. Column Load Types

- **Axial Load:** A force applied parallel to the column's axis, causing compressive or tensile stress.
- **Lateral Load:** Forces applied perpendicular to the column's axis, causing bending and shear stresses.

#### 3. Column Analysis and Design

- **Compressive Strength:** Determined by the material's strength and the column's cross-sectional area. The formula for axial load capacity is:  $P=A \cdot f_c$
- Where:
  - P is the load,
  - A is the cross-sectional area,
  - $f_c$  is the material's compressive strength.
- **Buckling Analysis:** Long columns are analyzed for buckling, a failure mode where the column bends due to compressive forces. The critical buckling load can be calculated using Euler's formula:

$$P_{cr} = \frac{\pi^2 EI}{(KL)^2}$$

where,

## CHAPTER-4 State of Stress in Three Dimensions

Mr. B. Jose Ravindra Raj

The state of stress in three dimensions describes the internal forces within a material element subjected to loads, which can be represented by a stress tensor. This tensor characterizes how stresses are distributed in all three spatial dimensions. Here's a detailed explanation of the state of stress in three dimensions:

### 1. Stress Tensor

In three dimensions, the state of stress at a point in a material is represented by a symmetric 3x3 matrix known as the **stress tensor**. The components of this tensor describe the internal forces (stresses) acting on an infinitesimal element within the material.

#### Components of the Stress Tensor

The stress tensor is typically denoted by  $\sigma$  and can be written in matrix form as:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \sigma_{xx} & \sigma_{xy} & \sigma_{xz} \\ \sigma_{yx} & \sigma_{yy} & \sigma_{yz} \\ \sigma_{zx} & \sigma_{zy} & \sigma_{zz} \end{bmatrix}$$

Where:

- $\sigma_{xx}, \sigma_{yy}, \sigma_{zz}$  are the normal stresses in the x, y, and z directions, respectively.
- $\sigma_{xy}, \sigma_{xz}, \sigma_{yz}$  (and their counterparts  $\sigma_{yx}, \sigma_{zx}, \sigma_{zy}$ ) are the shear stresses acting on the faces of the element.

**Note:** Because the stress tensor is symmetric,  $\sigma_{xy} = \sigma_{yx}, \sigma_{xz} = \sigma_{zx}$  and  $\sigma_{yz} = \sigma_{zy}$ .

### 2. Normal and Shear Stresses

- **Normal Stress:** Acts perpendicular to a surface. For a face oriented perpendicular to the x-axis, the normal stress is  $\sigma_{xx}$ . Similarly,  $\sigma_{yy}$  and  $\sigma_{zz}$  are the normal stresses on faces perpendicular to the y and z axes, respectively.
- **Shear Stress:** Acts parallel to a surface. For a face oriented perpendicular to the x-axis and parallel to the yz-plane, the shear stress is  $\sigma_{xy}$ . Similarly,  $\sigma_{xz}$  and  $\sigma_{yz}$  are the shear stresses on faces perpendicular to the y and z axes and parallel to the respective other faces.

### 3. Stress Components in Different Coordinate Systems

- **Principal Stresses:** The maximum and minimum normal stresses that occur when the coordinate system is aligned with the principal axes of the stress tensor. These are found by solving the characteristic equation of the stress tensor.
- **Shear Stress on Principal Planes:** At the principal planes, shear stress is zero, and the normal stresses are the principal stresses.

### 4. Mohr's Circle for Three Dimensions



**CHAPTER-5**  
**Advanced Topics**  
Mrs.M.Karpagam

Advanced topics in the strength of materials encompass a range of sophisticated concepts and methods used to understand and predict material behavior under complex conditions. These topics often build on fundamental principles and explore more nuanced aspects of material performance and failure. Here's a detailed overview of some advanced topics:

### 1. Nonlinear Material Behavior

#### Nonlinear Elasticity:

- **Large Deformation Theory:** Deals with significant deformations where the linear approximation is no longer valid. Uses concepts like the Green-Lagrange strain tensor for large strains.
- **Hyperelastic Materials:** Materials that exhibit nonlinear stress-strain behavior even under small strains. Models like the Neo-Hookean or Ogden models are used.

#### Plasticity:

- **Rate-Dependent Plasticity:** Considers how strain rate affects material behavior. Common models include the Perzyna model.
- **Creep and Viscoplasticity:** Analyzes time-dependent deformation at high temperatures or under constant stress.

### 2. Advanced Failure Theories

#### Fracture Mechanics:

- **Linear Elastic Fracture Mechanics (LEFM):** Analyzes crack propagation using stress intensity factors (K). Key concepts include crack tip stress fields and the J-integral.
- **Elastic-Plastic Fracture Mechanics (EPFM):** Extends LEFM to materials that exhibit plastic deformation near the crack tip. Uses parameters like the J-integral or the CTOD (crack tip opening displacement).

#### Fatigue Analysis:

- **High-Cycle Fatigue (HCF):** Involves materials subjected to cyclic loads that result in failure over many cycles. S-N curves and the Miner's rule are used.
- **Low-Cycle Fatigue (LCF):** Deals with materials experiencing fewer cycles but with larger strains, often analyzed using strain-life approaches.

#### Damage Mechanics:

- **Continuum Damage Mechanics (CDM):** A framework for analyzing the accumulation of damage in materials and predicting failure. Involves damage variables that affect material stiffness.

### 3. Composite Materials

#### Laminate Theory:

## CHAPTER-6

### Stresses And Strains

T.Vidhudhalai

In the field of materials science and engineering, "stresses" and "strains" are fundamental concepts that describe how materials respond to external forces. Here's a brief overview:

#### Stresses

Stress is defined as the force applied per unit area within materials. It quantifies the internal resistance of a material to deformation when subjected to an external load. There are different types of stress:

1. **Normal Stress:** Acts perpendicular to the surface. It can be:
  - **Tensile Stress:** When the force is pulling apart the material.
  - **Compressive Stress:** When the force is pushing the material together.
2. **Shear Stress:** Acts parallel to the surface, causing layers of the material to slide past each other.

The formula for normal stress ( $\sigma$ ) is:

$$\sigma = \frac{F}{A}$$

where  $F$  is the applied force and  $A$  is the cross-sectional area.

#### Strains

Strain measures the deformation of a material in response to stress. It is a dimensionless quantity defined as the change in length divided by the original length. Types of strain include:

1. **Normal Strain:** Change in length due to tensile or compressive stress.
  - **Tensile Strain:**

$$\epsilon = \frac{\Delta L}{L_0}$$

where  $\Delta L$  is the change in length and  $L_0$  is the original length.

- **Compressive Strain:** Similar calculation, often resulting in a negative value.
2. **Shear Strain:** Change in shape due to shear stress, calculated as:

$$\text{Shear Strain} = \frac{\Delta x}{L}$$

where  $\Delta x$  is the displacement and  $L$  is the original length.

#### Relationship Between Stress and Strain

The relationship between stress and strain is often described by **Hooke's Law** for elastic materials:

$$\sigma = E \cdot \epsilon$$

where  $E$  is the modulus of elasticity (Young's modulus) of the material. This linear relationship holds true only within the elastic limit of the material.

## CHAPTER-7

### Three important moduli's are Elasticity, Bulk, and Rigidity

A.BELCIYA MARY

Absolutely! The three important moduli—Elastic Modulus, Bulk Modulus, and Shear (Rigidity) Modulus—are key parameters in understanding material behavior under different types of stress. Here's a breakdown of each:

#### 1. Elastic Modulus (Young's Modulus)

- **Definition:** This measures a material's ability to deform elastically (i.e., non-permanently) when a stress is applied.
- **Formula:**  $E = \frac{\sigma}{\epsilon}$  where  $E$  is Young's Modulus,  $\sigma$  is normal stress, and  $\epsilon$  is normal strain.
- **Units:** Pascals (Pa) or GigaPascals (GPa).
- **Significance:** A higher Young's modulus indicates a stiffer material. It is crucial for applications involving tensile or compressive loads.

#### 2. Bulk Modulus

- **Definition:** This measures a material's resistance to uniform compression. It quantifies how much a material will compress under pressure.
- **Formula:**  $K = -\frac{\Delta P}{\frac{\Delta V}{V_0}}$  where  $K$  is the Bulk Modulus,  $\Delta P$  is the change in pressure,  $\Delta V$  is the change in volume, and  $V_0$  is the original volume.
- **Units:** Pascals (Pa).
- **Significance:** A higher bulk modulus indicates a material is less compressible, important in applications involving fluids and gases.

#### 3. Shear Modulus (Rigidity Modulus)

- **Definition:** This measures a material's response to shear stress (i.e., deformation due to forces acting parallel to a surface).
- **Formula:**  $G = \frac{\tau}{\gamma}$  where  $G$  is the Shear Modulus,  $\tau$  is shear stress, and  $\gamma$  is shear strain.
- **Units:** Pascals (Pa).
- **Significance:** A higher shear modulus indicates a material that is more resistant to shear deformation. It's critical for materials subjected to torsional loads.

#### Summary

These moduli provide insight into how materials behave under different loading conditions, enabling engineers to select appropriate materials for various applications. If you have more specific questions about these moduli or their applications, feel free to ask!

## CHAPTER-8

### Thermal stresses, Bars subjected to tension and Compression

S.Ravishankar

**Thermal Stress** occurs when a material expands or contracts due to temperature changes while being restrained from free expansion or contraction. This can lead to significant internal stresses that can affect the integrity of the material.

#### 1. Causes of Thermal Stress

- **Temperature Change:** When a material is heated, it expands; when cooled, it contracts.
- **Constraints:** If a material is fixed at both ends or otherwise restricted from expanding or contracting, thermal stresses arise.

#### 2. Calculation of Thermal Stress

The thermal stress ( $\sigma_t$ ) can be calculated using the formula:

$$\sigma_t = E \cdot \alpha \cdot \Delta T$$

where:

- $E$  = Young's Modulus of the material
- $\alpha$  = Coefficient of thermal expansion (CTE)
- $\Delta T$  = Change in temperature (final temperature - initial temperature)

#### 3. Bars Subjected to Tension and Compression

##### A. Bars Under Tension

- When a bar is subjected to tensile stress, it tends to elongate.
- If the bar is constrained, thermal expansion leads to increased tensile stress.
- **Example:** A steel bar in a fixed frame heated uniformly will experience tension, and if the tensile strength is exceeded, it may yield or break.

##### B. Bars Under Compression

- In a compressed bar, thermal contraction can lead to additional compressive stress.
- If the bar is held in compression and then heated, it may buckle if the stress exceeds the critical buckling load.
- **Example:** A short, compressed column heated at one end can experience thermal expansion, leading to localized stresses that could cause failure.

Understanding thermal stresses is crucial for designing components that will experience temperature variations, such as bridges, pipelines, and mechanical systems. Proper consideration of these stresses can prevent structural failures due to temperature changes.

## CHAPTER-9

### Material subjected to combined direct and shear stresses

K.SHANTHI

When a material is subjected to combined direct (normal) and shear stresses, it experiences complex stress states that can significantly affect its behavior and strength. Here's an overview of how to analyze and understand these combined stresses:

#### 1. Definitions

- **Direct Stress ( $\sigma$ ):** Normal stress acting perpendicular to a surface, which can be tensile or compressive.
- **Shear Stress ( $\tau$ ):** Stress acting parallel to a surface, causing layers of the material to slide past each other.

#### 2. Combined Stress State

In many practical applications, materials may experience both direct and shear stresses simultaneously. For instance:

- A beam under bending experiences compressive and tensile direct stresses along its length, as well as shear stresses due to the bending action.
- Structural components in torsion may experience both shear and axial stresses if additional loads are applied.

#### 3. Mohr's Circle for Stress Analysis

Mohr's Circle is a graphical method used to analyze stress states, providing insights into principal stresses and maximum shear stresses. Here's a basic outline of how to use it:

##### 1. Determine Normal and Shear Stresses:

- Identify the values of direct normal stress ( $\sigma$ ) and shear stress ( $\tau$ ) acting on a given plane.

##### 2. Construct Mohr's Circle:

- Plot the point representing the state of stress on a Cartesian coordinate system with normal stress on the x-axis and shear stress on the y-axis.
- The center of the circle is at  $(\frac{\sigma_x + \sigma_y}{2}, 0)$  if considering a 2D state of stress.
- The radius of the circle is calculated as  $R = \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_y}{2}\right)^2 + \tau^2}$

**CHAPTER 10**  
**MOHR'S STRESS CIRCLE**  
**D.JEYAKUMAR**

Mohr's Circle is a powerful graphical tool used in engineering and materials science to analyze and visualize stress states in two-dimensional systems. It helps in determining principal stresses, maximum shear stresses, and the corresponding angles of these stresses. Here's a breakdown of how to construct and interpret Mohr's Circle:

**Steps to Construct Mohr's Circle**

**1. Identify the Stress Components:**

- Define the normal stress ( $\sigma_x$ ) and shear stress ( $\tau_{xy}$ ) acting on a specific plane.
- If dealing with a two-dimensional state of stress, also note the normal stress ( $\sigma_y$ ) acting on the perpendicular plane.

**2. Plot the Points:**

- Plot the point A representing the stress state on the Cartesian plane:
  - $A(\sigma_x, \tau_{xy})$
- Plot the point B for the perpendicular stress:
  - $B(\sigma_y, -\tau_{xy})$

**3. Calculate the Center and Radius of the Circle:**

- The center C of Mohr's Circle is given by:  $C = \left( \frac{\sigma_x + \sigma_y}{2}, 0 \right)$
- The radius R is calculated as:  $R = \sqrt{\left( \frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_y}{2} \right)^2 + \tau_{xy}^2}$

# CONSTRUCTION TECHNIQUES AND PRACTICES

Edited by

**Dr.ASHUTOSH DAS**



978-93-6255-209-9

**Construction Techniques And Practices**

Copyright © 2019 by **Dr.ASHUTOSH DAS**

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-209-9

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	06
<b>CHAPTER 1 - Construction Techniques</b> B Jose Ravindra Raj	-	10
<b>CHAPTER 2 - Construction Practices</b> D.Amal Colins	-	25
<b>CHAPTER 3 - Sub Structure Constructio</b> S.Ramakrishnan	-	52
<b>CHAPTER 4 - Super Structure Construction</b> D Jeyakumar	-	70
<b>CHAPTER 5 – Construction Equipment</b> A.Belciya Mary	-	90
<b>CHAPTER 6- Framed Structure</b> K.Shanthi	-	112
<b>CHAPTER 7- Development Of Construction Techniques</b> J.Santhiyaa Jenifer	-	125
<b>CHAPTER 8- Design Features</b> D.Amal Colins	-	138
<b>CHAPTER 9-Load Bearing Structure</b> R.Devi	-	160
<b>CHAPTER 10- Structural Systems</b> P.Venkateswaran	-	180
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>190</b>

# CHAPTER -1

## Construction Techniques

B Jose Ravindra Raj

### 1. Traditional Framing

- **Platform Framing:** Common in residential buildings; involves building one floor at a time.
- **Balloon Framing:** Less common; uses long vertical studs spanning multiple floors.

### 2. Modular Construction

- Pre-fabricated sections are built off-site and assembled on-site, allowing for faster construction and reduced waste.

### 3. Tilt-Up Construction

- Concrete walls are poured on-site and then tilted into position. Ideal for large commercial buildings.

### 4. Post and Beam Construction

- Uses large wooden or metal beams to support the structure, allowing for open interior spaces.

### 5. Steel Frame Construction

- Utilizes a skeleton of steel columns and beams. Common in skyscrapers and large commercial buildings.

### 6. Reinforced Concrete Construction

- Concrete is strengthened with steel bars (rebar) to handle tension forces, often used in high-rise buildings.

### 7. Earth-Sheltered Construction

- Buildings are partially or completely buried in the earth for energy efficiency and protection from the elements.

### 8. Green Building Techniques

- Incorporates sustainable materials, energy-efficient systems, and designs that minimize environmental impact.

### 9. 3D Printing

- Emerging technology where structures are printed layer by layer, allowing for rapid and customizable construction.

### 10. Adaptive Reuse

- Renovating and repurposing existing buildings for new uses, conserving materials and preserving history.

## **CHAPTER-2**

### **Construction Practices**

D.Amal Colins

#### **1. Project Planning and Management**

- **Pre-Construction Planning:** Involves feasibility studies, budgeting, and scheduling.
- **Resource Management:** Efficient allocation of labor, materials, and equipment.

#### **2. Site Preparation**

- **Clearing and Grading:** Removing vegetation, debris, and leveling the site for foundation work.
- **Soil Testing:** Ensuring the soil can support the intended structure.

#### **3. Foundation Work**

- **Types of Foundations:** Shallow (e.g., slab, footing) and deep (e.g., piles, caissons) foundations based on soil conditions and building type.
- **Waterproofing and Drainage:** Essential for preventing water ingress.

#### **4. Building Envelopes**

- **Wall Systems:** Includes framing, insulation, and cladding for energy efficiency and protection.
- **Roofing Systems:** Various materials and designs to ensure durability and weather resistance.

#### **5. Mechanical, Electrical, and Plumbing (MEP)**

- **Integration:** Coordinating MEP systems early in the design to avoid conflicts during construction.
- **Sustainability:** Implementing energy-efficient systems like HVAC, solar panels, and water conservation technologies.

#### **6. Quality Control**

- **Inspections:** Regular site inspections to ensure compliance with specifications and codes.
- **Material Testing:** Testing materials for strength, durability, and performance.

#### **7. Safety Practices**

- **Training:** Regular safety training for all workers on site.
- **PPE Usage:** Ensuring personal protective equipment is worn at all times.
- **Site Safety Plans:** Developing and enforcing safety protocols.

#### **8. Sustainable Practices**

- **Waste Management:** Recycling materials and reducing waste on-site.
- **Energy Efficiency:** Designing buildings to minimize energy consumption and optimize natural light.

#### **9. Communication and Collaboration**

- **Stakeholder Engagement:** Regular updates and meetings with clients, contractors, and subcontractors.
  - **BIM Technology:** Using Building Information Modeling for enhanced collaboration and visualization.

## **CHAPTER-3**

### **Sub Structure Construction**

S.Ramakrishnan

Substructure construction refers to the portion of a building that is below ground level and provides support for the superstructure (the above-ground part of the building). Here's a breakdown of key elements, techniques, and considerations involved in substructure construction:

#### **Key Components of Substructure**

##### **1. Excavation**

- **Site Preparation:** Removing soil, rock, and vegetation to create a stable base for the foundation.
- **Depth and Area:** Determined by the design and soil conditions, often requiring careful planning to avoid issues like cave-ins.

##### **2. Foundations**

- **Shallow Foundations:**
  - **Spread Footings:** Widely used for residential buildings, distributing the load over a larger area.
  - **Slab-on-Grade:** A single concrete slab poured directly on the ground; commonly used in warmer climates.
- **Deep Foundations:**
  - **Piles:** Long, slender columns driven deep into the ground to reach stable soil or rock.
  - **Caissons:** Large-diameter concrete cylinders drilled into the ground; suitable for heavy loads.

##### **3. Waterproofing and Drainage**

- **Waterproofing Membranes:** Applied to foundation walls to prevent water ingress.
- **Drainage Systems:** Including French drains or sump pumps to divert water away from the foundation.

##### **4. Retaining Walls**

- Structures built to hold back soil, especially on sloped sites. Proper design is crucial to manage lateral earth pressure.

##### **5. Utilities Installation**

- **Below-Ground Services:** Installing plumbing, electrical, and HVAC systems within the substructure before pouring concrete.

#### **Construction Techniques**

##### **1. Soil Stabilization**

- Methods like compaction, grouting, or chemical stabilization to enhance the bearing capacity of the soil.

##### **2. Reinforcement**

- Use of rebar or steel mesh within concrete foundations to improve strength and resistance to tensile forces.

##### **3. Cofferdams**

- Temporary enclosures used when working in waterlogged areas to allow for safe construction of deep foundations.

## **CHAPTER-4**

### **Super Structure Construction**

D.Jeyakumar

Superstructure construction refers to the portion of a building that is above the ground level, encompassing all elements that support the building's structure and provide space for its intended use. Here's a breakdown of the key components, techniques, and considerations involved in superstructure construction:

#### **Key Components of Superstructure**

##### **1. Load-Bearing Walls**

- Walls that support the weight of the structure above, transferring loads to the foundation. They can be made from various materials, including masonry, concrete, or steel.

##### **2. Columns**

- Vertical structural elements that carry loads from beams and slabs down to the foundation. Materials include concrete, steel, or a combination of both.

##### **3. Beams**

- Horizontal members that support loads from walls, slabs, and roofs. They can be made of steel, reinforced concrete, or timber.

##### **4. Slabs**

- Flat horizontal surfaces that form floors and ceilings. Common types include:
  - **One-Way Slabs:** Supported by beams on two opposite sides.
  - **Two-Way Slabs:** Supported by beams on all four sides, providing more uniform load distribution.

##### **5. Roofs**

- The top covering of a building that protects it from weather elements. Roof types include flat, pitched, and vaulted, and materials range from metal and shingles to concrete.

##### **6. Facades**

- The exterior walls of the building that provide aesthetic appeal and insulation. Facade materials can include glass, stone, brick, or precast concrete.

#### **Construction Techniques**

##### **1. Steel Frame Construction**

- Involves the use of steel columns and beams to create a skeletal framework, allowing for large open spaces and flexibility in design.

##### **2. Reinforced Concrete Construction**

- Combines concrete with steel reinforcement to enhance strength and load-bearing capacity, commonly used in high-rise buildings.

##### **3. Precast Concrete**

- Concrete elements are cast in a controlled environment and transported to the site for assembly, speeding up the construction process.

##### **4. Modular Construction**

- Involves prefabricating building sections off-site and assembling them on-site, promoting efficiency and reducing waste.

##### **5. Post-Tensioning**

- A method used in concrete construction where steel tendons are tensioned before or after the concrete is poured to enhance load-bearing capacity.

## **CHAPTER-5**

### **Construction Equipment**

A.Belciya Mary

#### **1. Excavation Equipment**

- **Excavators:** Used for digging trenches, foundations, and grading. They come with various attachments like buckets and augers.
- **Bulldozers:** Heavy machines equipped with a broad blade for pushing soil and debris, used for grading and site preparation.
- **Backhoes:** Versatile machines with a digging bucket on one end and a loader on the other, suitable for a variety of tasks.

#### **2. Earthmoving Equipment**

- **Dump Trucks:** Transport loose materials such as soil, gravel, and debris from one location to another.
- **Scrapers:** Combine earthmoving and grading functions, ideal for large-scale grading projects.

#### **3. Lifting Equipment**

- **Cranes:** Used for lifting heavy materials and placing them at heights. Types include tower cranes, mobile cranes, and crawler cranes.
- **Forklifts:** Provide mobility for lifting and moving materials over short distances on construction sites.

#### **4. Concrete Equipment**

- **Concrete Mixers:** Mix concrete components on-site, available in truck-mounted or portable varieties.
- **Concrete Pumps:** Used to transfer liquid concrete to locations that are difficult to access.
- **Vibrators:** Help eliminate air bubbles from poured concrete to ensure proper compaction.

#### **5. Compaction Equipment**

- **Plate Compactors:** Small, portable machines used for compacting soil and asphalt in tight areas.
- **Rollers:** Large machines used for compacting soil, gravel, and asphalt over larger areas.

#### **6. Paving Equipment**

- **Asphalt Pavers:** Used for laying asphalt on roads, parking lots, and other surfaces.
- **Concrete Pavers:** Specialized for laying concrete blocks or slabs.

#### **7. Demolition Equipment**

- **Wrecking Balls:** Heavy steel balls attached to cranes, used for demolishing structures.
- **Hydraulic Breakers:** Attach to excavators to break up concrete and asphalt.

#### **8. Surveying Equipment**

- **Theodolites and Total Stations:** Instruments for measuring angles and distances, crucial for precise layout.
- **Levels:** Used to establish a horizontal plane on construction sites.

## **CHAPTER-6**

### **Framed Structure**

K.Shanthi

Framed structures are a common type of construction where a skeletal framework supports the building. This framework consists of vertical and horizontal members that bear loads and provide stability. Here's a detailed look at framed structures:

#### **Key Components of Framed Structures**

##### **1. Columns**

- Vertical structural elements that transfer loads from beams and slabs down to the foundation. They are typically made of steel, reinforced concrete, or timber.

##### **2. Beams**

- Horizontal members that support loads from the floors and roofs. Beams connect to columns and are crucial for the overall structural integrity.

##### **3. Slabs**

- Flat, horizontal surfaces that form floors and ceilings. They can be cast in place or precast and often incorporate reinforcement for added strength.

##### **4. Bracing**

- Diagonal elements added to the frame to enhance stability and resist lateral forces (like wind or seismic activity). Common types include cross-bracing and shear walls.

##### **5. Connections**

- Joint areas where columns, beams, and other components meet, which are critical for load transfer. They can be welded, bolted, or connected with rivets.

#### **Types of Framed Structures**

##### **1. Steel Frame Structures**

- Use a framework of steel columns and beams, ideal for high-rise buildings due to their strength and flexibility. They allow for larger open spaces and are resistant to seismic forces.

##### **2. Reinforced Concrete Frame Structures**

- Combine concrete with steel reinforcement bars (rebar) to create strong, durable frameworks. Common in mid-rise buildings and residential construction.

##### **3. Timber Frame Structures**

- Utilize wooden beams and columns, often seen in residential buildings and smaller structures. They offer aesthetic appeal and sustainability.

#### **Advantages of Framed Structures**

- **Flexibility in Design:** Allows for open floor plans and varied architectural styles.
- **Strength and Stability:** Capable of supporting heavy loads and resisting environmental forces.
- **Rapid Construction:** Prefabricated components can speed up the construction process.
- **Material Efficiency:** Optimizes material use while maintaining structural integrity.

#### **Construction Techniques**

##### **1. Modular Construction**

## **CHAPTER-7**

### **Development Of Construction Techniques**

J.Santhiyaa Jenifer

The development of construction techniques has evolved significantly over time, driven by advancements in technology, materials, and engineering practices. Here's an overview of key milestones and trends in the evolution of construction techniques:

#### **Ancient Techniques**

##### **1. Stone and Earth Construction**

- Early humans used readily available materials like stone and earth to build shelters. Techniques included stacking stones and using mud for adobe structures.

##### **2. Arch and Vault Construction**

- The Romans perfected the use of arches and vaults, allowing for stronger and larger structures, such as aqueducts and amphitheaters.

#### **Middle Ages to Renaissance**

##### **3. Timber Framing**

- In medieval Europe, timber framing became prevalent, using wooden beams to create strong, flexible structures. Half-timbered houses are a notable example.

##### **4. Masonry Techniques**

- Advances in masonry led to the construction of grand cathedrals and castles, with an emphasis on intricate stonework and decorative elements.

#### **Industrial Revolution**

##### **5. Iron and Steel Use**

- The introduction of iron and later steel transformed construction. The first iron bridges and skyscrapers showcased the strength and flexibility of these materials.

##### **6. Mass Production and Prefabrication**

- The rise of factories allowed for mass production of construction materials, such as bricks and precast concrete, streamlining the building process.

#### **20th Century Innovations**

##### **7. Reinforced Concrete**

- Combining concrete with steel reinforcement revolutionized building techniques, enabling the construction of taller and more durable structures.

##### **8. Modular Construction**

- Prefabrication techniques gained popularity, where building sections were manufactured off-site and assembled on-site, reducing construction time.

##### **9. Building Information Modeling (BIM)**

- The advent of digital design tools allowed for enhanced visualization and coordination among stakeholders, improving efficiency and reducing errors.



# CHAPTER-8

## Design Features

D.Amal Colins

Design features in construction play a crucial role in the functionality, aesthetics, and sustainability of a building. Here's an overview of key design features to consider:

### 1. Structural Design

- **Load-Bearing Elements:** Strategic placement of beams, columns, and walls to ensure stability and load distribution.
- **Open Floor Plans:** Flexible layouts that maximize space and allow for adaptable use.

### 2. Aesthetic Design

- **Architectural Style:** Choices of materials, forms, and colors that reflect a particular style (modern, traditional, industrial).
- **Façade Design:** The exterior look, incorporating materials like glass, brick, and stone, influencing the building's visual impact.

### 3. Functional Design

- **Space Utilization:** Efficient use of space, ensuring that all areas serve a purpose and enhance usability.
- **Circulation Patterns:** Logical flow and accessibility for occupants, including entrances, exits, and pathways.

### 4. Sustainable Design

- **Energy Efficiency:** Incorporation of passive solar design, insulation, and energy-efficient windows to minimize energy consumption.
- **Water Management:** Systems for rainwater harvesting and greywater reuse to promote sustainability.

### 5. Environmental Integration

- **Site Orientation:** Positioning buildings to take advantage of natural light, views, and prevailing winds.
- **Landscaping:** Use of native plants and green spaces to enhance biodiversity and reduce maintenance needs.

### 6. Safety Features

- **Fire Safety Design:** Incorporating fire-resistant materials, sprinkler systems, and clear exit routes.
- **Structural Resilience:** Designing buildings to withstand natural disasters like earthquakes and floods.

### 7. Technological Integration

- **Smart Building Systems:** Use of IoT for monitoring and controlling lighting, heating, and security systems.
- **Building Information Modeling (BIM):** Advanced modeling techniques that facilitate better planning and coordination.

## CHAPTER-9

### Load Bearing Structure

R.Devi

Load-bearing structures are designed to support and transfer loads from the building to the foundation. They consist of elements that directly carry the weight of the building and any additional loads (like occupants, furniture, snow, etc.). Here's a closer look at load-bearing structures, their components, advantages, and considerations:

#### Key Components of Load-Bearing Structures

##### 1. Load-Bearing Walls

- **Function:** These walls support vertical loads from the roof, floors, and any additional weight above them.
- **Materials:** Commonly constructed from masonry (brick, concrete block) or reinforced concrete. In timber structures, they are made from solid or engineered wood.

##### 2. Columns

- **Function:** Vertical members that support beams and transfer loads down to the foundation.
- **Materials:** Can be made from steel, concrete, or timber.

##### 3. Beams

- **Function:** Horizontal members that distribute loads from the floors and roofs to the load-bearing walls or columns.
- **Materials:** Often constructed from steel or reinforced concrete but can also be timber.

##### 4. Slabs

- **Function:** Flat horizontal elements that form floors and ceilings, supported by beams and walls.
- **Types:** Can be one-way or two-way slabs depending on the support and load distribution.

#### Types of Load-Bearing Structures

##### 1. Masonry Load-Bearing Structures

- Walls are the primary load-bearing elements. Common in residential buildings and low-rise construction.

##### 2. Reinforced Concrete Structures

- Use concrete walls and slabs reinforced with steel bars. Suitable for high-rise buildings due to their strength and durability.

##### 3. Timber Load-Bearing Structures

- Utilize timber beams and walls to support loads. Often seen in residential and smaller commercial buildings.

#### Advantages of Load-Bearing Structures

- **Simplicity in Design:** Easier to understand and construct, as the load paths are straightforward.
- **Material Efficiency:** Often require less material compared to other structural systems like frame structures.
- **Cost-Effective:** Can be less expensive to build and maintain, especially in low-rise construction.

# CHAPTER-10

## Structural Systems

P.Venkateswaran

Structural systems are crucial for determining how a building or structure behaves under various loads and forces. They consist of interconnected elements that work together to support and transfer loads safely to the ground. Here's an overview of the main types of structural systems:

### 1. Load-Bearing Wall Systems

- **Description:** In these systems, walls support vertical loads from the roof and floors.
- **Materials:** Commonly constructed from masonry (brick, stone, concrete) or reinforced concrete.
- **Applications:** Typically used in low-rise buildings and residential construction.

### 2. Framed Structures

- **Description:** Comprised of a framework of beams and columns that support loads, allowing for more open floor plans.
- **Types:**
  - **Steel Frame:** Uses steel columns and beams; ideal for high-rise buildings due to strength and flexibility.
  - **Reinforced Concrete Frame:** Combines concrete with steel reinforcement, commonly used in mid-rise buildings.
  - **Timber Frame:** Utilizes wooden beams and columns, often seen in residential structures.
- **Applications:** Versatile and used in various building types, including commercial and residential.

### 3. Truss Systems

- **Description:** Composed of triangular units (trusses) that efficiently distribute loads, minimizing material use.
- **Materials:** Can be made of steel, wood, or reinforced concrete.
- **Applications:** Commonly used in roofs, bridges, and large-span structures due to their ability to support significant loads.

### 4. Shell Structures

- **Description:** Curved surfaces that distribute loads across the entire structure, relying on their geometry for strength.
- **Materials:** Often constructed from reinforced concrete, steel, or composites.
- **Applications:** Used for stadiums, auditoriums, and large roofs where open spaces are desired.

### 5. Space Frames

- **Description:** A three-dimensional framework made up of interconnected struts, offering strength and stability while minimizing weight.
- **Materials:** Typically made of steel or aluminum.
- **Applications:** Commonly found in large industrial buildings, exhibition halls, and sports arenas.



# CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS LABORATORY



Edited by  
**Dr. Iraikarkuzhali**



978-93-6255-373-7

Construction Materials Laboratory  
Copyright © 2019 by Dr.Iraikarkuzhali

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-373-7

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Date of Publication :18.03.2019

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER 1 - Grading of fine aggregates.....</b>	<b>08</b>
Dr. Iraikarkuzhali	
<b>CHAPTER 2 – Test for specific gravity.....</b>	<b>11</b>
Dr. Iraikarkuzhali	
<b>CHAPTER 3 - Compacted and loose bulk density of fine aggregate.....</b>	<b>16</b>
Dr. Iraikarkuzhali	
<b>CHAPTER 4 - Determination of impact value of coarse aggregate.....</b>	<b>18</b>
Dr. Iraikarkuzhal	
<b>CHAPTER 5 – Determination of elongation index.....</b>	<b>21</b>
Dr. Iraikarkuzhali	
<b>CHAPTER 6 – Determination of flakiness index.....</b>	<b>26</b>
Dr. Iraikarkuzhali	
<b>CHAPTER 7 – Determination of aggregate crushing value of coarse aggregate.....</b>	<b>29</b>
Dr. Iraikarkuzhali	
<b>CHAPTER 8 – Test for Slump.....</b>	<b>32</b>
Dr. Iraikarkuzhali	
<b>CHAPTER 9 – Test for Compaction factor.....</b>	<b>36</b>
Dr. Iraikarkuzhali	
<b>CHAPTER 10 – Test for compressive strength of bricks and blocks.....</b>	<b>38</b>
Dr. Iraikarkuzhali	
<b>REFERENCES.....</b>	<b>40</b>

# CHAPTER-1

## Determination of fineness modulus of Fine aggregate

Dr. Iraikarkuzhali

Aim:

To determine fineness modulus of fine aggregate and classifications based on IS:383-1970.

Apparatus Required:

1. Test Sieves conforming to IS:460-1962.
2. Specification of 4.75 mm, 2.36 mm, 1.18 mm, 600 micron, 300 micron, 150 micron.
3. Weigh Balance
4. Gauging Trowel
5. Stop Watch

Procedure:

1. The sample shall be brought to an air-dry condition before weighing and sieving.
2. The air-dry sample shall be weighed and sieved successively on the appropriate sieves starting with the largest.
3. Material shall not be forced through the sieve by hand pressure.
4. Lumps of fine material, if present, may be broken by gentle pressure with fingers against the side of the sieve.
5. Light brushing with a fine camel hair brush may be used on the 150-micron and 75-micron IS Sieves to prevent aggregation of powder and blinding of apertures.
6. On completion of sieving, the material retained on each sieve, together with any material clean the mesh, shall be weighed.

### Observation and Calculation

Weight of empty tray = kg

Weight of tray + fine aggregate = kg

Weight of fine aggregate = kg

## **CHAPTER-2**

### **Determination of specific gravity of fine Aggregate**

Dr. Iraikarkuzhali

#### **Aim:**

To determine specific gravity of fine aggregate

Apparatus Required:

1. Pycnometer (either a Pycnometer jar with conical top or a stoppered bottle having a capacity of at least 50ml)
2. 4.75mm sieve
3. Weighing balance
4. Oven
5. Glass rod
6. Distilled water

Procedure:

1. Clean and dry the Pycnometer
2. Weigh the empty Pycnometer with its cap ( $W_1$ )
3. Take about 200 gm of oven dried soil passing through 4.75mm sieve into the Pycnometer and weigh again ( $W_2$ )
4. Add sufficient de-aired water to cover the soil and screw on the cap
5. Shake the Pycnometer well and remove entrapped air if any
6. Fill the Pycnometer with water completely
7. Dry the Pycnometer from outside and weigh it ( $W_3$ )
8. Clean the Pycnometer by washing thoroughly
9. Fill the cleaned Pycnometer completely with water up to its stop with cap screw on
10. Weigh the Pycnometer after drying it on the outside thoroughly ( $W_4$ )
11. Repeat the procedure for three samples and obtain the average value of specific gravity.



## CHAPTER-3

### Determination of compacted and loose bulk density Of Fine Aggregate

Dr. Iraikarkuzhali

Aim:

To determine compacted and loose bulk density of fine aggregate

Apparatus Required:

6. Weighing balance
7. Cylindrical metal measure
8. Tamping rod

Procedure for Compacted Bulk Density

1. Measure the volume of the cylindrical metal measure by pouring water into the metal measure and record the volume "V" in litre.
2. Fill the cylindrical metal measure about one-third full with thoroughly mixed aggregate and tamp it 25 times using tamping bar.
3. Add another layer of one-third volume of aggregate in the metal measure and give another 25 strokes of tamping bar.
4. Finally fill aggregate in the metal measure to overflowing and tamp it 25 times.
5. Remove the surplus aggregate using the tamping rod as a straight edge.
6. Determine the weight of the aggregate in the measure and record that weight "W" in kg.

Procedure for Loose Bulk Density

1. Measure the volume of the cylindrical metal measure by pouring water into the metal measure and record the volume "V" in litre.
2. Fill the cylindrical measure to overflowing by means of a shovel or scoop, the aggregate being discharged from a height not exceeding 5 cm above the top of the measure.
3. Level the top surface of the aggregate in the metal measure, with a straight edge or tamping bar.
4. Determine the weight of the aggregate in the measure and record the weight "W" in kg.

## CHAPTER-4

### Determination of impact value of Coarse Aggregate

Dr. Iraikarkuzhali

Aim:

To determine the aggregate impact value of given aggregate

Apparatus Required:

1. Impact testing machine: The machine consists of a metal base. A detachable cylindrical steel cup of internal diameter 10.2 cm and depth 5 cm. A metal hammer of weight between 13.5 to 14 kg, 10 cm diameter and 5 cm long. An arrangement for raising the hammer and allowing it to fall freely between vertical guides from a height of 38 cm on the anvil in the cup
2. A cylindrical metal measure having 7.5 cm diameter and depth of 5 cm for measuring aggregates
3. A tamping rod of circular cross-section, 1 cm diameter and 23 cm long, rounded at one end
4. IS sieve of sizes 12.5 mm, 10 mm and 2.36 mm
5. Balance of capacity not less than 500 gm to weigh accurate up to 0.01 gm

Procedure:

1. The test sample consists of aggregates passing 12.5 mm sieve and retained on 10 mm sieve and dried in an oven for 4 hours at a temperature of  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $110^{\circ}\text{C}$
2. The aggregates are filled up to about 1/3 full in the cylindrical measure and tamped 25 times with rounded end of the tamping rod
3. The rest of the cylindrical measure is filled by two layers and each layer being tamped 25 times
4. The overflow of aggregates in cylindrical measure is cut off by tamping rod using its straight edge
5. Then the entire aggregate sample in measuring cylinder is weighed near to 0.01 gm
6. The aggregates from the cylindrical measure are carefully transferred into the cup which is firmly fixed in position on the base plate of machine. Then it is tamped 25 times
7. The hammer is raised until its lower face is 38 cm above the upper surface of aggregates in the cup and allowed to fall freely on the aggregates. The test sample is subjected to a total of 15 such blows each being delivered at an interval of not less than one second. The crushed aggregate is then removed from the cup and the whole of it is sieved on 2.36 mm sieve until no significant amount

## CHAPTER-5

### Determination of elongation index

Dr. Iraikarkuzhali

Aim:

To determine the Elongation index of the given aggregate sample

Apparatus Required:

Length gauge

IS sieve

Procedure:

1. The sample is sieved through IS Sieve specified in the table. A minimum of 200 aggregate pieces of each fraction is taken and weighed
2. Each fraction is thus gauged individually for length in a length gauge. The gauge length used should be those specified in the table for the appropriate material
3. The pieces of aggregate from each fraction tested which could not pass through the specified gauge length with its long side are elongated particles and they are collected separately to find the total weight of aggregate retained on the length gauge from each fraction
4. The total amount of elongated material retained by the length gauge is weighed to an accuracy of at least 0.1% of the weight of the test sample
5. The weight of each fraction of aggregate passing and retained on specified sieve sizes are found  
 $W_1, W_2, W_3, \dots$  and the total weight of sample determined =  $W_1 + W_2 + W_3 + \dots = W \text{ gm}$ .  
 Also the weights of the material from each fraction retained on the specified gauge length are found =  $x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots$  and the total weight retained determined =  $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots = X \text{ gm}$
6. The elongation index is the total weight of the material retained on the various length gauges, expressed as a percentage of the total weight of the sample gauged

$$\text{Elongation index} = \frac{(x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots)}{(W_1 + W_2 + W_3 + \dots)} \times 100$$

## CHAPTER-6

### Determination of flakiness index

Dr. Iraikarkuzhali

Aim:

To determine the flakiness index of the given aggregate sample

Apparatus Required:

1. The apparatus consist of a standard thickness gauge
2. IS Sieve of size 63, 50, 40, 31.5, 25, 20, 16, 12.5, 10 and 6.3
3. Balance to weigh the samples

Procedure:

1. The sample is sieved with the sieves mentioned in the table
2. A minimum of 200 pieces of each fraction to be tested are taken and weighed ( $W_1$  gm)
3. In order to separate flaky materials, each fraction is then gauged for thickness on thickness gauge, or in bulk on sieve having elongated slots as specified in the table
4. Then the amount of flaky materials passing the gauge is weighed to an accuracy of at least 0.1% of test sample
5. Let the weight of the flaky materials passing the gauge be  $W_1$  gm. Similarly the weights of the fractions passing and retained on the specified sieves be  $W_1, W_2, W_3$ , etc, are weighed and the total weight  $W_1 + W_2 + W_3 + \dots = W$  gm is found. Also the weights of the materials passing each of the specified thickness gauge are found =  $W_1, W_2, W_3 \dots$ . And the total weight of the material passing the different thickness gauges =  $W_1 + W_2 + W_3 \dots = W$  gm is found
6. Then the flakiness index is the total weight of the flaky material passing the various thickness gauges expressed as a percentage of the total weight of the sample gauged.

$$\text{Flakiness index} = \frac{(w_1 + w_2 + w_3 + \dots)}{(W_1 + W_2 + W_3 + \dots)} \times 100$$

## CHAPTER-7

### Determination of aggregate crushing value of Coarse Aggregate

Dr. Iraikarkuzhali

#### AIM

To determine the **Aggregate Crushing Value** by compression testing machine.

#### APPARATUS REQUIRED:

1. Cylindrical measure and plunger,
2. Compression testing machine,
3. ISS Sieves of sizes – 12.5mm, 10mm and 2.36mm

#### PROCEDURE

1. The aggregates passing through 12.5mm and retained on 10mm ISS Sieve are oven-dried at a temperature of 100 to 110°C for 3 to 4hrs.
2. The cylinder of the apparatus is filled in 3 layers, each layer tamped with 25 strokes of a tamping rod.
3. The weight of aggregates is measured (Weight 'A').
4. The surface of the aggregate is then leveled and the plunger inserted. The apparatus is then placed in the compression testing machine and loaded at a uniform rate so as to achieve 40t load in 10 minutes. After this, the load is released.
5. The sample is then sieved through a 2.36mm ISS Sieve and the fraction passing through the sieve is weighed (Weight 'B').
6. Two tests should be conducted.

$$\text{Aggregate crushing value} = (B/A) \times 100\%.$$

#### Result:

The Aggregate Crushing Value of coarse aggregate is \_\_\_\_\_

## CHAPTER-8

### Test for Slump

Dr.Iraikarkuzhali

#### Aim

To measure the consistency of concrete by using slump cone

#### Apparatus required:

Slump cone, tamping rod, metallic sheet.

#### Procedure.

1. The internal surface of the mould is thoroughly cleaned and freed from superfluous moisture and adherence of any old set concrete before commencing the test.
2. The mould is placed on a smooth, horizontal rigid and non-absorbent surface.
3. The mould is then filled in four layers each approximately  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the height of the mould.
4. Each layer is tamped 25 times rod taking care to distribute the strokes evenly over the cross section. After the top layer has been rodded, the concrete is struck off level with a trowel and tamping rod.
5. The mould is removed from the concrete immediately by raising it slowly and carefully in a vertical direction.
6. This allows the concrete to subside. This subsidence is referred to as slump of concrete.
7. The pattern of slump indicates the characteristics of concrete in addition to the slump value. If the concrete slumps evenly it is called true slump. If one half of the cone slides down, it is called shear slump. In case of a shear slump, the slump value is measured as the difference in height between the height of the mould and the average value of the subsidence. Shear slump also indicates that the concrete is non-cohesive and shows the characteristic of segregation.

#### Result:

The slump value of the concrete is \_\_\_\_\_

## CHAPTER 9

### Compaction factor test

Dr. Iraikarkuzhali

Aim:

To measure the workability of concrete by compaction factor test

Apparatus required:

Compaction factor test apparatus

Procedure

1. The sample of concrete to be tested is placed in the upper hopper up to the brim. The trap-door is opened so that the concrete falls into the lower hopper.
2. Then the trap-door of the lower hopper is opened and the concrete is allowed to fall into the cylinder. In the case of a dry-mix, it is likely that the concrete may not fall on opening the trap-door
3. In such a case, a slight poking by a rod may be required to set the concrete in motion. The excess concrete remaining above the top level of the cylinder is then cut off with the help of plane blades.
4. The outside of the cylinder is wiped clean. The concrete is filled up exactly up to the top level of the cylinder.
5. It is weighed to the nearest 10 grams. This weight is known as "weight of partially compacted concrete"
6. The cylinder is emptied and then refilled with the concrete from the same sample in layers approximately 5cm deep. The layers are heavily rammed or preferably vibrated so as to obtain full compaction.
7. The top surface of the fully compacted concrete is then carefully struck off level with the top of the cylinder and weighed to the nearest 10 gm. This weight is known as "weight of fully compacted concrete"

**Observation and Calculation:** Mass of cylinder W1:

Sl. no	Water Cement ratio	Mass with partially compacted concrete (W2)	Mass with fully compacted concrete (W3)	Mass with Partially compacted concrete (W2- W1)	Mass with fully compacted concrete (W3- W1)	$C.F = \frac{(W2-W1)}{(W3-W1)}$
1						
2						
3				33		

Result:

The compaction factor of the given sample of concrete is \_\_\_\_\_ %

## CHAPTER-10

### Determination of compressive strength of Concrete cube and cylinder

H  
A  
C  
H

Dr. Iraikarkuzhali

#### Aim:

To determine the compressive strength of the hardened concrete by testing concrete cube and Cylinder

#### Apparatus Required:

1. Compressive testing machine of capacity 100T
2. Measuring scale
3. Cube mould of 150 mm x 150 mm size
4. Tamping rod
5. Water bath

#### Procedure:

1. The specimen is taken out after particular days of curing
2. Measure the dimension of the concrete cube
3. Place the concrete cube in the compression testing machine
4. Apply the load to the specimen uniformly
5. Apply further load until the specimen fails. Note down the load at failure
6. This load is the ultimate compressive load
7. Repeat the procedure for remaining specimens

#### Observations:

Specimen	Trails			Mean Value N/mm <sup>2</sup>
	1	2	3	
Load on cubes, kN				

#### Result:

Ultimate compressive strength of concrete cube (\_\_\_\_\_ days) = \_\_\_\_\_ N/mm<sup>2</sup>





SURVEYING

LABORATORY



Edited by

**B. Jose Ravindra Raj**



978-93-6255-035-4

## **Surveying Laboratory**

Copyright © 2019 by B.JoseRavindra Raj

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-035-4

Publisher: PonnaiyahRamajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)  
Date of Publication :07.02.2019

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER 1</b> – Testing and adjusting of metric chain.....	<b>08</b>
B. Jose Ravindra Raj	
<b>CHAPTER 2</b> – Measurement of distance by Ranging and Chaining.....	<b>11</b>
B. Jose Ravindra Raj	
<b>CHAPTER 3</b> – To survey an open field by chain survey in order to calculate the Area of the open field.....	<b>16</b>
B. Jose Ravindra Raj	
<b>CHAPTER 4</b> – To measure the distance between two points by chaining Across a slope ground using stepping method.....	<b>18</b>
B. Jose Ravindra Raj	
<b>CHAPTER 5</b> – Measurement of bearings of sides of traverse with prismatic compass and computation of correct included angle.....	<b>21</b>
B. Jose Ravindra Raj	
<b>CHAPTER 6</b> – Measurement of horizontal angles theodolite by method of repetition...	<b>26</b>
B. Jose Ravindra Raj	
<b>CHAPTER 7</b> – Measurement of horizontal angles theodolite by method of reiteration.....	<b>29</b>
B. Jose Ravindra Raj	
<b>CHAPTER 8</b> – Determination of elevation of various points with dumpy Level by collimation plane method and rise & fall method .....	<b>32</b>
B. Jose Ravindra Raj	
<b>CHAPTER 9</b> – To find the difference in elevation and to calculate the Reduced level of various points by Rise and Fall method.....	<b>36</b>
B. Jose Ravindra Raj	
<b>CHAPTER 10</b> – Locating various objects by chain & cross staff survey .....	<b>38</b>
B. Jose Ravindra Raj	
<b>REFERENCES</b> .....	<b>40</b>

## CHAPTER-1

### TESTING AND ADJUSTING OF METRIC CHAIN

B. Jose Ravindra Raj

#### AIM OF THE EXPERIMENT:-

Testing and adjusting of metric chain.

#### APPARATUS REQUIRED:-

1. Test gauge
2. 30 metre metric chain
3. 20 metre metric chain

#### PROCEDURE:-

##### ADJUSTMENT OF CHAIN:-

Chains are adjusted in the following ways.

(a) When the chain is too long:

- (i) Closing the joined of ring.
- (ii) Hammering the elongated ring.
- (iii) Removing some ring.
- (iv) Replacing old ring to new ring.

(b) When the chain is too short:

- (i) Straightening of the ring.
- (ii) Opening the joints of rings.
- (iii) Replacing the large ring.
- (iv) Insert new ring if necessary.

#### CONCLUSION:-

The 20m/30m chain was found to be \_\_\_\_\_ cm long or \_\_\_\_\_ cm short.

## CHAPTER-2

### MEASUREMENT OF DISTANCE BY RANGING AND CHAINING

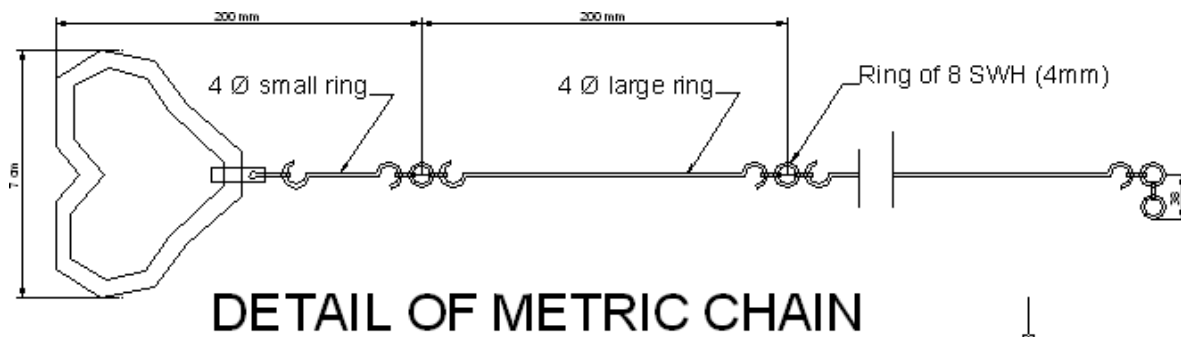
B. Jose Ravindra Raj

#### AIM:

Measurement of distance by Ranging and Chaining

#### APPARATUS REQUIRED:

Chain, Arrows, Tapes, Ranging Rods, Offset Rods, Cross staff or optical square, Plumb bob, wooden mallet, pegs.



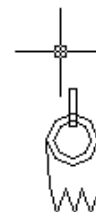
a) Brass ring at every meter length



b) Tally at every 5 m length



c) Tally at every 10 m length



d) Tally at every 15 m length

#### RANGING RODS:

The ranging rods are used for marking the positions of Stations conspicuously and for ranging the lines. In order to make these visible at a distance, they are painted alternately black and white, or red and white or red White and black successively. The adjustment of the chain should as far as possible be affected symmetrically on either side of the middle so as that the position of central tag remains unaltered. In measuring the length of survey line also called as chain line. It is necessary that the chain should be laid out on the ground in a straight line between the end stations.



## CHAPTER-4

### TO MEASURE THE DISTANCE BETWEEN TWO POINT BY CHAINING ACROSS A SLOPE GROUND USING STEPPING METHOD

B.JoseRavindra Raj

#### AIM OF THE EXPERIMENT:-

To measure the distance between two points by chaining across a slope ground using stepping method.

#### APPARATUS REQUIRED:-

- 1.Chain
- 2.Tape
- 3.Ranging rod
- 4.Peg
- 5.Plumb bob
- 6.Mallet

#### PROCEDURE:-

- Suppose the horizontal distance between points A and B is to be measured.
  - The line AB is first ranged properly.
  - Then, the follower holds the zero end of the tape at A.
- The horizontal length  $AP_1$  is noted then the follower moves to the position  $P_2$  and holds the zero end of the tape at that point.
  - Again the leader selects a suitable length  $P_2P_3$  in such a way that  $P_2P_3$  is horizontal and  $P_3P_4$  vertical.
  - Then the horizontal lengths  $P_2P_3$  and  $P_4P_5$  are measured.
- So the total horizontal length,  $AB = AP_1 + P_2P_3 + P_4P_5$

#### TABULATION:-

SL.NO	POINTS	STEP LENGTH	TOTAL LENGTH

#### CONCLUSION:-

The total distance is found to be \_\_\_\_\_

## CHAPTER-5

### MEASUREMENT OF BEARINGS OF SIDES OF TRAVERSE WITH PRISMATIC COMPASS AND COMPUTATION OF CORRECT INCLUDED ANGLE

B. Jose Ravindra Raj

**AIM OF THE EXPERIMENT:** Measurement of bearings of sides of traverse with prismatic compass and computation of correct included angle.

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:** Prismatic compass, ranging rod, chain, tape, peg Tripod stand, Plumb bob

#### PROCEDURE:

- 1) Four ranging rods are fixed at different points i.e. A, B, C, D, Etc. such that it should be mutually visible and may be measured easily.
- 2) Measure the distance between them.
- 1) At point A the prismatic compass is set on the tripod stand, centering and leveling is then properly done.
- 2) The ranging rod at B is ranged through sighting slits and objective vane attached with horsehair and reading on prismatic compass is noted down.
- 3) It is fore bearing of line AB. Then the prismatic compass is fixed at B and ranging rod at C and A is sighted. And reading is taken as fore bearing of BC and back bearing of AB. Repeat the same procedure at the stations C, D, etc.

#### OBSERVATION TABLE

STATION	Line	Observed bearing	Local attraction	error	Correction	Corrected bearing	Included angle
A	AB						
	AD						
B	BC						
	BA						
C	CD						
	CB						
D	DA						
	DC						

#### RESULT:

The prismatic compass is studied and bearing of lines of traverse are observed, the correction due to local attraction at affected station is done and corrected bearings are written in tabular form.



## CHAPTER-6

### MEASUREMENT OF HORIZONTAL ANGLES THEODOLITE BY METHOD OF REPETITION

B.JoseRavindra Raj

**AIM OF THE EXPERIMENT:** Measurement of horizontal angle theodolite by method of repetition

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:-** Theodolite, Ranging rod, peg etc.

**PROCEDURE:-**

1) Let  $\angle$  be the horizontal angle to be measured as shown in fig. O is the station point fixed on the ground by a peg. Set up the theodolite over the peg 'o' and level it accurately.

2) Set the horizontal graduated circle vernier A to read zero or  $360^\circ$  by upper clamp screw and slow motion screw. Clamp the telescope to bisect the bottom shoe of the flag fixed at point 'L' and tighten the lower clamp. Exactly intersect the centre of the bottom shoe by means of lower slow motion screw. Check that the face of the theodolite should be left and the telescope in normal position.

SN	INSTRUMENT STATION	SHIFTED TO	FACE LEFT/ RIGHT READINGS			
			Venier B 0,I,II	Total angle	No of Repetition	Mean horizontal angle 0,I,II
		Venier A 0,I,II				
		L				
		M				
		L				
		M				
		L				
		M				

**RESULT:** Average horizontal angle is found to be-----

## CHAPTER-7

### MEASUREMENT OF HORIZONTAL ANGLE THEODOLITE BY METHOD OF REITERATION

B. Jose Ravindra Raj

**AIM OF THE EXPERIMENT:** Measurement of horizontal angle theodolite by method of reiteration

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:-** Theodolite, Ranging rod, pegs etc.

**PROCEDURE:**

1. The theodolite is centered over an arbitrarily selected station P from where the given stations can be sighted without any obstruction and the instrument is levelled using the foot screws and the plate bubble is brought to the centre of the run.
2. The theodolite is set on the face right mode on the vernier A and the horizontal circle is initially set at  $0^{\circ}00'00''$  and the station A is sighted.
3. The observations are recorded in the field book.
4. The mean values of the horizontal angles on vernier A and B are computed for every sighting and the horizontal included angles are determined as the difference in successive mean values.

**TABULATION RESULT:** The horizontal angles between the given stations about the instrument

Instat	Sighted to	Horizontal Circle Reading									Included Angle	Average Included Angle	Remarks	
		Vernier A			Vernier B			Mean						
		o	'	''	o	'	''	o	'	''				o
FACE RIGHT														
P	A													
	B													
	C													
	D													
	A													
FACE LEFT														
P	A													
	D													
	C													
	B													
	A													

station as the vertex are determined by the method of reiteration

- i. Angle APB =
- ii. Angle BPC =
- iii. Angle CPD =
- iv. Angle DPA =

## CHAPTER-8

### DETERMINATION OF ELEVATION OF VARIOUS POINTS WITH DUMPY LEVEL BY COLLIMATION PLANE METHOD AND RISE&FALL METHOD

B.JoseRavindra Raj

**AIM OF THE EXPERIMENT:** Determination of elevation of various points with dumpy level by collimation plane method and rise & fall method.

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:** Dumpy level, leveling staff

**A) Setting up the level:** - this includes

**1) Fixing the instrument in the tripod:** - The tripod legs are well spread on the ground with tripod head nearly level and at convenient height. Fix up the level on the tripod.

**2) Leg adjustment:** - Bring all the foot screws of the level in the centre of the iron

. Fix any two legs firmly into the ground by pressing them with hand and move the third leg to leg to right or left until the main bubble is roughly in the centre.

Finally the legs are fixed after centering approximately both bubbles. This operation will save the time required for leveling.

**B) Levelling:** - Levelling is done with the help of foot screws and bubbles. The purpose of levelling is to make the vertical axis truly vertical. The method of leveling the instrument depends upon whether there are three foot screws or four foot screws. In all modern instruments three foot screws are provided and this method only is described.

Station	Reading			RISE	FALL	Reduced Level	Remarks
	BS	IS	FS				

#### RESULT:

The various reduced levels are calculated by rise and fall method and by using height or plane of collimation method and are shown in observation table.

## CHAPTER-9

### DIFFERENTIAL OR FLYLEVELLING –REDUCELEVELS BY RISE AND FALL METHOD

B.JoseRavindra Raj

#### AIMOFTHEEXPERIMENT:

To find the difference in elevation and to calculate the reduced level of various points by Rise and Fall method.

#### APPARATUSREQUIRED:

Dumpy level, Leveling staff.

#### PROCEDURE:

The field procedure and booking of staff reading is done in the same way as explained in the height of instrument method (each reading is entered on a different line in the appropriate column, except at a change point, where a FS and BS occupy the same line). However the data booking is performed as shown in the Table below.

#### TABULATION

Station no	BS	IS	FS	Rise	Fall	RL	REMARKS

## CHAPTER-10

### LOCATING VARIOUS OBJECT BY CHAIN & CROSS STAFF SURVEY

B. Jose Ravindra Raj

**AIM OF THE EXPERIMENT:** Locating various object by chain & cross staff survey

**APPARATUS REQUIRED:** Chain, Ranging rod, Arrows, Cross-staff, Metallic Survey (Tape)

#### PROCEDURE-

- 1) To find the foot of the perpendicular from the object the cross staff is held approximately in position and one pair of slits is directed in the direction of the ranging rod fixed at the forward and the chain line. The observer then looks through the other pair of slits and sees whether the particular object is bisected or not. If not the cross staff is moved to and from till the necessary bisection is obtained. Before noting down the chainage of the foot of the perpendicular care must be taken to see that one pair of slit is the direction of chain or not. While shifting the position of the cross-staff it may get twisted and hence precaution is necessary.
- 2) To set a perpendicular to the chain line at a given point one pair of slits is oriented in the direction of chain line by looking at the ranging rod fixed at the forward and by looking through the other pair of slits ranging rod is fixed in the direction of the line of sight provided by this pair.

**RESULT:** Various perpendicular to the chain line object are created using cross-staff survey.

# **SURVEYING**

EDITED BY

**A.BELCIYA MARY**



**978-93-6255-192-4**

# SURVEYING

Copyright © 2019 by A.Belciya Mary

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means

without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-192-4

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	
<b>CHAPTER 1 - Fundamentals Of Conventional Surveying And Levelling</b>	-	04
R.Devi		
<b>CHAPTER 2 - Theodolite And Tacheometric Surveying</b>	-	10
D.Jeyakumar		
<b>CHAPTER 3 - Control Surveying And Adjustment</b>	-	20
K.Shanthi		
<b>CHAPTER 4 - Advanced Topics In Surveying</b>	-	38
P.Venkateswaran		
<b>CHAPTER 5 – Modern Surveying</b>	-	50
A.Belciyamary		
<b>CHAPTER 6- Horizontal control surveys</b>	-	75
R.Devi		
<b>CHAPTER 7- Topographic surveys and maps</b>	-	110
D.Jeyakumar		
<b>CHAPTER 8- Construction surveys</b>	-	140
K.Shanthi		
<b>CHAPTER 9- Measuring vertical distances (leveling)</b>	-	150
P.Venkateswaran		
<b>CHAPTER 10- Contour lines</b>	-	170
A.Belciyamary		
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>180</b>



# CHAPTER 1

## Fundamentals Of Conventional Surveying And Levelling

R.Devi

Conventional surveying and levelling are essential techniques in civil engineering, construction, and land surveying. They involve measuring and mapping the physical features of a site to ensure accurate planning and execution of projects. Here are the fundamentals:

### 1. Surveying

**Purpose:** To measure and map the physical features of the land, including distances, angles, and elevations. This information is used for creating maps, planning construction, and determining property boundaries.

#### Key Components:

- **Instruments:**
  - **Theodolite:** Measures angles in horizontal and vertical planes.
  - **Total Station:** Combines theodolite and electronic distance measurement (EDM) capabilities.
  - **Surveying Level:** Measures vertical differences between points.
  - **Tape Measure or Surveying Chain:** Measures distances directly.
  - **GPS (Global Positioning System):** Provides precise location data.
- **Types of Surveying:**
  - **Plane Surveying:** Assumes the earth is flat over the area of interest, suitable for smaller areas.
  - **Geodetic Surveying:** Accounts for the curvature of the earth, used for larger areas and more precise measurements.
- **Surveying Techniques:**
  - **Triangulation:** Uses known points and angles to determine unknown points.
  - **Trigonometric Leveling:** Measures angles and distances to find elevations.
  - **Baseline Measurement:** Establishes a baseline for further measurements.
- **Data Collection:**
  - **Field Notes:** Detailed records of measurements and observations.
  - **Surveying Maps:** Visual representations of the surveyed area.

### 2. Levelling

**Purpose:** To determine the elevation of points relative to a reference level, which is crucial for construction, drainage, and other engineering projects.

## CHAPTER 2

### Theodolite And Tacheometric Surveying

D.Jeyakumar

Theodolite and tacheometric surveying are essential methods used in land surveying to measure angles and distances. Here's a brief overview of each:

#### Theodolite Surveying

**Theodolite:** A theodolite is an optical instrument used for measuring angles in the horizontal and vertical planes. It is crucial for tasks that require precise angle measurements, such as in construction, engineering, and mapping.

#### *Key Components:*

- **Telescope:** For sighting distant objects.
- **Horizontal Circle:** For measuring horizontal angles.
- **Vertical Circle:** For measuring vertical angles.
- **Leveling Mechanism:** To ensure the instrument is perfectly horizontal.

#### *Procedure:*

1. **Setup:** The theodolite is set up on a tripod over a known point and leveled.
2. **Sight:** The surveyor sights through the telescope at the target object or point.
3. **Measure Angles:** Read the horizontal and vertical angles on the circles.

#### *Applications:*

- **Construction:** For aligning buildings and structures.
- **Mapping:** For creating accurate maps.
- **Engineering:** For aligning roadways, railways, and other projects.

#### Tacheometric Surveying

**Tacheometry** (or tachymetry) is a method of surveying that uses a tacheometer (or tachymeter) to measure distances indirectly by observing the angle and the distance from the instrument to the target.

#### *Key Components:*

- **Tacheometer:** A specialized instrument combining a theodolite and a stadia rod.
- **Stadia Rod:** A graduated rod that helps in determining distances.

# CHAPTER 3

## Control Surveying And Adjustment

K.Shanthi

Control surveying and adjustment is a key process in geospatial sciences, particularly in the field of land surveying and mapping. It involves establishing a network of control points and ensuring their accuracy through mathematical adjustment. Here's an overview of the concepts involved:

### 1. Control Surveying

**Control surveying** is the process of establishing a network of reference points that serve as a basis for further surveying and mapping. These points, known as control points, are established with a high degree of accuracy and are used to ensure that other measurements and data collected are correct. There are two main types of control points:

- **Horizontal Control:** Provides a reference for positions and coordinates in the horizontal plane (latitude and longitude or easting and northing).
- **Vertical Control:** Provides a reference for elevations or heights above a known datum (e.g., mean sea level).

### Methods of establishing control points:

- **Triangulation:** Involves measuring angles from known points to determine the position of unknown points. This method is often used over large areas.
- **Traversing:** Involves a series of connected lines and angles, using precise measurements to determine the position of control points relative to each other.
- **GPS/GNSS:** Uses satellite signals to determine precise locations, providing high accuracy for horizontal and vertical control points.

### 2. Adjustment of Surveys

Once the control points are established, the next step is to ensure that all measurements and data collected are accurate and consistent. This process is known as survey adjustment.

### Adjustment methods include:

- **Least Squares Adjustment:** A mathematical method used to minimize the sum of the squares of the differences between observed and calculated values. This method is commonly used to adjust measurement networks and ensure consistency.
- **Adjustment of Angles and Distances:** Ensures that the measured angles and distances between control points are consistent with each other. This process helps correct any errors that may have occurred during measurement.

# CHAPTER 4

## Advanced Topics In Surveying

P.Venkateswaran

Advanced topics in surveying cover a broad range of specialized areas that build upon fundamental surveying principles. Here are some key advanced topics you might explore:

1. **Geodetic Surveying:** This involves measuring large areas of the Earth with high precision, considering its curvature. It includes concepts like ellipsoids, geoid models, and global positioning systems (GPS).
2. **Remote Sensing:** Utilizing satellite or aerial imagery to gather data about the Earth's surface. This can include analysis of multispectral images, LiDAR (Light Detection and Ranging), and photogrammetry.
3. **Geographic Information Systems (GIS):** Integrating and analyzing spatial data. Advanced GIS topics include spatial data modeling, network analysis, and geostatistics.
4. **Advanced GNSS Techniques:** Exploring high-precision GPS/GNSS methods, including Real-Time Kinematic (RTK) and Post-Processed Kinematic (PPK) surveying, and their applications in various fields.
5. **Control Surveying:** Establishing and maintaining accurate reference points for mapping and construction. This can involve precise leveling, triangulation, and trilateration techniques.
6. **Hydrographic Surveying:** Surveying underwater areas, which involves measuring water depths, mapping the seafloor, and understanding the dynamics of water bodies.
7. **Geospatial Data Accuracy and Error Analysis:** Assessing and managing errors in surveying data, including statistical methods for evaluating precision and accuracy.
8. **Integrated Surveying Technologies:** Combining various technologies such as GPS, laser scanning, and UAVs (Unmanned Aerial Vehicles) to improve surveying efficiency and accuracy.
9. **Land Use and Spatial Planning:** Applying surveying data to land management, urban planning, and environmental monitoring.
10. **Legal and Ethical Issues in Surveying:** Understanding property law, boundary disputes, and ethical considerations in professional practice.
11. **3D Mapping and Modeling:** Creating three-dimensional representations of terrain and structures for analysis, visualization, and simulation.
12. **Construction Surveying:** Specializing in surveying for construction projects, including setting out, monitoring deformations, and ensuring alignment and elevations are correct.

These topics often require a deep understanding of both theoretical concepts and practical applications, as well as proficiency with advanced technology and software tools.

# CHAPTER 5

## Modern Surveying

A.Belciyamary

Modern surveying has evolved significantly with advancements in technology, making it more efficient and precise. Here are some key aspects of modern surveying:

1. **Global Navigation Satellite Systems (GNSS):** GNSS, including GPS, GLONASS, Galileo, and BeiDou, are crucial in modern surveying. They provide highly accurate positioning data, which is essential for mapping, construction, and geodetic work.
2. **Total Stations:** These devices combine electronic theodolites with electronic distance meters (EDMs). They measure angles and distances electronically, allowing for precise location data and simplifying data collection in the field.
3. **Laser Scanning:** 3D laser scanning captures detailed and accurate representations of objects and landscapes. This technology is used for creating detailed models of buildings, infrastructure, and terrain, which are invaluable for design, analysis, and preservation.
4. **Unmanned Aerial Vehicles (UAVs):** Drones equipped with cameras or LiDAR sensors are used for aerial surveys. They can quickly capture large areas of land, providing high-resolution imagery and data for topographic mapping, construction monitoring, and more.
5. **Geographic Information Systems (GIS):** GIS technology integrates, analyzes, and visualizes spatial data. Surveying data is often imported into GIS platforms for further analysis and to create detailed maps and models.
6. **Robotic Total Stations:** These are advanced total stations that can be operated remotely, improving efficiency and accuracy in field surveys. They can track moving targets and automate many aspects of data collection.
7. **Cloud Computing:** Data collected from surveys can be processed and stored in the cloud, facilitating easy access, sharing, and collaboration among teams. Cloud-based tools also enhance data analysis and visualization capabilities.
8. **Integrated Surveying Systems:** Modern surveying often involves integrating various technologies and data sources. For instance, combining GNSS data with LiDAR or UAV imagery can provide a comprehensive view of a survey area.

These advancements have made surveying more precise, faster, and cost-effective, impacting fields such as construction, urban planning, and environmental management.

# CHAPTER 6

## Horizontal control surveys

R.Devi

Horizontal control surveys are crucial in various fields, including construction, mapping, and land surveying. They involve the process of establishing and maintaining horizontal control points, which are precisely measured locations used as reference points to ensure accuracy in mapping and construction.

### Key Aspects of Horizontal Control Surveys:

1. **Purpose:**
  - **Mapping and Planning:** Provides accurate reference points for creating maps and plans.
  - **Construction:** Ensures that structures are built in the correct location relative to other structures and infrastructure.
  - **Geographic Information Systems (GIS):** Supports the accurate integration of spatial data.
2. **Types of Horizontal Control Points:**
  - **Primary Control Points:** Established through extensive and precise measurement, often using advanced techniques like satellite positioning (GPS) or geodetic surveys.
  - **Secondary Control Points:** Derived from primary control points and used for more localized surveys.
3. **Methods Used:**
  - **Triangulation:** Involves measuring angles from known points to determine unknown distances and locations.
  - **Trilateration:** Uses distances between control points, determined through precise measurements, often using electronic distance measurement (EDM) tools.
  - **GPS/GNSS:** Utilizes satellite systems to provide highly accurate positioning data.
4. **Accuracy and Precision:**
  - The accuracy of horizontal control surveys is vital for ensuring that maps and construction projects are correct. Precision is achieved through careful measurement and the use of advanced technology.
5. **Applications:**
  - **Urban Planning:** Helps in the development of infrastructure and land use planning.
  - **Engineering Projects:** Essential for the layout and alignment of roads, bridges, and other structures.
  - **Legal Boundaries:** Determines property lines and boundaries for legal and administrative purposes.
6. **Tools and Technology:**
  - **Total Stations:** For precise angle and distance measurements.
  - **GPS/GNSS Receivers:** For real-time positioning and navigation.
  - **Surveying Software:** For data processing and integration into mapping systems.

In summary, horizontal control surveys are foundational for accurate and reliable spatial data in various applications, ensuring that projects and maps are based on precise and consistent measurements.

# CHAPTER 7

## Topographic surveys and maps

D.Jeyakumar

Topographic surveys and maps are crucial tools in understanding the physical features of a landscape. Here's a breakdown of what they involve and how they're used:

### Topographic Surveys

#### 1. Purpose:

- To measure and record the three-dimensional features of a terrain.
- To capture the elevation, contours, and landforms.

#### 2. Process:

- **Field Surveying:** Uses instruments like total stations, GPS, and lasers to collect data.
- **Data Collection:** Includes measurements of angles, distances, and elevations.
- **Data Processing:** Transforms raw data into usable formats for analysis and mapping.

#### 3. Applications:

- Urban planning and development.
- Environmental management and conservation.
- Engineering projects (roads, bridges, buildings).
- Land use planning and resource management.

### Topographic Maps

#### 1. Definition:

- A representation of the three-dimensional terrain on a two-dimensional surface.
- Shows elevation, landforms, and man-made structures.

#### 2. Features:

- **Contours:** Lines that connect points of equal elevation. The spacing of contour lines indicates the steepness of the slope.
- **Elevation:** Typically shown through contour lines or color gradients.
- **Landforms:** Hills, valleys, ridges, and other physical features.
- **Scale:** The ratio between distances on the map and actual distances on the ground.
- **Symbols:** Represent various features such as roads, buildings, water bodies, and vegetation.

## CHAPTER 8

### Construction surveys

K.Shanthi

Construction surveys are essential for ensuring that a building or infrastructure project is executed accurately and meets design specifications. They involve measuring and mapping the land to inform the construction process and help with the following:

1. **Site Planning:** Determining the layout and dimensions of the project site. This includes locating existing structures, utilities, and land features.
2. **Setting Out:** Transferring design plans onto the ground. Surveyors mark the locations where foundations, roads, and other features will be built.
3. **Monitoring:** Keeping track of the project's progress and checking that it remains within the specified tolerances. This can involve regular checks on the alignment, elevation, and position of construction elements.
4. **As-Built Surveys:** Documenting the completed project to ensure that it matches the original plans and to provide a record for future maintenance or modifications.
5. **Topographic Surveys:** Mapping the land's contours and elevations to understand how the terrain will affect the construction and design.
6. **Boundary Surveys:** Determining the precise boundaries of the property to avoid disputes and ensure that the construction is within legal limits.

Surveying methods can vary from traditional techniques with theodolites and total stations to modern technologies like GPS and laser scanning. Each method provides different levels of detail and accuracy depending on the project's requirements.



# CHAPTER 9

## Measuring vertical distances (leveling)

P.Venkateswaran

Measuring vertical distances, often referred to as leveling, is crucial in various fields such as construction, surveying, and civil engineering. Here's an overview of methods commonly used:

### 1. Spirit Level

- **Description:** A simple tool with a bubble in a liquid-filled tube.
- **Use:** Place the spirit level on a surface or between two points to ensure it is horizontal or to measure deviations from the horizontal.
- **Limitations:** Suitable for short distances and requires careful placement for accuracy.

### 2. Laser Level

- **Description:** A device that projects a laser beam to establish a horizontal or vertical reference.
- **Use:** Set up the laser level on a tripod and project a laser line or dot to measure and align vertical distances.
- **Advantages:** Provides high accuracy over longer distances and is easier to use in larger areas.
- **Limitations:** Requires a clear line of sight and can be affected by ambient light conditions.

### 3. Theodolite

- **Description:** An optical instrument for measuring angles in the horizontal and vertical planes.
- **Use:** Measure the vertical angle between two points to determine the vertical distance.
- **Advantages:** High precision, useful for detailed surveying and large-scale projects.
- **Limitations:** More complex to use and requires calibration.

### 4. Total Station

- **Description:** A sophisticated instrument combining theodolite and electronic distance measurement (EDM).
- **Use:** Measures vertical distances and angles, providing precise data for construction and surveying.
- **Advantages:** Accurate, versatile, and can record data electronically.
- **Limitations:** Expensive and requires training to operate effectively.

### 5. Leveling Rod and Level

- **Description:** A leveling rod is a graduated stick, and a level is a device used to read the rod.
- **Use:** Place the rod at different points and use the level to read the differences in height.

# CHAPTER 10

## Contour lines

A.Belciyamary


Contour lines are used on maps to represent elevation and the shape of the terrain. Each line connects points of equal elevation, so they help you visualize the landscape's ups and downs. Here are a few key points about contour lines:

1. **Elevation Representation:** The primary purpose of contour lines is to show how the elevation changes across a landscape. The distance between contour lines indicates the steepness of the slope—closer lines mean a steeper slope, while wider spacing indicates a gentler incline.
2. **Elevation Intervals:** Maps usually have a consistent vertical interval between contour lines, such as every 10 meters or 50 feet. This interval is known as the contour interval and is crucial for understanding the vertical scale of the map.
3. **Contour Patterns:** The shape of contour lines can give clues about the terrain:
  - **Circles or Concentric Lines:** Often represent hilltops or mountains.
  - **V-Shaped Lines:** Typically indicate valleys or streams, with the point of the “V” pointing upstream.
  - **Flat Areas:** Represented by widely spaced contour lines or closed loops with no significant elevation change.
4. **Index Contours:** Some maps use thicker or differently colored lines at regular intervals to highlight certain contour lines, making it easier to read elevation levels.

Contour lines are a fundamental tool for understanding topography, useful in activities like hiking, planning construction, or studying geography.



# BUSINESS WRITING



Edited by  
**DR. R. SUDHA**



978-93-6255-124-5

BUSINESS WRITING

Copyright © 2019 by Dr. R. SUDHA

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-124-5

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 Introduction to Business writing.....	1
DR. K.G. SELVAN	
CHAPTER 2 Writing Process.....	13
DR.R. SUDHA	
CHAPTER 3 The Role of Effective Communication in Business Management.....	23
DR. R. PREMA	
CHAPTER 4 How to Develop and implement successful Business Strategies.....	34
DR. K. SASIKUMAR	
CHAPTER 5 The Impact of leadership style on organizational culture and productivity .....	43
MRS. P. UMA ESWARI	
CHAPTER 6 The benefits and challenges of global expansion for businesses .....	57
DR. S. POUGAJENDY	
CHAPTER 7 The importance of ethical behavior in business management .....	64
DR. P. BALASUBRAMANIAN	
CHAPTER 8 How to effectively manage workplace diversity and inclusivity.....	76
DR.R. SUDHA	
CHAPTER 9 The role of technology in modern business management .....	87
DR. R. PREMA	
CHAPTER 10 How to effectively manage change in the business environment .....	98
DR. R. PREMA	

**CHAPTER 1**  
**INTRODUCTION TO BUSINESS WRITING**  
**DR. K. G. SELVAN**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

Business writing is a fundamental communication skill essential for success in any professional setting. It encompasses the creation of clear, concise, and purposeful documents that facilitate effective interaction among colleagues, clients, and stakeholders. Whether through emails, reports, proposals, or presentations, the ability to communicate effectively in writing can significantly impact decision-making, collaboration, and overall organizational success.

In today's fast-paced business environment, where time is of the essence and clarity is paramount, effective business writing becomes even more critical. It serves not only to convey information but also to persuade and influence actions, making it a vital tool for professionals at all levels. Understanding the principles of effective business writing can enhance one's ability to connect with others, foster collaboration, and achieve desired outcomes.

This introduction outlines the key components of business writing, including its purpose, common formats, and essential principles for effective communication. By mastering these elements, individuals can improve their writing skills and contribute positively to their organizations.

The primary purpose of business writing is to facilitate communication within and between organizations. Whether addressing colleagues, clients, or stakeholders, well-crafted business documents ensure that messages are understood and acted upon. Clarity, conciseness, and professionalism are the cornerstones of effective business writing. These qualities not only enhance the readability of documents but also reflect the writer's competence and attention to detail, thereby bolstering the organization's credibility.

Moreover, the rapid evolution of technology has transformed the way we communicate in business. Digital platforms have increased the speed at which information is exchanged, necessitating a shift in writing styles to accommodate diverse audiences and varying contexts. As such, understanding the nuances of audience awareness, tone, and structure becomes essential for anyone engaged in business writing.

In essence, mastering the art of business writing is not just about putting words on a page; it is about building relationships, influencing decisions, and achieving organizational goals. By prioritizing effective communication, professionals can enhance their contributions to their organizations, foster positive workplace environments, and navigate the complexities of modern business interactions. As we delve deeper into the principles and practices of business writing, it becomes clear that this skill is not merely an asset but a necessity in today's competitive landscape.

## CHAPTER 2 WRITING PROCESS

**DR. R. SUDHA**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

### The Writing Process

The writing process is a systematic approach to producing written content, whether for academic, professional, or personal purposes. Understanding and following this process can enhance clarity, coherence, and overall effectiveness in writing. While individual writing styles may vary, the writing process generally consists of several key stages:

#### *1. Prewriting*

Prewriting involves the initial planning and brainstorming phase of writing. This stage allows writers to explore ideas and organize their thoughts before committing them to paper. Key activities during this phase include:

- **Brainstorming:** Generating a list of ideas, themes, or topics related to the writing task.
- **Research:** Gathering information, data, and sources that will support the writing.
- **Outlining:** Creating a structured outline to organize main points and supporting details. This helps in visualizing the overall structure of the document.

#### *2. Drafting*

The drafting stage is where writers begin to put their ideas into sentences and paragraphs. During this phase, the focus is on getting ideas down rather than perfection. Key aspects include:

- **Writing Freely:** Writers should aim to express their thoughts without worrying too much about grammar or style. This is about capturing the content.
- **Following the Outline:** Using the outline as a guide helps ensure that the writing remains focused and organized.
- **Creating Multiple Drafts:** Writers may create several drafts to refine their ideas and improve clarity.

#### *3. Revising*

Revision is a critical stage where writers review their drafts to improve content, structure, and clarity. This phase involves:

- **Evaluating Content:** Assessing whether the main ideas are clear and effectively communicated. Writers should consider if they have adequately supported their arguments or points.
- **Reorganizing:** Making adjustments to the structure or flow of the document as necessary.
- **Refining Language:** Enhancing word choice, sentence structure, and tone to ensure the writing resonates with the intended audience.

#### *4. Editing*

Editing focuses on correcting grammatical, punctuation, and spelling errors. This stage ensures that the writing is polished and professional. Key steps include:

**CHAPTER 3**  
**THE ROLE OF EFFECTIVE COMMUNICATION IN BUSINESS**  
**MANAGEMENT**

**DR. R. PREMA**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

The Role of Effective Communication in Business Management

Effective communication is a cornerstone of successful business management. It involves the clear and concise exchange of information, ideas, and feedback among various stakeholders, including employees, management, clients, and partners. The significance of effective communication in business management cannot be overstated, as it directly influences organizational culture, employee engagement, decision-making, and overall productivity.

*1. Facilitating Clarity and Understanding*

Effective communication ensures that all stakeholders understand the organization's goals, objectives, and expectations. Clear communication helps prevent misunderstandings and reduces the potential for conflicts. When employees are well-informed about their roles and the broader organizational objectives, they can align their efforts accordingly, leading to enhanced productivity and morale.

*2. Enhancing Collaboration and Teamwork*

In today's dynamic work environments, collaboration is essential. Effective communication fosters teamwork by encouraging open dialogue and the sharing of ideas. When team members feel comfortable expressing their thoughts and feedback, it creates a collaborative atmosphere that enhances problem-solving and innovation. This synergy is crucial for achieving common goals and driving organizational success.

*3. Supporting Decision-Making*

Business management often involves making critical decisions that can impact the entire organization. Effective communication plays a vital role in the decision-making process by ensuring that all relevant information is available and accurately conveyed. By facilitating discussions and encouraging input from diverse perspectives, managers can make informed decisions that reflect the needs and interests of the organization.

*4. Building Relationships and Trust*

Strong communication skills help build and maintain relationships among employees, management, and external stakeholders. Trust is essential in any business environment, and effective communication fosters transparency and accountability. When individuals feel heard and valued, they are more likely to develop trust in their leaders and the organization as a whole, leading to increased loyalty and retention.

*5. Driving Change Management*

Change is a constant in the business world, and effective communication is critical during times of transition. Whether implementing new policies, procedures, or technologies, clear communication helps manage employee expectations and addresses concerns. By keeping everyone informed and engaged throughout the change process, organizations can minimize resistance and ensure smoother transitions.



**CHAPTER 4**  
**HOW TO DEVELOP AND IMPLEMENT SUCCESSFUL BUSINESS**  
**STRATEGIES**

**MR. K. SASIKUMAR**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

How to Develop and Implement Successful Business Strategies

Developing and implementing successful business strategies is essential for organizations aiming to achieve their goals and maintain a competitive edge. A well-crafted strategy aligns resources and actions with the organization's vision, facilitating growth and sustainability. Here's a structured approach to creating and executing effective business strategies.

*1. Conduct a Thorough Analysis*

**a. Internal Analysis:** Assess the organization's strengths and weaknesses through tools like SWOT analysis (Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities, Threats). Understand the resources, capabilities, and operational efficiency.

**b. External Analysis:** Examine market conditions, industry trends, and competitive landscapes. Tools like PESTEL analysis (Political, Economic, Social, Technological, Environmental, Legal) can help identify external factors that may impact the business.

*2. Define Clear Objectives*

Setting clear, measurable, and time-bound objectives is crucial for guiding strategic decisions. Objectives should be aligned with the organization's vision and mission. Use the SMART criteria (Specific, Measurable, Achievable, Relevant, Time-bound) to formulate these goals.

*3. Identify Strategic Options*

Explore various strategic options based on the analysis conducted. Consider different approaches such as:

- **Market Penetration:** Increasing market share in existing markets.
- **Market Development:** Expanding into new markets.
- **Product Development:** Innovating or improving products/services.
- **Diversification:** Introducing new products or services to new markets.

*4. Evaluate and Select Strategies*

Assess the identified strategies for feasibility, risk, and potential return on investment. Consider the following:

- **Cost-Benefit Analysis:** Weigh the potential benefits against the costs involved in implementing the strategy.

**CHAPTER 5**  
**THE IMPACT OF LEADERSHIP STYLE ON ORGANIZATIONAL**  
**CULTURE AND PRODUCTIVITY**

**MRS. P. UMA ESWARI**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

The Impact of Leadership Style on Organizational Culture and Productivity

Leadership style plays a pivotal role in shaping organizational culture and influencing productivity. The approach that leaders take in managing teams and guiding their organizations can significantly affect employee motivation, engagement, and overall performance. Understanding this relationship is essential for creating a positive work environment and driving organizational success.

*1. Defining Leadership Styles*

Leadership styles can vary widely, but some of the most common include:

- **Autocratic Leadership:** Centralized decision-making, with leaders making choices unilaterally.
- **Democratic Leadership:** Involves team members in decision-making, promoting participation and collaboration.
- **Transformational Leadership:** Focuses on inspiring and motivating employees to exceed their own interests for the sake of the organization.
- **Transactional Leadership:** Based on a system of rewards and punishments to manage team performance.
- **Laissez-Faire Leadership:** Offers minimal supervision, allowing employees to take the lead in their tasks.

Each leadership style has distinct implications for organizational culture and productivity.

*2. Influence on Organizational Culture*

**a. Autocratic Leadership:** This style can create a culture of compliance, where employees may feel undervalued and disengaged due to the lack of input in decision-making. This can lead to a rigid culture with limited innovation.

**b. Democratic Leadership:** By encouraging participation, democratic leaders foster a culture of collaboration and trust. Employees feel valued and empowered, leading to a more positive and inclusive organizational culture.

**c. Transformational Leadership:** This style promotes a culture of inspiration and growth. Transformational leaders encourage innovation, support professional development, and create a shared vision, resulting in high levels of employee engagement and loyalty.

**d. Transactional Leadership:** While effective for achieving short-term goals, this style may foster a culture focused on compliance and routine. Employees might be motivated primarily by rewards, which can limit creativity and long-term commitment.

**e. Laissez-Faire Leadership:** This approach can lead to a culture of autonomy and innovation, but it may also result in a lack of direction. Without clear guidance, some employees may struggle to stay motivated and productive.

**CHAPTER 6**  
**THE BENEFITS AND CHALLENGES OF GLOBAL EXPANSION**  
**FOR BUSINESSES**

**DR. S. POUGAJENDY**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

he Benefits and Challenges of Global Expansion for Businesses

Global expansion offers businesses numerous opportunities to grow, diversify, and increase their market reach. However, it also presents a set of challenges that require careful consideration and strategic planning. Understanding both the benefits and challenges is essential for organizations contemplating entering international markets.

*Benefits of Global Expansion*

**1. Market Diversification**

- Expanding into new geographic markets allows businesses to diversify their revenue streams. This reduces reliance on domestic markets and minimizes risks associated with economic downturns in a single region.

**2. Increased Revenue Potential**

- Global markets often present new customer bases and demand for products or services. Tapping into these markets can lead to substantial revenue growth and increased profitability.

**3. Access to New Talent and Resources**

- Global expansion provides access to a broader talent pool, allowing businesses to recruit skilled workers from diverse backgrounds. Additionally, companies may benefit from local resources, including raw materials and technological advancements.

**4. Competitive Advantage**

- By entering international markets, companies can gain a competitive edge over rivals. Establishing a presence in multiple regions can enhance brand recognition and strengthen market position.

**5. Economies of Scale**

- Operating on a global scale can lead to cost efficiencies. Companies can produce goods in larger quantities, reducing per-unit costs and increasing margins.

**6. Innovation and Knowledge Transfer**

- Exposure to different markets can stimulate innovation as businesses adapt products and services to meet local needs. This cross-pollination of ideas can enhance overall competitiveness.

*Challenges of Global Expansion*

**1. Cultural Differences**

- Understanding and adapting to different cultural norms and consumer behaviors can be challenging. Misinterpretations or insensitivity to local customs may lead to marketing failures or damaged reputations.

**2. Regulatory Compliance**

- Navigating foreign legal and regulatory environments can be complex. Businesses must ensure compliance with local laws, trade regulations, and tax obligations, which can vary significantly from one country to another.

**3. Political and Economic Risks**

- Political instability, changes in government policies, and economic fluctuations can pose risks to international operations. Businesses must conduct thorough risk assessments and develop contingency plans.

**4. Supply Chain Complexity**

**CHAPTER 7**  
**THE IMPORTANCE OF ETHICAL BEHAVIOR IN BUSINESS**  
**MANAGEMENT**

**DR. P. BALASUBRAMANIAN**

*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

The Importance of Ethical Behavior in Business Management

Ethical behavior in business management is crucial for fostering trust, maintaining a positive reputation, and ensuring long-term success. In an increasingly interconnected and transparent world, organizations that prioritize ethical conduct not only comply with legal standards but also cultivate a culture of integrity that can significantly impact their overall performance. Here are several key reasons why ethical behavior is essential in business management:

*1. Building Trust and Credibility*

Trust is the foundation of successful business relationships. When organizations demonstrate ethical behavior, they build credibility with stakeholders, including employees, customers, investors, and the community. Trust fosters loyalty and encourages open communication, leading to stronger partnerships and improved collaboration.

*2. Enhancing Reputation*

An organization's reputation is one of its most valuable assets. Companies known for their ethical practices are more likely to attract and retain customers, investors, and top talent. A strong reputation for integrity can serve as a competitive advantage, differentiating a business in a crowded market.

*3. Encouraging Employee Engagement and Retention*

Ethical behavior contributes to a positive workplace culture, where employees feel valued and respected. When organizations uphold ethical standards, employees are more likely to be engaged, motivated, and committed to their work. This, in turn, reduces turnover rates and the costs associated with recruitment and training.

*4. Promoting Long-term Sustainability*

Ethical decision-making often aligns with sustainable business practices. Organizations that prioritize ethical behavior consider the broader impact of their actions on the environment, society, and the economy. This holistic approach can lead to sustainable growth and help mitigate risks associated with unethical practices, such as legal issues or public backlash.

*5. Mitigating Risks and Legal Issues*

Unethical behavior can lead to significant legal and financial repercussions. By adhering to ethical standards and compliance regulations, organizations can reduce the risk of lawsuits, fines, and other penalties. Proactive ethical practices help safeguard the organization's assets and minimize potential liabilities.

**CHAPTER 8**  
**HOW TO EFFECTIVELY MANAGE WORKPLACE DIVERSITY**  
**AND INCLUSIVITY**

**DR.R. SUDHA**

*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

How to Effectively Manage Workplace Diversity and Inclusivity

Managing workplace diversity and inclusivity is essential for fostering a positive organizational culture and driving business success. A diverse workforce brings different perspectives, ideas, and experiences that can enhance creativity, innovation, and problem-solving. However, effectively managing diversity requires intentional strategies and practices. Here's how organizations can promote and manage diversity and inclusivity effectively:

*1. Create a Clear Diversity and Inclusion Policy*

Establish a comprehensive diversity and inclusion (D&I) policy that outlines the organization's commitment to fostering an inclusive workplace. This policy should define diversity, its importance, and the organization's goals related to inclusivity. It should also provide guidelines for acceptable behavior and consequences for discriminatory actions.

*2. Leadership Commitment*

Leaders play a crucial role in promoting diversity and inclusivity. Leadership should actively support and model inclusive behaviors, demonstrating a commitment to D&I initiatives. This includes participating in training, advocating for diverse hiring practices, and holding themselves and others accountable for fostering an inclusive culture.

*3. Implement Inclusive Recruitment Practices*

Adopt recruitment strategies that prioritize diversity. This can include:

- **Broadening Recruitment Channels:** Utilize diverse job boards, community organizations, and partnerships with educational institutions to reach a wider audience.
- **Bias-Free Job Descriptions:** Ensure job descriptions are free from biased language and focus on skills and qualifications.
- **Diverse Hiring Panels:** Include diverse team members in the hiring process to minimize unconscious bias and promote varied perspectives.

*4. Provide Diversity and Inclusion Training*

Conduct regular training sessions on diversity and inclusion for all employees. This training should cover topics such as unconscious bias, cultural competence, and effective communication across differences. Training helps raise awareness and equips employees with the tools to engage inclusively.

## **CHAPTER 9**

### **THE ROLE OF TECHNOLOGY IN MODERN BUSINESS MANAGEMENT**

**DR.R. PREMA**

*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

#### The Role of Technology in Modern Business Management

In today's fast-paced and interconnected world, technology plays a pivotal role in modern business management. From enhancing operational efficiency to facilitating communication and decision-making, technology has transformed the way organizations operate. Here are several key areas where technology impacts business management:

##### *1. Improved Communication and Collaboration*

Technology has revolutionized communication within and between organizations. Tools such as email, instant messaging, video conferencing, and collaboration platforms (like Slack and Microsoft Teams) enable real-time communication, breaking down geographical barriers. This fosters collaboration among teams, enhances information sharing, and streamlines workflows, leading to increased productivity.

##### *2. Data-Driven Decision Making*

The ability to collect and analyze data is one of the most significant advantages of modern technology. Businesses can leverage data analytics tools to gain insights into customer behavior, market trends, and operational performance. This data-driven approach allows managers to make informed decisions, identify opportunities for growth, and optimize processes, ultimately enhancing overall business performance.

##### *3. Automation of Processes*

Automation technology enables organizations to streamline repetitive tasks, reduce manual errors, and improve efficiency. From automated payroll systems to customer relationship management (CRM) software, automation frees up employees' time, allowing them to focus on higher-value activities. This leads to cost savings and increased productivity, as tasks are completed faster and more accurately.

##### *4. Enhanced Customer Experience*

Technology enables businesses to provide better customer experiences through personalized interactions and improved service delivery. CRM systems, chatbots, and customer feedback tools help organizations understand and respond to customer needs more effectively. Enhanced online platforms and mobile applications also allow for seamless customer engagement, improving satisfaction and loyalty.

##### *5. Supply Chain and Inventory Management*

Modern technology has transformed supply chain and inventory management. Tools such as Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems and inventory management software help businesses monitor stock levels, manage suppliers, and optimize logistics. This not only reduces costs but also ensures that products are available when customers need them, enhancing operational efficiency.

# CHAPTER 10

## HOW TO EFFECTIVELY MANAGE CHANGE IN THE BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT

**DR.R. PREMA**

*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

### How to Effectively Manage Change in the Business Environment

Managing change in the business environment is crucial for organizations to adapt and thrive amidst evolving market conditions, technological advancements, and shifting consumer expectations. Here are key strategies for effectively managing change:

#### *1. Understand the Need for Change*

- **Conduct a Situational Analysis:** Assess the current environment to identify the reasons for change. This could involve market research, SWOT analysis (Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities, Threats), or stakeholder feedback.
- **Communicate the Rationale:** Clearly articulate why change is necessary to all stakeholders, ensuring everyone understands the goals and benefits.

#### *2. Engage Stakeholders*

- **Involve Key Players:** Engage employees, management, and relevant stakeholders early in the process. Their insights can provide valuable perspectives and increase buy-in.
- **Build a Coalition:** Form a team of change champions across different departments to advocate for the change and support its implementation.

#### *3. Develop a Comprehensive Change Strategy*

- **Set Clear Objectives:** Define specific, measurable, achievable, relevant, and time-bound (SMART) goals related to the change.
- **Create a Detailed Action Plan:** Outline the steps required to implement the change, including timelines, resources needed, and responsible parties.

#### *4. Communicate Effectively*

- **Establish a Communication Plan:** Develop a strategy for how information will be shared throughout the organization. Ensure regular updates are provided.
- **Utilize Multiple Channels:** Use various communication methods—meetings, emails, newsletters, and intranet portals—to ensure everyone is informed.

#### *5. Provide Training and Resources*

- **Identify Training Needs:** Assess the skills and knowledge required for the change. Provide targeted training programs to equip employees for new processes or technologies.
- **Offer Support:** Ensure employees have access to resources, such as manuals, FAQs, or mentorship, to help them adapt during the transition.



# **MATERIALS MANAGEMENT**

EDITED BY  
**DR. S. VENKATESH**



978-93-6255-906-7



MATERIALS MANAGEMENT

Copyright © 2019 by Dr. S. VENKATESH

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-906-7

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 Materials Management an Introduction.....	1
DR. S. VENKATESH	
CHAPTER 2 ABC Analysis.....	13
DR. K. RAJALAKSHMI	
CHAPTER 3 Codification and Standardization.....	23
DR.R. PREMA	
CHAPTER 4 Purchasing Management.....	34
DR. S. VENKATESH	
CHAPTER 5 Negotiation.....	43
DR. T. J. JAYASHOLAN	
CHAPTER 6 Supply Chain Management.....	57
Dr. S. POUGAJENDY	
CHAPTER 7 Selection of Suppliers.....	64
DR. P. BALASUBRAMANIAN	
CHAPTER 8 Inventory Management.....	76
MR. K. SASIKUMAR	
CHAPTER 9 Inventory Control.....	87
MRS. P. UMA ESWARI	
CHAPTER 10 Value Analysis.....	98
DR. R. PREMA	

# CHAPTER 1

## MATERIAL MANAGEMENT AN INTRODUCTION

**DR. S. VENKATESH**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

In this unit you will study about meaning and scope of materials management. The sections and sub sections of this unit will also summarize the objectives and significance of materials management. Materials management is a specialized area of management which concerns itself with the management of Material Resources.

What we are attempting to do in managing materials is to reduce and control the cost relating to this important resource, which normally accounts for about 50 per cent on average, of the cost of production. In other words if it costs ` 100 per cent to produce an item one may take it for granted than ` 50 is likely to be related to material which, it will be appreciated, is a very high percentage of the total cost. Traditionally, we are used to thinking of the cost of materials which is the price we have paid to acquire the materials, i.e., the basic cost of the materials. This is the figure usually displayed in a company statement of annual accounts.

Materials management concerns itself not with this cost, which as we have seen is very high, but also with a large number of other costs which add to the price. These costs are called 'cost in materials' as distinct from 'cost of materials'. When we speak of materials management, we are not merely referring to the control of the cost of materials but of each and every type of cost that is incurred on materials, as indicated above, which have to be reduced and controlled.

**Meaning and Scope of Materials Management** Materials management is an essential business function. It is concerned with planning, acquisition and flow of materials within the supply chain. Material is one of the four basic resources. Example: Labor, Material, Equipment and Capital of any industrial or business activity.

For a long time, it was regarded as a routine function with less importance. But over the years, with accelerating economic, technological, societal and environmental changes, this function has become more important, more complex, and more professional. However, it is complex as it confronts various issues including outsourcing, global sourcing, size of supply base, shorter Lead time, smaller lot size, price determination, mode/carrier selection, maintaining long-term relationship with suppliers, choosing the right type of information technology, legal issues, etc.

The following definition of Materials Management has been accepted by the International Federation of Purchasing and Materials Management. "The materials management is a total concept involving an organizational structure unifying into a single responsibility, the systematic flow and control of material from identification of the need through customer delivery." Included within the concept are the material functions of planning, scheduling, buying, storing, moving and distributing. These are logically represented by the disciplines of production and inventory control, purchasing and physical distribution. The objective of materials management is to contribute to increased profitability by coordinated achievement of least materials cost. This is done through

## **CHAPTER 2**

### **ABC ANALYSIS**

**DR. K. RAJALAKSHMI**

*Department of Management,*

**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

In the previous unit, we dealt with the meaning and scope of materials management. The unit also discussed about the materials management in other areas of management. This unit will help you to understand the concept of ABC Analysis. The various section and sub section of this unit will also summarize the objectives and limitations of ABC analysis. Activity Based Costing, or ABC, is a method of allocating overhead and direct expenses related to the most important activities of the company first.

This process allows business owners and managers an opportunity to better define the areas of manufacturing or sales that generate the most profit for the company. Inventory analyzed under the ABC method is classified in order of profitability to the company. Class A inventory accounts for 80 percent of revenue, class B inventory for 15 percent of revenue and class C inventory for 5 percent of revenue. ABC analysis is a technique for ordering causes or problems from the most to the least significant.

In this way, the most significant aspects are identified (what Juran calls ‘the vital few’) and the efforts can be concentrated on those, thus getting the maximum benefit with the least effort. The analysis makes use of the ABC diagram, which is a special case of the bar chart, and is used in conjunction with brainstorming, cause and effect analysis and cumulative line charts. The diagram displays, in decreasing order, the relative contribution of each cause (for problem) to the total. The relative contribution can be based on the number of occurrences, the quality damage or the cost associated with each cause (or problem).

#### Meaning of ABC Analysis

ABC analysis (sometimes referred to as the 80/20 rule and as ABC analysis) is a method of classifying items, events, or activities according to their relative importance. It is frequently used in inventory management where it is used to classify stock items into groups based on the total annual expenditure for, or total stockholding cost of, each item. Organizations can concentrate more detailed attention on the high value/important items. ABC analysis is used to arrive at this prioritization.

ABC Analysis / E-TIP Analysis in CLG While behaviour is, on the surface, a simple overall process, it is influenced at almost every step. Managing employee and organizational behaviour is a result of understanding these influences, and determining the outcomes that are necessary to your company's success.

ABC Analysis CLG employs the ABC Analysis to dissect the structure of common behaviours. This tool helps managers to understand why behaviours occur, and to identify the strategies for encouraging desired behaviours and discouraging undesired behaviours.

The ABC Analysis is comprised of three elements (Antecedents, Behaviours and Consequences) in a simple formula: Antecedents trigger Behaviours, and Behaviours are followed by Consequences.

## CHAPTER 3 CODIFICATION AND STANDARDIZATION

**DR. R. PREMA**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

Previous unit dealt with the concept of ABC analysis and its purpose and advantages in materials management. In this unit, you will study about codification and standardization in the context of inventory. Codification/cataloguing is basically an identification system for each item of the inventory. Standardization supports the fundamental precepts of build-to-order and mass customisation. Standardization makes it easier for parts to be pulled into assembly (instead of ordering and waiting) by reducing the number of part types to the point where the remaining few standard parts can receive the focus to arrange demand-pull just-in-time deliveries.

**Basis of Codification** Codification of materials can also be termed as the identification of materials. This deals with uniquely identifying each item in the inventory. It is useful in requisitioning items or the operational departments, in placing of orders by the purchase department, in receiving and expediting the items on receipt from the supplier, in having a unique record of each of the items in stores and in work-in-process or in warehouse so as to facilitate the control over the inventory

levels, and also in having a good control over the loss, deterioration, obsolescence, non-movement, or pilferage of the items in the inventory. Unique identification of the materials— whether they are raw materials, work-in-process or finished goods – is the first step towards a good materials management system. Without it, the control over inventory by rigorous exercises such as inventory techniques is not very effective. Without it, confusion might prevail in the operational departments. Moreover for a good quality control system a unique identification is a prerequisite. There are many other advantages such as variety reduction and standardization, etc. The various bases for the codification of inventory are:  $\lambda \lambda \lambda$  Who will be the user? To what use is the codification going to be put? What degree of mechanization will be needed to use the codification system?

### Codification by Group Classification

What do we mean by coding? By this, we give a unique number to a particular item in the inventory. For instance, 010237 might mean a specific item in inventory such as a particular kind of gasket, of a certain material, of a certain shape, and of certain dimensions. Of course, each of these numbers or groups of numbers (within the total identification number) should convey some unique information. For instance, classification of materials in an inventory by providing numbers to them:

1. Wire
2. Tubing
3. Rod
4. Bar
5. Sheet
6. Strip

## **CHAPTER 4**

### **PURCHASING MANAGEMENT**

**DR. S. VENKATESH**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

Introduction In the previous unit, we studied about the concept of codification and standardization in materials management. This unit will help you learn about the purchase department, its functions, purchasing management, the different purchase policy and procedures and the purchase of high capital equipments.

Purchasing is the function of procuring materials, tools for stores, (or supplies) and services required for the manufacture of a product, maintenance of the machines and uninterrupted running of manufacturing plant in a manner that guarantees marketing of the company's products in the quantities desired at the time agreed upon and at the competitive price, consistent with quality desired.

#### Meaning of Purchase Management

In the words of Alford and Berry "Purchasing is the procuring of materials, supplying machine tools and services required for the equipment maintenance and operation of manufacturing plant". Purchasing in a sense is the task of buying goods of right quality, in the right quantities, at the right time, at the right sources, and at the right price.

Traditionally, purchasing was regarded as one of the activities of the production management. However, much progressive management have already realized that in view of changing business conditions, growing competition continual escalation in the cost of inputs, purchasing must be given status equal to that of other major functions (i.e., production, sales and finance). The purchase department is headed by the purchase manager/officer. In some firms, the head of the purchase department is also called commercial manager or purchase chief.

Purchasing management encompasses a group of applications that controls purchasing of raw materials needed to build products and that manages inventory stocks. It also involves creating purchase orders/contracts, supplier tracking, goods receipt and payment, and regulatory compliance analysis and reporting.

Purchasing management directs the flow of goods and services in a company and handles all data relating to contact with suppliers. To be effective, it requires knowledge of the supply chain, business and tax laws, invoice and inventory procedures, and transportation and logistics issues. Although a strong knowledge of the products and services to be purchased is essential, professionals in this field must also be able to plan, execute, and oversee purchasing strategies that help their company be more profitable.

Sourcing reliable suppliers is a crucial part of purchasing management. Managers, agents, and buyers usually learn about new products and services from Internet searches, trade shows, and conferences. They meet with potential suppliers in their plants whenever possible. Skills in foreign languages may be helpful for sourcing suppliers in other countries. Individuals who work in this area must always assess potential suppliers in terms of the supplier's ability to deliver quality

## CHAPTER 5 NEGOTIATION

**DR. T. J. JAYASHOLAN**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

Introduction In the previous unit we dealt with the objectives and functions of purchasing department. The unit also discussed about the purchase policies and procedures. This unit will help you to further your knowledge about negotiation in purchasing process. The various section and sub section of this unit will also summarize the techniques and tactics of negotiation.

Negotiation is, indeed, a battle of wits and an Art of embodying sophisticated tactics and maneuvers by both the buyer and the seller. Normally buyers should not be opportunist and try to function as arbitrators between the factory and the supplier. The buyer must enable his supplier to make a reasonable profit in the short run and survive as well as grow in the long run. He should remember that he is buying not only for today's price, but for tomorrows cost as well. In this process, the buyer helps the suppliers towards finding more economical ways of working rather than squeezing out the profit margin.

### Meaning of Negotiation

Negotiation has been accepted as a policy by some material managers, since perfect competition does not exist in Indian situations and hence the concept of lowest bid does not always work. Selling at a loss will drive the supplier out of business reducing the Sources of supplies. Art of negotiation is treated as a forum for exchange of views rather than cut throat buying. In negotiating both the buyer and seller try to evaluate each other with regard to price and quality.

The word Negotiation is derived from Latin civil laws. It refers to 'Trading and Deliberations' leading to purchase or sale agreement of goods and services. Negotiation may be defined as "what passes between the parties incident to the making of a contract". According to another definition negotiation means "to discuss or arrange business transactions." For Harold bloom, "Negotiation is essentially a communication."

Thus, a negotiation is essentially a discussion on business transactions leading to finalization of purchase and sale contract of goods and services. It is not a discussion on price only; it is only one of the important points of discussion in any negotiation between the parties who deliberate to make a contract. A negotiation is a discussion on all aspects of a contract. It includes deliberations between trading parties on:

1. quality
2. quantity
3. price
4. time of delivery
5. place of delivery
6. mode of transportation
7. packing and packages
8. after sale service
9. mode of payment, etc.

## **CHAPTER 6**

### **SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT**

**Dr. S. POUGAJENDY**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

Previous unit dealt with the concept of negotiation in materials management. It also covered the various techniques and strategies used in negotiating. In this unit, you will study about supply chain and its effective implementation in a company.

A supply chain is a system of organizations, people, technologies, activities, information and resources involved in moving a product or service from supplier to customer. Maintaining a flawless supply chain across all its operations thus becomes absolutely necessary for any business. Importance of supply chain management need not be over emphasized as it has become the cutting edge of business, after product quality and manufacturing capabilities of any business firm. Supply chain activities transform natural resources, raw materials and components into a finished product that is delivered to the end user. In sophisticated supply chain systems, used products may reenter the supply chain at any point where residual value is recyclable.

Supply chains encompass the companies and the business activities needed to design, make, deliver, and use a product or service. Businesses depend on their supply chains to provide them with what they need to survive and thrive. Every business fits into one or more supply chains and has a role to play in each of them. The pace of change and the uncertainty about how markets will evolve has made it increasingly important for companies to be aware of the supply chains they participate in and to understand the roles that they play. Those companies that learn how to build and participate in strong supply chains will have a substantial competitive advantage in their markets.

#### Evolution of Supply Chain Management

The 1990s were a decade that brought in a quantum jump in many areas of management. One major area of great change was in the fields of Materials Management, Procurement, Physical Distribution Management and Business Logistics. These disciplines went through several evolutionary stages.

Traditional Procurement, Physical Distribution Management and Materials Management in the 1970s, evolved into Logistics Management in the 1980s. Logistics Management consolidated the traffic and transportation activities of the firm. Logistics then evolved into Supply Chain Management in the 1990s. Supply Chain Management combined the activities of Materials Management and Logistics.

This change began in the 1960s and 1970s. With growth of computer capabilities new systems to handle material requirements were devised. The first of these was Material Requirement Planning (MRP). This was followed by Manufacturing Resource Planning (MRP II). These systems brought about recognition of the importance of the impact of high levels of inventories on manufacturing and storage costs. As the sophistication of inventory tracking software grew, it became possible to further reduce inventory costs. The concept of the supply chain had already been proposed by Forrester in 1958. However, the first widely recorded use of the term supply chain management came about in a paper published by Keith and Webber in 1982.



## **CHAPTER 7**

### **SELECTION OF SUPPLIERS**

**DR. P. BALASUBRAMANIAN**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

In the previous unit we dealt with the concept of Supply Chain Management (SCM). The unit also discussed about the implementation of SCM principles within a company. This unit will help you to explain vendor rating and selection of suppliers. The various section and sub section of this unit will also summarize the various techniques used for vendor rating. Picking up a vendor is perhaps one of the most nerve wracking but critical activities a business should embark on. Your vendors will be delivering your direct purchases – those that you use to produce the products you sell and your indirect purchases – those that keep your business running effectively.

When you are selecting a budding vendor, you are selecting a partner in your business and you will trust them to work with you in a professional and profitable manner. It is significant that you chose a company that can supply your requirements now and for the near future.

#### Suppliers Selection

In today's business environment, supplier is an important element in the supply chain. He can provide competitive edge by delivering quality product or services on time, at reasonable price, on a consistent basis. Hence, supplier selection has become one of the most important tasks of purchase. The task calls for identifying possible sources, collecting relevant data, analyzing these data and choosing the right ones.

The process of selection of supplier can be grouped in four stages including:

1. Survey stage
2. Enquiry stage
3. Negotiation and selection stage
4. Experience stage

#### Survey Stage

There exist a large number of sources to identify prospective suppliers. The major sources include: supplier's purchasing information file, supplier catalogs, trade register and directories, trade journals, trade exhibits – regional, national and Internet.

#### Supplier's Purchasing Information File

Normally, purchase department maintains records of past and current suppliers. Records may include names and addresses of suppliers, product range, prices, performance history and so on. This could be a starting point in identifying sources for new items.

**Supplier Catalog** Each supplier brings out a catalog to show the range of materials, parts, components and services he provides. Usually, buyers maintain a library of such catalogs which are useful potential source.

## **CHAPTER 8**

### **INVENTORY MANAGEMENT**

**MR. K. SASIKUMAR**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

Previous unit dealt with the concept of suppliers' selection in materials management. It also covered the topics of vendor rating techniques and vendors' relationship. In this unit, you will study about inventory management, EOQ, buffer stocks, safety stocks and its optimum level. Inventory is the major source of cost in the supply chain and also the basis for improving customer service and enhancing customer satisfaction.

Example: High inventory at retail outlets may help in making the goods easily available to customers and also result in a growth in sales, but it will also increase costs and bring down profitability. These are two major issues in conflict with each other that need to be resolved, in order to optimize the inventory carried by the organization.

Excess inventory is a cost burden to industry in terms of capital tied up, the cost of obsolescence and the cost of servicing product in the supply chain. However, having the right amount of inventory to meet customer requirements is critical. Inventory management is about two things: not running out, and not having too much.

#### Different Costs of Inventory

The heart of inventory decisions lies in the identification of inventory costs and optimizing the costs relative to the operations of the organization. Therefore, an analysis of inventory is useful to determine the level of stocks. The resultant stock keeping decision specifies:

When items should be ordered.

How large the order should be.

“When” and “how many to deliver.”

Large holdings of inventory also cause long cycle times which may not be desirable as well. What are the costs identified with inventory?

The costs generally associated with inventories are shown in Figure 8.1. The different components of cost are discussed below:

#### Holding (or Carrying)

Costs It costs money to hold inventory. Such costs are called inventory holding costs or carrying costs. This broad category includes the costs for storage facilities, handling, insurance, pilferage, breakage, obsolescence, depreciation, taxes, and the opportunity cost of capital. Obviously, high holding costs tend to favour low inventory levels and frequent replenishment.

There is a differentiation between fixed and variable costs of holding inventory. Some of the costs will not change by increase or decrease in inventory levels, while some costs are dependent on the

## **CHAPTER 9 INVENTORY CONTROL**

**MRS. P. UMA ESWARI**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

Previous unit dealt with the concept of inventory management, the different costs of inventory and economic order quantity. It also discussed the various inventory models and safety stock. In this unit you will study about inventory control, the various elements of an effective inventory control and its advantages. This unit will also discuss the various analysis systems and give you an insight to the logistics management

Inventory control is a set of policies and operating procedures that are designed to maximize a company's use of inventory, so that it generates the maximum profit from the least amount of inventory investment without intruding upon customer satisfaction levels

### Elements of Effective Inventory Control

As a business grows, a software inventory control system becomes necessary for easier retrieval of information, integrated sales and purchase order processing, and real-time inventory valuation. The various elements of an effective inventory control system are:

1. **Management:** Inventory management involves making decisions on the appropriate level of inventory to keep on hand. Too much inventory can increase storage costs and the chances of spoilage. However, not having enough inventory might mean losing customers to competitors. Manufacturing companies often use just-in-time inventory control where items are ordered only as needed. Businesses use inventory classification, reordering and minimum levels to manage inventory. Classification groups items according to annual sales volume with a priority on controlling the inventory levels of high-sales-volume items. Reordering is done by factoring in the demand and the lead time required to get the order filled.
  2. **Security:** Security involves alarm systems for securing warehouses and real-time tracking of inventory items. Radio frequency identification tags, or RFIDs, can be used to track and protect valuable inventory. RFID tags use radio waves to communicate between embedded radio frequency transmitter microchips and reading devices that track tagged items and raise alarms when security has been breached.
  3. **Quality:** Inventory quality control involves tracking batches as well as individual items so that if something goes wrong managers can trace the defect all the way to the source.
- ### Advantages of Inventory Control

The various advantages of inventory control are as follows:

1. **Makes JIT Possible:** JIT is a frequently used inventory ordering system that requires the use of an effective inventory control system and a solid understanding of the demand of the products a company sells. JIT stands for "just in time," meaning that supplies arrive from the supplier just in time to be made into products and products are produced just in time to fulfill orders.

## CHAPTER 10 VALUE ANALYSIS

**DR. R. PREMA**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

Value The value of a product will be interpreted in different ways by different customers. Its common characteristic is a high level of performance, capability, emotional appeal, style, etc. relative to its cost. This can also be expressed as maximizing the function of a product relative to its cost:

$$\text{Value} = (\text{Performance} + \text{Capability})/\text{Cost} = \text{Function}/\text{Cost}$$

Value is not a matter of minimizing cost. In some cases the value of a product can be increased by increasing its function (performance or capability) and cost as long as the added function increases more than its added cost. The concept of functional worth can be important. Functional worth is the lowest cost to provide a given function. However, there are less tangible “selling” functions involved in a product to make it of value to a customer.

Did u know? For the sustained growth of an organization, it is an undisputed fact that the gap between the Price and Cost of production, i.e. the Profit margin should be widened as far as possible without any binding limits. In any system

$$\text{PRICE PR (N)} = \text{COST C(N)} + \text{PROFIT P(N)}$$

Where PR(N), C(N), & P(N) are the price, cost and profit of the Nth manufacturer, such that  $\text{PR (N)} = \text{C(N)} + \text{P(N)} = \text{C(N+1)}$

Where, C (N+1) is the cost to the (N+1)th user or buyer.

If the (N+1)th end user is willing to pay C(N+1), it is in the interest of the manufacturer N to reduce C(N) so that P(N) can be increased for him, provided of course that Performance, Reliability and Quality of the item remains constant, or improved further, if possible. To achieve the above end, there are four approaches available.

- (a) Keeping the Cost of Production C(N) constant, increase the selling price PR(N). This has got its own repercussions on the market demand pattern, and any price enhancement is normally linked up with a fall in demand.
- (b) Keeping the Selling Price PR(N) constant, reduce the cost of production, by using various conventional methods of cost reduction, like Method Study, Material Management, Preventive Maintenance, and many other Productivity Techniques. It has been observed that more often than not, such a cost reduction approach has resulted in a substandard quality product which again had been rejected in competitive market, in favor of a better performing alternative.



# **INDUSTRIAL RELATIONS**

*Edited by*

**DR. R. VISWAKUMAR**



978-93-6255-394-2

INDUSTRIALS RELATIONS

Copyright © 2019 by Dr. R. VISWAKUMAR

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-394-2

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 Introduction to Industrial Relations.....	1
DR. S. R. SUDHA	
CHAPTER 2 Concept and Determinants of IR the Indian Scenario.....	13
DR. S. VENKATESH	
CHAPTER 3 Managing Industrial Relations Changes .....	23
DR. S. VENKATESH	
CHAPTER 4 Indian Culture & Industrial Relations.....	34
DR. R. VISWAKUMAR	
CHAPTER 5 Trade Unions.....	43
MRS. P. UMA ESWARI	
CHAPTER 6 Trade Union Legislations.....	57
DR. T. J. JAYASHOLAN	
CHAPTER 7 Multiplicity of Trade Unions.....	64
Dr. S. VENKATESH	
CHAPTER 8 IR Management and Management of trade Union.....	76
DR. K. G. SELVAN	
CHAPTER 9 Employee Counselling.....	87
DR. S. VENKATESH	
CHAPTER 10 Consultative Bodies.....	98
MR. K. SASIKUMAR	

# CHAPTER 1

## INTRODUCTION TO INDUSTRIAL RELATIONS

**DR. S. R. SUDHA**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and  
Technology(PRIST)**

Industrial relations encompass the complex interplay between employers, employees, and the institutions that mediate their interactions. As a multidisciplinary field, it draws upon economics, sociology, law, and management to understand and address the dynamics within the workplace. The significance of industrial relations has grown in the context of globalization, technological advancements, and shifting labor markets, which have transformed the nature of work and employment relations.

At its core, industrial relations focuses on the formal and informal relationships between management and labor, the structures that govern these relationships, and the systems of negotiation and conflict resolution. The primary aim is to foster a cooperative environment that promotes productivity, equity, and fairness in the workplace. However, challenges such as labor disputes, wage inequality, and the rise of precarious employment complicate these interactions, necessitating effective frameworks for negotiation and regulation.

The evolution of industrial relations has also been influenced by political and economic changes, including the rise of trade unions, the implementation of labor laws, and the emergence of new forms of work organization. Understanding these factors is crucial for addressing contemporary issues in labor relations and ensuring that the interests of both employers and employees are balanced.

This essay will explore the foundational concepts of industrial relations, the roles of various stakeholders, and the impact of external factors on workplace dynamics. By analyzing these elements, we can gain insights into how industrial relations shape the future of work and contribute to broader social and economic outcomes.

The field has evolved significantly due to factors such as globalization, technological advancements, and changing workforce demographics, which have reshaped employment dynamics. Key stakeholders include trade unions, management, and government bodies, each playing a vital role in negotiating terms of employment and addressing disputes.

Understanding industrial relations is essential for promoting cooperation, equity, and stability in the workplace. This overview highlights the importance of effective communication and negotiation in fostering positive labor relations and addressing contemporary challenges in the world of work.



## CHAPTER 2

### Concept and Determinants of IR the Indian Scenario

**DR. S. VENKATESH**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

#### *Concept of Industrial Relations*

Industrial relations (IR) refer to the complex web of relationships between employers, employees, and the institutions that govern these interactions. It encompasses the dynamics of collective bargaining, labor laws, union activities, and the negotiation of workplace conditions. The primary objective of industrial relations is to create a harmonious work environment that promotes productivity and equity while resolving conflicts that may arise between the various stakeholders.

In India, industrial relations are particularly significant due to the diverse nature of the workforce, regional differences, and the varying levels of economic development across states. The interplay of historical, cultural, and political factors further complicates IR, making it essential to understand the specific context in which these relationships operate.

#### *Determinants of Industrial Relations in India*

Several key determinants shape industrial relations in India:

1. **Legal Framework:** India has a robust legal framework governing labor relations, including the Industrial Disputes Act, Trade Union Act, and various labor laws that provide guidelines for fair practices, dispute resolution, and worker rights. The effectiveness of these laws directly influences industrial harmony.
2. **Trade Unions:** The presence and strength of trade unions play a critical role in industrial relations. In India, trade unions have historically been influential in advocating for workers' rights, negotiating wages, and ensuring job security. The fragmentation of unions along political lines can sometimes lead to challenges in achieving cohesive representation.
3. **Economic Factors:** Economic conditions, such as inflation, unemployment rates, and economic growth, significantly impact industrial relations. Economic downturns often lead to heightened tensions between labor and management as workers demand job security and fair compensation.
4. **Management Practices:** The approach adopted by management towards employees, including communication, involvement in decision-making, and conflict resolution strategies, greatly influences industrial relations. Progressive management practices that promote employee engagement can enhance cooperation and reduce conflicts.
5. **Technological Change:** The rapid pace of technological advancement impacts job roles and security. The introduction of automation and artificial intelligence may lead to job displacement, creating tension between workers and employers and necessitating effective management of transitions.
6. **Cultural and Social Factors:** India's diverse cultural landscape plays a crucial role in shaping attitudes toward work and labor relations. Social norms, values, and historical contexts influence how employees perceive their rights and responsibilities, impacting industrial relations dynamics.

**CHAPTER 3**  
Managing Industrial Relations Changes

**DR. S. VENKATESH**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

Managing Industrial Relations Changes

Managing changes in industrial relations is crucial for fostering a productive and harmonious workplace. As economic, technological, and social landscapes evolve, organizations must adapt their industrial relations strategies to address emerging challenges and opportunities. Here are key strategies for effectively managing these changes:

*1. Proactive Communication*

Open and transparent communication between management and employees is essential. Regular updates about organizational changes, policies, and the reasons behind decisions can help mitigate uncertainty and build trust. Utilizing various communication channels—such as meetings, newsletters, and digital platforms—ensures that all employees are informed and feel valued.

*2. Engagement and Participation*

Encouraging employee involvement in decision-making processes can lead to a more collaborative environment. Establishing committees or forums that include representatives from both management and labor can facilitate dialogue, address concerns, and foster a sense of ownership among employees regarding changes.

*3. Training and Development*

Investing in training programs that equip employees with new skills can ease the transition during times of change, especially with technological advancements. Continuous professional development helps employees adapt to new roles and responsibilities, reducing resistance and anxiety about change.

*4. Conflict Resolution Mechanisms*

Implementing effective conflict resolution processes is vital in managing disputes that arise from changes. Establishing clear procedures for addressing grievances can help resolve issues amicably and prevent escalation. Mediators or neutral third parties can be involved when necessary to facilitate discussions.

*5. Flexible Policies*

Creating flexible policies that accommodate diverse employee needs can enhance adaptability during change. For instance, flexible work arrangements and tailored benefits can help employees adjust to new work environments while maintaining morale and productivity.

## CHAPTER 4 Indian Culture & Industrial Relations

**DR. R. VISWAKUMAR**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

### Indian Culture and Industrial Relations

The interplay between Indian culture and industrial relations (IR) is complex and deeply rooted in the country's historical, social, and economic contexts. Understanding this relationship is crucial for effectively managing labor relations and fostering a harmonious workplace. Here are some key aspects to consider:

#### *1. Diversity and Pluralism*

India is characterized by its vast cultural, linguistic, and religious diversity. This pluralism influences workplace dynamics, as employees come from varied backgrounds with different values, beliefs, and practices. Organizations must recognize and respect this diversity to create an inclusive environment that fosters cooperation and mutual respect.

#### *2. Traditional Values*

Indian culture is steeped in traditions that emphasize hierarchy, respect for authority, and collectivism. These values impact industrial relations by shaping employee expectations regarding leadership and management practices. Employees may prefer a paternalistic approach where management provides guidance and support, which can influence their engagement in collective bargaining processes.

#### *3. Family and Community Orientation*

The importance of family and community in Indian culture can influence work-life balance and employee loyalty. Employees often prioritize familial responsibilities, which can affect their work commitments. Understanding this orientation can help organizations develop policies that accommodate employee needs, fostering goodwill and enhancing industrial relations.

#### *4. Role of Trade Unions*

Trade unions in India are deeply intertwined with political affiliations and social movements. Their influence can vary widely, depending on regional factors and historical contexts. While unions play a critical role in advocating for workers' rights, their effectiveness can be hampered by fragmentation along political lines. Building strong relationships with unions, while navigating their complexities, is essential for effective industrial relations.

#### *5. Negotiation Styles*

Cultural norms in India often emphasize indirect communication and consensus-building. This can affect negotiation styles in industrial relations, where parties may prefer to avoid confrontation and

## CHAPTER 5 TRADE UNIONS

MRS. P. UMA ESWARI  
*Department of Management,*  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)

### Trade Unions: An Overview

Trade unions are organized associations of workers that aim to protect and advance their rights and interests in the workplace. They play a crucial role in industrial relations by representing employees in negotiations with employers, advocating for better working conditions, and ensuring fair treatment.

#### *1. Purpose and Functions of Trade Unions*

Trade unions serve several essential functions, including:

- **Collective Bargaining:** Unions negotiate contracts with employers on behalf of their members. These negotiations cover wages, working hours, benefits, and working conditions.
- **Advocacy:** Unions advocate for labor-friendly policies at the local, national, and international levels, pushing for legislation that protects workers' rights.
- **Grievance Redressal:** Unions help address grievances between workers and management, providing a structured process for resolving disputes.
- **Support and Services:** Many unions offer additional services to members, such as legal assistance, training programs, and financial benefits, enhancing the overall welfare of their members.

#### *2. Types of Trade Unions*

Trade unions can be categorized based on various criteria:

- **Central Trade Unions:** These are national organizations that represent various state and industry-level unions. Examples include the Indian National Trade Union Congress (INTUC) and the Center of Indian Trade Unions (CITU).
- **Industrial Unions:** These unions represent workers in a specific industry, such as textiles or construction.
- **Craft Unions:** These unions focus on a particular trade or skill, representing workers who share similar occupational backgrounds.
- **Company Unions:** These are smaller unions formed within a specific company to address localized issues.

#### *3. Structure of Trade Unions*

The structure of trade unions typically includes:

- **Executive Committee:** Elected leaders responsible for the day-to-day operations and decision-making.

## CHAPTER 6 TRADE UNION LEGISLATIONS

**DR. T. J. JAYASHOLAN**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

Trade Union Legislations in India

Trade union legislations in India form the legal framework that governs the formation, operation, and activities of trade unions. These laws are crucial for protecting workers' rights, promoting fair practices, and ensuring that unions can effectively represent their members. Here are the key legislations related to trade unions in India:

### *1. Trade Unions Act, 1926*

This foundational legislation governs the registration and functioning of trade unions in India. Key provisions include:

- **Registration:** Trade unions must be registered under this Act to gain legal recognition. Registration provides unions with certain rights and protections.
- **Rights and Liabilities:** The Act outlines the rights and liabilities of registered trade unions, including the ability to enter into contracts, sue, and be sued.
- **Internal Governance:** It mandates that unions establish a constitution that outlines their governance, rules, and procedures.

### *2. Industrial Disputes Act, 1947*

This Act addresses industrial disputes and lays down the framework for the resolution of conflicts between employers and employees. Key features include:

- **Recognition of Unions:** The Act recognizes trade unions as representatives of workers in disputes and negotiations.
- **Collective Bargaining:** It promotes collective bargaining and requires employers to negotiate with recognized unions.
- **Dispute Resolution Mechanisms:** The Act establishes mechanisms for the adjudication of industrial disputes through labor courts, tribunals, and conciliation processes.

### *3. Trade Union (Amendment) Act, 2001*

This amendment aimed to streamline the registration process and enhance the effectiveness of trade unions. Key changes include:

- **Simplified Registration Process:** The amendment made the process for registering trade unions more straightforward.
- **Increased Accountability:** It introduced provisions for maintaining financial transparency and accountability among unions.

## CHAPTER 7 TRADE UNION LEGISLATIONS

Dr. S. VENKATESH  
*Department of Management,*  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)

### *Introduction*

The phenomenon of multiple trade unions within a single industry or sector is a significant aspect of the labor landscape in India. This chapter explores the reasons for the multiplicity of trade unions, its implications for industrial relations, and the challenges it presents for workers, employers, and policymakers.

#### *1. Causes of Multiplicity of Trade Unions*

Several factors contribute to the emergence of multiple trade unions:

- **Political Affiliations:** Many trade unions are aligned with political parties, leading to the formation of different unions based on ideological affiliations. This fragmentation often reflects the broader political landscape in India.
- **Diverse Worker Interests:** Different segments of the workforce may have unique needs and interests. Unions often form to address specific grievances, resulting in multiple organizations competing for membership.
- **Historical Context:** The historical development of labor movements in India has led to the establishment of various unions over time, often without consolidation. Many unions have retained their identities even after significant changes in the labor market.
- **Regulatory Environment:** The legal framework governing trade unions does not impose strict limits on the number of unions that can operate within a single industry, allowing for proliferation.

#### *2. Implications of Multiplicity*

The presence of multiple trade unions can have both positive and negative implications:

- **Positive Aspects:**
  - **Representation of Diverse Interests:** Multiple unions can ensure that a wider range of worker interests are represented, allowing for more tailored advocacy.
  - **Increased Competition:** The existence of several unions can foster competition among them to better serve their members, leading to improved services and negotiations.
- **Negative Aspects:**
  - **Fragmentation of Bargaining Power:** The division of workers among various unions can weaken collective bargaining power, making it difficult to negotiate effectively with employers.

## CHAPTER 8 IR MANAGEMENT AND MANAGEMENT OF TRADE UNION

DR. K. G. SELVAN

*Department of Management,*

Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)

Industrial Relations Management and Management of Trade Unions

Effective management of industrial relations (IR) and trade unions is essential for fostering a harmonious workplace, enhancing productivity, and ensuring fair treatment of employees. This section explores the principles and practices involved in managing IR and trade unions, highlighting the strategies that can be employed for successful engagement.

### *1. Understanding Industrial Relations Management*

Industrial relations management involves the strategies and practices organizations adopt to maintain positive relationships with their employees and trade unions. Key components include:

- **Communication:** Open and transparent communication is vital for building trust. Regular updates on organizational changes, policies, and decisions help keep employees informed and engaged.
- **Negotiation:** Effective negotiation skills are critical for resolving conflicts and reaching agreements with trade unions. This requires understanding the interests of both parties and finding common ground.
- **Conflict Resolution:** Establishing mechanisms for addressing grievances and disputes promptly can prevent escalation and foster a cooperative environment.
- **Compliance with Laws:** Adhering to labor laws and regulations ensures that the organization operates within legal frameworks, protecting the rights of employees and minimizing the risk of disputes.

### *2. Managing Trade Unions*

Managing relationships with trade unions involves several key strategies:

- **Recognition and Respect:** Acknowledging the role of trade unions as representatives of the workforce is essential. Management should engage with unions in a respectful manner, recognizing their contribution to employee welfare.
- **Building Collaborative Relationships:** Fostering a cooperative relationship with trade unions can lead to more effective negotiations and a better understanding of workers' needs. Joint problem-solving initiatives can help address issues before they escalate.
- **Regular Consultations:** Regular meetings with union representatives can facilitate open dialogue and help identify potential issues early on. These consultations can be structured through formalized processes or informal discussions.

## CHAPTER 9 EMPLOYEE COUNSELLING

**DR. S. VENKATESH**  
*Department of Management,*  
**Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)**

### Employee Counseling

Employee counseling is a critical component of human resource management that focuses on providing support to employees facing personal or professional challenges. This process aims to improve employee well-being, enhance job performance, and foster a positive work environment. Here's an overview of the key aspects of employee counseling:

#### *1. Purpose of Employee Counseling*

- **Support:** Counseling offers employees a safe space to discuss personal or work-related issues that may impact their performance or mental health.
- **Problem Resolution:** It helps employees identify problems, explore solutions, and develop coping strategies.
- **Performance Improvement:** By addressing underlying issues, counseling can enhance employee performance and productivity.
- **Retention:** Providing support can increase job satisfaction and reduce turnover rates.

#### *2. Types of Employee Counseling*

- **Personal Counseling:** Focuses on personal issues such as stress, family problems, mental health concerns, and work-life balance.
- **Career Counseling:** Assists employees in planning their career paths, setting goals, and developing skills for career advancement.
- **Performance Counseling:** Addresses performance-related issues, providing feedback and strategies for improvement.
- **Crisis Counseling:** Offers immediate support in the event of a crisis, such as workplace accidents or personal emergencies.

#### *3. Counseling Process*

The counseling process typically involves several key steps:

- **Assessment:** Understanding the employee's concerns and needs through discussions, interviews, or assessments.
- **Goal Setting:** Collaboratively setting achievable goals to address the identified issues.
- **Intervention:** Implementing strategies and techniques to help the employee cope with challenges. This may involve skill development, stress management, or other interventions.
- **Follow-Up:** Regular check-ins to monitor progress, reassess goals, and make adjustments as needed.



## CHAPTER 10 CONSULTATIVE BODIES

MR. K. SASIKUMAR  
*Department of Management,*  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of science and Technology(PRIST)

### Consultative Bodies in Industrial Relations

Consultative bodies play a crucial role in industrial relations by providing a platform for dialogue between employers, employees, and government representatives. These bodies facilitate communication, promote cooperation, and help address workplace issues. Here's an overview of the key aspects of consultative bodies in industrial relations:

#### 1. Purpose of Consultative Bodies

- **Facilitate Dialogue:** They serve as a forum for discussions on various labor-related issues, allowing stakeholders to express their views and concerns.
- **Policy Development:** Consultative bodies contribute to the formulation of policies related to labor laws, workplace practices, and employee welfare.
- **Conflict Resolution:** They provide mechanisms for resolving disputes and grievances, thereby reducing tensions between management and employees.
- **Advisory Role:** These bodies offer recommendations to the government and organizations on labor issues and practices.

#### 2. Types of Consultative Bodies

Consultative bodies can take various forms, including:

- **Works Councils:** Employee representatives meet with management to discuss workplace issues, conditions, and policies. Common in Europe, they promote cooperative labor relations.
- **Joint Committees:** Composed of representatives from both management and labor, these committees address specific issues like safety, training, or productivity.
- **Labor Advisory Boards:** Often established by the government, these boards include representatives from labor, management, and sometimes the public, advising on labor laws and policies.
- **Tripartite Bodies:** Composed of representatives from government, employers, and employees, these bodies work on national labor policy issues. Examples include the International Labour Organization (ILO) and various national labor boards.

#### 3. Key Functions of Consultative Bodies

- **Negotiation and Consultation:** Engage in negotiations over wages, working conditions, and other employment terms.
- **Information Sharing:** Provide a platform for sharing information about labor market trends, economic conditions, and workplace issues.
- **Feedback Mechanisms:** Serve as channels for feedback from employees to management and vice versa, facilitating improvements in workplace practices.
- **Training and Education:** Promote training programs for both management and employees on labor relations, conflict resolution, and best practices.

# ALGORITHMS

EDITED BY

**R.BANUMATHI**



978-93-6255-206-8

ALGORITHMS

Copyright © 2019 by R.BANUMATHI

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-206-8

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	<b>03</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1</b> - Introduction to Algorithms	-	<b>15</b>
Ms.K.Jayanthi		
<b>CHAPTER 2</b> – Big-O Notation	-	<b>40</b>
Ms.K.Jayanthi		
<b>CHAPTER 3</b> –Sorting and Searching	-	<b>73</b>
Ms.K.Jayanthi		
<b>CHAPTER 4</b> – Graph Algorithms	-	<b>120</b>
Dr.R.Latha		
<b>CHAPTER 5</b> – State Space Search Algorithms	-	<b>140</b>
Dr.S.Nithyanandam		
<b>CHAPTER 6</b> –Algorithm Design Techniques	-	<b>157</b>
Ms.S.Jancy Sickory Daisy		
<b>CHAPTER 7</b> – Dynamic Programming	-	<b>175</b>
Ms.M.Jeeva		
<b>CHAPTER 8</b> – Greedy Algorithms	-	<b>185</b>
Ms.M,Mohana Priya		
<b>CHAPTER 9</b> – Backtracking Algorithms	-	<b>210</b>
Ms.V.Gayathiri		
<b>CHAPTER 10</b> – NP-Completeness and Approximation Algorithms	-	<b>240</b>
Ms.K.Jayanthi		
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>254</b>

**CHAPTER 1**  
**Introduction to Algorithms**  
Ms.K.Jayanthi

**Algorithms** are fundamental to computer science and are used to solve a wide range of problems. An algorithm is a step-by-step procedure or formula for solving a problem or performing a task. It consists of a sequence of instructions that are followed to achieve a desired outcome.

**Key Concepts**

**1. Definition of an Algorithm**

- **Description:** An algorithm is a finite set of well-defined instructions to solve a problem or perform a computation.
- **Characteristics:**
  - **Finiteness:** Must terminate after a finite number of steps.
  - **Definiteness:** Each step must be clearly defined and unambiguous.
  - **Input:** Should have zero or more inputs.
  - **Output:** Should produce at least one output.
  - **Effectiveness:** Each step must be basic enough to be performed exactly and in a finite amount of time.

**2. Types of Algorithms**

- **Sorting Algorithms:** Organize data in a specific order.
  - **Examples:** Quick Sort, Merge Sort, Bubble Sort, Heap Sort.
- **Search Algorithms:** Find specific data within a structure.
  - **Examples:** Binary Search, Linear Search.
- **Graph Algorithms:** Solve problems related to graph structures.
  - **Examples:** Dijkstra's Algorithm, A\* Search Algorithm, Kruskal's Algorithm.
- **Dynamic Programming Algorithms:** Solve problems by breaking them down into simpler subproblems.
  - **Examples:** Fibonacci Sequence, Knapsack Problem, Longest Common Subsequence.
- **Greedy Algorithms:** Make the locally optimal choice at each step with the hope of finding a global optimum.
  - **Examples:** Huffman Coding, Prim's Algorithm, Kruskal's Algorithm.

**3. Algorithm Complexity**

- **Time Complexity:** Measures the time an algorithm takes to complete as a function of the input size.
  - **Common Classes:**  $O(1)$  - Constant time,  $O(\log n)$  - Logarithmic time,  $O(n)$  - Linear time,  $O(n^2)$  - Quadratic time, etc.
- **Space Complexity:** Measures the amount of memory an algorithm uses as a function of the input size.
  - **Common Classes:**  $O(1)$  - Constant space,  $O(n)$  - Linear space, etc.

**4. Algorithm Design Techniques**

- **Divide and Conquer:** Breaks the problem into smaller subproblems, solves each subproblem independently, and combines their solutions.
  - **Examples:** Merge Sort, Quick Sort.

## CHAPTER 2

### Big-O Notation

Ms.K.Jayanthi

Big-O notation is a mathematical concept used to describe the efficiency of algorithms in terms of time complexity and space complexity. It provides a high-level understanding of how the runtime or space requirements of an algorithm grow with the size of the input. Big-O notation abstracts away constants and lower-order terms to focus on the dominant term that dictates the growth rate of the algorithm's resource usage.

#### Key Concepts of Big-O Notation

##### 1. Definition

- **Description:** Big-O notation expresses the upper bound of an algorithm's complexity in the worst-case scenario. It provides a way to describe how the runtime or space requirements of an algorithm increase as the size of the input increases.
- **Mathematical Representation:** For an algorithm with time complexity  $T(n)$ , Big-O notation is represented as  $O(f(n))$ , where  $f(n)$  is a function that describes the growth rate of  $T(n)$ .

##### 2. Common Big-O Notations

- **$O(1)$  - Constant Time**
  - **Description:** The algorithm's runtime or space requirement does not change with the size of the input.
  - **Example:** Accessing an element in an array by index.
- **$O(\log n)$  - Logarithmic Time**
  - **Description:** The runtime or space requirement grows logarithmically with the size of the input.
  - **Example:** Binary search in a sorted array.
- **$O(n)$  - Linear Time**
  - **Description:** The runtime or space requirement grows linearly with the size of the input.
  - **Example:** Iterating through a list of  $n$  elements.
- **$O(n \log n)$  - Linearithmic Time**
  - **Description:** The runtime or space requirement grows in proportion to  $n$  times the logarithm of  $n$ .
  - **Example:** Merge sort and quick sort algorithms.
- **$O(n^2)$  - Quadratic Time**
  - **Description:** The runtime or space requirement grows proportionally to the square of the size of the input.
  - **Example:** Bubble sort and insertion sort algorithms.
- **$O(2^n)$  - Exponential Time**
  - **Description:** The runtime or space requirement grows exponentially with the size of the input.
  - **Example:** Solving the traveling salesman problem with a brute-force approach.

# CHAPTER 3

## Sorting and Searching

Ms.K.Jayanthi

Sorting and searching are fundamental operations in computer science that are used to organize and retrieve data efficiently. Understanding these concepts is crucial for effective data management and problem-solving.

### Sorting Algorithms

Sorting algorithms arrange elements in a list or array in a specific order, typically in ascending or descending order. Efficient sorting is essential for optimizing search operations and improving overall performance in data processing.

### Common Sorting Algorithms

#### 1. Bubble Sort

- **Description:** Repeatedly steps through the list, compares adjacent elements, and swaps them if they are in the wrong order.
- **Complexity:**  $O(n^2)$  in the worst and average cases.
- **Characteristics:** Simple to implement but inefficient for large datasets.

#### 2. Selection Sort

- **Description:** Repeatedly selects the smallest (or largest) element from the unsorted portion and moves it to the end of the sorted portion.
- **Complexity:**  $O(n^2)$  in the worst and average cases.
- **Characteristics:** Simple but not suitable for large datasets due to its quadratic time complexity.

#### 3. Insertion Sort

- **Description:** Builds the final sorted array one item at a time by inserting each new item into its correct position within the already sorted portion.
- **Complexity:**  $O(n^2)$  in the worst case,  $O(n)$  in the best case (when the array is already sorted).
- **Characteristics:** Efficient for small or nearly sorted datasets.

#### 4. Merge Sort

- **Description:** Divides the array into halves, recursively sorts each half, and then merges the sorted halves.
- **Complexity:**  $O(n \log n)$  in the worst, average, and best cases.
- **Characteristics:** Efficient and stable, but requires additional space for merging.

#### 5. Quick Sort

- **Description:** Divides the array into subarrays based on a pivot element and recursively sorts the subarrays.
- **Complexity:**  $O(n^2)$  in the worst case,  $O(n \log n)$  on average.
- **Characteristics:** Generally fast in practice and

# CHAPTER 4

## Graph Algorithms

Dr.R.Latha

Graph algorithms are essential for solving problems related to graph structures, which consist of vertices (nodes) and edges (connections between nodes). Graphs are used to model a wide variety of problems in computer science, including network analysis, route finding, scheduling, and more.

### Key Graph Concepts

#### 1. Graph Representation

- **Adjacency Matrix:** A 2D array where the cell  $(i, j)$  indicates the presence or weight of an edge between vertices  $i$  and  $j$ .
- **Adjacency List:** An array of lists where each list represents the vertices adjacent to a given vertex. Suitable for sparse graphs.
- **Edge List:** A list of all edges in the graph, where each edge is represented as a pair of vertices (or triplet if weighted).

#### 2. Types of Graphs

- **Undirected Graph:** Edges have no direction; connections between vertices are bidirectional.
- **Directed Graph (Digraph):** Edges have a direction; connections between vertices are one-way.
- **Weighted Graph:** Edges have weights representing the cost or distance associated with the connection.
- **Unweighted Graph:** Edges have no weights; all connections are considered equal.
- **Cyclic Graph:** Contains at least one cycle (a path that starts and ends at the same vertex).
- **Acyclic Graph:** Contains no cycles.
- **Connected Graph:** There is a path between every pair of vertices.
- **Disconnected Graph:** Contains at least one pair of vertices with no path between them.

### Common Graph Algorithms

#### 1. Depth-First Search (DFS)

- **Description:** Explores as far as possible along each branch before backtracking.
- **Complexity:**  $O(V + E)$ , where  $V$  is the number of vertices and  $E$  is the number of edges.
- **Applications:** Pathfinding, cycle detection, topological sorting.

python

Copy code

```
def dfs(graph, start, visited=None):
    if visited is None:
        visited = set()
    visited.add(start)
    for neighbor in graph[start] - visited:
        dfs(graph, neighbor, visited)
```



## CHAPTER 5

# State Space Search Algorithms

Dr.S.Nithyanandam

State space search algorithms are used to explore possible states and transitions within a problem domain to find solutions. These algorithms are particularly useful in fields such as artificial intelligence, robotics, and operations research. They are designed to navigate through a state space, which consists of all possible states and the transitions between them, to find a goal state or optimal solution.

### Key Concepts

#### 1. State Space

- **Definition:** A set of all possible states that can be reached from the initial state by applying various actions or transitions.
- **Components:** States, actions, transition model (how actions change states), and goal test (criteria for achieving the goal).

#### 2. State Space Search Problem

- **Initial State:** The starting point of the search.
- **Actions:** Operations that transition from one state to another.
- **Transition Model:** Describes how actions affect the state.
- **Goal State:** The target state or condition that defines the problem's solution.
- **Path Cost:** The cost associated with a path from the initial state to a goal state.

### Common State Space Search Algorithms

#### 1. Breadth-First Search (BFS)

- **Description:** Explores all states at the present depth level before moving on to states at the next depth level.
- **Complexity:**  $O(b^d)$ , where  $b$  is the branching factor and  $d$  is the depth of the shallowest goal.
- **Characteristics:** Guarantees the shortest path in an unweighted graph, uses a queue for storing states.

#### Depth-First Search (DFS)

- **Description:** Explores as far as possible along each branch before backtracking.
- **Complexity:**  $O(b^m)$ , where  $b$  is the branching factor and  $m$  is the maximum depth of the search space.
- **Characteristics:** Uses a stack (or recursion) for storing states, may not find the shortest path.

#### Uniform Cost Search (Dijkstra's Algorithm)

- **Description:** Expands the least-cost node first. Suitable for graphs with weighted edges.

# CHAPTER 6

## Algorithm Design Techniques

Ms.S.Jancy Sickory Daisy

Algorithm design techniques are strategies used to create efficient and effective algorithms for solving various computational problems. Understanding these techniques is crucial for developing algorithms that are both optimal and practical. Here's an overview of some of the most common algorithm design techniques:

### 1. Divide and Conquer

**Concept:** Break down a problem into smaller, more manageable subproblems, solve each subproblem independently, and then combine their solutions to solve the original problem.

**Steps:**

- **Divide:** Split the problem into subproblems.
- **Conquer:** Solve each subproblem recursively.
- **Combine:** Merge the solutions of subproblems to obtain the solution to the original problem.

**Example:**

- **Merge Sort:** Divides the array into halves, recursively sorts each half, and merges the sorted halves.
- **Quick Sort:** Divides the array based on a pivot, recursively sorts the partitions.

**Complexity:** Often  $O(n \log n)$  for sorting algorithms.

### 2. Dynamic Programming

**Concept:** Solve problems by breaking them down into overlapping subproblems and storing the results of these subproblems to avoid redundant work. This technique is useful for optimization problems.

**Steps:**

- **Define the Subproblems:** Identify overlapping subproblems.
- **Solve Subproblems:** Compute the solution for each subproblem once.
- **Combine Results:** Use the results of subproblems to construct the solution to the original problem.

**Example:**

- **Fibonacci Sequence:** Store results of previous computations to avoid redundant calculations.
- **Knapsack Problem:** Use a table to store optimal solutions for different capacities.

## CHAPTER 7

### Dynamic Programming

Ms.M.Jeeva

Dynamic Programming (DP) is a powerful algorithm design technique used to solve optimization problems by breaking them down into simpler overlapping subproblems and solving each subproblem just once. The main idea is to store the results of subproblems in a table (usually a 2D array) to avoid redundant computations, thereby improving efficiency.

#### 1. Optimal Substructure

- A problem exhibits optimal substructure if an optimal solution to the problem can be constructed from optimal solutions to its subproblems.
- Example: In the Fibonacci sequence,  $F(n) = F(n-1) + F(n-2)$ ; solving for  $F(n)$  requires solutions for  $F(n-1)$  and  $F(n-2)$ .

#### 2. Overlapping Subproblems

- A problem exhibits overlapping subproblems if the problem can be broken down into subproblems that are reused multiple times.
- Example: In the Knapsack problem, the same subproblem of finding the maximum value for a given capacity may be solved multiple times.

#### 3. Memoization (Top-Down Approach)

- This involves solving the problem recursively and storing the results of subproblems to avoid redundant computations.
- Memoization uses a hash table or array to store intermediate results.

#### 4. Tabulation (Bottom-Up Approach)

- This involves solving the problem iteratively and filling up a table based on the solutions to smaller subproblems.
- Tabulation builds the solution from the ground up.

### Common Dynamic Programming Problems

#### 1. Fibonacci Sequence

**Problem:** Find the n-th Fibonacci number.

**DP Approach:**

- **Memoization:**

```
python
Copy code
def fibonacci(n, memo={ }):
    if n in memo:
        return memo[n]
    if n <= 1:
        return n
```

# CHAPTER 8

## Greedy Algorithms

Ms.M,Mohana Priya

Greedy algorithms are a class of algorithms that make a series of choices by selecting the locally optimal option at each step with the hope that these choices will lead to a globally optimal solution. The key characteristic of greedy algorithms is that they build up a solution piece by piece, always choosing the next piece that offers the most immediate benefit.

### Key Characteristics

#### 1. Greedy Choice Property:

- A problem exhibits the greedy choice property if a global optimum can be arrived at by selecting a local optimum. This means that making the locally optimal choice at each step leads to the globally optimal solution.

#### 2. Optimal Substructure:

- A problem has an optimal substructure if an optimal solution to the problem contains optimal solutions to its subproblems. This is also a requirement for greedy algorithms to work effectively.

### Common Greedy Algorithms and Problems

#### Fractional Knapsack Problem

**Problem:** Given a set of items, each with a weight and value, and a knapsack with a maximum weight capacity, determine the maximum value that can be obtained by taking fractions of items.

#### Greedy Approach:

- Compute the value-to-weight ratio for each item.
- Sort items by their value-to-weight ratio in descending order.
- Add items to the knapsack, starting with the item with the highest ratio, until the knapsack is full or the items are exhausted.

#### Example Code:

```
python
Copy code
def fractional_knapsack(weights, values, capacity):
    n = len(weights)
    ratio = [(values[i] / weights[i], weights[i], values[i]) for i in range(n)]
    ratio.sort(reverse=True, key=lambda x: x[0])

    total_value = 0
    for r in ratio:
        if capacity == 0:
```

# CHAPTER 9

## Backtracking Algorithms

Ms.V.Gayathiri

Backtracking is a general algorithmic technique used to solve problems by exploring all possible solutions and abandoning those that fail to satisfy the constraints of the problem. It is particularly useful for solving problems where the solution involves making a series of choices, and you need to find one or more solutions that meet certain criteria.

### Key Concepts

1. **Recursive Exploration:**
  - Backtracking algorithms explore potential solutions incrementally and recursively. They build a solution piece by piece and discard solutions that do not meet the required conditions.
2. **Pruning:**
  - The process of pruning involves abandoning partial solutions that cannot lead to a valid solution. This helps reduce the number of possibilities that need to be explored.
3. **Feasibility Check:**
  - Before making a choice, the algorithm checks if it is feasible to continue with that choice. If it is not feasible, the algorithm backtracks to try a different choice.

### Common Backtracking Problems

#### N-Queens Problem

**Problem:** Place N queens on an N x N chessboard so that no two queens threaten each other.

#### Backtracking Approach:

- Place a queen in a row, then recursively attempt to place queens in subsequent rows.
- Use constraints to check if placing a queen in a column, row, or diagonal is valid.
- If placing a queen leads to a valid configuration, continue; otherwise, backtrack and try a different column.

#### Example Code:

```
python
Copy code
def is_safe(board, row, col, n):
    for i in range(col):
        if board[row][i] == 1:
            return False
    for i, j in zip(range(row, -1, -1), range(col, -1, -1)):
        if board[i][j] == 1:
            return False
```

# CHAPTER 10

## NP-Completeness and Approximation Algorithms

Ms.K.Jayanthi

**NP-Completeness** is a class of problems in computational theory that are significant for their computational difficulty. The term "NP" stands for "nondeterministic polynomial time," and "completeness" indicates the highest level of difficulty within NP problems.

### Key Concepts:

#### 1. NP Problems:

- NP problems are those for which a given solution can be verified in polynomial time. This means that, given a candidate solution, you can check whether it is correct quickly (in polynomial time).

#### 2. NP-Complete Problems:

- An NP-complete problem is a problem in NP that is as hard as any problem in NP. More formally, a problem PPP is NP-complete if:
  1. PPP is in NP.
  2. Every problem in NP can be reduced to PPP in polynomial time.

#### 3. NP-Hard Problems:

- NP-hard problems are at least as hard as NP-complete problems, but they do not have to be in NP. They may not have a solution verifiable in polynomial time.

#### 4. Cook-Levin Theorem:

- This theorem states that the Boolean satisfiability problem (SAT) was the first problem proven to be NP-complete, showing that it is at least as hard as any other problem in NP.

#### 5. Reductions:

- To prove that a problem is NP-complete, you typically reduce a known NP-complete problem to it. This demonstrates that if you could solve the new problem efficiently, you could solve all NP-complete problems efficiently.

### Examples of NP-Complete Problems:

- **Traveling Salesman Problem (TSP):** Find the shortest possible route that visits each city once and returns to the origin city.
- **Knapsack Problem:** Given a set of items, each with a weight and a value, determine the most valuable subset of items that fits within a weight constraint.
- **Graph Coloring:** Assign colors to vertices of a graph such that no two adjacent vertices share the same color, using a given number of colors.

### Approximation Algorithms

**Approximation Algorithms** are used to find near-optimal solutions to optimization problems, especially when exact solutions are computationally infeasible. These algorithms provide solutions that are close to the optimal solution within a specified bound.



# **DATABASE MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS**

**EDITED BY**

**S.JANCY SICKORY DAISY**



**978-93-6255-074-3**



DATABASE MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS

Copyright © 2019 by S.JANCY SICKORY DAISY

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-074-3

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	<b>03</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1 – Relational Database</b>	-	<b>15</b>
Dr.S.Nithyanandam		
<b>CHAPTER 2 – SQL(Structured Query Language)</b>	-	<b>40</b>
Ms.K.Jayanthi		
<b>CHAPTER 3 –Database Design</b>	-	<b>73</b>
Dr.R.Latha		
<b>CHAPTER 4 – Database Schema Design</b>	-	<b>130</b>
Dr.R.Latha		
<b>CHAPTER 5 – Transcations</b>	-	<b>147</b>
Ms.R.Bhanumathi		
<b>CHAPTER 6 –Implementation techniques</b>	-	<b>159</b>
Mr.A.Jahir Hussain		
<b>CHAPTER 7 – Database Recovery and Backup</b>	-	<b>179</b>
Ms.M.Jeeva		
<b>CHAPTER 8 – Distributed and Parallel Database Systems</b>	-	<b>210</b>
Ms.K.Sangeetha		
<b>CHAPTER 9 – Advaned Topics</b>	-	<b>232</b>
Ms.K.Sangeetha		
<b>CHAPTER 10 – Object-Oriented and Relational Database</b>	-	<b>256</b>
Ms.K.Jayanthi		
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>276</b>

# CHAPTER 1

## Relational Database

Dr.S.Nithyanandam

**Relational Databases** are a type of database management system (DBMS) that stores data in a structured format, using rows and columns. They are based on the relational model, which organizes data into tables (relations) and uses SQL (Structured Query Language) for managing and querying data.

### Key Concepts in Relational Databases

#### 1. Tables:

- **Definition:** Tables are the fundamental structure in a relational database. Each table consists of rows and columns.
- **Rows:** Also known as records or tuples, each row represents a single data entry.
- **Columns:** Also known as fields or attributes, each column represents a specific type of data that the table holds (e.g., name, age, address).

#### 2. Schema:

- **Definition:** The schema defines the structure of the database, including tables, columns, data types, and relationships between tables.
- **Example:** A schema might define a table named Employees with columns for EmployeeID, Name, Position, and Salary.

#### 3. Primary Key:

- **Definition:** A primary key is a unique identifier for each row in a table. It ensures that each record is distinct.
- **Example:** In an Employees table, EmployeeID might be the primary key.

#### 4. Foreign Key:

- **Definition:** A foreign key is a column or set of columns in one table that references the primary key of another table. It establishes a relationship between the two tables.
- **Example:** An Orders table might have a foreign key EmployeeID that references the

#### 5. SQL (Structured Query Language):

- **Definition:** SQL is the standard language for managing and querying relational databases. It allows users to perform various operations, including data retrieval, insertion, updating, and deletion.

- **Common SQL Commands:**

- **SELECT:** Retrieves data from one or more tables.

```
sql
```

```
Copy code
```

```
SELECT * FROM Employees WHERE Position = 'Manager';
```

- **INSERT:** Adds new rows to a table.

```
sql
```

```
Copy code
```

```
INSERT INTO Employees (EmployeeID, Name, Position, Salary) VALUES (1, 'Alice', 'Manager', 60000);
```

**CHAPTER 2**  
**SQL(Structured Query Language)**  
Ms.K.Jayanthi

**SQL (Structured Query Language)** is a standard language used to manage and manipulate relational databases. It allows users to interact with the database to perform tasks such as querying, inserting, updating, and deleting data. SQL is fundamental for working with relational databases, and it is widely used across various database management systems (DBMS) like MySQL, PostgreSQL, SQLite, and Oracle.

**Key SQL Concepts**

**1. Data Definition Language (DDL):**

- **Purpose:** Defines the structure of the database, including the creation and modification of tables and schemas.
- **Commands:**
  - **CREATE TABLE:** Creates a new table.

```
sql
Copy code
CREATE TABLE Employees (
    EmployeeID INT PRIMARY KEY,
    Name VARCHAR(100),
    Position VARCHAR(50),
    Salary DECIMAL(10, 2)
);
```

- **ALTER TABLE:** Modifies an existing table, such as adding or dropping columns.

```
sql
Copy code
ALTER TABLE Employees ADD Department VARCHAR(50);
```

- **DROP TABLE:** Deletes a table and its data.

```
sql
Copy code
DROP TABLE Employees;
```

**2. Data Manipulation Language (DML):**

- **Purpose:** Manages data within tables, including inserting, updating, and deleting records.
- **Commands:**
  - **SELECT:** Retrieves data from one or more tables.

# CHAPTER 3

## Database Design

Dr.R.Latha

Database Design is the process of creating a detailed blueprint for how data is stored, organized, and managed in a database. Good database design is crucial for ensuring data integrity, optimizing performance, and facilitating efficient data retrieval and management. The design process involves defining the data structures, relationships, and constraints that will govern how data is stored and accessed.

### Requirements Analysis:

- **Purpose:** Understand and gather the requirements of the database system, including the types of data to be stored, how the data will be used, and any constraints or rules that must be applied.
- **Techniques:** Interviews with stakeholders, reviewing existing documentation, and analyzing business processes.

### Conceptual Design:

- **Purpose:** Create a high-level model of the database that outlines the entities, attributes, and relationships without getting into technical details.
- **Tools:** Entity-Relationship Diagram (ERD).
- **Entities:** Objects or concepts that store data (e.g., Customer, Order).
- **Attributes:** Properties or characteristics of entities (e.g., CustomerID, OrderDate).
- **Relationships:** Associations between entities (e.g., Customer places an Order).

### Logical Design:

- **Purpose:** Translate the conceptual model into a logical structure that defines tables, columns, and relationships using a specific data model (e.g., relational model).
- **Normalization:** Process of organizing data to reduce redundancy and improve data integrity. Involves dividing tables into related tables and defining relationships. Common normal forms include:
  - **First Normal Form (1NF):** Ensures that the table has a primary key and all columns contain atomic (indivisible) values.
  - **Second Normal Form (2NF):** Ensures that the table is in 1NF and all non-key attributes are fully functionally dependent on the primary key.
  - **Third Normal Form (3NF):** Ensures that the table is in 2NF and all attributes are functionally dependent only on the primary key.

### Physical Design:

- **Purpose:** Implement the logical design on a specific database management system (DBMS). Includes defining indexes, storage parameters, and access methods.
- **Considerations:** Performance optimization, indexing strategies, and data partitioning.

# CHAPTER 4

## Database Schema Design

Dr.R.Latha

**Database Schema Design** is the process of defining the structure and organization of a database. It involves specifying how data is stored, related, and accessed within the database system. A well-designed schema is crucial for ensuring data integrity, optimizing performance, and supporting efficient data retrieval.

### Schema:

- **Definition:** A schema is a logical structure that defines the organization of data in a database. It includes tables, columns, data types, constraints, and relationships.
- **Purpose:** Provides a blueprint for how data will be stored and managed.

### Entities and Tables:

- **Entities:** Represent objects or concepts that have data associated with them (e.g., Customer, Order).
- **Tables:** Implement entities in a relational database. Each table represents an entity and contains rows (records) and columns (attributes).

### Attributes:

- **Definition:** Attributes are properties or characteristics of entities. Each attribute corresponds to a column in a table.
- **Example:** In a Customer table, attributes might include CustomerID, Name, Email, and Address.

### Primary Key:

- **Definition:** A primary key is a unique identifier for each record in a table. It ensures that each record can be uniquely identified.
- **Example:** CustomerID in the Customer table.

### Foreign Key:

- **Definition:** A foreign key is a column or set of columns in one table that references the primary key of another table. It establishes a relationship between the two tables.
- **Example:** CustomerID in the Order table references CustomerID in the Customer table.

## CHAPTER 5

### Transactions

Ms.R.Bhanumathi

**Transactions** in databases are a fundamental concept used to ensure the integrity, consistency, and reliability of database operations. A transaction is a sequence of one or more SQL operations executed as a single unit of work. Transactions ensure that either all operations in the sequence are completed successfully, or none of them are, maintaining data integrity even in the case of failures.

#### ACID Properties:

- **Atomicity:** Ensures that all operations within a transaction are completed successfully. If any operation fails, the entire transaction is rolled back, and none of the changes are applied.
- **Consistency:** Ensures that a transaction takes the database from one consistent state to another. The database must adhere to all defined rules and constraints before and after the transaction.
- **Isolation:** Ensures that transactions are executed in isolation from one another. Changes made by one transaction are not visible to other transactions until the transaction is committed.
- **Durability:** Ensures that once a transaction is committed, its changes are permanent and will survive any subsequent system failures.

#### Transaction States:

- **Active:** The transaction is currently being executed.
- **Partially Committed:** The transaction has executed all operations but has not yet been committed.
- **Committed:** The transaction has been successfully completed, and changes are saved permanently.
- **Failed:** The transaction has encountered an error and cannot proceed.
- **Aborted:** The transaction has been rolled back, and changes have been undone.

#### Transaction Control Commands:

- **BEGIN TRANSACTION:** Starts a new transaction.

```
sql
Copy code
BEGIN TRANSACTION;
```

- **COMMIT:** Saves all changes made during the transaction and makes them permanent.

```
sql
Copy code
COMMIT;
```

# CHAPTER 6

## Implementation techniques

Mr.A.Jahir Hussain

Implementing transactions involves several key techniques and practices to ensure that the ACID properties (Atomicity, Consistency, Isolation, Durability) are met, and that the database system operates efficiently and reliably. Here's an overview of the common techniques used for transaction implementation:

### Transaction Log Management

- **Purpose:** The transaction log (or redo log) records all changes made to the database. This log is crucial for ensuring durability and recovery in case of failures.
- **Implementation:**
  - **Write-Ahead Logging (WAL):** Changes are first recorded in the log before being applied to the database. This ensures that the database can be restored to a consistent state if a failure occurs.
  - **Checkpointing:** Periodically writes all changes from the log to the database to reduce recovery time and manage the size of the log.

### Concurrency Control

**Purpose:** Manage the execution of concurrent transactions to ensure data consistency and isolation.

- **Techniques:**
  - **Locking:**
    - **Exclusive Locks:** Allow only one transaction to modify a resource, preventing other transactions from accessing it.
    - **Shared Locks:** Allow multiple transactions to read a resource but prevent modification.
    - **Deadlock Prevention:** Techniques like **Wait-Die** and **Wound-Wait** protocols or **Deadlock Detection** and **Resolution** strategies are used to handle deadlocks.
  - **Optimistic Concurrency Control:** Transactions execute without locking resources but check for conflicts at commit time.
  - **Timestamp Ordering:** Assigns timestamps to transactions to ensure they are executed in a serializable order.

### Isolation Levels

- **Purpose:** Define the degree to which the operations in one transaction are isolated from those in other transactions.



# CHAPTER 7

## Database Recovery and Backup

Ms.M.Jeeva

**Database Recovery** and **Backup** are critical aspects of database management, designed to protect data from loss, corruption, and system failures. Proper recovery and backup strategies ensure that data can be restored to a consistent state and minimize downtime in case of issues.

### Database Backup

**Backup** is the process of creating copies of data to safeguard against data loss due to failures, accidents, or disasters. There are various backup strategies and types:

#### Backup Types:

- **Full Backup:**
  - **Definition:** A complete copy of the entire database at a specific point in time.
  - **Pros:** Simplifies recovery since the entire database is backed up.
  - **Cons:** Time-consuming and requires significant storage space.

#### Backup Strategies:

- **Local Backup:** Backup stored on the same server or storage system.
  - **Pros:** Faster backup and recovery.
  - **Cons:** Vulnerable to local failures.

#### Backup Techniques:

- **Snapshot:** Captures the state of the database at a specific point in time. Useful for quick backups and restores.
- **Hot Backup:** Performed while the database is online and available.
- **Cold Backup:** Performed while the database is offline and not in use.

### Database Recovery

**Recovery** is the process of restoring a database to a consistent state after a failure or corruption. It involves using backups and transaction logs to reconstruct the database.

#### Recovery Techniques:

- **Point-in-Time Recovery:**
  - **Definition:** Restores the database to a specific point in time, often used to recover from errors or corruption.
  - **Implementation:** Uses a combination of full backups and transaction logs.

# CHAPTER 8

## Distributed and Parallel Database Systems

Ms.K.Sangeetha

**Distributed and Parallel Database Systems** are designed to handle large-scale data management and processing tasks by distributing workloads across multiple servers or nodes. These systems enhance performance, scalability, and fault tolerance. Here's an overview of their key concepts, architectures, and use cases:

### Distributed Database Systems

**Distributed Database Systems** involve a database that is spread across multiple physical locations, which may be interconnected through a network. These systems aim to provide a unified interface for accessing data despite the physical distribution.

#### Key Concepts:

- **Distribution Transparency:** Users interact with the database as if it were a single entity, without needing to know where the data is physically located.
- **Replication:** Data is duplicated across multiple nodes to enhance availability and fault tolerance.
- **Fragmentation:** Data is divided into fragments and distributed across different nodes based on criteria like data type or access patterns.

### Parallel Database Systems

**Parallel Database Systems** are designed to execute database operations concurrently across multiple processors or servers to improve performance and scalability. They focus on parallelizing query execution and data processing tasks.

#### Key Concepts:

- **Parallelism:** Breaking down a single task into smaller tasks that can be executed simultaneously.
- **Data Partitioning:** Dividing data into chunks that can be processed in parallel. Common strategies include range partitioning, hash partitioning, and list partitioning.
- **Load Balancing:** Distributing workload evenly across processors or servers to optimize resource utilization and performance.

#### Architectures:

- **Shared-Nothing Architecture:** Each node has its own memory and storage, and nodes communicate over a network. This architecture scales well and is fault-tolerant.

# CHAPTER 9

## Advanced Topics

Ms.K.Sangeetha

Advanced topics in database systems often delve into complex concepts and technologies that extend beyond the basics of database management. These topics cover cutting-edge techniques and solutions for handling large-scale, high-performance, and specialized database needs. Here's an overview of some advanced topics:

### NewSQL Databases

**NewSQL** databases are designed to provide the same scalability and performance benefits as NoSQL databases while maintaining the ACID properties of traditional SQL databases. They are often used in environments requiring high transaction throughput and low latency.

### Distributed Ledger Technologies (DLT)

**Distributed Ledger Technologies** include blockchain and other decentralized technologies used to maintain secure and immutable records of transactions.

### Distributed Ledger Technologies (DLT)

**Distributed Ledger Technologies** include blockchain and other decentralized technologies used to maintain secure and immutable records of transactions.

### Data Warehousing and OLAP

**Data Warehousing** involves the integration and storage of large volumes of data from various sources for reporting and analysis. **Online Analytical Processing (OLAP)** enables fast query performance and multidimensional analysis.

- **Characteristics:**
  - **Data Integration:** Combines data from multiple sources into a centralized repository.
  - **Dimensional Modeling:** Uses star and snowflake schemas to organize data for efficient querying.
  - **OLAP Operations:** Supports operations like slicing, dicing, and drilling down into data.
- **Example Technologies:**
  - **Amazon Redshift:** A data warehouse service that uses parallel processing for fast query performance.
  - **Microsoft SQL Server Analysis Services (SSAS):** Provides OLAP and data mining capabilities.

# CHAPTER 10

## Object-Oriented and Relational Database

Ms.K.Jayanthi

**Object-Oriented Databases (OODBs)** and **Relational Databases (RDBs)** represent two different approaches to data management. Here's a comparison of the two, including their characteristics, advantages, and use cases:

### Relational Databases (RDBs)

**Relational Databases** use a tabular structure to store data. They rely on the relational model, where data is organized into tables (relations) with rows and columns. The relationships between data in different tables are defined by foreign keys.

#### Characteristics:

- **Schema:** Data is organized into tables with a fixed schema (structure). Each table has a set of columns with predefined data types.
- **Data Integrity:** Enforced through constraints, keys (primary and foreign), and normalization.
- **Query Language:** Uses SQL (Structured Query Language) for defining and manipulating data.
- **ACID Properties:** Ensures Atomicity, Consistency, Isolation, and Durability for transactions.

#### Advantages:

- **Mature Technology:** Well-established with extensive support and optimization techniques.
- **Data Integrity and Consistency:** Strong mechanisms for ensuring data integrity and relational consistency.
- **Complex Queries:** Efficient at handling complex queries and joins due to SQL's expressive power.

#### Example Technologies:

- **MySQL:** An open-source relational database system.
- **PostgreSQL:** An advanced open-source relational database with support for complex queries and data types.
- **Oracle Database:** A commercial RDBMS with extensive features for enterprise applications.

### Object-Oriented Databases (OODBs)

**Object-Oriented Databases** store data as objects, similar to how data is managed in object-oriented programming (OOP). They are designed to work directly with objects rather than tables.

#### Characteristics:

- **Schema:** Data is organized into classes and objects, mirroring the structure .



# ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE AND MACHINE LEARNING

---

Edited by

**DR.S.NITHYANANDAM**



978-93-6255-619-6

ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE AND MACHINE LEARNING

Copyright © 2019 by Dr.S.NITHYANANDAM

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-619-6

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	<b>03</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1</b> – Introduction to AL and ML	-	<b>17</b>
Ms.K.Jayanthi		
<b>CHAPTER 2</b> – Machine Learning Fundamentals	-	<b>35</b>
Ms.K.Jayanthi		
<b>CHAPTER 3</b> –Problem Solving	-	<b>57</b>
Ms.K.Jayanthi		
<b>CHAPTER 4</b> – Decision Trees and Random Forests	-	<b>70</b>
Dr.R.Latha		
<b>CHAPTER 5</b> – Deep Learning	-	<b>120</b>
Dr.S.Nithyanandam		
<b>CHAPTER 6</b> –Probalistic Learning	-	<b>155</b>
Ms.S.Jancy Sickory Daisy		
<b>CHAPTER 7</b> – Supervised Learning	-	<b>164</b>
Ms.M.Jeeva		
<b>CHAPTER 8</b> – Reinforcement Learning	-	<b>175</b>
Ms.M,Mohana Priya		
<b>CHAPTER 9</b> – Ensemble Techniques and Unsupervised Learning	-	<b>185</b>
Ms.V.Gayathiri		
<b>CHAPTER 10</b> – Neural Networks	-	<b>210</b>
Ms.K.Jayanthi		
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>243</b>



# CHAPTER 1

## Introduction to AI and ML

Ms.K.Jayanthi

**AI** is a broad field of computer science dedicated to creating systems that can perform tasks that would normally require human intelligence. These tasks include reasoning, learning, problem-solving, perception, and language understanding.

### Key Concepts in AI:

#### 1. Definition:

- AI involves creating algorithms and systems that enable machines to perform tasks intelligently, such as recognizing speech, making decisions, or playing games.

#### 2. Types of AI:

- **Narrow AI:** Systems designed to handle a specific task (e.g., voice assistants like Siri or Alexa).
- **General AI:** Hypothetical systems with the ability to understand, learn, and apply intelligence across a broad range of tasks, similar to human intelligence.
- **Superintelligent AI:** A level of AI that surpasses human intelligence in all aspects (still theoretical and speculative).

**ML** is a subset of AI that focuses on building systems that learn from data and improve their performance over time without being explicitly programmed. In other words, ML systems use algorithms to identify patterns in data and make predictions or decisions based on those patterns.

### Key Concepts in ML:

#### 1. Definition:

- ML involves training algorithms on data to make predictions or decisions without being explicitly programmed to perform the specific task.

#### 2. Types of ML:

- **Supervised Learning:** The algorithm is trained on labeled data, where the correct output is provided. Common tasks include classification and regression.
  - **Classification:** Assigning categories to data points (e.g., spam vs. non-spam emails).
  - **Regression:** Predicting continuous values (e.g., predicting house prices).
- **Unsupervised Learning:** The algorithm is trained on unlabeled data and must find patterns or structures on its own. Common tasks include clustering and dimensionality reduction.
  - **Clustering:** Grouping similar data points together (e.g., customer segmentation).
  - **Dimensionality Reduction:** Reducing the number of features in the data while retaining important information (e.g., Principal Component Analysis).

# CHAPTER 2

## Machine Learning Fundamentals

Ms.K.Jayanthi

**Machine Learning (ML)** is a branch of artificial intelligence (AI) that focuses on the development of algorithms that allow computers to learn from and make predictions or decisions based on data. Here's an overview of the fundamental concepts in machine learning:

### 1. Types of Machine Learning

- **Supervised Learning:** The model is trained on labeled data, where the outcome or target is known. The goal is to learn a mapping from inputs to outputs.
  - **Classification:** Predicting a categorical label (e.g., spam detection in emails, diagnosing diseases).
  - **Regression:** Predicting a continuous value (e.g., predicting house prices, forecasting stock prices).
- **Unsupervised Learning:** The model is trained on unlabeled data and must find hidden patterns or intrinsic structures in the input data.
  - **Clustering:** Grouping similar data points together (e.g., customer segmentation, image compression).
  - **Dimensionality Reduction:** Reducing the number of features in the data while retaining as much information as possible (e.g., Principal Component Analysis, t-SNE).
- **Reinforcement Learning:** The model learns by interacting with an environment and receiving feedback in the form of rewards or penalties. The goal is to learn a strategy or policy that maximizes cumulative rewards.
  - **Applications:** Game playing (e.g., AlphaGo), robotic control, autonomous vehicles.

### 2. Key Concepts and Terminology

- **Feature:** An individual measurable property or characteristic of the data (e.g., age, height, salary).
- **Label:** The target variable or output that the model is trying to predict (e.g., whether an email is spam or not).
- 

### Model Evaluation Metrics

- **Accuracy:** The proportion of correctly classified instances out of the total instances.
- **Precision:** The proportion of true positive predictions among all positive predictions (true positives + false positives).

### Common Algorithms

- **Linear Regression:** A method for modeling the relationship between a dependent variable and one or more independent variables by fitting a linear equation.

# CHAPTER 3

## Problem Solving

Ms.K.Jayanthi

**Problem solving** is a fundamental skill in computer science and software development. It involves understanding a problem, devising a plan to solve it, and implementing the solution effectively. Here's an overview of the problem-solving process in computer science:

### 1. Understanding the Problem

- **Clarify the Problem:** Ensure you have a clear understanding of what the problem is asking. Break down the problem into smaller, manageable parts if necessary.
- **Identify Constraints:** Determine any constraints or limitations you need to consider, such as time complexity, memory usage, or specific requirements.
- **Gather Information:** Collect relevant data, examples, or requirements that will help in devising a solution.

### 2. Designing a Solution

- **Develop a Plan:** Outline a strategy to solve the problem. This may involve selecting appropriate algorithms, data structures, or design patterns.
- **Pseudocode:** Write pseudocode to outline the steps of your algorithm in plain language. This helps in visualizing the solution before actual implementation.
- **Algorithm Design:** Choose or design an algorithm that fits the problem. Consider factors like time complexity and space complexity.
- **Choose Data Structures:** Select suitable data structures (e.g., arrays, linked lists, trees, graphs) that will efficiently support the operations needed for the solution.

### 3. Implementing the Solution

- **Write Code:** Translate the pseudocode or algorithm into a programming language. Follow best practices for coding, such as modularity and readability.
- **Testing:** Test the implementation with different input cases to ensure it works as expected. Include edge cases and boundary conditions.
- **Debugging:** Identify and fix any issues or bugs in the code. Use debugging tools and techniques to trace and resolve problems.

### 4. Optimizing the Solution

- **Analyze Performance:** Evaluate the time and space complexity of your solution. Consider improvements if the solution is not efficient enough.
- **Refactor Code:** Improve the structure of your code without changing its functionality. Refactoring can make code more readable, maintainable, and efficient.
- **Review:** Have others review your solution to catch errors or inefficiencies you might have missed.

## CHAPTER 4

### Decision Trees and Random Forests

Dr.R.Latha

**Decision Trees** are a simple yet powerful tool for both classification and regression. They model decisions and their possible consequences as a tree structure.

#### Key Concepts:

1. **Structure:**
  - **Nodes:** Represent decisions or tests on features.
  - **Branches:** Represent the outcome of the decision.
  - **Leaves:** Represent the final decision or prediction.
2. **How They Work:**
  - **Root Node:** The top node where the data is split based on a feature.
  - **Internal Nodes:** Nodes where further splits occur based on other features.
  - **Leaf Nodes:** Terminal nodes that provide the final output or decision.
3. **Advantages:**
  - **Easy to Understand:** The model is intuitive and easy to visualize.
  - **No Need for Feature Scaling:** Decision trees do not require normalization or standardization.
4. **Disadvantages:**
  - **Overfitting:** Decision trees can become overly complex and fit noise in the data.
  - **Instability:** Small changes in data can lead to a completely different tree structure.

#### Random Forests

**Random Forests** are an ensemble method that combines multiple decision trees to improve performance and control overfitting. Each tree is trained on a different subset of the data, and their predictions are aggregated to make a final decision.

#### Key Concepts:

1. **How They Work:**
  - **Bagging:** Each tree is trained on a different bootstrap sample (random subset) of the training data.
  - **Feature Randomness:** At each split, a random subset of features is considered to determine the best split, which helps to make the trees more diverse.
2. **Advantages:**
  - **Improved Accuracy:** By averaging multiple trees, random forests often achieve better performance than individual decision trees.
  - **Reduced Overfitting:** The ensemble approach helps to mitigate the overfitting problem inherent in single decision trees.

# CHAPTER 5

## Deep Learning

Dr.S.Nithyanandam

**Deep Learning** is a subset of machine learning that focuses on neural networks with many layers (hence the term "deep"). It has become a powerful tool for solving complex problems in areas like computer vision, natural language processing, and more. Here's an overview of deep learning concepts and techniques:

### Neural Networks

**Neural Networks** are inspired by the structure and function of the human brain. They consist of layers of interconnected nodes (neurons) that process data.

- **Neurons:** Basic units of neural networks, each performing a simple computation.
- **Layers:**
  - **Input Layer:** Receives the initial data.
  - **Hidden Layers:** Intermediate layers where the data is transformed and features are extracted.
  - **Output Layer:** Produces the final prediction or classification.

### Activation Functions:

- **Sigmoid:** Maps input values to a range between 0 and 1, used for binary classification.
- **ReLU (Rectified Linear Unit):** Outputs the input directly if it's positive; otherwise, it outputs zero. Commonly used in hidden layers.
- **Tanh:** Maps input values to a range between -1 and 1. It is used for both classification and regression.

### Convolutional Neural Networks (CNNs)

**CNNs** are specialized for processing grid-like data, such as images. They use convolutional layers to automatically learn spatial hierarchies of features.

- **Convolutional Layers:** Apply convolutional filters to detect features such as edges, textures, and patterns.
- **Pooling Layers:** Reduce the dimensionality of feature maps while retaining important information. Common pooling methods include max pooling and average pooling.
- **Fully Connected Layers:** Dense layers at the end of the network that perform classification or regression based on the features extracted by the convolutional and pooling layers.

### Recurrent Neural Networks (RNNs)

**RNNs** are designed for sequential data, such as time series or natural language. They maintain a memory of previous inputs using internal states.

# CHAPTER 6

## Probabilistic Learning

Ms.S.Jancy Sickory Daisy

**Probabilistic Learning** refers to the approach in machine learning where models use probability distributions to make predictions and infer patterns from data. This approach is grounded in statistical theory and is useful for handling uncertainty and making predictions based on probabilistic frameworks.

### Key Concepts in Probabilistic Learning

#### 1. Probability Theory:

- **Probability Distributions:** Functions that describe the likelihood of different outcomes. Common distributions include Gaussian (normal) distribution, binomial distribution, and Poisson distribution.
- **Bayes' Theorem:** A fundamental theorem in probability theory used to update the probability estimate for a hypothesis given new evidence. It is central to Bayesian learning.

#### 2. Bayesian Inference:

- **Bayesian Methods:** Techniques that apply Bayes' theorem to update the probability distribution of a model's parameters as more data becomes available.
- **Posterior Distribution:** The updated probability distribution after observing data, combining the prior distribution and the likelihood of the observed data.

#### 3. Generative vs. Discriminative Models:

- **Generative Models:** Learn the joint probability distribution  $P(X, Y)$  of the features  $X$  and the target  $Y$ . They can generate new instances of data. Examples include Naive Bayes and Gaussian Mixture Models.
- **Discriminative Models:** Learn the conditional probability distribution  $P(Y|X)$  directly. They focus on modeling the decision boundary between classes. Examples include Logistic Regression and Support Vector Machines.

#### 4. Naive Bayes Classifier:

- A simple probabilistic classifier based on applying Bayes' theorem with strong (naive) independence assumptions between features.
- **Formula:**  $P(Y|X) = \frac{P(X|Y) \cdot P(Y)}{P(X)}$
- **Use Case:** Text classification (e.g., spam detection) and sentiment analysis.

#### 5. Gaussian Mixture Models (GMMs):

- A generative model that assumes all data points are generated from a mixture of several Gaussian distributions with unknown parameters.
- **Expectation-Maximization (EM):** An iterative algorithm used to estimate the parameters of GMMs.

#### 6. Hidden Markov Models (HMMs):

- Models used for time series data where the system being modeled is assumed to follow a Markov process with hidden states.
- **Applications:** Speech recognition, part-of-speech tagging, and bioinformatics.

# CHAPTER 7

## Supervised Learning

Ms.M.Jeeva

**Supervised Learning** is a type of machine learning where the model is trained on labeled data. In other words, each training example is paired with an output label or value. The goal is for the model to learn the mapping from inputs to outputs so that it can predict the label or value for new, unseen data.

### 1. Labeled Data:

- **Features (X):** Input variables used to make predictions (e.g., age, height, income).
- **Labels (Y):** The output or target variable that the model aims to predict (e.g., class labels, continuous values).

### 2. Types of Supervised Learning:

- **Classification:** Predicts a categorical label. The output is a class label from a finite set of possible values.
  - **Binary Classification:** Two possible classes (e.g., spam vs. non-spam email).
  - **Multiclass Classification:** More than two classes (e.g., classifying types of animals).
  - **Multilabel Classification:** Each instance can belong to multiple classes simultaneously (e.g., tagging images with multiple labels).
- **Regression:** Predicts a continuous value. The output is a real number.
  - **Simple Linear Regression:** Models the relationship between two variables.
  - **Multiple Linear Regression:** Models the relationship between one target variable and multiple features.

### 3. Model Evaluation Metrics:

- **Classification Metrics:**
  - **Accuracy:** Proportion of correctly classified instances.
  - **Precision:** Proportion of true positive predictions among all positive predictions.
  - **Recall:** Proportion of true positive predictions among all actual positives.
  - **F1 Score:** Harmonic mean of precision and recall.
  - **ROC Curve:** Plot of true positive rate vs. false positive rate, used for evaluating classification performance.
- **Regression Metrics:**
  - **Mean Absolute Error (MAE):** Average of absolute differences between predicted and actual values.
  - **Mean Squared Error (MSE):** Average of squared differences between predicted and actual values.
  - **R-squared:** Proportion of variance in the dependent variable predictable from the independent variables.

### 4. Common Algorithms:

- **Classification Algorithms:**
  - **Logistic Regression:** Used for binary classification tasks, models the probability of a binary outcome.
  - **Decision Trees:** Tree-based models that split data into subsets based on feature values.

# CHAPTER 8

## Reinforcement Learning

Ms.M,Mohana Priya

**Reinforcement Learning (RL)** is a type of machine learning where an agent learns to make decisions by interacting with an environment to maximize cumulative rewards. Unlike supervised learning, where the model is trained on labeled data, in RL, the agent learns from the consequences of its actions through trial and error.

### *Key Concepts in Reinforcement Learning*

1. **Agent and Environment:**
    - **Agent:** The learner or decision maker that interacts with the environment.
    - **Environment:** The system or context with which the agent interacts. It provides feedback (rewards or penalties) based on the agent's actions.
  2. **States, Actions, and Rewards:**
    - **State (S):** A representation of the environment at a specific time. The state provides the context for the agent's decisions.
    - **Action (A):** The choice made by the agent that affects the environment. Actions can be discrete (e.g., move left or right) or continuous (e.g., accelerate or decelerate).
    - **Reward (R):** A numerical value received by the agent after taking an action in a specific state. The goal is to maximize the cumulative reward over time.
  3. **Policy:**
    - **Policy ( $\pi$ ):** A strategy or mapping from states to actions. It defines the agent's behavior by specifying the probability of taking each action in a given state.
    - **Deterministic Policy:** A policy that always chooses the same action for a given state.
    - **Stochastic Policy:** A policy that chooses actions according to a probability distribution.
  4. **Value Functions:**
    - **State Value Function (V(s)):** The expected cumulative reward of being in state sss and following a certain policy.
    - **Action Value Function (Q(s, a)):** The expected cumulative reward of taking action aaa in state sss and following a certain policy thereafter.
  5. **Bellman Equation:**
    - The Bellman equation provides a recursive relationship for calculating value functions. It is central to many RL algorithm
- **Exploration vs. Exploitation:**
    - **Exploration:** Trying new actions to discover their effects and learn more about the environment.
    - **Exploitation:** Choosing actions that are known to yield high rewards based on current knowledge.
    - **Trade-off:** Balancing exploration and exploitation is crucial for efficient learning.



# CHAPTER 9

## Ensemble Techniques and Unsupervised Learning

Ms.V.Gayathiri

**Ensemble Techniques** involve combining multiple models to improve overall performance. The idea is that combining different models can leverage their individual strengths and compensate for their weaknesses, leading to better predictive performance and robustness. Here are some key ensemble techniques:

### Bagging (Bootstrap Aggregating)

- **Concept:** Trains multiple models (typically the same type) on different subsets of the training data obtained through bootstrapping (sampling with replacement).
- **Goal:** Reduce variance and prevent overfitting.
- **Example:** Random Forests, where multiple decision trees are trained on different bootstrapped samples of the data, and their predictions are averaged or voted on.

### Boosting

- **Concept:** Trains models sequentially, each new model focusing on the errors made by the previous models. Each model is weighted according to its performance.
- **Goal:** Reduce bias and variance, and improve model accuracy.
- **Example:** AdaBoost, Gradient Boosting Machines (GBM), XGBoost, LightGBM, and CatBoost.

### Stacking (Stacked Generalization)

- **Concept:** Combines multiple base models (often of different types) by training a meta-model on their predictions. The meta-model learns how to best combine the base models' outputs.
- **Goal:** Leverage the strengths of different types of models to improve overall performance.

## Unsupervised Learning

**Unsupervised Learning** involves training models on data without labeled responses. The goal is to uncover hidden patterns or intrinsic structures in the data. Here are some key techniques:

### Clustering

- **Concept:** Groups similar data points into clusters, where points in the same cluster are more similar to each other than to those in other clusters.
- **Examples:**
  - **K-Means Clustering:** Partitions data into k clusters by minimizing the variance within each cluster.
  - **Hierarchical Clustering:** Builds a hierarchy of clusters using either a bottom-up (agglomerative) or top-down (divisive) approach.

# CHAPTER 10

## Neural Networks

Ms.K.Jayanthi

**Neural Networks** are a class of machine learning models inspired by the structure and function of the human brain. They consist of interconnected nodes (neurons) arranged in layers, which process input data and learn complex patterns through training. Neural networks are fundamental to many modern AI applications, including image recognition, natural language processing, and reinforcement learning.

### Key Components of Neural Networks

#### 1. Neurons (Nodes):

- **Function:** Neurons receive input, apply a transformation (usually through an activation function), and pass the output to the next layer.
- **Weights and Biases:** Each connection between neurons has an associated weight, and each neuron has a bias term. These parameters are learned during training.

#### 2. Layers:

- **Input Layer:** The first layer that receives the raw input data. Each neuron in this layer represents a feature of the input data.
- **Hidden Layers:** Intermediate layers between the input and output layers where the actual computation and learning occur. There can be multiple hidden layers in a network.
- **Output Layer:** The final layer that produces the model's predictions. The number of neurons in this layer corresponds to the number of classes (for classification) or the dimension of the output (for regression).

#### 3. Activation Functions:

- **Purpose:** Introduce non-linearity into the model, allowing it to learn complex patterns.
- **Common Functions:**
  - **Sigmoid:**  $\sigma(x) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-x}}$ . Maps inputs to a range between 0 and 1.
  - **ReLU (Rectified Linear Unit):**  $\text{ReLU}(x) = \max(0, x)$ . Popular due to its simplicity and efficiency.
  - **Tanh:**  $\tanh(x) = \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{e^x + e^{-x}}$ . Maps inputs to a range between -1 and 1.
  - **Softmax:** Used in the output layer of classification networks to produce probability distributions over multiple classes.

#### 4. Training Process:

- **Forward Propagation:** Input data is passed through the network layer by layer to generate predictions.
- **Loss Function:** Measures the difference between the predicted output and the true labels. Common loss functions include Mean Squared Error (MSE) for regression and Cross-Entropy Loss for classification.
- **Backpropagation:** Computes gradients of the loss function with respect to the weights using the chain rule and adjusts the weights accordingly to minimize the loss. This is done using optimization algorithms like Gradient Descent.



# THEORY OF COMPUTATION

EDITED BY  
**S.GAYATHRI**



978-93-6255-900-5

THEORY OF COMPUTATION

Copyright © 2019 by S.GAYATHRI

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-900-5

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

<b>Introduction</b>	-	<b>03</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1</b> - Introduction of Theory of Computation	-	<b>11</b>
Dr.S.Nithyanandam		
<b>CHAPTER 2</b> –Automata and Regular Expression	-	<b>34</b>
Ms.S.Gayathiri		
<b>CHAPTER 3</b> –Regular Expressions and Languages	-	<b>56</b>
Ms.S.Gayathiri		
<b>CHAPTER 4</b> – Context Free and Push Down Automata	-	<b>78</b>
Ms.S.Gayathiri		
<b>CHAPTER 5</b> –Normal Forms and Turing Machines	-	<b>82</b>
Ms.S.Gayathiri		
<b>CHAPTER 6</b> – Undecidability	-	<b>112</b>
Ms.S.Gayathiri		
<b>CHAPTER 7</b> – Reducibility and Completeness	-	<b>137</b>
Dr.S.Nithyanandam		
<b>CHAPTER 8</b> – Time and Space Complexity	-	<b>156</b>
Mr.A.Jahir Husain		
<b>CHAPTER 9</b> – Polynomial-Time Reductions and Completeness	-	<b>178</b>
Dr.R.Latha		
<b>CHAPTER 10</b> – Quantum Computation	-	<b>189</b>
Ms.R.Bhanumathi		
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>210</b>

# CHAPTER 1

## Introduction of Theory of Computation

Dr.S.Nithyanandam

**The Theory of Computation** is a foundational area of computer science that explores the fundamental capabilities and limitations of computational models and algorithms. It seeks to understand what problems can be solved using computers and how efficiently they can be solved. The theory provides a rigorous framework for analyzing computational problems and designing algorithms, and it underpins much of modern computer science, including complexity theory, automata theory, and formal language theory.

### Concepts in the Theory of Computation

#### Automata Theory

- **Definition:** The study of abstract machines (automata) and the problems they can solve.
- **Types of Automata:**
  - **Finite Automata:** Simplest models of computation with a finite number of states. They are used to recognize regular languages. Examples include deterministic finite automata (DFA) and nondeterministic finite automata (NFA).
  - **Pushdown Automata (PDA):** Automata with a stack, used to recognize context-free languages. They can handle more complex languages than finite automata.
  - **Turing Machines:** The most powerful type of automaton, which can simulate any algorithm. They are used to recognize recursively enumerable languages and are central to the theory of computability.

#### Computability Theory

- **Definition:** The study of what can be computed in principle, regardless of time or space constraints.
- **Key Concepts:**
  - **Turing Machines:** A theoretical model of computation that defines what it means for a function to be computable.
  - **Decidability:** Whether a problem can be solved by an algorithm in a finite amount of time. Problems are classified as decidable or undecidable.
  - **Halting Problem:** The problem of determining whether a given Turing machine will halt on a given input. It is famously undecidable.

#### Complexity Theory

- **Definition:** The study of the resources (such as time and space) required to solve computational problems.
  - **Time Complexity:** Measures how the runtime of an algorithm scales with the size of the input. Classes include P (polynomial time) and NP (nondeterministic polynomial time).

## CHAPTER 2

# Automata and Regular Expression

Ms.S.Gayathiri

**Automata** and **Regular Expressions** are foundational concepts in theoretical computer science and formal language theory. They are used to describe and analyze patterns in strings and to recognize various types of languages. Here's an overview of each concept and their relationship:

### Automata

**Automata** are abstract machines used to model computation and recognize patterns in strings of symbols. They are defined by a set of states, transitions between states, and rules for processing input.

### Finite Automata (FA)

- **Definition:** A finite automaton is a simple computational model with a finite number of states. It can be in only one state at a time and transitions between states based on input symbols.
- **Types:**
  - **Deterministic Finite Automaton (DFA):**
    - **Description:** For every state and input symbol, there is exactly one transition to a new state.
    - **Formal Definition:** A DFA is defined by a 5-tuple  $(Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, F)$ , where:
      - $Q$  is a finite set of states.
      - $\Sigma$  is the finite input alphabet.
      - $\delta$  is the transition function  $\delta: Q \times \Sigma \rightarrow Q$ .
      - $q_0$  is the start state.
      - $F$  is the set of accept states.
    - **Example:** A DFA that recognizes strings ending with '01' can be designed with states corresponding to the last two characters of the string..
- **Equivalence:** Any language recognized by an NFA can also be recognized by a DFA. This is known as the equivalence of DFAs and NFAs.

### Pushdown Automata (PDA)

- **Definition:** An extension of finite automata that includes a stack, allowing it to recognize context-free languages. The stack provides additional memory beyond the finite set of states.
- **Types:**
  - **Deterministic Pushdown Automaton (DPDA):** Has a deterministic behavior, meaning that for each state and input symbol, there is at most one possible transition.



# CHAPTER 3

## Regular Expressions and Languages

Ms.S.Gayathiri

**Regular Expressions** and **Regular Languages** are closely related concepts in formal language theory and computer science. Regular expressions provide a way to describe patterns in strings, while regular languages are the class of languages that can be recognized by these patterns. Here's a detailed look at their relationship and properties:

### Regular Expressions

**Regular Expressions** (REs) are a formal notation used to specify patterns in strings. They are used in various applications, including text search, validation, and manipulation. Regular expressions are defined using a combination of characters and operators.

#### *Components of Regular Expressions*

1. **Literal Characters:** Matches the exact character (e.g., a matches 'a').
2. **Concatenation:** Combines two regular expressions (e.g., ab matches 'ab').
3. **Union (Alternation):** Represents a choice between two regular expressions (e.g., a|b matches 'a' or 'b').
4. **Kleene Star (\*\*):** Matches zero or more occurrences of the preceding regular expression (e.g., a\* matches "", 'a', 'aa', etc.).
5. **Plus (++):** Matches one or more occurrences of the preceding regular expression (e.g., a+ matches 'a', 'aa', 'aaa', etc.).
6. **Question Mark (??):** Matches zero or one occurrence of the preceding regular expression (e.g., a? matches "" or 'a').
7. **Parentheses:** Used to group expressions and control the order of operations (e.g., (ab|cd)\* matches zero or more repetitions of 'ab' or 'cd').
8. **Character Classes:** Defines a set of characters (e.g., [abc] matches 'a', 'b', or 'c').
9. **Negation and Ranges:** Specifies characters not in a set or within a range (e.g., [^0-9] matches any character except digits, and [a-z] matches any lowercase letter).

### Regular Languages

**Regular Languages** are the class of languages that can be described by regular expressions or recognized by finite automata. They are the simplest class of languages in the Chomsky hierarchy and have several important properties.

#### *Properties of Regular Languages*

1. **Closure Properties:** Regular languages are closed under various operations:
  - o **Union:** If  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are regular languages, then  $L_1 \cup L_2$  is also regular.

## CHAPTER 4

### Context Free and Push Down Automata

Ms.S.Gayathiri

**Context-Free Languages (CFLs)** and **Pushdown Automata (PDAs)** are key concepts in formal language theory and automata theory. They are used to describe and recognize languages that are more complex than regular languages but still have a well-defined structure. Here's a detailed overview of each concept and their relationship:

#### Context-Free Languages (CFLs)

**Context-Free Languages** are a class of formal languages that can be generated by context-free grammars and recognized by pushdown automata. They are used to describe many syntactic structures in programming languages and natural languages.

##### *Key Characteristics*

#### 1. Generated by Context-Free Grammars (CFGs):

- A CFG is a formal grammar that consists of production rules used to generate strings in a language.
- A CFG is defined by a 4-tuple  $(V, \Sigma, R, S)$ , where:
  - $V$  is a finite set of non-terminal symbols.
  - $\Sigma$  is a finite set of terminal symbols.
  - $R$  is a finite set of production rules of the form  $A \rightarrow \alpha$ , where  $A$  is a non-terminal and  $\alpha$  is a string of terminals and/or non-terminals.
  - $S$  is the start symbol, a special non-terminal from which production begins.

#### Pushdown Automata (PDAs)

**Pushdown Automata** are computational models that can recognize context-free languages. They extend finite automata by adding a stack, which provides additional memory for recognizing languages with nested structures.

##### *Key Characteristics*

#### 1. Components:

- **States:** A finite set of states.
- **Input Alphabet:** A finite set of symbols read from the input tape.
- **Stack Alphabet:** A finite set of symbols used in the stack.
- **Transition Function:** Specifies state transitions based on the current state, input symbol, and top of the stack.
- **Start State:** The initial state from which computation begins.
- **Start Stack Symbol:** The initial symbol pushed onto the stack.

# CHAPTER 5

## Normal Forms and Turing Machines

Ms.S.Gayathiri

**Normal Forms** in formal language theory and **Turing Machines** in computability theory are two fundamental concepts that help us understand and work with formal languages and computations. Here's a detailed overview of both:

### Normal Forms

**Normal Forms** are standardized ways of representing formal grammars and expressions to simplify the analysis and manipulation of languages.

#### Chomsky Normal Form (CNF)

- **Definition:** A context-free grammar (CFG) is in Chomsky Normal Form if every production rule is of one of the following forms:
- **Purpose:** CNF is useful for algorithms that parse and analyze context-free languages, such as the CYK parsing algorithm.
- **Conversion:** Any context-free grammar can be converted into an equivalent CFG in CNF. The conversion involves eliminating null productions, unit productions, and converting right-hand sides of productions into the appropriate forms.

#### Greibach Normal Form (GNF)

- **Definition:** A context-free grammar is in Greibach Normal Form if every production rule is of the form:
- **Purpose:** GNF is useful for top-down parsing techniques, including recursive descent parsing.
- **Conversion:** Like CNF, any context-free grammar can be converted into an equivalent grammar in GNF. This conversion process typically involves similar steps as those used for CNF, including handling null and unit productions.

### Turing Machines

**Turing Machines** are a foundational model of computation that helps us understand the limits of what can be computed algorithmically. They are more powerful than finite automata and pushdown automata and can simulate any algorithm.

#### *Components of a Turing Machine*

1. **Tape:** An infinite tape divided into cells, each of which can hold a symbol from a finite alphabet. The tape provides unbounded memory for the Turing machine.
2. **Tape Head:** A read/write head that can move left, right, or stay in the same position. It reads and writes symbols on the tape and moves based on the transition rules.

## CHAPTER 6

### Undecidability

Ms.S.Gayathiri

**Undecidability** refers to problems for which no algorithm can be constructed that always leads to a correct "yes" or "no" answer. These problems are central to the field of **computability theory** and are related to the limits of what can be computed by algorithms or machines, such as Turing machines.

#### Key Concepts of Undecidability

##### 1. Decidable Problems:

- A problem is **decidable** (or **computable**) if there exists an algorithm that can determine the correct answer for all possible inputs in a finite amount of time.
- For example, checking whether a given number is prime is a decidable problem since there are algorithms (such as trial division) that will always terminate with the correct answer.

##### 2. Undecidable Problems:

- A problem is **undecidable** if no algorithm exists that can provide a correct solution for all possible inputs, even though an algorithm might exist that works for some inputs. This means there is no general procedure that can always solve the problem in finite time.
- One of the most famous undecidable problems is the **Halting Problem**, which asks whether a given Turing machine will eventually halt (stop) when run with a particular input.

#### The Halting Problem

The Halting Problem, introduced by **Alan Turing** in 1936, is one of the earliest examples of an undecidable problem.

*Halting Problem Definition:*

- **Input:** A description of a Turing machine  $M$  and an input  $w$ .
- **Question:** Will the machine  $M$  halt when it is run on the input  $w$ , or will it continue running forever?

#### Why the Halting Problem is Undecidable:

- Suppose there exists a Turing machine  $H$  that solves the halting problem. Given a machine  $M$  and input  $w$ ,  $H(M, w)$  returns "yes" if  $M$  halts on  $w$ , and "no" if  $M$  runs forever on  $w$ .
- Now, construct a new machine  $M'$  that uses  $H$  as a subroutine, and  $M'$  behaves as follows:
  - If  $H(M', M')$  returns "no" (i.e.,  $M'$  does not halt), then  $M'$  halts.

# CHAPTER 7

## Reducibility and Completeness

Dr.S.Nithyanandam

**Reducibility** and **Completeness** are key concepts in **computability theory** and **complexity theory**. They help classify problems based on their computational difficulty and their relationship to other problems, especially in terms of undecidability and computational complexity.

Reducibility

**Reducibility** is a formal way to relate the complexity or difficulty of one problem to another. Intuitively, if problem AAA can be **reduced** to problem BBB, then AAA is no harder to solve than BBB, because a solution to BBB can be used to solve AAA. Reductions are used to prove undecidability, intractability, and complexity class memberships.

**Types of Reducibility:**

**Many-One Reducibility ( $\leq_m$ ):**

- **Definition:** Problem AAA is many-one reducible to problem BBB (denoted  $A \leq_m B$ ) if there is a computable function  $f$  such that, for every instance  $x$ ,  $x \in A$  if and only if  $f(x) \in B$ .
- **Interpretation:** This means that solving BBB can be used to solve AAA, because if we can decide BBB, we can transform instances of AAA into instances of BBB using the function  $f$  and then solve them using a solution to BBB.
- **Application:** Many-one reducibility is commonly used in proving problems undecidable or to show completeness in complexity classes like **NP-completeness**.

**Turing Reducibility ( $\leq_T$ ):**

- **Definition:** Problem AAA is Turing reducible to problem BBB (denoted  $A \leq_T B$ ) if a Turing machine with access to an oracle for BBB (a hypothetical machine that can solve instances of BBB in a single step) can decide AAA.
- **Interpretation:** This form of reducibility is more general because it allows the reduction process to make multiple queries to the oracle BBB while solving AAA. It is useful when a simple many-one reduction is insufficient.
- **Application:** Turing reductions are more flexible than many-one reductions and are used in theoretical analysis of problems' relative computability.

**Log-Space Reducibility ( $\leq_L$ ):**

- **Definition:** Problem AAA is log-space reducible to problem BBB (denoted  $A \leq_L B$ ) if there exists a log-space computable function that transforms instances of AAA into instances of BBB.

## CHAPTER 8

### Time and Space Complexity

Mr.A.Jahir Husain

**Time complexity** and **space complexity** are measures of the resources required to solve computational problems, particularly the amount of time and memory (space) used by an algorithm. These concepts are fundamental in analyzing how efficiently an algorithm performs and in comparing different algorithms for the same task.

#### Time Complexity

**Time complexity** refers to the amount of computational time that an algorithm takes to run as a function of the input size, typically denoted as  $n$ . The most commonly used metric for time complexity is **Big-O notation**, which describes the upper bound of the runtime in the worst-case scenario.

#### Types of Time Complexity

- 1. Constant Time –  $O(1)$  $O(1)$  $O(1)$ :**
  - The algorithm's runtime does not depend on the size of the input. It takes the same amount of time regardless of the input size.
  - Example: Accessing an element in an array by its index.
- 2. Logarithmic Time –  $O(\log n)$  $O(\log n)$  $O(\log n)$ :**
  - The time increases logarithmically with the input size. This occurs in algorithms that repeatedly divide the input size by a constant factor, such as **binary search**.
  - Example: Binary search in a sorted array.
- 3. Linear Time –  $O(n)$  $O(n)$  $O(n)$ :**
  - The time grows directly in proportion to the size of the input. If the input size doubles, the time taken also doubles.
  - Example: Traversing through all elements in an array.
- 4. Linearithmic Time –  $O(n \log n)$  $O(n \log n)$  $O(n \log n)$ :**
  - The time grows proportionally to  $n$  multiplied by the logarithm of  $n$ . This time complexity arises in more efficient sorting algorithms like **merge sort** and **quick sort**.
  - Example: Merge sort algorithm.
- 5. Quadratic Time –  $O(n^2)$  $O(n^2)$  $O(n^2)$ :**
  - The time grows proportionally to the square of the input size. Typically, this happens when there are nested loops, where each loop runs  $n$  times.
  - Example: **Bubble sort** and **insertion sort** in the worst case.
- 6. Cubic Time –  $O(n^3)$  $O(n^3)$  $O(n^3)$ :**
  - The time increases as the cube of the input size. This complexity is common in algorithms with three nested loops.
  - Example: Naive matrix multiplication.

## CHAPTER 9

### Polynomial-Time Reductions and Completeness

Dr.R.Latha

**Polynomial-Time Reductions** and **Completeness** are crucial concepts in **computational complexity theory** for comparing the difficulty of different computational problems, especially in the context of classifying problems in complexity classes like **P**, **NP**, and **NP-complete**.

#### Polynomial-Time Reductions

A **polynomial-time reduction** is a way of transforming one computational problem into another in such a way that solving the second problem would also solve the first one. Formally, a problem AAA can be reduced to problem BBB if there exists a polynomial-time computable function that converts any instance of problem AAA into an instance of problem BBB such that the solution to BBB gives a solution to AAA.

*Definition:*

- Problem AAA is **polynomial-time reducible** to problem BBB (denoted  $A \leq_p B$ ) if there exists a polynomial-time computable function  $f$  such that for every input  $x$ :  $x \in A \iff f(x) \in B$ . This means that if we can solve BBB efficiently (in polynomial time), we can use the function  $f$  to solve AAA efficiently as well.

#### Importance of Polynomial-Time Reductions:

- Polynomial-time reductions are essential for comparing the difficulty of problems in the class **NP**. They help to establish **NP-completeness** by showing that solving one problem would solve many others.
- These reductions ensure that if problem AAA can be reduced to BBB, then BBB is at least as hard as AAA. If BBB can be solved in polynomial time, then so can AAA.

#### Example of Polynomial-Time Reduction:

Consider the reduction of the **Hamiltonian Path Problem** to the **Traveling Salesman Problem (TSP)**. Given an instance of the Hamiltonian Path Problem (finding a path that visits every vertex exactly once in a graph), we can construct an instance of TSP (finding the shortest tour that visits each city exactly once and returns to the start) by assigning distances to make sure only the Hamiltonian paths correspond to valid TSP tours. This reduction can be done in polynomial time.

The concept of **completeness** refers to identifying the hardest problems within a particular complexity class. These problems are the most challenging ones in the class, meaning that solving any one of them efficiently would allow us to solve all problems in that class efficiently.

# CHAPTER 10

## Quantum Computation

Ms.R.Bhanumathi

**Quantum computation** is a branch of computational science that leverages the principles of quantum mechanics to perform calculations. It differs from classical computation, which relies on binary bits (0s and 1s) to represent information, by using **quantum bits** or **qubits**. Quantum computation offers the potential to solve certain types of problems much faster than classical computers, particularly problems that involve large search spaces, optimization, and factoring large numbers.

### Basic Concepts in Quantum Computation

#### Qubits

A **qubit** is the fundamental unit of quantum information. Unlike a classical bit, which can be either 0 or 1, a qubit can be in a superposition of both 0 and 1 states simultaneously. Mathematically, a qubit's state can be represented as:

$$|\psi\rangle = \alpha|0\rangle + \beta|1\rangle$$

where  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are complex numbers, and  $|\alpha|^2 + |\beta|^2 = 1$ . The terms  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  represent the probability amplitudes of the qubit being in the states 0 and 1, respectively.

#### Superposition

**Superposition** allows qubits to represent multiple states at once. For example, with  $n$  qubits, a quantum system can represent  $2^n$  different states simultaneously. This property gives quantum computers their power to process vast amounts of information in parallel.

#### Entanglement

**Entanglement** is a unique quantum phenomenon where the states of two or more qubits become linked such that the state of one qubit cannot be described independently of the state of the other qubit, no matter how far apart they are. Entangled qubits exhibit correlations in their measurements, which can be leveraged for quantum algorithms.

#### Quantum Gates

Just like classical computers use logic gates (AND, OR, NOT), quantum computers use **quantum gates** to manipulate qubits. Quantum gates are reversible and are represented as unitary transformations on qubits. Some of the basic quantum gates include:

- **Hadamard gate (H):** Creates superposition.





# OBJECT ORIENTED PROGRAMMING

Edited by

**DR. R. LATHA**



978-93-6255-599-1

OBJECT ORIENTED PROGRAMMING

Copyright © 2019 by Dr. R. LATHA

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-599-1

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

<b>Introduction</b>	-	<b>03</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1</b> - Introduction of OOP and Java Mr.K.Balamurali	-	<b>14</b>
<b>CHAPTER 2</b> –Class and Object Dr.R.Latha	-	<b>35</b>
<b>CHAPTER 3</b> –Inheritance and Polymorphism Mr.A.Jahir Husain	-	<b>43</b>
<b>CHAPTER 4</b> – Encapsulation Mr.A.Jahir Husain	-	<b>69</b>
<b>CHAPTER 5</b> –Object –Oriented Design Ms.R.Bhanumathi	-	<b>74</b>
<b>CHAPTER 6</b> – Design Patterns Ms.R.Bhanumathi	-	<b>115</b>
<b>CHAPTER 7</b> – Exception Handling and Multithresding Ms.S.Jancy Sickory Daisy	-	<b>135</b>
<b>CHAPTER 8</b> – I/O,Generics,String Handling Mr.S.Amaresan	-	<b>159</b>
<b>CHAPTER 9</b> – Constructors Dr.R.Latha	-	<b>174</b>
<b>CHAPTER 10</b> – JavaFX Event Handling,Controls and Components Dr.R.Latha	-	<b>197</b>
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>276</b>

# CHAPTER 1

## Introduction of OOP and Java

Mr.K.Balamurali

**Object-Oriented Programming (OOP)** is a programming paradigm that organizes software design around **objects**, which are instances of **classes**. OOP is designed to mirror real-world entities, making software design more modular, maintainable, and reusable. It encapsulates both **data** (attributes) and **behavior** (methods) in these objects, allowing for easier manipulation and interaction.

Java, one of the most widely-used programming languages, is built around the principles of OOP. Java's architecture and syntax are highly optimized for creating OOP-based programs, making it an ideal language for building complex applications.

### Key Concepts of OOP

#### Classes and Objects

- **Class:** A class is a blueprint for creating objects. It defines the attributes (fields) and methods (functions) that the object will have. For example, a class **Car** might define properties like color, model, and speed, along with behaviors like drive and stop.
- **Object:** An object is an instance of a class. It represents a specific entity that is created using the class definition. For instance, a specific car (e.g., a red Toyota) is an object of the **Car** class.

```
java
Copy code
// Example of a simple class in Java
class Car {
    String color;
    String model;

    void drive() {
        System.out.println("The car is driving.");
    }
}
```

In the above code, **Car** is a class, and when you create an instance (object) of the class, it represents a specific car with defined properties.

#### Java: An OOP Language

Java is a strongly object-oriented language designed to adhere to the principles of OOP. Some features of Java that support OOP include:

## CHAPTER 2

### Class and Object

Dr.R.Latha

In **Object-Oriented Programming (OOP)**, the concepts of **class** and **object** are fundamental. A **class** defines a blueprint for creating **objects**, and an **object** is an instance of a class.

#### What is a Class?

A **class** in Java is a user-defined blueprint or prototype from which objects are created. It represents a group of similar objects. A class encapsulates data (attributes) and methods (functions) that operate on the data. In simpler terms, a class is like a template that defines the characteristics (properties) and behaviors (methods) of the objects created from it.

#### Class Structure in Java

A class typically consists of:

- **Fields** (also called variables or attributes): Represent the data or properties of the object.
- **Methods**: Represent the behavior or actions that objects of the class can perform.

*Example of a Class:*

```
java
Copy code
// Define a class called "Car"
public class Car {
    // Fields (Attributes)
    String model;
    String color;
    int speed;

    // Method (Behavior)
    void drive() {
        System.out.println("The car is driving.");
    }

    void stop() {
        System.out.println("The car has stopped.");
    }
}
```

In this example:

- **Car** is the class name.
- It has three fields: model, color, and speed.
- It has two methods: drive() and stop().

## CHAPTER 3

# Inheritance and Polymorphism

Mr.A.Jahir Husain

**Inheritance** and **Polymorphism** are two key pillars of **Object-Oriented Programming (OOP)** that enable code reuse, flexibility, and scalability in software development. Let's break down both concepts and their use in Java.

### Inheritance

**Inheritance** allows a new class (called a **subclass** or **child class**) to inherit properties and behaviors (fields and methods) from an existing class (called a **superclass** or **parent class**). This promotes **code reuse**, as common functionality can be defined in the parent class and shared across multiple subclasses.

#### Key Features of Inheritance:

- **Single Inheritance in Java:** A class can only extend one other class, which means it can inherit from one parent class (Java does not support multiple inheritance of classes).
- **Extensibility:** Subclasses can add their own unique fields and methods in addition to the inherited members from the parent class.
- **Overriding Methods:** Subclasses can override the methods of the superclass to provide a specialized implementation.
- **Use of super keyword:** The super keyword is used to refer to the parent class's constructors and methods.

#### *Syntax of Inheritance:*

```
java
Copy code
class ParentClass {
    // Fields and methods of the parent class
}
```

### Polymorphism

**Polymorphism** means "many forms" and allows one entity (like a method or object) to take on different forms. In Java, polymorphism allows us to define methods or objects that behave differently based on the class or data types they are interacting with.

Polymorphism can be achieved in two ways:

- **Compile-time polymorphism (Method Overloading):** This allows multiple methods to have the same name but different parameter lists.

- **Runtime polymorphism (Method Overriding):** This allows a subclass to provide a specific implementation for a method that is already defined in its parent class.

## CHAPTER 4

### Encapsulation

Mr.A.Jahir Husain

**Encapsulation** is one of the four fundamental principles of **Object-Oriented Programming (OOP)** (along with **inheritance**, **polymorphism**, and **abstraction**). It refers to the bundling of data (attributes) and the methods (functions) that operate on that data into a single unit, usually a **class**, while restricting direct access to some of the object's components.

Encapsulation helps achieve **data hiding** and ensures that the internal representation of an object is protected from unintended or unauthorized access and modification.

- **Data Hiding:** The internal state of an object is hidden from the outside world. Only authorized methods (defined in the class) can access or modify the data.
- **Private Fields:** Typically, the fields (variables) of a class are declared as **private** to restrict direct access from outside the class.
- **Public Methods:** Access to these private fields is provided through **public getter and setter methods**, which control how the fields are read or modified.

Encapsulation not only secures the internal data but also helps maintain control over the data by enforcing rules on how it should be accessed or updated.

#### Use Encapsulation?

- **Control Access to Data:** By using getter and setter methods, you can control how important variables are accessed and modified.
- **Increased Security:** By restricting access to data, you reduce the risk of accidental or malicious changes to important fields.
- **Maintainability:** Encapsulation helps keep the code modular and easy to maintain. If the internal representation of data changes, you only need to update the methods that access the data, not the external code that uses the class.

#### Encapsulation Works in Java

In Java, encapsulation is typically achieved by:

- Declaring the fields of a class as **private**.
- Providing **public getter and setter methods** to access and update the values of these fields.



*Example of Encapsulation:*

```
java
Copy code
// Class with private fields and public getter and setter methods
public class Employee {
    // Private fields (attributes)
    private String name;
```

## CHAPTER 5

### Object –Oriented Design

Ms.R.Bhanumathi

Object-Oriented Design (OOD) is a process used in software engineering to plan a system of interacting objects for the purpose of solving a software problem. In OOD, the design of the software is based on the principles of Object-Oriented Programming (OOP), which organizes software around objects and data rather than functions and logic.

OOD is part of the larger process of Object-Oriented Analysis and Design (OOAD), where analysis defines the problem domain and OOD focuses on solving the problem through an object-oriented approach. The goal is to design a system that is modular, flexible, maintainable, and scalable.

OOD revolves around several fundamental principles that help guide the creation of robust, reusable, and maintainable software:

#### **Abstraction**

- Abstraction refers to the process of simplifying complex systems by modeling only the essential attributes and behaviors while hiding irrelevant details. In OOD, classes and objects are abstract representations of real-world entities.
- Example: A Car class might abstract away the details of how the engine works internally and expose only the behaviors that are essential to the user, such as start(), stop(), and drive().

#### Encapsulation

- Encapsulation is the concept of bundling data (attributes) and methods (functions) that operate on that data into a single unit (a class) while restricting access to some of the object's internal state. This ensures that the internal representation of an object is hidden from the outside, improving security and maintainability.
- Example: A BankAccount class might encapsulate details like the account balance and allow **access only through methods like deposit() and withdraw()**.

#### *Inheritance*

- Inheritance allows a new class (called a subclass) to inherit properties and methods from an existing class (called a superclass), promoting code reuse and logical hierarchy in the design.

- Example: A Dog class could inherit from a Mammal class, reusing the common attributes and methods related to mammals, while adding unique behaviors like bark().

## CHAPTER 6

### Design Patterns

Ms.R.Bhanumathi

**Design Patterns** are proven solutions to common software design problems. They represent best practices in software design, offering templates for solving issues related to object creation, composition, and behavior. Design patterns are categorized into three main types: **creational**, **structural**, and **behavioral**. Understanding these patterns helps developers build more maintainable, scalable, and robust systems.

#### Creational Design Patterns

Creational patterns deal with object creation mechanisms, trying to create objects in a manner suitable to the situation. These patterns abstract the instantiation process and help to manage object creation in a flexible and efficient manner.

#### Singleton Pattern

**Purpose:** Ensures a class has only one instance and provides a global point of access to it.

**Usage:** Use this pattern when you need exactly one instance of a class, such as configuration management or logging.

#### Example:

```
java
Copy code
public class Singleton {
    private static Singleton instance;

    private Singleton() {
        // Private constructor prevents instantiation
    }

    public static Singleton getInstance() {
        if (instance == null) {
            instance = new Singleton();
        }
        return instance;
    }
}
```

```
}  
}
```

### **Factory Method Pattern**

**Purpose:** Provides an interface for creating objects, but allows subclasses to alter the type of objects that will be created.

**Usage:** Use this pattern when a class cannot anticipate the type of objects it needs to create or when subclasses may need to specify the objects they create.

## **CHAPTER 7**

### **Exception Handling and Multithreading**

Ms.S.Jancy Sickory Daisy

#### **Exception Handling and Multithreading**

**Exception Handling** and **Multithreading** are fundamental aspects of modern software development. They help manage errors and improve the efficiency and responsiveness of programs. Here's an overview of both concepts:

#### **Exception Handling**

**Exception Handling** is a programming construct used to handle runtime errors, ensuring that a program can continue to operate or fail gracefully when unexpected situations arise. It helps in managing errors without crashing the program and provides a way to respond to exceptional conditions.

#### Basic Concepts

- **Exception:** An abnormal condition that arises during the execution of a program. Examples include division by zero, file not found, or network errors.
- **Try Block:** The section of code where exceptions are anticipated and monitored.
- **Catch Block:** The section of code that handles the exception thrown by the try block.
- **Finally Block:** A block of code that is executed after the try and catch blocks, regardless of whether an exception occurred or not. It is typically used for cleanup activities like closing files or releasing resources.
- **Throw Statement:** Used to explicitly throw an exception.
- **Throws Clause:** Declares that a method might throw one or more exceptions.

## Multithreading

**Multithreading** is a technique that allows a program to execute multiple threads concurrently, which can lead to better utilization of CPU resources and improved performance.

### Basic Concepts

- **Thread:** The smallest unit of execution within a process. Each thread has its own execution path but shares resources with other threads in the same process.
- **Process:** A program in execution, which contains one or more threads.
- **Concurrency:** The ability to run multiple threads simultaneously.
- **Parallelism:** A specific type of concurrency where threads run literally at the same time on different processors or cores.

## CHAPTER 8

### I/O,Generics,String Handling

Mr.S.Amaresan

#### Input/Output (I/O)

**Input/Output (I/O)** in Java provides a way to read and write data to files, the console, and other data streams. Java I/O is handled through a hierarchy of classes in the `java.io` package.

##### File I/O

- **File:** Represents a file or directory path.
- **FileInputStream** and **FileOutputStream:** Used for reading and writing binary data to files.
- **FileReader** and **FileWriter:** Used for reading and writing character data to files.
- **BufferedReader** and **BufferedWriter:** Provide efficient reading and writing of text data using buffering.

#### Serialization

- **Serialization:** The process of converting an object into a byte stream to save it to a file or transmit it over a network.
- **Deserialization:** The process of converting a byte stream back into an object.

## Generics

**Generics** in Java enable the creation of classes, interfaces, and methods with type parameters. They provide compile-time type safety and eliminate the need for type casting.

Generic Classes

### Example:

```
java
Copy code
public class Box<T> {
    private T content;

    public void setContent(T content) {
        this.content = content;
    }
}
```

## String Handling

**String Handling** in Java involves manipulating and processing strings. The `String` class and its associated classes (`StringBuilder` and `StringBuffer`) provide various methods for handling strings.

## CHAPTER 9

### Constructors

Dr.R.Latha

**Constructors** are special methods used to initialize objects when they are created. They are crucial for setting up an object's initial state and ensuring that it is ready to use immediately after creation.

#### Basic Concepts

1. **Definition:** A constructor is a block of code similar to a method that is called when an instance of a class is created. It has the same name as the class and does not have a return type.
2. **Purpose:** Constructors are used to initialize objects. They set initial values for object attributes and perform any setup steps required before the object can be used.
3. **Types of Constructors:**

- **Default Constructor:** A constructor with no parameters. If no constructors are explicitly defined, Java provides a default constructor that initializes instance variables with default values.
- **Parameterized Constructor:** A constructor that takes arguments to initialize the object with specific values.
- **Copy Constructor:** A constructor that initializes a new object as a copy of an existing object. Java does not provide this by default, but you can define it.

## Default Constructor

If no constructor is defined, Java provides a default constructor with no parameters.

### Example:

```
java
Copy code
public class Person {
    String name;
    int age;

    // Default constructor
    public Person() {
        name = "Unknown";
        age = 0;
    }

    public void display() {
        System.out.println("Name: " + name + ", Age: " + age);
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Person p = new Person(); // Calls default constructor
    }
}
```

## CHAPTER 10

### JavaFX Event Handling, Controls and Components

Dr.R.Latha

**JavaFX** is a framework for building modern, interactive graphical user interfaces (GUIs) in Java. It provides a rich set of APIs for creating and managing UI components, handling user interactions, and designing graphical interfaces.

## Event Handling in JavaFX

**Event Handling** in JavaFX involves responding to user actions such as clicks, key presses, or mouse movements. JavaFX provides an event-handling mechanism that allows developers to define how the application should react to these events.

### *1.1. Event Types*

- **Mouse Events:** Includes clicks, movements, and drags.
- **Keyboard Events:** Includes key presses and releases.
- **Action Events:** Triggered by user actions like button clicks.
- **Focus Events:** Triggered when a component gains or loses focus.

### *1.2. Event Handlers*

Event handlers are methods that handle specific events. You can attach event handlers to UI components using lambda expressions or method references.

### *Event Propagation*

JavaFX supports different types of event propagation:

- **Event Bubbling:** The event starts from the target node and bubbles up to its parent nodes.
- **Event Capturing:** The event starts from the top-level parent and travels down to the target node.

## JavaFX Controls

JavaFX provides a set of built-in controls that you can use to build interactive user interfaces.

### *2.1. Common Controls*

- **Button:** A clickable button.
- **TextField:** A single-line text input field.
- **TextArea:** A multi-line text input field.
- **Label:** Displays text.
- **CheckBox:** A checkbox for binary choices.

# DATA STRUCTURES

---

Edited by

**K.JAYANTHI**



978-93-6255-278-5



## DATA STRUCTURES

Copyright © 2019 by K.JAYANTHI

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-278-5

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	-	<b>02</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1</b> - Introduction of Data Structure	-	<b>11</b>
Mr.K.Balamurali		
<b>CHAPTER 2</b> –Arrays	-	<b>35</b>
Ms.K.Uma Shankar		
<b>CHAPTER 3</b> –Lists	-	<b>57</b>
Ms.R.Bhanumathi		
<b>CHAPTER 4</b> –Stacks and Queues	-	<b>69</b>
Mr.R.Balamurali		
<b>CHAPTER 5</b> –Trees	-	<b>84</b>
Ms.K.Uma Shankar		
<b>CHAPTER 6</b> – Multiway Search Tree and Graphs	-	<b>95</b>
Ms.V.Gayathiri		
<b>CHAPTER 7</b> – Searching and Sorting Techniques	-	<b>125</b>
Mr.T.Balasathuragiri		
<b>CHAPTER 8</b> – Heaps and Priority Queues	-	<b>159</b>
Ms.V.Gayathiri		
<b>CHAPTER 9</b> – Hash Tables	-	<b>164</b>
Mr.T.Sathuragiri		
<b>CHAPTER 10</b> – Disjoint Set Data Structure	-	<b>187</b>
Mr.R.Balamurali		
<b>REFERENCES</b>	-	<b>246</b>

# CHAPTER 1

## Introduction of Data Structure

Mr.K.Balamurali

**Data Structures** are fundamental concepts in computer science and programming that are used to store, organize, and manage data efficiently. Choosing the right data structure is crucial for optimizing performance in terms of time complexity and space complexity for various operations.

### What is a Data Structure?

A **data structure** is a way of organizing and storing data so that it can be accessed and modified efficiently. Data structures are used to manage and manipulate data in a variety of ways, depending on the requirements of the algorithm or application.

*Key Characteristics:*

- **Organization:** Defines how data is stored and accessed.
- **Efficiency:** Affects the performance of operations such as insertion, deletion, searching, and traversal.
- **Flexibility:** Some data structures are more flexible than others in terms of operations and memory usage.

### Basic Data Structures

Here's an overview of some fundamental data structures:

#### 2.1. Arrays

- **Definition:** A collection of elements identified by index or key.
- **Characteristics:** Fixed size, contiguous memory allocation.
- **Operations:** Access by index, insertion, and deletion.
- **Pros:** Fast access time ( $O(1)$  for indexing).
- **Cons:** Fixed size, costly insertions and deletions.

#### Example:

```
java
Copy code
int[] arr = {1, 2, 3, 4, 5};
System.out.println(arr[2]); // Output: 3
```

## CHAPTER 2

### Arrays

Ms.K.Uma Shankar

**Arrays** are one of the most fundamental data structures used to store a fixed-size sequential collection of elements of the same type. They are particularly useful when you need to manage a collection of items that will not change in size and where you need fast, indexed access to the elements

#### Characteristics of Arrays

##### *Fixed Size*

- **Definition:** Once an array is created, its size cannot be changed.
- **Implication:** If you need a collection with a dynamic size, arrays might not be the best choice.

##### *Indexed Access*

- **Definition:** Elements in an array are accessed using their index, starting from 0.
- **Implication:** This allows for constant-time access to elements ( $O(1)$  time complexity).

##### *Homogeneous Elements*

- **Definition:** All elements in an array must be of the same type.
- **Implication:** Arrays are not suitable if you need to store elements of different types.

##### *Contiguous Memory Allocation*

- **Definition:** Array elements are stored in contiguous memory locations.
- **Implication:** This allows for efficient access but can lead to inefficient memory usage if the array is too large.

#### Basic Operations on Arrays

##### *Declaration and Initialization*

- **Declaration:** Specifies the type and name of the array.
- **Initialization:** Allocates memory and optionally assigns values to the elements.

#### Example:

```
java  
Copy code  
// Declaration
```

## CHAPTER 3

### Lists

Ms.R.Bhanumathi

**Lists** are a fundamental data structure used to store a collection of elements, where the order of elements is significant and where duplicate elements are allowed. Unlike arrays, lists can dynamically grow or shrink in size. Lists are widely used due to their flexibility and ease of use in various programming scenarios.

#### Types of Lists

There are several types of lists, each with different characteristics and use cases. In Java, common types include ArrayList, LinkedList, and Vector.

##### *ArrayList*

- **Definition:** A resizable array implementation of the List interface.
- **Characteristics:**
  - Provides fast random access to elements ( $O(1)$  time complexity).
  - Supports dynamic resizing.
  - Slower insertions and deletions compared to LinkedList, especially in the middle of the list.
- **Usage:** Preferred when frequent access to elements is required and insertions/deletions are less frequent.

##### *LinkedList*

- **Definition:** A doubly linked list implementation of the List interface.
- **Characteristics:**
  - Provides efficient insertions and deletions ( $O(1)$  time complexity) when the position is known.
  - Slower random access compared to ArrayList ( $O(n)$  time complexity).
  - Supports operations such as adding/removing elements at both ends (queue operations).
- **Usage:** Preferred when frequent insertions/deletions are required.

##### *Vector*

- **Definition:** A synchronized, resizable array implementation of the List interface.
- **Characteristics:**
  - Thread-safe due to synchronization.
  - Slower compared to ArrayList due to synchronization overhead.
- **Usage:** Less commonly used in modern applications, replaced by ArrayList for most purposes.

## CHAPTER 4

### Stacks and Queues

Mr.R.Balamurali

A **stack** is a linear data structure that follows the Last In, First Out (LIFO) principle. This means that the most recently added element is the first one to be removed.

#### Key Operations

- **Push:** Add an element to the top of the stack.
- **Pop:** Remove the element from the top of the stack.
- **Peek (or Top):** Retrieve the top element without removing it.
- **isEmpty:** Check if the stack is empty.

#### Implementation

In Java, you can use the Stack class from the Java Collections Framework or implement a stack using ArrayList or LinkedList.

#### Use Cases

- **Function Call Management:** Tracking function calls and returns.
- **Undo Mechanisms:** Keeping track of previous actions in applications.
- **Expression Evaluation:** Parsing and evaluating mathematical expressions.

## Queues

#### Definition

A **queue** is a linear data structure that follows the First In, First Out (FIFO) principle. This means that the first element added is the first one to be removed.

#### Key Operations

- **Enqueue:** Add an element to the rear of the queue.
- **Dequeue:** Remove the element from the front of the queue.
- **Peek (or Front):** Retrieve the front element without removing it.
- **isEmpty:** Check if the queue is empty.

#### Implementation

In Java, you can use the Queue interface and its implementations such as LinkedList, PriorityQueue, or ArrayDeque.

## CHAPTER 5

### Trees

Ms.K.Uma Shankar

**Trees** are a hierarchical data structure used to represent relationships between elements. They consist of nodes connected by edges and are widely used in computer science for various applications.

#### Types of Trees

##### Binary Tree

- **Definition:** A tree where each node has at most two children (left and right).
- **Characteristics:** Can be used to implement binary search trees and heaps.

##### Binary Search Tree (BST)

- **Definition:** A binary tree where for each node, the left subtree contains only nodes with values less than the node's value, and the right subtree contains only nodes with values greater than the node's value.
- **Characteristics:** Used for efficient searching, insertion, and deletion.

##### . AVL Tree

- **Definition:** A self-balancing binary search tree where the height difference between the left and right subtrees of any node is at most 1.
- **Characteristics:** Maintains balance through rotations, ensuring  $O(\log n)$  time complexity for insertions, deletions, and lookups.

##### Red-Black Tree

- **Definition:** A balanced binary search tree with additional properties to ensure the tree remains balanced.
- **Characteristics:** Nodes are colored red or black, and balancing is enforced through specific rules during insertions and deletions.

##### B-Tree

- **Definition:** A self-balancing tree data structure that maintains sorted data and allows searches, sequential access, insertions, and deletions in logarithmic time.
- **Characteristics:** Used in databases and file systems. Each node can have multiple children.

## CHAPTER 6

### Multiway Search Tree and Graphs

Ms.V.Gayathiri

**Multiway search trees** are data structures that generalize binary search trees to allow nodes with more than two children. They are particularly useful for managing large datasets and are commonly used in databases and file systems.

#### B-Trees

##### Definition

A **B-tree** is a self-balancing search tree in which nodes can have multiple children. It is commonly used in databases and file systems to maintain sorted data and allow efficient insertion, deletion, and search operations.

##### Properties

- **Balanced:** All leaf nodes are at the same depth.
- **Order:** The maximum number of children for a node is determined by the order  $m$  of the B-tree. Each node can have between  $\lceil m/2 \rceil$  and  $m$  children.
- **Keys:** Each node contains multiple keys, and keys are sorted within each node.

##### Operations

- **Insertion:** Insert keys into nodes, split nodes if necessary to maintain balance.
- **Deletion:** Remove keys and adjust the tree to ensure all nodes are within the required bounds.
- **Search:** Efficiently search for keys by traversing from the root to the appropriate leaf node.

##### Example of B-Tree Properties:

- **Order 3 B-Tree:** Each node can have up to 3 children and contain up to 2 keys.

##### Use Cases

- **Database Indexing:** Used in databases to provide efficient access to data.
- **File Systems:** Helps in managing files and directories.

#### B+ Trees

##### Definition

A **B+ tree** is a variation of the B-tree where all values are stored in the leaf nodes, and internal nodes only store keys to guide the search.



## CHAPTER 7

### Searching and Sorting Techniques

Mr.T.Balasathuragiri

#### Searching Techniques

##### . Linear Search

- Definition: A simple searching algorithm that sequentially checks each element in the collection until the desired element is found or the end is reached.
- Time Complexity:  $O(n)$
- Use Case: Suitable for small or unsorted datasets.

##### Binary Search

- Definition: A more efficient search algorithm that works on sorted arrays. It repeatedly divides the search interval in half.
- Time Complexity:  $O(\log n)$
- Use Case: Requires a sorted dataset.

#### Sorting Techniques

##### Bubble Sort

- Definition: A simple sorting algorithm that repeatedly steps through the list, compares adjacent elements, and swaps them if they are in the wrong order.
- Time Complexity:  $O(n^2)$
- Use Case: Educational purposes; not suitable for large datasets due to inefficiency.

##### Selection Sort

- Definition: A sorting algorithm that divides the input into a sorted and unsorted region, selecting the smallest (or largest) element from the unsorted region and moving it to the end of the sorted region.
- Time Complexity:  $O(n^2)$
- Use Case: Simple to implement but not efficient for large datasets.

##### . Insertion Sort

- Definition: A sorting algorithm that builds the final sorted array one item at a time by repeatedly picking the next item and inserting it into the correct position.
- Time Complexity:  $O(n^2)$
- Use Case: Efficient for small or nearly sorted datasets.

## CHAPTER 8

### Heaps and Priority Queues

Ms.V.Gayathiri

#### Heaps

A **heap** is a specialized tree-based data structure that satisfies the heap property. The heap property ensures that:

- **Max-Heap:** The value of each node is greater than or equal to the values of its children. The largest value is at the root.
- **Min-Heap:** The value of each node is less than or equal to the values of its children. The smallest value is at the root.

#### . Properties

- **Complete Binary Tree:** Heaps are always complete binary trees, meaning all levels are fully filled except possibly the last level, which is filled from left to right.
- **Heap Order Property:** Ensures that the parent node's value is greater (or smaller) than its children nodes' values.

#### Operations

1. **Insertion:**
  - Add the new element at the end of the heap (last level).
  - Restore the heap property by "bubbling up" (or "heapifying up") the new element.
2. **Deletion:**
  - Remove the root element (max or min).
  - Replace it with the last element in the heap.
  - Restore the heap property by "bubbling down" (or "heapifying down") the root element.

#### Priority Queues

##### Definition

A **priority queue** is an abstract data type where each element has a priority associated with it. Elements are served based on their priority, with higher (or lower) priority elements being served before others.

##### Implementation

- **Using a Heap:** The most common implementation uses a heap (typically a binary heap) to support efficient insertion and removal of the element with the highest or l

## CHAPTER 9

### Hash Table

Mr.T.Sathuragiri

A **hash table** (or hash map) is a data structure that provides a way to efficiently store and retrieve values using keys. It uses a hash function to compute an index into an array of buckets or slots, from which the desired value can be found.

#### Hash Function

- **Definition:** A function that takes an input (or key) and returns an integer, which is used as an index to store the value in the hash table.
- **Properties:**
  - **Deterministic:** The same input always produces the same output.
  - **Uniform Distribution:** Ideally, it should distribute keys uniformly across the array to minimize collisions.

#### Collision

- **Definition:** Occurs when two keys hash to the same index.
- **Resolution Techniques:**
  - **Chaining:** Store multiple elements in the same index using a linked list or other data structures.
  - **Open Addressing:** Find another slot within the hash table by probing.

#### Collision Resolution Techniques

##### Chaining

- **Definition:** Uses linked lists to handle collisions. Each slot in the hash table points to a list of entries that hash to the same index.

##### Open Addressing

- **Definition:** All elements are stored in the array itself. When a collision occurs, it uses probing to find an empty slot.

#### Example:

```
java
Copy code
class HashTableLinearProbing {
    private String[] table;
    private int[] values;
    private int capacity;
```

## CHAPTER 10

### Disjoint Set Data Structure

Mr.R.Balamurali

The **Disjoint Set Data Structure** (also known as Union-Find) is a data structure used to manage a collection of non-overlapping sets. It supports two primary operations efficiently:

1. **Find:** Determine which set a particular element belongs to.
2. **Union:** Merge two sets into one.

It's commonly used in algorithms that deal with partitioning and grouping, such as Kruskal's algorithm for finding the Minimum Spanning Tree (MST) and in network connectivity problems.

#### Basic Concepts

##### Operations

1. **Find:** This operation determines the representative (or root) of the set that contains a particular element. It often involves path compression to speed up future queries.
2. **Union:** This operation merges two sets. It typically uses union by rank (or size) to ensure that the tree representing the sets remains balanced, which helps keep operations efficient.

#### Implementation Details

##### Union-Find with Path Compression

Path compression helps keep the tree flat by making nodes on the path point directly to the root. This drastically speeds up future find operations.

#### Applications

1. **Kruskal's Algorithm:** Used for finding the Minimum Spanning Tree (MST) of a graph. The union-find structure helps efficiently check and merge connected components.
2. **Network Connectivity:** Used in networking to determine if two nodes are in the same connected component.
3. **Image Processing:** Used for connected component labeling in image segmentation.
4. **Cycle Detection:** In graph theory, it helps in detecting cycles in an undirected graph.

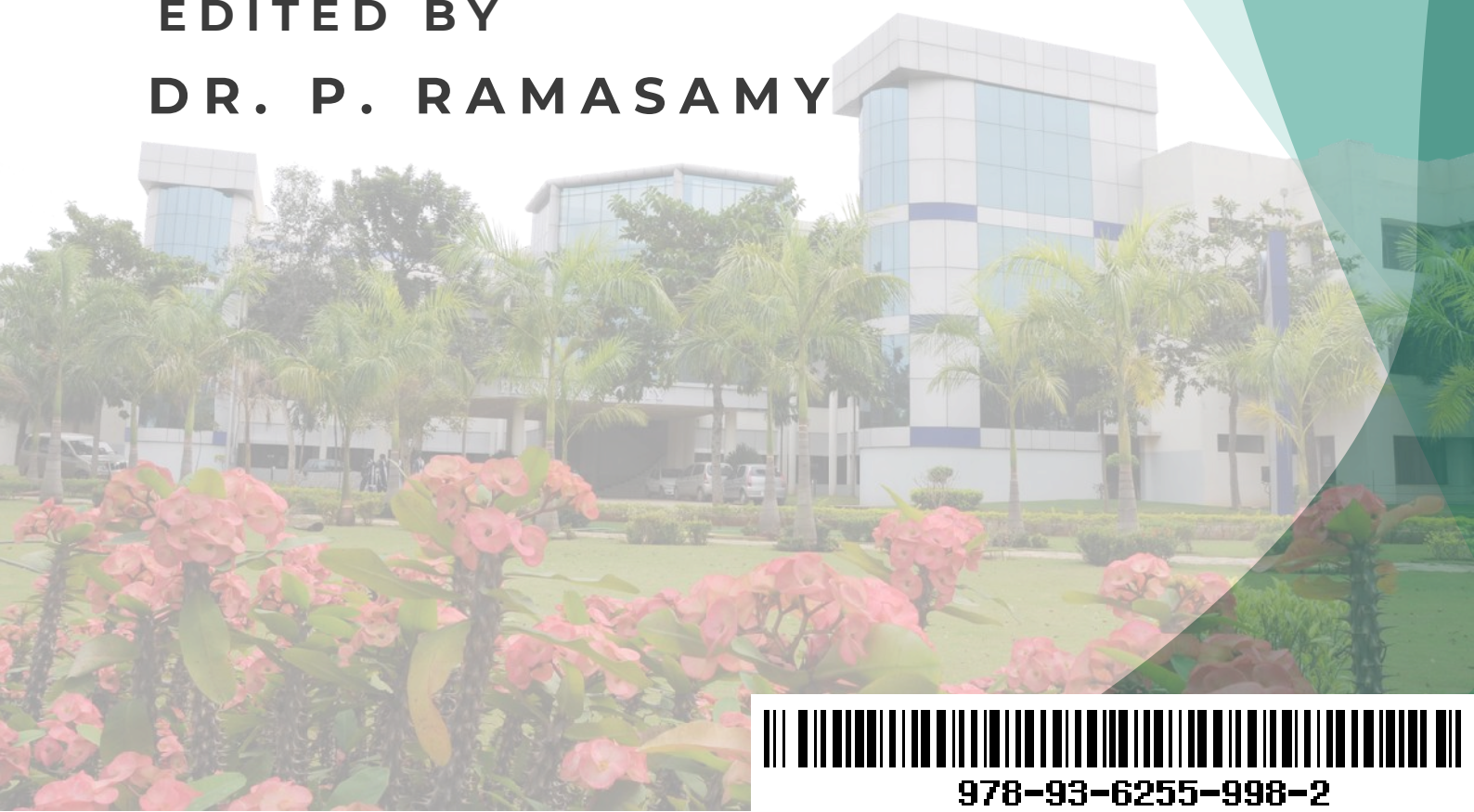
#### Union-Find with Union by Size

Instead of using rank, union by size merges the smaller tree into the larger tree. This also keeps the tree balanced and improves efficiency.



# **BIOSAFETY AND BIODIVERSITY**

**EDITED BY  
DR. P. RAMASAMY**



**978-93-6255-998-2**

**BIOSAFETY AND BIODIVERSITY**  
**Copyright © 2019 by Dr. P. RAMASAMY**

**All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.**

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-998-2**

**Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology  
(PRIST)**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**Chapter 1:** History behind the Protocol on Biosafety.....01  
Dr. P. Ramaswamy

**Chapter 2:** LMOs: Applications and status.....12  
Dr. P.Manonmani

**Chapter3:** Regulations of LMOs in India.....27  
Dr. T. Veeramani

**Chapter 4:** Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety.....43  
Dr. C. Anushia

**Chapter 5:** Safety assessment methodologies.....60  
Dr. Arjunpandian

**Chapter 6:** Detection of LMOs.....75  
Dr. A. Shajahan

**Chapter 7:** Introduction of biosafety.....92  
Dr. T. Veeramani

**Chapter 8:** Hotspots of Biodiversity, Threats To Biodiversity, Habitat.....112  
Dr. RV. Shalini

**Chapter 9:** Biodiversity and its conservation.....122  
Dr. T. Veeramani

**Chapter 10:** The Convention on Biological Diversity.....132  
Dr .P. Ramaswamy

**REFERENCES:**.....145



## Chapter:1

### HISTORY BEHIND THE PROTOCOL ON BIOSAFETY

**Dr. P. Ramaswamy**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur*

#### INTRODUCTION:

Throughout this history biosafety-related issues were discussed in a number of international fora at the same time and in many instances parallel exercises made a complicated issue even more complicated. At least one of the forums, namely the third WTO Ministerial Conference held in Seattle in 1999, could be seen as having been initiated in order to disrupt the CPB negotiation process. Both because of the many processes and also the complicated subject matter, it is impossible to outline the history of behind the CPB in a satisfactory manner. What follows is only a very brief overview undoubtedly marked by my personal experience. No doubt other participants in the process would have written “the history behind and of” in a different way focusing on other issues.

The road to the CPB is, roughly speaking, characterized by five phases containing elements typical for any process leading to an international environmental agreement.\* 2. The first phase – problem identification The first phase (1970s and '80s) can be described as the period when the biotechnology issue emerged. As public concern grew over the implications of genetically modified organisms (GMOs) arising from biotechnology, questions arose in various fields. On the scientific front, there were queries regarding the possible harmful effects of GMOs while environmental discussions focused on whether GMOs would further sustainable development or not.

The second phase – framework development The late 1980s and the beginning of the 1990s saw the development of an international framework to address biosafety issues as well as biosafety guidelines. An Informal Working Group on Biosafety was created in 1985 (comprising UNIDO, UNEP, WHO and later FAO) and the UNIDO Voluntary Code of Conduct for the Release of Organisms into the Environment (1992) as well as the OECD Safety Considerations for Biotechnology were issued. Likewise, in 1993 the FAO Draft Code of Conduct on Biotechnology (1993) was elaborated. During the same period, Agenda 21 was adopted (in June 1992) during the UN Conference on Environment and Development. Chapter 16, section 4, of Agenda 21 called for the development of “compatible safety procedures into a framework of internationally agreed principles as a basis for guidelines to be applied on safety in biotechnology, including considerations of the need for and possibility of an international agreement....”. During this phase, the UK and the Netherlands also initiated, and to a large extent, elaborated UNEP International Technical Guidelines for Safety in Biotechnology.

## Chapter: 2

### LMOS: APPLICATIONS AND STATUS

**Dr. P. Manonmani**

*Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur*

#### INTRODUCTION

The Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety (CPB) to the Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD) is an international treaty governing the movements of living modified organisms (LMOs) resulting from modern biotechnology from one country to another. It was adopted on 29 January, 2000 as a supplementary agreement to the CBD and entered into force on 11 September, 2003. The CPB has been developed in response to advancements in the area of modern biotechnology and associated concerns that LMOs resulting from modern biotechnology may have negative effects on biodiversity and human health. As on January 2019, 171 countries have ratified or acceded to the Protocol. India is a party to CBD and CPB. Biotechnology, in the form of traditional fermentation techniques, has been used for decades to make bread, cheese or beer. It has also been the basis of traditional animal and plant breeding techniques, such as hybridization and the selection of plants and animals with specific characteristics to create, for example, crops which produce higher yields of grain. Modern biotechnology, meanwhile, employs advanced techniques such as genetic engineering or recombinant deoxyribonucleic acid (rDNA) technology whereby researchers can take a single gene from a plant or animal cell and insert it in another plant or animal cell to give it a desired characteristic, such as a plant that is resistant to a specific pest or disease. Such living organisms that possess a novel combination of genetic material obtained through the use of modern biotechnology are referred to as LMOs. In everyday usage, LMOs are usually considered to be the same as genetically modified organism (GMO), genetically engineered (GE) organism but definitions and interpretations of the term vary widely. GMOs/LMOs form the basis of a range of products and commodities used in wide range.

GMOs/LMOs form the basis of a range of products and commodities used in wide range of applications in healthcare, agriculture, industry etc. Since the release of the first product i.e. human insulin derived from GE bacteria in 1982 followed by commercialization of genetically modified (GM) crops in the mid-90s, products and processes involving modern biotechnology have been extensively used globally. In parallel, there are increasing debates about safety Introduction LMOs Biodiversity and Biosafety: National & International Regulations 2 concerns among various stakeholders related to their impact on health, environment and biodiversity. Many countries with active biotechnology research programmes including India have put in place biosafety regulations to deal with these safety issues. The Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change (MoEFCC) is the nodal Ministry for implementation of biosafety regulations in India and implementation of CPB. MoEFCC has taken several initiatives for

## **Chapter: 3**

### **REGULATIONS OF LMOS IN INDIA**

**Dr. T. Veeramani**

*Research Associate , Department of Biotechnology  
Bharathidasan University, Thanjavur*

#### **INTRODUCTION**

The use of LMOs in India is governed by the “Rules for the Manufacture/Use/Import/Export and Storage of Hazardous Microorganisms, Genetically Engineered Organisms or Cells, 1989” (Rules 1989) notified under the Environment (Protection) Act, 1986. Rules, 1989 essentially cover entire spectrum of activities involving GMOs and products thereof including the sale, storage, exportation, importation, production, manufacturing, packaging etc. The Rules, 1989 are implemented by the MoEFCC, the Department of Biotechnology (DBT) of Ministry of Science & Technology and State Governments through six competent authorities viz.

- (i) Recombinant DNA Advisory Committee (RDAC)
- (ii) Institutional Biosafety Committee (IBSCs)
- (iii) Review Committee on Genetic Manipulation (RCGM)
- (iv) Genetic Engineering Appraisal Committee (GEAC)
- (v) State Biotechnology Coordination committee (SBCC)
- (vi) District Level Committee (DLC).

While the RDAC is advisory in function, the IBSC, RCGM, and GEAC are of regulatory function, SBCC and DLC are for monitoring purposes

In India, no person can import, export, transport, manufacture, store, process, use or sell any LMOs, substances or cells except with the approval of GEAC. RCGM is authorised to permit imports only for research purpose. Deliberate or unintentional release of LMOs is not be allowed. Production in which LMOs are generated or used cannot be commenced except with the approval of GEAC. All approvals are for limited period as per Rules, 1989. GEAC has powers to revoke approvals in case of any new information on harmful effects of LMOs, any damage to the environment that could not be envisaged when approval was given or non-compliance of any conditions stipulated by GEAC. Details of applicable rules, guidelines and decisions of GEAC can be accessed.

## Chapter: 4

### CARTAGENA PROTOCOL ON BIOSAFETY

**Dr. C. Anushia**

*Associate Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur*

#### INTRODUCTION

In addition to national regulations, international agreements also impact the activities involving LMOs. A supplementary agreement under the aegis of Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD) was adopted on 29 January, 2000, the Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety (CPB). The CPB entered into force on 11 September, 2003 and has 171 countries Party to it as on March, 2019. India ratified the CPB on January 23, 2003. Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change (MoEF&CC), Govt. of India is the nodal ministry. The CPB applies to transboundary movement, transit, handling and use of all LMOs that may have adverse effects on the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity, taking also into account risks to human health. LMOs covered under the CPB are categorized as under: • LMOs for intentional introduction into the environment (seedlings, trees, animals for breeding, live fish, bacteria or other microorganisms) • LMOs intended for direct use as food or feed, or for processing (e.g. agricultural commodities corn, canola, cotton) • LMOs for contained use (e.g. bacteria for laboratory scientific experiment) Exemptions under the Protocol include LMOs that are pharmaceutical for humans if they are covered by other international agreements or arrangements and products derived from LMOs such as processed food (e.g. soybean oil, corn flour)

The CPB promotes biosafety by establishing practical rules and procedures for the safe transfer, handling and use of LMOs, with specific focus on regulating the transboundary movement of LMOs. There are 40 Articles in the CPB, which could be categorized into key elements and supporting tools and mechanisms. The four key elements include procedures for transboundary movement of LMOs, risk assessment and risk management, handling, transport, packaging and identification and information sharing specific procedures have been defined for LMOs for intentional introduction into the environment, that are subjected to advanced informed agreement procedures vs. LMOs for direct use as FFP that may be subjected to a separate procedure. Biosafety protocol requires decisions on import of LMOs for intentional introduction into the environment in accordance with scientifically sound risk assessments. These assessments aim at identifying and ev Parties to adopt measures and strategies for preventing adverse effects and for managing and controlling risks identified by risk assessments

## Chapter: 5

### SAFETY ASSESSMENT METHODOLOGIES

**Dr. Arjunpandian**

*Associate Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur*

#### INTRODUCTION

As with any new emerging technologies, safety concerns have been expressed with the use of LMO because of the perception that modern biotechnology tools such as genetic engineering lead to creation of new species. LMO and products has been accepted more readily in healthcare, as these are directly beneficial for consumers (e.g. vaccines, medicines with improved treatment potential or increased safety). On the other hand, GE plants have been a subject of intense debate. Safety concerns associated with the use of GE plants broadly relate to risk to human and animal health, and environment. These differ greatly depending on gene-crop combination, and may include: • Potential risk of introducing toxins, allergens and other anti-nutrition factors in foods • Potential likelihood of transgenes escaping from cultivated crops into wild relatives • Changes in weediness potential • Interaction with non-target organisms • Resistance/tolerance of target organisms Systematic safety assessment methodologies are in place that have been agreed on years of consultations under the aegis of international organizations and agreements viz. FAO, WHO, Codex Alimentarius, OECD and Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety (CPB). Annex III to the CPB sets forth the objectives of the risk assessment, what the risk assessment will be used for, general principles that the risk assessment must follow, the methodology of the risk assessment and particular points to consider when assessing the potential risks of LMOs. The key provisions include.

Risk assessments must be carried out in a scientifically sound manner

- Risk assessments should be comparative
- Risk assessments should be carried out on a case-by-case basis, taking into account the specific circumstances or context for each individual application
- Risk assessments should be made available to the public to ensure transparency of the risk assessment process Risk assessors use scientific data regarding potential hazards and exposure to of adverse impacts on populations of organisms as well as on communities of organisms and their diversity. In case of a GE plant, a risk may exist if it possesses an introduced trait having the potential to adversely impact individual species, ecosystems or biodiversity and these potential risks must be evaluated before the GE plant may be authorized for widespread planting. The potential changes introduced in GE plants are assessed using comparative risk assessment approach. The underline assumption of this comparative approach is that traditionally cultivated crop has a history of safe use and thus serves as the comparator. As a consequence, safety assessment process gives conclusion on whether or not the GE plant is as safe as its conventional non-GE counterpart. Impact on human health is studied by analyzing the modified organism for the risks of toxicity, allergenicity, nutritional analysis etc. as relevant to the particular situation of targeted genetic modification. The toxicity and allergenicity assessment takes into account the

## Chapter: 6

### DETECTION OF LMOs

**Dr. A. Shajahan**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur*

#### INTRODUCTION

The objective of this section is to introduce the methods used to detect presence of LMO in a sample of seeds or plant material, to identify which LMOs are present and to calculate the quantity. In many instances, this work will not be done by frontline seed inspectors may be performed by seed testing or other laboratories. Reasons for testing of LMOs in a sample include screening for the presence of LMOs, testing for specific LMOs and quantification of LMOs. For countries that have not approved the import of any LMO, the detection of any GM content in a sample would mean that consignment is not allowed for sale or cultivation. Testing for specific LMOs is done to verify that the LMOs declared in the documentation accompanying the consignment is actually present. Another objective is to test for LMOs that have not been declared as being in the sample. This is important if a country has authorized some LMOs but not others and wants to make sure that unauthorized LMOs are not cultivated in country. Testing for LMOs also used to calculate the quantity of GM content in a sample in the context of labeling. Methods for detecting LMOs: As indicated in Section 1, a LMO is created by inserting a gene from one organism into the DNA of another organism and this new gene usually leads the organism to produce a protein that gives the organism a desired characteristics. In view of the above, there are two basic approaches to test the LMOs. These include protein-based methods for testing for the proteins produced by the gene that has been inserted into the LMO and DNA based testing for the introduced gene itself.

#### **Protein based methods:**

These methods can be used for screening (yes/no) and quantification of expressed protein in a LMO using strip test and ELISA based test respectively. i) Strip tests are simplest of all the detection methods. Strip test kits produced by different companies, include specially coated paper strips that are designed to detect specific proteins produced by different LMOs. i) ELISA based test: This test uses antibody (polyclonal or monoclonal) raised against a specific protein encoded by transgene. These antibodies are colour coated to enable them to be easily detected and quantified. The kits for ELISA test are also produced by companies that specialize in LMO testing. ELISA kits include plastic plates with number of wells, which are pre-treated so that the protein of interest in the sample will stick to the well. DNA based testing: The DNA that is introduced into an organisms to create a LMO consists of several componDNA-based testing involves testing for any of the components of a gene construct. Some of the components e.g.

## **Chapter: 7**

### **INTRODUCTION OF BIOSAFETY**

**Dr. T. Veeramani**

*Research Associate , Department of Biotechnology  
Bharathidasan University, Thanjavur*

#### **INTRODUCTION**

Biosafety is the prevention of large-scale loss of biological integrity, focusing both on ecology and human health. These prevention mechanisms include conduction of regular reviews of the biosafety in laboratory settings, as well as strict guidelines to follow. Biosafety is used to protect from harmful incidents. Many laboratories handling biohazards employ an ongoing risk management assessment and enforcement process for biosafety. Failures to follow such protocols can lead to increased risk of exposure to biohazards or pathogens. Human error and poor technique contribute to unnecessary exposure and compromise the best safeguards set into place for protection. The international Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety deals primarily with the agricultural definition but many advocacy groups seek to expand it to include post-genetic threats: new molecules, artificial life forms, and even robots which may compete directly in the natural food chain.

Biosafety level refers to the stringency of biocontainment precautions deemed necessary by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) for laboratory work with infectious materials. Typically, institutions that experiment with or create potentially harmful biological material will have a committee or board of supervisors that is in charge of the institution's biosafety. They create and monitor the biosafety standards that must be met by labs in order to prevent the accidental release of potentially destructive biological material. (note that in the US, several groups are involved, and efforts are being made to improve processes for government run labs, but there is no unifying regulatory authority for all labs.

## Chapter: 8

### HOTSPOTS OF BIODIVERSITY, THREATS TO BIODIVERSITY, HABITAT

**Dr. A. Shajahan**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur*

#### INTRODUCTION

The earth's biodiversity is distributed in specific ecological regions. There are over a thousand major ecoregions in the world. Of these, 200 are said to be the richest, rarest and most distinctive natural areas. These areas are referred to as the Global 200. It has been estimated that 50,000 endemic plants which comprise 20% of global plant life, probably occur in only 18 'hot spots' in the world. Countries which have a relatively large proportion of these hot spots of diversity are referred to as 'megadiversity nations'. The rate at which the extinction of species is occurring throughout our country remains obscure. It is likely to be extremely high as our wilderness areas are shrinking rapidly. Our globally accepted national 'hot spots' are in the forests of the North-East and the Western Ghats, which are included in the world's most bio-rich areas. The Andaman and Nicobar Islands are extremely rich in species and many subspecies of different animals and birds have evolved. Among the endemic species i.e. those species found only in India, a large proportion are concentrated in these three areas. The Andaman and Nicobar Islands alone have as many as 2200 species of flowering plants and 120 species of ferns.

Out of 135 genera of land mammals in India, 85 (63%) are found in the Northeast. The Northeast States have 1,500 endemic plant species. A major proportion of amphibian and reptile species, especially snakes, are concentrated in the Western Ghats, which is also a habitat for 1,500 endemic plant species. It is likely to be extremely high as our wilderness areas are shrinking rapidly. Our globally accepted national 'hot spots' are in the forests of the North-East and the Western Ghats, which are included in the world's most bio-rich areas. The Andaman and Nicobar Islands are extremely rich in species and many subspecies of different animals and birds have evolved. Among the endemic species i.e. those species found only in India, a large proportion are concentrated in these three areas. The Andaman and Nicobar Islands alone have as many as 2200 species of flowering plants and 120 species of ferns. Out of 135 genera of land



## **Chapter: 9**

### **BIODIVERSITY AND ITS CONSERVATION**

**Dr. T. Veeramani**

*Research Associate , Department of Biotechnology  
Bharathidasan University, Thanjavur*

#### **INTRODUCTION**

If we divide the whole earth's mass into 10 billion parts, it is only in one part where life exists and the astounding variety of living organisms numbering somewhere around 50 million species are all restricted to just about a kilometer- thick layer of soil, water and air. Isn't it wonderful to see that so much diversity has been created by nature on this earth from so little physical matter! Biodiversity refers to the variety and variability among all groups of living organisms and the ecosystem complexes in which they occur. From the driest deserts to the dense tropical rainforests and from the high snow-clad mountain peaks to the deepest of ocean trenches, life occurs in a marvellous spectrum of forms, size, colour and shape, each with unique ecological inter-relationships. Just imagine how monotonous and dull the world would have been had there been only a few species of living organisms that could be counted on fingertips! In the Convention of Biological diversity (1992) biodiversity has been defined as the variability among living organisms from all sources including inter alia, terrestrial, marine and other aquatic ecosystems and the ecological complexes of which they are a part. Levels of Biodiversity Units of biodiversity may range from the genetic level within a species

#### **GENETIC DIVERSITY:**

It is the basic source of biodiversity. The genes found in organisms can form enormous number of combinations each of which gives rise to some variability. Genes are the basic units of hereditary information transmitted from one generation to other. When the genes within the same species show different versions due to new combinations, it is called genetic variability. For example, all rice varieties belong to the species *Oryza sativa*, but there are thousands of wild and cultivated varieties of rice which show variations at the genetic level and differ in their color, size, shape, aroma and nutrient content of the grain. This is the genetic diversity of rice.

## Chapter: 10

### THE CONVENTION ON BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY

**Dr. P. Ramaswamy**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur*

#### INTRODUCTION

The Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), known informally as the Biodiversity Convention, is a multilateral treaty. The Convention has three main goals including

1. the conservation of biological diversity (or biodiversity)

2. the sustainable use of its components; and


3. the fair and equitable sharing of benefits arising from genetic resource In other words, its objective is to develop national strategies for the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity. It is often seen as the key document regarding sustainable development. The Convention was opened for signature at the Earth Summit in Rio de Janeiro on 5 June 1992 and entered into force on 29 December 1993. IMPORTANCE OF CBD CBD is a land mark in international law on environment because:

- For the first time it recognized that the conservation of biological diversity is “a common concern of humankind” and is an integral part of the development process.

- It covers all ecosystems, species, and genetic resources

- It links traditional conservation efforts to the economic goal of using biological resources sustainably.
- It sets principles for the fair and equitable sharing of the benefits arising from the use of genetic resources, notably those destined for commercial use.

- It also covers the rapidly expanding field of biotechnology, addressing technology development and transfer, benefit-sharing and bio-safety. Since the Convention is legally binding; countries that join it are obliged to implement its provisions. National Biodiversity Strategies and Action Plans (NBSAPs) are the principal instruments for implementing the



# **MOLECULAR GENETICS QUESTION**

Edited By

**DR. G. VENKATKUMAR**



**978-93-6255-374-4**

**MOLECULAR GENETICS QUESTION**  
**Copyright © 2019 by Dr. G. VENKATKUMAR**

**All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.**

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-374-4**

**Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)**

## TABLE OF THE CONTENTS

<b>TITLE</b>	<b>Pg. No</b>
<b>Chapter:1 MCQs ON MOLECULAR BASIS OF INHERITANCE</b> Dr. G. Venkatkumar	<b>1</b>
<b>Chapter:2 QUESTION BANK DNA REPLICATION</b> Dr. R. Arunkumar	<b>10</b>
<b>Chapter:3 QUESTION PAPER TRANSLATION</b> Dr. P. Manonmani	<b>21</b>
<b>Chapter:4 QUESTION PAPER ENZYME</b> Mr. R. Kamaraj	<b>30</b>
<b>Chapter:5 QUESTION BANK - GENE EXPRESSION</b> Dr. T. Veeramani	<b>40</b>
<b>Chapter:6 MOLECULAR GENETICS - QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>Chapter:7 GENETICS - QUESTION BANK</b> Dr. C. Anushia	<b>61</b>
<b>REFERENCES</b>	<b>71</b>

## Chapter: 1

### MCQs on Molecular Basis of Inheritance

**Dr. G. Venkatkumar**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur*

#### **1. The nucleic acid synthesis takes place in**

1. 3'-5' direction
2. 5'-3' direction
3. Both ways
4. Any direction

#### **2. What is the nature of the strands of the DNA duplex?**

1. Anti-parallel and complementary
2. Identical and complementary
3. Anti-parallel and non-complementary
4. Dissimilar and non-complementary

Also read: DNA structure

#### **3. Hershey and Chase's experiment was based on the principle**

1. Transformation
2. Translation
3. Transduction
4. Transcription

Also read: Hershey and Chase Experiment

#### **4. AUG stands for**

1. Alanine
2. Methionine
3. N-formyl methionine
4. Glycine

#### **5. The reason behind the anti-parallel strand of DNA is**

1. Hydrogen bond
2. Ionic bond
3. Phosphodiester bond
4. Disulphide bond

#### **6. In a transcription unit, the promoter is located towards**

1. 5' end of the structural gene
2. 3' end of the structural gene
3. 5' end of the template strand
4. 3' end of the coding strand

## Chapter: 2

### Question Bank DNA replication

**Dr. R. Arunkumar**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur*

#### 1. The primer in DNA replication is

1. Small ribonucleotide polymer
2. Helix destabilizing protein
3. Small deoxyribonucleotide polymer
4. Enzyme joining nucleotides of new strands

#### 2. Genetic information is transferred from nucleus to cytoplasm through

1. RNA
2. Anticodon
3. DNA
4. Lysosomes

Also read: RNA

#### 3. The enzyme involved in transcription

1. DNA Polymerase I
2. DNA Polymerase III
3. RNA Polymerase
4. DNA Polymerase II

#### 4. Non-sense codons participate in

1. Releasing t-RNA from polynucleotide chain
2. Formation of unspecified amino acids
3. Terminating message of gene-controlled protein synthesis
4. Conversion of sense DNA into non-sense DNA

#### 5. The proofreading enzyme in DNA replication is

1. Primase
2. DNA Polymerase I
3. Ligase
4. DNA Polymerase II

Also read: DNA Replication

#### 6. Select a ribozyme

1. Peptidyltransferase
2. Helicase
3. Ribonuclease-P
4. Both (a) and (c)

**Chapter 3**  
**Question paper - Translation**

**Dr. P. Manonmani**

*Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur*

**1. Which step does not occur in translation?**

1. Replication
2. Termination
3. Elongation
4. Initiation

Also read: Protein Synthesis

**2. Select the incorrectly matched pairs**

1. Purines – Nitrogenous bases cytosine, thymine and uracil
2. Recombinant DNA – DNA formed by joining the DNA segments from two different sources
3. rRNA – RNA found in ribosomes
4. ATP – The energy-carrying compound in the cell

**3. The energy source for the elongation process is**

1. Creatine-PO<sub>4</sub>
2. GTP
3. ATP
4. All of the above

**4. The anticodon of initiation codon for protein synthesis is**

1. UUU
2. AUG
3. UAC
4. CAU

Also read: Genetic Code

**5. In lac-operon, which protein is not regulated by the repressor?**

1. Galactosidase
2. Lactose Permease
3. Tryptophan
4. Transacetylase

Also read: Lac-operon



**Chapter 4**  
**Question paper - Enzyme**

**Mr. R. Kamaraj**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur*

**1. Which enzyme is not produced during lactose catabolism by E.coli?**

1.  $\beta$ -galactosidase
2. Lactose Permease
3. Thiogalactosidetransacetylase
4. Lactose dehydrogenase

**2. The eukaryotic replication of DNA is**

1. Bidirectional with many origins
2. Unidirectional with many origins
3. Bidirectional with a single origin
4. Unidirectional with a single origin

**3. The amino acid coded by 3 codons is**

1. Proline
2. Isoleucine
3. Tryptophan
4. Serine

Also read: Amino acids

**4. Spliceosomes are absent in the cells of**

1. Plants
2. Animals
3. Bacteria
4. Fungi

**5. A molecule that acts as a genetic material must fulfil the following traits, except**

1. It should be structurally and chemically unstable
2. It should have the ability to generate its replica
3. It should facilitate slow changes necessary for evolution.
4. It should be able to express itself in the form of Mendelian characters.

**Chapter 5**  
**Question Bank - Gene Expression**

**Dr. T. Veeramani**

*Research Associate, Department of Biotechnology  
Bharathidasan University, Trichy*

**1. The primary control of gene expression takes place at the level of**

1. Translation
2. Replication
3. Transcription
4. None

**2. The gene sequence that codes for proteins are**

1. Exons
2. Introns
3. Intervening sequences
4. Control regions

**3. The process of RNA splicing shows the dominance of**

1. RNA world
2. DNA world
3. Microbial world
4. Protein world

**4. In eukaryotes, RNA II facilitates transcription of**

1. rRNA
2. mRNA
3. hnRNA
4. tRNA

**5. Human Genome Project led to the development of**

1. Biotechnology
2. Bioinformatics
3. Biosystematics
4. Bioengineering

**6. Which non-radioactive isotope was used by Messelson and Stahl in their experiment?**

1. P32
2. S35
3. N15
4. None

**7. Histones are**

1. Positively charged and basic amino acids
2. Positively charged and acidic proteins
3. Negatively charged and basic proteins
4. Absent in bacteria

**Chapter 6**  
**MOLECULAR GENETICS - QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS**

**Dr. T. Veeramani**

*Research Associate, Department of Biotechnology  
Bharathidasan University, Trichy*

**1. Hershey and Chase experiment with bacteriophage showed that**

- a) Protein gets into the bacterial cells
- b) DNA is the genetic material**
- c) DNA contains radioactive sulphur
- d) Viruses undergo transformation

**Answer: b) DNA is the genetic material**

**2. DNA and RNA are similar with respect to**

- a) Thymine as a nitrogen base
- b) A single-stranded helix shape
- c) Nucleotide containing sugars, nitrogen bases and phosphates**
- d) The same sequence of nucleotides for the amino acid phenyl alanine

**Answer: c) Nucleotide containing sugars, nitrogen bases and phosphates**

**3. A mRNA molecule is produced by**

- a) Replication
- b) Transcription**
- c) Duplication
- d) Translation

**Answer: b) Transcription**

**4. The total number of nitrogenous bases in human genome is estimated to be about**

- a) 3.5 million
- b) 35000
- c) 35 million
- d) 3.1 billion**
- d) 3.1 billion**

**5. E. coli cell grown on  $^{15}\text{N}$  medium are transferred to  $^{14}\text{N}$  medium and allowed to grow for two generations. DNA extracted from these cells is ultra centrifuged in a cesium chloride density gradient. What density distribution of DNA would you expect in this experiment?**

- (a) One high and one low density band.
- (b) One intermediate density band.
- (c) One high and one intermediate density band.
- (d) One low and one intermediate density band.**

**Answer: d) One low and one intermediate density band**

**Chapter 7**  
**Genetics – Question Bank**

**Dr. C. Anushia**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur*

**1. What is the basis for the difference in the synthesis of the leading and lagging strand of DNA molecules?**

- (a) Origin of replication occurs only at the 5' end of the molecules.
- (b) DNA ligase works only in the 3' → 5' direction.
- (c) DNA polymerase can join new nucleotides only to the 3' end of the growing stand.**
- (d) Helicases and single-strand binding proteins that work at the 5' end.

**Answer: c) DNA polymerase can join new nucleotides only to the 3' end of the growing stand**

**2. Which of the following is the correct sequence of event with reference to the central dogma?**

- (a) Transcription, Translation, Replication
- (b) Transcription, Replication, Translation
- (c) Duplication, Translation, Transcription
- (d) Replication, Transcription, Translation**

**Answer: d) Replication, Transcription, Translation**

**3. Which of the following statements about DNA replication is not correct?**

- (a) Unwinding of DNA molecule occurs as hydrogen bonds break.
- (b) Replication occurs as each base is paired with another exactly like it.**
- (c) Process is known as semi conservative replication because one old strand is conserved in the new molecule.
- (d) Complementary base pairs are held together with hydrogen bonds.

**Answer: b) Replication occurs as each base is paired with another exactly like it**

**4. Which of the following statements is not true about DNA replication in eukaryotes?**

- (a) Replication begins at a single origin of replication.
- (b) Replication is bidirectional from the origins.
- (c) Replication occurs at about 1 million base pairs per minute.
- (d) There are numerous different bacterial chromosomes, with replication occurring in each at the same time.**

**Answer: d) These are numerous different bacterial chromosomes, with replication occurring in each at the same time.**

# GENE EXPRESSION

*Edited by*

**DR. A. SHAJAHAN**



978-93-6255-583-0

**GENE EXPRESSION**

**Copyright © 2019 by Dr. A. SHAJAHAN**

**All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.**

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-583-0**

**Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology  
(PRIST)**

## TABLE OF CONTENT

<b>Chapter:1 Introduction to gene expression</b> Dr. A. Shajahan	01
<b>Chapter:2 Cell Differentiation</b> Dr. C. Anushia	10
<b>Chapter:3 Cell DNA</b> Dr.P.Manonmani	25
<b>Chapter:4 Cell Reproduction</b> Dr. T. Veeramani	37
<b>Chapter:5 Cell Structure</b> Dr. J. Illamathi	50
<b>Chapter:6 Cell Theory Of DNA</b> Dr. R. Arunkumar	64
<b>Chapter:7 Cell Theory Signification</b> Dr. Arjunpandian	76
<b>Chapter:8 Medical Biotechnology</b> Dr. T. Veeramani	88
<b>Chapter:9 Modern Cell Theory</b> Dr. R.V. Shalini	102
<b>REFERENCES</b>	113

# **Chapter: 1**

## **Introduction to gene expression**

**Dr. A. Shajahan**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Thanjavur*

### **INTRODUCTION**

A crucial aspect of life, gene expression serves as a link between the data contained in a gene and the finished, functioning output of the gene, like a protein or non-coding RNA (ncRNA). Transcription, mRNA splicing, translation, and post-translational protein modification are the steps in the multi-stage process of protein expression. For animal biotechnology and other biological sciences, the capacity to do quantitative gene expression analysis has grown in significance. This type of analysis typically relates to methods that quantify the degree of expression of a target gene in a certain cell, tissue, or organism as a whole. It facilitates comprehension of the connection between phenotypes of cells or organisms and gene expression profiles for a basic biomedical investigator. Quantitative study of gene expression is a crucial tool in animal biotechnology since it facilitates the creation of transgenic or knockout animals.

Any step of this process can be altered to regulate the amount and spatiotemporal characteristics of the functional protein's appearance. It serves as the foundation for developmental processes including differentiation and morphogenesis and is essential for preserving proper cellular structure and function. Cells can deliver a functional protein whenever it's required for their survival or appropriate functioning thanks to their ability to control gene expression. Numerous physiological and pathological processes, such as cellular adaptation to novel surroundings, homeostasis maintenance, and damage recovery, are mediated by this system. In multicellular animals, homologous cells combine to form tissues, which then come together to form an organ with a shared physiological purpose. Animal organs exhibit varying degrees of cellular heterogeneity when compared to other in vitro systems incorporating animal cells, such as tissue cultures, which makes quantitative investigation of gene expression and regulation difficult.

One way to think of the brain is as a model system for a very complicated organ found in vertebrates. It performs the role of the animal nervous system's centralized control center, similar to a computer. The brain is capable of storing and processing coded information that it gets from the environment, both inside and outside the animal body, and producing a variety of outputs. Neural cells are often arranged in the brain as either relatively distinct regional clusters, or nuclei, that vary in size and shape, or as layered structures, like the cerebral cortex. Several important methodological techniques for the identification, gathering, and processing of samples



# Chapter: 2

## Cell Differentiation

**Dr. C. Anushia**

*Associate Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Thanjavur*

### INTRODUCTION

Cellular differentiation, or simply cell differentiation, is the process through which a cell undergoes changes in gene expression to become a more specific type of cell. The process of cell differentiation allows multi-cellular organisms to create uniquely functional cell types and body plans. The process of cell differentiation is driven by genetics, and their interaction with the environment. All organisms begin from a single cell. This single cell carries the DNA coding for all the proteins the adult organism will use. However, if this cell expressed all of these proteins at once it would not be functional. This cell must divide repeatedly, and the cells must begin the process of cell differentiation as they divide. The *cell lines* begin to emerge, and the cells get more and more specific. Eventually, an entire organism is formed with hundreds of different cell types from this process of cell differentiation.

The original mass of cells, which have not undergone differentiation, are known as *stem cells*. Unlike normal cell division, which creates two identical daughter cells, the division of stem cells is *asymmetric cell division*. In this case, one of the cells remains identical to the parent stem cell. In the other cell, chemical triggers activate the process of cell differentiation, and the cell will start to express the DNA of a specific cell type. Stem cells which can differentiate into entire organisms are known as *embryonic stem cells* and are said to be *totipotent*. By contrast, the body also has many cells which are only *pluripotent*. These cells have already undergone some cell differentiation. These stem cells can only divide into a narrow range of cell types. Bone marrow, for instance, contains *somatic stem cells* which can only become red blood cells. These cells are necessary for the constant replenishment of blood cells, which are mostly inactive besides their oxygen-carrying ability.

# Chapter: 3

## Cell DNA

**Dr. P. Manonmani**

*Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Thanjavur*

### INTRODUCTION

The chemical DNA was first discovered in 1869, but its role in genetic inheritance was not demonstrated until 1943. In 1953 James Watson and Francis Crick, aided by the work of biophysicists Rosalind Franklin and Maurice Wilkins, determined that the structure of DNA is a double-helix polymer, a spiral consisting of two DNA strands wound around each other. The breakthrough led to significant advances in scientists' understanding of DNA replication and hereditary control of cellular activities. polynucleotide chain of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) Portion of polynucleotide chain of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). The inset shows the corresponding pentose sugar and pyrimidine base in ribonucleic acid (RNA) Each strand of a DNA molecule is composed of a long chain of monomer nucleotides. The nucleotides of DNA consist of a deoxyribose sugar molecule to which is attached a phosphate group and one of four nitrogenous bases:

- Two purines (adenine and guanine) and two pyrimidines (cytosine and thymine).

The nucleotides are joined together by covalent bonds between the phosphate of one nucleotide and the sugar of the next, forming a phosphate-sugar backbone from which the nitrogenous bases protrude. One strand is held to another by hydrogen bonds between the bases; the sequencing of this bonding is specific—i.e., adenine bonds only with thymine, and cytosine only with guanine. The configuration of the DNA molecule is highly stable, allowing it to act as a template for the replication of new DNA molecules, as well as for the production (transcription) of the related RNA (ribonucleic acid) molecule. A segment of DNA that codes for the cell's synthesis of a specific protein is called a gene. DNA replicates by separating into two single strands, each of which serves as a template for a new strand. The new strands are copied by the same principle of hydrogen-bond pairing between bases that exists in the double helix.

# **Chapter: 4**

## **Cell Reproduction**

**Dr. T. Veeramani**

*Research Associate, Department of Biotechnology  
Bharathidasan University, Trichy*

### **INTRODUCTION**

The journey of human development begins with that single fertilized egg, or zygote, which undergoes numerous rounds of cell division to form the complex structures and systems in our bodies. This process is meticulously regulated to ensure that cells divide at the right time and in the right manner, crucial for proper growth and development. As we grow, cell division continues to play a vital role, not just in increasing our size but also in repairing tissues and replacing damaged cells. This ongoing process is essential for maintaining health throughout our lives.

In single-celled organisms, cell division serves as a means of reproduction, allowing them to create new individuals. However, the regulation of cell division is just as critical in these organisms, as uncontrolled division can lead to problems like cancer in multicellular organisms or population imbalances in unicellular ones. Overall, whether in humans or single-celled organisms, the processes of cell division are fundamental to life, underscoring the importance of regulation in both growth and reproduction.

The structure of genomic DNA is indeed crucial for understanding how cells replicate and divide. In prokaryotes, the genome typically consists of a single, circular DNA molecule located in the nucleoid region. This compact organization allows for efficient replication and expression of genes. Plasmids, which are smaller, circular pieces of DNA, play a significant role in genetic exchange among bacteria. Although not essential for survival, they can carry advantageous traits, such as antibiotic resistance, which can be transferred between bacteria through processes like conjugation. This exchange enables rapid adaptation to environmental pressures, contributing to the evolution of bacterial populations.

# Chapter: 5

## Cell Structure

**Dr. J. Ilamathi**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Thanjavur*

### INTRODUCTION

Cell structure, In biology, the basic membrane-bound unit that contains the fundamental molecules of life and of which all living things are composed. A single cell is often a cocomplete organism in itself, such as a bacterium or yeast. Other cells acquire specialized functions as they mature. These cells cooperate with other specialized cells and become the building blocks of large multicellular organisms, such as humans and other animals. Although cells are much larger than atoms, they are still very small. The smallest known cells are a group of tiny bacteria called mycoplasmas; some of these single-celled organisms are spheres as small as 0.2  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter (1  $\mu\text{m}$  = about 0.000039 inch), with a total mass of  $10^{-14}$  gram—equal to that of 8,000,000,000 hydrogen atoms. Cells of humans typically have a mass 400,000 times larger than the mass of a single mycoplasma bacterium, but even human cells are only about 20  $\mu\text{m}$  across. It would require a sheet of about 10,000 human cells to cover the head of a pin, and each human organism is composed of more than 30,000,000,000,000 cells. This article discusses the cell both as an individual unit and as a contributing part of a larger organism.

As an individual unit, the cell is capable of metabolizing its own nutrients, synthesizing many types of molecules, providing its own energy, and replicating itself in order to produce succeeding generations. It can be viewed as an enclosed vessel, within which innumerable chemical reactions take place simultaneously. These reactions are under very precise control so that they contribute to the life and procreation of the cell. In a multicellular organism, cells become specialized to perform different functions through the process of differentiation. In order to do this, each cell keeps in constant communication with its neighbours. As it receives nutrients from and expels wastes into its surroundings, it adheres to and cooperates with other cells. Cooperative assemblies of similar cells form tissues, and a cooperation between tissues in turn forms organs, which carry out the functions necessary to sustain the life of an organism.

# Chapter: 6

## Cell Theory of DNA

**Dr. R. Arunkumar**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Thanjavur*

### INTRODCUTION

Microorganisms were unknown before the invention of improved microscopes, and human beings were believed to be the fundamental building blocks of life. Early scientists could observe cells and make assumptions about what they witnessed. It is rarely possible to know how a cell operates under a microscope. This theory is based on the observation that all microscopically observed organisms can be easily separated into various distinct cells. Some cells, like a frog egg, are enormous. Some bacterial cells, for example, are so tiny that we can hardly detect them under a standard light microscope.

### Definition

A postulated and widely accepted hypothesis of how most life on Earth operates is known as the “cell theory.” The hypothesis states that cells comprise all organisms. Organs, tissues, and organisms are made up of groups of cells. These are the fundamental assumptions of cell theory.

The modern iteration of the cell theory consists of the following concepts:

- Energy moves through cells.
- DNA is transferred from cell to cell, carrying genetic information.
- All cells share the same primary chemical makeup.

In addition to cell theory, the fundamental precepts that serve as the basis for studying life include evolution, homeostasis, gene theory, and the laws of thermodynamics.

### History and Contributions

Magnification technology progressed to the point that it could be used to find cells due to ongoing advances in microscopes. Robert Hooke is usually credited with making this discovery, which launched cell biology as a field of study. Under the scope, he could discern pores in a piece of cork. Schleiden and Schwann first proposed the cell theory, which was later modified by

# Chapter: 7

## Cell Theory Significance

**Dr. Arjunpandian**

*Associate Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Thanjavur*

### INTRODCUTION

There are two kinds of communication in the world of living cells. Communication between cells is called intercellular signaling, and communication within a cell is called intracellular signaling. An easy way to remember the distinction is by understanding the Latin origin of the prefixes: inter- means "between" (for example, intersecting lines are those that cross each other) and intra- means "inside" (like intravenous). Chemical signals are released by signaling cells in the form of small, usually volatile or soluble molecules called ligands. A ligand is a molecule that binds another specific molecule, in some cases, delivering a signal in the process. Ligands can thus be thought of as signaling molecules. Ligands interact with proteins in target cells, which are cells that are affected by chemical signals; these proteins are also called receptors. Ligands and receptors exist in several varieties; however, a specific ligand will have a specific receptor that typically binds only that ligand. There are four categories of chemical signaling found in multicellular organisms: paracrine signaling, endocrine signaling, autocrine signaling, and direct signaling across gap junctions. The main difference between the different categories of signaling is the distance that the signal travels through the organism to reach the target cell. Not all cells are affected by the same signals. In chemical signaling, a cell may target itself (autocrine signaling), a cell connected by gap junctions, a nearby cell (paracrine signaling), or a distant cell (endocrine signaling). Paracrine signaling acts on nearby cells, endocrine signaling uses the circulatory system to transport ligands, and autocrine signaling acts on the signaling cell. Signaling via gap junctions involves signaling molecules moving directly between adjacent cells. Signals that act locally between cells that are close together are called *paracrine signals*. Paracrine signals move by diffusion through the extracellular matrix. These types of signals usually elicit quick responses that last only a short amount of time. In order to keep the response localized, paracrine ligand molecules are normally quickly degraded by enzymes or removed by neighboring cells. Removing the signals will reestablish the concentration gradient for the signal, allowing them to quickly diffuse through the intracellular space if released again.

One example of paracrine signaling is the transfer of signals across synapses between nerve cells. A nerve cell consists of a cell body, several short, branched extensions called dendrites that receive stimuli, and a long extension called an axon, which transmits signals to other nerve cells or muscle cells. The junction between nerve cells where signal transmission occurs is called a synapse. A synaptic signal is a chemical signal that travels between nerve cells. Signals within the nerve cells are propagated by fast-moving electrical impulses. When these impulses reach the end of the axon, the signal continues on to a dendrite of the next cell by the release of chemical ligands called neurotransmitters by the presynaptic cell (the cell emitting the signal). The neurotransmitters are transported across the very small distances between nerve

# Chapter: 8

## Medical Biotechnology

**Dr. T. Veeramani**

*Research Associate, Department of Biotechnology  
Bharathidasan university, Trichy*

### INTRODCUTION

Medical biotechnology, also termed red biotechnology, is the application of biological techniques to product research and development in healthcare and medicine. Breakthroughs in this and associated scientific fields have revolutionized the practice of medicine: newer and simpler tests for the more accurate diagnosis of disease; genetic and proteomic tests that allow for prevention of disease; more efficient methods for designing and making drugs that are targeted at the molecular level and therefore conceivably more effective but less toxic; the possibility of gene therapy to cure diseases that are previously incurable. The fulfillment of the vision of “individualized medicine”, where therapy can be tailored to disease of the individual seems to draw closer with each passing day. Although genomics and its applications (viz. gene therapy) commonly come to mind when medical biotechnology is mentioned, it should be remembered that other disciplines such as bioinformatics (see also Bioinformatics on Post Genomic Era- From Genomes to Systems Biology), nanotechnology (see also Nanomedicine and Nanorobotics), fermentation technology (see also Basic Strategies of Cell Metabolism) and cell technology (see also Microbial Cell Culture) also play an important role in the UNESCO – EOLSS SAMPLE CHAPTERS BIOTECHNOLOGY - Vol. XI - Medical Biotechnology – Modern Development - L.Y. Hsu, F.S. Teo, T.M. Chin ©Encyclopedia of Life Support Systems (EOLSS) development of the field. Nevertheless, the golden era of medical biotechnology and indeed, of biotechnology in general, began only in the 1970’s with the development of recombinant DNA (rDNA) techniques (see also Methods in Gene Engineering).

The initial experiments of Paul Berg and his team at Stanford University in 1972, where the genome of SV40 – a simian virus – was attached to a segment of DNA in a common bacterium, led to the first rDNA produced. Their gene-splicing techniques, which were improved upon by others, allowed for genes coding for different proteins to be inserted into foreign cells. The recipient cells could then be induced to produce the desired proteins. Such techniques set the foundation for a whole array of biologic research, including the subsequent sequencing of the human genome. The great potential of biotechnology for wealth creation and economic growth did not escape notice, and many countries – mostly developed countries – and multinational companies have made huge investments into research and development (R&D) of life sciences and biotechnology. However, the returns have been less than impressive on a worldwide scale for public biotechnology companies. Ernst & Young, currently one of the largest professional service firms worldwide, reported an industry net loss of USD 5.4 billion in 2006 despite total revenues of USD 73.5 billion – this figure is a 35% increase over the net loss of USD 4.0 billion in 2005. One caveat of this and other biotechnology industry reports is that it is difficult to

## Chapter: 9 Modern Cell Theory

**Dr. R. V. Shalini**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Biotechnology  
Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Thanjavur*

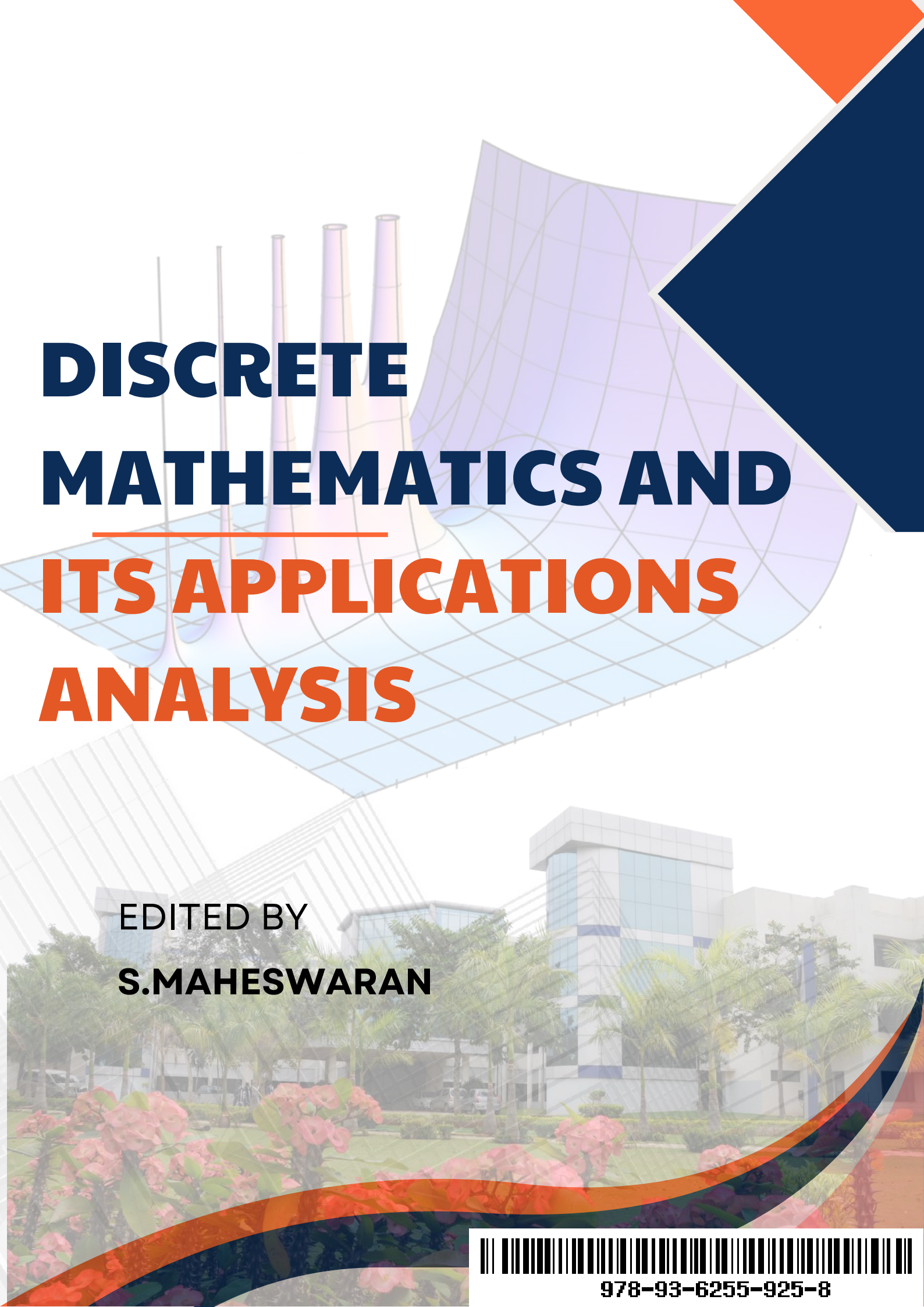
### INTRODCUTION

Modern cell theory isn't all that *modern* when you understand how long ago it originated. With roots in the mid-17th century, multiple scientific scholars and researchers of the day contributed to the tenets of classical cell theory, which postulated that cells represent the basic building blocks of life; all life consists of one or more cells, and the creation of new cells occurs when old cells divide into two. The classical interpretation of modern cell theory begins with the premise that all life consists of one or more cells, cells represents the basic building blocks of life, all cells result from the division of pre-existing cells, the cell represents the unit of structure and arrangement in all living organisms and finally that the cell has a dual existence as a unique, distinctive entity and as a fundamental building block in the framework of all living organisms. The first person to observe and discover the cell, Robert Hooke (1635-1703), did so using a crude compound microscope – invented near the end of the 16th century by Zacharias Janssen (1580-1638), a Dutch spectacle-maker, with help from his father – and an illumination system Hooke designed in his role as curator of experiments for the Royal Society of London. Hooke published his findings in 1665 in his book, "Microphagia," which included hand-drawn sketches of his observations.

Hooke discovered plant cells when he examined a thin slice of cork through the lens of his converted compound microscope. He saw a plethora of microscopic compartments that, to him, resembled the same structures found in honeycombs. He called them "cells," and the name stuck. Dutch scientist Antony van Leeuwenhoek (1632-1705), a tradesman by day and a self-driven biology student, ached to discover the secrets of the world around him, and even though not formally educated, he ended up contributing important discoveries to the field of biology. Leeuwenhoek discovered bacteria, protists, sperm and blood cells, rotifers and microscopic nematodes, and other microscopic organisms. Leeuwenhoek's studies brought a new level of awareness of microscopic life to scientists of the day, spurring others on who would, in the end, play a part in contributing to modern cell theory. French physiologist Henri Dutrochet (1776-1847) was the first to claim the cell was the basic unit of biological life, but scholars give credit for the development of modern cell theory to German physiologist Theodor Schwann (1810-1882), German botanist Matthias Jakob Schleiden (1804-1881) and German pathologist Rudolf Virchow (1821-1902). In 1839, Schwann and Schleiden proposed that the cell is the basic unit of life, and Virchow, in 1858, deduced that new cells come from pre-existing cells, completing the main tenets of classical cell theory.

Scientists, biologists, researchers and scholars, though still using the fundamental tenets of cell theory, conclude the following on the modern interpretation of cell theory:





# **DISCRETE MATHEMATICS AND ITS APPLICATIONS ANALYSIS**

EDITED BY  
**S.MAHESWARAN**



978-93-6255-925-8

**DISCRETE MATHEMATICS AND ITS APPLICATIONS**

Copyright © 2019 by S.Maheswaran

First Edition,2019

*All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.*

**ISBN: 978-93-6255-925-8**

***Publisher:*** Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (**PRIST**)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Book elements</b>	<b>Page Numbers</b>
----- <b>Chapter-I</b> <b>SET THEORY</b> Dr. V. Vijayabharathi	<b>01-09</b>
----- <b>Chapter-II</b> <b>GRAPH THEORY</b> Dr. V. Vijayabharathi	<b>10-14</b>
----- <b>Chapter-III</b> <b>LOGIC</b> Dr. V. Vijayabharathi	<b>15-17</b>
----- <b>Chapter-IV</b> <b>PERMUTATION</b> Dr. V. Vijayabharathi	<b>18-26</b>
----- <b>Chapter-V</b> <b>COMBINATION</b> Dr. V. Vijayabharathi	<b>27-31</b>
-----	

## SET THEORY

**Dr. V. Vijayabharathi**

*Associate Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

### Basic Definitions

**Set:**

A collection of unique objects, known as elements or members, enclosed in curly brackets { }.

**Element/Members:**

Objects within a set.

**Subset:**

A set contained within another set.

**Power Set:**

The set of all possible subsets.

**Empty Set:**

A set with no elements, denoted by { } or  $\emptyset$ .

**Universal Set:**

The set containing all elements under consideration.

**Subset:**

A set B is a subset of set A if every element of B is also an element of A.

**Notation:**  $B \subseteq A$  (B is a subset of A)

**Types of Subsets:**

1. **Proper Subset:**  $B \subset A$  (B is a proper subset of A), implying  $B \neq A$ .
2. **Improper Subset:**  $B = A$  (B is an improper subset of A), where B and A are equal.

**Properties:**

1. **Reflexivity:** Every set is a subset of itself ( $A \subseteq A$ ).
2. **Transitivity:** If  $B \subseteq A$  and  $C \subseteq B$ , then  $C \subseteq A$ .
3. **Antisymmetry:** If  $B \subseteq A$  and  $A \subseteq B$ , then  $A = B$ .

**Examples:**

### GRAPH THEORY

**Dr. V. Vijayabharathi**

*Associate Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

#### Graph

##### **Definition:**

A graph  $G = (V, E)$  consists of:

1.  $V$  (vertices or nodes)
2.  $E$  (edges, subsets of  $V \times V$ )

##### **Types of Graphs:**

Undirected Graph:

An undirected graph  $G = (V, E)$  consists of:

1.  $V$  (vertices or nodes)
2.  $E$  (edges, subsets of  $V \times V$ , without direction)

Directed Graph:

A directed graph  $G = (V, E)$  consists of:

1.  $V$  (vertices or nodes)
2.  $E$  (directed edges, ordered pairs of vertices)

Weighted Graph:

A weighted graph  $G = (V, E, w)$  consists of:

1.  $V$  (vertices or nodes)
2.  $E$  (edges)
3.  $w: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (weight function)

Simple Graph:

LOGIC

**Dr. V. Vijayabharathi**

*Associate Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

**Definition**

Logic is the study of reasoning and argumentation.

**Branches of Logic:**

Propositional Logic (Statements and Connectives)

**Propositional Logic Key Concepts:**

1. Propositions (statements)
2. Connectives (logical operators)
3. Truth Values (True/False)
4. Inference Rules
5. Logical Equivalence

**Propositional Connectives:**

1. Negation ( $\neg$ ) - NOT
2. Conjunction ( $\wedge$ ) - AND
3. Disjunction ( $\vee$ ) - OR
4. Implication ( $\rightarrow$ ) - IF-THEN
5. Equivalence - IF AND ONLY IF

**Truth Tables:**

Proposition	Negation	Conjunction	Disjunction	Implication	Equivalence
T	F	$T \wedge T = T$	$T \vee T = T$	$T \rightarrow T = T$	T F
F	T	$F \wedge T = F$	$F \vee T = T$	$T \rightarrow F = F$	F T

**Inference Rules:**

## PERMUTATION

**Dr. V. Vijayabharathi**

*Associate Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

A permutation is an arrangement of objects in a specific order, where:

1. Each object appears exactly once.
2. The order of the objects matters.
3. There are no repetitions.

### **Formal Definition:**

Given a set  $S = \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$  of  $n$  distinct objects, a permutation of  $S$  is a bijective function:

$$f: S \rightarrow S$$

such that:

1.  $f$  is one-to-one (injective).
2.  $f$  is onto (surjective).

### **Example:**

$$S = \{A, B, C\}$$

Permutations:

1. A, B, C
2. A, C, B
3. B, A, C
4. B, C, A
5. C, A, B
6. C, B, A

### **Types of Permutations:**

#### **Linear Permutation:**

A linear permutation is an arrangement of objects in a straight line, where:

1. Each object appears exactly once.

# COMBINATIONS

**Dr. V. Vijayabharathi**

*Associate Professor in Mathematics*

*Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)*

*Vallam, Thanjavur, Tamilnadu, South India.*

### Definition:

The number of combinations of  $n$  items taken  $r$  at a time is denoted as  $C(n, r)$  or " $n$  choose  $r$ ," and is calculated as:

$$C(n, r) = n! / (r! * (n-r)!)$$

where:

- $n$  is the total number of items
- $r$  is the number of items to choose
- $!$  denotes the factorial function (e.g.,  $5! = 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1$ )

### Properties:

1. Symmetry:  $C(n, r) = C(n, n-r)$
2. Non-negativity:  $C(n, r) \geq 0$
3.  $C(n, 0) = C(n, n) = 1$
4.  $C(n, 1) = n$

### Pascal's Rule

$$C(n, r) = C(n-1, r-1) + C(n-1, r)$$

### Proof:

Consider a set of  $n$  items  $\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$ . Let's count the combinations:

**Case 1:** Exclude the last item ( $a_n$ ).

- $C(n-1, r)$  combinations

**Case 2:** Include the last item ( $a_n$ ).

- Choose  $r-1$  items from the first  $n-1$  items:  $C(n-1, r-1)$
- Add the last item ( $a_n$ ) to each combination





# ENGINEERING PHYSICS LAB MANUAL I



Edited by  
**K.SWAMINATHAN**



978-93-6255-571-7

Engineering Physics Lab Manual I  
Copyright © 2019 by *Mr. K. Swaminathan*

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-571-7

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction .....	19
CHAPTER 1 Torsional Pendulum.....	20
<i>Mr. K. Swaminathan</i>	
CHAPTER 2 Transistor Characteristics .....	26
<i>Dr. L. Chinnappa</i>	
CHAPTER 3 Newton's Rings .....	30
<i>Dr. M. Sivanantham</i>	
CHAPTER 4 Young's Modulus by Uniform Bending .....	35
<i>Dr. S. Subashchandrabose</i>	
CHAPTER 5 Young's Modulus by Non-Uniform Bending .....	40
<i>Dr. M. Silambarasan</i>	
CHAPTER 6 Dielectric Constant .....	45
<i>Dr. V. Vidhya and Dr. Sutapa Ghosh</i>	
CHAPTER 7 Laser Diffraction Grating .....	50
<i>Dr. V. Vidhya and Dr. Sutapa Ghosh</i>	
REFERENCES.....	55

**CHAPTER 1**  
**Torsional Pendulum**  
**Mr. K. Swaminathan**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**AIM:** To determine the moment of inertia of an irregular body and to calculate the rigidity modulus of the material by the principle of torsional pendulum.

**APPARATUS:** Stand with clamp, straight wire, regular body, irregular body, stop watch, screw gauge, and meter scale.

**FORMULA:**

Moment of Inertia of an irregular body is given by

$$I_0 = \left(\frac{I}{T^2}\right)_{mean} T_0^2 \text{ Kg/m}^2$$

Where  $I_0$  is the moment of Inertia of an irregular body in  $\text{kg.m}^2$

$I$  is the moment of inertia of regular body in  $\text{kg.m}^2$

$T$  is the period of torsional oscillation of regular body in s.

$T_0$  is the period of oscillation of an irregular body in s.

The rigidity modulus of the material of the wire is given by

$$\eta = \left(\frac{8\pi l}{r^4}\right) \left(\frac{I}{T^2}\right)_{mean} \text{ N/m}^2$$

Where  $l$  is the length of the wire in m.

$r$  is the radius of the wire in m.

**PRINCIPLE:** The moment of inertia of a body about a given axis of rotation is defined as the product of mass of the body and the square of radius of gyration. The ratio of moment of inertia to the square of period of oscillation is constant for different axes of regular bodies will be constant for a given length of the wire. There is no direct formula to determine the moment of inertia of

**CHAPTER 2**  
**Transistor Characteristics**  
**Dr. L. Chinnappa**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**AIM:** To study the input, output and transfer characteristics of an N-P-N transistor in the common emitter mode and also determining the input resistance ( $R_i$ ) and the current gain factor ( $\beta$ ) of the given transistor.

**APPARATUS:** Given transistor (NPN), variable DC power supplies (0-1V&0-10V) DC micro ammeter (0-200 $\mu$ A), DC milli ammeter (0-10 mA), DC voltmeter (0- 1V&0-10V) and connecting wires.

**FORMULA:**

Input resistance

$$R_i = \frac{\Delta V_{BE}}{\Delta I_B} \Omega$$

Where,  $\Delta V_{BE}$  = Change in the base emitter voltage in volts

$\Delta I_B$  = Change in the base current in  $\mu$ A

Current gain

$$\beta = \frac{\Delta I_c}{\Delta I_B}$$

$\Delta I_B$  = Change in the collector current in  $\mu$ A

**PROCEDURE:**

- ⊙ The common emitter circuit for studying the transistor characteristics of a NPN transistor is shown in fig. First identify the terminals of different devices required for the experiment on the experimental box.
- ⊙ Give the connections using connecting wires carefully according to the circuit diagram. Before switching on the circuit, verify once again the circuit connections. Now turn all power supply knobs to the minimum position & switch on the power supply. Check that circuit is working properly.

**CHAPTER 3**  
**Newton's Rings**  
**Dr. M. Sivanantham**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**AIM:** To determine the radius of curvature of a given Plano convex lens by Newton's rings method.

**APPARATUS:** Plano convex lens, Plane glass plate, stand with a turn able glass plate, traveling microscope, sodium vapour lamp etc.

**PRINCIPLE:** This experiment is based on the principle of interference of light in thin films. In this experiment an air film is formed between a ground glass plate and a plano convex lens. When a monochromatic light is made to incident on the combination of a Plano convex lens and the remaining portion of light passes through Plano convex lens and gets reflected from the bottom ground glass plate, these two components of light undergo interference to form Newton's Rings.

**PROCEDURE:**

⊙ Initially the Plano convex lens is tested to find out the curved surface of and the plane surface which is done as follows. The Plano convex lens is placed on the ground glass plate and it is rotated gently, if the lens rotates freely then the curved surface is facing the ground glass otherwise due to friction the rotation will not be smooth in which case the plane surface of the lens is in contact of the ground glass plate. Now we should place the curved surface towards the ground glass plate, care should be taken to see that there are no dust particles on both the surface of the lens and the surfaces of the ground glass plate.

⊙ Now the reflector plate is adjusted until the intensity of light in the eyepiece becomes maximum. When the intensity of the light is maximum the reflector plate will be at an angle of  $45^\circ$  to the horizontal, later the focusing screw of the traveling microscope is adjusted until the fringe patterns are seen. Initially the center of the fringe pattern may not appear, and then the traveling microscope is

## CHAPTER 4

### Young's Modulus by Uniform Bending

**Dr. S. Subashchandrabose**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**AIM:** To find the Young's modulus of the given material of the beam by uniform bending.

**APPARATUS:** Wooden beam, Weight hanger with slotted weights, Knife edges, Travelling microscope, Vernier caliper, Screw gauge, and meter scale.

**THEORY:** Young's modulus, also known as the elastic modulus, is a measure of the stiffness of a solid material. It is a mechanical property of linear elastic solid materials. It defines the relationship between stress (force per unit area) and strain (proportional deformation) in a material.

#### **PROCEDURE:**

- ⊙ The given beam is supported on two knife edges separated by a distance ' $L$ '. A pin is fixed vertically at the mid-point.
- ⊙ Two weight hangers are suspended, one each on either side of the knife edges so that their distances from the nearer knife edge are equal. The beam is brought to the elastic mood by loading and unloading it several times.
- ⊙ With the dead load ' $W$ ', the pin is focused through microscope. The microscope is adjusted so that the horizontal crosswire coincides with the tip of the pin. The microscope reading is taken.
- ⊙ The load is changed in steps of 0.05 kg and in each case the microscope reading is taken during loading and unloading. The readings are tabulated. The elevation at the mid-point for ' $M$ ' kg is calculated.
- ⊙ The distance between the knife edges ( $L$ ) is measured using a metre scale. The breadth ( $b$ ) and thickness ( $d$ ) of the beam are found using vernier caliper and screw gauge, respectively.

**CHAPTER 5**  
**Young's Modulus by Non-Uniform Bending**  
**Dr. M. Silambarasan**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**AIM:** To find the Young's modulus of the given material of the beam by non-uniform bending.

**APPARATUS:** Wooden beam, Weight hanger with slotted weights, Knife edges, Travelling microscope, Vernier caliper, Screw gauge, and meter scale.

**THEORY:** Young's modulus, also known as the elastic modulus, is a measure of the stiffness of a solid material. It is a mechanical property of linear elastic solid materials. It defines the relationship between stress (force per unit area) and strain (proportional deformation) in a material.

**PROCEDURE:**

- ⊙ The bar is symmetrically placed on two knife edges.
- ⊙ A weight hanger is suspended at the center of the bar.
- ⊙ Optical lever is placed with its front leg at the center of the bar from where the weighthanger is suspended.
- ⊙ A vertical scale is arranged at a distance of about one meter from the laser module.
- ⊙ Laser is focused on to the vertical scale.
- ⊙ The bar is loaded and unloaded a number of times to measure its depression with loading and unloading of the mass.
- ⊙ With the weight hanger of mass  $W_0$  alone to the bar, note the scale reading corresponding to the laser spot.
- ⊙ Add the mass  $M$  in steps and scale readings are noted.
- ⊙ The experiment is repeated by unloading the



## CHAPTER 6

### Dielectric Constant

**Dr. V. Vidhya and Dr. Sutapa Ghosh**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**AIM:** To determine the dielectric constant of the given dielectric material by the method of charging and discharging.

**APPARATUS:** Capacitor, Resistor, Two way toggle switch, Voltmeter, stop watch.

#### FORMULA:

Dielectric constant of a given material is given by

$$K = \frac{T_{1/2} \times d \times 10^{-6}}{0.693 \varepsilon_0 AR}$$

Where,

K = Dielectric constant of the material

$T_{1/2}$  = Time taken by the capacitor for half charging / discharging in s.

d = Distance between the two plates in m.

$\varepsilon_0$  = Permittivity of free space =  $8.852 \times 10^{-12}$  F/m

A = Area of the capacitor plate in  $m^2$ .

R = Resistance in  $\Omega$ .

#### PROCEDURE:

- Make the connections as shown in the circuit diagram
- The capacitor is allowed to charge by switching the toggle switch to the position 1 and simultaneously a stop watch is started.
- The voltage across the capacitor is noted down at an interval of 5 second using a stop watch and the readings are entered in the tabular column.
- Now the stop watch is reset, the capacitor is allowed to discharge by switching the toggle switch to the position 2 and simultaneously stopwatch is started, the voltage across the capacitor is noted down for the same interval of time.
- A graph of t along X-axis and V along Y-axis is plotted for both charging and discharging as shown in the sketch of the graph.
- The time ( $T_{1/2}$ ) corresponding to the intersection of the two curves is noted.

**CHAPTER 7**  
**Laser Diffraction Grating**  
**Dr. V. Vidhya and Dr. Sutapa Ghosh**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**AIM:** To determine the wavelength of laser light by diffraction technique using a plane diffraction grating.

**APPARATUS:** Semiconductor diode laser source, grating with holder, scale, screen.

**PRINCIPLE:** Diffraction of light occurs when the width of the obstacle is comparable to the wavelength of the light source. The light from the laser source is allowed to fall normally on the grating, by measuring the distance between the diffracted spots, the wavelength of laser light is determined.

**FORMULA:**

Wavelength of laser light is given by

$$\lambda = \frac{d \sin \theta_m}{m} \quad nm$$

Where,

d = Grating constant measured in m

m = difference between the order of spots

$\theta_m$  = angle of diffraction for  $m^{\text{th}}$  order spot

**PROCEDURE:**

1. Place the grating in its holder and the screen is placed at a distance of R cm as mentioned in the tabular column.
2. The grating is kept between the laser source and the screen.
3. Laser beam undergoes diffraction after passing through the grating. The diffraction spots are observed on the screen.
4. The distances  $2x_m$  between the symmetrical spots on either side of central bright spot are measured and



# ENGINEERING PHYSICS LAB MANUAL I



Edited by  
**K.SWAMINATHAN**



978-93-6255-571-7

Engineering Physics Lab Manual I  
Copyright © 2019 by *Mr. K. Swaminathan*

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-571-7

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction .....	19
CHAPTER 1 Torsional Pendulum.....	20
<i>Mr. K. Swaminathan</i>	
CHAPTER 2 Transistor Characteristics .....	26
<i>Dr. L. Chinnappa</i>	
CHAPTER 3 Newton's Rings .....	30
<i>Dr. M. Sivanantham</i>	
CHAPTER 4 Young's Modulus by Uniform Bending.....	35
<i>Dr. S. Subashchandrabose</i>	
CHAPTER 5 Young's Modulus by Non-Uniform Bending .....	40
<i>Dr. M. Silambarasan</i>	
CHAPTER 6 Dielectric Constant .....	45
<i>Dr. V. Vidhya and Dr. Sutapa Ghosh</i>	
CHAPTER 7 Laser Diffraction Grating .....	50
<i>Dr. V. Vidhya and Dr. Sutapa Ghosh</i>	
REFERENCES.....	55

**CHAPTER 1**  
**Torsional Pendulum**  
**Mr. K. Swaminathan**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**AIM:** To determine the moment of inertia of an irregular body and to calculate the rigidity modulus of the material by the principle of torsional pendulum.

**APPARATUS:** Stand with clamp, straight wire, regular body, irregular body, stop watch, screw gauge, and meter scale.

**FORMULA:**

Moment of Inertia of an irregular body is given by

$$I_0 = \left(\frac{I}{T^2}\right)_{mean} T_0^2 \text{ Kg/m}^2$$

Where  $I_0$  is the moment of Inertia of an irregular body in  $\text{kg.m}^2$

$I$  is the moment of inertia of regular body in  $\text{kg.m}^2$

$T$  is the period of torsional oscillation of regular body in s.

$T_0$  is the period of oscillation of an irregular body in s.

The rigidity modulus of the material of the wire is given by

$$\eta = \left(\frac{8\pi l}{r^4}\right) \left(\frac{I}{T^2}\right)_{mean} \text{ N/m}^2$$

Where  $l$  is the length of the wire in m.

$r$  is the radius of the wire in m.

**PRINCIPLE:** The moment of inertia of a body about a given axis of rotation is defined as the product of mass of the body and the square of radius of gyration. The ratio of moment of inertia to the square of period of oscillation is constant for different axes of regular bodies will be constant for a given length of the wire. There is no direct formula to determine the moment of inertia of

## CHAPTER 2

### Transistor Characteristics

**Dr. L. Chinnappa**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**AIM:** To study the input, output and transfer characteristics of an N-P-N transistor in the common emitter mode and also determining the input resistance ( $R_i$ ) and the current gain factor ( $\beta$ ) of the given transistor.

**APPARATUS:** Given transistor (NPN), variable DC power supplies (0-1V&0-10V) DC micro ammeter (0-200 $\mu$ A), DC milli ammeter (0-10 mA), DC voltmeter (0- 1V&0-10V) and connecting wires.

#### **FORMULA:**

Input resistance

$$R_i = \frac{\Delta V_{BE}}{\Delta I_B} \Omega$$

Where,  $\Delta V_{BE}$  = Change in the base emitter voltage in volts

$\Delta I_B$  = Change in the base current in  $\mu$ A

Current gain

$$\beta = \frac{\Delta I_c}{\Delta I_B}$$

$\Delta I_B$  = Change in the collector current in  $\mu$ A

#### **PROCEDURE:**

- ⊙ The common emitter circuit for studying the transistor characteristics of a NPN transistor is shown in fig. First identify the terminals of different devices required for the experiment on the experimental box.
- ⊙ Give the connections using connecting wires carefully according to the circuit diagram. Before switching on the circuit, verify once again the circuit connections. Now turn all power supply knobs to the minimum position & switch on the power supply. Check that circuit is working properly.

**CHAPTER 3**  
**Newton's Rings**  
**Dr. M. Sivanantham**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**AIM:** To determine the radius of curvature of a given Plano convex lens by Newton's rings method.

**APPARATUS:** Plano convex lens, Plane glass plate, stand with a turn able glass plate, traveling microscope, sodium vapour lamp etc.

**PRINCIPLE:** This experiment is based on the principle of interference of light in thin films. In this experiment an air film is formed between a ground glass plate and a plano convex lens. When a monochromatic light is made to incident on the combination of a Plano convex lens and the remaining portion of light passes through Plano convex lens and gets reflected from the bottom ground glass plate, these two components of light undergo interference to form Newton's Rings.

**PROCEDURE:**

⊙ Initially the Plano convex lens is tested to find out the curved surface of and the plane surface which is done as follows. The Plano convex lens is placed on the ground glass plate and it is rotated gently, if the lens rotates freely then the curved surface is facing the ground glass otherwise due to friction the rotation will not be smooth in which case the plane surface of the lens is in contact of the ground glass plate. Now we should place the curved surface towards the ground glass plate, care should be taken to see that there are no dust particles on both the surface of the lens and the surfaces of the ground glass plate.

⊙ Now the reflector plate is adjusted until the intensity of light in the eyepiece becomes maximum. When the intensity of the light is maximum the reflector plate will be at an angle of  $45^\circ$  to the horizontal, later the focusing screw of the traveling microscope is adjusted until the fringe patterns are seen. Initially the center of the fringe pattern may not appear, and then the traveling microscope is



## CHAPTER 4

### Young's Modulus by Uniform Bending

**Dr. S. Subashchandrabose**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**AIM:** To find the Young's modulus of the given material of the beam by uniform bending.

**APPARATUS:** Wooden beam, Weight hanger with slotted weights, Knife edges, Travelling microscope, Vernier caliper, Screw gauge, and meter scale.

**THEORY:** Young's modulus, also known as the elastic modulus, is a measure of the stiffness of a solid material. It is a mechanical property of linear elastic solid materials. It defines the relationship between stress (force per unit area) and strain (proportional deformation) in a material.

#### **PROCEDURE:**

- ⊙ The given beam is supported on two knife edges separated by a distance ' $L$ '. A pin is fixed vertically at the mid-point.
- ⊙ Two weight hangers are suspended, one each on either side of the knife edges so that their distances from the nearer knife edge are equal. The beam is brought to the elastic mood by loading and unloading it several times.
- ⊙ With the dead load ' $W$ ', the pin is focused through microscope. The microscope is adjusted so that the horizontal crosswire coincides with the tip of the pin. The microscope reading is taken.
- ⊙ The load is changed in steps of 0.05 kg and in each case the microscope reading is taken during loading and unloading. The readings are tabulated. The elevation at the mid-point for ' $M$ ' kg is calculated.
- ⊙ The distance between the knife edges ( $L$ ) is measured using a metre scale. The breadth ( $b$ ) and thickness ( $d$ ) of the beam are found using vernier caliper and screw gauge, respectively.

**CHAPTER 5**  
**Young's Modulus by Non-Uniform Bending**  
**Dr. M. Silambarasan**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**AIM:** To find the Young's modulus of the given material of the beam by non-uniform bending.

**APPARATUS:** Wooden beam, Weight hanger with slotted weights, Knife edges, Travelling microscope, Vernier caliper, Screw gauge, and meter scale.

**THEORY:** Young's modulus, also known as the elastic modulus, is a measure of the stiffness of a solid material. It is a mechanical property of linear elastic solid materials. It defines the relationship between stress (force per unit area) and strain (proportional deformation) in a material.

**PROCEDURE:**

- ⊙ The bar is symmetrically placed on two knife edges.
- ⊙ A weight hanger is suspended at the center of the bar.
- ⊙ Optical lever is placed with its front leg at the center of the bar from where the weighthanger is suspended.
- ⊙ A vertical scale is arranged at a distance of about one meter from the laser module.
- ⊙ Laser is focused on to the vertical scale.
- ⊙ The bar is loaded and unloaded a number of times to measure its depression with loading and unloading of the mass.
- ⊙ With the weight hanger of mass  $W_0$  alone to the bar, note the scale reading corresponding to the laser spot.
- ⊙ Add the mass  $M$  in steps and scale readings are noted.
- ⊙ The experiment is repeated by unloading the

## CHAPTER 6

### Dielectric Constant

**Dr. V. Vidhya and Dr. Sutapa Ghosh**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**AIM:** To determine the dielectric constant of the given dielectric material by the method of charging and discharging.

**APPARATUS:** Capacitor, Resistor, Two way toggle switch, Voltmeter, stop watch.

#### FORMULA:

Dielectric constant of a given material is given by

$$K = \frac{T_{1/2} \times d \times 10^{-6}}{0.693 \varepsilon_0 AR}$$

Where,

K = Dielectric constant of the material

$T_{1/2}$  = Time taken by the capacitor for half charging / discharging in s.

d = Distance between the two plates in m.

$\varepsilon_0$  = Permittivity of free space =  $8.852 \times 10^{-12}$  F/m

A = Area of the capacitor plate in  $m^2$ .

R = Resistance in  $\Omega$ .

#### PROCEDURE:

- Make the connections as shown in the circuit diagram
- The capacitor is allowed to charge by switching the toggle switch to the position 1 and simultaneously a stop watch is started.
- The voltage across the capacitor is noted down at an interval of 5 second using a stop watch and the readings are entered in the tabular column.
- Now the stop watch is reset, the capacitor is allowed to discharge by switching the toggle switch to the position 2 and simultaneously stopwatch is started, the voltage across the capacitor is noted down for the same interval of time.
- A graph of t along X-axis and V along Y-axis is plotted for both charging and discharging as shown in the sketch of the graph.
- The time ( $T_{1/2}$ ) corresponding to the intersection of the two curves is noted.

**CHAPTER 7**  
**Laser Diffraction Grating**  
**Dr. V. Vidhya and Dr. Sutapa Ghosh**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**AIM:** To determine the wavelength of laser light by diffraction technique using a plane diffraction grating.

**APPARATUS:** Semiconductor diode laser source, grating with holder, scale, screen.

**PRINCIPLE:** Diffraction of light occurs when the width of the obstacle is comparable to the wavelength of the light source. The light from the laser source is allowed to fall normally on the grating, by measuring the distance between the diffracted spots, the wavelength of laser light is determined.

**FORMULA:**

Wavelength of laser light is given by

$$\lambda = \frac{d \sin \theta_m}{m} \quad nm$$

Where,

d = Grating constant measured in m

m = difference between the order of spots

$\theta_m$  = angle of diffraction for  $m^{\text{th}}$  order spot

**PROCEDURE:**

1. Place the grating in its holder and the screen is placed at a distance of R cm as mentioned in the tabular column.
2. The grating is kept between the laser source and the screen.
3. Laser beam undergoes diffraction after passing through the grating. The diffraction spots are observed on the screen.
4. The distances  $2x_m$  between the symmetrical spots on either side of central bright spot are measured and



# **ENGINEERING** **PHYSICS II**



Edited by  
**K. SWAMINATHAN**



978-93-6255-336-2

Engineering Physics II  
Copyright © 2019 by *Mr. K. Swaminathan*

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-336-2

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction.....	19
CHAPTER 1 Conductors .....	20
<i>Mr. K. Swaminathan</i>	
CHAPTER 2 Semiconductors .....	32
<i>Dr. Sutapa Ghosh</i>	
CHAPTER 3 Dielectric Materials .....	43
<i>Dr.S.Subashchandrabo</i>	
CHAPTER 4 Superconductors .....	53
<i>Dr. L. Chinnappa</i>	
CHAPTER 5 Modern Engineering Materials .....	69
<i>Dr. M. Sivanantham</i>	
CHAPTER 6 Nanotechnology .....	88
<i>Dr. V. Vidhya</i>	
CHAPTER 7 Electronics .....	105
<i>Dr.S.Subashchandrabo</i>	
REFERENCES.....	123

# CHAPTER 1

## Conductors

**Mr. K. Swaminathan**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

### Introduction

Conductors are materials that allow the free flow of electric charge, primarily electrons, through them. They are essential components in electrical and electronic systems, as they enable the transmission of electrical energy from one point to another with minimal resistance and energy loss. The most common examples of conductors include metals such as copper, aluminum, gold, and silver. Understanding the properties and behavior of conductors is fundamental to the fields of physics, engineering, and material science, as they play a critical role in the design and operation of electrical circuits, power transmission lines, and electronic devices.

Conductors are indispensable in the modern world, enabling the flow of electricity that powers everything from household appliances to large-scale industrial machinery and global communication networks. Their unique properties, including high electrical conductivity, low resistivity, and durability, make them suitable for a wide range of applications. A deep understanding of conductors and their behavior under various conditions is essential for engineers and scientists to design and develop efficient electrical and electronic systems that meet the demands of contemporary technology and society.

#### Basic Principles of Conductors

#### Electrical Conductivity:

Electrical conductivity is a measure of a material's ability to conduct an electric current. It depends on the availability of free charge carriers, usually electrons, and how easily they can move through the material. Conductors have high electrical conductivity due to the presence of a large number of free electrons in their atomic structure.



## **CHAPTER 2**

### **Semiconductors**

**Dr. Sutapa Ghosh**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

### **Introduction**

Semiconductors are a class of materials with electrical conductivity that falls between that of conductors and insulators. Unlike conductors, which allow free flow of electrons, and insulators, which prevent it, semiconductors have a unique ability to control the flow of charge carriers (electrons and holes) under different conditions, such as temperature, light exposure, or the presence of an electric field. This property makes them fundamental to modern electronics, enabling the creation of devices such as transistors, diodes, and integrated circuits, which are the building blocks of virtually all electronic equipment.

Semiconductors are the foundation of modern electronics and have revolutionized technology over the past century. Their unique properties, such as variable conductivity and sensitivity to temperature and light, make them essential in the design and operation of devices ranging from simple diodes to complex microprocessors and photovoltaic cells. Understanding the behavior and applications of semiconductors is crucial for further advancements in electronics, renewable energy, and nanotechnology.

Basic Principles of Semiconductors

Intrinsic and Extrinsic Semiconductors:

Intrinsic Semiconductors:

These are pure semiconductors with no impurities. Their electrical conductivity depends solely on the temperature. As temperature increases, more electrons gain enough energy to jump from the valence band to the conduction band, creating electron-hole pairs. Silicon and germanium are common examples.

Extrinsic Semiconductors:

**CHAPTER 3**  
**Dielectric Materials**  
**Dr. S. Subashchandrabose**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**Introduction**

Dielectric materials, also known as insulators, are substances that do not conduct electricity under normal conditions but can support an electrostatic field. They are characterized by their ability to store electrical energy and resist the flow of electric current. Unlike conductors, which allow free movement of charge carriers like electrons, dielectric materials have tightly bound electrons that do not move freely. This property makes them essential in various applications, such as capacitors, insulators, and electronic devices.

Dielectric materials are vital components in modern technology, playing a crucial role in the design and function of electronic devices, power systems, and communication equipment. Their unique properties, such as high dielectric constant, low loss tangent, and dielectric strength, make them indispensable for energy storage, insulation, and high-frequency applications. Understanding and optimizing the properties of dielectric materials is essential for advancing the performance and efficiency of electronic devices and systems.

**Fundamental Properties of Dielectric Materials**

**Dielectric Constant (Permittivity):**

The dielectric constant, or relative permittivity ( $\epsilon_r$ ), is a measure of a material's ability to store electrical energy in an electric field compared to a vacuum. It indicates how much the electric field is reduced inside the material. A higher dielectric constant means the material can store more charge, making it useful for applications like capacitors.

**Polarization:**

When a dielectric material is placed in an electric field, its molecules align themselves in such a way that creates an internal electric field opposing the external one. This process,

# CHAPTER 4

## Superconductors

### Dr. L. Chinnappa

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

### Introduction

Superconductors are materials that exhibit zero electrical resistance and the expulsion of magnetic fields when cooled below a certain critical temperature ( $T_c$ ). This remarkable phenomenon, first discovered by Heike Kamerlingh Onnes in 1911, allows superconductors to conduct electricity without any energy loss, making them invaluable in various advanced technological applications. Superconductors are classified into two main types: Type I and Type II, each exhibiting distinct behaviors in the presence of magnetic fields.

Superconductors represent a remarkable class of materials with unique electrical and magnetic properties that open the door to a wide range of applications across various fields. From enhancing energy efficiency in power transmission to enabling advanced technologies in medicine and quantum computing, superconductors are at the forefront of scientific and engineering innovation. As research continues into understanding and developing new superconducting materials, particularly those with higher critical temperatures, the potential for transformative applications is vast, promising to impact technology and society significantly.

Fundamental Properties of Superconductors

Zero Electrical Resistance:

One of the hallmark properties of superconductors is their ability to carry electrical current without resistance below the critical temperature. This means that an electric current can flow indefinitely in a superconducting loop without losing energy, a property that can significantly enhance the efficiency of power transmission systems.

**CHAPTER 5**  
**Modern Engineering Materials**  
**Dr. M. Sivanantham**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**Introduction**

Modern engineering materials are fundamental to advancements in technology and manufacturing. These materials have been developed to meet the demands of contemporary applications, offering enhanced properties such as strength, durability, lightweight characteristics, and resistance to environmental factors. The selection of appropriate materials is critical in various engineering fields, including aerospace, automotive, electronics, construction, and biomedical applications. This introduction explores the types, properties, and significance of modern engineering materials.

Modern engineering materials are pivotal to innovation and progress across various industries. Their development has enabled the creation of advanced products and technologies that enhance performance, safety, and sustainability. As research continues to explore new materials and improve existing ones, the potential for revolutionary applications remains vast, promising to shape the future of engineering and technology.

**Types of Modern Engineering Materials**

**Metals and Alloys:**

Metals, such as steel, aluminum, and titanium, are foundational materials in engineering. They offer high strength, ductility, and conductivity. Modern alloys, such as high-strength steel and aluminum alloys, have been engineered to improve specific properties, making them suitable for applications like aircraft structures, automotive components, and machinery.

**Polymers:**

Polymers are versatile materials known for their lightweight and corrosion resistance. Engineering polymers, like polycarbonate and nylon, are used in applications ranging

**CHAPTER 6**  
**Nanotechnology**  
**Dr. V. Vidhya**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**Introduction**

Nanotechnology is the manipulation and control of matter at the nanoscale, typically within the range of 1 to 100 nanometers (nm). At this scale, materials exhibit unique physical and chemical properties that differ significantly from their bulk counterparts. Nanotechnology integrates principles from various fields, including physics, chemistry, biology, and engineering, to create novel materials and devices with a wide array of applications. As a rapidly advancing field, nanotechnology holds great promise for revolutionizing industries such as medicine, electronics, energy, and environmental science.

Nanotechnology is a transformative field that has the potential to impact nearly every aspect of modern life. By manipulating materials at the nanoscale, researchers and engineers can develop innovative solutions to complex problems across various industries. As advancements in nanotechnology continue to evolve, its applications will expand, paving the way for breakthroughs that enhance healthcare, energy efficiency, environmental sustainability, and materials performance, ultimately shaping the future of technology and society.

Fundamental Principles of Nanotechnology

Nanoscale Properties:

At the nanoscale, materials often demonstrate enhanced reactivity, strength, electrical conductivity, and optical properties. For example, nanoparticles can have a greater surface area-to-volume ratio, allowing for increased chemical reactivity and improved catalytic properties. This unique behavior is primarily due to quantum effects and surface phenomena that become significant at such small dimensions.

## CHAPTER 7

### Electronics

**Dr. S. Subashchandrabose**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

#### Introduction

Electronics is a branch of physics and engineering that deals with the flow of electric charge through various media and the manipulation of this charge to create a wide range of devices and systems. It encompasses a vast array of technologies, including components like resistors, capacitors, transistors, and integrated circuits, which form the foundation of modern electronic devices. The field has transformed the way we communicate, compute, and interact with the world, making it an essential aspect of contemporary life.

Electronics is a dynamic and essential field that underpins many aspects of modern life. From communication and computing to healthcare and entertainment, electronic technologies have transformed how we live and work. As the industry continues to evolve, the potential for new applications and innovations remains vast, promising to shape the future of technology and enhance the quality of life worldwide.

#### Fundamental Principles of Electronics

##### Electric Charge and Current:

At the heart of electronics is the concept of electric charge, which can exist in two forms: positive and negative. The flow of electric charge through a conductor is known as electric current, typically measured in amperes (A). Current can be either direct (DC) or alternating (AC), with DC providing a constant flow and AC changing direction periodically.

##### Voltage and Resistance:

Voltage, measured in volts (V), is the potential difference that drives electric current through a circuit. Resistance, measured in ohms ( $\Omega$ ), opposes the flow of current. Ohm's Law, defined as  $V = I \times R$  describes the relationship

# STRENGTH OF MATERIALS

Edited by

**DR.S.DHANUSKODI**



978-93-6255-662-2

Strength of Materials

Copyright©2019-2020 by Dr.S.Dhanuskodi

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-662-2

Publisher: PRIST Publications



**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

Introduction ..... 10  
CHAPTER 1 Stress, Strain And Deformation Of Solids  
System ..... 21

**G ARUNKUMAR**

CHAPTER 2 Composite Bars and Temperature Stresses .... 44

**P SARATH KUMAR**

CHAPTER 3 Transverse Loading On Beams And Stresses  
In Beam ..... 68

**J RAJESH**

CHAPTER 4 Thin Cylindrical and Spherical Shells ..... 92

**J.SELVAMANI**

CHAPTER 5 Deflection of Beams and Cantilevers ..... 120

**Dr V YALINI**

CHAPTER 6 Theory of Simple Bending ..... 142

**Dr.S.SUKUMAR**

CHAPTER 7 Torsion of materials..... 168

**R.TAMIZH SELVAN**

CHAPTER 8 Shear Force and Bending Moment Diagrams  
..... 190

**R.BASKARAN**

CHAPTER 9 Thin Cylinders, Spheres And Thick  
Cylinders ..... 179  
K.PURUSHOTHAMAN

CHAPTER 10 Springs ..... 203  
P.VIJAYAKUMAR

REFERENCES ..... 269

## CHAPTER 1

### STRESS, STRAIN AND DEFORMATION OF SOLID SYSTEMS

**MR.G.ARUN KUMAR**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute Of Science And Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the advanced concept of Strength of Materials and this chapter introduces the Stress, Strain & deformation of solid system.

Stress is the measure of the force required to cause deformation. A strain is the measure of the degree of deformation. Here's an overview of each platform:

Stress, Strain & deformation of solid system include:

When an unsteady external force is applied to a matter, its shape changes due to the spacing between the atoms. This change in the matter's shape, dimension, and orientation is called deformation.

Stress, Strain & deformation of solid system Key Features:

- **Proportional Limit:** The proportional limit is the point on a stress-strain curve where the linear, elastic deformation region transitions into a non-linear, plastic deformation
- **Elastic Limit:** The point the material returns to its original position (or shape) when the stress acting on it is completely removed.
- **Yield Point:** It is the point at which the material starts to deform plastically.

## CHAPTER 2

### COMPOSITE BARS AND TEMPERATURE STRESSES

**MR. P SARATH KUMAR**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute Of Science And Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the advanced concept of Strength of Materials and this chapter introduces the Composite Bars and Temperature Stresses.

In a composite bar, if one material expands more than the other due to a temperature change, internal stresses will develop as the materials are rigidly connected. The formulas to calculate these thermal stresses depend on whether the bars are connected in series or parallel. Here's an overview of each platform:

Composite Bars and Temperature Stresses include:

Thermal Stress in Composite Bar. Thermal stresses result from a change in the component's temperature, and the component is mechanically prevented from expanding or contracting.

Composite Bars and Temperature Stresses Key Features:

- Corrosion resistance. Composite rebar is very resistant to corrosion processes. Strength characteristics of fiberglass rebar do not change when used in an alkaline or other aggressive environment.
- Composite rods do not conduct electric current, so they are actively used in the construction of research stations, laboratories and medical centers, where magnetic resonance imaging devices are located.

**CHAPTER 3**  
**TRANSVERSE LOADING ON BEAMS AND STRESSES IN**  
**BEAM**

**MR. J RAJESH**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical  
Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the advanced concept of Strength of Materials and this chapter introduces the Transverse Loading on Beams and Stresses in Beam.

Transverse loading promotes shear forces, which generate shear deformation and increase slanting deflection. When a beam is subjected to a transverse load, it deforms, and stresses arise within it. Here's an overview of each platform:

Transverse Loading on Beams and Stresses in Beam include:

The shear stress due to bending is often referred to as transverse shear. Like the normal stress there is a stress profile that is based off of the neutral axis of the particular cross-sectional area.

Transverse Loading on Beams and Stresses in Beam Key Features:

Transverse section, which is plane before bending, remains plane after bending .The radius of curvature of the beam is very large compared to the cross sectional dimension of the beam.

## CHAPTER 4

### THIN CYLINDRICAL AND SPHERICAL SHELLS

**MR. J.SELVAMANI**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the advanced concept of Strength of Materials and this chapter introduces the Thin Cylindrical and Spherical Shells.

Thin cylindrical and spherical shells are used mainly for storage of gas, petrol, liquid, chemicals, and grains and so on. Here's an overview of each platform:

Thin Cylindrical and Spherical Shells include:

Closed vessels are used for storing fluids under pressure. If the ratio of thickness of shell to internal radius is less than 0.1, then the cylindrical vessel is known as thin cylinder. In this cylinder, distribution of stress is assumed to be uniform over the thickness of wall.

Thin Cylindrical and Spherical Shells Key Features:

**Thin Cylinder:** A cylinder is considered to be 'thin' if the ratio of the inner diameter to the thickness of the walls is greater than 20.

**Thick Cylinder:** A cylinder is considered to be 'thick' if the ratio of the inner diameter to the thickness of the walls is less than 20.

## CHAPTER 5

### DEFLECTION OF BEAMS AND CANTILEVERS

**Dr V YALINI**

*Associate Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the advanced concept of Strength of Materials and this chapter introduces the Deflection of Beams and Cantilevers.

Deflection, in structural engineering terms, means the movement of a beam or node from its original position. It happens due to the forces and loads being applied to the body. Here's an overview of each platform.

Deflection of Beams and Cantilevers include:

When a cantilever beam is subjected to a load, it undergoes deflection, causing it to bend downwards. The amount of deflection is influenced by factors such as the beam's material properties, cross-sectional geometry, applied loads, and the location of the applied load.

Deflection of Beams and Cantilevers Key Features:

A cantilever is a rigid structural element that is supported on another element only at one end, thus leaving much of its surface with no apparent point of support.

## CHAPTER 6

### THEORY OF SIMPLE BENDING

**Dr.S.SUKUMAR**

*Associate Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the advanced concept of Strength of Materials and this chapter introduces the Theory of Simple Bending.

When a beam is subjected to a loading system or by a force couple acting on a plane passing through the axis, then the beam deforms. In simple terms, this axial deformation is called as bending of a beam. Here's an overview of each platform.

Theory of Simple Bending includes:

Bending moments occur when a force is applied at a given distance away from a point of reference; causing a bending effect. In the simplest terms, a bending moment is basically a force that causes something to bend.

Theory of Simple Bending Key Features:

Several factors influence the magnitude of bending stress, three among them featuring prominently: the externally applied load, the material properties of the beam, and the design or shape of its cross-section.



## CHAPTER 7

### TORSION OF MATERIALS

**R.TAMIZH SELVAN**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the advanced concept of Strength of Materials and this chapter introduces the Torsion of materials.

In the field of solid mechanics, torsion is the twisting of an object due to an applied torque. Torsion is expressed in either the Pascal, an SI unit for Newton's per square meter, or in pounds per square inch while torque is expressed in Newton metres or foot-pound force. Here's an overview of each platform.

Torsion of materials includes:

Torsion testing involves the twisting of a sample along an axis and is a useful test for acquiring information like torsion shear stress, maximum torque, shear modulus, and breaking angle of a material or the interface between two materials.

Torsion of materials Key Features:

The most common mechanical properties measured by torsion testing are modulus of elasticity in shear, yield shear strength, ultimate shear strength, modulus of rupture in shear, and ductility.

## CHAPTER 8

### SHEAR FORCE AND BENDING MOMENT DIAGRAMS

**R.BASKARAN**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical  
Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the advanced concept of Strength of Materials and this chapter introduces Shear Force and Bending Moment Diagrams.

Shear Force and Bending Moment Diagram is the graphical representation of the Shear Force distribution and Bending Moment along the length of a beam. Here's an overview of each platform.

Shear Force and Bending Moment Diagrams includes:

Shear and moment diagrams are graphs which show the internal shear and bending moment plotted along the length of the beam. They allow us to see where the maximum loads occur so that we can optimize the design to prevent failures.

Shear Force and Bending Moment Diagrams Key Features:

The diagram which shows the variation of shear force along the length of the beam is called Shear Force Diagram.

Bending Moment Diagram .The diagram which shows the variation of bending moment along the length of the beam is called Bending Moment Diagram.

## CHAPTER 9

### THIN CYLINDERS, SPHERES AND THICK CYLINDERS

**K.PURUSHOTHAMAN**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical  
Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and  
Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the advanced concept of Strength of Materials and this chapter introduces Thin Cylinders, Spheres and Thick Cylinders.

The vessels such as boilers, compressed air receivers are of cylindrical and spherical forms. These vessels are generally used for storing fluids under pressure. Here's an overview of each platform.

Thin Cylinders, Spheres and Thick Cylinders include:

The cylinder whose thickness is less than two of its diameter, that cylinder is called a thin cylinder. The cylinder whose thickness is more than of its diameter that cylinder is called a thick Cylinder.

Thin Cylinders, Spheres and Thick Cylinders Key Features:

A thick cylinder has a smaller diameter with respect to its wall thickness, whereas a thin cylinder has a greater diameter with respect to its wall thickness.

## **CHAPTER 10**

### **SPRINGS**

**P.VIJAYAKUMAR**

*Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the advanced concept of Strength of Materials and this chapter introduces springs.

A spring is a device consisting of an elastic but largely rigid material bent or molded into a form that can return into shape after being compressed or extended. Here's an overview of each platform.

Springs include:

Spring materials are high strength alloys, which often exhibit the greatest strength in the alloy system. They are used in a wide range of applications and are essential in many devices and systems to provide functionality and control.

Springs Key Features:

An ideal spring material has high strength properties, a high elastic limit and a low modulus. Because springs are resilient structures designed to undergo large deflections, spring materials must have properties of extensive elastic range.

# MANUFACTURING TECHNOLOGY



# MANUFACTURING TECHNOLOGY

EDITED BY  
M SUDHAKAR



978-93-6255-863-3

# MANUFACTURING TECHNOLOGY

Manufacturing Technology

Copyright © 2018-2019 by M SUDHAKAR

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-863-3

Publisher: PRIST Publications.

# MANUFACTURING TECHNOLOGY

	<b><u>TABLE OF CONTENTS</u></b>	
	Introduction	8
CHAPTER NO 1	Mechanics of Metal Cutting	12
<b>Dr. V YALINI</b>		
CHAPTER NO 2	Turning Machines - lathe	49
<b>K PURUSHOTHAMAN</b>		
CHAPTER NO 3	Reciprocating Machine Tools	88
<b>M SUDHAKAR</b>		
CHAPTER NO 4	CNC Machines	125
<b>P SARATH KUMAR</b>		
CHAPTER NO 5	Programming of CNC Machine Tools	178
<b>N SIVAHARINATHAN</b>		
CHAPTER NO 6	Casting	208
<b>J RAJESH</b>		
CHAPTER NO 7	Forging	232
<b>P VIJAYAKUMAR</b>		
CHAPTER NO 8	Welding	267
<b>G BRITHIVIRAJ</b>		
CHAPTER NO 9	Sheet Metal Work	312
<b>Dr. S DHANUSKODI</b>		
CHAPTER NO 10	Powder Metallurgy	340
<b>R TAMIZH SELVAN</b>		
REFERENCES		372

# MANUFACTURING TECHNOLOGY

## CHAPTER 1

### Mechanics of Metal Cutting

Dr. V YALINI

*Introduction - Material removal processes, Types of machine tools – Theory of metal cutting - chip formation, heat generation, cutting fluids, cutting tool life - Recent developments and applications (Dry machining and high speed machining).*

#### INTRODUCTION

In an industry, metal components are made into different shapes and dimensions by using various metal working processes.

*Metal working processes are classified into two major groups. They are:*

- Non-cutting shaping or chips less or metal forming process - forging, rolling, pressing, etc.
- Cutting shaping or metal cutting or chip forming process - turning, drilling, milling, etc.

#### MATERIAL REMOVAL PROCESSES

##### Definition of machining

Machining is an essential process of finishing by which work pieces are produced to the desired dimensions and surface finish by gradually removing the excess material from the preformed blank in the form of chips with the help of cutting tool(s) moved past the work surface(s).

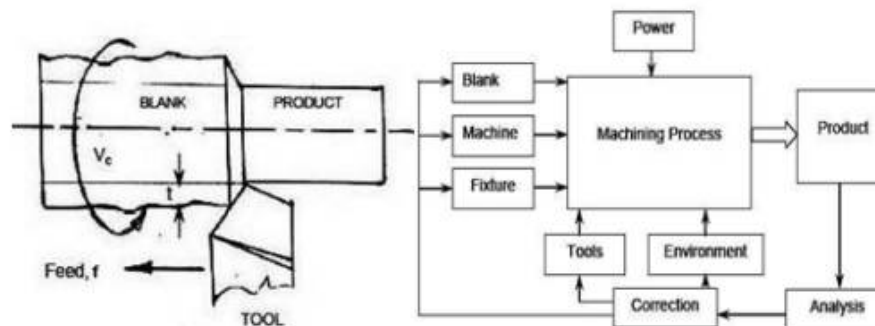


Fig. 1.1 Principle of machining (Turning)

Fig. 1.2 Requirements for machining

##### Principle of machining

*Fig. 1.1 typically illustrates the basic principle of machining. A metal rod of irregular shape, size and surface is converted into a finished product of desired dimension and surface finish by machining by proper relative motions of the tool-work pair.*

##### Purpose of machining

Most of the engineering components such as gears, bearings, clutches, tools, screws and nuts etc. need dimensional and form accuracy and good surface finish for serving their purposes.



# MANUFACTURING TECHNOLOGY

## CHAPTER 2

### Turning Machines - lathe

K PURUSHOTHAMAN

*Centre lathe – Constructional features – Cutting tool geometry – Various operations – Taper turning methods – Thread cutting methods – Special attachments – Machining time and power estimation – Capstan and turret lathes – Automats – Single spindle – Swiss type – Automatic screw type – Multi spindle – Turret Indexing mechanism – Bar feed mechanism.*

#### **CENTRE LATHE**

Lathe is the oldest machine tool invented, starting with the Egyptian tree lathes. It is the father of all machine tools. Its main function is to remove material from a work piece to produce the required shape and size. This is accomplished by holding the work piece securely and rigidly on the machine and then turning it against the cutting tool which will remove material from the work piece in the form of chips. It is used to machine cylindrical parts. Generally single point cutting tool is used. In the year 1797 Henry Maudslay, an Englishman, designed the first screw cutting lathe which is the forerunner of the present day high speed, heavy duty production lathe.

#### **Classification of lathes**

Lathes are very versatile of wide use and are classified according to several aspects:

##### ***According to configuration:***

- Horizontal - Most common for ergonomic conveniences.
- Vertical - Occupies less floor space, only some large lathes are of this type.

##### ***According to purpose of use:***

- General purpose - Very versatile where almost all possible types of operations are carried out on wide ranges of size, shape and materials of jobs; e.g.: centre lathes.
- Single purpose - Only one (occasionally two) type of operation is done on limited ranges of size and material of jobs; e.g.: facing lathe, roll turning lathe etc.
- Special purpose - Where a definite number and type of operations are done repeatedly over long time on a specific type of blank; e.g.: capstan lathe, turret lathe, gear blanking lathe etc.

##### ***According to size or capacity:***

- Small (low duty) - In such light duty lathes (up to 1.1 kW), only small and medium size jobs of generally soft and easily machinable materials are machined.
- Medium (medium duty) - These lathes of power nearly up to 11 kW are most versatile and commonly used.
- Large (heavy duty)
- Mini or micro lathe - These are tiny table-top lathes used for extremely small size jobs and precision work; e.g.: Swiss type automatic lathe.

##### ***According to configuration of the jobs being handled:***

- Bar type - Slender rod like jobs being held in collets.
- Chucking type - Disc type jobs being held in chucks.
- Housing type - Odd shape jobs, being held in face plate.

# MANUFACTURING TECHNOLOGY

## CHAPTER 3

### Reciprocating Machine Tools

M SUDHAKAR

*Reciprocating machine tools: shaper, planer, slotter - Milling: types, milling cutters, operations - Hole making: Drilling - Quill mechanism, Reaming, Boring, Tapping - Sawing machine: hack saw, band saw, circular saw; broaching machines: broach construction - push, pull, surface and continuous broaching machines*

#### RECIPROCATING MACHINE TOOLS

In lathes the work piece is rotated while the cutting tool is moved axially to produce cylindrical surfaces. But in reciprocating machine tools the single point cutting tool is reciprocates and produces flat surfaces. The flat surfaces produced may be horizontal, vertical or inclined at an angle. These machine tools can also be arranged for machining contoured surfaces, slots, grooves and other recesses. The major machine tools that fall in this type are: Shaper, Planer and Slotter. The main characteristic of this type of machine tools is that they are simple in construction and are thus economical in operation.

#### SHAPER

The main function of the shaper is to produce flat surfaces in different planes. In general the shaper can produce any surface composed of straight line elements. Modern shapers can generate contoured surface. Because of the poor productivity and process capability the shapers are not widely used nowadays for production. The shaper is a low cost machine tool and is used for initial rough machining of the blanks.

#### Classification of shapers

Shapers are broadly classified as follows:

##### *According to the type of mechanism used:*

- Crank shaper, Geared shaper and Hydraulic shaper.

##### *According to the position and travel of ram:*

- Horizontal shaper, Vertical shaper and Traveling head shaper.

##### *According to the type of design of the table:*

- Standard or plain shaper and Universal shaper.

##### *According to the type of cutting stroke:*

- Push type shaper and Draw type shaper.

#### According to the type of mechanism used

##### *Crank shaper*

This is the most common type of shaper in which a single point cutting tool is given a reciprocating motion equal to the length of the stroke desired while the work is clamped in position on an adjustable table. In construction, the crank shaper employs a crank mechanism



# MANUFACTURING TECHNOLOGY

## CHAPTER 4

### CNC Machines

P SARATH KUMAR

*Numerical control: Brief principles and description of numerical control application to M/c tools. DNC, CNC and adaptive control. Programming of CNC M/C tools, CNC programming based on CAD. Fundamentals of CAD/CAM, Computer integrated manufacturing, Compute Aided Process Planning, Computer Integrated Production Planning system.*

#### **Numerical Control Definition and applications**

##### **Introduction**

The subject of this lecture is the interface between CAD and the manufacturing processes actually used to make the parts, and how to extract the data from the CAD model for the purpose of controlling a manufacturing process. Getting geometric information from the CAD model is of particular relevance to the manufacture of parts directly by machining (i.e. by material removal), and to the manufacture of tooling for forming and molding processes by machining. The use of numerical information for the control of such machining processes is predominantly through the numerical control NC of machines.

##### **Fundamentals of numerical control**

Today numerically controlled devices are used in all manner of industries. Milling machines manufacture the molds and dies for polymer products. Flame cutting and plasma arc machines cut shapes from large steel plates. Lasers are manipulated to cut tiny cooling holes in gas turbine parts. Electronic components are inserted into printed circuit boards by NC insertion machines.

Numerical Control NC is a form of programmable automation in which the mechanical actions of a machine tool or other equipment are controlled by a program containing coded alphanumerical data. Numerical control NC is any machining process in which the operations are executed automatically in sequences as specified by the program that contains the information for the tool movements. The alphanumerical data represent relative positions between a workhead and a workpart as well as other instructions needed to operate the machine. The workhead is a cutting tool or other processing apparatus, and the workpart is the object being processed.

##### **Applications of Numerical Control**

1. Machine tool applications, such as drilling, milling, turning, and other metal working
2. Nonmachine tool applications, such as assembly, drafting, and inspection.

# MANUFACTURING TECHNOLOGY

## CHAPTER 5

### Programming of CNC Machine Tools

**N SIVAHARINATHAN**

#### **G –codes:**

G00 - Rapid move (not cutting)  
G01 - Linear move  
G02 - Clockwise circular motion  
G03 - Counterclockwise circular motion  
G04 - Dwell  
G05 - Pause (for operator intervention)  
G08 - Acceleration  
G09 - Deceleration  
G17 - x-y plane for circular interpolation  
G18 - z-x plane for circular interpolation  
G19 - y-z plane for circular interpolation  
G20 - turning cycle or inch data specification  
G21 - thread cutting cycle or metric data specification  
G24 - face turning cycle  
G25 - wait for input to go low  
G26 - wait for input to go high  
G28 - return to reference point  
G29 - return from reference point  
G31 - Stop on input  
G33-35 - thread cutting functions  
G35 - wait for input to go low  
G36 - wait for input to go high  
G40 - cutter compensation cancel  
G41 - cutter compensation to the left  
G42 - cutter compensation to the right  
G43 - tool length compensation, positive  
G44 - tool length compensation, negative  
G50 - Preset position  
G70 - set inch based units or finishing cycle  
G71 - set metric units or stock removal  
G72 - indicate finishing cycle  
G72 - 3D circular interpolation clockwise  
G73 - turning cycle contour  
G73 - 3D circular interpolation counter clockwise  
G74 - facing cycle contour  
G74.1 - disable 360 deg arcs  
G75 - pattern repeating  
G75.1 - enable 360 degree arcs  
G76 - deep hole drilling, cut cycle in z-axis G77 - cut-in cycle in x-axis  
G 78 - multiple threading cycle G80 - fixed cycle cancel  
G81-89 - fixed cycles specified by machine tool manufacturers G81 - drilling cycle  
G82 - straight drilling cycle with dwell

# MANUFACTURING TECHNOLOGY

## CHAPTER 6

### Casting

#### J RAJESH

A pattern is a model or the replica of the object (to be casted). It is embedded in molding sand and suitable ramming of molding sand around the pattern is made. The pattern is then withdrawn for generating cavity (known as mold) in molding sand. Thus it is a mould forming tool. Pattern can be said as a model or the replica of the object to be cast except for the various allowances a pattern exactly resembles the casting to be made. It may be defined as a model or form around which sand is packed to give rise to a cavity known as mold cavity in which when molten metal is poured, the result is the cast object. When this mould/cavity is filled with molten metal, molten metal solidifies and produces a casting (product). So the pattern is the replica of the casting.

A pattern prepares a mold cavity for the purpose of making a casting. It may also possess projections known as core prints for producing extra recess in the mould for placement of core to produce hollowness in casting. It may help in establishing seat for placement of core at locating points on the mould in form of extra recess. It establishes the parting line and parting surfaces in the mold. It may help to position a core in case a part of mold cavity is made with cores, before the molding sand is rammed. It should have finished and smooth surfaces for reducing casting defects. Runner, gates and risers used for introducing and feeding molten metal to the mold cavity may sometimes form the parts of the pattern. The first step in casting is pattern making. The pattern is a made of suitable material and is used for making cavity called mould in molding sand or other suitable mould materials. When this mould is filled with molten metal and it is allowed to solidify, it forms a reproduction of the, pattern which is known as casting. There are some objectives of a pattern which are given as under.

#### OBJECTIVES OF A PATTERN

- 1 Pattern prepares a mould cavity for the purpose of making a casting.
- 2 Pattern possesses core prints which produces seats in form of extra recess for core placement in the mould.
- 3 It establishes the parting line and parting surfaces in the mould.
- 4 Runner, gates and riser may form a part of the pattern.

# MANUFACTURING TECHNOLOGY

## CHAPTER 7

### Forging

#### P VIJAYAKUMAR

Forging is an oldest shaping process used for the producing small articles for which accuracy in size is not so important. The parts are shaped by heating them in an open fire or hearth by the blacksmith and shaping them through applying compressive forces using hammers. Thus forging is defined as the plastic deformation of metals at elevated temperatures into a predetermined size or shape using compressive forces exerted through some means of hand hammers, small power hammers, die, press or upsetting machine. It consists essentially of changing or altering the shape and section of metal by hammering at a temperature of about 980°C, at which the metal is entirely plastic and can be easily deformed or shaped under pressure. The shop in which the various forging operations are carried out is known as the smithy or smith's shop. A metal such as steel can be shaped in a cold state but the application of heat lowers the yield point and makes permanent deformation easier. Forging operation can be accomplished by hand or by a machine hammer. Forging processes may be classified into hot forging and cold forgings and each of them possesses their specific characteristics, merits, demerits and applications.

Hand forging process is also known as black-smithy work which is commonly employed for production of small articles using hammers on heated jobs. It is a manual controlled process even though some machinery such as power hammers can also be sometimes used. Black-smithy is, therefore, a process by which metal may be heated and shaped to its requirements by the use of blacksmith tools either by hand or power hammer. In smithy small parts are shaped by heating them in an open fire or hearth. Shaping is done under hand control using hand tools. This work is done in a smithy shop. In smith forging or hand forging open face dies are used and the hammering on the heated metal is done by hand to get the desired shape by judgment.

Forging by machine involves the use of forging dies and is generally employed for mass-production of accurate articles. In drop forging, closed impression dies are used and there is drastic flow of metal in the dies due to repeated blow or impact which compels the plastic metal to conform to the shape of the dies. The final shape of the product from raw material is achieved in a number of steps. There are some advantages, disadvantages and applications of forging operations which are given as under.



# MANUFACTURING TECHNOLOGY

## CHAPTER 8

### Welding

#### G BRITHIVIRAJ

Welding is a process for joining two similar or dissimilar metals by fusion. It joins different metals/alloys, with or without the application of pressure and with or without the use of filler metal. The fusion of metal takes place by means of heat. The heat may be generated either from combustion of gases, electric arc, electric resistance or by chemical reaction. During some type of welding processes, pressure may also be employed, but this is not an essential requirement for all welding processes. Welding provides a permanent joint but it normally affects the metallurgy of the components. It is therefore usually accompanied by post weld heat treatment for most of the critical components. The welding is widely used as a fabrication and repairing process in industries. Some of the typical applications of welding include the fabrication of ships, pressure vessels, automobile bodies, off-shore platform, bridges, welded pipes, sealing of nuclear fuel and explosives, etc.

Most of the metals and alloys can be welded by one type of welding process or the other. However, some are easier to weld than others. To compare this ease in welding term 'weldability' is often used. The weldability may be defined as property of a metal which indicates the ease with which it can be welded with other similar or dissimilar metals. Weldability of a material depends upon various factors like the metallurgical changes that occur due to welding, changes in hardness in and around the weld, gas evolution and absorption, extent of oxidation, and the effect on cracking tendency of the joint. Plain low carbon steel (C-0.12%) has the best weldability amongst metals. Generally it is seen that the materials with high castability usually have low weldability.

### 17.2 TERMINOLOGICAL ELEMENTS OF WELDING PROCESS

The terminological elements of welding process used with common welding joints such as base metal, fusion zone, weld face, root face, root opening toe and root are depicted in Fig. 17.1

#### 17.2.1 Edge preparations

For welding the edges of joining surfaces of metals are prepared first. Different edge preparations may be used for welding butt joints, which are given in Fig 17.2.

# MANUFACTURING TECHNOLOGY

## CHAPTER 9

### Sheet Metal Work

**Dr.S.DHANUSKODI**

Products made through the sheet metal processing include automobile bodies, utensils, almirah, cabinet's appliances, electronic components, electrical parts, aerospace parts, refrigeration and air conditioning parts etc. Sheet metal is generally considered to be a plate with thickness less than about 5 mm. Articles made by sheet metal work are less expensive and lighter in weight. Sheet metal forming work started long back 5000 BC. As compared to casting and forging, sheet-metal parts offer advantages of lightweight and versatile shapes. Because of the good strength and formability characteristics, low carbon steel is the most commonly utilized in sheet-metal processing work. The metal stampings have now replaced many components, which were earlier made by casting or machining. In few cases sheet metal products are used for replacing the use of castings or forgings. Sheet metal work has its own significance in the engineering work. Sheet metal processing has its own significance as a useful trade in engineering works to meet our day-to-day requirements. Many products, which fulfill the household needs, decoration work and various engineering articles, are produced from sheet metals. A good product properly developed may lead to saving of time and money.

In sheet-metal working, there is no need for further machining as required for casting and forging works. The time taken in sheet-metal working is approximately half of that required in the machining process. For carrying out sheet metal work, the knowledge of geometry, mensuration and properties of metal is most essential because nearly all patterns come from the development of the surfaces of a number of geometrical models such as cylinder, prism, cone, and pyramid. In sheet metal work, various operations such as shearing, blanking, piercing, trimming, shaving, notching, forming, bending, stamping, coining, embossing etc. are to be performed on sheet metal using hand tools and press machines to make a product of desired shape and size. Generally metals used in sheet metal work are black iron, galvanized iron, stainless steel, copper, brass, zinc, aluminium, tin plate and lead.

#### 18.2 METALS USED IN SHEET METAL WORK

The following metals are generally used in sheet metal work:



# MANUFACTURING TECHNOLOGY

## CHAPTER 10

### Powder Metallurgy

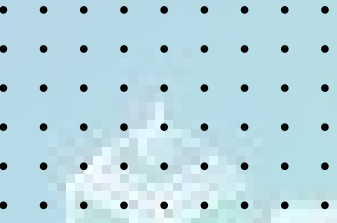
#### R TAMIZH SELVAN

Powder metallurgy is used for manufacturing products or articles from powdered metals by placing these powders in molds and are compacting the same using heavy compressive force. Typical examples of such article or products are grinding wheels, filament wire, magnets, welding rods, tungsten carbide cutting tools, self-lubricating bearings electrical contacts and turbines blades having high temperature strength. The manufacture of parts by powder metallurgy process involves the manufacture of powders, blending, compacting, profiteering, sintering and a number of secondary operations such as sizing, coining, machining, impregnation, infiltration, plating, and heat treatment. The compressed articles are then heated to temperatures much below their melting points to bind the particles together and improve their strength and other properties. Few non-metallic materials can also be added to the metallic powders to provide adequate bond or impart some the needed properties. The products made through this process are very costly on account of the high cost of metal powders as well as of the dies used. The powders of almost all metals and a large quantity of alloys, and nonmetals may be used. The application of powder metallurgy process is economically feasible only for high mass production. Parts made by powder metallurgy process exhibit properties, which cannot be produced by conventional methods. Simple shaped parts can be made to size with high precision without waste, and completely or almost ready for installation.

### 25.2 POWDER METALLURGY PROCESS

The powder metallurgy process consists of the following basic steps:

1. Formation of metallic powders.
2. Mixing or blending of the metallic powders in required proportions.
3. Compressing and compacting the powders into desired shapes and sizes in form of articles.
4. Sintering the compacted articles in a controlled furnace atmosphere.
5. Subjecting the sintered articles to secondary processing if needed so.



# THERMAL ENGINEERING



Edited by  
**R BASKARAN**



978-93-6255-639-4

Thermal Engineering

Copyright © 2018-2019 by R.BASKARAN

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-639-4

Publisher: PRIST Publications.

# **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

Introduction.....	8	
CHAPTER NO 1	<b>Thermodynamic Cycles</b>	11
K.PURUSHOTHAMAN		
CHAPTER NO 2	<b>Gas Power Cycles</b>	35
DHANUSKHODI		
CHAPTER NO 3	<b>Internal Combustion Engines</b>	74
J.SELVAMANI		
CHAPTER NO 4	<b>Performance of Engines</b>	102
N.SIVAHARINATHAN		
CHAPTER NO 5	<b>Steam Nozzles</b>	134
V.YALINI		
CHAPTER NO 6	<b>Turbines</b>	162
P SARATH KUMAR		
CHAPTER NO 7	<b>Cogeneration of Energy</b>	184
M.SUDHAHAR		
CHAPTER NO 8	<b>Residual Heat Recovery</b>	204
R.BASKARAN		
CHAPTER NO 9	<b>Refrigeration system</b>	234
R.TAMIZHSELVAN		
CHAPTER NO 10	<b>Air Conditioning System</b>	252
P.VIJAYAKUMAR		

# **CHAPTER 1**

## **Thermodynamic Cycles**

**K.PURUSOTHAMAN**

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the Thermodynamic Cycles

### Introduction to Thermodynamic Cycles

The concept of a thermodynamic cycle is based on depicting thermodynamic processes which involve the transfer heat and work. This is achieved by altering temperature, pressure, as well as other state variables; the cycle ultimately returning to its initial state. The fundamental basis of these cycles is the first law of thermodynamics which states that ‘energy cannot be created nor destroyed but only converted from one form to another’.

Thermodynamic cycles are split into two primary classes – refrigeration cycles (also known as heat pump cycles) and power cycles such as the combustion engine cycle. Cycles which transfer heat from low temperature to high temperature are classified as heat pump cycles, whereas cycles that convert heat input into mechanical work are designated as power cycles. And so, not inappropriately, thermodynamic power cycles provide the foundation for the operation of a heat engine. Power cycles are then further divided into groups depending on the type of heat engine. For cycles modelling internal combustion engines the groups are the Otto, Diesel, and Brayton cycles and for external combustion engines, they are the Rankine, Organic Rankine, and Kalina cycles.

## CHAPTER 2

### Gas Power Cycles

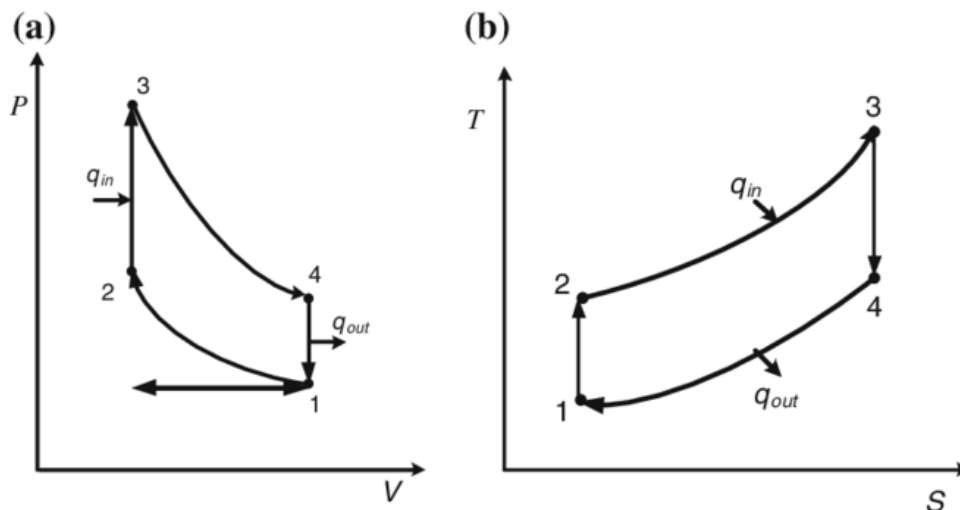
Dr.S.DHANUSKODI

Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the Gas Power Cycles

#### The Otto Cycle

The Otto cycle, which was first proposed by a Frenchman, Beau de Rochas in 1862, was first used on an engine built by a German, Nicholas A. Otto, in 1876. The cycle is also called a constant volume or explosion cycle. This is the equivalent air cycle for reciprocating piston engines using spark ignition. Figures 1 and 2 show the P-V and T-s diagrams respectively



At the start of the cycle, the cylinder contains a mass  $M$  of air at the pressure and volume indicated at point 1. The piston is at its lowest position. It moves upward and the gas is compressed isentropically to point 2. At this point, heat is added at constant volume which raises the pressure to point 3. The high pressure charge now expands isentropically, pushing the piston down on its expansion stroke to point 4 where the charge rejects heat at constant volume to the initial state, point 1.

The isothermal heat addition and rejection of the Carnot cycle are replaced by the constant volume processes which are, theoretically more plausible, although in practice, even these processes are not practicable.

## **CHAPTER 3**

### **Internal Combustion Engines**

**J.SELVAMANI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the Internal Combustion Engines

#### **Classification of IC engine:**

Normally IC engines are classified into

1. C.I engines and
2. S.I engines

Some of the important classifications are given below,

1. Number of strokes  
Two stroke and four stroke
2. Working Cycles  
Otto, Diesel, Dual cycle
3. Cylinder arrangement  
In-line, V-type, Opposed, Radial
4. Valve Arrangement  
T-head, F-head, L-head, I-head
5. Fuel Used  
Petrol, Diesel, Gas
6. Combustion chamber Design  
Open, divided
7. Cooling System -  
Water and air cooling

## **CHAPTER 4**

### **Performance of Engines**

**N.SIVAHARINATHAN**

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the Performance of Engines

The performance of an engine is an indication of the degree of success with which the conversion of chemical energy contained in the fuel is done into useful mechanical work. The degree of success is compared on the basis of following parameters:

1. Specific fuel consumption (SFC)
2. Brake mean effective pressure (BMEP)
3. Specific power output (SP)
4. Specific weight (SW)
5. Exhaust smoke and other emissions

However, in the evaluation of engine performance, the following performance parameters are chosen:

1. Power and mechanical efficiency
2. Mean effective pressure and torque
3. Specific output
4. Fuel-air ratio
5. Volumetric efficiency
6. Specific fuel consumption
7. Thermal efficiency ...



## **CHAPTER 5**

### **Steam Nozzles**

**V.YALINI**

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the Steam Nozzles

#### **Flow of steam through Nozzles**

The flow of steam through nozzles may be regarded as adiabatic Expansion.

The steam has a very high velocity at the end of the expansion, and the enthalpy decreases as expansion takes place.

Friction exists between the steam and the sides of the nozzle; heat is produced as the result of the resistance to the flow.

The phenomenon of super saturation occurs in the flow of steam through nozzles.

This is due to the time lag in the condensation of the steam during the expansion.

#### **Continuity and steady flow energy equations**

Through a certain section of the nozzle:

## **CHAPTER 6**

### **Turbines**

**P.SARATHKUMAR**

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the Turbines

“Turbine” is a general term for any device that extracts mechanical energy from a fluid – generally converting it to rotating energy of a turbine wheel. For liquids, we usually call them “hydraulic turbines” or “hydroturbines”. • For gases, we usually call them “wind turbines”, “gas turbines”, or “steam turbines”, • depending on the type of gas being used.

Just as with pumps, there are two basic types of turbine:

Positive displacement turbines – fluid is forced into a closed volume, and then the fluid is pushed out.

Dynamic turbines – no closed volume is involved; instead, rotating blades called runner blades or buckets extract energy from the fluid.

In general, positive-displacement turbines are used for flow measurement, rather than for production of power, whereas dynamic turbines are used for both power generation and flow measurement.

Positive-Displacement Turbines: commonly used to measure the volume of water supplied to a house, is an example of a positive-displacement turbine

Dynamic Turbines: Dynamic turbines do not have closed volumes. Instead, spinning blades called runners or buckets transfer kinetic energy and extract momentum from the fluid. Dynamic turbines are used for both flow measurement and power production.

## **CHAPTER 7**

### **Cogeneration of Energy**

**M.SUDHAHAR**

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah  
Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the Cogeneration of Energy

#### **COGENERATION**

Cogeneration is a very efficient technology to generate electricity and heat. It is also called Combined Heat and Power (CHP) as cogeneration produces heat and electricity simultaneously in other words

**Two different forms of energy being generated from one single energy source**

#### **Classification of system**

A cogeneration system can usually be classified as either one of the following:

Topping cycle

Bottoming cycle

#### **Topping cycle**

In topping cycle, the fuel supplied is first used to produce power, and then later in the process to produce thermal energy. The thermal energy in the system is used to satisfy process heat or other thermal requirements. Topping cycle cogeneration is the most widely used type and is now a days the most popular type of cogeneration system.

## **CHAPTER 8**

### **Residual Heat Recovery**

**R.BASKARAN**

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the Residual Heat Recovery

#### **Basic concepts**

A heat recovery unit allows the internal air renewal of the premise, maintaining and recovering the energy used for air conditioning.

The main objective of a heat exchanger or heat recovery system is the recovery of the energy by transferring the heat of the air that is extracted from the inside of a premise to the air that is driven outside.

A heat recovery unit is basically composed of a directly driven fan, an exhauster and a heat exchanger, all perfectly assembled and joined inside a thermal and noise insulated structure. The internal extraction air circuits pass by the exchanger without mixing with the circuit of the external driven air.

Through heat exchanger ventilation it is possible to recover a high percentage of the energy used for the premise acclimatization that otherwise would waste.

#### **Heat recovery units advantages and benefits**

By the use of heat recovery units in buildings we obtain:

- Optimum internal air renewal
- Clean and comfortable ambience
- Better climate control
- Energy efficiency improvement
- Energy saving
- Lower acoustic pollution

## CHAPTER 9

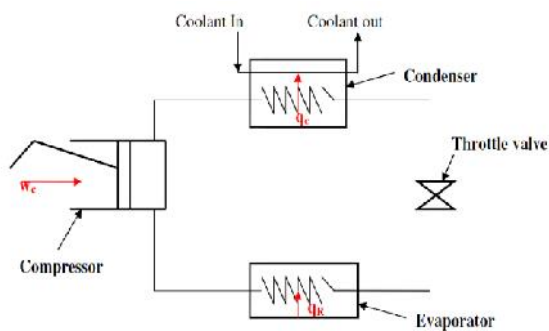
### Refrigeration system

R.TAMIZHSELVAN

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the Refrigeration system

#### Vapour Compression Refrigeration Cycle:



Process 1-2: Isentropic compression of the refrigerant from state 1 to state 2. During this process work is done on the refrigerant by the surroundings. At the end of this process the refrigerant will be in superheated state..

Process 2-3: Constant pressure condensation of the refrigerant in the condenser till it becomes a saturated liquid.

Process 3-4: Throttling expansion of the refrigerant from condenser pressure to the evaporator pressure.

## **CHAPTER10**

### **Air Conditioning System**

**P.VIJAYAKUMAR**

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

This chapter aims to familiarize students with the Air Conditioning System

Air conditioners have three main components and a special chemical called refrigerant:

Compressor: A mechanical component of an air conditioner

Condenser coil: A hot outdoor coil that releases heat outside

Evaporator coil: A cold indoor coil that cools your home

Refrigerant: A chemical that absorbs and removes heat as it loops through the system

The evaporator and condenser coils are made of serpentine tubing surrounded by aluminum fins. The refrigerant evaporates in the evaporator coil, pulling heat out of the air and cooling your home. The compressor, condenser coil, and evaporator coil work together to quickly convert the refrigerant from gas to liquid and back again.



# MANUFACTURING PROCESSES

*Edited by*

**R TAMIZH SELVAN**



978-93-6255-222-8

Manufacturing Processes

Copyright © 2019-2020 by R.Tamizh Selvan

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-222-8

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction.....	10
Chapter 1 Metal Casting Processes .....	15
Dr.S.Dhanushkodi	
Chapter 2 Metal Joining Processes .....	35
R.Baskaran	
Chapter 3 Bulk Deformation Processes In Metals .....	60
Dr. V. Yalini	
Chapter 4 Sheet Metal Processes .....	85
R Tamizh Selvan	
Chapter 5 Manufacture Of Plastic Components.....	120
P Vijayakumar	
Chapter 6 Pattern Materials .....	145
M.Sudhahar	
Chapter 7 Brazing - Soldering .....	175
J.Rajesh	
Chapter 8 Forging Processes .....	200
G.Brithiviraj	
Chapter 9 Incremental Forming.....	240
J.Selvamani	
Chapter 10 Compression Molding .....	270
P.Sarath kumar	
References .....	300

**CHAPTER 1 METAL CASTING PROCESSES****Dr.S.DHANUSKODI**

*Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute Of Science And Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.*

Metal casting is a manufacturing process where molten metal is poured into a mold to create a desired shape. Here are some key casting processes:

**1. Sand Casting**

- Description: Uses sand as the mold material. A pattern is created, and sand is packed around it to form a mold.
- Applications: Common for large parts, such as engine blocks.

**2. Investment Casting (Lost-Wax Casting)**

- Description: A wax pattern is coated with a ceramic shell. Once the shell hardens, the wax is melted away, leaving a mold.
- Applications: Precision parts like jewelry and turbine blades.

**3. Die Casting**

- Description: Molten metal is injected into a reusable metal mold (die) under high pressure.
- Applications: High-volume production of small to medium-sized parts, like automotive components.

**4. Shell Molding**

- Description: A variation of sand casting using a thin shell of sand and resin to form the mold.
- Applications: Parts requiring better surface finish and dimensional accuracy.

**5. Continuous Casting**

- Description: Molten metal is poured into a mold and continuously withdrawn to form long shapes like bars or slabs.
- Applications: Steel and aluminum production.

**6. Centrifugal Casting**

- Description: Molten metal is poured into a rotating mold, which uses centrifugal force to distribute the metal evenly.
- Applications: Pipes and cylindrical parts.

**7. Plaster Casting**

- Description: Similar to sand casting but uses plaster of Paris as the mold material. Suitable for intricate designs.
- Applications: Decorative items and prototypes.

**8. Vacuum Casting**

- Description: Involves creating a mold in a vacuum environment, reducing the risk of gas inclusion.
- Applications: High-precision applications in aerospace and medical devices.

# CHAPTER 2 METAL JOINING PROCESSES

R.Baskaran

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute Of Science And Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Metal joining processes are essential techniques used to connect two or more metal parts together. Here are some of the most common methods:

## 1. Welding

- **Description:** The process of melting and fusing metal parts together using heat, often with added filler material.
- **Types:**
  - **MIG (Metal Inert Gas) Welding:** Uses a continuous wire feed and an inert gas to shield the weld.
  - **TIG (Tungsten Inert Gas) Welding:** Uses a non-consumable tungsten electrode and is suitable for thinner materials.
  - **Stick Welding (SMAW):** Uses a coated electrode to create a weld.
  - **Flux-Cored Arc Welding (FCAW):** Similar to MIG but uses a tubular wire filled with flux.

## 2. Brazing

- **Description:** Involves joining metals by melting a filler metal with a melting point above 450°C (842°F) and below the melting point of the base metals.
- **Applications:** Suitable for joining dissimilar metals and when heat-sensitive components are involved.

## 3. Soldering

- **Description:** Similar to brazing but uses a filler metal with a melting point below 450°C (842°F). Typically involves lead or lead-free solder.
- **Applications:** Common in electronics and plumbing.

## 4. Riveting

- **Description:** A mechanical joining process where a metal pin (rivet) is inserted through aligned holes in the parts and then deformed to hold them together.
- **Applications:** Often used in construction and aircraft manufacturing.

## 5. Bolting

- **Description:** Involves using bolts and nuts to fasten metal parts together. Requires pre-drilled holes.
- **Applications:** Common in structural applications and machinery assembly.

## 6. Adhesive Bonding

- **Description:** Utilizes adhesives to bond metal surfaces together without altering the properties of the base metals.
- **Applications:** Used in aerospace and automotive industries for lightweight structures.

## 7. Mechanical Fastening

- **Description:** Includes methods like clips, clamps, or screws that physically hold parts together without permanent deformation.
- **Applications:** Often used for temporary or adjustable assemblies.

## 8. Spot Welding

- **Description:** A resistance welding process that joins metal sheets by applying heat and pressure at localized spots.
- **Applications:** Commonly used in the automotive industry for assembling sheet metal parts.

## CHAPTER 3

### BULK DEFORMATION PROCESSES IN METALS

Dr V.Yalini

Associate Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute Of Science And Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Bulk deformation processes in metals involve shaping metal materials through the application of forces that cause large-scale changes in their shape. These processes are crucial in manufacturing and metalworking because they can transform raw metal into finished products with desired properties and dimensions. Here are some common bulk deformation processes:

#### 1. Forging

- Description: Forging involves shaping metal using compressive forces applied by hammers or presses. It can be performed hot (above the metal's recrystallization temperature) or cold.
- Types: Open-die forging, closed-die forging, and upset forging.
- Applications: Used for making strong components like gears, crankshafts, and aerospace parts.

#### 2. Rolling

- Description: Rolling is the process of passing metal between two rollers to reduce its thickness or to achieve a desired shape.
- Types: Hot rolling (performed above the recrystallization temperature) and cold rolling (performed below the recrystallization temperature).
- Applications: Produces sheet metal, plates, and strips used in various industries.

#### 3. Extrusion

- Description: Extrusion involves forcing metal through a die to create long shapes with a constant cross-section. The metal is pushed through the die using a ram or screw.
- Types: Hot extrusion (performed above the metal's recrystallization temperature) and cold extrusion (performed at or below room temperature).
- Applications: Creates products like aluminum window frames, pipes, and structural components.

#### 4. Drawing

- Description: Drawing is the process of pulling metal through a die to reduce its diameter and increase its length. It can be done either with a rod or wire.
- Types: Wire drawing (for creating wires), bar drawing (for bars or rods).
- Applications: Used for producing wires, bars, and tubing for various uses.

#### 5. Stamping

- Description: Stamping involves pressing a metal sheet into a die to create specific shapes. It uses a die and punch system.
- Types: Blanking (cutting out a shape), punching (creating holes or shapes), and embossing (creating raised designs).
- Applications: Produces parts for automotive, aerospace, and appliance industries.

#### 6. Sheet Metal Forming

- Description: This process involves shaping metal sheets into desired forms using various methods like bending, deep drawing, and stretching.
- Types: Bending (changing the shape without altering thickness), deep drawing (forming a cup shape by pulling a sheet into a die), and stretching (pulling the sheet over a die to stretch and shape it).
- Applications: Used for creating panels, enclosures, and complex shapes in industries like automotive and aerospace.

## CHAPTER 4 SHEET METAL PROCESSES

R TAMIZH SELVAN

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute Of Science And Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Sheet metal processes involve the manipulation of thin metal sheets to create various products. Here are some common techniques:

### 1. Cutting

- Description: Involves removing material from the sheet metal to create specific shapes.
- Methods:
  - Shearing: Cuts straight lines through sheets using blades.
  - Laser Cutting: Uses a laser beam for precise cuts; ideal for intricate designs.
  - Plasma Cutting: Utilizes a plasma torch for cutting thicker sheets.

### 2. Bending

- Description: Deforms the metal along a straight line to create angles or curves.
- Methods:
  - Brake Press Bending: Uses a hydraulic or mechanical press to bend metal.
  - Air Bending: Allows for a range of angles without the need for precise die matching.

### 3. Forming

- Description: Shapes the sheet metal into three-dimensional forms.
- Methods:
  - Deep Drawing: Transforms flat sheets into hollow shapes (e.g., cans).
  - Stretch Forming: Stretches the sheet to create complex curves.

### 4. Stamping

- Description: Uses a die to cut or shape metal sheets, often in high-volume production.
- Types:
  - Progressive Stamping: Involves multiple operations in a single die setup.
  - Blanking: Cuts out flat shapes from sheets.

### 5. Joining

- Description: Connects metal sheets together.
- Methods:
  - Riveting: Uses rivets to join sheets.
  - Welding: Joins sheets using techniques like MIG or TIG welding.
  - Adhesive Bonding: Uses adhesives for joining without thermal impact.

### 6. Finishing

- Description: Enhances the surface of the metal for aesthetics or protection.
- Methods:
  - Painting: Adds a protective and decorative layer.
  - Powder Coating: Applies a dry powder that is cured to create a durable finish.
  - Electroplating: Coats the metal with a thin layer of another metal for protection.

### 7. Punching

- Description: Creates holes in the sheet metal using a punch and die.
- Applications: Commonly used for making holes for fasteners or ventilation.

### 8. Embossing and Debossing

- Description: Creates raised (embossed) or recessed (debossed) designs on the surface.
- Applications: Often used for decorative purposes or branding.

## CHAPTER 5 MANUFACTURE OF PLASTIC COMPONENTS

P VIJAYAKUMAR

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute Of Science And Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

### Introduction

In general, many organic materials are used in engineering industries. Plastics are belonged to the family of organic materials. The plastics are attained a firm place today. Main characteristics of plastics are no problem for designing it. Organic materials are those materials obtained directly from carbon and chemically combined with oxygen, hydrogen and other non- metallic compounds.

These organic materials are classified into two types.

They are

1. Natural organic materials
2. Synthetic organic materials.

#### 1. Natural organic materials

The wood, coal, petroleum and natural rubber are under the categories of natural organic.

#### 2. Synthetic organic materials

The plastics, synthetic rubbers, ceramics glass are under the categories of synthetic organic. Technically, these organic materials are called polymers.

### Polymers

The term polymer has its base in Greek terminology, where 'Poly' means 'Many' and 'Mars' means 'Parts'. The term polymer stands to represent a substance built up several repeating 'units'. A single unit is called as 'monomer'. The monomers are small molecules. A polymer is made up of thousands of monomer joined together to form a large molecule. The characteristics of a polymer are that the molecule is either a long chain or a network of repeating units. Plastics are one kind of polymer. It is defined as an organic polymer. It can be moulded into any required shape with the help of pressure or heat or both heat and pressure. The liquid form of plastic is called as resin and it contains carbon as a central element. Oxygen, nitrogen and chlorine are linked to the carbon atoms to form the molecules. The main raw material for making plastics is resin. The different types of resin are acrylic resin, polyethylene resin and amino resin. These resins are produced by different types of polymerization process. Catalysts, binders, dyes and lubricants are added with the resin to form the plastics.

## CHAPTER 6 PATTERN MATERIALS

M.Sudhahar

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute Of Science And Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

In manufacturing and casting processes, **patterns** are used to create molds for producing metal parts. Patterns are the replicas or models of the final product and are essential in various casting methods. The material of the pattern can influence the quality and precision of the cast part. Here are some common materials used for patterns and their characteristics:

### 1. Wood

- Description: Traditional material used in pattern making due to its ease of carving and shaping.
- Advantages: Easily worked with hand tools, relatively inexpensive.
- Disadvantages: Can swell or shrink with moisture and temperature changes, which might affect dimensional accuracy.
- Applications: Commonly used for sand casting.

### 2. Metal

- Description: Metals like aluminum or brass are used for durable patterns.
- Advantages: High dimensional accuracy, can withstand repeated use, and less prone to deformation.
- Disadvantages: More expensive and requires specialized machining.
- Applications: Used in die casting and for high-volume production patterns.

### 3. Plastic

- Description: Plastics such as polystyrene, urethane, and epoxy are used for patterns.
- Advantages: Lightweight, can be easily shaped, and relatively low cost.
- Disadvantages: May not be as durable or heat-resistant as metals.
- Applications: Used in investment casting and some types of sand casting.

### 4. Wax

- Description: Wax patterns are used in the lost-wax (investment) casting process.
- Advantages: High precision and detail, easy to melt away during the casting process.
- Disadvantages: Not suitable for high-temperature applications, and patterns are generally single-use.
- Applications: Commonly used for intricate parts in jewelry, turbine blades, and artistic pieces.

### 5. Ceramics

- Description: Ceramic materials can be used to create patterns that are later burned out in the casting process.
- Advantages: Can handle high temperatures and provides high dimensional accuracy.
- Disadvantages: Generally used in investment casting and not reusable.
- Applications: Used for complex shapes and high-performance alloys.

### 6. Composite Materials

- Description: Combinations of materials like resin with fibers (e.g., fiberglass) are used for patterns.
- Advantages: Lightweight, strong, and can be tailored to specific needs.
- Disadvantages: More complex to manufacture and may be more expensive.
- Applications: Used in applications requiring specific strength-to-weight ratios or complex shapes.

Factors to Consider When Choosing Pattern Materials:

1. Dimensional Accuracy: The pattern material must maintain its shape and dimensions to ensure the final cast part is accurate.
2. Thermal Properties: The material should withstand the temperatures encountered during casting without deforming or degrading.
3. Cost: The expense of pattern materials can impact the overall cost of production, especially in large-volume runs.
4. Ease of Processing: The material should be easy to work with, whether it requires carving, molding, or machining.
5. Durability: For patterns that will be used repeatedly, durability is crucial to maintain consistent quality.

# Chapter 7 Brazing - Soldering

## J.Rajesh

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute Of Science And Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Brazing and soldering are both metal joining processes that use a filler material to bond two or more metal parts together, but they differ in temperature, applications, and materials used. Here's a detailed comparison:

### Brazing

#### Definition:

- Brazing involves joining metals by melting and flowing a filler metal into the joint. The filler metal has a melting point above 450°C (842°F) but below that of the base metals.

#### Characteristics:

- Temperature: Higher than soldering; typically between 450°C and 900°C (842°F to 1652°F).
- Filler Metal: Commonly made of copper, silver, or aluminum alloys.
- Joint Strength: Generally stronger than soldered joints; can withstand higher stresses.
- Capillary Action: Relies on capillary action to draw the filler into the joint.
- Surface Preparation: Requires clean surfaces, often with flux to prevent oxidation.

#### Applications:

- Used in automotive, HVAC, and plumbing applications where strong, durable joints are required.
- Suitable for joining dissimilar metals.

### Soldering

#### Definition:

- Soldering is a process of joining metals using a filler metal with a lower melting point, typically below 450°C (842°F).

#### Characteristics:

- Temperature: Lower than brazing; usually around 180°C to 450°C (356°F to 842°F).
- Filler Metal: Often composed of lead-tin alloys, but lead-free solders are common for health and environmental reasons.
- Joint Strength: Generally weaker than brazed joints; not suitable for high-stress applications.
- Capillary Action: Also relies on capillary action but in a different manner due to lower temperatures.
- Surface Preparation: Still requires clean surfaces, but flux can be less critical in some cases.

#### Applications:

- Widely used in electronics (e.g., circuit boards), plumbing, and jewelry making.
- Ideal for joining similar metals and where lower strength is acceptable.



## Chapter 8 Forging Processes

### G.Brithiviraj

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute Of Science And Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Forging is a manufacturing process that involves shaping metal using localized compressive forces. This technique enhances the metal's strength and grain structure, making it suitable for various applications. Here are the primary forging processes:

#### 1. Open Die Forging

- Description: Metal is placed between two flat dies that are pushed together. The shape is formed through compression.
- Characteristics: Allows for large and simple shapes, such as bars and shafts.
- Applications: Used for large components like axle beams and train wheels.

#### 2. Closed Die Forging (Impression Die Forging)

- Description: Metal is placed in a die that contains a cavity matching the desired shape. The die is then closed, shaping the metal.
- Characteristics: Produces more complex shapes with better dimensional accuracy and surface finish.
- Applications: Common in manufacturing automotive parts, like connecting rods and gears.

#### 3. Forging with Multiple Steps (Sequential Forging)

- Description: Involves several forging operations to achieve a final shape, often using different dies at each step.
- Characteristics: Provides flexibility in producing complex geometries and better mechanical properties.
- Applications: Often used in the aerospace industry for components requiring high precision.

#### 4. Hot Forging

- Description: The metal is heated above its recrystallization temperature before forging.
- Characteristics: Reduces the energy required to deform the metal and helps in achieving complex shapes.
- Applications: Commonly used for high-strength components like crankshafts.

#### 5. Cold Forging

- Description: Forging is done at or near room temperature.
- Characteristics: Increases the strength of the material through work hardening and produces better surface finishes.
- Applications: Often used for small parts like fasteners and automotive components.

#### 6. Warm Forging

- Description: Involves forging at a temperature between room temperature and the recrystallization temperature.
- Characteristics: Balances between the benefits of hot and cold forging, allowing for easier deformation while improving mechanical properties.
- Applications: Used for components that require good strength and dimensional accuracy.

#### 7. Roll Forging

- Description: A process that involves passing a heated metal billet through a pair of rolls to create a long, thin piece.
- Characteristics: Efficient for producing long shapes with uniform cross-sections.
- Applications: Used for making rails, bars, and shafts.

#### 8. Die Forging

- Description: Metal is deformed between two dies, allowing for more complex shapes and designs.
- Characteristics: High precision and reduced machining time.
- Applications: Often used in precision engineering, such as tools and dies.

# Chapter 9 Incremental Forming

## J.Selvamani

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute Of Science And Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Incremental forming is a flexible and versatile sheet metal forming process that involves gradually shaping a sheet metal part through a series of small incremental deformations. This technique allows for the creation of complex geometries without the need for costly dies, making it suitable for low-volume production and prototyping. Here's an overview of the process:

### Key Features of Incremental Forming

#### 1. Process Overview

- **Mechanism:** A tool (often a spherical or conical end tool) moves incrementally across the sheet metal surface, applying localized forces that deform the metal into the desired shape.
- **Tool Path:** The tool follows a predetermined path, gradually forming the material layer by layer until the final shape is achieved.

#### 2. Types of Incremental Forming

- **Single Point Incremental Forming (SPIF):** Uses a single tool that moves in a defined path to form the part. Suitable for creating simple to moderately complex shapes.
- **Two Point Incremental Forming (TPIF):** Involves two tools, typically providing greater support and allowing for more complex shapes with better control over material flow.

#### 3. Advantages

- **Cost-Effective:** No need for expensive dies, making it ideal for low-volume or custom parts.
- **Design Flexibility:** Capable of producing complex geometries and designs that might be difficult or impossible with traditional forming methods.
- **Reduced Setup Time:** Faster setup compared to traditional stamping processes, facilitating quicker iterations and adjustments.

#### 4. Limitations

- **Surface Finish:** The surface finish may not be as high as that achieved through other processes, and additional finishing steps may be required.
- **Material Thickness:** Typically best suited for thinner materials; thicker materials may require more force and could lead to issues with deformation.
- **Forming Speed:** Incremental forming can be slower than conventional methods for large-scale production.

### Applications

- **Prototyping:** Frequently used in the design phase to create prototypes for testing and validation.
- **Low-Volume Production:** Ideal for custom parts or low-volume production runs in industries such as aerospace, automotive, and medical devices.
- **Complex Shapes:** Effective for parts that require intricate designs or unique geometries, like brackets, housings, or artistic pieces.

## Chapter 10 Compression Molding

### P.Sarath kumar

Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute Of Science And Technology, Tamil Nadu, India.

Compression molding is a widely used manufacturing process for shaping materials, particularly thermosetting plastics, but also some elastomers and thermoplastics. This method involves compressing a material within a mold to form a specific shape. Here's an overview of the process:

#### Key Features of Compression Molding

##### 1. Process Overview

- **Material Preparation:** The raw material (usually in the form of pre-measured pellets or sheets) is placed into a heated mold cavity.
- **Molding:** The mold is then closed, and pressure is applied, causing the material to flow and fill the cavity.
- **Curing:** For thermosetting plastics, the heat and pressure cause the material to undergo a chemical reaction, hardening it into the desired shape.
- **Cooling and Ejection:** Once cured, the mold is opened, and the finished part is ejected.

##### 2. Advantages

- **Cost-Effective for Large Parts:** Suitable for producing large parts and components at relatively low cost.
- **Material Efficiency:** Minimizes waste as excess material can often be recycled.
- **Versatile Design:** Capable of producing complex shapes with detailed features.
- **Good Surface Finish:** Can achieve a smooth surface finish depending on the mold design.

##### 3. Limitations

- **Cycle Time:** The curing time can be relatively long compared to other molding processes, especially for thick sections.
- **Limited to Certain Materials:** Primarily used for thermosetting plastics; thermoplastics can also be molded but typically require different processing techniques.
- **Dimensional Tolerances:** May not achieve the same level of precision as injection molding, especially for complex geometries.

#### Applications

- **Automotive Parts:** Used for making components like dashboards, panels, and housings.
- **Electrical Insulation:** Commonly employed for producing insulators and switchgear.
- **Consumer Goods:** Used in manufacturing items such as kitchenware, appliances, and toys.
- **Aerospace and Defense:** Suitable for producing lightweight, strong components.



# PSYCHOLOGY OF LEARNERS AND LEARNING

EDITED BY

**R.VAISHNAVI**



978-93-6255-421-5

Psychology of Learners and Learning

Copyright ©2019-2020 by Prof. R. Vaishnavi

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN:978-93-6255-421-5

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction .....	5
CHAPTER 1 Educational psychology and Human Growth and Development .....	17
Prof. R. VAISHNAVI	
CHAPTER 2 Attention, Perception and Memory.....	26
DR. R. GUNASEKARAN	
CHAPTER 3 Motivation and Learning .....	49
DR. P. SUBATRA	
CHAPTER 4 Intelligence and Creativity .....	68
DR. M. ARON ANTONY CHARLES	
CHAPTER 5 Personality .....	85
DR. V. MURUGAN	
CHAPTER 6 Human Growth.....	107
Prof. T. SUBHASHINI	
CHAPTER 7 Types of Memory .....	125
DR. R. GUNASEKARAN	
CHAPTER 8 Psychology Theory.....	137
Prof. T. SELVARAJ	
CHAPTER 9 Intelligence Quotient(IQ).....	151
Prof. R. VAISHNAVI	
CHAPTER 10 Assessment of Personality.....	163
Prof. T. SUBHASHINI	
REFERENCES.....	171

# CHAPTER 1

## Educational psychology and Human Growth and Development

**Prof. R. VAISHNAVI**

Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur

Educational psychology and human growth and development are interconnected fields that provide insights into how individuals learn and grow throughout their lives. Here's an overview of both concepts.

### **Educational Psychology**

**Definition:** Educational psychology is the study of how people learn in educational settings. It examines the psychological processes involved in learning and how these processes can be applied to improve teaching and learning outcomes.

#### **Key Areas of Focus:**

##### **1. Learning Theories:**

- **Behaviorism:** Emphasizes observable behaviors and the effects of reinforcement and punishment on learning.
- **Cognitivism:** Focuses on mental processes, such as thinking, memory, and problem-solving. It explores how learners process information and construct understanding.
- **Constructivism:** Suggests that learners actively construct their own knowledge through experiences and interactions. This theory emphasizes the importance of context and social interactions in learning.

##### **2. Motivation:**

- Understanding what motivates students to learn, including intrinsic and extrinsic motivation. Educational psychologists study factors that influence student engagement and achievement.

##### **3. Developmental Psychology:**

- Examines how cognitive, emotional, and social development impacts learning at different stages of life. This includes understanding developmental milestones and their implications for teaching.

##### **4. Assessment and Evaluation:**

- Methods for assessing student learning and development, including formative and summative assessments, standardized tests, and performance evaluations.

##### **5. Classroom Management:**

- Strategies for creating positive learning environments, managing behavior, and fostering a sense of community among students.

### **Human Growth and Development**

**Definition:** Human growth and development is the study of how individuals grow and change throughout their lives, encompassing physical, cognitive, social, and emotional development.

## **CHAPTER 2**

### **Attention, Perception and Memory**

**Dr. R. GUNASEKARAN**

Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University,

Attention, perception, and memory are fundamental cognitive processes that play a critical role in learning and understanding how individuals interact with their environment. Here's an overview of each process and their interconnections.

#### **Attention**

**Definition:** Attention is the cognitive process of selectively focusing on specific stimuli or information while ignoring others. It is essential for processing information and facilitates learning by directing cognitive resources to relevant tasks.

#### **Key Types of Attention:**

1. **Selective Attention:** Focusing on a particular stimulus while filtering out distractions. This is crucial for tasks that require concentration, such as studying or listening to a lecture.
2. **Sustained Attention:** The ability to maintain focus on a task over an extended period. This is important for activities that require prolonged concentration.
3. **Divided Attention:** The capacity to multitask by distributing attention across multiple tasks or stimuli. While possible, it often leads to reduced performance on one or both tasks.

#### **Factors Affecting Attention:**

- **Novelty:** New or unexpected stimuli tend to capture attention more effectively.
- **Relevance:** Information that is personally relevant or meaningful is more likely to receive attention.
- **Fatigue:** Physical or mental fatigue can diminish attention spans and the ability to concentrate.

#### **Perception**

**Definition:** Perception is the process by which the brain organizes and interprets sensory information, allowing individuals to understand and interact with their environment. It involves the integration of data from the senses.

#### **Key Aspects of Perception:**

1. **Sensation vs. Perception:** Sensation refers to the initial detection of stimuli through sensory organs, while perception involves interpreting that sensory information to form meaningful experience.



## **CHAPTER 3** **Motivation and Learning**

**Dr. P. SUBATRA**

Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST University, Thanjavur

Motivation and learning are closely intertwined, as motivation significantly influences how individuals engage with educational tasks, the effort they put into learning, and their overall success. Here's an overview of the relationship between motivation and learning:

### **Understanding Motivation**

**Definition:** Motivation refers to the internal and external factors that stimulate desire and energy in individuals to be continually interested and committed to a task. It drives goal-directed behavior.

### **Types of Motivation:**

1. **Intrinsic Motivation:** This arises from within the individual. It involves engaging in activities for their own sake, out of interest, curiosity, or a sense of personal satisfaction (e.g., learning a new skill because it's enjoyable).
2. **Extrinsic Motivation:** This is driven by external rewards or pressures, such as grades, praise, or rewards. It involves engaging in activities to achieve a specific outcome (e.g., studying hard to earn a good grade).

### **Theories of Motivation**

1. **Self-Determination Theory (SDT):**
  - Focuses on the degree to which an individual's behavior is self-motivated and self-determined. It emphasizes three basic psychological needs: autonomy (the need to feel in control), competence (the need to feel effective), and relatedness (the need for social connections).
2. **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs:**
  - Proposes that motivation is influenced by a hierarchy of needs, ranging from physiological needs to self-actualization. Individuals must meet lower-level needs before they can pursue higher-level goals.
3. **Goal-Setting Theory:**
  - Suggests that setting specific, challenging goals leads to higher performance. Goals provide direction, promote persistence, and enhance motivation.
4. **Expectancy-Value Theory:**
  - Proposes that motivation is influenced by an individual's expectations for success and the value they place on the task. If a student believes they can succeed and values the outcome, they are more likely to be motivated to learn.

### **Impact of Motivation on Learning**

## CHAPTER 4

### Intelligence and Creativity

Dr. M. ARON ANTONY CHARLES

Associate Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur

Intelligence and creativity are two distinct yet interconnected aspects of human cognition that play a significant role in learning and problem-solving. Here's an overview of each concept and their relationship:

#### Intelligence

**Definition:** Intelligence is often defined as the ability to learn from experience, solve problems, and adapt to new situations. It encompasses a range of cognitive abilities, including reasoning, problem-solving, planning, abstract thinking, and comprehension of complex ideas.

#### Types of Intelligence:

1. **General Intelligence (g):** Refers to a broad mental capacity that influences performance across various cognitive tasks. It is often measured by IQ tests.
2. **Multiple Intelligences:** Howard Gardner proposed that intelligence is not a single entity but consists of multiple types, including:
  - **Linguistic Intelligence:** Ability to use language effectively.
  - **Logical-Mathematical Intelligence:** Proficiency in reasoning and problem-solving.
  - **Spatial Intelligence:** Ability to visualize and manipulate objects in space.
  - **Musical Intelligence:** Sensitivity to rhythm, pitch, and tone.
  - **Bodily-Kinesthetic Intelligence:** Skill in using one's body to express ideas and feelings.
  - **Interpersonal Intelligence:** Ability to understand and interact effectively with others.
  - **Intrapersonal Intelligence:** Self-awareness and understanding of one's emotions and motivations.
  - **Naturalistic Intelligence:** Ability to recognize and categorize elements of the environment.

#### Creativity

**Definition:** Creativity is the ability to generate novel and valuable ideas, solutions, or products. It involves thinking outside the box, making connections between seemingly unrelated concepts, and approaching problems in innovative ways.

#### Key Characteristics of Creativity:

1. **Originality:** The ability to produce ideas that are unique and different from existing ones.
2. **Flexibility:** The capacity to see things from multiple perspectives and adapt ideas in response to new information.

## CHAPTER 5

### Personality

Dr. V. MURUGAN

Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur

Personality refers to the unique and relatively stable patterns of thoughts, feelings, and behaviors that characterize an individual. It encompasses various traits and characteristics that influence how people perceive the world, interact with others, and respond to different situations. Here's an overview of key concepts related to personality:

#### Theories of Personality

##### 1. Trait Theory:

- **Definition:** Focuses on identifying and measuring individual personality traits. Traits are consistent characteristics that influence behavior.
- **Key Models:**
  - **Five Factor Model (Big Five):** Proposes five core dimensions of personality:
  - **Openness to Experience:** Creativity and willingness to try new things.
  - **Conscientiousness:** Organization, dependability, and goal-oriented behavior.
  - **Extraversion:** Sociability, assertiveness, and enthusiasm.
  - **Agreeableness:** Compassion, cooperation, and kindness.
  - **Neuroticism:** Emotional instability, anxiety, and moodiness.

##### 2. Psychoanalytic Theory:

- **Sigmund Freud:** Emphasized the role of the unconscious mind, early childhood experiences, and inner conflicts. He proposed a structure of personality consisting of the id (instincts), ego (reality), and superego (morality).

##### 3. Humanistic Theory:

- **Carl Rogers and Abraham Maslow:** Focus on personal growth, self-actualization, and the importance of subjective experiences. Emphasize the potential for positive change and development.

##### 4. Social-Cognitive Theory:

- **Albert Bandura:** Highlights the role of observational learning, social influences, and cognitive processes in shaping personality. Emphasizes the interaction between behavior, environment, and individual cognition (reciprocal determinism).

##### 5. Biological and Evolutionary Theories:

- Explore how genetics, biology, and evolutionary processes influence personality traits and behaviors.

#### Assessment of Personality

##### 1. Personality Tests:

## CHAPTER 6

### Human Growth

Prof. T. SUBHASHINI

Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur

Human growth encompasses the physical, cognitive, emotional, and social changes that individuals experience throughout their lives. It is a lifelong process that can be divided into several stages, each characterized by distinct developmental milestones. Here's an overview of the key aspects of human growth:

#### Stages of Human Growth

- 1. Prenatal Stage (Conception to Birth):**
  - **Physical Development:** Rapid growth occurs, with the formation of organs and body systems. Genetic and environmental factors can influence prenatal health and development.
  - **Cognitive Development:** Early brain development begins, laying the foundation for later cognitive functions.
- 2. Infancy (Birth to 2 Years):**
  - **Physical Development:** Significant growth in height and weight; motor skills develop from reflexive actions to coordinated movements (e.g., crawling, walking).
  - **Cognitive Development:** Infants begin to explore their environment, develop object permanence, and engage in simple problem-solving. Piaget's sensorimotor stage emphasizes learning through sensory experiences and motor actions.
  - **Emotional and Social Development:** Attachment forms between infants and caregivers, which is crucial for emotional security and later social relationships.
- 3. Early Childhood (2 to 6 Years):**
  - **Physical Development:** Continued growth in height and weight; fine and gross motor skills improve significantly.
  - **Cognitive Development:** Language development accelerates; children begin to engage in symbolic play and develop basic reasoning skills. Piaget's preoperational stage is characterized by egocentrism and magical thinking.
  - **Emotional and Social Development:** Increased independence and exploration; development of self-concept and early social skills through play and interactions with peers.
- 4. Middle Childhood (6 to 12 Years):**
  - **Physical Development:** Steady growth; improved physical coordination and strength.
  - **Cognitive Development:** Development of concrete operational thinking, allowing for logical reasoning about concrete objects and events. Academic skills (reading, math) are developed during this stage.
- 5. Emotional and Social Development:** Increased importance of peer relationships; development of self-esteem and self-regulation. Children learn to navigate social norms and expectations.

## CHAPTER 7

### Types of Memory

Dr. R. GUNASEKARAN

Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur

Memory is a complex cognitive function that allows individuals to encode, store, and retrieve information. It can be categorized into different types based on the duration and nature of the information being remembered. Here's an overview of the main types of memory:

#### 1. Sensory Memory

**Definition:** Sensory memory is the brief retention of sensory information. It acts as a buffer for stimuli received through the senses.

- **Duration:** Lasts for a very short time (milliseconds to a few seconds).
- **Types:**
  - **Iconic Memory:** Visual sensory memory, holding images for a brief moment after they are seen.
  - **Echoic Memory:** Auditory sensory memory, retaining sounds for a few seconds after they are heard.

#### 2. Short-Term Memory (STM)

**Definition:** Short-term memory temporarily holds a limited amount of information for a brief period. It is often associated with working memory, which involves actively manipulating information.

- **Duration:** Lasts about 20-30 seconds without rehearsal.
- **Capacity:** Typically holds around  $7 \pm 2$  items (Miller's Law).
- **Functions:** Involves processes such as remembering a phone number long enough to dial it or keeping track of information during a conversation.

#### 3. Long-Term Memory (LTM)

**Definition:** Long-term memory stores information for extended periods, ranging from hours to a lifetime. It can be further divided into explicit and implicit memory.

- **Types:**
  - **Explicit Memory (Declarative Memory):**
    - **Episodic Memory:** Memory of personal experiences and specific events, including context (time, place).
    - **Semantic Memory:** General knowledge about facts, concepts, and information unrelated to personal experiences (e.g., knowing the capital of a country).
  - **Implicit Memory (Non-Declarative Memory):**

## CHAPTER 8

### Psychology Theory Prof. T. SELVARAJ

Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur

Psychological theories provide frameworks for understanding the complexities of human behavior, thoughts, and emotions. Here's an overview of several key psychological theories

#### 1. Behaviorism

**Overview:** Behaviorism focuses on observable behaviors rather than internal mental processes. It emphasizes the role of environmental stimuli in shaping behavior.

- **Key Figures:** John B. Watson, B.F. Skinner.
- **Key Concepts:**
  - **Classical Conditioning:** Learning through association (e.g., Pavlov's dogs).
  - **Operant Conditioning:** Learning through reinforcement and punishment (e.g., Skinner box experiments).

#### 2. Cognitive Psychology

**Overview:** Cognitive psychology studies mental processes such as perception, memory, reasoning, and problem-solving. It emphasizes how people process and interpret information.

- **Key Figures:** Jean Piaget, Aaron Beck.
- **Key Concepts:**
  - **Schemas:** Mental frameworks that help organize and interpret information.
  - **Cognitive Dissonance:** The discomfort experienced when holding conflicting beliefs or attitudes, leading to changes in cognition or behavior.

#### 3. Humanistic Psychology

**Overview:** Humanistic psychology emphasizes individual potential and self-actualization. It focuses on personal growth and the inherent goodness of people.

- **Key Figures:** Carl Rogers, Abraham Maslow.
- **Key Concepts:**
  - **Self-Actualization:** The realization of one's potential and the pursuit of personal growth.
  - **Unconditional Positive Regard:** Acceptance and support regardless of what a person says or does.

#### 4. Psychoanalytic Theory

**CHAPTER 9**  
**Intelligence Quotient(IQ)**  
**Prof. R. VAISHNAVI**

**Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST University, Thanjavur**

Intelligence Quotient (IQ) is a measure used to assess human intelligence relative to others. It is often used in educational, psychological, and occupational contexts to evaluate cognitive abilities. Here's a comprehensive overview:

### **Definition of IQ**

- **IQ Score:** An IQ score is derived from standardized tests designed to measure intelligence. The average IQ score is set at 100, with most of the population scoring between 85 and 115.

### **History of IQ Testing**

- **Early Development:** The concept of IQ originated in the early 20th century with the work of Alfred Binet and Théodore Simon, who developed the first intelligence test to identify students needing special assistance.
- **Stanford-Binet Test:** Lewis Terman adapted Binet's test for use in the United States, creating the Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale, which introduced the term "Intelligence Quotient."

### **Types of IQ Tests**

1. **Verbal Tests:** Assess language-based skills, including vocabulary, comprehension, and reasoning.
2. **Non-Verbal Tests:** Measure spatial reasoning, pattern recognition, and problem-solving without relying on language.
3. **Full-Scale IQ Tests:** Combine verbal and non-verbal components to provide a comprehensive assessment of intelligence.

### **Theories of Intelligence**

1. **Spearman's Two-Factor Theory:** Charles Spearman proposed that intelligence consists of a general factor (g) that influences performance across various cognitive tasks, along with specific abilities (s) for particular tasks.
2. **Gardner's Multiple Intelligences:** Howard Gardner proposed that intelligence is not a single entity but consists of multiple intelligences, including linguistic, logical-mathematical, spatial, musical, interpersonal, intrapersonal, naturalistic, and bodily-kinesthetic.
3. **Sternberg's Triarchic Theory:** Robert Sternberg suggested that intelligence comprises three components: analytical (problem-solving), creative (novelty and innovation), and practical (application of skills in real-world situations).

## CHAPTER 10

### Assessment of Personality

Prof. T. SUBHASHINI

Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur

Assessing personality involves using various tools and methods to evaluate an individual's traits, behaviors, and thought patterns. Here's an overview of the most common approaches to personality assessment:

#### 1. Self-Report Inventories

**Definition:** These are questionnaires where individuals provide information about their own personality traits and behaviors.

- **Examples:**
  - **Myers-Briggs Type Indicator (MBTI):** Assesses personality based on preferences in how people perceive the world and make decisions, categorizing individuals into 16 personality types.
  - **Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory (MMPI):** A comprehensive test that measures various personality traits and psychopathology, often used in clinical settings.

**Advantages:**

- Easy to administer and score.
- Provides a clear self-perception of personality traits.

**Disadvantages:**

- Subject to response bias (e.g., social desirability).
- May not capture unconscious aspects of personality.

#### 2. Projective Tests

**Definition:** These tests present ambiguous stimuli, allowing individuals to project their own feelings, thoughts, and desires onto the material.

- **Examples:**
  - **Rorschach Inkblot Test:** Participants interpret a series of inkblots, revealing aspects of their personality and emotional functioning.
  - **Thematic Apperception Test (TAT):** Individuals create stories based on ambiguous images, providing insight into their motivations and conflicts.

**Advantages:**



# YOGA, HEALTH AND PHYSICAL EDUCATION

EDITED BY

**DR.R.GUNASEKARAN**



978-93-6255-042-2

Yoga Education , Health and Physical Education

Yoga Education , Health and Physical Education

Copyright ©2019-2020by Dr.R. Gunasekaran

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced  
or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-042-2

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction .....	5
CHAPTER 1 Yoga and Asanas .....	12
DR. R. GUNASEKARAN	
CHAPTER 2 Health and Safety Education .....	27
Prof. T. SUBHASHINI	
CHAPTER 3 Communicable diseases, life style disorder and nutrition .....	39
Prof. R. VAISHNAVI	
CHAPTER 4 Physical Education and Physical Exercise .....	55
Prof. T. SELVARAJ	
CHAPTER 5 Organising Competitions .....	76
Prof. T. SUBHASHINI	
CHAPTER 6 Life style disorder and Nutrition.....	85
Prof. R. VAISHNAVI	
CHAPTER 7 Physical Exercise .....	96
DR. R. GUNASEKARAN	
CHAPTER 8 Safety Education .....	107
DR. R. GUNASEKARAN	
CHAPTER 9 Food Values.....	125
DR. R. GUNASEKARAN	
CHAPTER 10 Sports Meet .....	137
Prof. T. SELVARAJ	
REFERENCES.....	171

## **CHAPTER - 1**

### **YOGA AND ASANAS**

---

**Dr.R.Gunasekaran**

**Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur**

---

#### **What is Yoga Education?**

Yoga education is the educational appendage to school and university knowledge. This education to give students physically and mentally for the integration of their physical, mental and spiritual faculties so that the students can be integrated to society with a sober mind of yoga and meditation.

#### **The word 'yoga' meaning.**

The word 'Yoga' is derived from the Sanskrit root 'Yoga ', meaning 'to join' or to 'yoke' or 'to unit'. As per Yogic scriptures the practice of Yoga leads to the union of individual consciousness with that of the Universal Consciousness, indicating a perfect harmony between the mind and body, Man & Nature.

#### **Yoga a divine force**

Deva Sanskrit: means "shiny","heavenly being", "divine being", "anything of excellence", and is also one of the Sanskrit terms used to indicate a deity in Hinduism. Deva is a masculine term; the feminine equivalent is Devi.

#### **Objectives of yoga education:**

- To attain a higher level of consciousness.
- To practice mental hygiene.
- To enable the students to have good health.
- To possess emotional stability.
- To integrate moral activities.
- To integrate spiritual ability.
- To increases concentration and self-control.
- To increase productivity in life.

#### **Father of Yoga**

## **CHAPTER-II**

### **Health and Safety Education**

---

**T.Subhashini**

**Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur**

---

#### **HEALTH EDUCATION MEANING**

“Health is a state of complete physical, mental, and social well-being and not merely the absence of disease or infirmity.”

Health education is giving people the skills, tools, and knowledge to live healthier. It has been proven to reduce early death, preventable diseases, and it is cheaper than treating the illnesses it prevents.

The main purpose of health education is to teach people how to make healthier choices. This could happen at the individual level through the societal level. It offers the skills, training, and knowledge to decrease illness and preventable diseases.

Health education is everything from signs reminding someone to wash hands in the bathroom to courses on advanced nutrition. It can happen at the personal level or the community level. It can be in advertising and workplace incentive programs.

Safety education is a series of instructions and warnings that provides awareness about possible harms and injuries with an objective of minimizing injuries and their fatal consequences. Safety education is the need of modern age. This is the guidance for our activities and protectors of our life.

Health education is any combination of learning experiences designed to facilitate voluntary actions conducive to health. Health promotion is the combination of educational and environmental supports for actions and conditions of living conducive to health, thereby including health education.

#### **DEFINITION**

### III CHAPTER

#### COMMUNICABLE DISEASES, LIFE STYLE DISORDER AND NUTRITION

---

**R.Vaishnavi**

**Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur**

---

Communicable diseases are illnesses caused by viruses or bacteria that people spread to one another through contact with contaminated surfaces, bodily fluids, blood products, insect bites, or through the air. There are many examples of communicable diseases.

Any undesirable deviation from an organism's normal physical or physiological condition is referred to as a disease. Diseases usually have specific signs and symptoms and are different from physical injuries in nature. A diseased organism often displays symptoms or signs of its abnormal condition. Thus, it is essential to understand an organism's normal state to identify disease symptoms.

Most diseases are communicable; they can transfer from one person to another by vectors, contaminated food, drink, or air, among other means. Microbial agents use different mediums to spread from an infected individual to a non-infected person. Since they are spread through contact, they are known as communicable diseases. According to medical records, there are over 20,000 diseases that affect millions of individuals each year.

This article will discuss communicable diseases, their characteristics, types, symptoms, and how to prevent them.

#### **Symptoms of Communicable Disease**

A pathogen usually starts reproducing as soon as it enters the human body. The person may then start showing symptoms.

The disease will determine the specific symptoms. Some individuals won't have any symptoms. But they still have the ability to spread the disease.

---

## **Chapter IV**

### **Physical Education and Physical Exercise**

**T.Selvaraj**

Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur

---

Schools are becoming more widely recognized as a focal point for initiatives to improve the health and well-being of our young generation. The emphasis is on prevention. If we wish to solve major health and societal issues, we must approach students early, before they become they face issues which may prove insurmountable to their health and well-being. We must provide children with the foundational skills and knowledge required for them to develop into healthy adolescents and productive adults. And the ideal location to accomplish this job is in our schools, where the vast majority of youngsters congregate every day.

Today, health education is more important than it has ever been. Infectious diseases were the leading causes of premature disability and mortality around the turn of the twentieth century. As we enter the twenty-first century, nearly all of the top causes of premature death are linked to bad habits or social/environmental factors. As a result, many are, in fact, avoidable.

Unhealthy diets, substance abuse, lack of exercise, and other risky habits are linked to a large percentage of Americans' significant health issues, including cancer, heart disease, addiction, and HIV infection. Furthermore, many people, particularly our youth, are participating in riskier behaviors that endanger their self-esteem, hurt their health, and raise their risk of disease, injury, and death.

These risk behaviors are often formed in early childhood, remain throughout adulthood, and are interconnected, contributing to poor health, education, and social consequences. Unintentional and intentional injuries, tobacco use, alcohol, and other drug use, sexual behaviors that lead to HIV infection, other STDs, and unexpected pregnancy, a dietary pattern that contributes to a variety of diseases, and insufficient physical exercise are all common risk behaviors.

As a result, we must begin by teaching our children to counter these risky behaviors and promote healthier habits among adults and adolescents. This is where school health education, particularly comprehensive school health education, may help. A comprehensive school health curriculum has been shown in research after study to effectively encourage the knowledge, attitudes, and behaviors that our students need to grow into healthy adults.

## Organizing Competitions

---

**T. SUBHASHINI**

**Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur**

---

Organizing competitions for students can be an enriching and impactful experience, fostering learning, creativity, teamwork, and healthy competition. Here's a step-by-step guide to help you plan and organize a successful competition:

### 1. Define the Purpose and Goals

- **Purpose:** Decide the primary reason for the competition (e.g., to encourage creativity, improve problem-solving skills, foster innovation, etc.).
- **Target Audience:** Identify the grade levels, age groups, or subjects the competition will focus on (e.g., elementary school, middle school, high school, or college students).
- **Type of Competition:** Consider different formats such as academic, athletic, creative, or talent-based competitions. Common examples include:
  - Science Fairs
  - Debates
  - Quiz Bowls
  - Writing Contests
  - Art Competitions
  - Sports Events

### 2. Choose the Competition Format

- **Individual or Team:** Decide if it will be an individual competition or a team-based event.
- **Online or In-Person:** Determine whether the competition will take place virtually (via platforms like Zoom, Google Meet, or specific competition software) or physically at a designated venue.
- **Duration:** Define the length of the competition (e.g., a single day, a weekend, or over several weeks).
- **Submission or Live Performance:** If it's creative or academic, will students submit projects ahead of time, or will they perform live?

### 3. Set the Rules and Guidelines

- **Eligibility Criteria:** Establish age groups, grade levels, or other criteria that make students eligible to participate.
- **Registration Process:** Outline how students will register (e.g., online forms, school sign-ups). Decide if there's a fee or sponsorships.



---

## **LIFESTYLE DISORDERS AND NUTRITION**

### **Chapter –VI**

**R.Vaishnavi**

**Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur**

---

Diseases that are associated with the lifestyle of an individual or the way of living are known as lifestyle disorders. Also termed as non communicable diseases (NCDs) as they do not transmit from one person to another when diagnosed. These are chronic in nature and are often caused due to unhealthy lifestyle, undesirable behavior, chronic stress, poor dietary habits, physical inactivity and addiction to alcohol, smoking and social media.

Most of them are not curable but can be controlled and prevented if proper nutrition and necessary changes were made into the lifestyle. They are the most leading cause of death all around the world. NCDs require prolonged course of treatment and has multiple risk factors and complex etiology. NCDs like diabetes, cancer, CVDs and respiratory diseases are closely linked with the choices in lifestyle and hence they are termed as lifestyle disorders. Following chart shows increased mortality rate due to NCDs in recent years. Following chart depicts % of proportional mortality rate in India due to NCDs

## **NUTRITION**

**Nutrition**, the assimilation by living organisms of food materials that enable them to grow, maintain themselves, and reproduce.

Food serves multiple functions in most living organisms. For example, it provides materials that are metabolized to supply the energy required for the absorption and translocation of nutrients, for the synthesis of cell materials, for movement and locomotion, for excretion of waste products, and for all other activities of the organism. Food also provides materials from which all the structural

## Chapter VII

### PHYSICAL EXERCISE

**R.Gunasekaran**

**Assistant Professor, School of Education  
PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur.**

---

Regular physical activity is proven to help prevent and manage non communicable diseases such as heart disease, stroke, diabetes and several cancers. It also helps prevent hypertension, maintain healthy body weight and can improve mental health, quality of life and well-being.

Exercise is defined as any movement that makes your muscles work and requires your body to burn calories.

There are many types of physical activity, including swimming, running, and walking, to name a few.

Being active has been shown to have many health benefits, both physically and mentally. It may even help you live longer [Trusted Source](#).

Here are the top 10 ways regular exercise benefits your body and brain.

#### **1. Exercise can make you feel happier**

Exercise has been shown to improve your mood and decrease feelings of depression, anxiety, and stress.

The authors of a 2019 review found that 10–30 minutes [Trusted Source](#) of exercise is enough to improve your mood.

## CHAPTER 8

### Safety Education

DR. R. GUNASEKARAN

Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur

---

Safety education is essential for students, helping them to develop awareness, good judgment, and practical skills that ensure their safety in various situations, both inside and outside of school. It covers a wide range of topics from personal safety, emergency preparedness, and digital safety to health and well-being.

Here's how you can approach **safety education**:

### 1. Personal Safety

Teaching students how to protect themselves from physical harm is crucial. This includes:

- **Stranger Danger:** Teach children not to talk to or accept gifts from strangers and what to do if approached by one.
- **Buddy System:** Encourage students to stick with a buddy in unfamiliar or public places.
- **Safe Zones:** Identify safe places to go (e.g., school, police stations) if they ever feel unsafe.
- **Basic Self-defense:** Depending on age, basic self-defense techniques can be taught, such as how to attract attention or protect oneself in threatening situations.

### 2. Emergency Preparedness

Understanding how to react during emergencies is a core part of safety education.

- **Fire Safety:** Teach students how to react during a fire, such as stop, drop, and roll; evacuating through designated exits; and knowing how to call emergency services.
- **Earthquake Drills:** If you're in a seismic zone, conduct regular earthquake drills and teach students to "Drop, Cover, and Hold On."
- **First Aid Basics:** Introduce basic first aid skills, such as how to stop bleeding, treat burns, or what to do in case of choking.
- **Emergency Numbers:** Ensure students memorize important emergency contacts and know when to call 911 or the equivalent in their country.

### 3. Cyber Safety

In the digital age, it's important to teach students how to stay safe online.

- **Online Privacy:** Educate students about the importance of not sharing personal information (e.g., home address, phone number, or school name) online.

## CHAPTER 9

### Food Values

DR. R. GUNASEKARAN

Assistant Professor, School of Education  
PRIST Deemed to be University, Vallam, Thanjavur

---

Food values" refers to the principles or beliefs surrounding food choices, nutrition, and eating habits. These values can reflect various priorities, including health, environmental sustainability, ethical considerations, and cultural or religious beliefs. Understanding food values is crucial for making informed decisions about what to eat and how food impacts our bodies, communities, and the planet.

Here are some key aspects of food values:

#### 1. Nutritional Value

The **nutritional value** of food focuses on the nutrients and substances that provide energy and support for the body's functions. Prioritizing nutritional value helps individuals maintain a healthy lifestyle.

- **Macronutrients:** Carbohydrates, proteins, and fats that provide energy.
- **Micronutrients:** Vitamins and minerals necessary for bodily functions (e.g., Vitamin C, calcium, iron).
- **Balanced Diet:** Eating a variety of foods to ensure you get the right amount of nutrients.

#### 2. Ethical and Moral Values

Ethical concerns regarding food production and consumption are becoming more significant for many individuals. Some key areas include:

- **Animal Welfare:** Concerns about how animals are treated in the production of meat, dairy, and eggs. Many opt for vegetarian, vegan, or cruelty-free products.
- **Fair Trade:** Choosing products that ensure fair wages and conditions for farmers and workers, particularly in developing countries (e.g., coffee, chocolate).
- **Labor Practices:** Awareness of human rights and working conditions in food production, particularly in large agricultural industries.

#### 3. Sustainability and Environmental Values

Environmental considerations are critical when discussing food values, as food production has significant environmental impacts.

## CHAPTER 10

### Sports Meet

Prof. T. SELVARAJ

Assistant Professor, School of Education, PRIST Deemed to be University, Thanjavur

---

Organizing a **sports meet** is an excellent way to promote physical activity, team spirit, and healthy competition among students, employees, or community members. A successful sports meet requires meticulous planning, coordination, and attention to detail to ensure a fun and safe experience for all participants.

Here's a comprehensive guide to organizing a sports meet:

#### 1. Set Clear Objectives

- **Purpose:** Determine the goals of the sports meet. Is it for promoting physical fitness, encouraging teamwork, building school or corporate morale, or celebrating a specific event?
- **Target Audience:** Identify who will be participating (e.g., school students, university athletes, employees, or community members) and how many participants are expected.
- **Type of Meet:** Decide if it will be a single-day or multi-day event, and whether it will focus on individual sports, team sports, or a combination of both.

#### 2. Choose a Date and Venue

- **Date Selection:** Choose a date well in advance, considering weather conditions, availability of participants, and other community or school events that may conflict.
- **Venue:** Book a suitable location for the sports meet. This could be a school ground, community stadium, or sports complex. Ensure the venue is large enough to accommodate the participants and has the necessary facilities (e.g., restrooms, seating areas, changing rooms).
- **Backup Plan:** Have a contingency plan in place in case of weather issues, especially for outdoor events.

#### 3. Event Categories and Sports Selection

- **Individual and Team Events:** Choose the sports and athletic activities for the meet. Common options include:
  - **Track Events:** 100m sprint, 200m, relay races, hurdles, long-distance races.
  - **Field Events:** Long jump, high jump, shot put, discus throw, javelin.
  - **Team Sports:** Football, basketball, volleyball, tug-of-war, cricket.
  - **Fun Events:** Sack race, three-legged race, obstacle course (especially for kids or casual meets).
- **Age and Gender Groups:** Divide participants into appropriate age or gender groups to ensure fair competition.



# **FOOD AND DAIRY MICROBIOLOGY**

---

Edited by

**DR.R.SATHYA**



978-93-6255-837-4

**DR. R.SATHYA**

**Food and dairy microbiology**

Copyright©2019 by **DR. R.SATHYA**

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-837-4

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction .....	8
Chapter I :Introduction to Food and dairy microbiology	
<b>DR.S.MOHANRAJ</b>	
.....	20
<b>Dr.K.SUNDER</b>	
Chapter II : Microorganism in food : types and roles	
.....	26
<b>DR. T.USHADEVI</b>	
Chapter III: Microbial Diversity in Food and Dairy	
.....	34
<b>DR.R.SATHYA</b>	
Chapter IV : Fermented dairy in products	
.....	46
<b>DR.T.THIRUSELVI</b>	
Chapter V: Foodborne pathogens and spoilage organisms	
.....	53
<b>DR.A.XAVIER FERNANDES</b>	
Chapter VI: Food preservation technique	
.....	64
<b>DR.G. CHANDIRASEGARAN</b>	
Chapter VII: Microbial quality control in food production	
.....	77
<b>DR.K.P.KARUPPAIAN</b>	
Chapter VIII : Advances in food microbiology research	
.....	99
<b>DR.E.SWAMINATHAN</b>	
Chapter IX : Regulatory Frameworks and Standards	
.....	120
<b>DR.AMBIKA K</b>	
Chapter X :Future Trends and Challenges in Food and Dairy Microbiology	
.....	132
REFERENCES.....	150



## CHAPTER I

### INTRODUCTION TO FOOD AND DAIRY MICROBIOLOGY

DR. S.MOHANRAJ

*Professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Food and dairy microbiology is a specialized branch of microbiology that examines the microorganisms involved in the production, preservation, and spoilage of food products, particularly dairy. This field is crucial for understanding how various microbes, including bacteria, yeasts, and molds, interact with food. These interactions can have significant effects on food safety, quality, and nutritional value. By studying these microorganisms, scientists and food technologists can develop methods to enhance food preservation, improve fermentation processes, and ensure consumer safety.

The role of beneficial microorganisms is particularly prominent in the dairy industry, where specific strains contribute to the fermentation of products like yogurt, cheese, and kefir. These beneficial bacteria not only impart unique flavors and textures but also enhance the nutritional profile of dairy products, offering probiotic benefits that support gut health. Conversely, harmful pathogens can also be present, making it essential to understand the dynamics of both beneficial and pathogenic microbes in food systems.

As global demand for safe and high-quality food continues to rise, food and dairy microbiology plays an increasingly vital role in food production and safety practices. Advances in microbiological research and technology are paving the way for innovative preservation techniques, improved safety standards, and a deeper understanding of microbial communities in food. This knowledge is essential for addressing challenges in the food industry, such as spoilage, foodborne illnesses, and consumer health concerns, ultimately ensuring that food products remain safe, nutritious, and appealing.

## CHAPTER II

### MICROORGANISMS IN FOOD : TYPES AND ROLES

DR.S.K.SUNDER

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Microorganisms play a crucial role in food production and preservation, encompassing a variety of types, including bacteria, yeast, and molds. Bacteria, such as Lactobacillus and Streptococcus, are essential in the fermentation process, transforming sugars into lactic acid, which enhances flavor and preserves dairy products like yogurt and cheese. Yeasts, particularly Saccharomyces cerevisiae, are vital for baking and brewing, converting sugars into carbon dioxide and alcohol, contributing to the leavening of bread and the production of beer and wine. Molds, like Aspergillus and Penicillium, are also significant, with some used in the production of fermented foods such as soy sauce and blue cheese, while others play a role in food spoilage.

In addition to their positive roles, microorganisms can also pose risks to food safety. Pathogenic bacteria, such as Salmonella and E. coli, can contaminate food products and lead to foodborne illnesses, necessitating strict hygiene practices during food handling and preparation. The balance between beneficial and harmful microorganisms highlights the importance of understanding their behavior in various environments, which is crucial for both food safety and quality.

Moreover, the application of microorganisms in food science extends beyond traditional fermentation. Advances in biotechnology have led to the development of probiotics, which are live beneficial bacteria that, when consumed, can promote gut health and overall well-being. Additionally, microbial enzymes are increasingly used in food processing to enhance flavors, improve texture, and increase shelf life. As research continues to evolve, the roles of microorganisms in food will likely expand, offering new opportunities for innovation in the culinary and health sectors.

## CHAPTER III

### MICROBIAL DIVERSITY IN FOOD AND DAIRY

**DR. T.USHADEVI**

*Associate professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Microorganisms are an integral part of food systems, particularly in the production and preservation of dairy products. The diversity of microbes in food includes bacteria, yeasts, molds, and sometimes viruses, each contributing to the texture, flavor, and safety of foods. In dairy, lactic acid bacteria (LAB), such as *Lactobacillus* and *Streptococcus*, play a pivotal role in the fermentation process, transforming milk into products like yogurt, cheese, and buttermilk. These beneficial microbes help in acidifying the milk, coagulating proteins, and enhancing the taste and nutritional profile of dairy products.

In addition to LAB, other microbes, such as molds and yeasts, are important in the maturation of certain cheeses, such as blue cheese and brie. Molds like *Penicillium roqueforti* create the characteristic blue veins in cheeses, while yeasts contribute to the development of surface-ripened varieties. However, the presence of undesirable microbes, such as pathogenic bacteria (*Listeria*, *Salmonella*, and *Escherichia coli*), can pose health risks and cause foodborne illnesses if not controlled properly through proper food safety measures and pasteurization.

The study of microbial diversity in food and dairy is crucial for improving the safety, quality, and innovation in food products. The ability to understand and harness beneficial microbes while mitigating harmful ones allows for the development of probiotics, functional foods, and safer preservation techniques. The interplay between different microbes within food ecosystems is also an important area of research, particularly with the rise of naturally fermented and artisanal food products, which rely heavily on the indigenous microbial populations for their unique flavors and characteristics.

## CHAPTER IV

### FERMENTED DAIRY PRODUCTS

**DR.R.SATHYA**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Fermented dairy products are created through the action of beneficial microorganisms that convert lactose, the sugar in milk, into lactic acid. This process not only extends the shelf life of dairy products but also enhances their flavor, texture, and nutritional value. Common fermented dairy products include yogurt, cheese, kefir, and buttermilk, each involving different strains of bacteria and unique fermentation processes. Lactic acid bacteria (LAB) like *Lactobacillus*, *Streptococcus*, and *Bifidobacterium* are central to fermentation, contributing to the acidic environment that helps preserve the product and improve digestion.

Yogurt and kefir are two of the most popular fermented dairy products. Yogurt is produced by fermenting milk with specific strains of *Lactobacillus bulgaricus* and *Streptococcus thermophilus*, resulting in a thick, tangy product. Kefir, on the other hand, involves a more diverse microbial community, including both bacteria and yeast, giving it a slightly fizzy and sour taste. These products are known for their probiotic content, which can promote gut health by balancing the microbiome and aiding in digestion.

Cheese is another major category of fermented dairy, with hundreds of varieties produced globally. The process of cheese making begins with curdling milk using LAB, followed by aging or ripening, during which molds, yeasts, or additional bacteria may contribute to the final flavor and texture. Different regions have developed traditional cheese varieties, such as cheddar, gouda, and brie, each showcasing the role of fermentation in producing distinct sensory properties. The fermentation process in dairy is not only important for food production but also for developing functional foods that provide health benefits beyond basic nutrition.

## CHAPTER V

### FOODBORNE PATHOGENS AND SPOILAGE ORGANISMS

DR.T.THIRUSELVI

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Foodborne pathogens are microorganisms that can cause illness when ingested, posing a significant risk to public health. Common foodborne pathogens include bacteria such as *Salmonella*, *Listeria monocytogenes*, *Escherichia coli* O157

, and *Campylobacter*. These pathogens can contaminate food at various stages of production, processing, and distribution. If food is improperly handled, stored, or cooked, these bacteria can multiply, leading to outbreaks of foodborne illness. Symptoms often include nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and in severe cases, life-threatening complications such as kidney failure or meningitis.

In contrast, spoilage organisms, while not typically harmful, cause food to deteriorate in quality, leading to unpleasant odors, tastes, and textures. Spoilage is often caused by bacteria, yeasts, and molds that degrade the nutritional and sensory attributes of food. Microorganisms such as *Pseudomonas*, *Lactobacillus*, and molds like *Aspergillus* can thrive in food environments, especially when stored under inappropriate conditions. While these organisms do not generally cause disease, their presence indicates that food is no longer suitable for consumption, leading to significant economic losses in the food industry.

Controlling both foodborne pathogens and spoilage organisms is critical for food safety and quality. Food safety measures such as proper cooking, pasteurization, refrigeration, and hygienic handling practices are essential in preventing the growth and spread of harmful microbes. Additionally, advancements in food preservation techniques, including modified atmosphere packaging, high-pressure processing, and the use of natural antimicrobial agents, are helping to extend shelf life and reduce the incidence of foodborne illnesses, ensuring that food remains both safe and palatable for consumers.

## CHAPTER VI

### FOOD PRESERVATION TECHNIQUES

**DR.A.XAVIER FERNANDES**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Food preservation techniques are essential for extending the shelf life of food, maintaining its nutritional value, and preventing the growth of harmful microorganisms. Traditional methods such as drying, salting, and smoking have been used for centuries to preserve food by reducing moisture content, which inhibits microbial activity. Drying is commonly applied to fruits, vegetables, and meats, while salting and smoking are often used for preserving fish and meats. These methods not only prevent spoilage but also enhance flavor, making them valuable in culinary traditions.

Modern food preservation techniques have evolved to include more advanced methods such as pasteurization, refrigeration, and freezing. Pasteurization involves heating food, particularly liquids like milk and juice, to a specific temperature to kill harmful pathogens without significantly altering taste or texture. Refrigeration and freezing slow down the growth of bacteria and molds by lowering the temperature, making these methods highly effective for preserving perishable items like dairy, meat, and fresh produce. Freezing, in particular, can preserve food for extended periods without compromising its nutritional quality.

Emerging technologies in food preservation focus on maintaining freshness and safety while reducing the use of chemical preservatives. Techniques like vacuum packing, modified atmosphere packaging (MAP), and high-pressure processing (HPP) are gaining popularity. Vacuum packing removes air from packaging to create an anaerobic environment that limits the growth of spoilage organisms. MAP adjusts the composition of gases in the packaging to slow down oxidation and microbial growth, commonly used for fresh produce, meats, and dairy. HPP uses high pressure to inactivate pathogens without heat, preserving the natural flavors and nutrients of the food, making it an innovative solution for extending shelf life while maintaining quality.

## CHAPTER VII

### MICROBIAL QUALITY CONTROL IN FOOD PRODUCTION

DR.G. CHANDIRASEGARAN

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Microbial quality control is a critical aspect of food production, ensuring that food products are safe for consumption and free from harmful pathogens. This process involves monitoring and managing microbial contamination at every stage of the food supply chain, from raw materials to final packaging. Common pathogens like *Salmonella*, *Listeria*, and *E. coli* pose serious risks to consumer health if not properly controlled. Quality control measures often include regular microbial testing, adherence to strict hygiene standards, and implementation of Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Points (HACCP) protocols to identify and manage contamination risks.

The primary tools used in microbial quality control are testing methods that detect the presence of bacteria, yeasts, molds, and viruses in food products. Techniques such as culture-based methods, PCR (Polymerase Chain Reaction), and ELISA (Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assay) allow food manufacturers to assess microbial loads in raw materials and finished products. Rapid microbiological methods (RMMs) are increasingly popular for providing quicker results compared to traditional testing, enabling faster decision-making and corrective actions.

To maintain microbial quality, food producers implement Good Manufacturing Practices (GMPs) and sanitation protocols, which include cleaning and disinfecting equipment, maintaining proper temperature controls, and ensuring that staff follow hygiene practices. These measures are especially important in environments like meat processing plants and dairy production facilities, where cross-contamination can easily occur.

## CHAPTER VIII

### ADVANCES IN FOOD MICROBIOLOGY RESEARCH

**K.P.KARUPPAIAN**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Microorganisms play a crucial role in food production and preservation, encompassing a variety of types, including bacteria, yeast, and molds. Bacteria, such as Lactobacillus and Streptococcus, are essential in the fermentation process, transforming sugars into lactic acid, which enhances flavor and preserves dairy products like yogurt and cheese. Yeasts, particularly Saccharomyces cerevisiae, are vital for baking and brewing, converting sugars into carbon dioxide and alcohol, contributing to the leavening of bread and the production of beer and wine. Molds, like Aspergillus and Penicillium, are also significant, with some used in the production of fermented foods such as soy sauce and blue cheese, while others play a role in food spoilage.

In addition to their positive roles, microorganisms can also pose risks to food safety. Pathogenic bacteria, such as Salmonella and E. coli, can contaminate food products and lead to foodborne illnesses, necessitating strict hygiene practices during food handling and preparation. The balance between beneficial and harmful microorganisms highlights the importance of understanding their behavior in various environments, which is crucial for both food safety and quality.

Moreover, the application of microorganisms in food science extends beyond traditional fermentation. Advances in biotechnology have led to the development of probiotics, which are live beneficial bacteria that, when consumed, can promote gut health and overall well-being. Additionally, microbial enzymes are increasingly used in food processing to enhance flavors, improve texture, and increase shelf life. As research continues to evolve, the roles of microorganisms in food will likely expand, offering new opportunities for innovation in the culinary and health sectors.



## CHAPTER IX

### REGULATORY FRAMEWORKS AND STANDARDS

DR.E.SWAMINATHAN

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Recent advances in food microbiology research have significantly improved our understanding of microbial ecosystems in food production, leading to safer and higher-quality food products. One of the most impactful developments is the use of next-generation sequencing (NGS) techniques, which allow for the comprehensive analysis of microbial communities in food. NGS can identify both culturable and non-culturable organisms, providing deeper insights into the microbial diversity present in raw materials, production environments, and finished products. This technology enables better tracking of foodborne pathogens and spoilage organisms, allowing for more targeted interventions to improve food safety.

Another exciting area of research is the development of probiotics and functional foods, which utilize beneficial microbes to promote health. Advances in the isolation and characterization of specific strains of bacteria, such as *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium*, have led to the creation of probiotic-enriched foods aimed at enhancing gut health, boosting immunity, and potentially preventing certain diseases. Research into the interaction between foodborne pathogens and the gut microbiome has also provided insights into how the consumption of specific microbes can prevent infections by outcompeting harmful bacteria in the digestive system.

Emerging technologies like high-pressure processing (HPP) and pulsed electric fields (PEF) are further driving innovations in food preservation. These non-thermal methods effectively inactivate pathogens and spoilage organisms without compromising the taste, texture, or nutritional quality of food. Researchers are also exploring the potential of bacteriophages—viruses that infect bacteria—as natural biocontrol agents to target specific foodborne pathogens. This approach offers a promising alternative to traditional chemical preservatives, aligning with consumer demand for more natural and minimally processed foods. Collectively, these advances in food microbiology are shaping the future of food safety, quality, and innovation.

## **CHAPTER X**

### **FUTURE TRENDS AND CHALLENGES IN FOOD AND DAIRY MICROBIOLOGY**

**DR.AMBIKA K**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

As the food industry evolves, emerging trends in food and dairy microbiology are shaping the future of food production, safety, and innovation. One major trend is the increasing use of microbial biotechnology to develop novel food products and enhance existing ones. This includes the application of precision fermentation to create alternative proteins, such as lab-grown dairy products without the need for animals. Companies are leveraging microbial strains to produce milk proteins like casein and whey, opening up new possibilities for sustainable, plant-based dairy alternatives with the same functional properties as traditional dairy.

Another key trend is the growing focus on personalized nutrition and the microbiome. Research on the gut microbiome has revealed how individual microbial profiles affect digestion, metabolism, and immune responses. This is leading to the development of personalized probiotic and prebiotic foods tailored to improve specific health outcomes based on an individual's unique microbiome. This trend not only has the potential to revolutionize health-focused food products but also challenges microbiologists to better understand the complex interactions between food, microbes, and human health.

Despite these advances, significant challenges remain in ensuring food safety as the global food supply chain becomes more complex. Climate change, shifting consumer preferences toward minimally processed foods, and the rise of antibiotic-resistant bacteria pose serious risks. Controlling foodborne pathogens, particularly in ready-to-eat and raw food products, requires more sophisticated detection technologies and preventive measures. Additionally, the global demand for artisanal and naturally fermented products, which rely on wild microbial cultures, can introduce unpredictable microbial diversity and contamination risks. Balancing innovation with robust food safety measures will be a key challenge for food and dairy microbiology in the years to come.

# **BIOSTATISTICS AND BIOINFORMATICS**

EDITED BY

**DR. T.USHADEVI**



978-93-6255-968-5

**Biostatistics and bioinformatics**

Copyright©2019 by **Dr.T.USHADEVI**

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-968-5

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction	8
Chapter I :Introduction To Biostatistics And Bioinformatics	
<b>Dr.S.Mohanraj</b>	20
Chapter Ii : Basic Concepts In Biostatistics	26
<b>Dr. K. Sundar</b>	
Chapter Iii: Statistical Inference	34
<b>Dr. T.Ushadevi</b>	
Chapter Iv : Advanced Statistical Techniques	46
<b>Dr.R.Sathya</b>	
Chapter V: Introduction To Bioinformatics	53
<b>Dr.T.Thiruselvi</b>	
Chapter Vi: Sequence Analysis And Alignment	64
<b>Dr.A.Xavier Fernandes</b>	
Chapter Vii:Genomic Data Analysis	77
<b>Dr.G. Chandirasegaran</b>	
Chapter Viii : Proteomics And Systems Biology	99
<b>Dr.K.P.Karuppaian</b>	
Chapter Ix : Data Management And Visualization	120
<b>Dr.E.Swaminathan</b>	
Chapter X Future Directions And Ethical Considerations	132
<b>Dr.Ambika K</b>	
REFERENCES	150

# CHAPTER I

## Introduction to Biostatistics and Bioinformatics

Dr.S.Mohanraj

*Professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Biostatistics is a vital discipline at the intersection of statistics and biological sciences, playing a crucial role in the analysis and interpretation of biological data. It encompasses the development and application of statistical methods to address questions in public health, medicine, and biological research. The primary aim of biostatistics is to extract meaningful insights from data collected through various research methods, such as clinical trials, epidemiological studies, and genetic research. By employing techniques such as hypothesis testing, regression analysis, and survival analysis, biostatisticians help researchers design experiments, analyze data, and draw valid conclusions that inform health policies and practices.

Bioinformatics is a multidisciplinary field that merges biology, computer science, and mathematics to analyze and interpret biological data, particularly at the molecular level. As genomic sequencing technologies have advanced, the amount of biological data generated has exploded, necessitating sophisticated computational tools to manage and analyze this information. Bioinformatics focuses on the development of algorithms, software, and databases that facilitate the storage, retrieval, and analysis of biological data, such as DNA, RNA, and protein sequences.

The integration of biostatistics and bioinformatics has created a powerful synergy that enhances the understanding of biological systems and disease mechanisms. While biostatistics provides the foundational statistical methodologies needed to analyze experimental data, bioinformatics offers the computational tools necessary for handling the vast amounts of information generated in biological research. Together, these fields enable researchers to formulate and test hypotheses with robust statistical frameworks while leveraging bioinformatics approaches to interpret complex data sets. For instance, in clinical trials assessing new therapies, biostatistical methods ensure the validity of findings, while bioinformatics tools analyze genetic data to uncover biomarkers that predict treatment response.

## CHAPTER II

### Basic Concepts in Biostatistics

**Dr. K. Sundar**

*Associate professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Biostatistics is a crucial discipline that applies statistical methods to the analysis of biological data, playing an integral role in fields like public health, medicine, and environmental science. At its core, biostatistics helps researchers design studies, analyze data, and interpret results, allowing them to draw meaningful conclusions from often complex datasets. One of the fundamental concepts in biostatistics is the distinction between descriptive and inferential statistics. Descriptive statistics summarize data through measures such as mean, median, mode, and standard deviation, providing a clear snapshot of the dataset's characteristics.

Another key concept in biostatistics is the importance of study design, which significantly influences the validity and reliability of research findings. Researchers must choose appropriate designs, such as randomized controlled trials, cohort studies, or case-control studies, depending on their research questions. A well-structured study design minimizes biases and confounding variables, thereby enhancing the credibility of the results. Randomization, for example, helps to ensure that treatment groups are comparable at baseline, allowing for more robust conclusions about the effectiveness of an intervention.

Lastly, understanding variability and uncertainty is essential in biostatistics. Biological data are often subject to natural variability and measurement errors, making it imperative to use statistical methods that account for this uncertainty. Concepts like standard error, confidence intervals, and p-values are used to communicate the degree of uncertainty around estimates. For instance, a confidence interval provides a range of values within which the true population parameter is likely to fall, giving researchers a clearer picture of their findings' precision. Additionally, the interpretation of p-values in hypothesis testing is critical; they help determine the statistical significance of results while considering the context of the study.

## **CHAPTER III**

### **Statistical Inference**

**Dr. T.Ushadevi**

*Associate professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Statistical inference is a fundamental aspect of statistics that involves drawing conclusions about a population based on a sample of data. The primary objective of statistical inference is to make generalizations or predictions about a larger group, known as the population, using the information collected from a smaller subset, or sample. This process relies on probability theory, which helps to quantify uncertainty and variation in data. By utilizing methods such as hypothesis testing, confidence intervals, and regression analysis, statisticians can infer characteristics of the population, assess the validity of assumptions, and make decisions under uncertainty.

One of the key concepts in statistical inference is the distinction between descriptive and inferential statistics. While descriptive statistics focuses on summarizing and describing the features of a dataset (such as calculating means, medians, and standard deviations), inferential statistics extends beyond the immediate data to make broader claims about the population. This process often involves the formulation of hypotheses—statements that can be tested statistically. A null hypothesis typically posits that there is no effect or difference, while an alternative hypothesis suggests the opposite.

Moreover, the reliability of statistical inference hinges on several key assumptions, such as the randomness of the sample, the distribution of the population, and the independence of observations. Violation of these assumptions can lead to biased estimates and misleading conclusions. For instance, if a sample is not randomly selected, it may not accurately represent the population, leading to over- or underestimation of the true parameters. Similarly, many inferential techniques assume normality in the distribution of the data; if the data is skewed or has outliers, it may affect the validity of the inference. To address these challenges, statisticians often employ techniques like bootstrapping or Bayesian methods, which can provide more robust estimates under non-standard conditions.



## CHAPTER IV

### Advanced Statistical Techniques

Dr. R.SATHYA

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Statistical inference is a fundamental aspect of statistics that involves drawing conclusions about a population based on a sample of data. The primary objective of statistical inference is to make generalizations or predictions about a larger group, known as the population, using the information collected from a smaller subset, or sample. This process relies on probability theory, which helps to quantify uncertainty and variation in data. By utilizing methods such as hypothesis testing, confidence intervals, and regression analysis, statisticians can infer characteristics of the population, assess the validity of assumptions, and make decisions under uncertainty.

One of the key concepts in statistical inference is the distinction between descriptive and inferential statistics. While descriptive statistics focuses on summarizing and describing the features of a dataset (such as calculating means, medians, and standard deviations), inferential statistics extends beyond the immediate data to make broader claims about the population. This process often involves the formulation of hypotheses—statements that can be tested statistically. A null hypothesis typically posits that there is no effect or difference, while an alternative hypothesis suggests the opposite. By conducting tests, such as t-tests or chi-squared tests, researchers can determine the likelihood that observed data would occur under the null hypothesis, allowing them to either reject or fail to reject it.

Moreover, the reliability of statistical inference hinges on several key assumptions, such as the randomness of the sample, the distribution of the population, and the independence of observations. Violation of these assumptions can lead to biased estimates and misleading conclusions. For instance, if a sample is not randomly selected, it may not accurately represent the population, leading to over- or underestimation of the true parameters. Similarly, many inferential techniques assume normality in the distribution of the data; if the data is skewed or has outliers, it may affect the validity of the inference. To address these challenges, statisticians often employ techniques like bootstrapping or Bayesian methods, which can provide more robust estimates under non-standard conditions.

## CHAPTER V

### Introduction to Bioinformatics

**DR.T.THIRUSELVI**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Bioinformatics is an interdisciplinary field that merges biology, computer science, and information technology to analyze and interpret biological data. As the volume of biological information generated by high-throughput technologies—such as genomics, proteomics, and transcriptomics—has surged, the need for robust computational tools and methods has become increasingly critical. Bioinformatics provides the frameworks and algorithms necessary for storing, retrieving, and processing vast amounts of data, enabling researchers to make sense of complex biological systems. By applying computational techniques to biological questions, bioinformatics plays a pivotal role in understanding genetic variations, protein interactions, and metabolic pathways, ultimately advancing our knowledge of life at a molecular level.

One of the primary applications of bioinformatics lies in genomic research, where it facilitates the analysis of DNA sequences to uncover genetic information relevant to health, disease, and evolution. Techniques such as sequence alignment, gene prediction, and variant analysis are foundational in this area. For instance, sequence alignment algorithms help identify regions of similarity that may indicate functional, structural, or evolutionary relationships between sequences. Moreover, bioinformatics tools enable the annotation of genomes, assisting researchers in predicting the functions of genes and their products, which is crucial for understanding biological processes.

In addition to genomic analysis, bioinformatics extends to the study of proteomics, the large-scale analysis of proteins and their functions. Techniques in this domain involve the identification and quantification of proteins, as well as understanding their interactions and structures. Bioinformatics tools such as protein structure prediction algorithms and molecular docking simulations provide critical insights into how proteins function within cells and how they can be targeted in drug development. By integrating data from various sources—ranging from protein sequences to metabolic pathways—bioinformatics aids in elucidating complex biological phenomena, paving the way for innovations in biotechnology and therapeutics.

## CHAPTER VI

### Sequence Analysis and Alignment

**DR.A.XAVIER FERNANDES**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Sequence analysis and alignment are fundamental techniques in bioinformatics that facilitate the comparison of biological sequences, such as DNA, RNA, and proteins. These methods enable researchers to identify similarities and differences among sequences, which can reveal evolutionary relationships, functional similarities, and the genetic basis of diseases. The process begins with the collection of sequences, which are then subjected to various computational techniques that assess their composition, structure, and function. For instance, researchers can analyze the nucleotide or amino acid composition to determine patterns that may indicate evolutionary pressures or functional constraints.

Once the sequences are obtained, alignment is a crucial step that involves arranging the sequences to identify regions of similarity. There are two primary types of sequence alignment: global alignment and local alignment. Global alignment aims to align every residue in the sequences from start to finish, making it particularly useful for sequences of similar length. In contrast, local alignment focuses on finding the most similar sub-regions between sequences, which is beneficial when comparing sequences that may have diverged significantly or contain insertions and deletions. Various algorithms, such as the Needleman-Wunsch algorithm for global alignment and the Smith-Waterman algorithm for local alignment, utilize dynamic programming to optimize the alignment process.

The insights gained from sequence analysis and alignment have profound implications in numerous fields, including evolutionary biology, genomics, and medicine. By understanding how sequences relate to each other, scientists can trace lineage relationships and reconstruct phylogenetic trees, which illustrate the evolutionary pathways of different organisms. In the realm of medicine, sequence alignment aids in identifying genetic variants linked to diseases, facilitating the development of targeted therapies and personalized medicine approaches.

## CHAPTER VII

### Genomic Data Analysis

**DR.G. CHANDIRASEGARAN**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Genomic data analysis involves the examination and interpretation of genetic information to uncover insights about biological processes, disease mechanisms, and evolutionary relationships. With advancements in sequencing technologies, vast amounts of genomic data can be generated quickly and cost-effectively. This data encompasses various types of information, including DNA sequences, RNA expression levels, and epigenetic modifications. The primary goal of genomic data analysis is to transform raw data into meaningful biological insights that can inform research, clinical applications, and public health strategies.

The analysis typically begins with data preprocessing, where raw sequencing reads are cleaned and aligned to reference genomes. This step is crucial for ensuring accuracy and reliability in subsequent analyses. Once aligned, bioinformatics tools are employed to identify variants such as single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), insertions, deletions, and structural variations. These variants can be linked to phenotypic traits, susceptibility to diseases, or responses to treatment. Advanced statistical methods and machine learning algorithms are often used to interpret complex data patterns and make predictions about gene function and interaction.

In recent years, the integration of genomic data with other omics data—such as transcriptomics, proteomics, and metabolomics—has further enriched the field. This holistic approach allows researchers to construct comprehensive models of biological systems, leading to a better understanding of health and disease. Furthermore, as genomic data becomes more accessible, it paves the way for personalized medicine, where treatments can be tailored based on an individual's genetic profile. As ethical considerations and data privacy concerns continue to shape the landscape, genomic data analysis remains a dynamic and vital area of research with the potential to revolutionize healthcare and our understanding of life itself.

## CHAPTER VIII

### Proteomics and Systems Biology

**Dr.K.P.Karuppaian**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Proteomics and systems biology are two interrelated fields that play crucial roles in advancing our understanding of biological systems at a molecular level. Proteomics, the large-scale study of proteins, particularly their functions and structures, focuses on the identification and quantification of proteins within a cell, tissue, or organism. By employing techniques such as mass spectrometry and two-dimensional gel electrophoresis, researchers can analyze complex protein mixtures and uncover the dynamics of protein expression under varying conditions. This detailed analysis is vital, as proteins are fundamental to virtually all biological processes, serving as enzymes, structural components, signaling molecules, and more.

Systems biology complements proteomics by integrating data from various biological disciplines, such as genomics, metabolomics, and transcriptomics, to create comprehensive models of biological systems. This holistic approach allows scientists to explore how different biological components interact within networks, contributing to the overall behavior of the system. For instance, systems biology can elucidate how signaling pathways are regulated by specific proteins and how alterations in these interactions can lead to diseases like cancer or metabolic disorders.

The implications of integrating proteomics and systems biology are profound, particularly in the context of personalized medicine and biotechnology. As we accumulate vast amounts of proteomic data, systems biology frameworks enable the interpretation of this information within the context of individual patients, leading to more tailored therapeutic approaches. For example, by understanding the unique proteomic signatures associated with specific diseases, clinicians can develop more effective treatment strategies that consider a patient's specific biological makeup. Furthermore, this integration holds promise for advancing fields like synthetic biology, where engineered biological systems can be designed with precision.

## CHAPTER IX

### Data Management and Visualization

**Dr.E.Swaminathan**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

Data management and visualization are essential components in the modern data landscape, enabling organizations to harness the power of information for strategic decision-making. Effective data management involves the systematic organization, storage, and retrieval of data. This process ensures data integrity, security, and accessibility, allowing businesses to maintain high-quality datasets that are reliable for analysis. By employing robust data governance frameworks, organizations can establish protocols for data collection, processing, and sharing, thereby reducing redundancies and inconsistencies.

Visualization, on the other hand, is the art and science of representing data graphically to reveal patterns, trends, and correlations that may not be immediately apparent in raw datasets. Effective data visualization transforms complex data into intuitive visual formats, such as charts, graphs, and dashboards, allowing stakeholders to quickly grasp key insights. This practice is particularly vital in a world inundated with information, as it helps to distill large amounts of data into digestible visuals that can drive action. Tools like Tableau, Power BI, and D3.js have revolutionized how organizations approach data visualization, providing powerful features that enable users to create interactive and dynamic visualizations.

The interplay between data management and visualization is crucial for maximizing the value of data assets. Without effective management, data may become siloed, outdated, or inaccurate, ultimately hampering the visualization efforts and leading to misguided insights. Conversely, even the most sophisticated visualizations are rendered ineffective if they are built on poor-quality data. Organizations that successfully integrate these two disciplines can foster a data-driven culture, where informed decision-making is the norm. This integration also empowers teams to explore data interactively, encouraging curiosity and innovation in problem-solving.

## **CHAPTER X**

### **Future Directions and Ethical Considerations**

**Dr.Ambika K**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and technology, Tamil Nadu, India*

As technology continues to evolve at a rapid pace, its integration into various aspects of daily life presents both opportunities and challenges. One significant direction is the advancement of artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning, which have the potential to revolutionize industries such as healthcare, finance, and transportation. The future may see increasingly sophisticated AI systems that can analyze vast amounts of data, enabling personalized medicine and predictive analytics that improve patient outcomes. However, as these technologies become more ingrained in society, it will be crucial to address issues of accessibility and equity, ensuring that these advancements benefit a broad spectrum of the population rather than exacerbating existing disparities.

With the proliferation of new technologies, ethical considerations are becoming increasingly paramount. As AI and automation reshape the workforce, questions about job displacement and the future of work must be addressed. Policymakers and business leaders will need to collaborate on strategies that prioritize reskilling and upskilling programs to help workers transition into new roles. Additionally, issues of privacy and data security will come to the forefront as individuals' personal information is collected and analyzed. Establishing clear ethical frameworks around data use, consent, and ownership is essential to protect individuals' rights while harnessing the benefits of big data.

The future landscape of technology is not just about innovation; it also requires a commitment to ethical responsibility. Companies developing cutting-edge technologies must adopt a proactive approach to ethical design, ensuring that their products do not perpetuate bias or harm vulnerable populations. This involves implementing diversity in development teams and engaging with communities that may be affected by new technologies. Furthermore, fostering a culture of transparency and accountability within organizations can help build public trust and ensure that technological advancements are aligned with societal values.

# VIROLOGY

Edited by

**DR. A. KANAKALAKSHMI**



978-93-6255-145-0



**DR. A. KANAKALAKSHMI**

**VIROLOGY**

Copyright©2019 by **DR. A. KANAKALAKSHMI**

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-145-0

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction	
Chapter I :Introduction	8
<b>Dr.S.Mohanraj</b>	
.....	20
Chapter II : Viral Structure and Classification	26
<b>DR. A. Kanakalakshmi</b>	
.....	34
Chapter III: Viral Replication and Life Cycles	34
<b>DR. T.USHADEVI</b>	
.....	46
Chapter IV : Pathogenesis of Viral Infections	46
<b>DR.R.SATHYA</b>	
.....	53
Chapter V: Immune Response to Viral Infections	53
<b>DR.T.THIRUSELVI</b>	
.....	64
Chapter VI: Diagnosis and Detection of Viral Infections	64
<b>DR.A.XAVIER FERNANDES</b>	
.....	77
Chapter VII: Antiviral Therapies and Vaccines	77
<b>DR.G. CHANDIRASEGARAN</b>	
.....	99
Chapter VIII : Emerging Viruses and Global Health	99
<b>DR.K.P.KARUPPAIAN</b>	
.....	120
Chapter Ix : Virology in Biotechnology and Research	120
<b>DR.E.SWAMINATHAN</b>	
.....	132
Chapter X Future Directions in Virology Research	132
<b>DR.AMBIKA K</b>	
.....	150
REFERENCES.....	150

**CHAPTER I**  
**INTRODUCTION**

**Dr.S.MOHANRAJ**

*Professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam  
Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Virology is the branch of microbiology that focuses on the study of viruses, their structure, classification, replication, and interactions with host cells. Viruses are unique infectious agents that exist at the edge of living and non-living entities, composed of genetic material—either DNA or RNA—enclosed in a protein coat, and sometimes surrounded by a lipid envelope. Unlike bacteria or other cellular organisms, viruses cannot reproduce independently; they require a host cell to replicate, leading to a diverse range of effects on their hosts, from benign to devastating.

The significance of virology extends beyond academic curiosity, playing a crucial role in public health, agriculture, and biotechnology. Viruses can cause numerous diseases in humans, animals, and plants, making the understanding of viral pathogenesis essential for developing vaccines and antiviral therapies. For instance, the rapid spread of viruses such as influenza, HIV, and most recently SARS-CoV-2 highlights the need for ongoing research in virology to mitigate outbreaks and protect global health. Moreover, advancements in virology have led to innovative applications in gene therapy and the development of viral vectors for delivering therapeutic genes.

Research in virology involves a multidisciplinary approach, incorporating techniques from genetics, biochemistry, immunology, and bioinformatics. Scientists employ various methodologies, including cell culture systems, molecular cloning, and advanced imaging techniques, to investigate viral behavior and interaction with host defenses. As new viral strains emerge and existing ones evolve, the field of virology continuously adapts, necessitating a commitment to surveillance, research, and education to tackle the challenges posed by viral diseases in our interconnected world.

## CHAPTER II

### VIRAL STRUCTURE AND CLASSIFICATION

**DR.A.KANAKALAKSHMI**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Viral structure is fundamental to understanding how viruses function and interact with host cells. Viruses are primarily composed of genetic material, which can be either deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) or ribonucleic acid (RNA), encapsulated within a protective protein coat called a capsid. This capsid can vary in shape—ranging from helical and icosahedral to more complex structures—depending on the virus type. Some viruses also possess an outer lipid envelope derived from the host cell membrane, which plays a crucial role in the virus's ability to infect new host cells by facilitating fusion with cellular membranes.

Classification of viruses is based on several criteria, including their type of nucleic acid (DNA or RNA), the number of strands (single or double), the presence of an envelope, and their mode of replication. The International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses (ICTV) organizes viruses into families, genera, and species, using a hierarchical classification system. For instance, the Herpesviridae family contains double-stranded DNA viruses that cause diseases such as herpes and chickenpox, while the Orthomyxoviridae family includes single-stranded RNA viruses, such as the influenza virus. This systematic classification helps researchers communicate effectively about different viruses and their relationships.

Understanding viral structure and classification not only aids in identifying and studying specific viruses but also informs the development of antiviral strategies and vaccines. Knowledge of a virus's structural components can reveal targets for drug development, while classification helps predict viral behavior, transmission patterns, and potential zoonotic events. As new viral strains emerge and evolve, ongoing research in virology continues to refine our understanding of these complex infectious agents, enabling scientists to better respond to viral outbreaks and mitigate their impacts on public health.

## CHAPTER III

### VIRAL REPLICATION AND LIFE CYCLE

**Dr. T.USHADEVI**

*Associate professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Viral replication is a complex process that allows viruses to reproduce and spread within a host organism. The life cycle of a virus typically begins with attachment, where the virus binds to specific receptors on the surface of a susceptible host cell. This interaction is crucial, as it determines the virus's ability to enter the cell. Once attached, the virus can penetrate the host cell through mechanisms like endocytosis or membrane fusion, releasing its genetic material into the cytoplasm. The method of entry often varies depending on whether the virus is enveloped or non-enveloped.

Once inside the host cell, the viral genetic material takes over the host's cellular machinery to replicate and produce viral proteins. This phase can vary significantly between DNA and RNA viruses. For example, DNA viruses often enter the nucleus and utilize the host's replication machinery, while RNA viruses generally replicate in the cytoplasm. Following replication, the viral genome and proteins are assembled into new viral particles, a process that is often influenced by the host cell's resources and environment. This assembly can occur in various locations within the cell, depending on the virus type.

Finally, the newly formed viruses must exit the host cell to infect new cells, completing the life cycle. This can occur through lysis, where the host cell bursts, releasing viruses, or budding, where the virus acquires an envelope from the host cell membrane as it exits. The choice of exit strategy impacts the health of the host cell; lytic viruses typically cause cell death, while enveloped viruses often allow the host cell to survive for a time, facilitating ongoing infection. Understanding viral replication and life cycles is essential for developing antiviral therapies and vaccines, as targeting specific stages of this process can help disrupt viral spread and mitigate diseases.

## CHAPTER IV

### PATHOGENESIS OF VIRAL INFECTION

**Dr. R.SATHYA**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

The pathogenesis of viral infections involves the complex interplay between the virus and the host's immune system, determining the outcome of the infection. When a virus enters the body, it initially encounters innate immune defenses, such as physical barriers (skin and mucous membranes) and immune cells that recognize and respond to the presence of the pathogen. Successful viruses often have evolved mechanisms to evade these initial defenses, allowing them to penetrate host tissues and infect specific cells.

The clinical manifestations of viral infections vary widely and are influenced by several factors, including the virus's tropism (the specific cells and tissues it infects), the host's immune response, and any pre-existing health conditions. Some viruses, such as influenza and Ebola, can cause acute and severe symptoms, leading to significant morbidity and mortality. Others may cause mild symptoms or remain asymptomatic, especially in immunocompetent individuals. Chronic viral infections, like those caused by hepatitis B and C viruses, can lead to long-term health issues, including liver cirrhosis and cancer, illustrating the diverse outcomes associated with different viral pathogens.

The immune response to viral infection plays a crucial role in determining the pathogenesis and outcome of the disease. A robust adaptive immune response, characterized by the production of virus-specific antibodies and T cell responses, can effectively control and eliminate the virus. However, some viruses have evolved strategies to evade immune detection, leading to persistent infections and chronic disease. In some cases, an excessive immune response can result in tissue damage and contribute to the pathology of the disease, as seen in conditions like dengue fever or COVID-19.

## CHAPTER V

### IMMUNE RESPONSE TO VIRAL INFECTION

**DR.T.THIRUSELVI**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

The immune response to viral infection is a multifaceted process that involves both innate and adaptive immunity, working in concert to eliminate the virus and restore homeostasis. The innate immune response serves as the body's first line of defense, with mechanisms including the activation of natural killer (NK) cells, the release of interferons, and the recruitment of phagocytic cells such as macrophages and dendritic cells. Interferons, in particular, play a crucial role by interfering with viral replication and enhancing the overall antiviral state of neighboring cells, thereby limiting the spread of the virus.

As the innate response begins to wane, the adaptive immune system becomes activated, involving both humoral and cell-mediated responses. B cells produce virus-specific antibodies that can neutralize the virus, preventing it from entering host cells and marking it for destruction by other immune cells. T cells, including cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs), recognize and eliminate infected cells by detecting viral antigens presented on major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules. This targeted attack is critical for clearing the infection, particularly in cases where the virus has evaded neutralization by antibodies. The collaboration between B and T cells enhances the overall efficacy of the immune response, ensuring a coordinated effort against the invading virus.

Following the resolution of the infection, a portion of the activated B and T cells differentiates into memory cells, which provide long-lasting immunity. These memory cells enable a more rapid and robust response upon re-exposure to the same virus, which is the principle behind vaccination. However, some viruses can develop mechanisms to evade the immune response, leading to chronic infections or reinfection.

## CHAPTER VI

### DIAGNOSIS AND DETECTION OF VIRAL INFECTION

DR.A.XAVIER FERNANDES

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

The diagnosis and detection of viral infections rely on a combination of clinical assessment, laboratory testing, and advanced molecular techniques. Clinicians typically begin with a thorough evaluation of the patient's medical history, symptoms, and exposure history. Common symptoms of viral infections may include fever, fatigue, respiratory distress, and gastrointestinal issues, prompting further investigation. Depending on the suspected virus, specific laboratory tests are ordered to confirm the diagnosis and guide treatment.

Laboratory techniques for viral detection can be broadly categorized into direct and indirect methods. Direct methods involve the identification of the virus itself through techniques such as viral culture, where samples from the patient (e.g., blood, respiratory secretions) are cultured in the lab to observe viral growth. However, this method can be time-consuming and may not be suitable for all viruses. Indirect methods, such as serological tests, detect antibodies produced in response to the viral infection. These tests can indicate current or past infections but may take time to develop, as antibody levels rise in the body only after exposure.

Recent advancements in molecular techniques have revolutionized the diagnosis of viral infections. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assays are among the most sensitive and specific methods available, allowing for the rapid amplification of viral nucleic acids from patient samples. This enables the detection of viral infections even at low viral loads and provides timely results crucial for patient management. Additionally, techniques like next-generation sequencing can identify novel viruses and assess genetic variations, enhancing our understanding of viral epidemiology and evolution. Overall, a combination of clinical evaluation and cutting-edge laboratory techniques is essential for accurate diagnosis and effective management of viral infections.



## CHAPTER VII

### ANTIVIRAL THERAPIES AND VACCINES

**DR.G. CHANDIRASEGARAN**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Antiviral therapies and vaccines are critical components in the fight against viral infections, each serving distinct but complementary roles in disease prevention and management. Antiviral drugs target various stages of the viral life cycle, aiming to inhibit replication and spread within the host. Common antiviral medications include nucleoside analogs, protease inhibitors, and entry inhibitors, which disrupt essential processes such as viral genome replication or protein synthesis. For instance, drugs like acyclovir are effective against herpesviruses, while antiretroviral therapies for HIV focus on multiple mechanisms to manage chronic infections. The development and use of antiviral therapies have significantly improved patient outcomes, particularly in chronic viral infections and during outbreaks.

Vaccines play a pivotal role in preventing viral infections by priming the immune system to recognize and respond effectively to specific pathogens. Vaccines work by introducing harmless components of a virus, such as inactivated or attenuated viruses, or even viral proteins, prompting the immune system to produce memory cells that provide long-lasting protection. Successful vaccination programs have led to the control and even eradication of several viral diseases, such as smallpox and polio. More recent advances in vaccine technology, such as mRNA vaccines, have shown remarkable efficacy against viruses like SARS-CoV-2, showcasing the potential for rapid development and deployment in response to emerging viral threats.

The synergy between antiviral therapies and vaccines is vital for comprehensive viral disease management. While vaccines help prevent infections, antiviral treatments provide essential options for those who do become infected, particularly in high-risk populations or during outbreaks. The ongoing development of new antiviral agents and vaccine strategies is crucial in response to evolving viruses and emerging variants.

## CHAPTER VIII

### EMERGING VIRUSES AND GLOBAL HEALTH

**Dr. K. P. KARUPPAIAN**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Emerging viruses pose significant challenges to global health, often arising from complex interactions between human populations, wildlife, and the environment. Factors such as urbanization, deforestation, and climate change contribute to the increased risk of zoonotic spillover, where viruses jump from animals to humans. Notable examples include the emergence of SARS-CoV, MERS-CoV, and most recently, SARS-CoV-2, which have highlighted the vulnerabilities in public health systems and the interconnectedness of global communities. These viruses can lead to widespread outbreaks, overwhelming healthcare infrastructures and causing substantial economic and social disruption.

The rapid spread of emerging viruses underscores the importance of surveillance and early detection systems. Global health organizations, such as the World Health Organization (WHO) and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), work in collaboration with national health agencies to monitor viral outbreaks and implement response strategies. Advances in genomic sequencing and data sharing facilitate the timely identification of new pathogens, enabling a swift public health response. Enhanced surveillance efforts in both human and animal populations are critical to detecting potential outbreaks before they escalate, thereby reducing the risk of widespread transmission.

Addressing the threat of emerging viruses requires a multifaceted approach that encompasses research, public health preparedness, and international cooperation. Investment in vaccine development and antiviral therapies is crucial for effective response strategies, as seen during the COVID-19 pandemic. Additionally, fostering global collaboration and building resilient healthcare systems are essential for managing future viral threats. By promoting One Health initiatives that recognize the interconnectedness of human, animal, and environmental health, we can better prepare for and mitigate the impacts of emerging viruses on global health, ultimately protecting populations and improving health outcomes worldwide.

## CHAPTER IX

### VIROLOGY IN BIOTECHNOLOGY AND RESEARCH

**Dr. E. SWAMINATHAN**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Virology plays a pivotal role in biotechnology and research, providing valuable tools and insights that drive innovation across various fields. One of the most significant contributions of virology to biotechnology is the development of viral vectors for gene therapy. These vectors, derived from viruses, are engineered to deliver therapeutic genes into target cells, offering potential treatments for genetic disorders, cancers, and other diseases. By harnessing the natural ability of viruses to efficiently enter cells and transfer genetic material, researchers can design targeted therapies that improve patient outcomes and enhance the precision of medical interventions.

Moreover, viruses serve as essential model organisms in basic research, allowing scientists to explore fundamental biological processes. The simplicity of viral structures and their interactions with host cells facilitate the study of key cellular mechanisms, such as replication, immune evasion, and gene expression. For instance, the bacteriophage T4 has been instrumental in understanding DNA replication and repair, while retroviruses like HIV have provided insights into viral pathogenesis and the immune response. These studies not only advance our knowledge of virology but also contribute to broader fields, including genetics, immunology, and cell biology.

In addition to therapeutic applications and fundamental research, virology has significant implications for vaccine development and public health. Advances in vaccine technology, such as the use of viral vectors and mRNA platforms, have been accelerated by insights gained from virology. The rapid development of COVID-19 vaccines exemplifies how understanding viral structure and function can lead to effective public health solutions.

## CHAPTER X

### FUTURE DIRECTIONS IN VIROLOGY RESEARCH

**DR. K. AMBIKA**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Future directions in virology research are poised to address the evolving challenges posed by viral pathogens and their impact on global health. One key focus is the development of novel antiviral therapies and vaccines, particularly in light of emerging viruses and the threat of pandemics. Research will likely prioritize the design of broad-spectrum antivirals that can target multiple viral families, leveraging advancements in structural biology and computational modeling to identify critical viral proteins and pathways for intervention. Additionally, the rapid development of mRNA vaccine technology, as seen during the COVID-19 pandemic, will inspire further exploration of this platform for other viral diseases, enhancing preparedness and response capabilities for future outbreaks.

Another critical area of future research will involve understanding the complex interactions between viruses and host immune systems. As viruses continue to evolve, the ability to evade immune detection presents ongoing challenges for treatment and prevention. Studies will focus on deciphering the mechanisms of viral immune evasion and the host factors that influence susceptibility to infections.

Furthermore, the integration of multidisciplinary approaches, including bioinformatics, systems biology, and environmental health, will play a crucial role in virology research. Understanding the ecological and environmental factors that contribute to viral emergence, such as climate change and human encroachment on wildlife habitats, will be essential for predicting and mitigating future outbreaks. Collaborative global initiatives that combine expertise from virology, epidemiology, and public health will facilitate timely responses to emerging threats, ensuring that the scientific community is equipped to tackle the complexities of viral diseases in an interconnected world.

# CELL BIOLOGY

---

Edited by

**DR.K.KOILDASAN MANOHARAN**



978-93-6255-105-4

**DR. K.KOILDASAN MANOHARAN**

**Cell Biology**

Copyright©2019 by **DR. K.KOILDASAN MANOHARAN**

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-105-4

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction.....	8
Chapter I :Introduction to Cell Biology	
<b>DR. K. SUNDAR</b>	
.....	20
Chapter II : Structure and Function of the Cell Membrane	
.....	26
<b>DR.S.MOHANRAJ</b>	
Chapter III: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Cell	
.....	34
<b>DR. T.USHADEVI</b>	
Chapter IV : Cell Organelles and Their Functions	
.....	46
<b>DR.R.SATHYA</b>	
Chapter V: The Cytoskeleton and Cell Movement	
.....	53
<b>DR.T.THIRUSELVI</b>	
Chapter VI: Cellular Metabolism: Energy Production and Utilization	
.....	64
<b>DR.A.XAVIER FERNANDES</b>	
Chapter VII:Cell Communication and Signal Transduction	
.....	77
<b>DR.G. CHANDIRASEGARAN</b>	
Chapter VIII : Cell Cycle and Cell Division	
.....	99
<b>DR.K.P.KARUPPAIAN</b>	
Chapter Ix : Cell Death: Apoptosis and Autophagy	
.....	120
<b>DR.E.SWAMINATHAN</b>	
Chapter X Advances in Cell Biology: Stem Cells, Genetic Engineering, and Cancer	
.....	132
<b>DR.AMBIKA K</b>	
REFERENCES .....	150

## CHAPTER I

### INTRODUCTION TO CELL BIOLOGY

**DR. K. SUNDAR**

*Professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam  
Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Cell biology, often referred to as cytology, is the study of cells, the fundamental units of life. Cells are the building blocks of all living organisms, from the simplest bacteria to complex multicellular organisms like humans. By understanding the structure and function of cells, scientists can uncover the mechanisms that underlie all biological processes, including growth, reproduction, metabolism, and communication. Cell biology plays a central role in various fields of biology and medicine, providing insights into how organisms develop, how diseases occur, and how therapies can be designed.

The history of cell biology began with the invention of the microscope in the 17th century, which allowed scientists to observe cells for the first time. Robert Hooke, in 1665, coined the term "cell" when observing the structure of cork, and Antonie van Leeuwenhoek later discovered living cells. By the mid-19th century, the Cell Theory was established, stating that all living organisms are made up of cells, cells are the basic unit of life, and all cells come from pre-existing cells. This theory revolutionized the biological sciences and laid the foundation for modern biology.

Modern cell biology encompasses a wide array of topics, including the study of cellular organelles, cell signaling pathways, the cell cycle, and the role of cells in health and disease. Advances in microscopy, molecular biology, and genetics have enabled researchers to delve deeper into the molecular mechanisms that govern cell function. Understanding these processes has led to groundbreaking discoveries, such as how cells replicate their DNA, how they communicate with each other, and how they respond to external stimuli. This knowledge is fundamental to medical research, biotechnology, and therapeutic developments.



## CHAPTER II

### STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION OF THE CELL MEMBRANE

**DR.S.MOHANRAJ**

*Associate professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

The cell membrane, or plasma membrane, is a vital structure that defines the boundary of the cell, separating the intracellular environment from the extracellular space. It is primarily composed of a phospholipid bilayer, where the hydrophilic (water-attracting) phosphate heads face outward toward the water-rich environments, and the hydrophobic (water-repelling) fatty acid tails face inward, away from water. This bilayer arrangement creates a semi-permeable barrier that controls the entry and exit of substances, maintaining the internal conditions of the cell. The fluid nature of the membrane allows for flexibility and movement while preserving the cell's structural integrity.

Within the lipid bilayer, various proteins are embedded, each performing specific functions essential for cellular processes. Integral proteins span the entire membrane, serving as channels or transporters to facilitate the movement of ions, water, and other molecules across the membrane. Peripheral proteins, which are located on either the inner or outer surface, play roles in cell signaling, structural support, and maintaining the cell's shape. In addition, cholesterol molecules scattered throughout the membrane contribute to its fluidity and stability, ensuring that the membrane remains flexible yet sturdy under varying temperatures.

The cell membrane's selective permeability is a crucial feature that allows cells to regulate the passage of materials. Passive transport processes like diffusion and osmosis enable molecules to move across the membrane without the expenditure of energy, typically following their concentration gradient. In contrast, active transport mechanisms, such as the sodium-potassium pump, require energy in the form of ATP to move substances against their concentration gradients.

## **CHAPTER III**

### **PROKARYOTIC AND EUKARYOTIC CELL**

**Dr. T.USHADEVI**

*Associate professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Prokaryotic Cells are simpler, smaller cells that lack a nucleus and membrane-bound organelles. Their genetic material, usually a single circular DNA molecule, is located in a region called the nucleoid. Prokaryotes are typically unicellular organisms, such as bacteria and archaea. The cell wall, composed of peptidoglycan in bacteria, provides structural support and protection. Prokaryotic cells reproduce asexually through binary fission, a straightforward process that allows for rapid population growth. Despite their simplicity, prokaryotes are incredibly diverse and can thrive in various environments, from extreme conditions to the human gut.

Eukaryotic Cells, on the other hand, are more complex and larger than prokaryotic cells. They possess a true nucleus, which houses their linear DNA organized into chromosomes. Eukaryotic cells also contain various membrane-bound organelles, such as the endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi apparatus, mitochondria, and lysosomes, each performing specific functions crucial for cellular metabolism and organization. Eukaryotes can be unicellular (like yeast and some protists) or multicellular (such as plants, animals, and fungi). This complexity allows for greater specialization of cells and the development of intricate tissues and organs in multicellular organisms.

Both cell types perform essential life functions, but their structural differences reflect their evolutionary paths and functional adaptations. Prokaryotic cells excel in adaptability and rapid reproduction, while eukaryotic cells demonstrate advanced compartmentalization, allowing for more complex biochemical processes and multicellular organization. Understanding these differences is fundamental to the study of biology, as it highlights the diversity of life forms and their evolutionary significance.

## **CHAPTER IV**

### **CELL ORGANELLES AND THEIR FUNCTIONS**

**Dr. R.SATHYA**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Cell organelles are specialized structures within cells that perform distinct functions essential for cellular processes and overall organismal health. Each organelle is tailored to carry out specific tasks, contributing to the cell's ability to maintain homeostasis, produce energy, synthesize proteins, and manage waste. Understanding these organelles is fundamental to cell biology, as they illustrate how cells are organized and how their various components interact to support life.

In eukaryotic cells, organelles are often membrane-bound, allowing for compartmentalization of biochemical processes. This organization enables more efficient and regulated reactions, as different environments can be maintained for various activities. For instance, mitochondria are responsible for energy production through cellular respiration, while the endoplasmic reticulum plays a crucial role in protein and lipid synthesis. Conversely, prokaryotic cells, which lack membrane-bound organelles, utilize simpler structures to carry out similar functions, showcasing the versatility of cellular organization across life forms.

Overall, the intricate interplay of cell organelles not only highlights the complexity of cellular functions but also underscores their importance in health and disease. Disruptions in organelle function can lead to a variety of conditions, making their study vital for advancements in medicine and biotechnology. By exploring the various organelles and their roles, we gain insights into the fundamental mechanisms that sustain life at the cellular level.

## **CHAPTER V**

### **THE CYTOSKELETON AND CELL MOVEMENT**

**DR.T.THIRUSELVI**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

The cytoskeleton is a dynamic network of protein filaments and tubules that plays a crucial role in maintaining cell shape, providing structural support, and facilitating cellular movement. Composed of three primary components—microfilaments, intermediate filaments, and microtubules—the cytoskeleton is integral to various cellular functions, including intracellular transport, cell division, and the regulation of cell signaling. Its flexibility and adaptability allow cells to respond to environmental changes, migrate, and interact with neighboring cells.

Cell movement is vital for numerous biological processes, such as development, immune responses, and wound healing. The cytoskeleton underpins this movement by orchestrating the mechanical forces necessary for cellular locomotion. Microfilaments, primarily composed of actin, are involved in muscle contraction and amoeboid movement, while microtubules provide tracks for the movement of organelles and vesicles within the cell. Additionally, the cytoskeleton plays a key role in the formation of structures like cilia and flagella, which enable motility in certain cell types.

Understanding the cytoskeleton and its role in cell movement is essential for grasping how cells function and interact within their environments. Disruptions in cytoskeletal dynamics can lead to various diseases, including cancer and neurodegenerative disorders. By studying the cytoskeleton, researchers can gain insights into fundamental cellular mechanisms and develop potential therapeutic strategies to target these critical pathways.

## CHAPTER VI

### CELLULAR METABOLISM: ENERGY PRODUCTION AND UTILIZATION

**DR.A.XAVIER FERNANDES**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Cellular metabolism encompasses the complex biochemical processes that occur within cells to convert nutrients into energy and essential biomolecules. This intricate network of reactions is vital for sustaining life, as it enables cells to grow, reproduce, and respond to their environment. Metabolism is typically divided into two main categories: catabolism, the process of breaking down molecules to release energy, and anabolism, the synthesis of complex molecules from simpler ones, requiring energy input.

At the heart of cellular metabolism is the production of adenosine triphosphate (ATP), the primary energy currency of the cell. ATP is generated through various metabolic pathways, including glycolysis, the citric acid cycle, and oxidative phosphorylation. These pathways not only provide energy but also generate metabolic intermediates that are crucial for biosynthesis and other cellular functions. In multicellular organisms, the regulation of metabolic pathways ensures that energy production aligns with the needs of the organism, allowing for efficient resource allocation.

Understanding cellular metabolism is essential for exploring how cells maintain their energy balance, adapt to changing conditions, and contribute to overall physiological processes. Dysregulation of metabolic pathways can lead to a range of diseases, including diabetes, obesity, and cancer. By studying the mechanisms of energy production and utilization, researchers can uncover potential therapeutic targets and enhance our understanding of cellular physiology in health and disease.

## CHAPTER VII

### CELL COMMUNICATION AND SIGNAL TRANSDUCTION

**DR.G. CHANDIRASEGARAN**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Cell communication and signal transduction are essential processes that enable cells to interact with their environment and with each other. These intricate mechanisms allow cells to respond to various stimuli, coordinating their activities to maintain homeostasis, regulate growth, and facilitate development. Cells communicate through signaling molecules, such as hormones, neurotransmitters, and cytokines, which bind to specific receptors on target cells. This binding initiates a cascade of biochemical reactions, translating external signals into appropriate cellular responses.

Signal transduction pathways are complex networks that involve multiple steps, often characterized by a series of phosphorylation events mediated by kinases. These pathways can amplify the initial signal, allowing for a robust response even to low concentrations of signaling molecules. Different pathways can lead to diverse outcomes, including changes in gene expression, alterations in metabolic activity, and modifications in cell behavior. The specificity and precision of these signaling events are critical for proper cellular function and the overall health of the organism.

Understanding cell communication and signal transduction is vital for comprehending how organisms develop, adapt, and respond to their environments. Disruptions in these pathways can lead to various diseases, including cancer, autoimmune disorders, and neurological conditions. By studying the mechanisms underlying cell signaling, researchers can identify potential therapeutic targets and develop strategies to manipulate these pathways for medical interventions.

**CHAPTER VIII**  
**THE ROLE OF MICROORGANISMS IN BIOGEOCHEMICAL CYCLES**

**Dr.K.P.KARUPPAIAN**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah  
Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Microorganisms play a critical role in biogeochemical cycles, which are the processes that recycle nutrients and energy through ecosystems. These cycles involve the transformation of elements such as carbon, nitrogen, sulfur, and phosphorus between living organisms and the environment. Microbes, including bacteria, archaea, and fungi, are integral to these processes, facilitating the conversion of organic and inorganic materials and ensuring the sustainability of ecosystems. Their activities help maintain soil fertility, promote plant growth, and regulate atmospheric composition.

In the carbon cycle, microorganisms are key players in the decomposition of organic matter. When plants and animals die, bacteria and fungi break down their tissues, releasing carbon back into the atmosphere as carbon dioxide through respiration. This process not only recycles carbon but also enriches the soil with nutrients, supporting new plant growth. Additionally, some microorganisms, such as cyanobacteria, contribute to carbon fixation by converting atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> into organic compounds through photosynthesis.

The nitrogen cycle further exemplifies the vital functions of microorganisms in biogeochemical processes. Nitrogen-fixing bacteria convert atmospheric nitrogen into ammonia, a form that plants can use for growth. Other bacteria play crucial roles in nitrification, where ammonia is oxidized to nitrites and then nitrates, and in denitrification, which returns nitrogen to the atmosphere by converting nitrates back into nitrogen gas.

Similarly, microorganisms are essential in the sulfur and phosphorus cycles, where they facilitate the transformation and mobilization of these nutrients. Sulfur-reducing bacteria convert sulfate into hydrogen sulfide, while sulfur-oxidizing bacteria perform the opposite reaction, helping to regulate sulfur levels in the environment.

## CHAPTER IX

### CURRENT ADVANCES IN MICROBIAL PHYSIOLOGY RESEARCH

Dr.E.SWAMINATHAN

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Current advances in microbial physiology research have significantly enhanced our understanding of how microorganisms function, adapt, and interact within their environments. With the advent of high-throughput sequencing technologies and advanced imaging techniques, researchers can now explore microbial communities and their physiological processes at an unprecedented scale and resolution. These innovations have revealed the complexity of microbial life, including the intricate relationships between microbial species and their hosts, as well as their responses to environmental stressors.

One of the key developments in microbial physiology is the study of microbial metabolism through metagenomics and metabolomics. These approaches allow scientists to analyze the genetic and metabolic capabilities of entire microbial communities, revealing how different species contribute to biogeochemical cycles and ecosystem functions. For example, researchers have identified novel metabolic pathways in previously uncharacterized microorganisms, shedding light on their roles in nutrient cycling and energy production

Another significant advancement is the use of synthetic biology to engineer microorganisms for specific functions. By manipulating genetic pathways, scientists can design microbes with enhanced capabilities, such as improved efficiency in bioremediation or the production of high-value compounds. For instance, engineered bacteria are being developed to degrade environmental pollutants or to produce pharmaceuticals and biofuels more sustainably.



## **CHAPTER X**

### **FUTURE DIRECTIONS IN MICROBIAL PHYSIOLOGY AND BIOTECHNOLOGY**

**Dr.AMBIKA K**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

The future of microbial physiology and biotechnology is poised for exciting developments that will leverage advancements in genomics, synthetic biology, and environmental microbiology. As we deepen our understanding of microbial physiology, new opportunities arise for engineering microorganisms to perform specialized functions that address pressing global challenges. The integration of systems biology approaches, which combine genomic, transcriptomic, and metabolomic data, will allow researchers to create predictive models of microbial behavior, enhancing our ability to manipulate microbial communities for desired outcomes in biotechnology.

One promising direction is the application of synthetic biology to design custom microorganisms that can efficiently produce biofuels, pharmaceuticals, and bioplastics. By engineering metabolic pathways, scientists can optimize microbes for the sustainable production of valuable compounds from renewable resources, such as agricultural waste or carbon dioxide. This not only has the potential to reduce our reliance on fossil fuels but also contributes to waste valorization, turning environmental liabilities into economic opportunities.

Additionally, advances in bioinformatics and machine learning will significantly enhance our ability to analyze microbial data, leading to improved strain development and metabolic engineering strategies. By utilizing large datasets from metagenomics and transcriptomics, researchers can identify novel metabolic pathways and gene clusters in uncultured microorganisms, expanding the toolbox for biotechnology applications. This will also facilitate the study of microbial interactions in complex ecosystems, allowing for the design of microbial consortia that can work synergistically to achieve specific goals, such as enhanced soil health or bioremediation of contaminated environments.

# IMMUNOLOGY

EDITED BY  
**DR. K. SUNDAR**



978-93-6255-363-8

**DR. K SUNDAR**

**Immunology**

Copyright©2019 by **DR. K SUNDAR**

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-363-8

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction .....	8
Chapter I : <b>Introduction- History of immunology</b> .....	20
<b>Dr.S.Mohanraj</b>	
Chapter II : <b>Cells of the immune system</b> .....	26
<b>Dr. K. Sundar</b>	
Chapter III <b>Antigen- antibody reactions</b> .....	34
<b>Dr. T.Ushadevi</b>	
Chapter IV : <b>Biological function of complement system.</b> .....	46
<b>Dr.R.Sathya</b>	
Chapter V <b>Immunoelectrophoresis, HLA typing, ELISA and RIA</b> .....	53
<b>Dr.T.Thiruselvi</b>	
Chapter VI <b>Immunological Memory: Principles and Applications</b> .....	64
<b>Dr.A.Xavier Fernandes</b>	
Chapter VII <b>The Role of the Microbiome in Immune Function</b> .....	77
<b>Dr.G. Chandirasegaran</b>	
Chapter VIII : <b>Vaccination: Principles, Strategies, and Challenges</b> .....	99
<b>Dr.K.P.Karuppaian</b>	
Chapter IX <b>Immunopathology: Autoimmunity and Allergic Reactions</b> .....	120
<b>Dr.E.Swaminathan</b>	
Chapter X <b>Immune System Disorders: Diagnosis and Treatment</b> .....	132
<b>Dr.Ambika K</b>	
REFERENCES.....	150

## CHAPTER I

### INTRODUCTION- HISTORY OF IMMUNOLOGY

*Dr.S.Mohanraj*

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

The history of immunology traces a remarkable journey from ancient practices to the sophisticated science it is today. Early records indicate that ancient civilizations, such as the Egyptians and Greeks, recognized the concept of immunity through observations of survivors of infectious diseases. For instance, ancient Greek historian Thucydides noted that individuals who survived the plague were immune to subsequent infections.

The foundation of modern immunology was laid in the late 18th century when Edward Jenner developed the smallpox vaccine in 1796. By inoculating individuals with material from cowpox lesions, Jenner demonstrated that exposure to a less virulent virus could provide protection against a more severe disease.

The 19th century brought significant advancements, driven by key figures such as Louis Pasteur and Robert Koch. Pasteur's experiments with attenuated pathogens led to the development of vaccines for rabies and anthrax, further solidifying the link between microorganisms and disease. Koch's postulates established criteria for linking specific pathogens to specific diseases, which became foundational in the field of microbiology and immunology.

The 20th century saw rapid advancements in immunology, particularly with the discovery of antibodies and the elucidation of the immune system's complexities. The development of techniques such as serology and immunohistochemistry allowed for detailed studies of immune responses at the molecular level. The identification of lymphocytes and the understanding of their roles in adaptive immunity further advanced the field. The latter half of the century brought innovations like monoclonal antibodies and recombinant DNA technology, opening new avenues for research and therapeutic applications.

## CHAPTER II

### CELLS OF THE IMMUNE SYSTEM

*Dr. K. Sundar*

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

The immune system is a complex network of cells that work together to protect the body from pathogens and maintain overall health. The primary cells of the immune system can be broadly classified into two main categories: innate immune cells and adaptive immune cells. Innate immune cells, such as macrophages, neutrophils, and natural killer (NK) cells, provide the first line of defense against infections. These cells respond quickly to pathogens and are equipped with mechanisms to recognize and eliminate them. For example, macrophages engulf and digest pathogens through a process called phagocytosis, while neutrophils release enzymes and reactive oxygen species to destroy invaders.

Adaptive immune cells, which include T cells and B cells, play a crucial role in the body's long-term defense. These cells are characterized by their ability to recognize specific antigens—unique molecules present on pathogens. T cells, which develop in the thymus, are further divided into helper T cells and cytotoxic T cells. Helper T cells orchestrate the immune response by activating other immune cells, while cytotoxic T cells directly kill infected or cancerous cells. B cells, on the other hand, are responsible for producing antibodies that bind to specific antigens, neutralizing pathogens and marking them for destruction.

Another critical component of the immune system is the role of antigen-presenting cells (APCs), such as dendritic cells and certain macrophages. These cells capture and process antigens, presenting them on their surface in conjunction with major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules. This presentation is essential for the activation of T cells, linking the innate and adaptive immune responses. Dendritic cells, in particular, are known for their ability to migrate to lymph nodes, where they can efficiently activate naive T cells and initiate the adaptive immune response.

## CHAPTER III

### ANTIGEN- ANTIBODY REACTIONS

*Dr. T.Ushadevi*

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Antigen-antibody reactions are fundamental to the immune response, serving as the primary mechanism through which the immune system identifies and neutralizes pathogens. Antigens are foreign molecules, such as proteins, polysaccharides, or lipids, that are recognized by the immune system as potential threats. These can be derived from bacteria, viruses, fungi, or even non-infectious substances like pollen or transplanted tissues. When an antigen enters the body, it triggers the production of specific antibodies, which are proteins produced by B cells in response to the antigen's presence.

The interaction between antigens and antibodies involves a highly specific binding process. Each antibody has a unique structure that enables it to bind to a particular antigenic determinant, known as an epitope. This binding is primarily driven by non-covalent forces, including hydrogen bonds, ionic interactions, and hydrophobic interactions, allowing for a reversible and precise association.

Antigen-antibody reactions can be quantitatively measured using various laboratory techniques, which are vital for both research and clinical diagnostics. For example, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs) and Western blotting are commonly used to detect specific antibodies or antigens in serum samples. These assays have numerous applications, including disease diagnosis, vaccine evaluation, and monitoring immune responses in clinical settings. The ability to detect and quantify these reactions has greatly advanced our understanding of immunology and has facilitated the development of therapeutic interventions, such as monoclonal antibodies for cancer treatment and autoimmune diseases.

Understanding antigen-antibody interactions also plays a crucial role in vaccine development. Vaccines are designed to introduce harmless components of a pathogen, such as inactivated or attenuated forms, into the body to elicit an immune response.

## CHAPTER IV

### BIOLOGICAL FUNCTION OF COMPLEMENT SYSTEM.

*Dr.R.Sathya*

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

The complement system is a crucial component of the innate immune response, consisting of a series of proteins that work together to enhance the body's ability to fight infections. It serves multiple biological functions, primarily through a cascade of reactions that result in the opsonization of pathogens, recruitment of inflammatory cells, and direct lysis of microbes. The complement system can be activated through three main pathways: the classical, alternative, and lectin pathways, each triggered by different stimuli but ultimately converging to achieve similar outcomes.

One of the primary functions of the complement system is opsonization, a process that enhances phagocytosis. When complement proteins bind to the surface of pathogens, they mark them for destruction by immune cells, such as macrophages and neutrophils. This tagging process occurs through the deposition of complement fragments, such as C3b, onto the pathogen's surface. Opsonized pathogens are recognized more efficiently by phagocytes due to the presence of complement receptors, leading to an increased likelihood of engulfment and clearance. This mechanism is particularly important for targeting encapsulated bacteria that might otherwise evade immune detection.

Another significant function of the complement system is the recruitment of inflammatory cells to sites of infection or injury. Complement proteins can act as chemotactic agents, attracting immune cells to the affected area. For example, the cleavage products of complement proteins, such as C5a, serve as potent signals that draw neutrophils and other leukocytes to the site of infection, promoting an inflammatory response. This recruitment is crucial for establishing a robust immune defense, as it helps to contain and eliminate pathogens while also facilitating tissue repair processes.



## CHAPTER V

### IMMUNOELECTROPHORESIS, HLA TYPING, ELISA AND RIA

*Dr. T.Thiruselvi*

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Immunoelectrophoresis is a laboratory technique used to separate and identify proteins, particularly antibodies, based on their size and charge. This method combines electrophoresis and immunodiffusion, allowing for the visualization of specific proteins in a sample. In the process, a serum or plasma sample is subjected to electrophoresis in a gel matrix, which separates the proteins by their molecular weight. Following this separation, the gel is incubated with specific antibodies, creating a precipitation pattern that indicates the presence and concentration of the target proteins.

HLA typing is another critical immunological technique used to determine the specific alleles of the human leukocyte antigen (HLA) system present in an individual. HLA molecules play a vital role in the immune response by presenting peptide fragments to T cells, and their compatibility is crucial in organ transplantation. HLA typing is performed using methods such as polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and sequence-specific oligonucleotide probing, allowing for precise identification of HLA alleles.

Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) is a widely used analytical method for detecting and quantifying proteins, hormones, antibodies, and antigens in a sample. The technique involves immobilizing an antigen or antibody on a solid surface, typically a microplate, and subsequently exposing it to a sample containing the target analyte. After incubation, a secondary enzyme-linked antibody is added, which binds to the target, followed by the addition of a substrate that produces a measurable signal, usually colorimetric.

Radioimmunoassay (RIA) is an older but still significant technique used for measuring concentrations of antigens by using radiolabeled antibodies .

## CHAPTER VI

### IMMUNOLOGICAL MEMORY: PRINCIPLES AND APPLICATIONS

*Dr.A.Xavier Fernandes*

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Immunological memory is a cornerstone of the adaptive immune system, enabling the body to mount a more rapid and effective response upon re-exposure to a previously encountered pathogen. This phenomenon occurs after the initial exposure to an antigen, during which B and T lymphocytes undergo activation, proliferation, and differentiation. Some of these activated lymphocytes become memory cells, which persist long-term in the body. When the same antigen is encountered again, these memory cells can quickly recognize and respond, resulting in a more robust and swift immune reaction compared to the primary response.

The mechanisms behind immunological memory involve both B cells and T cells. Memory B cells are capable of rapidly producing specific antibodies upon re-exposure to an antigen, while memory T cells can quickly proliferate and differentiate into effector T cells to eliminate infected cells. These memory cells have a longer lifespan than their naive counterparts and can reside in various tissues, including lymph nodes, bone marrow, and peripheral blood.

The applications of immunological memory are most prominently seen in vaccination strategies. Vaccines are designed to introduce harmless components of pathogens—such as inactivated viruses, attenuated live pathogens, or specific proteins—into the body to stimulate an immune response without causing disease. This exposure leads to the formation of memory cells, ensuring that if the individual is later exposed to the actual pathogen, their immune system can mount a quick and effective response.

## CHAPTER VII

### THE ROLE OF THE MICROBIOME IN IMMUNE FUNCTION

*Dr.G. Chandirasegaran*

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

The microbiome, the complex community of microorganisms residing in and on the human body, plays a crucial role in regulating immune function and maintaining overall health. Comprising trillions of bacteria, viruses, fungi, and other microbes, the microbiome significantly influences the immune system's development and activity.

One of the key mechanisms by which the microbiome influences immune function is through the production of metabolites. Gut bacteria, for instance, ferment dietary fibers into short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs) such as butyrate, propionate, and acetate. These SCFAs not only serve as energy sources for intestinal epithelial cells but also play critical roles in modulating immune responses.

Moreover, the microbiome acts as a barrier against pathogens by competing for resources and space within the host. This competitive exclusion is crucial in preventing the colonization of harmful microorganisms. Commensal bacteria produce antimicrobial substances that can inhibit the growth of pathogens, thereby bolstering the host's innate immune defenses.

Recent research has also shed light on the impact of the microbiome on vaccine responses. Studies suggest that the composition of an individual's microbiome can influence the efficacy of vaccines by affecting the maturation and activation of immune cells. For example, certain microbial species have been associated with enhanced antibody responses following vaccination, highlighting the microbiome's potential as a modulator of vaccine efficacy. This growing understanding opens new avenues for personalized medicine, where interventions aimed at optimizing the microbiome could improve immunization strategies and enhance overall immune health. As research continues to unravel the complexities of the microbiome, its role in immune function remains a focal point for advancing therapeutic approaches and improving health outcomes.

## CHAPTER VIII

### VACCINATION: PRINCIPLES, STRATEGIES, AND CHALLENGES

*Dr.K.P.Karuppaian*

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Vaccination is a cornerstone of public health, designed to stimulate the immune system and provide protective immunity against infectious diseases. The fundamental principle behind vaccination is the introduction of an antigen—derived from a pathogen—into the body to elicit an immune response without causing the disease itself. This can be achieved through various strategies, including live attenuated vaccines, inactivated or killed vaccines, subunit or conjugate vaccines, and mRNA vaccines. Each type has its advantages and disadvantages, but they all aim to create immunological memory, allowing the body to respond swiftly and effectively to future exposures to the pathogen.

One of the most notable strategies in vaccination is the use of live attenuated vaccines, which contain weakened forms of the pathogen. These vaccines often provide robust and long-lasting immunity, as they closely mimic natural infections. Examples include vaccines for measles, mumps, and rubella (MMR). On the other hand, inactivated vaccines contain killed pathogens and are safer for individuals with compromised immune systems but may require multiple doses to achieve full immunity, such as the polio vaccine. Recent advances in biotechnology have led to the development of mRNA vaccines, exemplified by the COVID-19 vaccines, which utilize messenger RNA to instruct cells to produce a harmless piece of the virus, triggering an immune response without the use of live pathogens.

Despite the remarkable success of vaccination programs worldwide, several challenges remain. Vaccine hesitancy, driven by misinformation, cultural beliefs, and distrust in healthcare systems, poses significant barriers to achieving herd immunity. Addressing these concerns requires effective communication strategies and community engagement to build trust and promote the benefits of vaccination.

## CHAPTER IX

### IMMUNOPATHOLOGY: AUTOIMMUNITY AND ALLERGIC REACTIONS

*Dr.E.Swaminathan*

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Immunopathology is a branch of immunology that explores the detrimental effects of immune responses, focusing primarily on two major phenomena: autoimmunity and allergic reactions. Autoimmunity occurs when the immune system mistakenly targets and attacks the body's own tissues, leading to a variety of chronic inflammatory diseases. This can result from genetic predispositions, environmental factors, and molecular mimicry, where the immune system confuses self-antigens with foreign pathogens. Conditions such as rheumatoid arthritis, lupus, and type 1 diabetes are examples of autoimmune diseases that can cause significant morbidity and require ongoing management.

The mechanisms underlying autoimmunity are complex and multifaceted. Central to these processes is the failure of immune tolerance, the body's ability to distinguish between self and non-self. In a healthy immune system, autoreactive T and B cells are typically eliminated during development. However, when this tolerance breaks down, these cells can proliferate and produce autoantibodies that target self-antigens.

Allergic reactions, on the other hand, represent an exaggerated immune response to normally harmless substances, known as allergens. Common allergens include pollen, dust mites, certain foods, and insect stings. Allergic responses are primarily mediated by IgE antibodies, which bind to allergens and trigger the release of histamines and other inflammatory mediators from mast cells and basophils. This cascade of events leads to symptoms ranging from mild, such as sneezing and itching, to severe, such as anaphylaxis, which can be life-threatening. Understanding the mechanisms behind allergic reactions has led to the development of various therapeutic strategies, including antihistamines, corticosteroids, and immunotherapy.

## CHAPTER X

### IMMUNE SYSTEM DISORDERS: DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT NUTRITION AND GROWTH OF MICROORGANISMS

*Dr.Ambika K*


*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Immune system disorders encompass a wide range of conditions that can compromise the body's ability to defend itself against infections and diseases. These disorders are generally classified into two main categories: primary immunodeficiencies, which are genetic in nature, and secondary immunodeficiencies, which can arise from external factors such as infections, malnutrition, or certain medications.

The treatment of immune system disorders varies widely depending on the specific condition and its underlying cause. For primary immunodeficiencies, treatment may involve immunoglobulin replacement therapy, which provides patients with the antibodies they lack, or stem cell transplantation for more severe cases. Secondary immunodeficiencies may require addressing the underlying cause, such as providing antiretroviral therapy for HIV or nutritional support for individuals suffering from malnutrition.

Nutrition plays a crucial role in the maintenance of a healthy immune system. A well-balanced diet, rich in vitamins and minerals, supports the growth and function of immune cells. Nutrients such as vitamin C, vitamin D, zinc, and omega-3 fatty acids are essential for optimal immune function. For individuals with immune disorders, nutritional interventions can be particularly beneficial in enhancing immune response and promoting recovery.

Furthermore, the growth of microorganisms in relation to nutrition is significant in understanding immune system disorders. The human microbiome, comprising trillions of microbes, plays a vital role in modulating immune responses and maintaining gut health.

A circular inset image showing a laboratory setting with various glassware and equipment, including a large flask and a petri dish, all with a blue tint.

# MICROBIAL PHYSIOLOGY

Edited By  
**DR.S.MOHAN RAJ**



978-93-6255-830-5

**DR. S MOHANRAJ**

**Microbial Physiology**

Copyright©2019 by **DR. S MOHANRAJ**

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-830-5

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction .....	8
Chapter I : Nutrition and growth of microorganisms	
<b>Dr.S.Mohanraj</b>	
.....	20
Chapter II : Enzymes and co –enzymes	
.....	26
<b>Dr. K. Sundar</b>	
Chapter III Metabolism of carbohydrates	
.....	34
<b>Dr. T.Ushadevi</b>	
Chapter IV : synthesis of amino acids, peptides, proteins	
.....	46
<b>Dr.R.Sathya</b>	
Chapter V Reproductive physiology of microorganisms	
.....	53
<b>Dr.T.Thiruselvi</b>	
Chapter VI Fermentation and Respiration: Energy Generation in Microbes	
.....	64
<b>Dr.A.Xavier Fernandes</b>	
Chapter VII Symbiosis and Microbial Interactions: Mutualism, Commensalism, and Parasitism	
.....	77
<b>Dr.G. Chandirasegaran</b>	
Chapter VIII : The Role of Microorganisms in Biogeochemical Cycles	
.....	99
<b>Dr.K.P.Karuppaian</b>	
Chapter Ix Current Advances in Microbial Physiology Research	
.....	120
<b>Dr.E.Swaminathan</b>	
Chapter X Future Directions in Microbial Physiology and Biotechnology	
.....	132
<b>Dr.Ambika K</b>	
REFERENCES.....	150

**CHAPTER I**  
**NUTRITION AND GROWTH OF MICROORGANISMS**

**Dr.S.Mohanraj**

*Associate professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Nutrition and growth are fundamental aspects of microbial physiology, influencing how microorganisms acquire the necessary nutrients for metabolism and reproduction. Microorganisms require various essential elements, including carbon, nitrogen, phosphorus, sulfur, and trace minerals, to synthesize cellular components and generate energy. They can be classified based on their nutritional requirements, with categories such as autotrophs, which utilize inorganic sources like carbon dioxide, and heterotrophs, which derive carbon from organic compounds.

The growth of microorganisms is characterized by specific phases, which can be observed in a typical growth curve. The lag phase is a period of adaptation where cells acclimatize to their environment and prepare for division. Following this, the exponential (log) phase is marked by rapid cell division and metabolic activity, driven by optimal nutrient availability.

Different microorganisms have evolved specialized mechanisms to acquire and utilize nutrients from their environment. For instance, some bacteria secrete enzymes to break down complex macromolecules into smaller, absorbable units, allowing them to utilize diverse organic materials. Others may form symbiotic relationships with plants or fungi to enhance nutrient uptake, demonstrating the interconnectedness of microbial life. Understanding these mechanisms not only sheds light on microbial ecology but also has practical applications in agriculture and biotechnology, where optimizing nutrient availability can enhance crop yields and microbial production processes.

## CHAPTER II

### ENZYMES AND CO –ENZYMES

**Dr. K. Sundar**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Enzymes are biological catalysts that accelerate chemical reactions in living organisms by lowering the activation energy required for those reactions. Composed primarily of proteins, enzymes are highly specific, meaning they typically catalyze only one type of reaction or act on a specific substrate. The catalytic activity of enzymes is influenced by various factors, including temperature, pH, and substrate concentration.

Coenzymes are organic non-protein molecules that assist enzymes in catalyzing reactions. They often act as carriers for chemical groups or electrons during enzymatic reactions, helping to transfer these entities from one substrate to another. Coenzymes are typically derived from vitamins and other essential nutrients, highlighting the interconnectedness of nutrition and enzyme function. For example, nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD<sup>+</sup>) and coenzyme A (CoA) are crucial coenzymes involved in metabolic pathways such as cellular respiration and fatty acid synthesis. Without these coenzymes, many vital enzymatic reactions would proceed at insufficient rates, leading to metabolic dysfunction.

The interaction between enzymes and coenzymes is vital for maintaining metabolic balance within cells. When a coenzyme binds to an enzyme, it often induces a conformational change that enhances the enzyme's ability to catalyze the reaction. This relationship exemplifies the cooperative nature of biochemical pathways, where multiple enzymes and coenzymes work in concert to regulate metabolic processes efficiently. The absence or deficiency of a coenzyme can lead to metabolic disorders, underscoring the importance of these molecules in maintaining cellular health and function.

## CHAPTER III

### METABOLISM OF CARBOHYDRATES

*Dr. T.Ushadevi*

*Associate professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Carbohydrate metabolism is a vital biochemical process that enables organisms to derive energy from carbohydrates, which are one of the primary sources of fuel for living cells. Carbohydrates, including sugars and starches, undergo various metabolic pathways to be broken down into glucose and other simple sugars, which can be utilized for energy production. The primary pathways for carbohydrate metabolism are glycolysis, the Krebs cycle (also known as the citric acid cycle), and oxidative phosphorylation. These processes work together to convert the chemical energy stored in carbohydrates into adenosine triphosphate (ATP), the energy currency of the cell.

Glycolysis is the first step in carbohydrate metabolism, occurring in the cytoplasm of cells. This pathway converts one molecule of glucose into two molecules of pyruvate while producing a net gain of two ATP molecules and two NADH molecules, which serve as energy carriers. Glycolysis is anaerobic, meaning it does not require oxygen, making it a crucial pathway for energy production in both aerobic and anaerobic conditions.

The Krebs cycle plays a central role in carbohydrate metabolism by oxidizing acetyl-CoA, derived from pyruvate, to produce additional ATP, NADH, and another electron carrier, FADH<sub>2</sub>. This cycle occurs in the mitochondrial matrix and serves as a hub for energy production from not only carbohydrates but also fats and proteins. The NADH and FADH<sub>2</sub> generated are crucial for the next stage of metabolism—oxidative phosphorylation—where they donate electrons to the electron transport chain, leading to the production of a significant amount of ATP. This interconnectedness of metabolic pathways underscores the versatility of carbohydrates as energy sources

## CHAPTER IV

### SYNTHESIS OF AMINO ACIDS, PEPTIDES, PROTEINS

**Dr.R.Sathya**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

The synthesis of amino acids, peptides, and proteins is a fundamental aspect of biochemistry and cell biology, essential for the structure and function of all living organisms. Amino acids, the building blocks of proteins, can be classified as essential, which must be obtained from the diet, or non-essential, which the body can synthesize. The biosynthesis of amino acids typically involves various metabolic pathways, with organisms using precursors from glycolysis, the Krebs cycle, or other metabolic processes. This flexibility allows cells to maintain adequate levels of amino acids to support protein synthesis and various cellular functions.

Once amino acids are available, they can be linked together through peptide bonds to form peptides and proteins. The process of peptide synthesis occurs during translation, a key step in gene expression. Ribosomes read the messenger RNA (mRNA) sequence, which encodes the genetic information for a specific protein. Transfer RNA (tRNA) molecules carry the corresponding amino acids to the ribosome, where the sequence of nucleotides in the mRNA dictates the order in which amino acids are added to the growing peptide chain. This highly coordinated process ensures that proteins are synthesized accurately according to the genetic blueprint.

The primary structure of a protein is simply the linear sequence of amino acids, but it ultimately determines the protein's secondary, tertiary, and quaternary structures through folding and interactions between the amino acids. Various forces, including hydrogen bonds, ionic interactions, hydrophobic effects, and disulfide bridges, play a role in stabilizing these higher-order structures. The final shape of a protein is crucial for its specific function, whether it be as an enzyme, structural component, or signaling molecule. Misfolded proteins can lead to dysfunctional activity and are often implicated in diseases such as Alzheimer's and cystic fibrosis.

## CHAPTER V

### REPRODUCTIVE PHYSIOLOGY OF MICROORGANISMS

**Dr.T.Thiruselvi**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Reproductive physiology in microorganisms encompasses the various mechanisms by which these organisms reproduce and propagate, ensuring the continuity of their species. Microorganisms primarily reproduce asexually through processes such as binary fission, budding, and fragmentation. In binary fission, a single cell divides into two identical daughter cells, which is the most common method among bacteria. This process involves the replication of genetic material and the subsequent separation of the cytoplasm, allowing for rapid population growth under favorable environmental conditions. The simplicity and efficiency of asexual reproduction enable microorganisms to quickly adapt to changing environments.

Some microorganisms, such as yeasts and certain algae, also reproduce through budding, where a new organism develops from an outgrowth or bud on the parent cell. This method allows for the production of multiple offspring from a single parent without the need for complete cellular division. Fragmentation is another form of asexual reproduction seen in filamentous organisms, where segments of the organism break off and develop into new individuals. These methods of reproduction facilitate rapid colonization and can lead to significant increases in microbial populations, particularly in nutrient-rich environments.

In addition to asexual reproduction, some microorganisms engage in sexual reproduction, which introduces genetic variation and enhances adaptability. In fungi, for instance, sexual reproduction involves the fusion of specialized reproductive cells (gametes) to form spores, which can then germinate into new individuals. Bacteria can also exchange genetic material through processes like conjugation, transformation, and transduction, which, while not sexual reproduction in the traditional sense, allow for genetic recombination and variation.

## CHAPTER VI

### FERMENTATION AND RESPIRATION: ENERGY GENERATION IN MICROBES

**Dr.A.Xavier Fernandes**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Fermentation and respiration are two essential metabolic processes by which microorganisms generate energy, allowing them to survive and thrive in various environments. While both processes serve the primary function of ATP production, they differ significantly in their mechanisms and conditions under which they occur. Fermentation is an anaerobic process, meaning it does not require oxygen, and occurs when oxygen is scarce or absent. In fermentation, organic substrates, such as glucose, are partially oxidized, resulting in the production of energy and various byproducts, such as ethanol, lactic acid, or carbon dioxide, depending on the microorganism and the specific fermentation pathway utilized.

Glycolysis is the initial step in both fermentation and aerobic respiration, converting glucose into pyruvate while generating a small amount of ATP. In fermentation, the pyruvate produced is further metabolized in the absence of oxygen to regenerate NAD<sup>+</sup>, a crucial coenzyme needed for glycolysis to continue. For example, in alcoholic fermentation, yeast converts pyruvate into ethanol and carbon dioxide, while in lactic acid fermentation, certain bacteria convert pyruvate into lactic acid.

In contrast, respiration can be either aerobic or anaerobic, with aerobic respiration being the more energy-efficient process. In aerobic respiration, microorganisms utilize oxygen as the terminal electron acceptor in the electron transport chain, following glycolysis and the Krebs cycle. This process generates significantly more ATP—up to 36-38 ATP molecules per glucose molecule—compared to fermentation, which typically yields only 2 ATP.

Anaerobic respiration, while less common, also allows certain microorganisms to thrive in oxygen-poor environments. In this process, alternative electron acceptors, such as nitrate, sulfate, or carbon dioxide, are used instead of oxygen.

## CHAPTER VII

### SYMBIOSIS AND MICROBIAL INTERACTIONS: MUTUALISM, COMMENSALISM, AND PARASITISM

**Dr.G. Chandirasegaran**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Symbiosis refers to the various interactions between different species living in close proximity, which can significantly impact the ecology and evolution of organisms. In the context of microorganisms, these interactions can be classified into three main types: mutualism, commensalism, and parasitism. Each of these relationships plays a vital role in shaping microbial communities and influencing their respective hosts.

Mutualism is a symbiotic relationship in which both partners benefit from the interaction. In microbial ecology, this can be seen in the association between nitrogen-fixing bacteria, such as *Rhizobium*, and leguminous plants. The bacteria colonize the root nodules of the plants, converting atmospheric nitrogen into forms that the plants can use for growth. In return, the plants provide the bacteria with carbohydrates and a stable environment.

In commensalism, one organism benefits while the other is neither helped nor harmed. Many microorganisms live as commensals in the human body, such as certain skin bacteria and gut flora. These microorganisms can help with processes like digestion and the production of vitamins without negatively impacting their host. For example, some gut bacteria ferment dietary fibers, producing short-chain fatty acids that provide energy to intestinal cells.

Parasitism represents a more detrimental form of symbiosis, where one organism benefits at the expense of the other. Pathogenic microorganisms, such as certain bacteria, viruses, and protozoa, can invade host organisms, leading to disease and harm. For example, *Plasmodium*, the protozoan responsible for malaria, relies on human hosts for its life cycle while causing significant health issues.



## CHAPTER VIII

### THE ROLE OF MICROORGANISMS IN BIOGEOCHEMICAL CYCLES

**Dr.K.P.Karuppaian**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Microorganisms play a critical role in biogeochemical cycles, which are the processes that recycle nutrients and energy through ecosystems. These cycles involve the transformation of elements such as carbon, nitrogen, sulfur, and phosphorus between living organisms and the environment. Microbes, including bacteria, archaea, and fungi, are integral to these processes, facilitating the conversion of organic and inorganic materials and ensuring the sustainability of ecosystems. Their activities help maintain soil fertility, promote plant growth, and regulate atmospheric composition.

In the carbon cycle, microorganisms are key players in the decomposition of organic matter. When plants and animals die, bacteria and fungi break down their tissues, releasing carbon back into the atmosphere as carbon dioxide through respiration. This process not only recycles carbon but also enriches the soil with nutrients, supporting new plant growth. Additionally, some microorganisms, such as cyanobacteria, contribute to carbon fixation by converting atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> into organic compounds through photosynthesis.

The nitrogen cycle further exemplifies the vital functions of microorganisms in biogeochemical processes. Nitrogen-fixing bacteria convert atmospheric nitrogen into ammonia, a form that plants can use for growth. Other bacteria play crucial roles in nitrification, where ammonia is oxidized to nitrites and then nitrates, and in denitrification, which returns nitrogen to the atmosphere by converting nitrates back into nitrogen gas.

Similarly, microorganisms are essential in the sulfur and phosphorus cycles, where they facilitate the transformation and mobilization of these nutrients. Sulfur-reducing bacteria convert sulfate into hydrogen sulfide, while sulfur-oxidizing bacteria perform the opposite reaction, helping to regulate sulfur levels in the environment.

## CHAPTER IX

### CURRENT ADVANCES IN MICROBIAL PHYSIOLOGY RESEARCH

**Dr.E.Swaminathan**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Current advances in microbial physiology research have significantly enhanced our understanding of how microorganisms function, adapt, and interact within their environments. With the advent of high-throughput sequencing technologies and advanced imaging techniques, researchers can now explore microbial communities and their physiological processes at an unprecedented scale and resolution. These innovations have revealed the complexity of microbial life, including the intricate relationships between microbial species and their hosts, as well as their responses to environmental stressors.

One of the key developments in microbial physiology is the study of microbial metabolism through metagenomics and metabolomics. These approaches allow scientists to analyze the genetic and metabolic capabilities of entire microbial communities, revealing how different species contribute to biogeochemical cycles and ecosystem functions. For example, researchers have identified novel metabolic pathways in previously uncharacterized microorganisms, shedding light on their roles in nutrient cycling and energy production

Another significant advancement is the use of synthetic biology to engineer microorganisms for specific functions. By manipulating genetic pathways, scientists can design microbes with enhanced capabilities, such as improved efficiency in bioremediation or the production of high-value compounds. For instance, engineered bacteria are being developed to degrade environmental pollutants or to produce pharmaceuticals and biofuels more sustainably.

## CHAPTER X

### FUTURE DIRECTIONS IN MICROBIAL PHYSIOLOGY AND BIOTECHNOLOGY

**Dr.Ambika K**

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

The future of microbial physiology and biotechnology is poised for exciting developments that will leverage advancements in genomics, synthetic biology, and environmental microbiology. As we deepen our understanding of microbial physiology, new opportunities arise for engineering microorganisms to perform specialized functions that address pressing global challenges. The integration of systems biology approaches, which combine genomic, transcriptomic, and metabolomic data, will allow researchers to create predictive models of microbial behavior, enhancing our ability to manipulate microbial communities for desired outcomes in biotechnology.

One promising direction is the application of synthetic biology to design custom microorganisms that can efficiently produce biofuels, pharmaceuticals, and bioplastics. By engineering metabolic pathways, scientists can optimize microbes for the sustainable production of valuable compounds from renewable resources, such as agricultural waste or carbon dioxide. This not only has the potential to reduce our reliance on fossil fuels but also contributes to waste valorization, turning environmental liabilities into economic opportunities.

Additionally, advances in bioinformatics and machine learning will significantly enhance our ability to analyze microbial data, leading to improved strain development and metabolic engineering strategies. By utilizing large datasets from metagenomics and transcriptomics, researchers can identify novel metabolic pathways and gene clusters in uncultured microorganisms, expanding the toolbox for biotechnology applications. This will also facilitate the study of microbial interactions in complex ecosystems, allowing for the design of microbial consortia that can work synergistically to achieve specific goals, such as enhanced soil health or bioremediation of contaminated environments.

# FUNDAMENTALS OF MICROBIOLOGY

*Edited by*

**DR. S. RAMESH**



978-93-6255-400-0

**DR. S RAMESH**

**Fundamentals of microbiology**

Copyright©2019 by **DR. S RAMESH**

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-400-0

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction .....	8
Chapter I : Introduction – definition, scope and history of microbiology .....	20
<b>Dr.S.Mohanraj</b>	
Chapter II : Classification of Microorganisms .....	26
<b>Dr. K. Sundar</b>	
Chapter III : Principles and application Of Microscopy. .....	34
<b>DR. S. Ramesh</b>	
Chapter IV : Methods of maintenance and preservation of cultures. .....	46
<b>Dr.R.Sathya</b>	
Chapter V Classification of viruses, algae, fungi and protozoa .....	53
<b>Dr.T.Thiruselvi</b>	
Chapter VI Microbial growth and cultivation .....	64
<b>Dr.A.Xavier Fernandes</b>	
Chapter VII Microbial Ecology .....	77
<b>Dr.G. Chandirasegaran</b>	
Chapter VIII : Microorganisms and disease .....	99
<b>Dr.K.P.Karuppaian</b>	
Chapter Ix Immune Response .....	120
<b>Dr.E.Swaminathan</b>	
Chapter X: Microbiology in Industry and Biotechnology .....	132
<b>Dr.Ambika K</b>	
REFERENCES.....	150

## CHAPTER I

### INTRODUCTION – DEFINITION, SCOPE AND HISTORY OF MICROBIOLOGY

DR.S.MOHANRAJ

*Associate professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

#### **Definition of Microbiology**

Microbiology is the scientific study of microorganisms, which are tiny, often microscopic entities that can only be seen with the aid of a microscope. This field encompasses a diverse range of organisms, including bacteria, viruses, fungi, algae, and protozoa. Microbiology investigates their structure, function, genetics, and interactions with their environments and other living organisms. By studying these microorganisms, scientists can gain insights into their roles in various processes, such as fermentation, disease causation, and biogeochemical cycles.

#### **Scope of Microbiology**

The scope of microbiology is vast, influencing numerous fields, including medicine, agriculture, environmental science, and biotechnology. In medicine, microbiology plays a critical role in understanding infectious diseases, developing antibiotics, and formulating vaccines. In agriculture, beneficial microorganisms are utilized to enhance soil fertility and control pests, contributing to sustainable farming practices. Environmental microbiology studies the roles of microorganisms in nutrient cycling, waste decomposition, and bioremediation, helping to address environmental challenges. Moreover, industrial microbiology focuses on the use of microorganisms in the production of food, beverages, and biofuels, highlighting their significance in biotechnology.

#### **History of Microbiology**

The history of microbiology dates back to the late 17th century when Antonie van Leeuwenhoek first observed microorganisms using a simple microscope he designed.

## CHAPTER II

### CLASSIFICATION OF MICROORGANISMS

DR. K. SUNDAR

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

#### **Classification of Microorganisms**

The classification of microorganisms is essential for understanding the vast diversity of life forms that exist at the microscopic level. Microorganisms are primarily classified into several major groups based on their cellular structure, metabolic pathways, and genetic characteristics.

#### **Bacteria and Archaea**

Bacteria and archaea are both prokaryotic microorganisms, meaning they lack a true nucleus and membrane-bound organelles. They are classified based on their shape (cocci, bacilli, spirilla), gram staining properties (Gram-positive or Gram-negative), and metabolic capabilities (aerobic, anaerobic, facultative). Archaea, although similar in structure to bacteria, have distinct genetic and biochemical differences, allowing them to thrive in extreme environments, such as hot springs and salt lakes.

#### **Fungi, Protozoa, and Algae**

Fungi are eukaryotic microorganisms that include yeasts, molds, and mushrooms. Protozoa are single-celled eukaryotic organisms that are classified into groups such as amoebae, flagellates, and ciliates, based on their motility and feeding mechanisms. Algae, another group of eukaryotic microorganisms, are primarily photosynthetic organisms that can be unicellular or multicellular.

#### **Viruses**

Viruses represent a unique category of microorganisms, as they are acellular and can only replicate within a host cell.



## CHAPTER III

### PRINCIPLES AND APPLICATION OF MICROSCOPY.

DR. S. RAMESH

*Associate professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Microscopy is a powerful tool in scientific research and medicine, enabling the observation of structures that are too small to be seen with the naked eye. At its core, microscopy relies on principles of optics, which involve the manipulation of light to magnify objects. The basic principle is the use of lenses to bend light rays, allowing for the formation of enlarged images of small specimens.

The light microscope, one of the most commonly used types, employs visible light and a series of glass lenses to magnify samples. It is particularly useful for observing live specimens and biological samples, such as cells and tissues, allowing researchers to study their morphology and behavior in real-time. This type of microscopy is limited by its resolving power, typically around 200 nanometers, which constrains the visualization of smaller structures like organelles.

In contrast, electron microscopy (EM) employs a beam of electrons rather than light, achieving much higher resolutions—up to a few nanometers. This makes EM particularly valuable for studying the ultrastructure of cells and materials at the atomic level. There are two main types of electron microscopy: transmission electron microscopy (TEM), which allows for the examination of thin samples, and scanning electron microscopy (SEM), which provides detailed three-dimensional images of surfaces. The ability to visualize structures at such high resolutions has profound implications in fields like nanotechnology, materials science, and pathology, where understanding fine details can lead to significant advancements.

## CHAPTER IV

### METHODS OF MAINTENANCE AND PRESERVATION OF CULTURES.

DR.R.SATHYA

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

The maintenance and preservation of microbial cultures are essential practices in microbiology, ensuring the viability and stability of microorganisms for research, industrial applications, and medical diagnostics. Effective culture maintenance methods are crucial for preventing contamination, degradation, and loss of genetic integrity. Common methods include refrigeration, cryopreservation, and lyophilization, each suited for different types of microorganisms and research needs.

Refrigeration is one of the simplest and most widely used methods for short-term storage of cultures. By keeping cultures at low temperatures, typically between 4°C and 8°C, metabolic activity slows down, extending the life of the microorganisms. This method is practical for maintaining bacteria and yeast for several weeks to a few months.

For long-term preservation, cryopreservation is often employed. This technique involves storing cultures at ultra-low temperatures, usually in liquid nitrogen at -196°C. Before freezing, cryoprotectants such as glycerol or dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) are added to protect cells from damage caused by ice crystal formation. This method can maintain the viability of cultures for years, making it suitable for both bacterial and eukaryotic cells.

Another effective method for culture preservation is lyophilization, or freeze-drying. This process involves freezing the culture and then removing the water through sublimation, resulting in a dry powder that can be stored at room temperature.

## CHAPTER V

### CLASSIFICATION OF VIRUSES, ALGAE, FUNGI AND PROTOZOA

DR.T.THIRUSELVI

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

The classification of viruses, algae, fungi, and protozoa is crucial for understanding their diversity, evolutionary relationships, and ecological roles. Each group possesses unique characteristics that inform their classification, with various systems used to categorize them based on structural, biochemical, and genetic features.

Viruses are classified primarily based on their genetic material, morphology, and the type of host they infect. The International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses (ICTV) groups viruses into families, genera, and species. They can be classified as DNA or RNA viruses, further divided into single-stranded or double-stranded forms. Morphologically, viruses may be classified as helical, icosahedral, or complex, which helps determine their mode of infection and replication.

Algae are classified as photosynthetic eukaryotes and are typically grouped into several major divisions based on their pigmentation, cell wall composition, and reproductive structures. The primary divisions include Chlorophyta (green algae), Rhodophyta (red algae), and Phaeophyta (brown algae).

Fungi are classified based on their reproductive structures, life cycles, and genetic relationships. The main groups include Chytridiomycota (chytrids), Zygomycota (zygomycetes), Ascomycota (sac fungi), and Basidiomycota (club fungi). Fungi are primarily characterized by their heterotrophic mode of nutrition and their ability to decompose organic material, which plays a crucial role in nutrient cycling. protozoa). Understanding the classification of fungi and protozoa is vital for studying their ecological roles, pathogenic potential, and applications in biotechnology and medicine.

## CHAPTER VI

### MICROBIAL GROWTH AND CULTIVATION

DR.A.XAVIER FERNANDES

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Microbial growth and cultivation are fundamental concepts in microbiology, encompassing the processes by which microorganisms increase in number and the methods used to grow them in controlled environments. Microbial growth can be measured in terms of population size or biomass, and it typically follows a characteristic growth curve that includes phases such as lag, exponential (log), stationary, and death phases.

The exponential phase is particularly significant as it represents the period of rapid cell division and growth, during which nutrients are abundant, and waste products have not yet accumulated to toxic levels. During this phase, microorganisms can double in number at a consistent rate, which is often exponential. This phase is exploited in various applications, such as the production of antibiotics, enzymes, and other metabolites, where maximizing cell density is essential. Environmental factors such as temperature, pH, oxygen levels, and nutrient availability play crucial roles in determining the growth rate and overall yield of microbial cultures.

Cultivating microorganisms involves selecting appropriate growth media, which can be solid, liquid, or semi-solid. These media are designed to provide essential nutrients, including carbon sources, nitrogen, vitamins, and minerals, tailored to the specific needs of the microorganism being cultivated. Selective media may be used to encourage the growth of particular species while inhibiting others, allowing for the isolation of desired organisms from mixed populations. Additionally, the sterile technique is critical to prevent contamination, ensuring that only the intended microorganisms grow during cultivation.

## CHAPTER VII

### MICROBIAL ECOLOGY

DR.G. CHANDIRASEGARAN

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Microbial ecology is the study of the relationships between microorganisms and their environments, encompassing their interactions with each other, other organisms, and abiotic factors in various ecosystems. This field is crucial for understanding the roles that microorganisms play in nutrient cycling, ecosystem functioning, and environmental health. Microbial communities are incredibly diverse and can be found in nearly every habitat on Earth, from soils and oceans to extreme environments like hot springs and polar ice. Understanding these communities provides insights into their ecological roles and the overall health of ecosystems.

One of the key components of microbial ecology is the concept of biogeochemical cycles, where microorganisms are vital players in processes such as carbon, nitrogen, and sulfur cycling. For example, bacteria and fungi decompose organic matter, releasing nutrients back into the soil, which plants can then use. Nitrogen-fixing bacteria convert atmospheric nitrogen into forms usable by plants, while other microbes contribute to denitrification, returning nitrogen to the atmosphere. These processes are essential for maintaining soil fertility and supporting plant growth, highlighting the interconnectedness of microbial communities and larger ecological systems.

Microbial interactions can be symbiotic, commensal, or antagonistic. Symbiotic relationships, such as those between mycorrhizal fungi and plant roots, enhance nutrient uptake and promote plant health. Conversely, some microorganisms can compete for resources or produce metabolites that inhibit the growth of others, shaping community dynamics.

## CHAPTER VIII

### MICROORGANISMS AND DISEASE

DR.K.P.KARUPPAIAN

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Microorganisms play a complex role in human health, with many species being essential for maintaining biological balance, while others are responsible for causing diseases. Pathogenic microorganisms, including bacteria, viruses, fungi, and protozoa, can invade the body, disrupt normal physiological functions, and trigger immune responses that lead to illness. Understanding the mechanisms by which these pathogens cause disease is crucial for developing effective treatments and preventive measures.

Bacterial pathogens, such as *Escherichia coli*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, can cause a range of diseases from mild infections to life-threatening conditions. They often produce toxins or possess virulence factors that enhance their ability to invade host tissues and evade the immune system. The spread of antibiotic-resistant bacteria has become a significant public health challenge, necessitating the need for ongoing research into alternative treatment strategies, such as bacteriophage therapy and the development of new antibiotics.

Viruses, being obligate intracellular parasites, rely on host cells to replicate and propagate. Infectious agents like the influenza virus, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), and the SARS-CoV-2 virus are notorious for their ability to mutate, complicating prevention and treatment efforts. Vaccination remains one of the most effective strategies to combat viral diseases, significantly reducing morbidity and mortality rates. The global response to viral outbreaks emphasizes the importance of public health measures and the need for rapid vaccine development and distribution

## CHAPTER IX

### IMMUNE RESPONSE

DR.E.SWAMINATHAN

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

The immune response is a complex and dynamic process that protects the body from pathogens such as bacteria, viruses, fungi, and parasites. It involves a coordinated effort between various cells and molecules of the immune system, which can be broadly categorized into two main types: innate and adaptive immunity. Innate immunity is the body's first line of defense, providing a rapid but nonspecific response to infections

When pathogens breach these initial barriers, the innate immune system kicks into action through various mechanisms, including the release of cytokines and chemokines, which help recruit additional immune cells to the site of infection. Phagocytic cells, like macrophages and dendritic cells, engulf and destroy pathogens while also presenting antigens to activate the adaptive immune response.

Adaptive immunity develops over time and provides a more specialized defense against specific pathogens. It involves the activation of lymphocytes, particularly T cells and B cells. T cells can directly kill infected cells or help orchestrate the immune response, while B cells produce antibodies that specifically target pathogens. The adaptive immune response also has a memory component, allowing the body to mount a faster and more effective response upon subsequent exposures to the same pathogen.

The immune response is finely regulated to prevent excessive reactions that could lead to tissue damage or autoimmune diseases, where the immune system mistakenly targets the body's own cells. Factors such as age, genetics, and overall health can influence the effectiveness of the immune response.

## CHAPTER X

### MICROBIOLOGY IN INDUSTRY AND BIOTECHNOLOGY

DR.AMBIKA K

*Assistant professor, Department of Microbiology, School of Arts and Science, Ponnaiyah Ramajeyam Institute of Science and technology, Tamilnadu, India*

Microbiology plays a crucial role in various industries and biotechnology, leveraging the unique properties of microorganisms for practical applications. In sectors such as pharmaceuticals, food and beverage, and agriculture, microbial processes are integral to production, quality control, and innovation. For instance, the production of antibiotics, vaccines, and hormones relies heavily on microbial fermentation processes, highlighting the importance of microbiological techniques in developing life-saving medications and therapies.

In the food industry, microorganisms are essential for fermentation, which is used to produce a wide range of products, including yogurt, cheese, bread, and beer. Beneficial bacteria, such as *Lactobacillus* and *Streptococcus*, are employed to enhance flavors, improve preservation, and increase nutritional value. Moreover, microbiological safety testing ensures that food products are free from pathogenic microorganisms, protecting public health.

Biotechnology is another field significantly influenced by microbiology, encompassing techniques that utilize living organisms or their components to develop products and processes. This includes genetic engineering, where microbes are modified to produce valuable substances like insulin, enzymes, and biofuels. The use of microorganisms in bioremediation—where they degrade environmental pollutants—demonstrates their potential in addressing ecological challenges. By harnessing the metabolic capabilities of microorganisms, biotechnology can contribute to sustainable practices and environmental conservation.

Overall, the intersection of microbiology and industry fosters advancements that enhance product quality, efficiency, and sustainability.



# LINEAR AND DIGITAL ICS AND APPLICATIONS

Edited by

**DR. V. VIDHYA**



978-93-6255-529-8

Linear and Digital Ics and Applications  
Copyright © 2019 by Dr. V. Vidhya

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-529-8

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction.....	20
CHAPTER 1 Integrated Circuits ....	21
<i>Dr. V. Vidhya</i>	
CHAPTER 2 Operational Amplifier .....	30
<i>Dr. L. Chinnappa</i>	
CHAPTER 3 Applications of Operational Amplifier .....	45
<i>Dr. M. Sivanantham</i>	
CHAPTER 4 Active Filters .....	59
<i>Dr.S.Subashchandrabose</i>	
CHAPTER 5 Timer and Phase Locked Loops.....	73
<i>Dr. M. Silambarasan</i>	
CHAPTER 6 Voltage Regulator & D to A and A to D Converters ...	89
<i>Dr. V. Vidhya and Dr. K. Thirunavukarasu</i>	
CHAPTER 7 CMOS Logic, Combinational Circuits & Sequential Circuits .....	108
<i>Dr. V. Vidhya and Dr. Sutapa Ghosh</i>	
REFERENCES.....	123

# CHAPTER 1

## Integrated Circuits

*Dr. V. Vidhya*

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

### Introduction

Integrated Circuits (ICs), often referred to as microchips or simply chips, are a cornerstone of modern electronic technology. An integrated circuit is a miniaturized set of electronic components, such as transistors, resistors, and capacitors, all etched onto a small piece of semiconductor material, typically silicon. This miniaturization allows for the creation of complex electronic circuits with millions or even billions of components in a space no larger than a fingernail.

The concept of ICs revolutionized electronics, enabling the development of smaller, faster, and more efficient devices. Before ICs, electronic devices were built using discrete components connected by wires, which made them bulky, unreliable, and power-hungry. The advent of ICs, pioneered in the late 1950s by Jack Kilby at Texas Instruments and Robert Noyce at Fairchild Semiconductor, allowed for the mass production of circuits that were not only more compact but also more reliable and cost-effective.

ICs are classified into various types based on their complexity and functionality. Digital ICs, such as microprocessors and memory chips, handle binary data and are the brains behind computers, smartphones, and other digital devices. Analog ICs, like operational amplifiers, are used in applications that require continuous signal processing, such as audio and radio frequency devices. Mixed-signal ICs combine both analog and digital components, enabling their use in devices like analog-to-digital converters and integrated sensors. One of the most significant advancements in IC technology is Moore's Law, an observation made by Gordon Moore in 1965, which predicted that the number of transistors on a chip would double approximately every two years, leading to exponential

## CHAPTER 2

### Operational Amplifier

#### Dr. L. Chinnappa

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

### Introduction

An Operational Amplifier, commonly referred to as an Op-Amp, is a versatile electronic component that plays a fundamental role in analog electronics. It is a type of integrated circuit designed to amplify voltage and is widely used in a variety of applications such as signal conditioning, filtering, and mathematical operations like addition, subtraction, integration, and differentiation.

Op-Amps were originally developed for use in analog computers to perform mathematical operations. The name "operational amplifier" comes from this original purpose. The invention of the first practical Op-Amp, the  $\mu A702$ , by Bob Widlar in 1963, and its subsequent refinement, the  $\mu A741$ , revolutionized analog design due to its stability, reliability, and ease of use.

### Structure and Characteristics

An Op-Amp typically has five terminals: two input terminals (inverting and non-inverting), an output terminal, and two power supply terminals. The inverting input is marked with a minus (-) sign, while the non-inverting input is marked with a plus (+) sign. The voltage difference between these two inputs is amplified to produce the output voltage.

Op-Amps are characterized by several key parameters:

**Open-Loop Gain:** This is the amplification provided by the Op-Amp without any feedback. It is typically very high, often in the range of 100,000 or more.

**Input Impedance:** Op-Amps have a very high input impedance, meaning they draw very little current from the source. This characteristic is important in sensor and signal processing applications where loading the source is undesirable.

# CHAPTER 3

## Applications of Operational Amplifier

### **Dr. M. Sivanantham**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

### **Introduction**

Operational Amplifiers (Op-Amps) are among the most versatile and widely used components in analog electronics. Their unique properties, such as high input impedance, low output impedance, and the ability to amplify voltage, make them ideal for a variety of applications across different fields. Below are some of the most common and significant applications of Op-Amps:

#### *1. Signal Amplification*

Op-Amps are frequently used to amplify small signals, making them suitable for applications like audio amplification, sensor signal conditioning, and medical instrumentation. In configurations such as the inverting and non-inverting amplifiers, they can provide both voltage and current amplification, ensuring that weak signals from sensors or transducers are boosted to usable levels without significant distortion.

#### *2. Active Filters*

Op-Amps are integral to designing active filters, which are used to process signals by allowing or blocking specific frequency ranges. Common types of active filters include:

**Low-Pass Filters:** Allow signals below a certain frequency to pass through while attenuating higher frequencies.

**High-Pass Filters:** Allow high-frequency signals to pass while blocking lower frequencies.

**Band-Pass Filters:** Allow a specific range of frequencies to pass, blocking those outside this range.

These filters are crucial in audio processing, communication systems, and noise reduction applications.

## CHAPTER 4

### Active Filters

**Dr.S.Subashchandrabose**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

#### Introduction

Active filters are electronic circuits that use active components such as operational amplifiers (Op-Amps), transistors, or integrated circuits in combination with passive components like resistors and capacitors to filter and process signals. Unlike passive filters, which rely solely on passive components (resistors, capacitors, and inductors), active filters can amplify signals and provide better performance in terms of stability, control, and frequency response.

#### Key Characteristics Gain Capability:

One of the primary advantages of active filters is their ability to amplify the input signal, which passive filters cannot do. This gain is provided by the active components, usually Op-Amps. **No Inductors Needed:** Active filters do not require inductors, which are bulky, expensive, and difficult to implement in integrated circuits. This makes active filters compact and ideal for use in modern electronic devices. **Impedance Matching:** Active filters have high input impedance and low output impedance, making them suitable for applications where impedance matching is critical. This helps in minimizing signal loss and preventing loading effects on previous stages of the circuit.

**Versatile Design:** Active filters can be easily designed to achieve specific characteristics such as sharp roll-off, precise cutoff frequencies, and minimal distortion. This makes them adaptable for various applications, including audio processing, telecommunications, and signal conditioning.

**Types of Active Filters** Active filters are classified based on their frequency response:

**Low-Pass Filters (LPF):** These filters allow signals with frequencies lower than a specified cutoff frequency to pass

# CHAPTER 5

## Timer and Phase Locked Loops

### Dr. M. Silambarasan

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

### Introduction

Timers and Phase-Locked Loops (PLLs) are essential components in electronic circuits, widely used for timing, synchronization, and frequency control. Both devices play critical roles in a variety of applications, from generating precise time intervals to synchronizing signals in communication systems. While they serve distinct functions, they are often used together in complex electronic systems.

Timers:

Timers are electronic devices or circuits that generate precise time delays or oscillations. The most commonly used timer in electronics is the 555 Timer IC, known for its versatility and ease of use. Timers operate in three basic modes:

**Monostable Mode:** Also called the one-shot mode, it generates a single pulse of a specific duration in response to an external trigger. This is used for applications like pulse-width modulation (PWM), timers, and delay circuits.

**Astable Mode:** In this mode, the timer oscillates continuously, generating a square wave output. It is used in applications such as LED blinkers, clock pulses, and waveform generation.

**Bistable Mode:** The timer functions as a flip-flop, switching its output state between high and low in response to external triggers. This mode is used in switch debouncing, toggle operations, and basic memory storage.

Applications of Timers:

**Pulse Generation:** Timers are used to generate precise pulses for triggering or timing events.

**Time Delays:** Timers can delay actions in electronic circuits, useful in automatic lighting systems and counters.

**Oscillators:** In astable mode, timers generate clock signals or waveforms for various digital circuits.



## CHAPTER 6

### Voltage Regulator & D to A and A to D Converters

**Dr. V. Vidhya and Dr. K. Thirunavukarasu**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

#### Introduction

Voltage regulators and digital-to-analog (D/A) and analog-to-digital (A/D) converters are fundamental components in electronic systems, playing crucial roles in power management and signal processing. They are essential for ensuring that electronic devices operate reliably and can interact with both digital and analog signals.

#### Voltage Regulators

Voltage regulators are electronic devices that maintain a constant output voltage regardless of changes in input voltage or load conditions. They are critical for providing stable power to electronic circuits and protecting sensitive components from voltage fluctuations. Voltage regulators come in two main types:

#### Linear Voltage Regulators:

These regulators use a resistive element to drop the excess voltage and maintain a steady output. They are simple, provide low noise, and have a fast response time, but are less efficient because the excess energy is dissipated as heat. Common linear regulators include the 78xx and 79xx series, which provide fixed positive and negative voltages, respectively.

#### Switching Voltage Regulators:

These regulators, such as buck, boost, and buck-boost converters, use inductors, capacitors, and switches to convert the input voltage to a desired output. They are highly efficient, often achieving efficiencies above 90%, and are ideal for applications requiring high efficiency and large voltage changes. However, they are more complex and can generate electromagnetic interference (EMI).

#### Applications of Voltage Regulators:

# CHAPTER 7

## CMOS Logic, Combinational Circuits & Sequential Circuits

**Dr. V. Vidhya and Dr. Sutapa Ghosh**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

### Introduction

Complementary Metal-Oxide-Semiconductor (CMOS) logic, combinational circuits, and sequential circuits are foundational concepts in digital electronics. They form the building blocks for digital systems, enabling the design of complex functionalities found in computers, communication devices, and various digital applications.

CMOS Logic:

CMOS logic is a widely used technology in the design of integrated circuits (ICs). It consists of complementary pairs of p-type and n-type MOSFETs (Metal-Oxide-Semiconductor Field-Effect Transistors). This configuration provides several advantages:

**Low Power Consumption:** CMOS circuits consume power only during switching and have negligible static power consumption, making them ideal for battery-operated devices.

**High Noise Immunity:** CMOS logic circuits are less susceptible to noise, ensuring reliable operation in various environments.

**Scalability:** CMOS technology scales well with advances in semiconductor fabrication, enabling the miniaturization of transistors and increasing integration density.

Common CMOS logic gates include NOT, AND, OR, NAND, NOR, XOR, and XNOR. These gates are the basic building blocks for more complex digital circuits.

Combinational Circuits

Combinational circuits are digital circuits where the output depends solely on the current combination of input signals, without any memory of previous states. They perform basic logical functions and are used to implement arithmetic and data-processing operations.

# **CLASSICAL MECHANICS AND RELATIVITY**

Edited by

**DR.S.SUBASHCHANDRABOSE**



978-93-6255-119-1

Classical Mechanics and Relativity  
Copyright © 2019 by *Dr. S. Subashchandrabose*

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without written permission from the author.

ISBN: 978-93-6255-119-1

Publisher: Ponnaiyah Ramajayam Institute of Science and Technology (PRIST)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction.....	20
CHAPTER 1 Principles of Classical Mechanics .....	21
<i>Dr. S. Subashchandrabose</i>	
CHAPTER 2 Lagrangian Formulation .....	30
<i>Dr. L. Chinnappa</i>	
CHAPTER 3 Hamiltonian Formulation .....	46
<i>Dr. M. Sivanantham</i>	
CHAPTER 4 Central force motion .....	62
<i>Dr. M. Silambarasan</i>	
CHAPTER 5 Rigid Body .....	79
<i>Dr. V. Vidhya</i>	
CHAPTER 6 Relativity.....	97
<i>Dr. K. Thirunavukarasu</i>	
CHAPTER 7 Non-linear dynamics.....	114
<i>Dr. Sutapa Ghosh</i>	
REFERENCES.....	132

**CHAPTER 1**  
**Principles of Classical Mechanics**  
**Dr. S. Subashchandrabose**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**Introduction**

Classical mechanics, formulated primarily by Sir Isaac Newton in the 17<sup>th</sup> century, is a branch of physics that describes the motion of macroscopic objects under the influence of forces. It provides a framework for understanding and predicting the behavior of objects from everyday scales to astronomical bodies, forming the foundation for much of classical physics and engineering.

Core Principles:

Classical mechanics is based on a few fundamental principles and laws that describe how objects move and interact:

*1. Newton's Laws of Motion*

These laws form the cornerstone of classical mechanics and describe the relationship between the motion of an object and the forces acting upon it.

First Law (Law of Inertia):

An object remains in a state of rest or uniform motion in a straight line unless acted upon by an external force. This principle defines inertia and the concept of an inertial reference frame.

Second Law (Law of Acceleration):

The acceleration of an object is directly proportional to the net force acting on it and inversely proportional to its mass, expressed mathematically as  $F=ma$ , where  $F$  is the force,  $m$  is the mass, and  $a$  is the acceleration.

Third Law (Action and Reaction):

For every action, there is an equal and opposite reaction. This means that forces always occur in pairs, and the force exerted by one object on another is matched by an equal force in the opposite direction.

## CHAPTER 2

### Lagrangian Formulation

**Dr. L. Chinnappa**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

### Introduction

The Lagrangian formulation is a powerful and elegant method in classical mechanics, providing a framework for analyzing the motion of systems, especially those with complex constraints and forces. Developed by Joseph-Louis Lagrange in the 18th century, it reinterprets Newton's laws using energy principles, offering a more generalized approach that is particularly useful in fields such as analytical mechanics, theoretical physics, and engineering.

### Core Concepts

The Lagrangian formulation is built around the concept of the Lagrangian function,  $L$ , defined as the difference between the kinetic energy ( $T$ ) and the potential energy ( $V$ ) of the system:

$$L = T - V$$

This formulation transforms the problem of motion into a problem of finding the path that extremizes (usually minimizes) the action, a quantity defined as the integral of the Lagrangian over time.

### Principle of Least Action

At the heart of the Lagrangian formulation is the principle of least action (or stationary action), which states that the actual path taken by a system between two points in configuration space is the one that minimizes the action,  $S$ . The action is given by:

$$S = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} L dt$$

where  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  are the initial and final times. This principle provides a unifying framework for deriving the equations of motion of a system.

# CHAPTER 3

## Hamiltonian Formulation

### Dr. M. Sivanantham

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

#### Introduction

The Hamiltonian formulation is a fundamental framework in classical mechanics that reinterprets the dynamics of a system using energy principles. Developed by Sir William Rowan Hamilton in the 19th century, this formulation provides an alternative to the Lagrangian approach, focusing on energy conservation and phase space dynamics. The Hamiltonian formulation is particularly powerful in advanced mechanics, statistical mechanics, and quantum mechanics, offering a deeper understanding of the symmetries and invariants of physical systems.

#### Core Concepts

The Hamiltonian formulation is based on the Hamiltonian function,  $H$ , which represents the total energy of the system, expressed in terms of generalized coordinates  $q_i$  and conjugate momenta  $p_i$ . The Hamiltonian is defined as:

$$H(q_i, p_i, t) = \sum_i p_i \dot{q}_i - L(q_i, \dot{q}_i, t)$$

where  $p_i = \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_i}$  are the conjugate momenta associated with the generalized coordinates  $q_i$  and  $L$  is the Lagrangian of the system. For many systems, the Hamiltonian corresponds to the total energy,  $H=T+V$ , where  $T$  is the kinetic energy and  $V$  is the potential energy.

#### Hamilton's Equations of Motion

The dynamics of a system in the Hamiltonian formulation are described by Hamilton's equations, a set of first-order differential equations:

$$\dot{q}_i = \frac{\partial H}{\partial p_i}$$



**CHAPTER 4**  
**Central force motion**  
**Dr. M. Silambarasan**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**Introduction**

Central force motion refers to the movement of an object influenced by a force that is directed toward or away from a fixed point, often referred to as the center of force. This concept is pivotal in classical mechanics, especially in the study of planetary motion, satellite dynamics, and systems governed by gravitational or electrostatic forces. The study of central force motion provides insights into the fundamental principles governing orbits and the conservation laws that arise in such systems.

**Definition and Characteristics**

A central force is defined as a force that acts along the line connecting the object and a fixed point (the center). Mathematically, a central force  $F$  can be expressed as:

$$F = f(r)\hat{r}$$

where  $f(r)$  is a function of the distance  $r$  from the center, and  $\hat{r}$  is the unit vector pointing from the center to the object. Central forces are typically conservative, meaning that they can be derived from a potential energy function,  $V(r)$ , where:

$$F = -\nabla V(r)$$

**Key Examples**

**Gravitational Force:** The gravitational force between two masses is a classic example of a central force. It acts toward the center of mass of the two-body system and is described by Newton's law of universal gravitation:

$$F = \frac{Gm_1m_2}{r^2}$$

where  $G$  is the gravitational constant,  $m_1$  and  $m_2$  are the masses, and  $r$  is the distance between their centers.

**CHAPTER 5**  
**Rigid Body**  
**Dr. V. Vidhya**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**Introduction**

A rigid body is an idealized physical object in which the distances between any two points remain constant regardless of external forces or moments acting on it. This concept simplifies the analysis of mechanical systems by allowing us to treat the body as a whole without considering deformations or changes in shape. Rigid body dynamics is a fundamental aspect of classical mechanics, widely applied in engineering, physics, and robotics to analyze the motion and interactions of solid objects.

**Characteristics of Rigid Bodies**

**Invariance of Shape:**

In a rigid body, the relative positions of particles do not change. This assumption holds true for most engineering applications, where materials exhibit negligible deformation under normal operating conditions.

**Translation and Rotation:**

Rigid body motion can be described in terms of two basic types of movement: translation and rotation. Translation refers to the motion of the entire body along a straight or curved path. Rotation involves movement around a fixed axis, with all points in the body moving in circular paths about that axis.

**Kinematics of Rigid Bodies**

The study of rigid body motion is divided into kinematics and dynamics.

*Kinematics*

Kinematics deals with the geometric aspects of motion without considering the forces causing it. In rigid body kinematics, we analyze:

## CHAPTER 6

### Relativity

**Dr. K. Thirunavukarasu**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

#### Introduction

Relativity is a fundamental theory in physics that revolutionized our understanding of space, time, and gravity. Formulated by Albert Einstein in the early 20th century, it consists of two primary theories: Special Relativity and General Relativity. Together, these theories transformed the conceptual framework of classical physics, challenging long-held notions of absolute space and time, and providing profound insights into the behavior of objects in motion and the nature of gravitational forces.

#### Special Relativity

Introduced in 1905, Special Relativity addresses the physics of objects moving at constant speeds, particularly those approaching the speed of light. Its key postulates are:

#### Relativity of Simultaneity:

Events that are simultaneous in one frame of reference may not be simultaneous in another moving relative to the first. This principle highlights the subjective nature of time.

#### Constancy of the Speed of Light:

The speed of light in a vacuum is constant (approximately  $3 \times 10^8$  m/s) for all observers, regardless of their relative motion. This postulate leads to the conclusion that time and space are interconnected in a four-dimensional framework known as spacetime.

#### Key Implications of Special Relativity

#### Time Dilation:

Moving clocks run slower compared to stationary ones, as observed by an outside observer. This effect becomes significant at velocities approaching the speed of light, leading to the famous equation:

**CHAPTER 7**  
**Non-linear dynamics**  
**Dr. Sutapa Ghosh**

*Department of Physics, PRIST Deemed to be University,  
Thanjavur-613403, Tamilnadu, India*

**Introduction**

Non-linear dynamics is a branch of mathematics and physics that studies systems characterized by non-linear relationships between their components. Unlike linear systems, where outputs are directly proportional to inputs, non-linear systems exhibit complex behaviors that can lead to phenomena such as chaos, bifurcations, and sensitivity to initial conditions. This field has profound implications across various disciplines, including physics, biology, economics, and engineering, as it provides tools to understand and predict the behavior of complex systems.

Characteristics of Non-Linear Systems

Non-Linearity:

In non-linear systems, the equations governing the dynamics are non-linear, meaning that changes in input can result in disproportionate and unpredictable changes in output. Common examples include quadratic and cubic terms in differential equations.

Multiple Equilibria:

Non-linear systems often have multiple equilibrium points, leading to various possible states of the system. This can result in different long-term behaviors depending on initial conditions or parameters, a concept known as hysteresis.

Bifurcations:

Non-linear dynamics frequently exhibit bifurcations, where small changes in parameters can cause sudden shifts in behavior. For example, a system might transition from stable periodic behavior to chaotic dynamics through a bifurcation point.